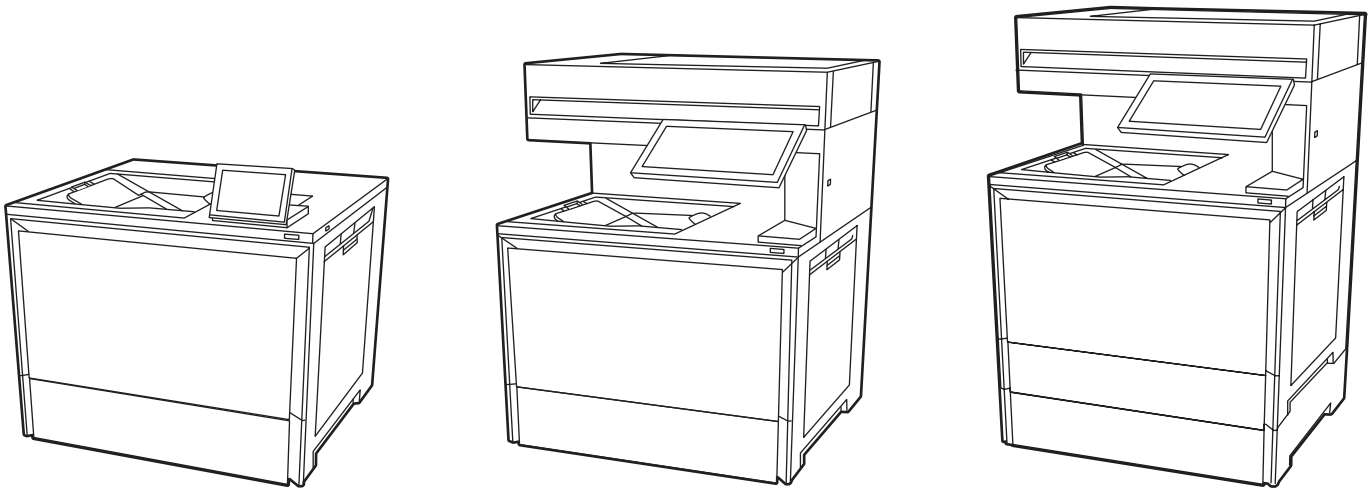
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise 5700
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise X557, X55745
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP 5800
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP X57945
HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP X58045

Repair Manual



www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700
www.hp.com/support/colorljX557
www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP
www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP

HP Color LaserJet 5700, X557, X55745, MFP 5800, X57945, X58045 - Repair Manual

SUMMARY

This guide provides troubleshooting and repair information.

Legal information

Copyright and License

© Copyright 2023 HP Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1.5, 8/2024

Conventions used in this guide

Learn about the conventions used in this publication.

TIP: Tips provide helpful hints or shortcuts.

NOTE: Notes provide important information to explain a concept or to complete a task.

CAUTION: Cautions indicate procedures that you should follow to avoid losing data or damaging the product.

WARNING! Warnings alert you to specific procedures that you should follow to avoid personal injury, catastrophic loss of data, or extensive damage to the product.

Safety precautions

Follow these safety protocols when handling or repairing the printer.

Product safety classification: This is a Safety Class I product, which means it has a protective earth terminal. This terminal must be connected to earth ground.

IMPORTANT: Before operation or repair, check the product and review this manual for safety warnings and instructions. Safety warnings for specific procedures are located at appropriate places in the manual.

WARNING: Hazardous voltages exist within the product.

NOTE: HP recommends that only qualified personnel trained in working with high voltage power equipment should service this unit.

Follow these precautions always:

NOTE: If you do not want to disassemble and repair the printer yourself, contact your local HP Service Representative for service, see Contact HP Support on page viii section.

Warnings and Cautions

To ensure the proper use of the printer and to prevent the printer from being damaged, follow the warning and caution symbols marked in this guide. See Conventions used in this guide on page iii.

Electrical precautions

- **Power cord instructions**
  - Make sure your power source is adequate for the product voltage rating. The voltage rating is on the product label.

    Typically, the product uses either 110-127 Vac or 220-240 Vac and 50/60 Hz. Depending on a product, the voltage usage might change (100-127 Vac, for example). It is recommended to refer your product manual for the specified voltage.
  - Connect the power cord between the product and a grounded AC outlet.

    CAUTION: To prevent damage to the product, use only the power cord that is provided with the product.

    Do not damage, cut, or repair the power cord. A damaged power cord can cause fire or electric shock. Replace a damaged power cord with an HP-approved power cord.
  - Unplug the power cord when disassembling or assembling the printer.

The printer utilizes a power switch (button) that is turned "ON" or "OFF". Be aware that electricity may flow on the primary side of the printer even when the printer is "OFF".

- Power off the printer and unplug the power cord and fax cord (if available) from the electrical outlet in any of the following cases:
  - When removing product enclosure or covers from the printer or when accessing internal parts of a printer.
  - If there is smoke or an unusual smell coming from the printer.
  - A piece of metal or a liquid (not part of cleaning and maintenance routines) touches internal parts of the printer.
  - During an electrical storm (with thunder and/or lightning).
  - During an electrical power failure.

Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) precautions

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage electronic components inside your printer.

Use these guidelines to protect sensitive parts against damage from electrostatic discharge.

- Touch a metal object that is not painted and is grounded.
- Leave electronic parts such as a memory chip in the bag it was shipped in until you are ready to perform the installation.
- ESD wrist straps can also be used to help release excess electrostatic charge.

- **CAUTION:** 

  Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts.

  Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

- Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Handling toner

HP recommends that you wear gloves when handling toner cartridges and toner system components.

Do not expose toner or toner cartridge to fire or any heat source.

Keep imaging unit and/or toner cartridge away from children. The toner powder contained in the imaging unit and toner cartridge may be harmful, and if swallowed, you should contact a doctor.

Lifting equipment

Follow the recommendations for lifting or moving your printer.

The printed inbox guides and support documentation available on support.hp.com for your printer model will provide the lifting requirements to avoid injury and to safely move the printer.

NOTE: Do not attempt to lift heavy equipment without assistance.

Safety measures during disassembling or reassembling

IMPORTANT: Before disassembling or reassembling a printer, be sure to unplug its power cord from the electrical outlet.

NOTE: Assembly is the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise specified.

- During disassembly, reassembly, or transportation of a printer, remove the toner cartridge as necessary.
- Only fuses with the required rated current, voltage, and specified type (normal blow, time delay, etc.) should be used.

  Do not use repaired fuses or short-circuited fuse holders. Doing so, could cause a shock or fire hazard.
- Capacitors inside this product may hold a hazardous charge even if the product has been disconnected from its power source.
- Do not disable safety functions (Interlocks or safety circuits). Safety will not be assured leading to a safety hazard and potential injury.
- Note the length, diameters, and locations of screws as you remove them. When reassembling the printer, be sure to use them in their original locations.
- As a best practice safety rule, do not run the printer with any parts removed.

Ingestion hazards

This product may contain a button cell or coin battery that is not intended to be replaced.

- A swallowed button cell or coin battery can cause internal chemical burns in as little as two (2) hours.

  Death or serious injury can occur if ingested.
- Keep new and used batteries out of reach of children. Used batteries may cause severe injury or death.

  Seek immediate medical attention if a battery is suspected to be swallowed or inserted inside any part of the body. Call a local poison control center for treatment information.
- Remove and immediately recycle or dispose of used batteries according to local regulations and keep away from children. Do not dispose of batteries in household trash or incinerate.

Laser radiation hazards

The printer is certified as a Class 1 laser product.

WARNING: Using controls, adjusting or performing procedures other than those specified in the user guide could result in exposure to hazardous radiation. Do not disassemble the laser/scanner unit as the laser beam can injure your eyes. An invisible laser beam is emitted within the laser/scanner unit.

Mechanical hazards

The printer has moving parts that could cause injury. To avoid personal injury, take the following precautions when working close to the printer.

- Keep your clothes and body away from the printer's moving parts.
  - Avoid wearing dangling jewelry or other hanging objects around the printer as it might be caught by moving parts and lead to injury.
  - Keep long hair tied up and away from the paper feed mechanism.
  - Ensure the sleeves or gloves do not get caught in the printer's moving parts.
- Avoid standing close to the fans as it could cause injury and could also affect print quality (by obstructing the air flow).
- Do not touch gears or moving rolls during printing.
- Do not operate the printer when having enclosure covers removed or interlock switches bypassed.
- The product may have internal sharp edges.

  Make sure the wiring does not come into contact with sharp edges, burrs, or other pointed parts. Current can leak, leading to a risk of electrical shock or fire hazard.
- During and after repair, check internal electrical wiring for squeezing, sheaths and any damage.
- – Make sure that all screws, components, wiring, connectors and so forth that were removed, have been reinstalled in the original location.
  - Do not allow any metal parts such as clips, staples and screws to fall into the printer. This could potentially short internal circuits and cause an electrical shock hazard.
  - Do not allow liquids (except those used in HP cleaning kits) to touch the internal parts of the printer. Doing so may cause fire, electric shock, or other serious hazards.

Thermal hazards

Caution: Inspection before repair for fuser

The area around the fuser unit may be hot. Wait for a few minutes until the fuser assembly cools down.

Contact HP Support

HP offers phone support to assist you for printer issues. Ensure to read the following information before contacting HP Support.

Before contacting HP Support

Before contacting support, consider checking the resources available on HP Customer Support.

1. Go to HP Customer Support (https://support.hp.com) to locate your product support page.
2. Review the documents for troubleshooting before contacting HP.

Information required when contacting HP Support

If you call an HP support representative for assistance, ensure you have the following information for HP support to answer your questions quickly:

- **Product model**: Note the printer model, product number, and serial number you are using. The product number and the serial number are typically found on the label at the back of the product.
- **Error code**: If there is an error code or message displaying on the printer control panel, note the error code and message.
- **Computer (operating system)**: Provide the name of the computer/computer operating system you are using.
- Any **special equipment or software** you are using (for example, spoolers, networks, switch-boxes, modems or special software drivers).
  - The type of interface used on your product (USB or network).
  - The software and driver name and firmware version number that you are currently using.
- **Printer service information**: You can obtain the printer service information from the Embedded Web Server (EWS). If you need to send this information by email, download it as a file from your browser, and send the file.

NOTE: Depending on your printer firmware version, the menu items in the EWS might vary.

1. Open a Web browser on your computer, and then enter the IP address of your printer to access the Embedded Web Server.
2. Click **Support** > **Service support** > **Service information** > **Display**.

Phone support

HP phone support is available on the HP support website. For assistance, go to one of the following websites:

- https://support.hp.com/contact or
- https://support.hp.com/contact/help/printer or
- https://www.hp.com/us-en/contact-hp/contact.html.

Table of contents

1 Printer information, configurations, and specifications 1

Document feeder / scanner 1

Information (document feeder and scanner) 1

Document feeder and scanner front view 1

Technical specifications 1

Information (base printer) 2

Printer front view (5700 models) 2

Printer front view (X557 models) 3

Printer back view (5700/X557 models) 3

Printer front view (5800/X57945 models) 4

Printer back view (5800/X57945 models) 6

Configuration (base printer) 7

Configuration (base printer SFP) 7

Configuration (base printer MFP) 8

Specifications (base printer) 9

Technical specifications (5700) 9

Technical specifications (X55745) 11

Technical specifications (5800) 12

Technical specifications (X57945) 14

Printer dimensions (5700/X557 models) 15

Printer dimensions 16

Printer dimensions (X57945 models) 18

Printer space requirements 21

Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions 21

Operating-environment range 22

Information (input devices) 22

550-sheet paper feeder front view 22

High capacity input (HCI) paper feeder front view 23

Information (output devices) 24

3-bin stapler-stacker front view 24

2 Printer installation and maintenance 26

Document feeder / scanner 26

Clean the pickup rollers and separation pad in the document feeder (MFP) 26

Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges 27

Base printer 28
Remove and replace the toner cartridges (5700/X557/5800 models) 29
Remove and replace the toner cartridges (X57945 models) 30
Remove and replace the imaging drums (X57945 models) 32
Clean the Tray 1 pickup and separation rollers 35
Clean the Tray 2 pickup and separation rollers 38

3 Solve problems 41

Determine the problem source 41
Pre-troubleshooting checklist 41
Troubleshooting flowchart 43
Firmware upgrades 44
Determine the installed revision of firmware 45
HP Embedded Web Server 46
USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) 46
USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) 47
Comprehensive list of troubleshooting tools 48
Engine test 48
Control panel checks 49
Touchscreen diagnostic mode 49
Open the control panel system diagnostic tests 50
Screen test 52
Touch test 56
SoftKey test 57
Backlight test 59
Sound test 60
Keyboard test (flow models only) 60
Version 61
Control panel diagnostic flowcharts 62
Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image) 62
Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 63
No control panel sound 64
Home button is unresponsive 65
Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional) 66
Print menu (SFP) and Copy/Print menu (MFP) 67
Defeating interlocks 89
LED diagnostics (formatter) 90
Scanner tests (MFP) 91
Disable cartridge check 92
Print/stop test 92
Individual component diagnostics 93
Paper path test 93
Paper path sensors test 94
Individual component test 94
Manual sensor test 94
Tray/bin manual sensor test 95
Diagrams: Block diagrams 95
Diagrams: External plug and port locations 95
Sensors and switches 96

Diagrams: Major component locations....100
Printed circuit assembly (PCA) connector locations....116
Internal test and information pages....122
Reports menu....126
Settings menu....127
General menu....128
Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP)....134
Fax menu (MFP)....145
Manage Supplies menu....156
Networking menu....159
Support Tools menu....165
Maintenance menu....165
Backup/Restore menu....165
Calibration/Cleaning menu....166
USB Firmware Upgrade menu....167
Service menu....167
Troubleshooting menu....168
Service menu....172
Printer resets....176
Format Disk and Partial Clean functions....178
Power on troubleshooting....182
Power-on checks....182
Power on troubleshooting overview....182
Troubleshooting power-on or blank control panel problems....182
Engine diagnostics....184
Engine test....184
Defeating interlocks....184
Disable cartridge check....186
LED diagnostics (formatter)....187
Use the solve problems checklist....187
Control panel troubleshooting....190
Control panel system diagnostics....190
Open the control panel system diagnostic tests....190
Screen test....192
Touch test....196
SoftKey test....197
Backlight test....199
Sound test....200
Version....200
Control panel messages document (CPMD)....201
Error codes (types and structure)....201
Print the supplies status page....203
Pre-boot menu options....203
Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel....203
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel....205
Remote Admin....205
Required software and network connection....206
Connect a remote connection....207

Disconnect a remote connection 211
Print the event log 213
Solve paper handling problems 213
Clear paper jams (SFP models) 213
Paper jam locations 213
Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams 214
Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams? 214
13.B2.D1 jam error in Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) 215
13.B2.D2 jam error in Tray 2 218
13.A3 jam error in Tray 3 223
13.A4 jam error in Tray 4 229
13.A4 jam error in Tray 4 (2,100 sheet feeder HCI) 236
13.B2 jam error in right door 243
13.B4 jam errors in the right door 246
13.B9 jam errors in the fuser 248
13.D3 jam errors in the duplexer 252
13.E1 jam error in the output bin 254
Clear paper jams (MFP models) 255
Paper jam locations 255
Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams 256
Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams? 256
31.13.yz jam error in the document feeder 257
13.B2.D1 jam error in Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) 261
13.B2.D2 jam error in Tray 2 265
13.A3 jam error in Tray 3 270
13.A4 jam error in Tray 4 276
13.A4 jam error in Tray 4 (2,100 sheet feeder HCI) 283
13.B2 jam error in right door 290
13.B4 jam errors in the right door 293
13.B9 jam errors in the fuser 295
13.D3 jam errors in the duplexer 299
13.E1 jam error in the output bin 301
13.E2 jam error in top cover 302
13.60 jam errors in the fuser exit area when printing to a stapler/stacker or floor-standing finisher 304
13.80, 13.83, or 13.84 jam errors in the 3 Bin Stapler/Stacker 306
Printer feeds incorrect page size 310
Printer pulls from incorrect tray 311
Printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly (duplex models) 311
Paper does not feed from Tray 2-X 311
Output is curled or wrinkled 312
The printer does not pick up paper 313
The printer picks up multiple sheets of paper 313
The document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper (MFP) 314
Paper does not feed automatically 314
Image-quality troubleshooting 315
Print-quality troubleshooting 316
Repetitive image defect ruler 316
Use a ruler to measure between repetitive defects 317

Print from a different software program 320
Check the paper-type setting for the print job 320
Check the paper type setting on the control panel 320
Check the paper type setting (Windows) 321
Check the paper type setting (macOS) 321
Check toner-cartridge status 321
Step one: Print the Supplies Status Page 321
Step two: Check supplies status 322
Print a cleaning page 322
Check paper and the printing environment 322
Step one: Use paper that meets HP specifications 322
Step two: Check the environment 323
Step three: Set the individual tray alignment 323
Try a different print driver 323
Troubleshoot image defects 324
Copy-quality troubleshooting 331
Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges 332
Vertical lines, bands, or streaks 333
Modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality 338
Light or faint copies (color models) 339
Performance and connectivity troubleshooting 341
Solve fax or email problems 341
Solve performance problems 342
Factors affecting print performance 342
Print speeds 343
The printer does not print 344
The printer prints slowly 344
Solve connectivity problems 345
Solve USB connection problems 345
Solve wired network problems 345
Introduction 345
Poor physical connection 345
The computer is using the incorrect IP address for the printer 345
The computer is unable to communicate with the printer 346
The printer is using incorrect link and duplex settings for the network 346
New software programs might be causing compatibility problems 346
The computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly 346
The printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect 346
4 Removal and replacement 347
Safety precautions 347
Contact HP Support 350
Customer self-repair (CSR) A parts and accessories 351
Customer-replaceable units 352
Internal parts and assemblies 352
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges (5700/X557/5800 models) 352
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges (X57945 models) 355
Removal and replacement: Imaging drums (X57945 models) 359

Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU) 363
Removal and replacement: 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cartridge (3-bin stapler-stacker) 367
Removal and replacement: Convenience staple cartridge (convenience stapler models) 369
Removal and replacement: Fuser 371
Removal and replacement: Image transfer belt (ITB) 374
Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer roller 376
Removal and replacement: Document feeder rollers (MFP models) 379
Installation: Keyboard overlay (MFP models) 381
Removal and replacement: Tray 1 pickup and separation roller assemblies 385
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup and separation roller assemblies 390
Customer self-repair (CSR) B parts and accessories 393
Customer-replaceable units 393
Internal parts and assemblies 393
Removal and replacement: Keyboard (MFP models) 393
Removal and replacement: Hard-disk drive (HDD) 398
Removal and replacement: Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) (SFP models) 402
Removal and replacement: Fax PCA (fax models) 406
Removal and replacement: Workflow accelerator 409
Removal and replacement: USB expansion kit 413
Removal and replacement: Solid state drive (SSD) 417
Removal and replacement: Near field communication (NFC) PCA (MFP models) 435
Removal and replacement: embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC) (SFP models) 438
Document feeder / scanner 442
Field-replaceable units (FRUs) 442
Internal parts and assemblies 442
Removal and replacement: Scanner control board (SCB) (MFP models) 442
Removal and replacement: White backing (MFP models) 448
Whole-unit replacement (WUR) 449
Automatic document feeder (WUR) 449
Removal and replacement: Document feeder (MFP models) 449
Integrated scanner assembly (WUR) 455
Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner assembly (MFP models) 455
Removal and replacement: Internal parts and assemblies (base printer) 461
Field-replaceable units (FRUs) 461
Covers, panels, and doors 461
Removal and replacement: Formatter cover 461
Removal and replacement: Formatter cover 463
Removal and replacement: Front door 466
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge access door (X557/X57945 models) 470
Removal and replacement: Rear cover 473
Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover (MFP models) 477
Removal and replacement: Left upper cover (MFP models) 482
Removal and replacement: Left cover 485
Removal and replacement: Left handle 489
Removal and replacement: Front left cover 493
Removal and replacement: Front right cover 495
Removal and replacement: Right door 497
Removal and replacement: Right lower door (X57945 models) 502

Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover (X57945 models) 505
Removal and replacement: Left lower cover (X57945 models) 509
Removal and replacement: Output bin 513
Removal and replacement: Right handle 518
Removal and replacement: Top cover (SFP models) 524
Removal and replacement: Top cover (MFP models) 530
Removal and replacement: Top front cover (MFP models) 534
Removal and replacement: Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover 540
Removal and replacement: Control panel (SFP models) 542
Removal and replacement: Control panel (MFP models) 546
Internal parts and assemblies 548
Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges (manual unlock) (X57945 models) 548
Removal and replacement: Convenience stapler 551
Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer assembly 562
Removal and replacement: Registration density sensor assembly 566
Removal and replacement: Registration assembly 572
Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models) 577
Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly (X57945 models) 583
Removal and replacement: Delivery assembly 587
Removal and replacement: Laser scanner assembly 591
Removal and replacement: DC controller (DCC) 597
Removal and replacement: Formatter 602
Removal and replacement: Formatter cage assembly (SFP models) 606
Removal and replacement: Formatter cage assembly (MFP models) 612
Removal and replacement: Feed drive assembly (X57945 models) 619
Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models) 625
Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (X57945 models) 632
Removal and replacement: Toner supply motor assembly (X57945 models) 638
Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models) 642
Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (X57945 models) 649
Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (5700/X557/5800 models) 654
Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (X57945 models) 661
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 media size detect assembly (X557 models) 666
Removal and replacement: Tray 2 media size detect assembly (X57945 models) 674
Removal and replacement: Fuser drive assembly 680
Removal and replacement: Main-drive assembly 689
Removal and replacement: Interlock assembly 708
Removal and replacement: Waste toner carry assembly (X57945 models) 729
Removal and replacement: Waste toner duct assembly (5700/X557/X579/5800 models) 749
Removal and replacement: Pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models) 758
Removal and replacement: Pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (X57945 models) 774
Removal and replacement: Toner supply drive assembly (X57945 models) 790
Removal and replacement: Toner supply assembly (X57945 models) 796
Removal and replacement: Toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe (X57945 models) 800

Removal and replacement: Feed assembly (X57945 models) 809
Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS) 815
Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply (HVPS) 821
Removal and replacement: Drive PCA 830
Removal and replacement: Feed/toner supply controller PCA (X57945 models) 837
Removal and replacement: Right PCA 841
Removal and replacement: Rear PCA 844
Removal and replacement: Environmental sensor PCA 851
Removal and replacement: Drum home position PCA 856
Removal and replacement: Drum motor 863
Removal and replacement: Developer motor 869
Removal and replacement: Image transfer belt (ITB) motor 876
Removal and replacement: Developer alienation motor 883
Removal and replacement: Fuser motor 892
Removal and replacement: Duplex motor 899
Removal and replacement: Power-supply fan 906
Removal and replacement: Cartridge fan 913
Removal and replacement: Fuser fan 920

Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder 928
Field-replaceable units (FRUs) 928
Covers, panels, and doors 928
Removal and replacement: Front left cover (550-sheet paper feeder) 928
Removal and replacement: Front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder) 931
Removal and replacement: Right door (550-sheet paper feeder) 933
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder) 936
Removal and replacement: Left cover (550-sheet paper feeder) 940
Internal parts and assemblies 944
Removal and replacement: Pickup assembly (550-sheet paper feeder) 944
Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder) 949
Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder) 954
Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (550-sheet paper feeder) 960
Removal and replacement: Media size detection assembly (550-sheet paper feeder) 965
Removal and replacement: Controller PCA (550-sheet paper feeder) 971
Removal and replacement: Separation roller assembly (550-sheet paper feeder) 975
Removal and replacement: Pickup roller assembly (550-sheet paper feeder) 977

Removal and replacement: 2,100-sheet paper deck 979
Field-replaceable units (FRUs) 979
Covers, panels, and doors 979
Removal and replacement: Right door (HCI) 979
Removal and replacement: Front left cover/left cover (HCI) 981
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (HCI) 985
Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover (HCI) 987
Internal parts and assemblies 990
Removal and replacement: Cassette assembly (HCI) 990
Removal and replacement: Pickup assembly (HCI) 993
Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (HCI) 996
Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (HCI) 1000
Removal and replacement: Pickup alienation assembly (HCI) 1004

Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (HCI) 1008
Removal and replacement: Controller PCA (HCI) 1013
Removal and replacement: Separation roller assembly (HCI) 1017
Removal and replacement: Pickup roller assembly (HCI) 1019
Output device - 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox 1022
Field-replaceable units (FRUs) 1022
Covers, panels, and doors 1022
Removal and replacement: Rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1022
Removal and replacement: Staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1024
Removal and replacement: Right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1027
Removal and replacement: Right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1029
Removal and replacement: Right lower cover (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1032
Removal and replacement: Rear inner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1037
Removal and replacement: Stapler-stacker door assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1040
Removal and replacement: Stacking wall assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1047
Internal parts and assemblies 1060
Removal and replacement: Stapler assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1060
Removal and replacement: Jogger assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1063
Removal and replacement: Output bin 1 (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1068
Removal and replacement: Upper feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1070
Removal and replacement: Lower feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1079
Removal and replacement: Solenoid assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1094
Removal and replacement: MBM fan (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1101
Removal and replacement: Stapler-stacker feed motor (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1104
Removal and replacement: Controller PCA (3-bin stapler-stacker) 1108
5 Parts and diagrams 1111
Document feeder / scanner 1111
Integrated scanner assembly 1111
Base printer 1113
Control panels 1113
Control panels 1113
Covers, panels, and doors 1115
Parts and diagrams: Covers 5700/X557 models 1115
Parts and diagrams: Covers 5800 models 1117
Parts and diagrams: Covers X57945 models 1119
Internal parts and assemblies 1121
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models 1121
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models 1123
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models 1125
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X57945 models 1127
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models 1129
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models 1130
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models 1132
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models 1133
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (9 of 9)X57945 models 1135
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models 1136
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models 1138

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models....1140
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models....1142
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models....1144
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models....1145
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models....1147
Input devices....1148
Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder....1148
Covers, panels, and doors....1148
Covers, panels, and doors (550-sheet paper feeder)....1148
Internal parts and assemblies....1149
Internal parts and assemblies (550-sheet paper feeder)....1149
Output devices....1150
Output device - 3-bin staple stacker....1150
Covers, panels, and doors....1150
Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models....1150
Internal parts and assemblies....1151
Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models....1151
Alphabetical parts list....1154
Document feeder / scanner....1111
Integrated scanner assembly....1111
Base printer....1113
Control panels....1113
Control panels....1113
Covers, panels, and doors....1115
Parts and diagrams: Covers 5700/X557 models....1115
Parts and diagrams: Covers 5800 models....1117
Parts and diagrams: Covers X57945 models....1119
Internal parts and assemblies....1121
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models....1121
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models....1123
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models....1125
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X57945 models....1127
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models....1129
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models....1130
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models....1132
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models....1133
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (9 of 9)X57945 models....1135
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models....1136
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models....1138
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models....1140
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models....1142
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models....1144
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models....1145
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models....1147
Input devices....1148
Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder....1148
Covers, panels, and doors....1148

Covers, panels, and doors (550-sheet paper feeder) 1148
Internal parts and assemblies 1149
Internal parts and assemblies (550-sheet paper feeder) 1149
Output devices 1150
Output device - 3-bin staple stacker 1150
Covers, panels, and doors 1150
Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models 1150
Internal parts and assemblies 1151
Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models 1151
Numerical parts list 1169
Document feeder / scanner 1111
Integrated scanner assembly 1111
Base printer 1113
Control panels 1113
Control panels 1113
Covers, panels, and doors 1115
Parts and diagrams: Covers 5700/X557 models 1115
Parts and diagrams: Covers 5800 models 1117
Parts and diagrams: Covers X57945 models 1119
Internal parts and assemblies 1121
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models 1121
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models 1123
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models 1125
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X57945 models 1127
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models 1129
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models 1130
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models 1132
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models 1133
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (9 of 9)X57945 models 1135
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models 1136
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models 1138
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models 1140
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models 1142
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models 1144
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models 1145
Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models 1147
Input devices 1148
Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder 1148
Covers, panels, and doors 1148
Covers, panels, and doors (550-sheet paper feeder) 1148
Internal parts and assemblies 1149
Internal parts and assemblies (550-sheet paper feeder) 1149
Output devices 1150
Output device - 3-bin staple stacker 1150
Covers, panels, and doors 1150
Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models 1150
Internal parts and assemblies 1151

Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models 1151
Appendix A Glossary of terms 1184
Index 1194

1 Printer information, configurations, and specifications

Learn about printer configuration and specifications.

Document feeder / scanner

Learn about the printer document feeder and scanner configuration and specifications.

NOTE: This section is for MFP printers only.

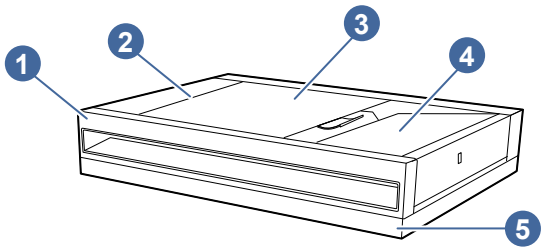
Information (document feeder and scanner)

Learn about the document feeder and scanner.

Document feeder and scanner front view

Learn about the document feeder and scanner components.

Figure 1-1 **Document feeder and scanner front view**



Item	Description
1	Document feeder
2	Output bin
3	Jam access
4	Input tray
5	Flatbed scanner

Technical specifications

Learn about the document feeder and scanner specifications.

Review the technical specifications for the document feeder and scanner.

See http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP for current information.

Table 1-1 Copy and scan specifications (document feeder and scanner)

Copy and scan features	5800dn	5800f	5800zf	5800 Configurable	X57945dn	X57945z	X579 Configurable
ADF copy/scan speed 100 images-per-minute (ipm) single-sided, and 50 ipm double-sided	✓	✓	Not available	Available option	✓	Not available	Available option
ADF copy/scan speed 120 ipm single-sided, and 60 ipm double-sided	Not available	Not available	✓	Available option	Not available	✓	Available option
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

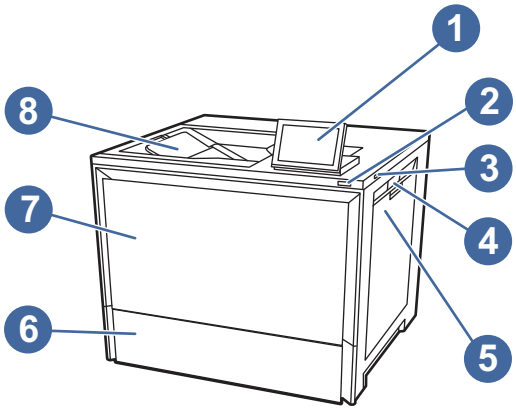
Information (base printer)

Learn about the base printer.

Printer front view (5700 models)

Identify the parts on the front of the printer (5700 models).

Figure 1-2 Printer front view (5700 models)



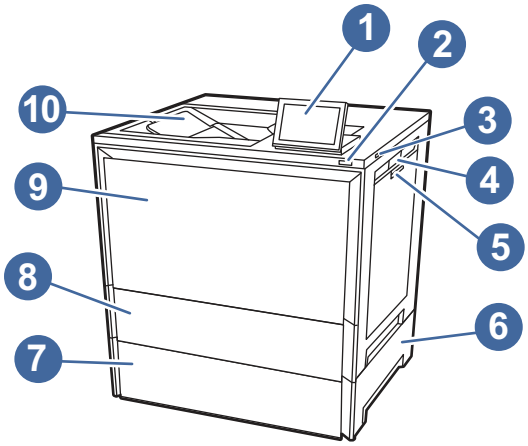
Item	Description
1	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
2	On/off button
3	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.

Item	Description
4	Right door, access for clearing jams
5	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) and right door (access for clearing jams)
6	Tray 2
7	Front door, for access to the toner cartridges
8	Output bin

Printer front view (X557 models)

Locate features on the front of the printer.

Figure 1-3 **Printer front view**

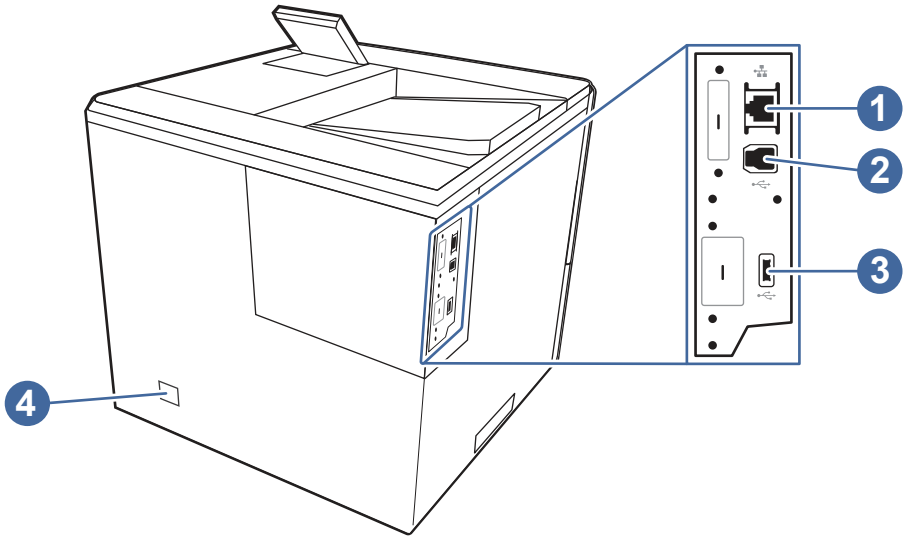


Item	Description
1	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
2	On/off button
3	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.
4	Right door, for access for clearing jams
5	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
6	Tray 2 jam access door
7	Tray 2
8	Toner cartridge access door
9	Front door, for access to the imaging drums and toner collection unit
10	Output bin

Printer back view (5700/X557 models)

Identify the parts on the back of the printer (SFP).

Figure 1-4 Printer rear view, 5700/X557 models

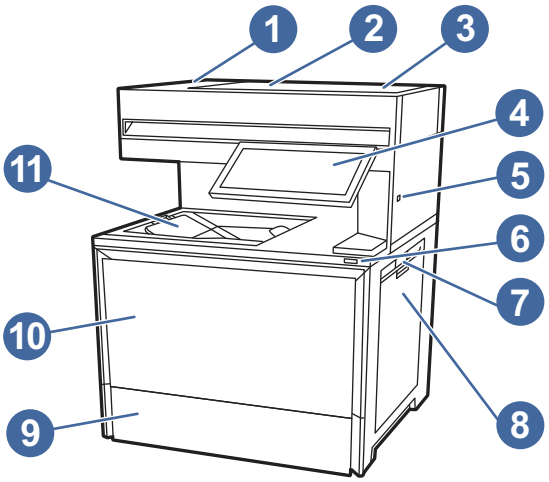


Item	Description
1	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet (RJ-45) network port
2	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 interface port
3	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 host port (for job storage and private printing) NOTE: This port should remain covered when not in use.
4	Power connection

Printer front view (5800/X57945 models)

Identify the parts on the front of the printer (MFP).

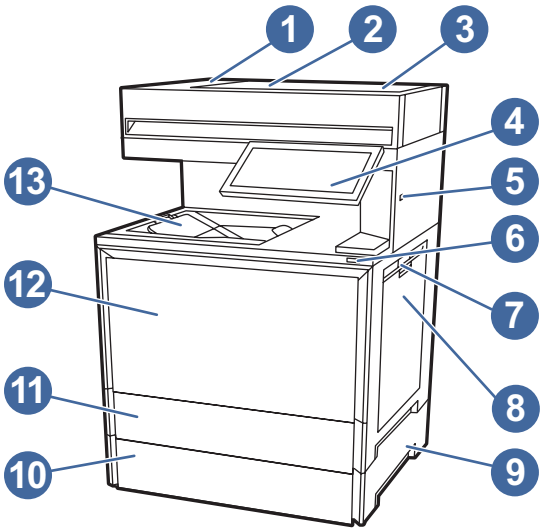
Figure 1-5 Printer front view, 5800 models



Item	Description
1	Automatic document feeder output tray
2	Automatic document feeder cover, for access for clearing jams

Item	Description
3	Automatic document feeder input tray
4	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
5	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.
6	On/off button
7	Right door, for access for clearing jams
8	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
9	Tray 2
10	Front door, for access to the toner cartridges
11	Output bin

Figure 1-6 Printer front view, X57945 models



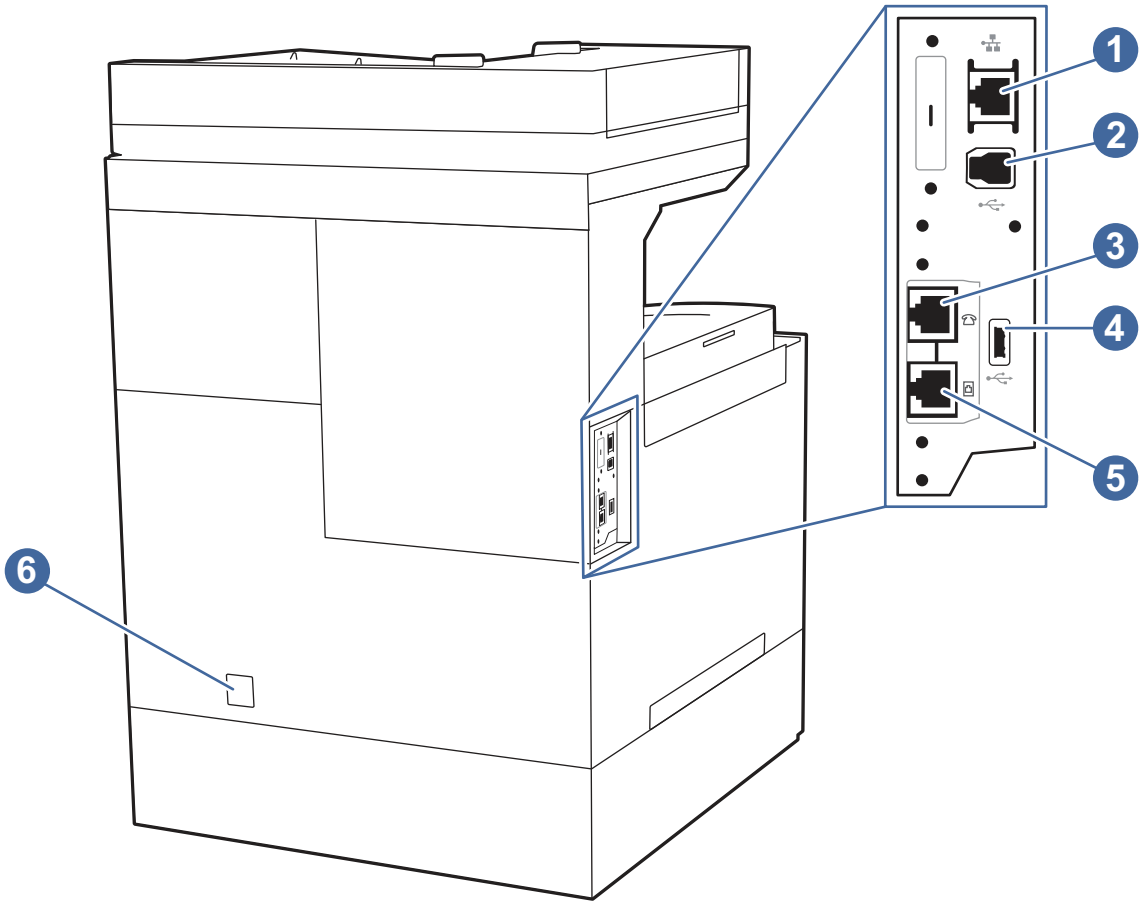
Item	Description
1	Automatic document feeder output tray
2	Automatic document feeder cover, for access for clearing jams
3	Automatic document feeder input tray
4	Control panel with color touchscreen display (tilts up for easier viewing)
5	Easy-access USB port Insert a USB flash drive for printing or scanning without a computer or to update the printer firmware. NOTE: An administrator must enable this port before use.
6	On/off button
7	Right door, for access for clearing jams
8	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

Item	Description
9	Tray 2 jam access door
10	Tray 2
11	Toner cartridge access door
12	Front door, for access to the imaging drums and toner collection unit
13	Output bin

Printer back view (5800/X57945 models)

Identify the parts on the back of the printer (MFP).

Figure 1-7 **Printer back view, 5800/X57945 models**



Item	Description
1	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet (RJ-45) network port
2	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 interface port
3	**Fax models only**: Telephone "line out" port (for attaching an extension phone, answering machine, or other device) NOTE: This port should remain covered when not in use.

Item	Description
4	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 host port (for job storage and private printing) NOTE: This port should remain covered when not in use.
5	**Fax models only**: Fax "line in" port (for attaching the fax phone line to the printer)
6	Power connection

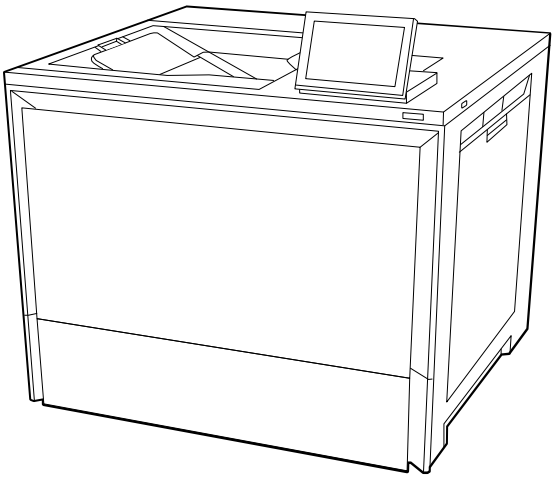
Configuration (base printer)

Learn about the base printer configurations.

Configuration (base printer SFP)

Learn about the base printer SFP configurations.

Figure 1-8 **HP Color LaserJet Enterprise 5700/X55745 printer**



HP Color LaserJet Enterprise 5700

- 45/43 pages per minute (letter/A4)
- FutureSmart 5 firmware
- Trusted platform module 2.0 (security)
- HP Web JetAdmin
- Automatic duplex printing
- 650-sheet standard capacity
- 2,300-sheet maximum capacity
- 109.2 mm (4.3 in) color non-touchscreen control panel
- 1.5 GB RAM memory
- 16 GB eMMC mass storage

- 550-sheet paper feeder (optional)

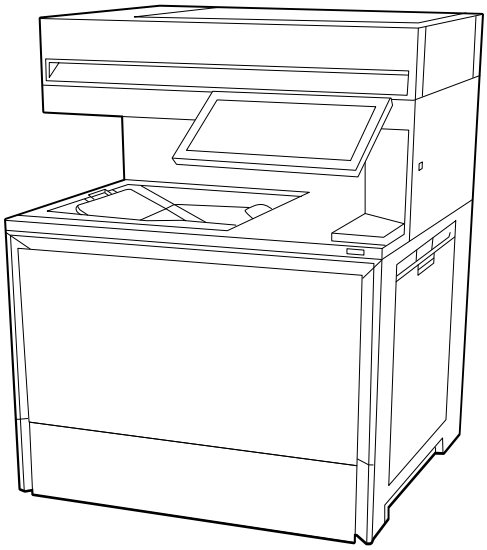
HP Color LaserJet Managed X55745

- Same features as the HP LaserJet Enterprise 5700
- Locking tray guides
- Smart device services (SDS) firmware features

Configuration (base printer MFP)

Learn about the base printer MFP configurations.

Figure 1-9 HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP 5800 printer

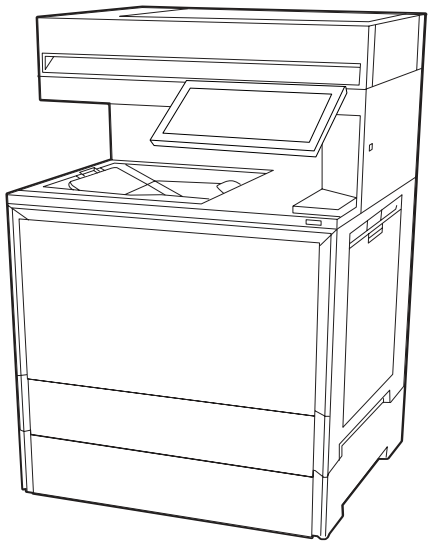


HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP 5800

- 45/43 pages per minute (letter/A4)
- FutureSmart 5 firmware
- Trusted platform module 2.0 (security)
- HP Web JetAdmin
- Automatic duplex printing
- 100-sheet document feeder (duplex scanning)
- Single pass double-sided scan/copy
- Fax (optional on 5800dn models; standard on 5800f and 5800zf models)
- 650-sheet standard capacity
- 2,300-sheet maximum capacity
- **5800dn/5800f**: 203 mm (8 in) color touchscreen control panel
- **5800zf**: 256.5 mm (10.1 in) color touchscreen control panel

- 6 GB RAM memory
- 32 GB eMMC mass storage

Figure 1-10 **HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP X57945**



HP Color LaserJet Managed MFP X57945

- Same features as the HP Color LaserJet Enterprise MFP 5800
- **X57945dn**: 203 mm (8 in) color touchscreen control panel
- **X57945z**: 256.5 mm (10.1 in) color touchscreen control panel
- Fax is optional on all X57945 models
- Locking tray guides
- Smart device services (SDS) firmware features

Specifications (base printer)

Learn about the base printer specifications.

Technical specifications (5700)

Review the technical specifications for the printer.

See http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- 5700dn - #6QN28A
- 5700 Configurable (can be custom-configured when ordered)

Table 1-2 Paper handling specifications

Paper handling features	5700dn	5700 Configurable
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓
Optional 550-sheet accessory tray	Optional	Available option
Printer stand	Optional	Available option
Printer stand with storage compartment	Optional	Available option
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓

Table 1-3 Connectivity specifications

Connectivity features	5700dn	5700 Configurable
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓
Dual-band Wireless	Optional	Available option
Wifi-Direct and BLE	Optional	Available option
SuperSpeed USB 3.0 rear ports and Hi-Speed USB 2.0 front port for walk-up USB printing	✓	✓
Hardware integration pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓

Table 1-4 Print specifications

Print features	5700dn	5700 Configurable
Prints 43 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 45 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓
Job storage and private printing	✓	✓

Table 1-5 Other specifications

Other features	5700dn	5700 Configurable
1.5 GB base memory, expandable to 3.5 GB	✓	✓
16 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	✓	Available option
32 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	Not available	Available option
256 GB Solid-state drive	Optional	Available option
512 GB FIPS Hard Disk Drive	Optional	Available option
512 GB Hard Disk Drive	Optional	Available option
Color touchscreen control panel	✓	✓
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	✓	✓

Technical specifications (X55745)

Review the technical specifications for the X55745 printer.

See http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- X55745dn - #6QP97A
- X557 Configurable (can be custom-configured when ordered)

Table 1-6 Paper handling specifications

Paper handling features	X55745dn	X557 Configurable
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓
Optional 550-sheet accessory tray	Optional	Available option
Printer stand	Optional	Available option
Printer stand with storage compartment	Optional	Available option
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓

Table 1-7 Connectivity specifications

Connectivity features	X55745dn	X557 Configurable
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓
Dual-band Wireless	Optional	Available option
Wifi-Direct and BLE	Optional	Available option
SuperSpeed USB 3.0 rear ports and Hi-Speed USB 2.0 front port for walk-up USB printing	✓	✓
Hardware integration pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓

Table 1-8 Print specifications

Print features	X55745dn	X557 Configurable
Prints 43 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 45 ppm on letter-size paper	✓	✓
Job storage and private printing	✓	✓

Table 1-9 Other specifications

Other features	X55745dn	X557 Configurable
1.5 GB base memory, expandable to 3.5 GB	✓	✓

Table 1-9 Other specifications (continued)

Other features	X55745dn	X557 Configurable
16 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	✓	Available option
32 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	Not available	Available option
256 GB Solid-state drive	Optional	Available option
512 GB FIPS Hard Disk Drive	Optional	Available option
512 GB Hard Disk Drive	Optional	Available option
Color touchscreen control panel	✓	✓
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	✓	✓
Custom color printer skins	Not available	Available option

Technical specifications (5800)

Review the technical specifications for the 5800 printer.

See http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- 5800dn - #6QN29A
- 5800f - #6QN30A
- 5800zf - #58R10A
- 5800 Configurable (can be custom-configured when ordered)

Table 1-10 Paper handling specifications

Paper handling features	5800dn	5800f	5800zf	5800 Configurable
Tray 1 (50-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tray 2 (250-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Optional 550-sheet accessory tray	Optional	Optional	Optional	Available option
Printer stand	Optional	Optional	Optional	Available option
Printer stand with storage compartment	Optional	Optional	Optional	Available option
Convenience stapler	Not available	✓	✓	Available option
3-bin Stapler/stacker	Not available	Not available	Not available	Available option
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓	✓	Available option

Table 1-11 Connectivity specifications

Connectivity features	5800dn	5800f	5800zf	5800 Configurable
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓	✓	✓
Dual-band wireless	Optional	Optional	Optional	Available option
Wifi-Direct and BLE	Optional	Optional	Optional	Available option
SuperSpeed USB 3.0 rear ports and Hi-Speed USB 2.0 front port for walk-up USB printing	✓	✓	✓	✓
Hardware integration pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-12 Print specifications

Print features	5800dn	5800f	5800zf	5800 Configurable
Prints up to 43 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 45 ppm on letter-sized paper	✓	✓	✓	✓
Job storage and private printing	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-13 Copy and scan specifications

Copy and scan features	5800dn	5800f	5800zf	5800 Configurable
ADF copy/scan speed 100 images-per-minute (ipm) single-sided, and 50 ipm double-sided	✓	✓	Not included	Available option
ADF copy/scan speed 120 ipm single-sided, and 60 ipm double-sided	Not included	Not included	✓	Available option
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	✓	✓	✓	✓
Scan to E-mail, Scan to USB, and Scan to Network Folder options	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-14 Other specifications

Other features	5800dn	5800f	5800zf	5800 Configurable
6 GB base memory	✓	✓	✓	✓
32 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	✓	✓	Not included	Available option
500 GB hard disk drive	Optional	Optional	✓	Available option
256 GB solid-state drive	Optional	Optional	Optional	Available option
512 GB FIPS hard disk drive	Optional	Optional	Optional	Available option
Small color touchscreen control panel	✓	✓	Not included	Available option

Table 1-14 Other specifications (continued)

Other features	5800dn	5800f	5800zf	5800 Configurable
Large color touchscreen control panel	Not included	Not included	✓	Available option
Fax features	Optional	✓	✓	Available option
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	✓	✓	✓	✓

Technical specifications (X57945)

Review the technical specifications for the X57945 printer.

See http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP for current information.

Product numbers for each model

- X57945dn - #6QP98A
- X57945z - #6QP99A
- X579 Configurable (can be custom-configured when ordered)

Table 1-15 Paper handling specifications

Paper handling features	X57945dn	X57945z	X579 Configurable
Tray 1 (100-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓
Tray 2 (550-sheet capacity)	✓	✓	✓
Optional 550-sheet accessory tray	Optional	Optional	Available option
Printer stand	Optional	Optional	Available option
Printer stand with storage compartment	Optional	Optional	Available option
Convenience stapler	Not available	✓	Available option
3-bin Stapler/stacker	Not available	Not available	Available option
Automatic duplex printing	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-16 Connectivity specifications

Connectivity features	X57945dn	X57945z	X579 Configurable
10/100/1000 Ethernet LAN connection with IPv4 and IPv6	✓	✓	✓
Dual-band wireless	Optional	Optional	Available option
Wifi-Direct and BLE	Optional	Optional	Available option
SuperSpeed USB 3.0 rear ports and Hi-Speed USB 2.0 front port for walk-up USB printing	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-16 Connectivity specifications (continued)

Connectivity features	X57945dn	X57945z	X579 Configurable
Hardware integration pocket (HIP) for connecting accessory and third-party devices	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-17 Print specifications

Print features	X57945dn	X57945z	X579 Configurable
Prints up to 43 pages per minute (ppm) on A4 and 45 ppm on letter-sized paper	✓	✓	✓
Job storage and private printing	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-18 Copy and scan specifications

Copy and scan features	X57945dn	X57945z	X579 Configurable
ADF copy/scan speed 100 images-per-minute (ipm) single-sided, and 50 ipm double-sided	✓	Not included	Available option
ADF copy/scan speed 120 ipm single-sided, and 60 ipm double-sided	Not included	✓	Available option
100-page document feeder with dual-head scanning for single-pass duplex copying and scanning	✓	✓	✓
Scan to E-mail, Scan to USB, and Scan to Network Folder options	✓	✓	✓

Table 1-19 Other specifications

Other features	X57945dn	X57945z	X579 Configurable
6 GB base memory	✓	✓	✓
32 GB embedded Multi-Media Controller (eMMC)	✓	Not included	Available option
500 GB Hard Disk Drive	Optional	✓	Available option
256 GB Solid-state drive	Optional	Optional	Available option
512 GB FIPS Hard Disk Drive	Optional	Optional	Available option
Small color touchscreen control panel	✓	Not included	Available option
Large color touchscreen control panel	Not included	✓	Available option
Fax features	Optional	Optional	Available option
HP Trusted Platform Module for encrypting all data that passes through the printer	✓	✓	✓
Custom color printer skins	Not available	Not available	Available option

Printer dimensions (5700/X557 models)

Make sure your printer environment is large enough to accommodate the printer.

Figure 1-11 Printer dimensions, 5700/X557 models

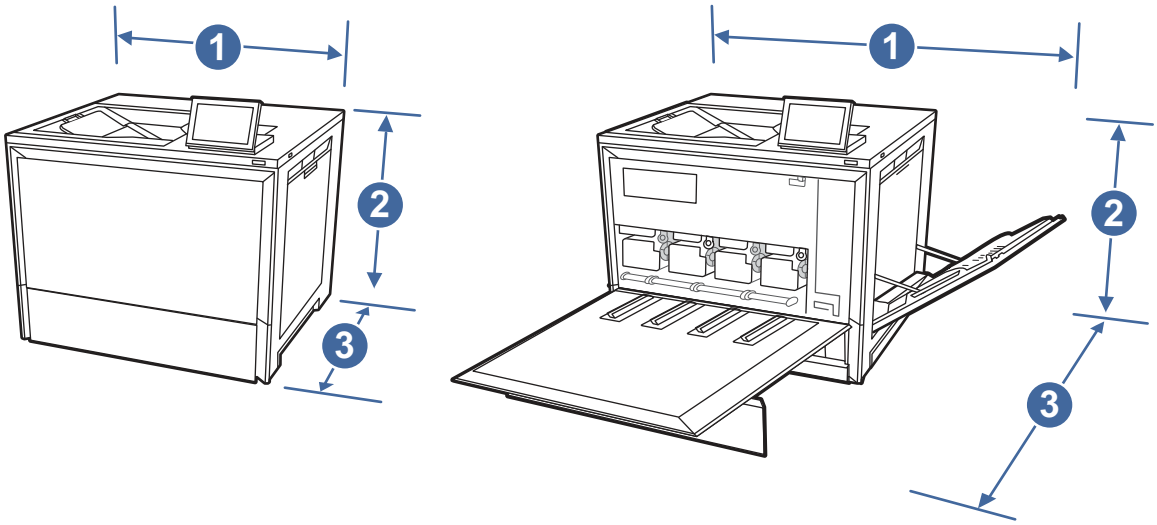


Table 1-20 Dimensions for the printer

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Width	500 mm (19.7 in)	885 mm (34.8 in)
2. Height	415 mm (16.3 in)	470 mm (18.5 in)
3. Depth	460 mm (18.1 in)	770 mm (30.3 in)
Weight (with cartridges)	28.6 kg (63 lb)	28.6 kg (63 lb)

Printer dimensions

Make sure your printer environment is large enough to accommodate the printer.

Figure 1-12 Printer dimensions (5800dn model)

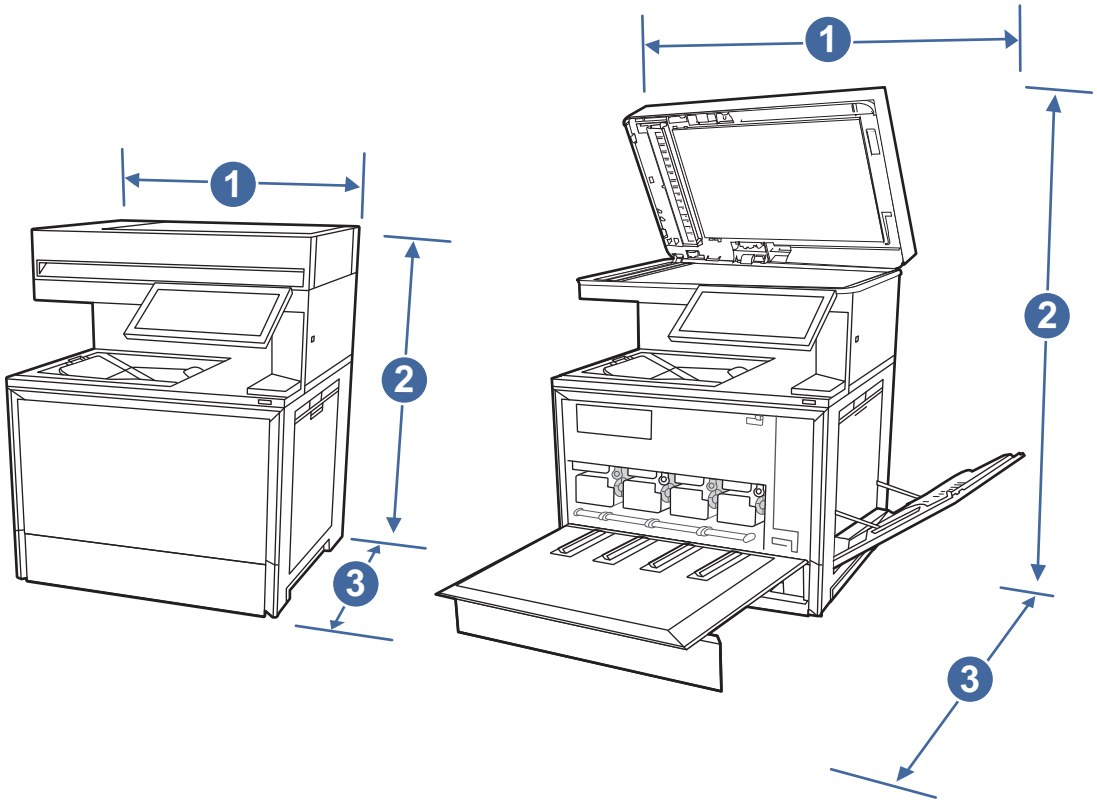


Table 1-21 Dimensions for the printer (5800dn model)

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Width	500 mm (19.7 in)	885 mm (34.8 in)
2. Height	583 mm (23 in)	828 mm (31.9 in)
3. Depth	460 mm (18.1 in)	810 mm (31.9 in)
Weight (with cartridges)	39 kg (86 lb)	39 kg (86 lb)

Figure 1-13 Printer dimensions (5800f and 5800zf models)

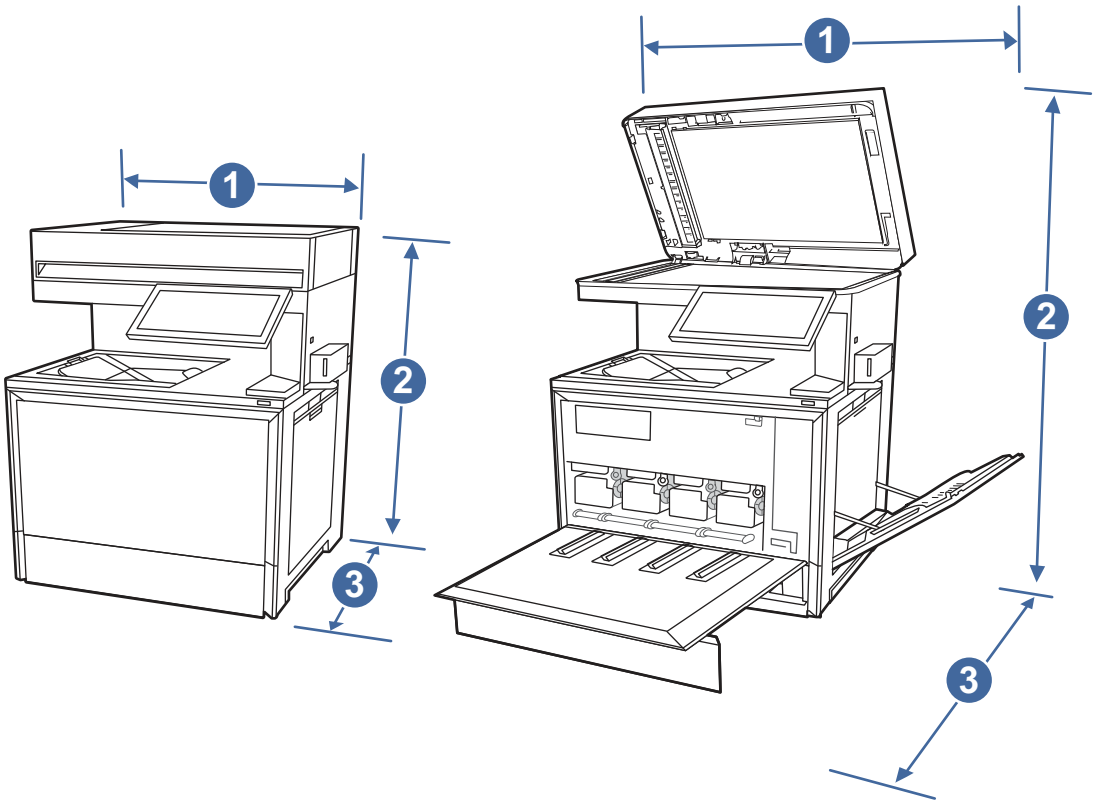


Table 1-22 Dimensions for the printer (5800f and 5800zf models)

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Width	547 mm (21.5 in)	885 mm (34.8 in)
2. Height	583 mm (23 in)	810 mm (31.9 in)
3. Depth	460 mm (18.1 in)	828 mm (32.6 in)
Weight (with cartridges)	f model: 38.9 kg (85.76 lb) zf model: 39.1 kg (86.2 lb)	f model: 38.9 kg (85.76 lb) zf model: 39.1 kg (86.2 lb)

Printer dimensions (X57945 models)

Make sure your printer environment is large enough to accommodate the printer.

Figure 1-14 Printer dimensions (X57945dn model)

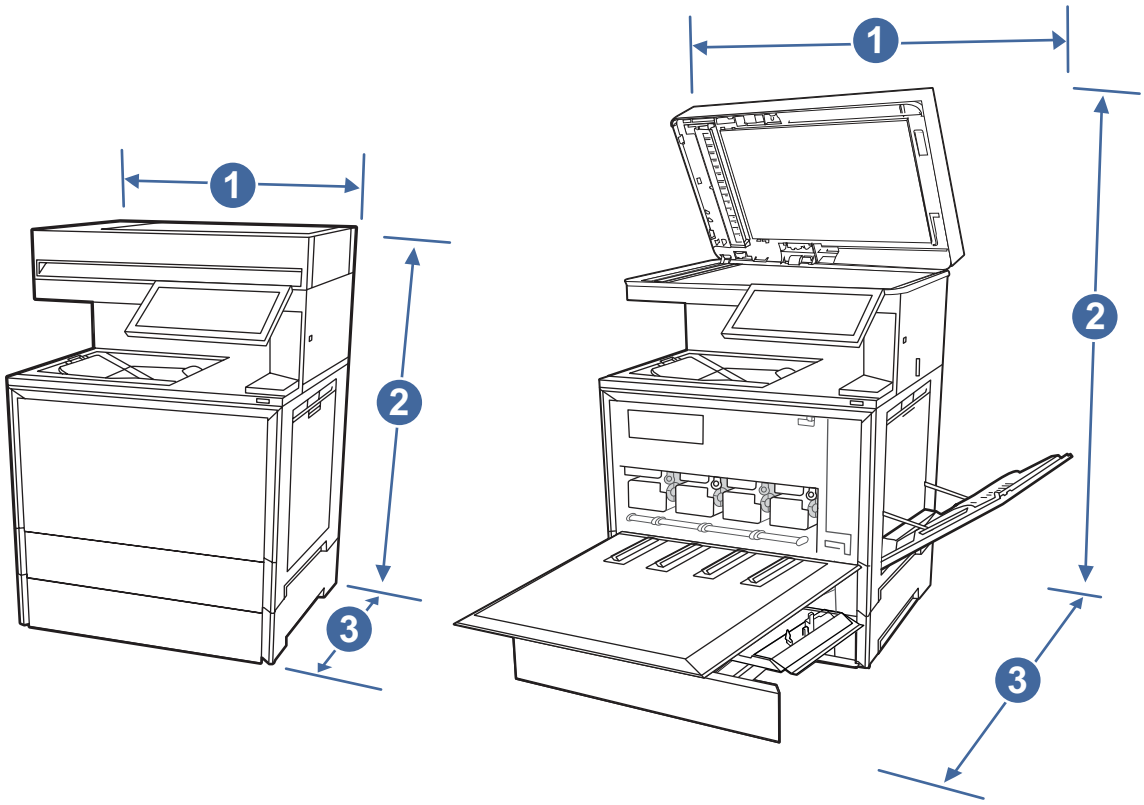


Table 1-23 Dimensions for the printer (X57945dn model)

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Width	500 mm (19.7 in)	885 mm (34.8 in)
2. Height	583 mm (23 in)	828 mm (32.6 in)
3. Depth	460 mm (18.1 in)	810 mm (31.9 in)
Weight (with cartridges)	46.3 kg (102 lb)	46.3 kg (102 lb)

Figure 1-15 Printer dimensions (X57945z model)

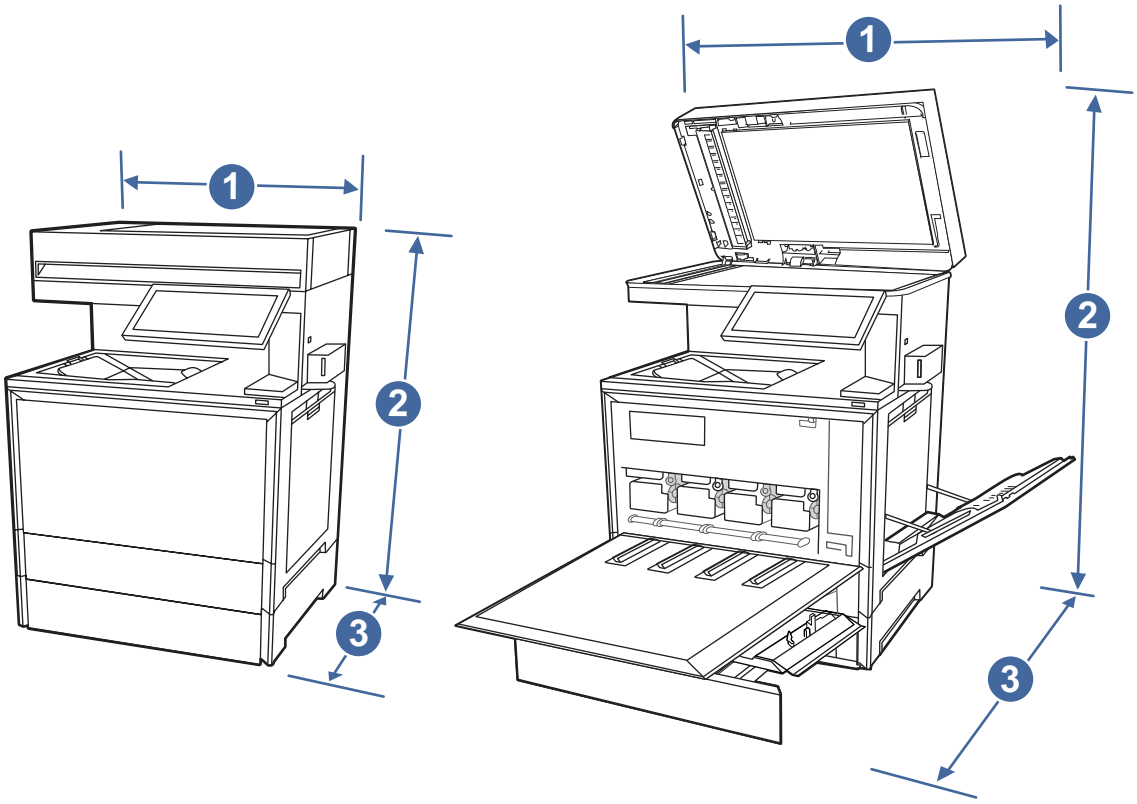


Table 1-24 Dimensions for the printer (X57945z model)

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Width	547 mm (21.5 in)	885 mm (34.8 in)
2. Height	703 mm (27.7 in)	948 mm (37.3 in)
3. Depth	460 mm (18.1 in)	810 mm (31.9 in)
Weight (with cartridges)	47.2 kg (104 lb)	47.2 kg (104 lb)

Figure 1-16 Printer dimensions (X57945zs model)

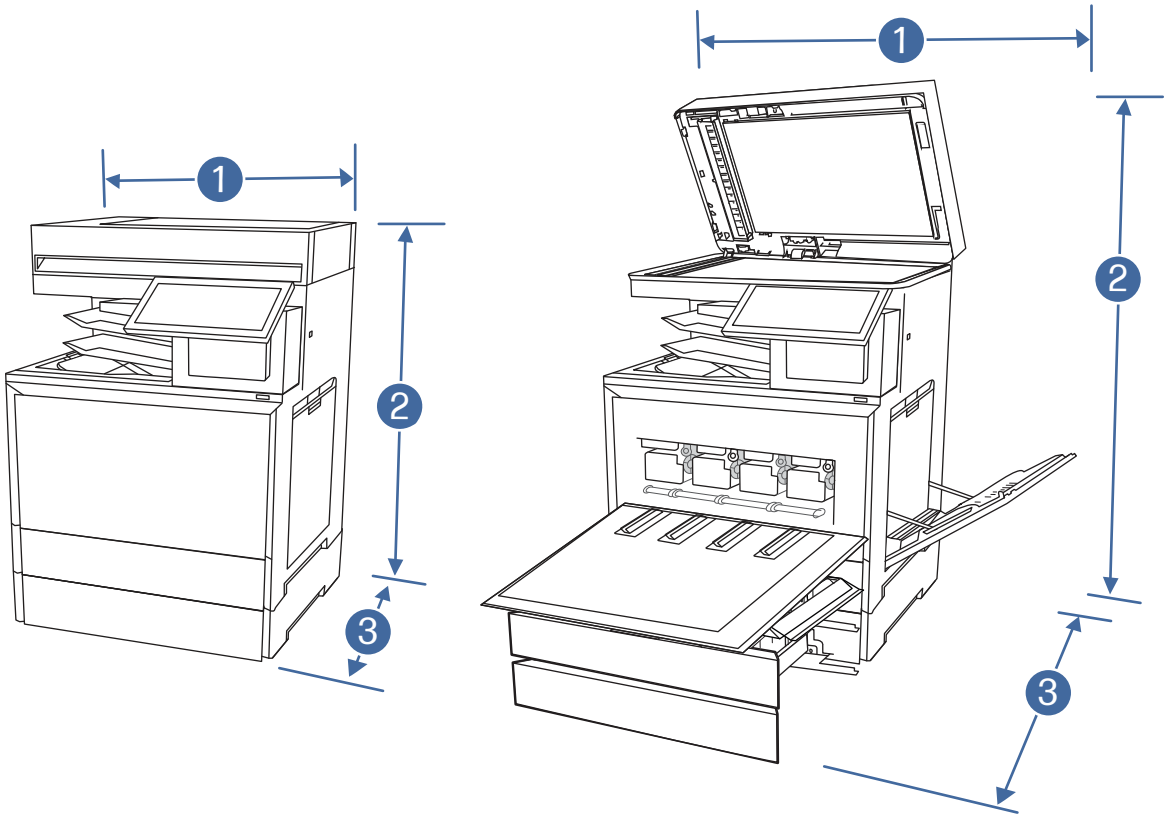


Table 1-25 Dimensions for the printer (X57945zs model)

Measurement	Printer fully closed	Printer fully opened
1. Width	500 mm (19.7 in)	885 mm (34.8 in)
2. Height	894 mm (35.2 in)	1139 mm (44.8 in)
3. Depth	476 mm (18.7 in)	726 mm (32.5 in)
Weight (with cartridges)	60.1 kg (132.5 lb)	60.1 kg (132.5 lb)

Printer space requirements

Learn about the printer space requirements

HP recommends that 30 mm ((1.81 in)) be added to the printer dimensions to make sure there is sufficient space to open doors and covers, and to provide proper ventilation. See the printer dimensions sections in this manual.

Power consumption, electrical specifications, and acoustic emissions

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain power specifications.

See http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP for current information.

⚠ CAUTION: Power requirements are based on the country/region where the printer is sold. Do not convert operating voltages. This will damage the printer and void the printer warranty.

Operating-environment range

In order to operate properly, the printer must be in an environment that meets certain specifications.

Table 1-26 Operating-environment specifications

Environment	Recommended	Storage
Temperature	15° to 27°C (59° to 80.6°F)	10° to 32.5°C (50° to 90.5°F)
Relative humidity	30% to 70% relative humidity (RH)	10% to 80% RH

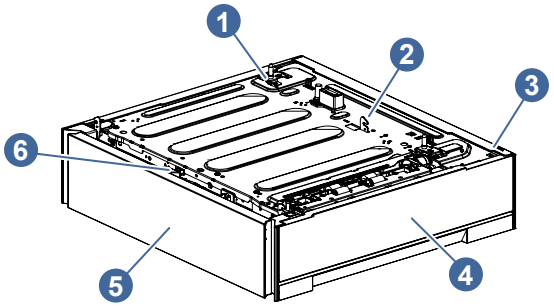
Information (input devices)

Learn about the printer input devices.

550-sheet paper feeder front view

Identify the parts on the 550-sheet paper feeder.

Figure 1-17 550-sheet paper feeder front view



Number	Description
1	Connector
2	Lock
3	Right door (for access to tray rollers and jams)
4	Tray cassette
5	Left cover
6	Lock lever

Technical specifications

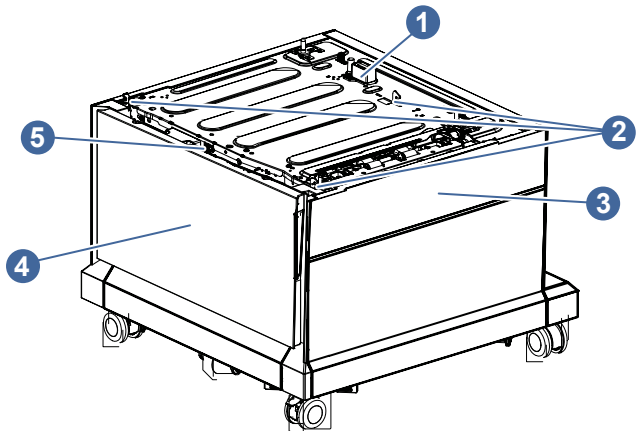
Table 1-27 550-sheet paper feeder technical specifications

Feature	Specification
Media types	Plain paper, recycled paper, heavy paper, bond paper, glossy paper, label, and index card
Media sizes	Standard: A5-R, B5, A4, Letter, and Legal Custom minimum: 101.6 mm (4 in) (W) x 148 mm (5.8 in) (L) Custom maximum: 215.9 mm (8.5 in) (W) x 355.6 mm (14 in) (L)
Media weights	Non-glossy paper: 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) to 163 g/m^2 (43 lb) Glossy paper: 120 g/m^2 (32 lb) to 200 g/m^2 (53 lb)
Capacity	55 mm (2.2 in) stack (approximately 550 sheets of 75g/m^2 (20 lb) paper)
Dimensions	Width: 500 mm (19.7 in) Depth: 460 mm (18.1 in) Height: 120 mm (4.7 in)
Weight	Approximately 6.1 kg (13.42 lb)
Power requirements	DC24V, DC3.3V (supplied from the printer engine)

High capacity input (HCI) paper feeder front view

Identify the parts on the HCI paper feeder.

Figure 1-18 HCI paper feeder front view



Number	Description
1	Connector
2	Lock
3	Right door
4	HCI cassette
5	Lock lever

Technical specifications

Table 1-28 HCI paper feeder technical specifications

Feature	Specification
Media types	Plain paper, recycled paper, heavy paper, and bond paper
Media sizes	A4, Letter, and Legal
Media weights	60 g/m^2 (16 lb) to 163 g/m^2 (43 lb)
Capacity	210 mm (8.3 in) stack (approximately 2,100 sheets of 75g/m^2 (20 lb) paper)
Dimensions	Width: 520 mm (20.5 in) Depth: 520 mm (20.5 in) Height: 364 mm (14.3 in)
Weight	Approximately 21.1 kg (46.7 lb)
Power requirements	DC24V, DC3.3V (supplied from the printer engine)

Information (output devices)

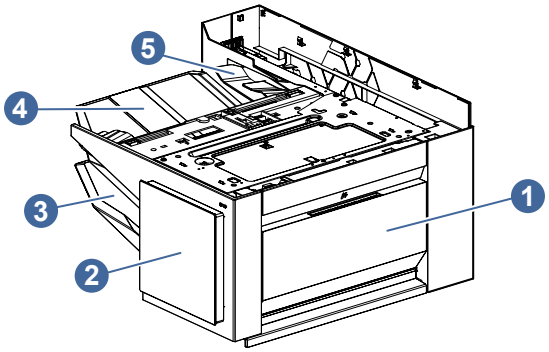
Learn about the printer output devices.

3-bin stapler-stacker front view

Identify the parts on the 3-bin stapler-stacker output device.

NOTE: This section is for MFP printers only.

Figure 1-19 3-bin stapler-stacker front view



Number	Description
1	Stapler-stacker door
2	Staple door
3	Output bin 2
4	Output bin 1
5	Jogger guide

Technical specifications

Table 1-29 3-bin stapler-stacker technical specifications

Feature	Specification
Media types	Plain paper, recycled paper, heavy paper, bond paper, and glossy paper
Media sizes, output bin 1	Stack mode: 148 mm (5.8 in) (W) x 210 mm (8.3 in) (L) to 216 mm (8.5 in) (W) x 355 mm (14 in) (L) Staple mode/job offset mode: A4, Letter, and Legal
Media sizes, output bin 2	Stack mode: 148 mm (5.8 in) (W) x 210 mm (8.3 in) (L) to 216 mm (8.5 in) (W) x 355 mm (14 in) (L)
Media weights, output bin 1	Stack mode/job offset mode, non-glossy paper: 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) to 163 g/m^2 (43 lb) Stack mode/job offset mode, glossy paper: 120 g/m^2 (32 lb) to 200 g/m^2 (53 lb) Staple mode, non-glossy paper: 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) to 120 g/m^2 (32 lb) Staple mode, glossy paper: 120 g/m^2 (32 lb)
Media weights, output bin 2	Stack mode, non-glossy paper: 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) to 163 g/m^2 (43 lb) Stack mode, glossy paper: 120 g/m^2 (32 lb) to 200 g/m^2 (53 lb)
Capacity, output bin 1	Stack mode/job offset mode: 48 mm (1.9 in) stack (approximately 400 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) paper) Staple mode: 48 mm (1.9 in) stack (approximately 6 sets of 50 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) paper)
Capacity, output bin 2	Stack mode: 19 mm (0.75 in) stack (approximately 100 sheets of 75 g/m^2 (20 lb) paper)
Capacity, staple cartridge	5,000 staples/cartridge
Capacity, stapler	Up to 50 sheets (60 g/m^2 (16 lb) to 120 g/m^2 (32 lb) paper)
Convenience stapler	Up to 20 sheets of 75 g/m^2
Stapling position	Upper left corner at one point
Dimensions	Width: 510 mm (20.1 in) Depth: 475 mm (18.7 in) Height: 280 mm (11 in)
Weight	Approximately 8.7 kg (19.2 lb)
Power requirements	DC24V, DC3.3V (supplied from the printer engine)

2 Printer installation and maintenance

Learn about printer installation and maintenance.

Document feeder / scanner

Learn about the printer document feeder and scanner installation and maintenance.

Clean the pickup rollers and separation pad in the document feeder (MFP)

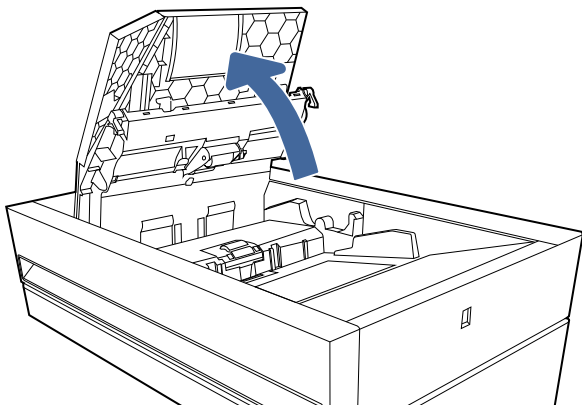
Learn about cleaning the document feeder rollers and pads.

Over time, specks of debris might collect on the document feeder rollers and pads which can affect performance.

NOTE: The figures in this topic show a typical MFP printer. However, the procedure is correct for all MFP printers.

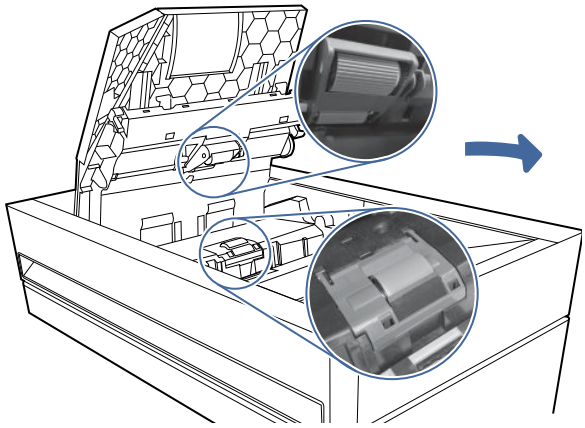
1. . Open the document-feeder cover.

Figure 2-1 **Open the document-feeder cover**



2. . Remove any visible lint or dust from each of the feed rollers and the separation pad using compressed air or a clean lint-free cloth moistened with warm water. Carefully rotate the roller as you clean it.

Figure 2-2 **Clean the document feeder rollers**



3. . Close the document-feeder cover.

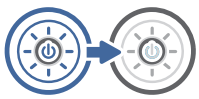
Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges

Learn about solving copy-quality debris problems.

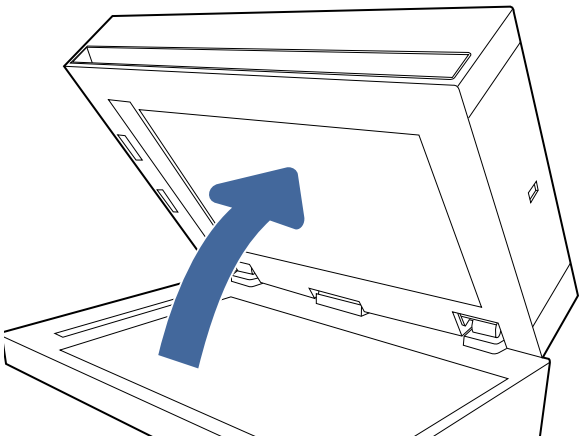
Over time, specks of debris might collect on the scanner glass and document feeder white plastic backing, which might cause print defects. Use the following procedure to clean the scanner if the printed pages have streaks, unwanted lines, black dots, poor print quality, or unclear text.

View a video of cleaning the document feeder glass and flatbed glass.

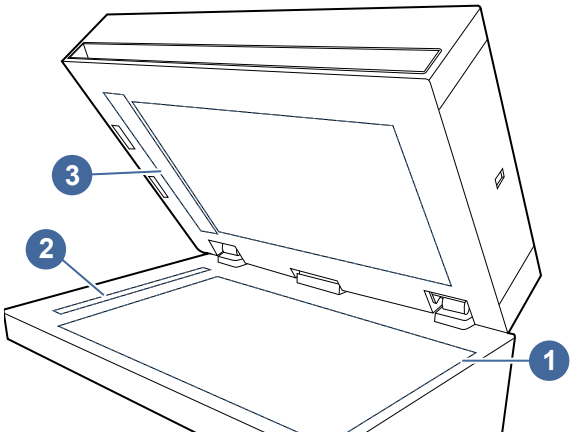
1. Press the power button to turn the printer off, and then disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.



2. Open the scanner lid.



3. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) and the document feeder strips (callout 2, callout 3) with a soft cloth or sponge that has been moistened with nonabrasive glass cleaner.

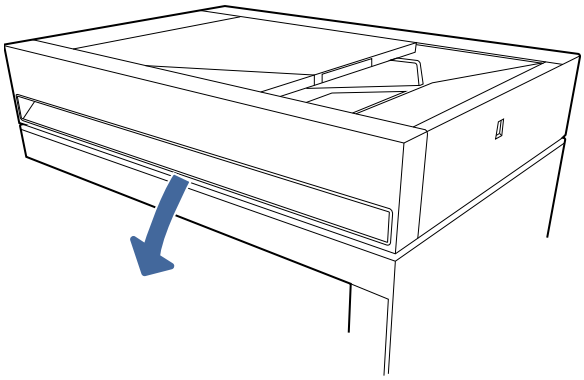


⚠ CAUTION: Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ammonia, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on any part of the printer; these can damage the printer. Do not place liquids directly on the glass or platen. They might seep and damage the printer.

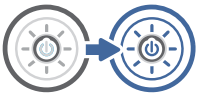
NOTE: If you are having trouble with streaks on copies when you are using the document feeder, be sure to clean the small strips of glass on the left side of the scanner (callout 2, callout 3).

4. Dry the glass and white plastic parts with a chamois or a cellulose sponge to prevent spotting.
5. Close the scanner lid.

Figure 2-3 **Close the scanner lid**



6. Connect the power cable to an outlet, and then press the power button to turn the printer on.



Base printer

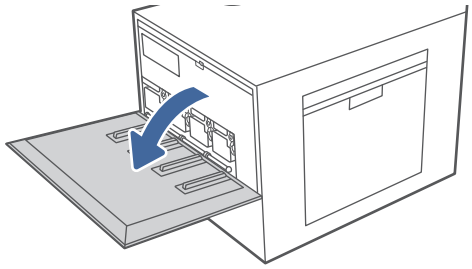
Learn about the base printer installation and maintenance.

Remove and replace the toner cartridges (5700/X557/5800 models)

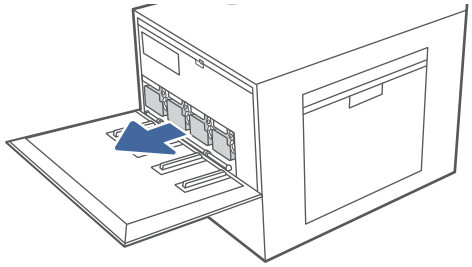
Follow these steps to replace the toner cartridge.

View a video of how to replace the toner cartridges

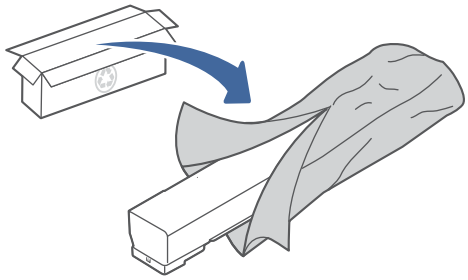
1. Open the front door.



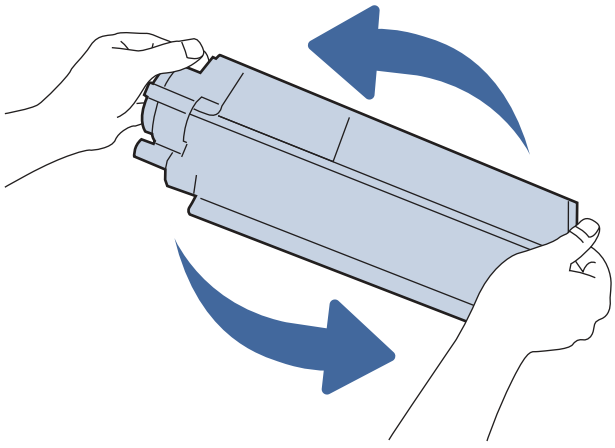
2. Grasp the end of the toner cartridge and pull it straight out of the printer.



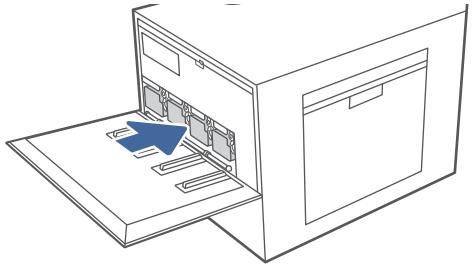
3. Remove the new toner cartridge from its package. Save all packaging for recycling the used toner cartridge.



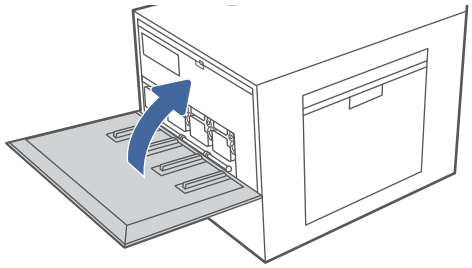
4. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it back and forth end to end to evenly distribute the toner that is inside.



5. . Align the toner cartridge with its slot and insert it into the printer.



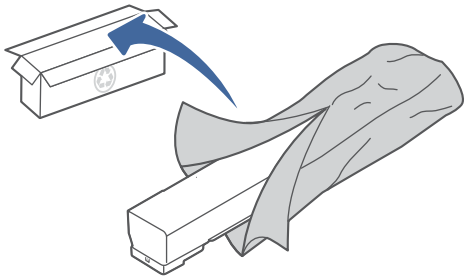
6. . Close the front door.



7. . Pack the used toner cartridge into the box that the new toner cartridge came in. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

   In the U.S. and Canada, a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

   Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used cartridge to HP for recycling.

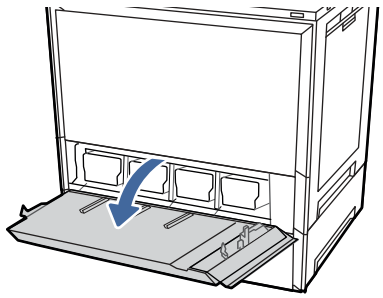


Remove and replace the toner cartridges (X57945 models)

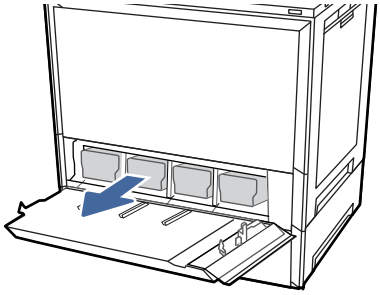
Follow these steps to replace the toner cartridge.

View a video of how to replace the toner cartridges

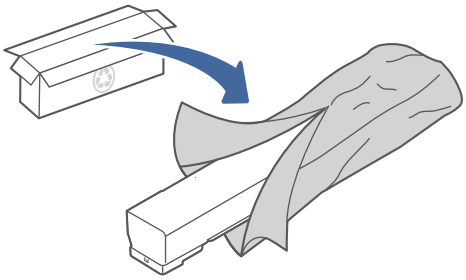
1. . Release the toner cartridge by following the instructions on the control panel.
2. . Open the toner cartridge door on the front of the printer.



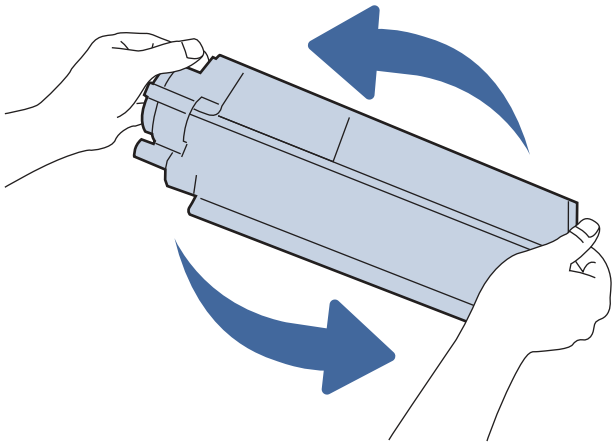
3. Grasp the end of the toner cartridge and pull it straight out of the printer.



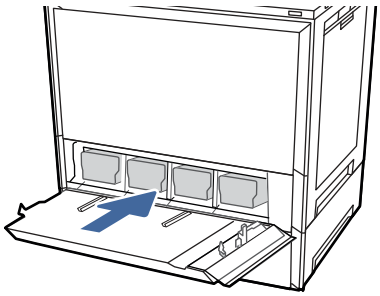
4. Remove the new toner cartridge from its package. Save all packaging for recycling the used toner cartridge.



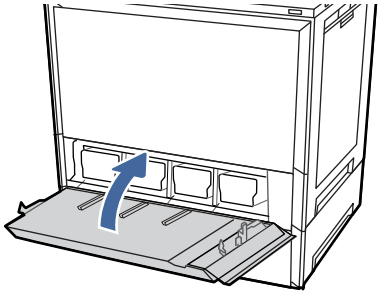
5. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it to evenly distribute the toner that is inside.



6. Align the toner cartridge with its slot and insert it into the printer.



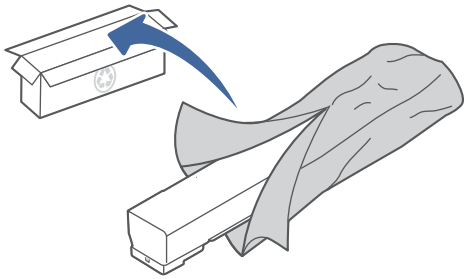
7. . Close the toner cartridge door.



8. . Pack the used toner cartridge into the box that the new toner cartridge came in. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

   In the U.S. and Canada, a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

   Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used cartridge to HP for recycling.

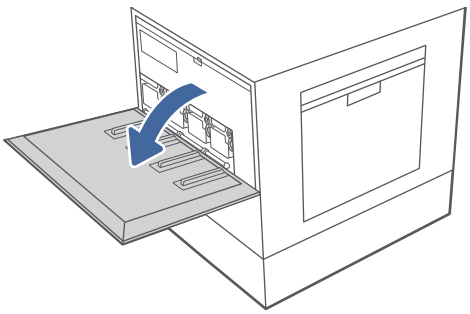


Remove and replace the imaging drums (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to replace the imaging drums.

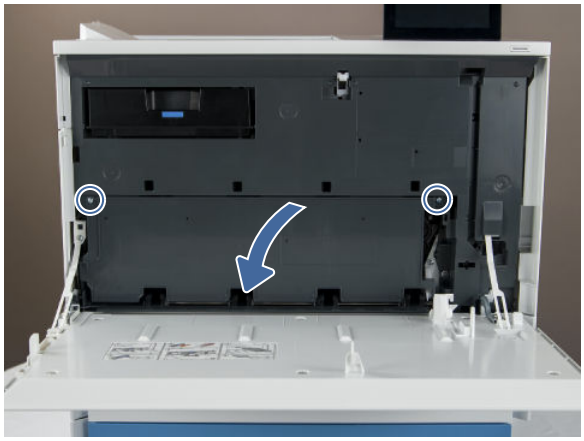
View a video of how to replace the imaging drums

1. . Open the front door.

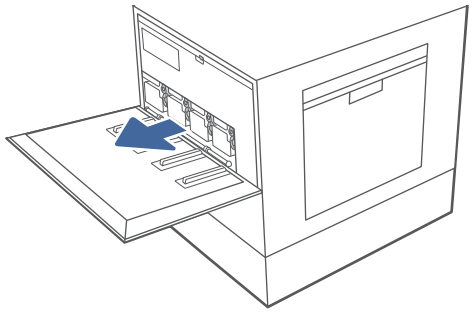


NOTE: If necessary, remove two screws holding the imaging drum access cover in place, and then lower the cover to access the imaging drums. See the figure below.

Figure 2-4 Remove two screws, open the cover

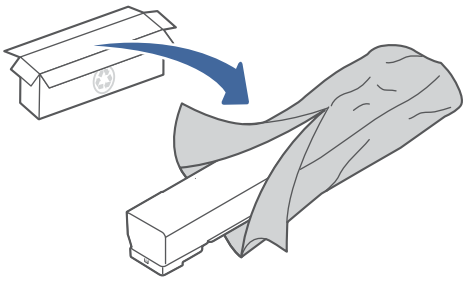


2. . Grasp the end of the imaging drum and pull it straight out of the printer.

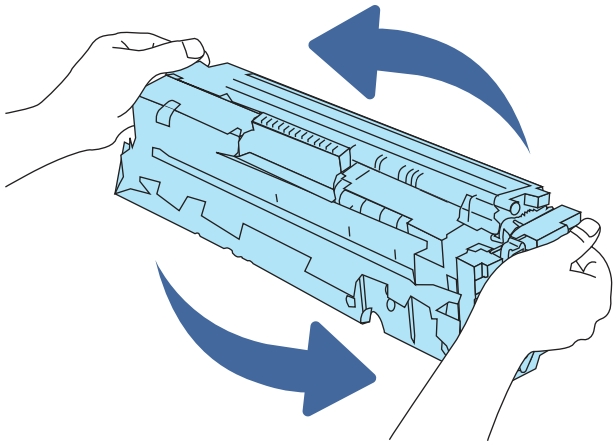


3. . Remove the new imaging drum from its package. Save all packaging for recycling the used imaging drum.

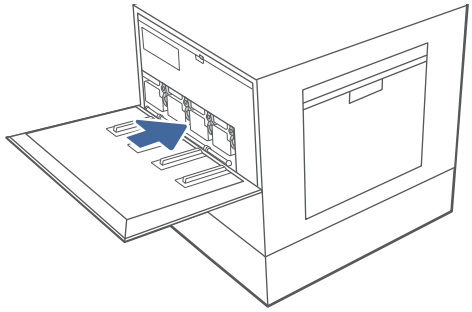
⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to the imaging drum, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the imaging drum if it must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time. Do not touch the blue imaging drum.



4. . Hold both ends of the imaging drum and rock it back and forth end to end to evenly distribute the toner that is inside.

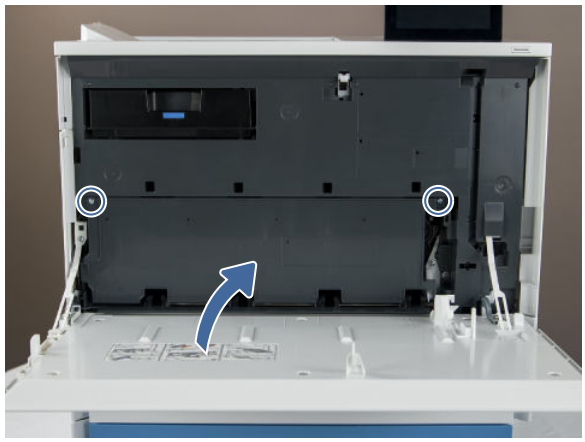


5. . Align the imaging drum with its slot and insert it into the printer.

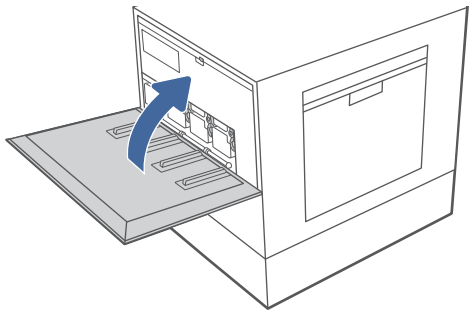


NOTE: If necessary, close the imaging drum access cover, and then install the two screws to secure the cover. See the figure below.

Figure 2-5 Close the cover, install two screws



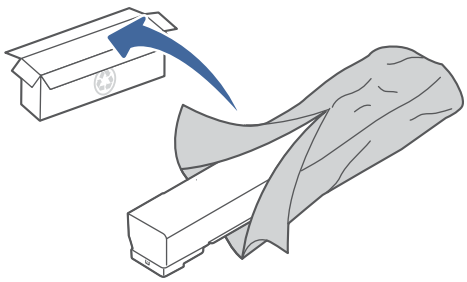
6. . Close the front door.



7. . Pack the used imaging drum into the box that the new imaging drum came in. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

   In the U.S. and Canada, a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

   Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used imaging drum to HP for recycling.

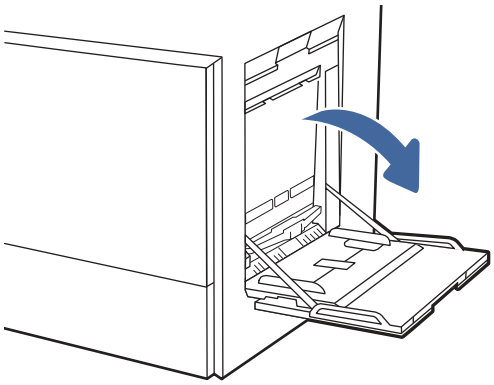


Clean the Tray 1 pickup and separation rollers

Learn about cleaning the Tray 1 pickup and separation rollers.

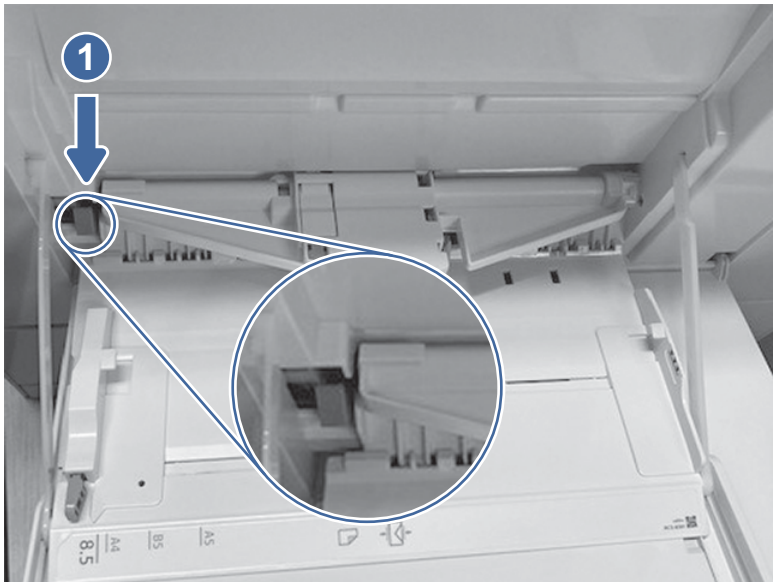
1. Open Tray 1.

Figure 2-6 Open Tray 1



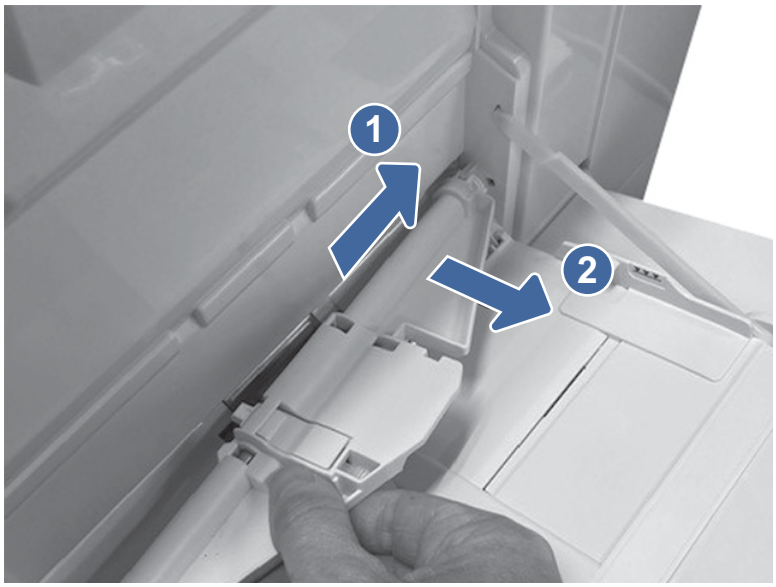
2. Locate and release the blue pickup roller assembly release tab (callout 1).

Figure 2-7 Locate the pickup roller assembly tab



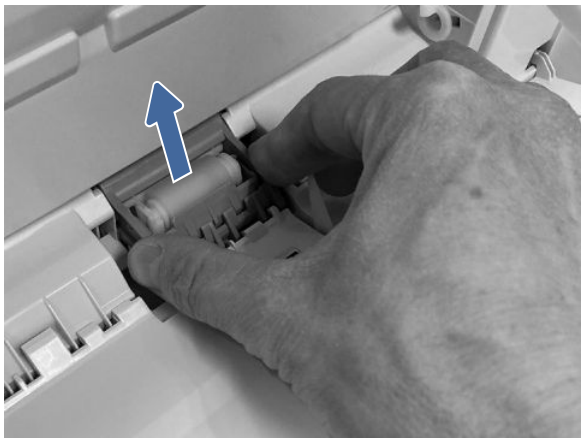
3. Push the pickup roller assembly to the right and then away from the printer.

Figure 2-8 Remove the pickup roller assembly



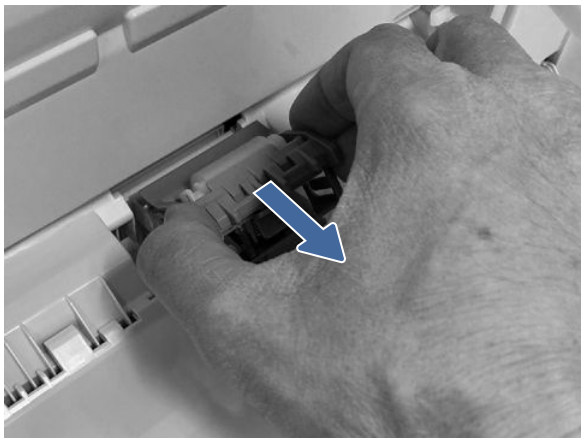
4. Grasp the left- and right-side of the separation roller assembly, and then lift the assembly up.

Figure 2-9 Lift the separation roller assembly



5. Pull the separation roller assembly straight out to remove it.

Figure 2-10 Remove the separation roller assembly

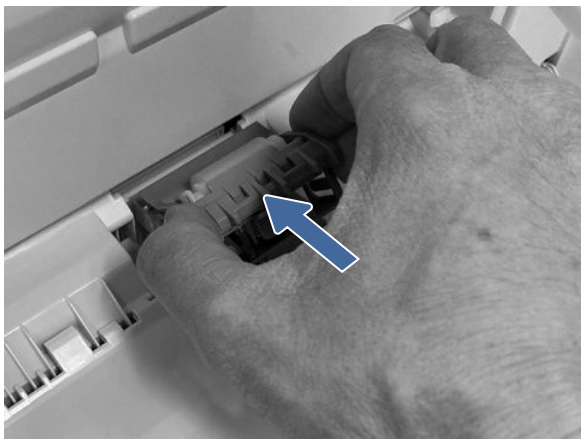


6. Clean the Tray 1 pickup and separation rollers. Use a damp, lint-free cloth to gently clean the rollers.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the spongy portion of the roller. Skin oils on the roller can cause paper-handling and print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves or thoroughly washing your hands before handling the assembly.

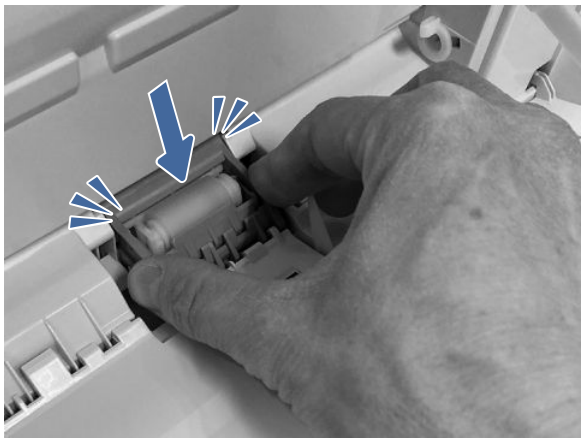
7. Insert the separation roller assembly into the printer.

Figure 2-11 Insert the separation roller assembly



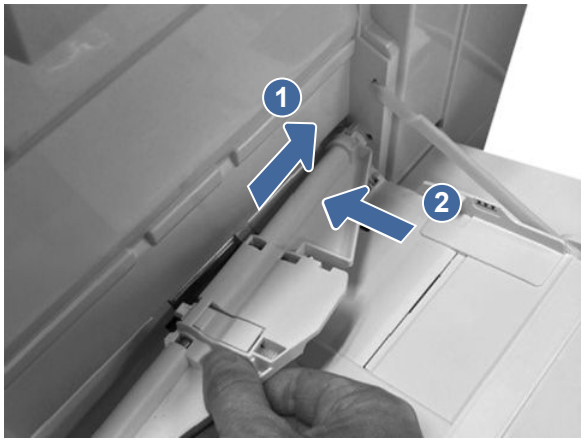
8. Push down on the Tray 1 separation roller until it snaps into place.

Figure 2-12 **Secure the separation roller assembly**



9. Insert the keyed right end of the pickup roller assembly into the provided slot, and then rotate the left end into place to install it.

Figure 2-13 **Install the pickup roller assembly**



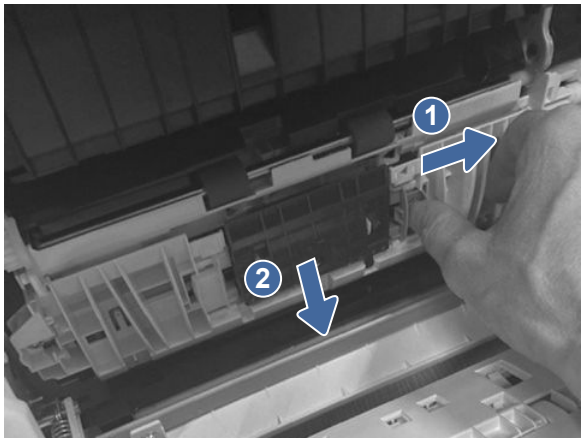
Clean the Tray 2 pickup and separation rollers

Learn about cleaning the Tray 2 rollers.

1. Depending on the printer model, perform one of the following steps.
   - 5700/X557/5800 models: Open the right door.
   - X57945 models: Open the lower right door.

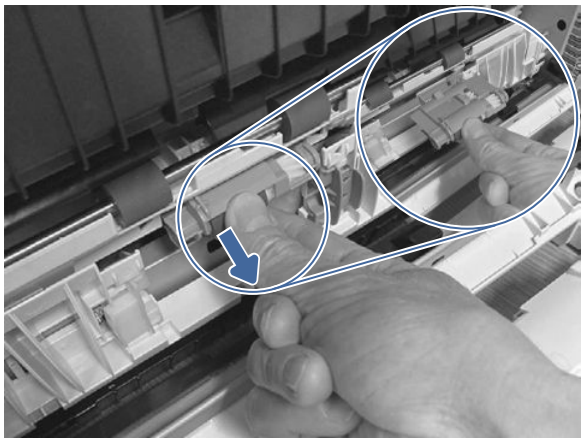
2. Slide the blue lever (callout 1) to the right, and then remove the separation roller assembly (callout 2) by pulling it out from the printer.

Figure 2-14 Remove the separation roller assembly



3. Locate the pickup roller assembly, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 2-15 Remove the pickup roller assembly



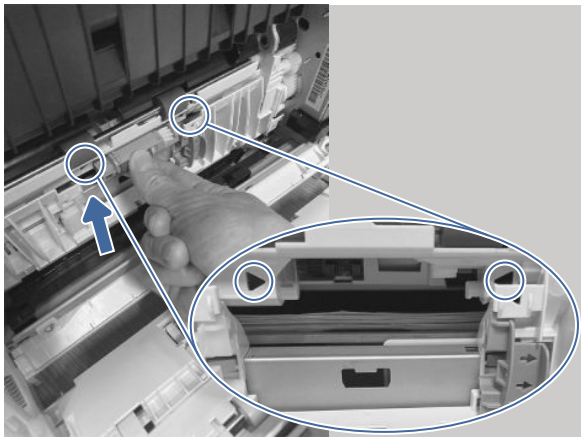
NOTE: As the roller assembly can be hard to grip, you might need to reach under and behind the rollers to securely grip it.

CAUTION: Skin oils on the roller can cause paper-handling and print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves or thoroughly washing your hands before handling the assembly.

4. Clean the Tray 2 pickup and separation rollers. Use a damp, lint-free cloth to gently clean the rollers.

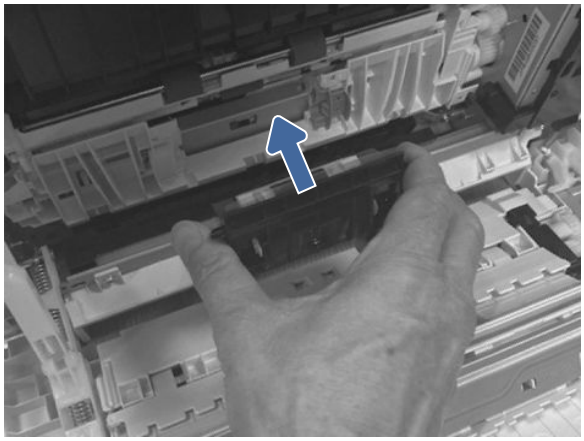
5. Position the pickup roller assembly in the printer in the correct orientation, and then press the assembly into place.

Figure 2-16 Install the pickup roller assembly



6. Insert the separation roller assembly into the printer to install it.

Figure 2-17 Install the separation roller assembly



3 Solve problems

Learn about solving printer problems.

Determine the problem source

When the printer malfunctions or encounters an unexpected situation, the printer control panel alerts the user to the situation.

This section contains a pre-troubleshooting checklist and a troubleshooting flow chart to filter out many possible causes of the problem.

- Use the pre-troubleshooting check list to gather information about the problem from the customer.
- Use the troubleshooting flowchart to pinpoint the root cause of hardware malfunctions. The flowchart guides you to the section of this chapter that contains steps for correcting the malfunction.

Before beginning any troubleshooting procedure, check the following issues:

- Are supply items within their rated life?
- Does the configuration page reveal any configuration errors?

NOTE: The customer is responsible for checking supplies and for using supplies that are in good condition.

Pre-troubleshooting checklist

The following table includes basic questions to ask the customer to quickly help define the problem(s).

Table 3-1 **Pre-troubleshooting checklist**

General topic	Questions
Environment	• Is the printer installed on a solid, level surface (+/- 1°)? • Is the power-supply voltage within ± 10 volts of the specified power source? • Is the power-supply plug inserted in the printer and the wall outlet (not a surge protector)? • Is the operating environment within the specified parameters? • Is the printer exposed to ammonia gas, such as that produced by diazo copiers or office cleaning materials? NOTE: Diazo copiers produce ammonia gas as part of the copying processes. Ammonia gas (from cleaning supplies or a diazo copier) can have an adverse effect on some printer components (for example, the toner cartridge or cartridges OPC). • Is the printer exposed to direct sunlight? • Is the printer exposed to an air conditioning or heating vent that can cause temperature fluctuations?
Media	• Does the customer use only supported media? • Is the media in good condition (no curls, folds, or distortion)? • Is the media stored correctly and within environmental limits?
Input trays	• Is the amount of media in the tray within specifications? • Is the media correctly placed in the tray? • Are the paper guides aligned with the stack (no gaps in the stack or excessive pressure causing the stack to bow)? • Is the tray (or trays) correctly installed in the printer?
Toner cartridge	• Is the toner cartridge (or cartridges) installed correctly? NOTE: If country/region specific toner cartridges are available for the printer, make sure the correct cartridge is installed.
Transfer unit and fuser	• Are the transfer unit and fuser installed correctly? NOTE: For printers with an intermediate transfer belt (ITB), is the ITB installed correctly and fully seated. If a replacement ITB was installed, was all of the packing materials removed?
Covers	• Is the toner cartridge door closed?
Condensation	• Does condensation occur following a temperature change (particularly in winter following cold storage)? If so, wipe affected parts dry or leave the printer on for 10 to 20 minutes. • Was a toner cartridge (or cartridges) opened soon after being moved from a cold to a warm room? If so, allow the toner cartridge (or cartridges) to sit at room temperature for 1 to 2 hours.
Miscellaneous	• Check for and remove any non-HP components (toner cartridges, memory modules, and EIO cards) from the printer. • Remove the printer from the network and ensure that the failure is associated with the printer before beginning troubleshooting. • For any color print-quality issues (color printers only), calibrate the printer, and then print a diagnostics page to verify print quality.

Troubleshooting flowchart

This flowchart highlights the general processes to follow to quickly isolate and solve printer hardware problems.

Each row depicts a major troubleshooting step. Follow a "yes" answer to a question to proceed to the next major step. A "no" answer indicates that more testing is needed. Go to the appropriate section in this chapter and follow the instructions there. After completing the instructions, go to the next major step in this troubleshooting flowchart.

Table 3-2 Troubleshooting flowchart

Step	Question		Action
1 **Power on**	Is the printer on and does a readable message display?		
	Yes ↓	No →	Basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the on position. During normal operation cooling fans and/or motors should be operating. Place a hand over fan intake or exhaust vents to determine if the fan or fans are spinning. Lean close to the printer to hear motors rotating. If fans and/or motors are operating, the dc side of the power supply is functioning. Always make sure that the printer is plugged into a known-functioning wall receptacle. Remove power strips and plug the printer directly into a wall receptacle. After the control panel display is functional, see step 2.
2 **Control panel messages**	Does the message **Ready** display on the control panel?		
	Yes ↓	No →	After the errors have been corrected, go to step 3. Use the control panel message document (CPMD) section in this manual to correct any displayed error messages.
3 **Event log**	Open the Troubleshooting menu and print an event log to see the history of errors with this printer. Does the event log print?		

Table 3-2 Troubleshooting flowchart (continued)

Step	Question		Action
	Yes ↓	No →	If the event log does not print, check for error messages. If paper jams inside the printer, see the jams section of the printer service manual. If error messages display on the control panel when trying to print an event log, see the control panel message document (CPMD) section of this manual. After successfully printing and evaluating the event log, see step 4.
4 **Information pages**	Open the Reports menu and print the configuration pages to verify that all the accessories are installed. Are all the accessories installed?		
	Yes ↓	No →	If accessories that are installed are not listed on the configuration page, remove the accessory and reinstall it. Make sure that the most recent firmware is installed. See the firmware upgrade section of this manual for more information. After evaluating the configuration pages, see step 5.
5 **Print quality**	Does the print quality meet the customer's requirements?		
	Yes ↓	No →	Compare the images with the sample defects in the Image-quality troubleshooting section of this manual. Solve print-quality and copy-quality issues as needed. After the print quality is acceptable, see step 6.
6 **Interface**	Can the customer print successfully from the host computer?		
	Yes. This is the end of the troubleshooting process.	No →	Verify that all I/O cables are connected correctly and that a valid IP address is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. If error messages display on the control panel or appear in the event log, see the control-panel message document (CPMD) section of this manual. When the customer can print from the host computer, this is the end of the troubleshooting process.

Firmware upgrades

Learn about printer firmware upgrades.

To download the most recent firmware upgrade for the printer, go to:

- In the US, go to http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP.

  a. Select **Get drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select the appropriate product by name.

  NOTE: More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

  b. Select the driver language and operating system.

  c. Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.

- Outside the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support.

  – Select your country/region.

  – Select **Drivers & Downloads**.

  – Enter the product name in the **Find my product** dialogue box, and then select **Go**.

  TIP: Click on the **How do I find my product name/number?** link to see a short video on identifying the printer's name and number.

  – Select the appropriate product by name.

  NOTE: More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

  – Select the driver language and operating system.

  – Locate the firmware download, and then select **Download**.

Determine the installed revision of firmware

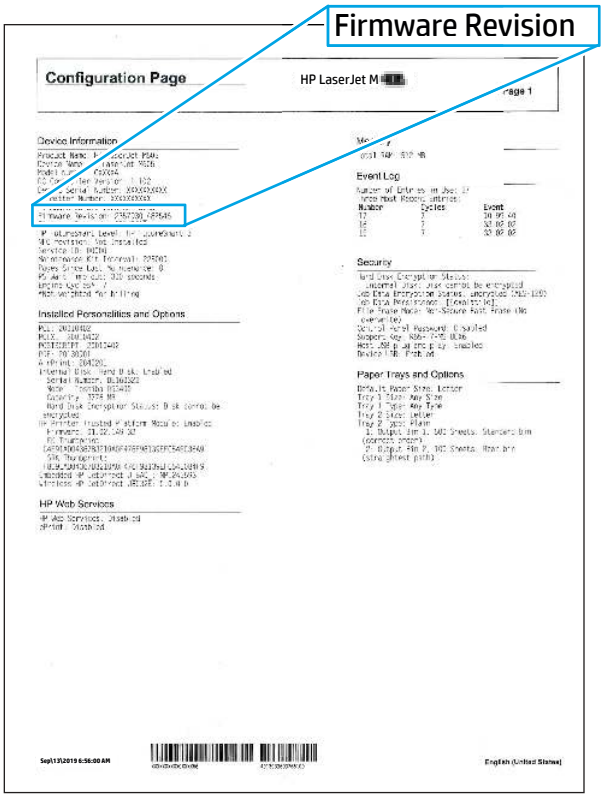
Learn about how to determine the version of installed printer firmware.

Print a configuration page to determine the installed revision of firmware.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the Configuration/Status pages menu.
3. Touch Configuration Page to select it.
4. Touch the print icon to print the pages.

5. Find the firmware revision on the configuration page.

Figure 3-1 **Configuration page firmware version**



HP Embedded Web Server

Learn how to perform a firmware upgrade using the HP Embedded Web Server.

NOTE: The printer should be at the **Ready** state.

The firmware update might take 10 minutes or longer based on the input/output (I/O) transfer rates and the time it takes for the printer to reinitialize.

1. Open an Internet browser window.
2. Enter the printer IP address in the URL line.
3. Select the **Firmware Upgrade** link from the **General** tab or from the **Troubleshooting** tab.
4. Browse to the location that the firmware upgrade file was downloaded to, and then select the firmware file. The file has a .bdl file extension. Select the Install button to perform the upgrade.

   NOTE: Do not close the browser window OR interrupt communication until the HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) displays the confirmation page.

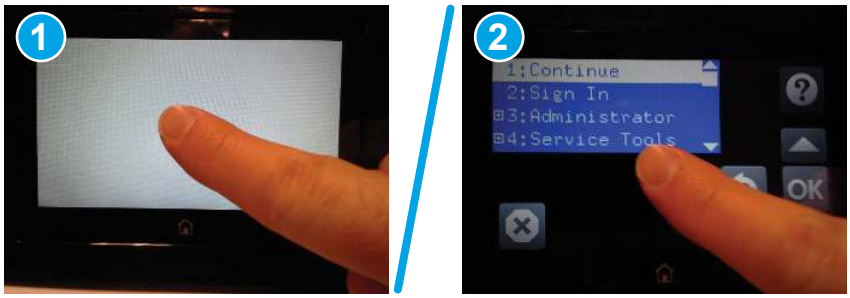
5. After the printer reinitializes, print a configuration page and verify that the latest firmware version has been installed.

USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu)

Learn how to perform a USB flash drive firmware (Pre-boot menu) update from the control panel.

1. Copy the .bdl file to a portable USB flash drive.
2. Touch the middle of the control panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-2 **Open the Pre-boot menu**



3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3 Administrator, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +1 Download, and then touch the OK button.
5. Insert the USB flash drive with the .bdl file on it into the USB port on the printer.

NOTE: If the error message No USB Thumbdrive Files Found displays on the control panel display, try using a different portable storage device.

6. Use the arrow buttons to highlight USB Thumbdrive, and then touch the OK button.
7. Use the arrow buttons to highlight the .bdl file, and then touch the OK button.

NOTE: The upgrade process can take 10 minutes or longer to complete.

TIP: If there is more than one .bdl file on the storage device, make sure to select the correct file for this printer.

8. When the message Complete displays on the control panel display, touch the down arrow ▼ button several times until the message Continue displays.
9. Touch the OK button to begin the upgrade. When the upgrade is complete, the printer will initialize to the **Ready** state.
10. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.

USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu)

Learn how to perform a USB flash drive firmware (control panel menu) update from the control panel.

1. Copy the .bdl file to a portable USB flash drive.
2. Turn the printer on, and then wait until it reaches the **Ready** state.
3. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
4. Open the Maintenance menu.
5. Touch the USB Firmware Upgrade button.
6. Insert the USB flash drive with the .bdl file on it into the USB port on the printer.

7. Touch the .bdl file, and then touch the Upgrade button.

TIP: If there is more than one .bdl file on the storage device, make sure to select the correct file for this printer.

8. Select one of the following options:

   - Upgrade

     NOTE: The upgrade process can take 10 minutes or longer to complete.

   - Re-install
   - Downgrade

9. When the upgrade is complete, the printer will initialize to the **Ready** state.
10. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.

Comprehensive list of troubleshooting tools

Learn about the printer troubleshooting tools.

Engine test

Learn about troubleshooting the printer using the engine test diagnostic.

When the engine test is performed, a test page with lines prints if the engine is functioning correctly.

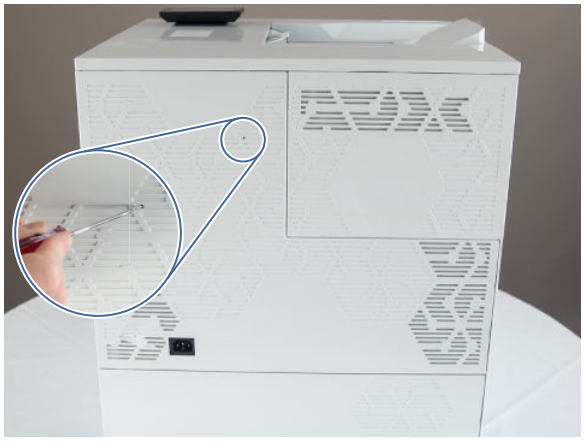
NOTE: Depending on printer models, either a simplex engine test page, a duplex engine test page, or both simplex and duplex engine test pages might be available.

Use a small pointed object to depress and hold the engine test button (location varies depending on the printer model). An engine test page prints. The test page can use only Tray 2 as the paper source, so make sure that paper is loaded in Tray 2.

Possible engine test pages (printer dependent)

- A series of lines parallel to the **short** end of the page.
- A series of lines parallel to the **long** end of the page.

Figure 3-3 Engine test button



Control panel checks

Learn about control panel troubleshooting.

The printer includes a diagnostic test mode for the touchscreen control panels.

Touchscreen diagnostic mode

Learn about touchscreen diagnostic mode.

Use the diagnostics in this section to test the control-panel hardware and embedded firmware. These tests are useful for checking control-panel functionality independent of the printer control-panel system diagnostics.

1. Locate the diagnostic-tests access button on the back of the control panel, and then press the button.

   Figure 3-4 Diagnostic-tests access button — 8-inch control panel

Figure 3-5 Diagnostic-tests access button – 10-inch control panel



2. Observe the control panel screen as it cycles through the following colors:
   - Red
   - Green
   - Blue
   - Black
   - White

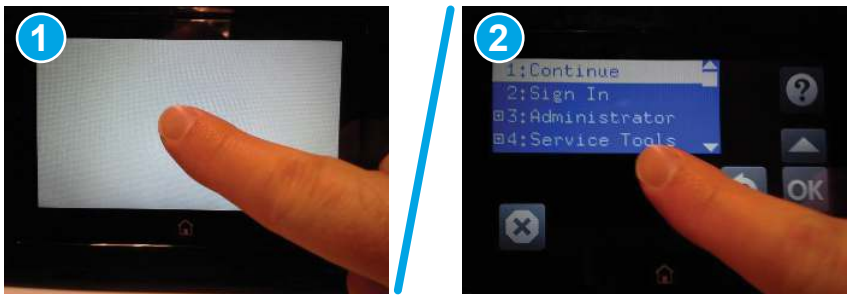
Open the control panel system diagnostic tests

Learn about accessing the control panel system diagnostics tests from a touchscreen control panel.

Use the following procedure to open the control panel system diagnostics tests.

1. Turn the printer power off, and then on again.
2. Touch the middle of the control panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-6 Open the Pre-boot menu



3. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 3-7 Pre-boot menu

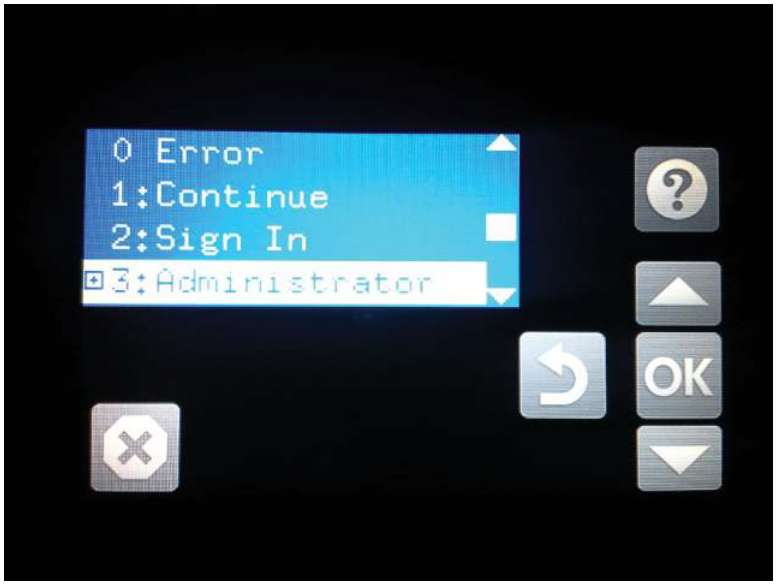


Table 3-3 Pre-boot menu button descriptions

Button	Description
	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.

4. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to +3 Administration, and then press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-8 Access the administration menu



5. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to +E CP Diagnostics, and then press the OK button to select it.

NOTE: An administrator password might be required to continue.

Figure 3-9 Access the diagnostics menu



Screen test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic screen test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.

2. With 1 Screen Test highlighted, press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-10 Open the screen test



The blue horizontal gradient screen appears.

Figure 3-11 Blue horizontal gradient screen



3. Touch the touchscreen to scroll though the remaining touchscreen test screens.

NOTE: Touch the Home button to exit the test.

Table 3-4 Touchscreen test screens

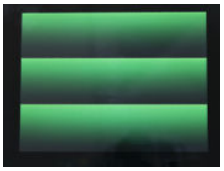
Screen	Description
	Green horizontal gradient

Table 3-4 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

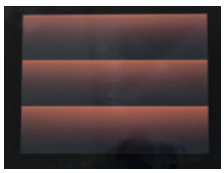
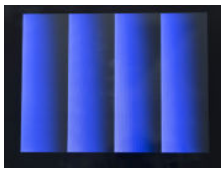
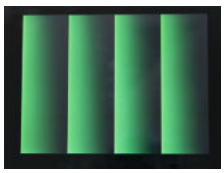
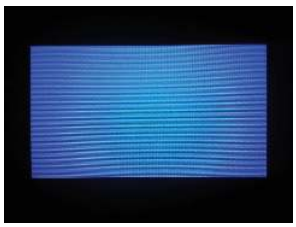
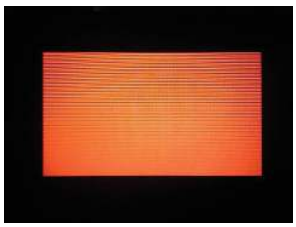
Screen	Description
	Red horizontal gradient
	Blue vertical gradient
	Green vertical gradient
	Red vertical gradient
	Blue with horizontal interlaced
	Green with horizontal interlaced
	Red with horizontal interlaced

Table 3-4 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

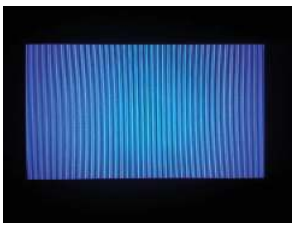
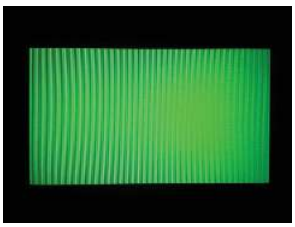
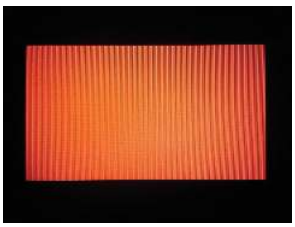
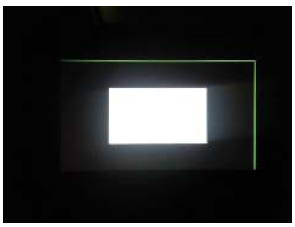
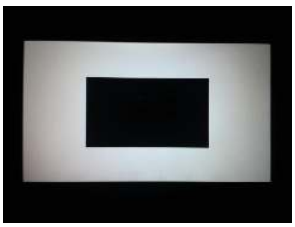
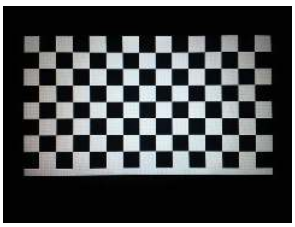
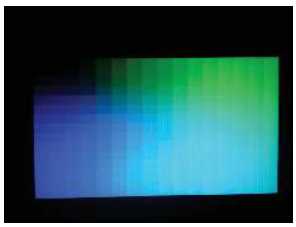
Screen	Description
	Blue with vertical interlaced
	Green with vertical interlaced
	Red with vertical interlaced
	Black with white center
	White with black center
	Checkerboard

Table 3-4 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

Screen	Description
	Multicolor stripes
	Blue green grid meshing

Touch test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic touch test.

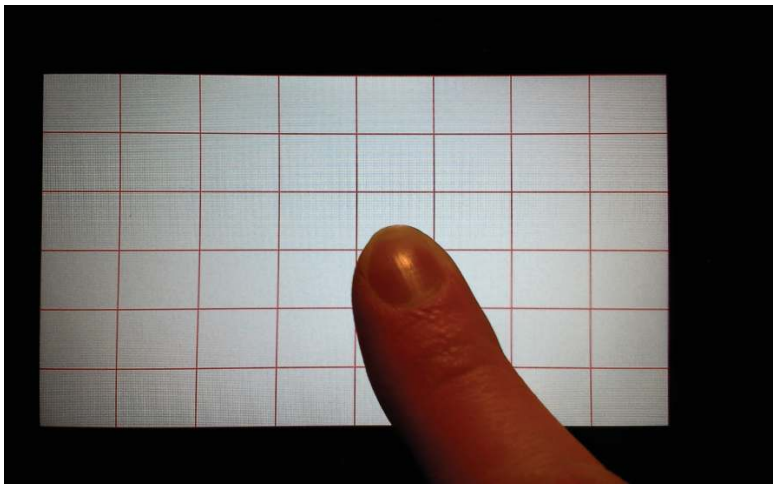
1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 2 Touch Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-12 Open the touch test



3. Use your finger to touch the white grid on the display.

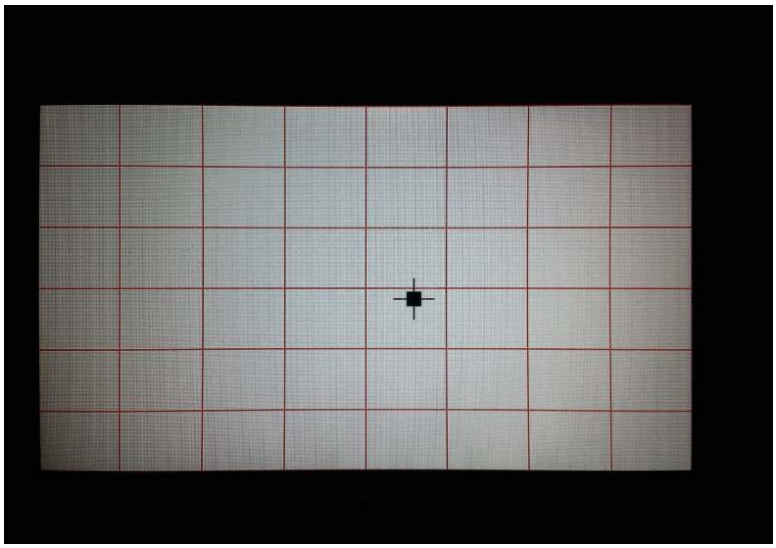
Figure 3-13 **Touch the white grid**



A mark appears on the grid where it was touched.

NOTE: Touch the Home button to exit the test.

Figure 3-14 **Verify the mark**



SoftKey test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic SoftKey test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.

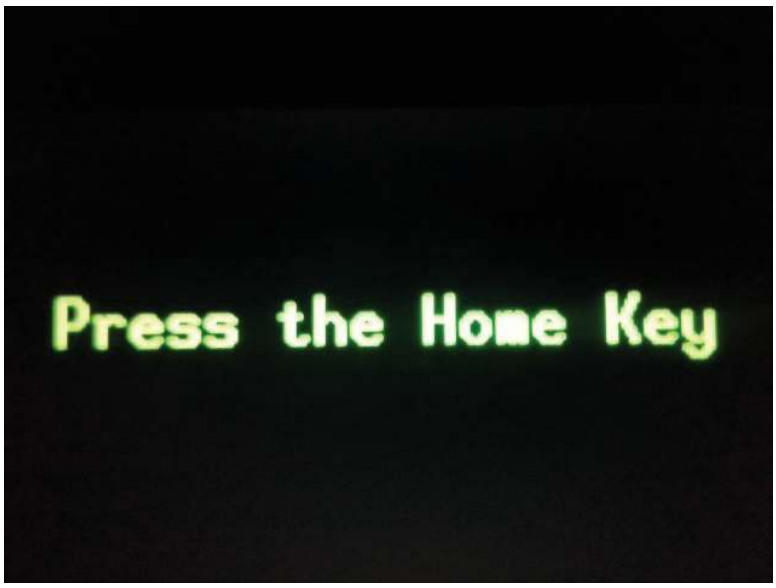
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 3 SoftKey Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-15 Open the softkey test



3. When prompted, touch the Home button.

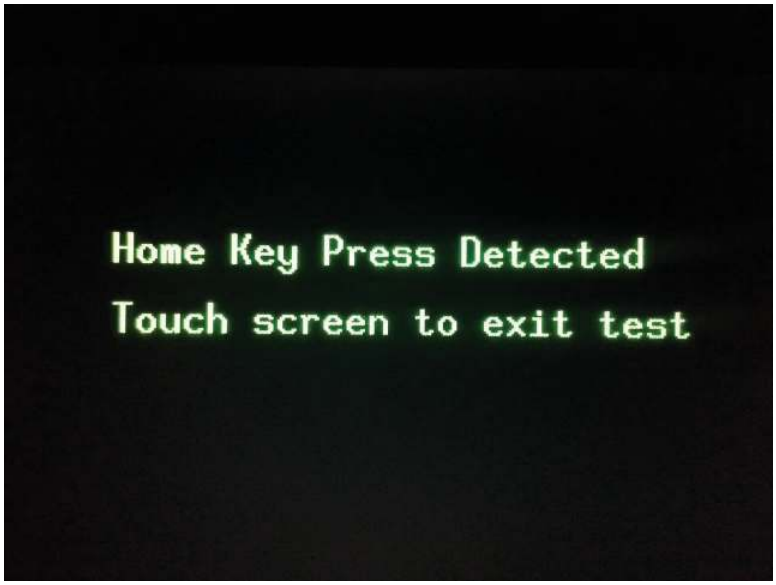
Figure 3-16 Touch the Home button



If the test is successful, the following screen appears on the display.

NOTE: Touch the screen to exit the test.

Figure 3-17 Successful test



Backlight test

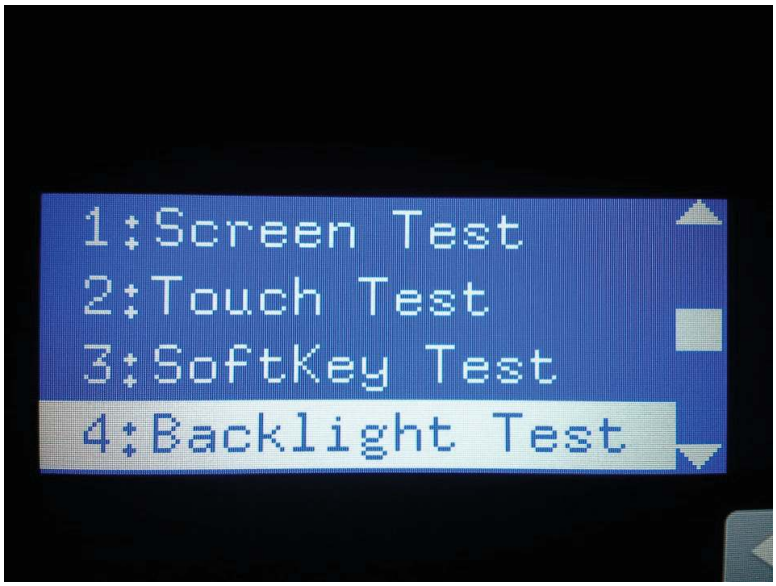
Learn about the control panel system diagnostic backlight test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 4 Backlight Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

   After selecting the 4 Backlight Test, the screen automatically dims, and then returns to full brightness.

NOTE: Touch any key to exit the test.

Figure 3-18 Open the backlight test



Sound test

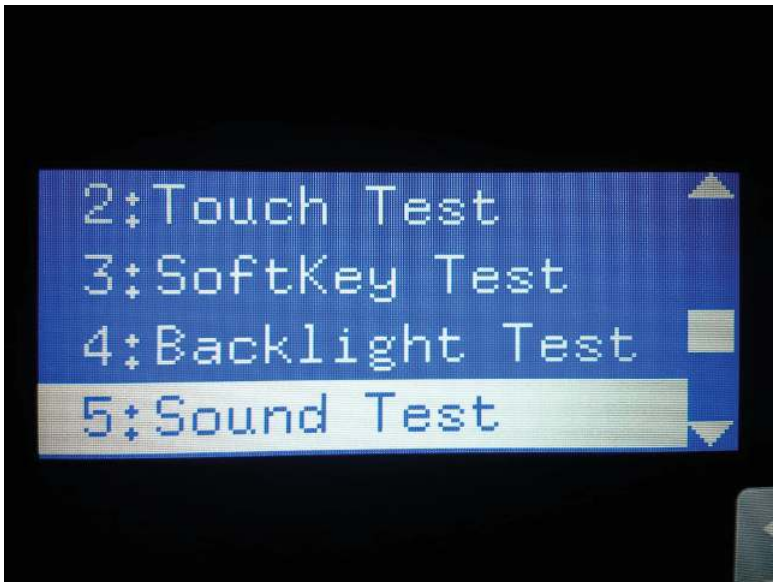
Learn about the control panel system diagnostic sound test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 5 Sound Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

   After selecting the 5 Sound Test, the printer emits a series of audible tones.

NOTE: Touch any key to exit the test.

Figure 3-19 Open the sound test



Keyboard test (flow models only)

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic keyboard test.

IMPORTANT: The control-panel system diagnostic tests include a 6 Keyboard Test item. This test is not valid for printers that do **not** have a pull out keyboard installed, even though this option is present in the control-panel system diagnostic tests menu.

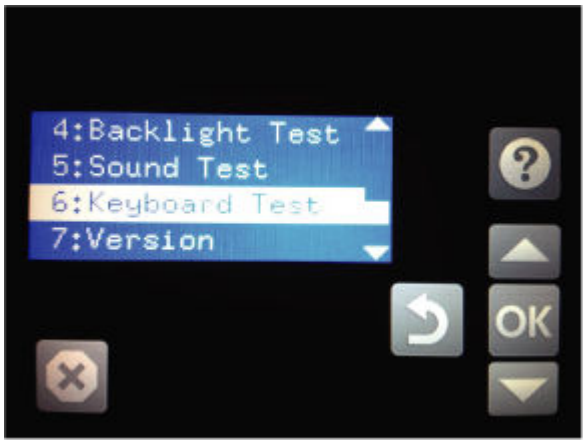
If the 6 Keyboard Test is opened on a non-flow printer, the printer power must be turned off to exit the test.

HP **does not recommend** turning the printer power off during the control-panel system diagnostic tests.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.

2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 6 Keyboard Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-20 **Open the keyboard test**



3. When prompted, touch the H key on the keyboard or the Home button to exit the test.

Version

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic version information.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 7 Version, and then press the OK button to select it.

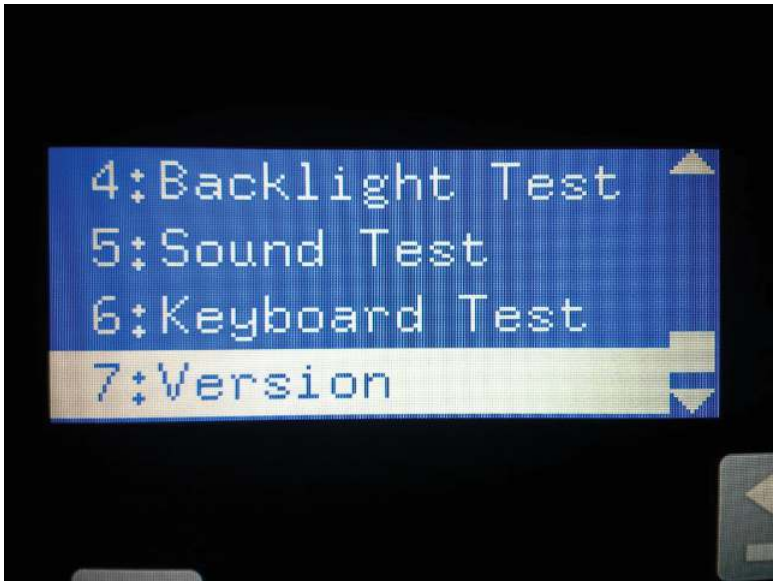
NOTE: Touch any key to exit the test.

Select 7 Version to view the following types of information:

NOTE: The following types of information are for the control panel only, not the printer.

- Panel ID
- Hardware (version)
- Firmware (version)
- KB Hw (version)
- KB Firm (version)
- LCD Vendor
- Touch Controller Version

Figure 3-21 Open the version information



Control panel diagnostic flowcharts

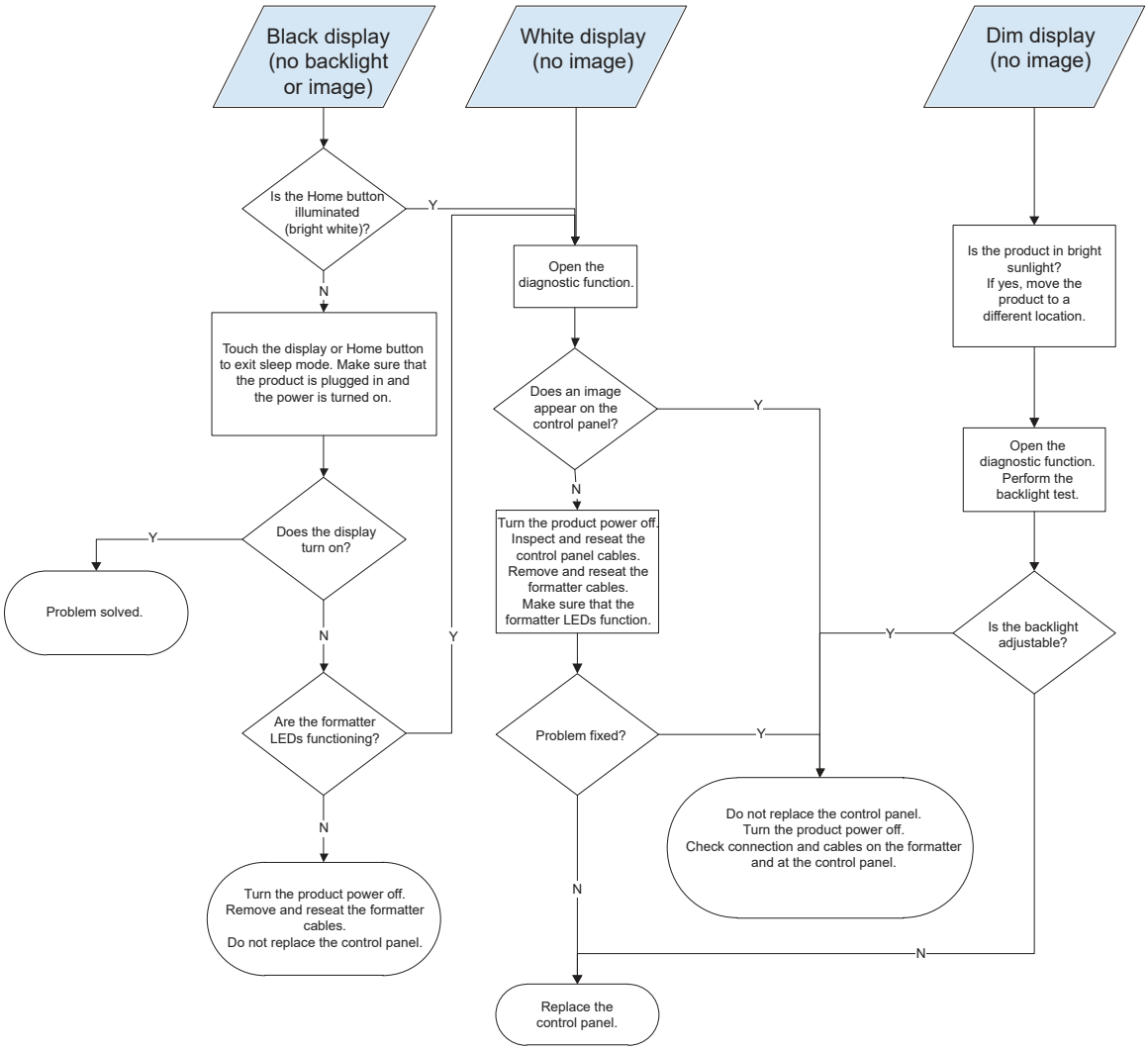
Use the flowcharts in this section to troubleshoot the following control panel problems.

- Touchscreen is blank, white, or dim (no image).
- Touchscreen is slow to respond or requires multiple presses to respond.
- Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone.
- No control panel sound.
- Home button is unresponsive.
- Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional).

Touchscreen black, white, or dim (no image)

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

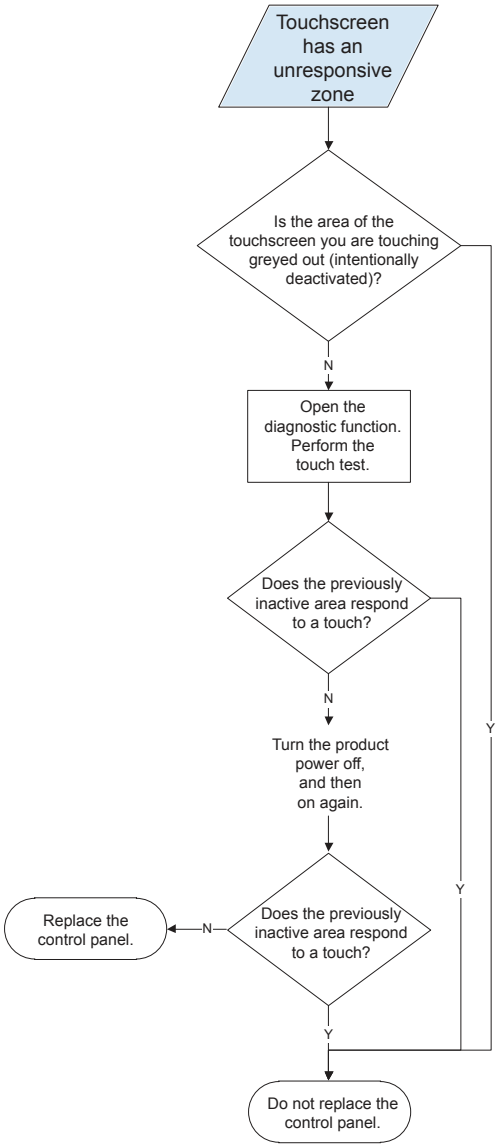
Figure 3-22 Touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image)



Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

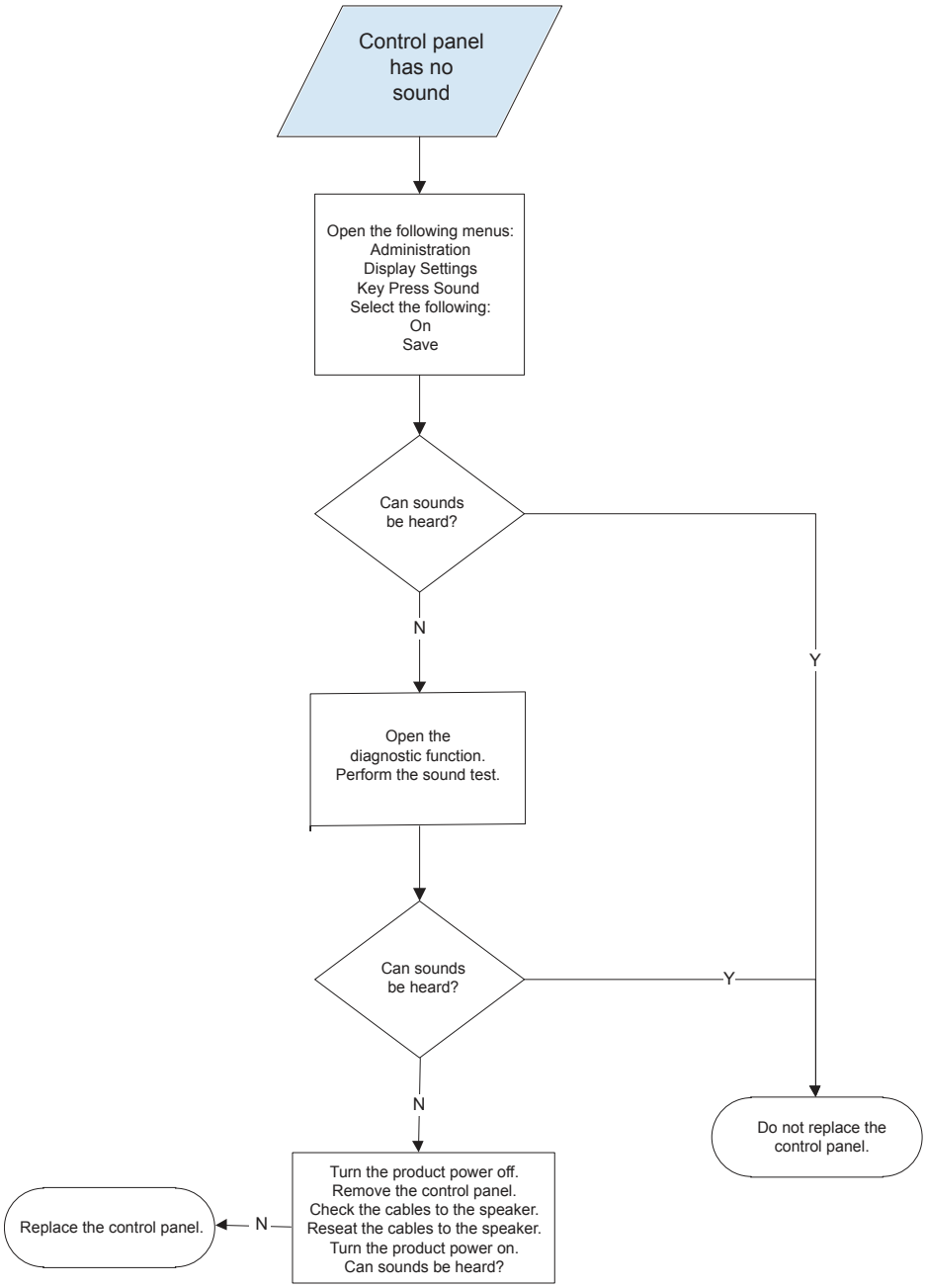
Figure 3-23 Touchscreen has an unresponsive zone



No control panel sound

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

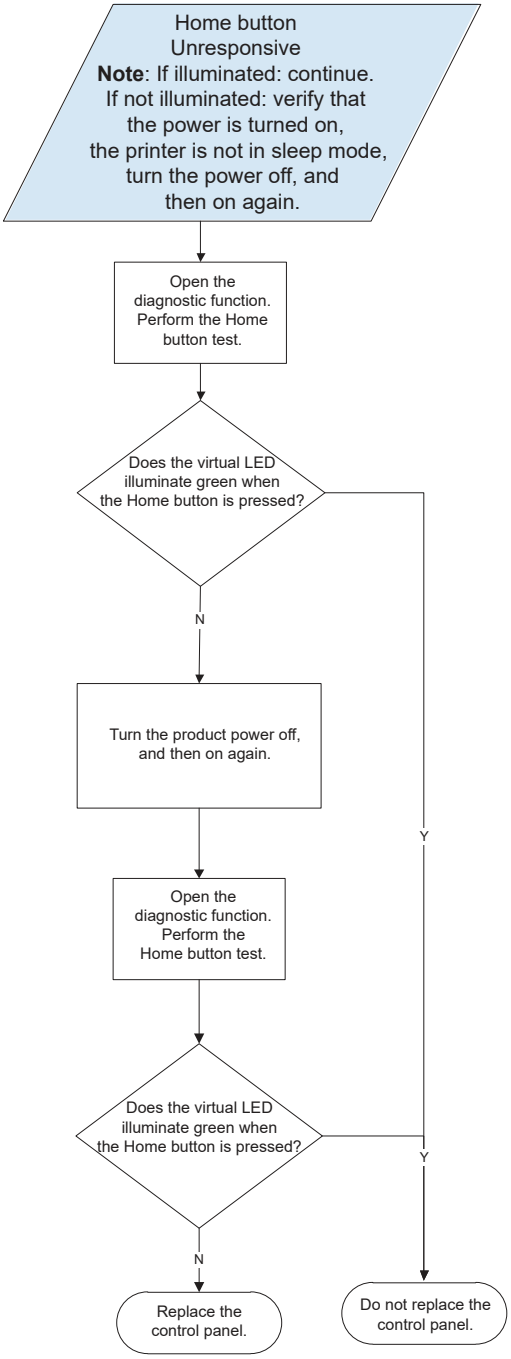
Figure 3-24 No control panel sound



Home button is unresponsive

To open the diagnostic function, press the button on the back of the control panel.

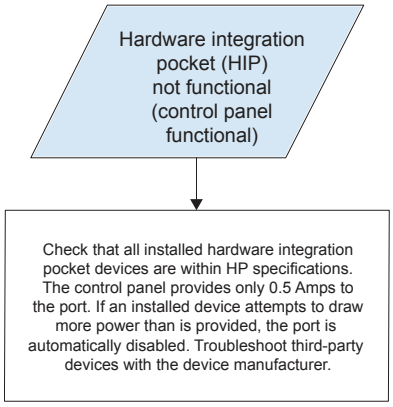
Figure 3-25 **Home button is unresponsive**



Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)

Review the following information when the HIP is not functioning, but the control panel is functional.

Figure 3-26 Hardware integration pocket (HIP) is not functioning (control panel functional)



Print menu (SFP) and Copy/Print menu (MFP)

Learn about the control-panel Print menu (SFP) and the Copy/Print menu (MFP).

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu, and then select the Print menu (SFP) or the Copy/Print menu (MFP).

To print: At the printer control panel, touch the printer icon .

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Image preview			Make optional Require preview Disable preview	Use this menu to configure how Copy behaves.
Copy Settings MFP	Copies			1-9999 Default = 1	Configure the default options for copy jobs. If the user does not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Sides	Original Sides		1-sided 2-sided Flip pages up	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides. For example, select Original Sides 1-sided and Output Sides 2-sided when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies. Select Flip pages up to print the pages with long edge of the in the landscape orientation.
Copy Settings MFP	Sides	Output Sides		1-sided 2-sided Flip pages up	Use to indicate whether the copies should be printed on one or both sides. For example, select Original Sides 1-sided and Output Sides 2-sided when the original is printed on one side, but you want to make two-sided copies. Select Flip pages up to print the pages with long edge of the in the landscape orientation.
Copy Settings MFP	Watermark	Watermark Type		None* Text	Use to set a text watermark.
Copy Settings MFP	Watermark	Watermark Text		Draft Confidential Secret Top Secret Urgent	Select a predefined text watermark.
Copy Settings MFP	Watermark	Text Font		Letter Gothic* Antique Olive New Century Schoolbook Roman Garamond Antiqua	Select the font of the text watermark.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Watermark	Text Size		30 point 40 point* 60 point	Select the font point size of the text watermark.
Copy Settings MFP	Watermark	Darkness		1 - (Lighter) 2 3* 4 5 - (Darker)	Select the darkness of the text watermark.
Copy Settings MFP	Stamps	Stamp Content		User-defined value None* IP address User name Product information Page number Date and time	Use to set a stamp in any or all the following locations in the document: • Top Left • Top Center • Top Right • Bottom Left • Bottom Center • Bottom Right
Copy Settings MFP	Stamps	Text Font		Letter Gothic* Antique Olive New Century Schoolbook Roman Garamond Antiqua	Select the font of the stamp.
Copy Settings MFP	Stamps	Text Size		8 point 12 point* 20 point	Select the font point size of the stamp.
Copy Settings MFP	Stamps	White background		Disabled* Enabled	Select the check box to enable a white background for the stamp.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Scan Mode			Standard document* Prompt for additional pages Book 2-sided ID	Use to indicate the type of original document to be scanned. Select Prompt for additional pages to copy or scan an original document that has more pages than the document feeder can accommodate at one time, or to scan originals of different sizes that cannot be scanned together, and then combine these separate scan jobs into a single job.
Copy Settings MFP	Reduce/Enlarge			Automatic* Include margins Manual Default=100	Scale the size of the document up or down. To reduce the image, select a scaling percentage that is less than 100. To enlarge the image, select a scaling percentage that is greater than 100. When Include margins is enabled, the printer reduces the image slightly to fit the entire scanned image within the printable area on the page.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Original Size			Automatically detect* Letter (8.5x11) Mixed Letter/Legal Legal (8.5x14) Executive (7.25x10.5) Statement (5.5x8.5) Oficio (8.5x13) 4x6 5x7 5x8 A4 (210x297 mm) A5 (148x210 mm) A6 (105x148 mm) RA4 (215x305 mm) B5 (182x257 mm) B6 (128x182 mm) 10x15cm 16K (195x270 mm) 16K (184x260 mm) 16K (197x273 mm) DPostcard JIS (148x200 mm) Oficio (216x340 mm)	Specify the size of the original document.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Paper Selection		Paper Size	Match original size* Letter (8.5x11) Legal (8.5x14) Executive (7.25x10.5) Statement (5.5x8.5) Oficio (8.5x13) 3x5 4x6 5x7 5x8 A4 (210x297 mm) A5 (148x210 mm) A6 (105x148 mm) RA4 (215x305 mm) B5 (182x257 mm) B6 (128x182 mm) 10x15cm 16K (195x270 mm) 16K (184x260 mm) 16K (197x273 mm) Postcard JIS (100x148 mm) DPostcard JIS (148x200 mm) Envelope #9 Envelope #10 Envelope Monarch Envelope #10 Envelope B5 Envelope C5 Envelope C6 Envelope DL Custom Oficio (216x340 mm)	Select the size of paper to use when printing or making copies.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Paper Selection		Paper Type	Any Type Plain* Light 60-74g Intermediate 85-95g Mid-Weight 96-110g Heavy 111-130g Extra Heavy 131-175g Cardstock 176-220g Mono Transparency Labels Letterhead Envelope Preprinted Prepunched Colored Bond Recycled Rough HP EcoFFICIENT Light Bond	Select the type of paper to use when printing or making copies.
Copy Settings MFP	Paper Selection		Paper Tray	Automatically detect* Manually Feed Tray 1 Tray 2	Select which tray to use when printing or making copies.
Copy Settings MFP	Booklet	Booklet Format		Enabled Disabled*	Select to have Booklet Format off or on.
Copy Settings MFP	Booklet	Booklet Format	Borders on each page	Enabled Disabled*	Select to have borders printed on the page.
Copy Settings MFP	Content Orientation			Portrait* Landscape	Specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Pages per Sheet			One* Two Four	Select how many pages to print on one sheet.
Copy Settings MFP	Page Order			Right, then down Down, then right	Select to print the pages in rows or columns.
Copy Settings MFP	Add page borders			Enabled Disabled*	Select the Add page borders checkbox to add borders to the pages.
Copy Settings MFP	Image Adjustment	Darkness		1 - (Lighter) 2 3 4 5* 6 7 8 9 - (Darker)	Adjust to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
Copy Settings MFP	Image Adjustment	Contrast		1 - (Less) 2 3 4 5* 6 7 8 9 - (More)	Adjust to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Image Adjustment	Background Cleanup		1 - (Normal) 2 3* 4 5* 6 7 8 9 - (Cleaner)	Adjust if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
Copy Settings MFP	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		1 - (Less) 2 3* 4 5 - (More)	Adjust to sharpen or soften the image.
Copy Settings MFP	Optimize Text/ Picture			Text Mixed* Printed picture Photograph	Select to optimize for the output of a particular type of content.
Copy Settings MFP	Edge-to-Edge			Normal (recommended) Edge-to-Edge output	When the Edge-to-Edge feature is enabled, the product minimizes margins and prints as close to the edge of the paper as possible.
Copy Settings MFP	Erase Edges	Use inches		Enabled* Disabled	Use the Erase Edges feature to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the edges of the scanned image. Disabling Use inches changes the measurements to millimeters.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Copy Settings MFP	Erase Edges	Front Side		Specify a different width for each edge Apply same width to all edges* All edges value Default = 0.00	Sets the width of the edge to clean.
Copy Settings MFP	Erase Edges	Back Side		Specify a different width for each edge Apply same width to all edges Mirror front side*	Sets the width of the edge to clean.
Copy Settings MFP	Collate			Collate on* Collate off	When Collate on is selected, each set of copied pages are assembled in the same order as the original document.
Copy Settings MFP	Multi-feed Detection			Disabled Enabled*	Use this feature to detect when multiple pages are fed simultaneously into the ADF (automatic document feeder) or sheet-feed scanner.
Copy Settings MFP					
Enable Print from USB Drive				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
Manage Stored Jobs	Job Sort Order			Job Name* Date*	This option allows you list the jobs either alphabetically or chronologically.
Manage Stored Jobs	Retain Temporary Jobs			Do not retain Personal jobs only All temporary jobs	Sets which temporary jobs will be retained in the event of a printer reboot.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Stored Jobs	Temporary Job Storage Limit			1-300 Default = 32	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Job Storage Limit feature specifies the number of temporary jobs that can be stored on the printer. The maximum allowed value is 300.
Manage Stored Jobs	Temporary Job Storage Retention			Off 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 1 week 4 weeks 3 days	Configure global settings for temporary jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Temporary Stored Job Retention feature specifies the amount of time temporary jobs can be stored on the printer.
Manage Stored Jobs	Standard Stored Job Retention			Off 30 minutes 1 hour 4 hours 1 day 1 week 4 weeks 3 days	Configure global settings for jobs that are stored in the printer memory. The Standard Stored Job Retention feature specifies the amount of time jobs can be stored on the printer.
Default Print Options	Number of Copies			Range: 1-32000 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy function or the Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen.
Default Print Options	Paper Selection	Paper size Paper type Paper tray		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Configures the default paper size, type and tray used for print jobs.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	X Dimension		Range: 3.00-8.50 inches Default = 8.5 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects **Custom** as the paper size for a print job.
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	Y Dimension		Range: 5.00-14.00 inches Default = 14 inches	Configures the default paper size that is used when the user selects **Custom** as the paper size for a print job.
Default Print Options	Default Custom Paper Size	Use Inches		Enabled* Disabled	
Default Print Options	Output Sides			1-sided* 2-sided	Use to indicate whether the original document is printed on one or both sides.
Default Print Options	Edge-to-Edge			Normal (recommended)* Edge-to-Edge output	Use to avoid shadows that can appear along the edges of copies when the original document is printed close to the edges.
Default Print Options	Resolution			FastRes 1200* ProRes 1200	Use to select the level of desired print quality.
Default Print Options	Resolution	Economode		Enabled Disabled*	Text is printed using less toner. This setting is useful when you are printing drafts. You can turn on this option independently of other print quality settings.
PCL and Postscript Settings	Courier Font			Regular* Dark	Select which version of the Courier font you want to use. The factory default setting is Regular, which uses an average stroke width. The Dark setting can be used if a heavier Courier font is needed.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	Wide A4			Enabled Disabled*	Changes the printable area of A4-size paper. If you enable this option, eighty 10-pitch characters can be printed on a single line of A4 paper.
PCL and Postscript Settings	Print PS Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Use this feature to select whether a PostScript (PS) error page is printed when the printer encounters a PS error.
PCL and Postscript Settings	Print PDF Errors			Enabled Disabled*	Selects whether a PDF error page is printed when the printer encounters a PDF error.
PCL and Postscript Settings	Personality			Automatic* PCL PS PDF	Configures the default print language or personality for the printer. Normally you should not change the printer language. If you change the setting to a specific printer language, the printer does not automatically switch from one language to another unless specific software commands are sent to it.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	Font Settings	Font Source	Internal Disk resident*	Selects the font source for the user-soft default font. The list of available options varies depending on the installed printer options.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	Font Settings	Font Number	Range: 0-110 Default = 0	Specifies the font number for the user-soft default font using the source that is specified in the Font Source menu. The printer assigns a number to each font and lists it on the PCL font list. The font number displays in the Font # column of the printout.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	Font Settings	Font Pitch	Range: 0.44-99.99 Default = 10	If the Font Source option and the Font Number setting indicate a contour font, then use this feature to select a default pitch (for a fixed-spaced font).
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Form Length	Range: 5-128 lines Default = 60	Controls the PCL print-command options. PCL is a set of printer commands that HP developed to provide access to printer features. Use the Form Length feature to select the user soft -default vertical form length.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	Select the orientation that is most often used for copy or scan originals. Select the Portrait option if the short edge is at the top or select the Landscape option if the long edge is at the top.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Symbol Set	Select from a list of symbol sets.	Select any one of several available symbol sets from the control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. The factory default value for this option is PC-8. Either PC-8 or PC-850 are recommended for line-draw characters.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Append CR to LF	Enabled Disabled*	When enabled, this option appends a carriage return to each line feed encountered in backwards-compatible PCL jobs.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Suppress Blank Pages	Enabled Disabled*	This option is for users who are generating their own PCL, which could include extra form feeds that would cause blank pages to be printed. When the On option is selected, form feeds are ignored if the page is blank.
PCL and Postscript Settings	PCL	PCL Settings	Media Source Mapping	Standard* Classic	Use to select and maintain input trays by number when you are not using the printer driver, or when the software program has no option for tray selection. The following options are available: Standard: Tray numbering is based on newer HP LaserJet models. Classic: Tray numbering is based on HP LaserJet 4 and older models.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	General	Toner Density		A sliding bar appears with the indicator set in the middle between Less and More.	Lighten or darken the print on the page by changing the toner density setting.
Print Quality	General	REt		Disabled Enabled*	Use this setting to enable or disable Resolution Enhancement technology (REt), which produces smoother angles, curves, and edges.
Print Quality	Image Registration	Tray	Tray 1 Tray 2 Tray 3 Tray 4 Tray 5 Depends upon the number of trays installed		Specify tray to be adjusted

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Image Registration	Front-side Horizontal Shift Front-side Vertical Shift Back-side Horizontal Shift Back-side Vertical Shift		-5.00 mm to 5.00 mm	Shift the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom and from left to right. You can also align the image on the front with the image printed on the back. The direction that is perpendicular to the way the paper passes through the printer is referred to as X. This is also known as the scan direction. X1 is the scan direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. X2 is the scan direction for the first side of a two-sided page. The direction that the paper feeds through the printer is referred to as Y. Y1 is the feed direction for a single-sided page or for the second side of a two-sided page. Y2 is the feed direction for the first side of a two-sided page. Use the Adjust Tray <X> menu to adjust the registration settings for each tray. Before adjusting these values, print a registration test page. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary. You can adjust values for X1 Shift, X2 Shift, Y1 Shift, and Y2 Shift.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Image Registration	Print Test Page			Use the Print Test Page option to print a page to test the image registration. It provides alignment guides in the X and Y directions so you can determine which adjustments are necessary.
Print Quality	Auto Sense Behavior	Tray 1		Sense every page Sense first page Sense transparency only	
Print Quality	Auto Sense Behavior	All Other Trays		Sense first page Sense transparency only	
Print Quality	Adjust Paper types	Select from a list of paper types that the printer supports. The available options are the same for each paper type.	Print mode	Select from a list of paper types Reset Paper Types	Changing the Print mode setting is usually the first thing to try to resolve print-quality problems. Problems can include toner not sticking well to the page, a faint image of the page repeated on the same or following page, incorrect gloss level, and so on.
Print Quality	Adjust Paper types	Select from a list of paper types that the printer supports. The available options are the same for each paper type.	Resistance mode	Normal* Up 1 Up 2	Use this setting to correct print quality problems in low-humidity environments and highly resistive paper. Use the Up options to solve print quality problems that are related to faded images or scattered toner on certain paper types. The Up options raise the secondary transfer bias.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Adjust Paper types	Select from a list of paper types that the printer supports. The available options are the same for each paper type.	Paper curl mode	Normal* Reduced	Use this setting to reduce paper curl in print jobs.
Print Quality	Optimize	Line Detail		Normal* Off Alternate	Use this setting if you have scattered lines in printed pages.
Print Quality	Optimize	Moisture Control		Normal* Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Envelope control		Normal Reduced Temp	
Print Quality	Optimize	Tray 1		Normal Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Background		Normal Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Uniformity Control		Normal Alternate 1 Alternate 2 Alternate 3	
Print Quality	Optimize	Cac03		Off On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Best Normal		Off On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Tracking Control		Off On	
Print Quality	Optimize	Registration		Normal Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Transfer Control		Normal Alternate 1	
Print Quality	Optimize	Moisture Control		Normal Alternate	
Print Quality	Optimize	Reset Optimize		Reset	

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Print Quality	Edge Control			Off Light Normal* Maximum	
Manage Trays	Use Requested Tray			Exclusively* When available	Controls how the printer handles jobs that have specified a specific input tray. Two options are available: Exclusively: The printer never selects a different tray when the user has indicated that a specific tray should be used, even if that tray is empty. When available: The printer pulls from another tray if the specified tray is empty, even though the specific tray was indicated for the job.
Manage Trays	Manually Feed Prompt			Always prompt* Prompt on mismatch	Indicate whether a prompt should appear when the type or size for a job does not match the specified tray and the printer pulls from the multipurpose tray instead. Two options are available: Always: A prompt always displays before using the multipurpose tray. Prompt on mismatch: A prompt displays only if the size or type do not match or the tray is empty.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Size/Type Prompt			Display* Do not display	Controls whether the tray configuration message displays whenever a tray is closed. Two options are available: Display: Shows the tray configuration message when a tray is closed. The user is able to configure the tray settings directly from this message. Do not display: Prevents the tray configuration message from automatically appearing.
Manage Trays	Use Another Tray			Allow* Do not allow	Use to turn on or off the control panel prompt to select another tray when the specified tray is empty. Two options are available: Allow: When this option is selected the user is prompted to either add paper to the selected tray or to choose a different tray. This is the factory default. Do not allow: When this option is selected, the user is not given the option of selecting a different tray. The printer prompts the user to add paper to the tray that was initially selected.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Alternative Letterhead Mode			Off* On	Use to load letterhead or preprinted paper into the tray the same way for all print jobs, whether you are printing to one side of the sheet or to both sides of the sheet. When this option is selected, load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. See the user documentation that came with the printer for instructions about loading letterhead for printing on both sides. When this option is selected, the printer speed slows to the speed required for printing on both sides.
Manage Trays	Duplex Blank Pages			Automatic* Always	Controls how the printer handles two-sided jobs (duplexing). Two options are available: Automatic: Choose this option to skip printing blank sides during a two-sided print job. The printer can print jobs faster when blank sides are skipped. Always: Choose this option to print all sides of a two-sided job, even if one side is blank. This might be preferable for certain jobs that use paper types such as letterhead or prepunched paper.

Table 3-5 Print menu (SFP) or Copy/Print menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth Level	Values	Description
Manage Trays	Override A4/ Letter			Yes* No	Prints on letter-size paper when an A4 job is sent but no A4-size paper is loaded in the printer (or to print on A4 paper when a letter-size job is sent but no letter-size paper is loaded). This option will also override A3 with ledger-size paper and ledger with A3-size paper.

Defeating interlocks

Learn about defeating printer interlocks.

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the front, right or toner supply (model specific) door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation.

Defeat the front door interlock

1. Open the front door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a strip, and insert the strip into the slot for the door interlock logic switch.

It might be easier to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to defeat the door interlock.

Figure 3-27 Defeat the front door interlock



Defeat the right door interlock

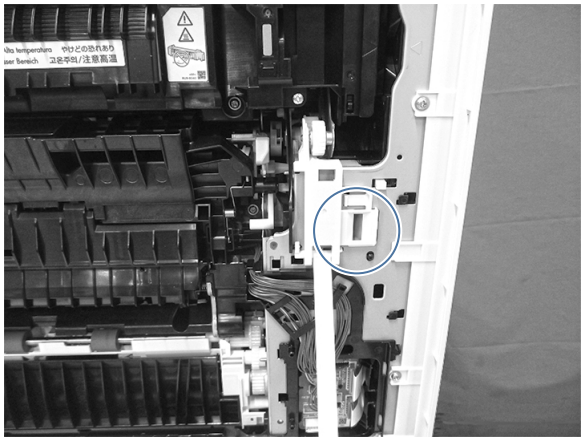
1. Open the right door.

2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a strip, and insert the strip into the slot for the door interlock logic switch.

It might be easier to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to defeat the door interlock.

Figure 3-28 Defeat the right door interlock



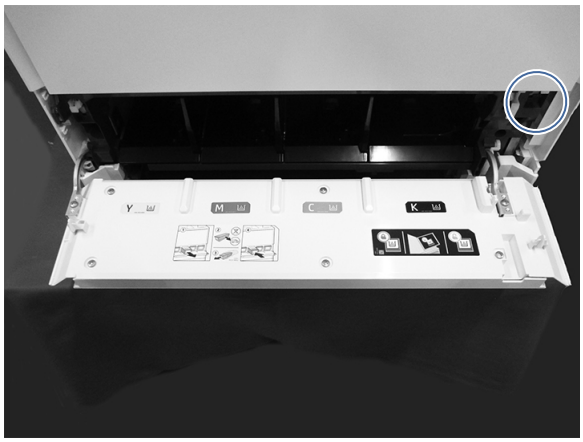
Defeat the toner supply door interlock (X57945 models)

1. Open the toner supply door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a strip, and insert the strip into the slot for the door interlock logic switch.

It might be easier to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to defeat the door interlock.

Figure 3-29 Defeat the toner supply door interlock (X57945 models)



LED diagnostics (formatter)

Learn about troubleshooting the printer using formatter LEDs.

The formatter has two network port LEDs. When the printer is connected to a properly working network through a network cable, the amber LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status.

A blinking amber LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed. For link failures, check all of the network cable connections.

In addition, try to manually configure the network card link speed setting by using the printer control panel. To change the link speed, complete the following steps.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Settings button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Networking
   - Ethernet
   - Link Speed
3. Touch the desired link speed setting, and then touch the Done button.

Scanner tests (MFP)

Learn about troubleshooting the MFP scanner tests.

Use the scanner tests

The Scanner Tests screen shows the sensor name, sensor state (active or inactive), and the number of times the sensor has been toggled (activated).

1. From the Home screen on the product control panel, scroll to and select the Support Tools item.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Diagnostic Tests
   - Scanner Tests
   - – Sensors
3. Touch the sensor name on the Scanner Tests screen to display a sensor location graphic on the control panel display.
4. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control-panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
   - The State virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.
   - The Toggle virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).

     For example, opening the flatbed cover increments the Flatbed cover Toggle item count two times—once when the door is opened, and once when the door is closed.
5. Select the Reset sensors item to reset the Toggle count item.

-or-

Touch the Cancel button to exit the Scanner Tests screen, and then touch the Cancel button again to return the Diagnostic Tests menu.

Scanner test sensors

- ADF paper present
- ADF Y (length)
- ADF jam cover
- ADF paper path deskew
- ADF paper path pick success
- Paper path sensor 1 (unreachable)
- Flatbed Y (length)
- Flatbed cover

Disable cartridge check

Learn about the disable cartridge check troubleshooting diagnostic.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Do not perform a disable cartridge check on color printers that use a two-part cartridge design. Doing so might result in toner cross contamination in the supply lines.

Use this diagnostic test to print internal pages or send an external job to the printer when a toner cartridge is removed or exchanged. Supply errors are ignored while the printer is in this mode.

When the printer is in this mode, access the troubleshooting menus and print internal pages (the print quality pages will be the most useful). This test can be used to isolate problems, such as noise, and to isolate print-quality problems that are related to a toner cartridge.

NOTE: Do not remove or exchange the toner cartridge until after beginning the disable cartridge check diagnostic.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Diagnostic Tests
   - Disable Cartridge Check

Print/stop test

Learn about the print/stop test troubleshooting diagnostic.

Use this diagnostic test to isolate the cause of problems such as image-formation defects and jams within the engine.

During this test, stop the paper anywhere along the printer paper path. The test can be programmed to stop printing internal pages or an external print job when the paper reaches a certain position. The test

can also be programmed to stop from 0 to 60,000 ms. If the timer is set to a value that is greater than the job-print time, the printer can recover in one of two ways.

Printer recovery (print/stop test)

- After the print job is completed press the OK button to return to the Troubleshooting menu before the timer times out.
- After the timer times out, touch the Stop button. Activate the door switch to restart the engine and return it to a normal state.

Common print/stop test timing millisecond (ms) stops

- **600 ms**: The page has passed the registration area and the leading edge is just short of entering the fuser. The image can be seen on the paper but has not fused. If the defect is visible then the cause might be the drum, transfer roller, or a roller prior to, or in, the registration area.
- **1200 ms**: The leading edge is about 18mm (0.71 in) into the top output bin. The image has gone through the fuser. If the defect was not visible prior to the fuser, and is visible after the fuser, then the fuser it is the likely cause of the print quality defect. Inspect the fuser for damage, debris, or labels stuck to the fuser. Replace the fuser. Discuss media specifications and proper care of the fuser with the customer.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Diagnostic Tests
   - Print/Stop Test
3. Enter a range, and then touch the OK button.

Individual component diagnostics

Learn about printer individual component diagnostics.

Paper path test

Learn about the paper path test troubleshooting diagnostic.

This diagnostic test generates one or more test pages. Use these pages to isolate the cause of jams.

To isolate a problem, specify which input tray to use, and specify the number of copies to print. Print multiple copies to help isolate intermittent problems. The following options become available after beginning the diagnostic feature:

- Print Test Page: Run the paper-path test from the default settings: Tray 2, no duplex, and one copy. To specify other settings, scroll down the menu, and select the setting, and then scroll back up and select Print Test Page to start the test.
- Source Tray: Select Tray 1, Tray 2, or the optional tray.
- Number of Copies: Set the numbers of copies to be printed; the choices are 1, 10, 50, 100, or 500.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.

2. Open the following menus:
    - Troubleshooting
    - Diagnostic Tests
    - Paper Path Test
3. Select the paper path test options for the test.

Paper path sensors test

Learn about the paper path sensors test troubleshooting diagnostic.

This test displays the status of each paper path sensor and allows viewing of sensor status while printing internal pages.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
    - Troubleshooting
    - Diagnostic Tests
    - Paper Path Sensors
3. Touch the Start button to run the test.

Individual component test

Learn about the individual component test troubleshooting diagnostic.

This test activates individual parts independently to isolate problems.

Each component test can be performed once or repeatedly. If the Repeat option is enabled from the drop-down menu, the test cycles the component on and off. This process continues for two minutes, and then the test terminates.

NOTE: The cartridge door interlocks must be defeated to run the component tests. A control panel display prompt appears to indicate removing the toner cartridge, during certain tests.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
    - Troubleshooting
    - Diagnostic Tests
    - Component Test
3. Select the component test options for the test.

Manual sensor test

Learn about the manual sensor test troubleshooting diagnostic.

The Manual Sensor Test screen shows the sensor number, sensor name (model specific), sensor state (active or inactive), and the number of times the sensor has been toggled (activated).

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Diagnostic Tests
   - Manual Sensor Test
3. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
   - The State virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.
   - The Toggle virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).

     For example, opening a door increments the appropriate sensor item count two times—once when the door is opened, and once when the door is closed.

Tray/bin manual sensor test

Learn about the tray/bin manual sensor test troubleshooting diagnostic.

The Tray/Bin Manual Sensor Test screen shows the sensor number, sensor name (model specific), sensor state (active or inactive), and the number of times the sensor has been toggled (activated).

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Diagnostic Tests
   - Tray/Bin Manual Sensor Test
3. Activate the desired sensor, and then check the control panel display to verify the sensor state (active or inactive).
   - The State virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green when the sensor is active.
   - The Toggle virtual LED next to the sensor number and sensor name illuminates green after the sensor is activated and increments by one each time the sensor is interrupted (activated or deactivated).

     For example, opening a door increments the appropriate sensor item count two times—once when the door is opened, and once when the door is closed.

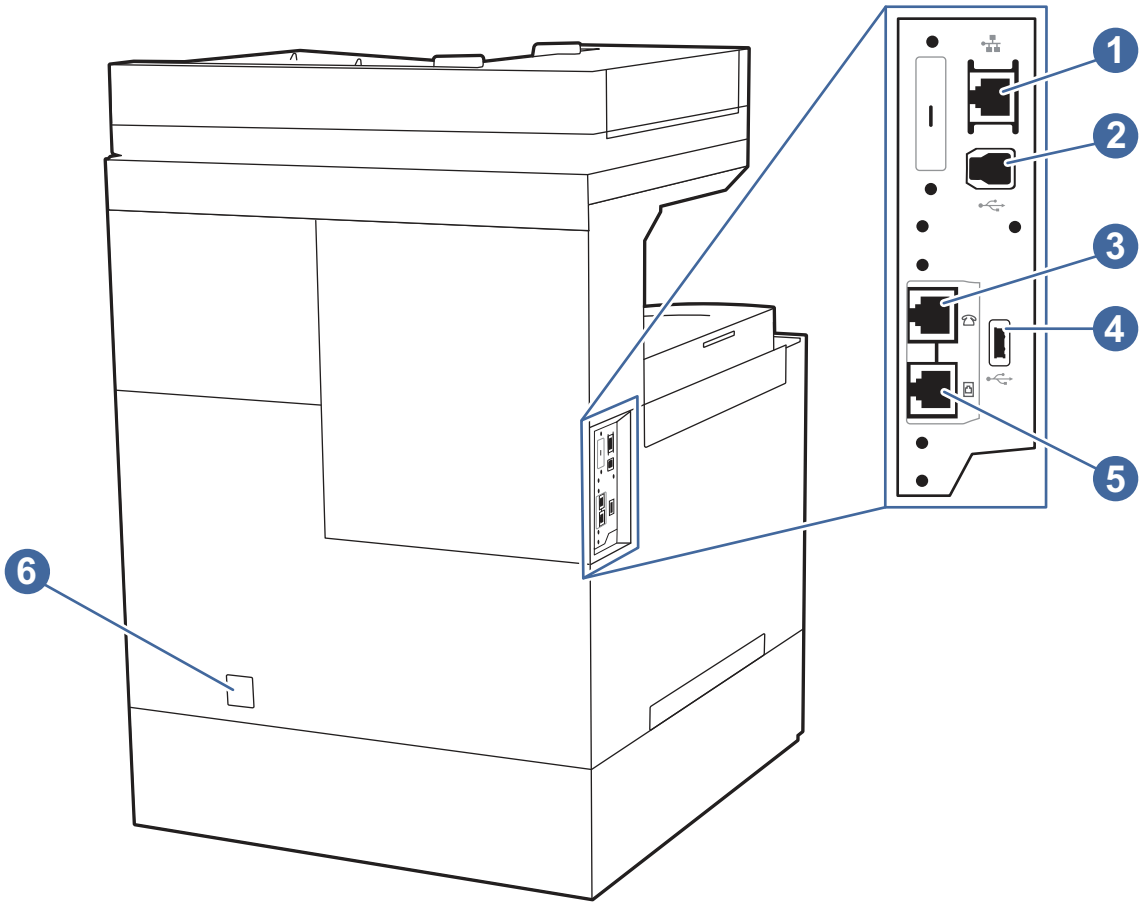
Diagrams: Block diagrams

View block diagrams for the printer.

Diagrams: External plug and port locations

View printer external plugs and ports diagrams.

Figure 3-30 External plug and port locations



Item	Description
1	Local area network (LAN) Ethernet (RJ-45) network port
2	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 interface port
3	**Fax MFP models only**: Telephone "line out" port (for attaching an extension phone, answering machine, or other device) NOTE: This port should remain covered when not in use.
4	SuperSpeed USB 3.0 host port (for job storage and private printing) NOTE: This port should remain covered when not in use.
5	**Fax MFP models only**: Fax "line in" port (for attaching the fax phone line to the printer)
6	Power connection

Sensors and switches

View printer and paper feeder sensor and switch diagrams.

Sensors and switches, printer base

Figure 3-31 Sensors and switches, printer base

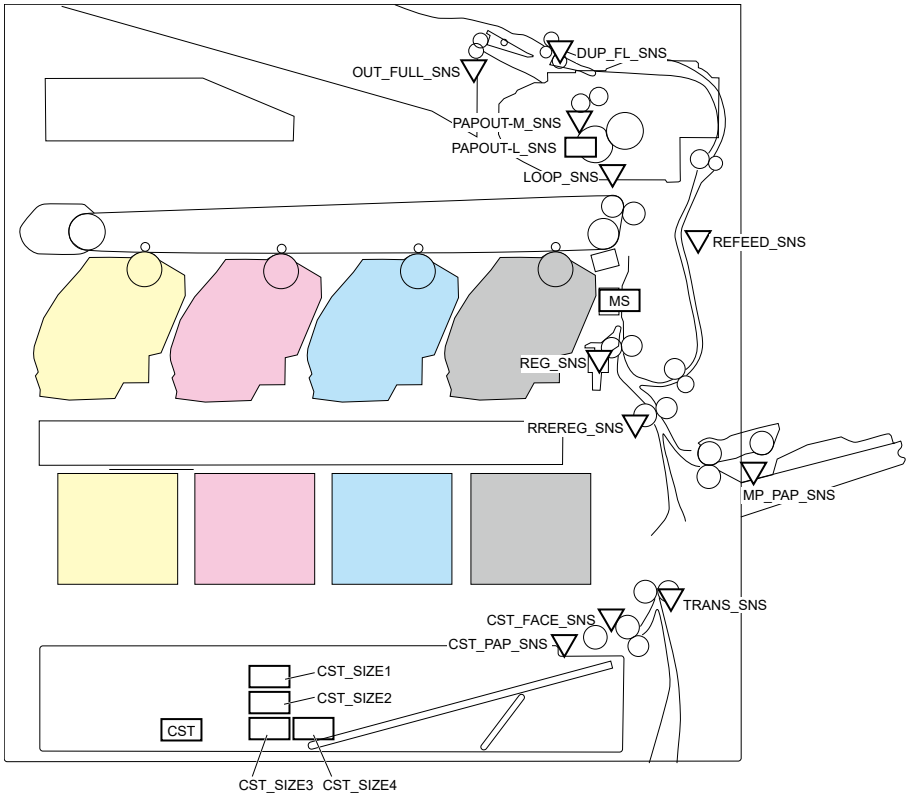


Table 3-6 Sensors and switches, printer base

Abbreviation	Component
CST_SIZE1 (X557/X57945 models only)	Tray 2 media size switch 1
CST_SIZE2 (X557/X57945 models only)	Tray 2 media size switch 2
CST_SIZE3 (X557/X57945 models only)	Tray 2 media size switch 3
CST_SIZE4 (X557/X57945 models only)	Tray 2 media size switch 4
CST (5700/5800 models only)	Tray 2 cassette presence switch
DUP_FL_SNS	Duplex flapper position sensor
OUT_FULL_SNS	FD1 media full sensor
CST_PAP_SNS	Tray 2 media out sensor
CST_FACE_SNS	Tray 2 media surface sensor
LOOP_SNS	Fuser loop sensor
REFEED_SNS (X557/X57945 models only)	Duplex feed sensor
REG_SNS	Registration sensor
MP_PAP_SNS	Tray 1 media out sensor
PAPOUT-M_SNS	Fuser output sensor 2
TRANS_SNS (X57945 models only)	Tray 2 feed sensor

Table 3-6 Sensors and switches, printer base (continued)

Abbreviation	Component
MS (Media sensor PCA)	Media sensor
PAPOUT-L_SNS	Fuser output sensor 1

Sensors and switches, 550-sheet paper feeder

Figure 3-32 Sensors and switches, 550-sheet paper feeder

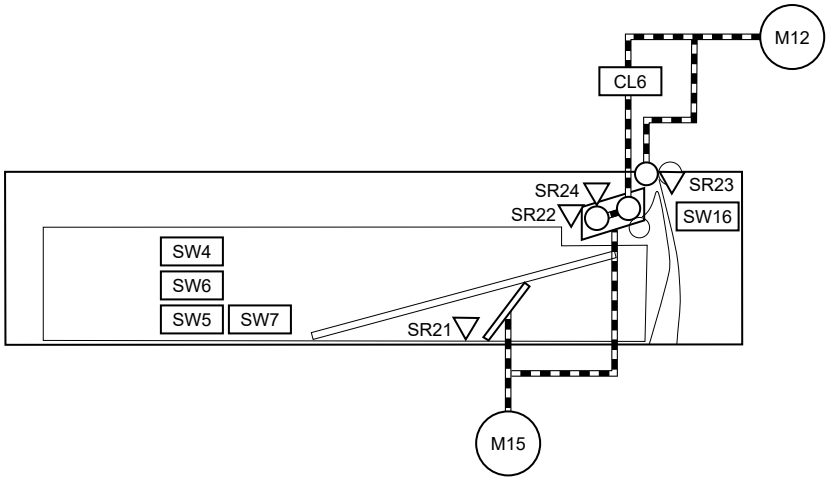


Table 3-7 Sensors and switches, 550-sheet paper feeder

Abbreviation	Component name
SW4	Paper feeder media size switch 1
SW5	Paper feeder media size switch 2
SW6	Paper feeder media size switch 3
SW7	Paper feeder media size switch 4
SW16	Paper feeder door switch
SR21	Paper feeder lifter motor rotation sensor
SR22	Paper feeder media out sensor
SR23	Paper feeder feed sensor
SR24	Paper feeder media surface sensor

Sensors and switches, HCI

Figure 3-33 Sensors and switches, HCI

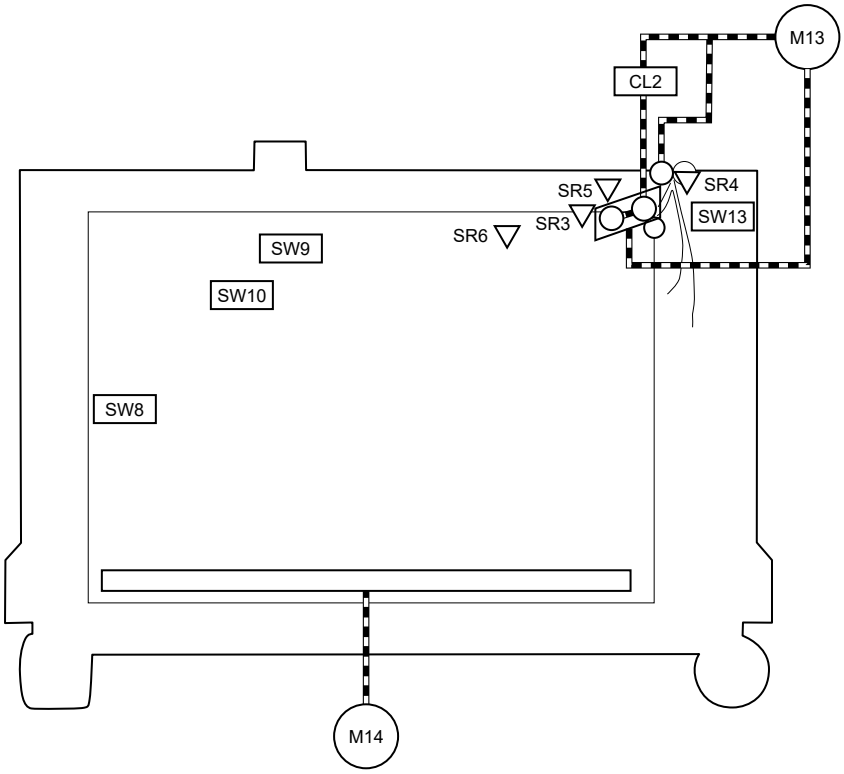


Table 3-8 Sensors and switches, HCI

Abbreviation	Component name
SW8	HCI cassette lifting plate position switch
SW9	HCI cassette media size switch 1
SW10	HCI cassette media size switch 2
SW13	HCI door switch
SR3	HCI cassette media out sensor
SR4	HCI feed sensor
SR5	HCI cassette media surface sensor
SR6	HCI cassette pickup rotation sensor

Sensors and switches, 3-bin stapler-stacker

Figure 3-34 Sensors and switches, 3-bin stapler-stacker

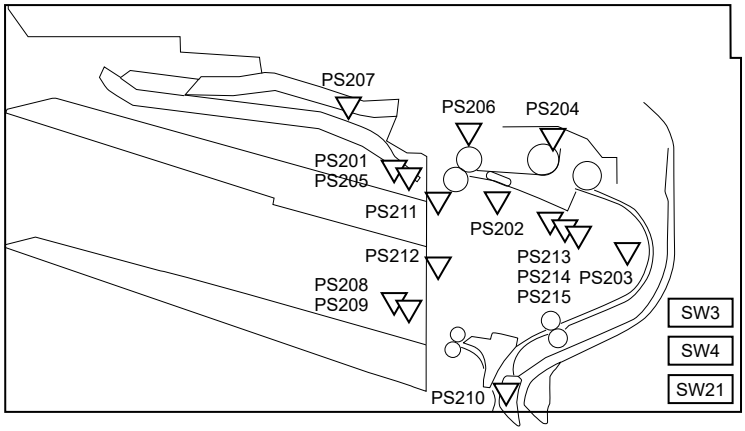


Table 3-9 Sensors and switches, 3-bin stapler-stacker

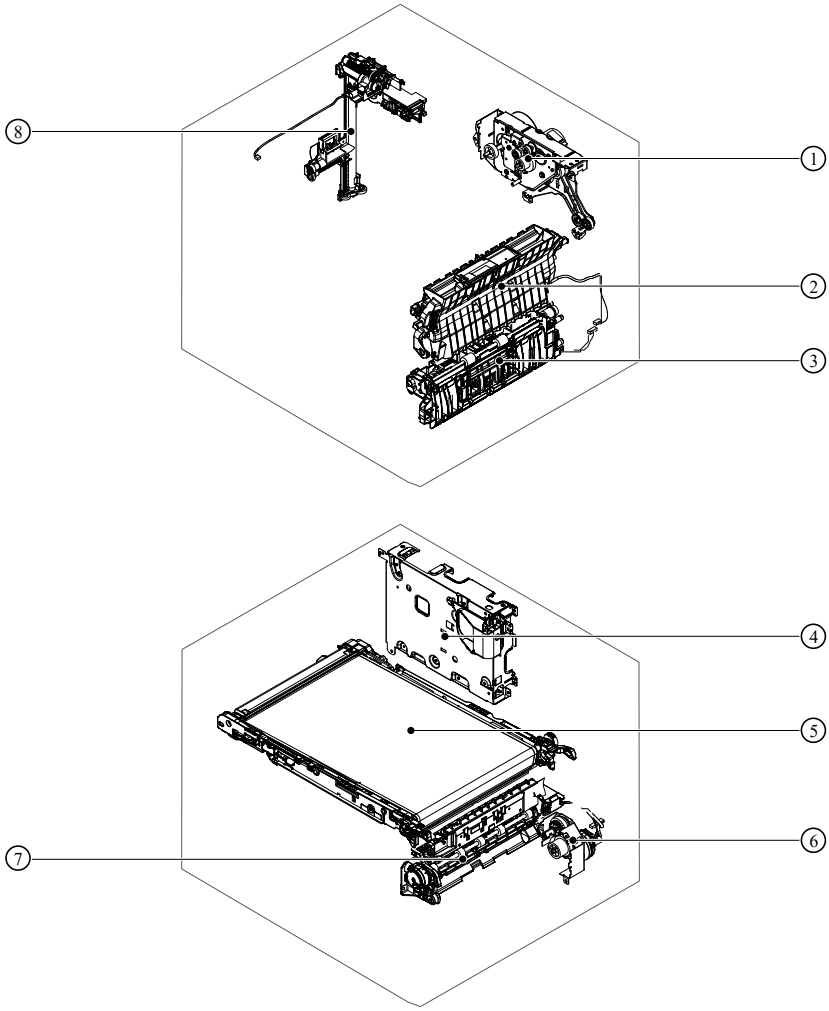
Abbreviation	Component name
PS201	Bin 1 media presence sensor
PS202	Stapler-stacker exit sensor
PS203	Staple inlet sensor
PS204	Y alignment home position sensor
PS205	Bin 1 media full sensor 1
PS206	Alienation home position sensor
PS207	Jogger home position sensor
PS208	Bin 2 media presence sensor
PS209	Bin 2 media full sensor
PS210	Stapler-stacker inlet sensor
PS211	Bin 1 upper limit sensor
PS212	Bin 1 lower limit sensor
PS213	Staple low sensor
PS214	Staple ready sensor
PS215	Staple home position sensor
SW3	Stapler-stacker door switch
SW4	Staple door switch
SW21	Interlock switch

Diagrams: Major component locations

View printer major component locations diagrams.

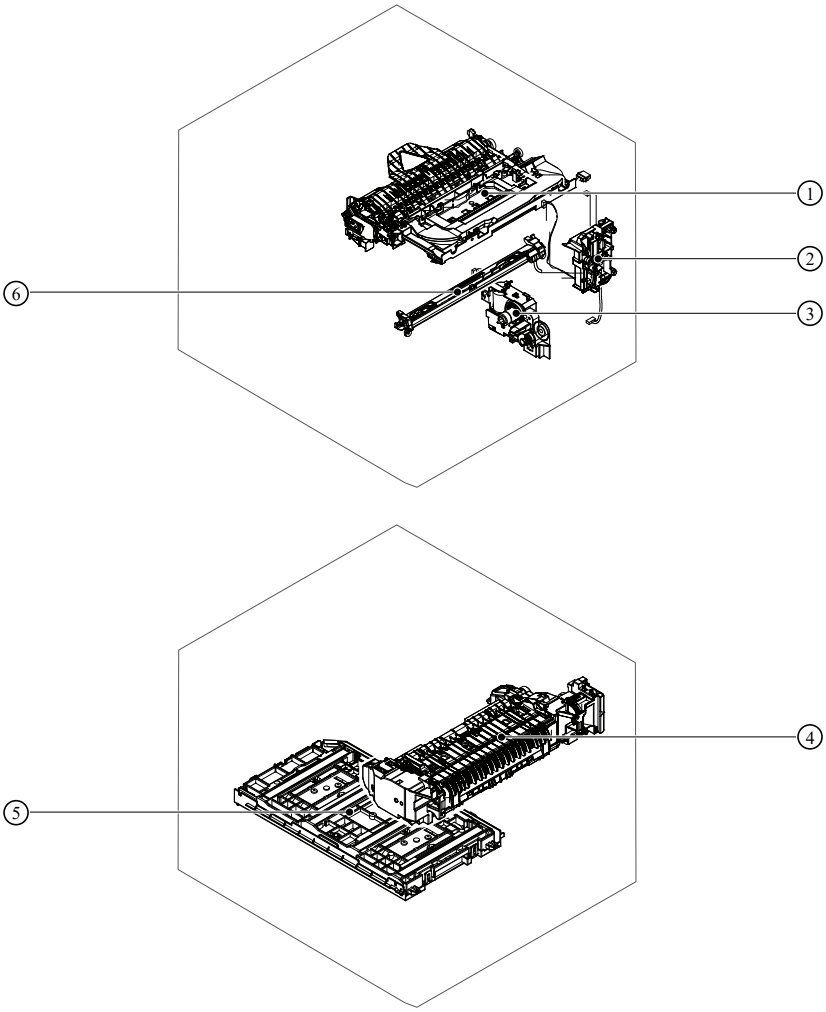
Major components, printer base

Figure 3-35 Major components, printer base (1 of 5)



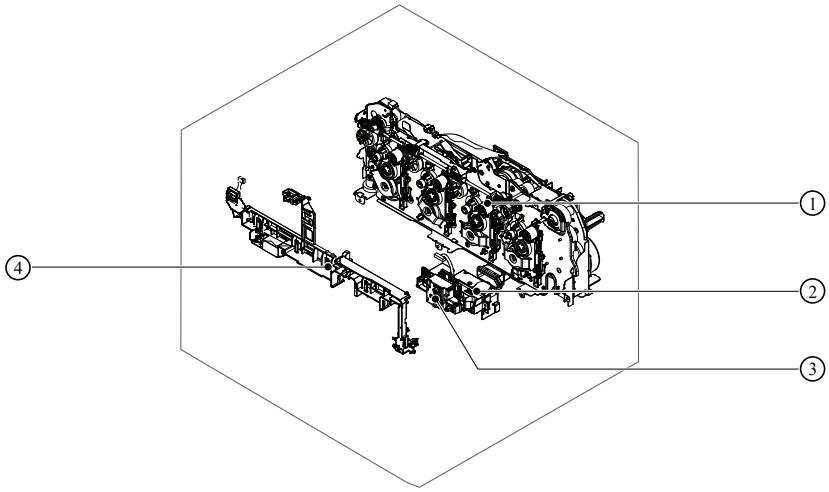
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Fuser drive assembly	5	Intermediate transfer belt (ITB) assembly
2	Secondary transfer (T2) assembly	6	Pickup drive assembly
3	Pickup assembly	7	Registration assembly
4	Formatter cage assembly	8	Waste toner duct assembly

Figure 3-36 Major components, printer base (2 of 5)



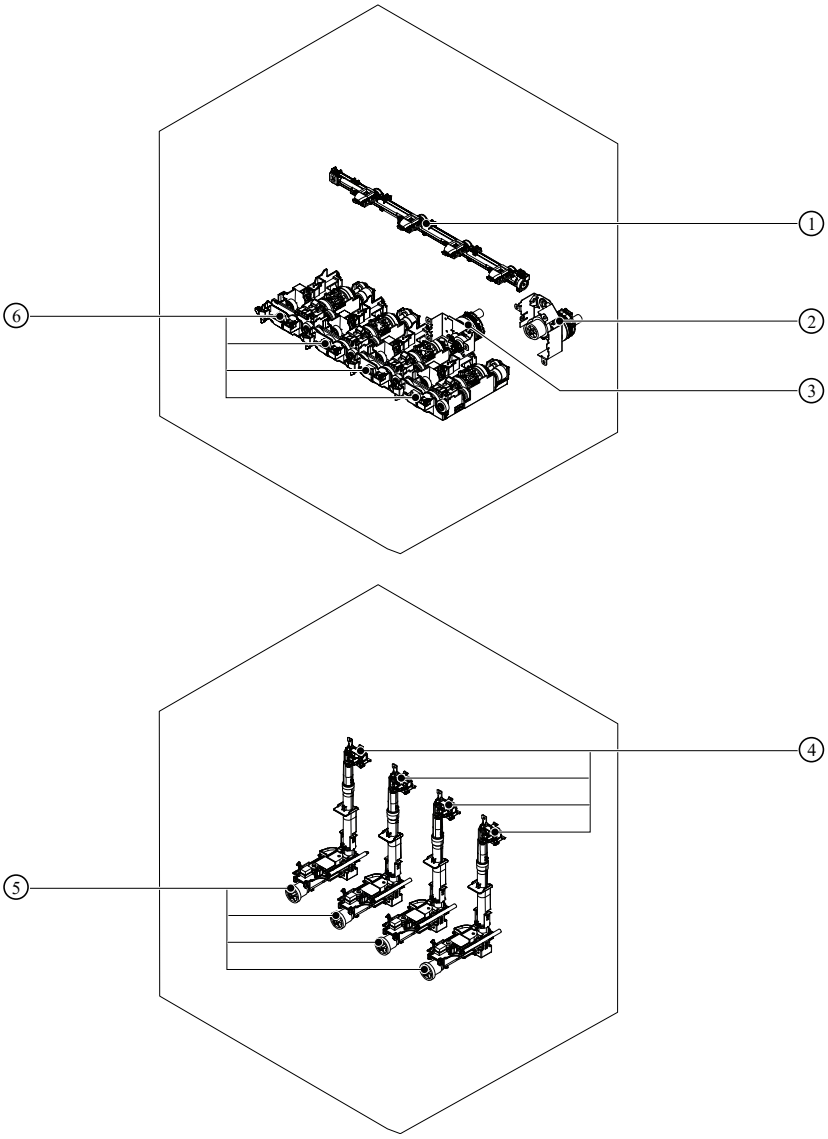
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Delivery assembly	4	Fuser
2	Interlock assembly	5	Laser scanner assembly
3	Lifter drive assembly	6	Registration density sensor assembly

Figure 3-37 Major components, printer base (3 of 5)



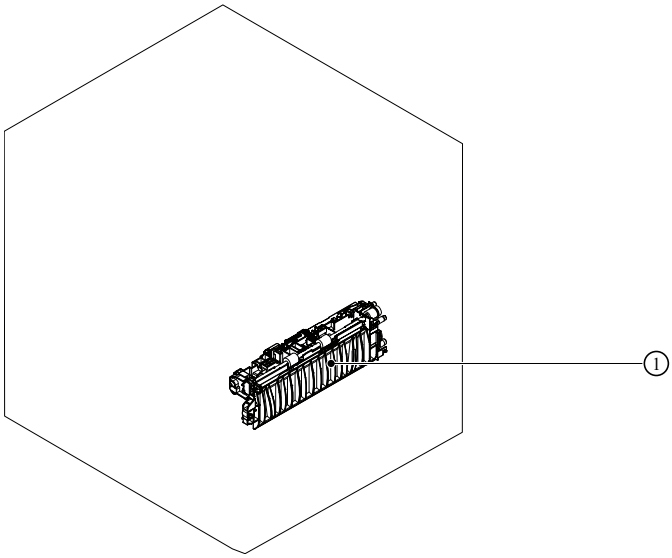
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Main drive assembly	3	Tray 2 media size detect assembly
2	Auto close assembly	4	Pre-exposure PCA holder assembly

Figure 3-38 Major components, printer base (4 of 5)



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Waste toner feed assembly (X57945 models)	4	Toner supply assembly (X57945 models)
2	Feed drive assembly (X57945 models)	5	Toner supply buffer assembly/ intermediate pipe (X57945 models)
3	Toner supply motor assembly (X57945 models)	6	Toner supply drive assembly (X57945 models)

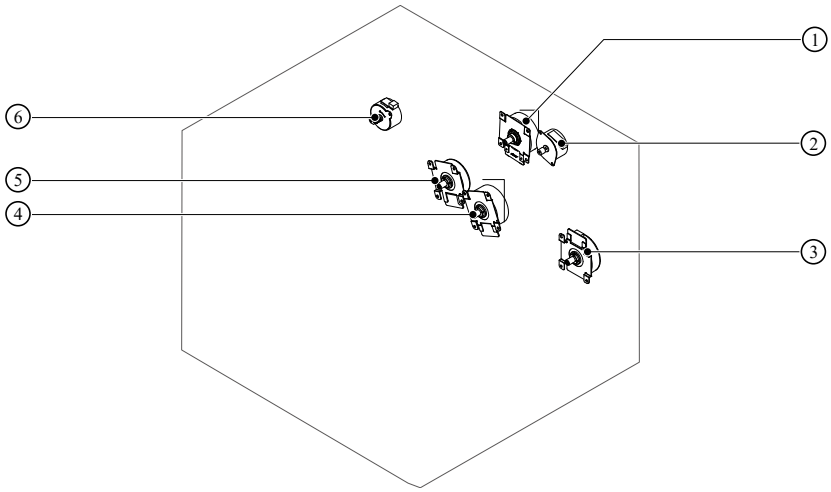
Figure 3-39 Major components, printer base (5 of 5)



Item	Description
1	Feed assembly (X57945 models)

Motors, printer base

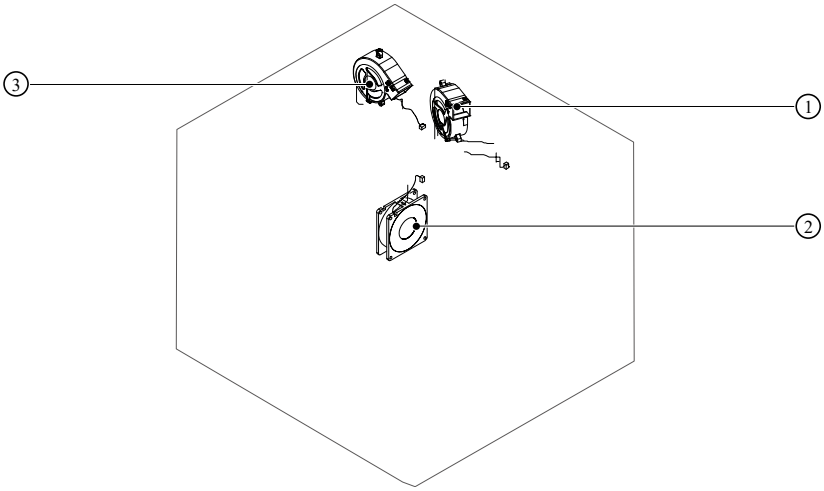
Figure 3-40 Motors, printer base



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Fuser motor	4	Developer motor
2	Duplex motor	5	Drum motor
3	ITB motor	6	Developer alienation motor

Fans, printer base

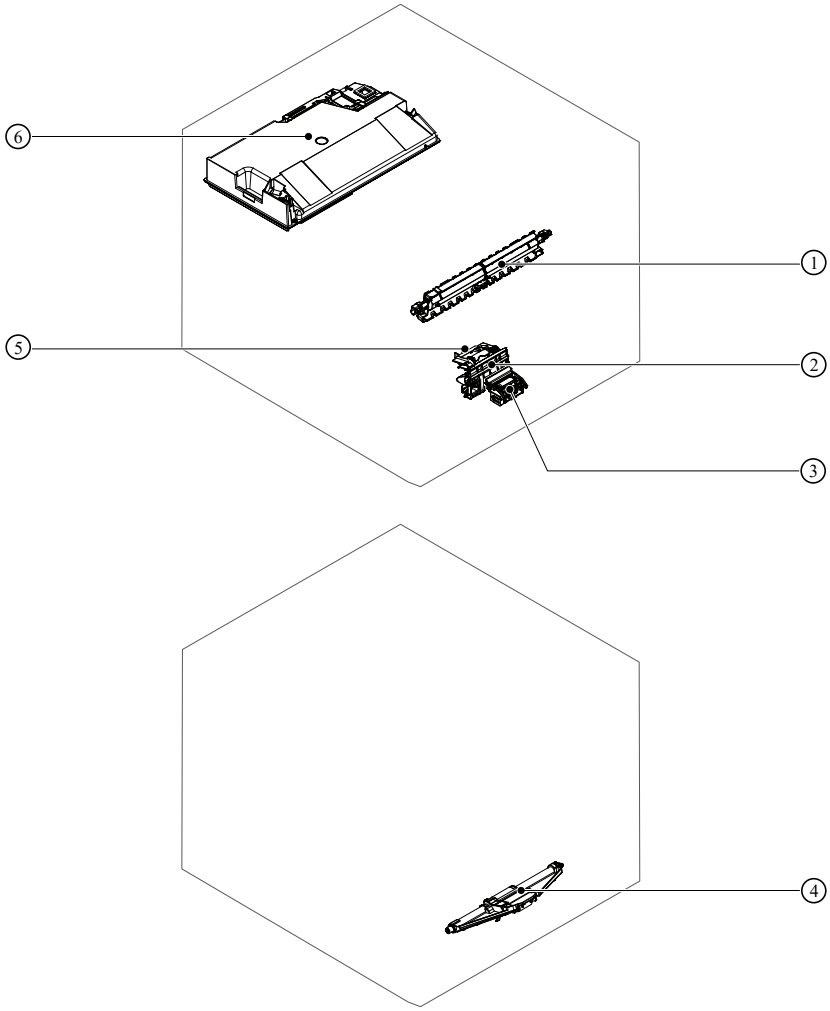
Figure 3-41 Fans, printer base



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Fuser fan	3	Cartridge fan
2	Power supply fan		

Rollers and toner collection unit, printer base

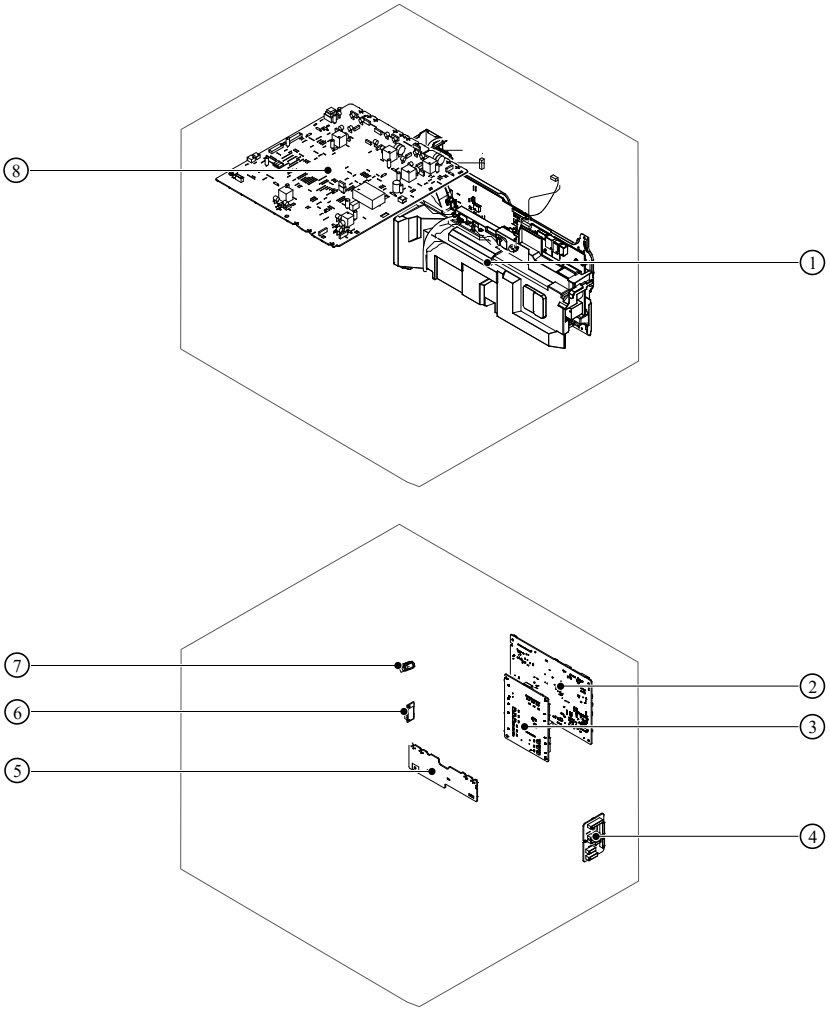
Figure 3-42 Rollers and toner collection unit, printer base



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Secondary transfer roller assembly	4	Tray 1 pickup roller assembly
2	Tray 2 separation roller assembly	5	Tray 2 pickup roller assembly
3	Tray 1 separation roller assembly	6	Toner collection unit

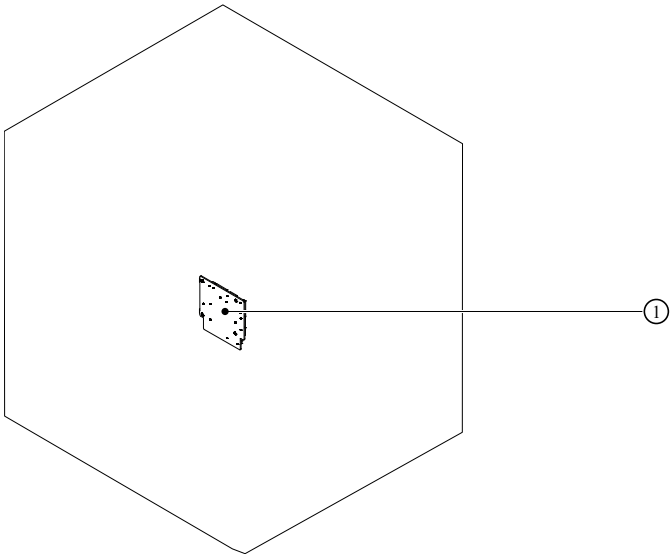
Printed circuit assemblies, printer base

Figure 3-43 Printed circuit assemblies, printer base (1 of 2)



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Low-voltage power supply	5	Rear PCA
2	DC controller	6	Environment sensor PCA
3	Drive PCA	7	Drum home position sensor PCA
4	Right PCA	8	High-voltage power supply

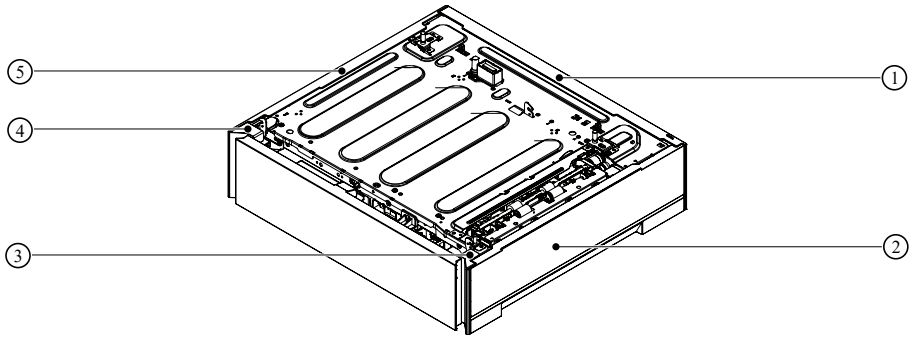
Figure 3-44 Printed circuit assemblies, printer base (2 of 2)



Item	Description
1	Feed/toner supply controller PCA

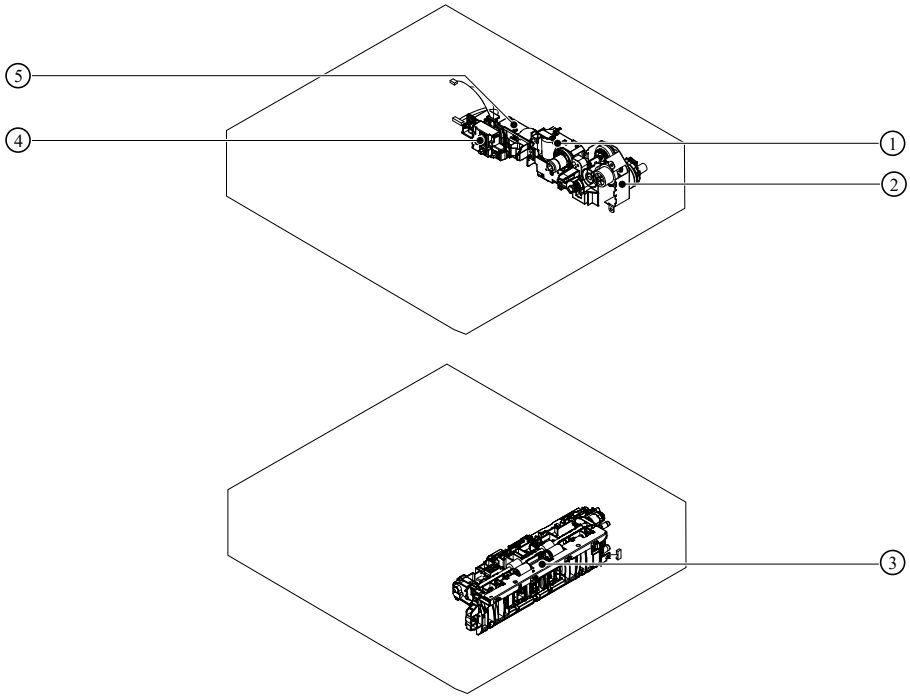
Major components, 550-sheet paper feeder

Figure 3-45 Covers and doors, 550-sheet paper feeder



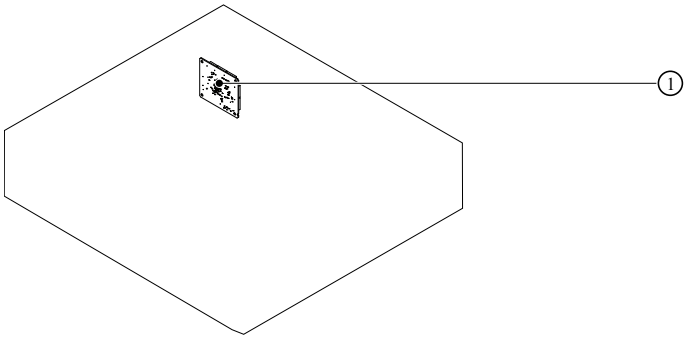
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Rear cover	4	Front left cover
2	Right door	5	Left cover
3	Front right cover		

Figure 3-46 Major parts, 550-sheet paper feeder



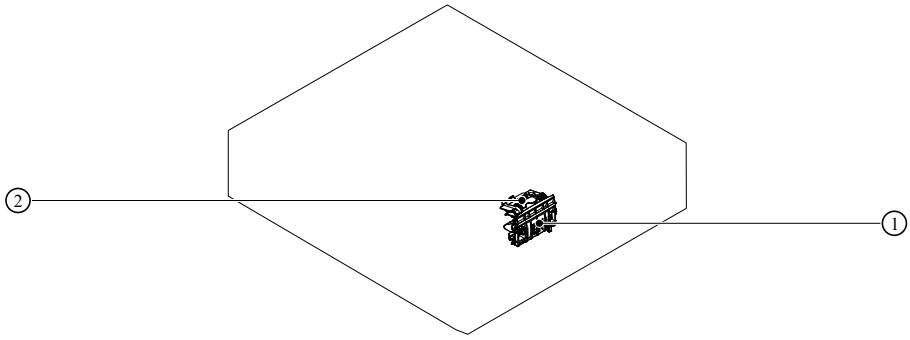
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Lifter drive assembly	4	Paper feeder cassette media size detect assembly
2	Pickup drive assembly	5	Auto close assembly
3	Pickup assembly		

Figure 3-47 Printed circuit assemblies, 550-sheet paper feeder



Item	Description
1	Controller PCA

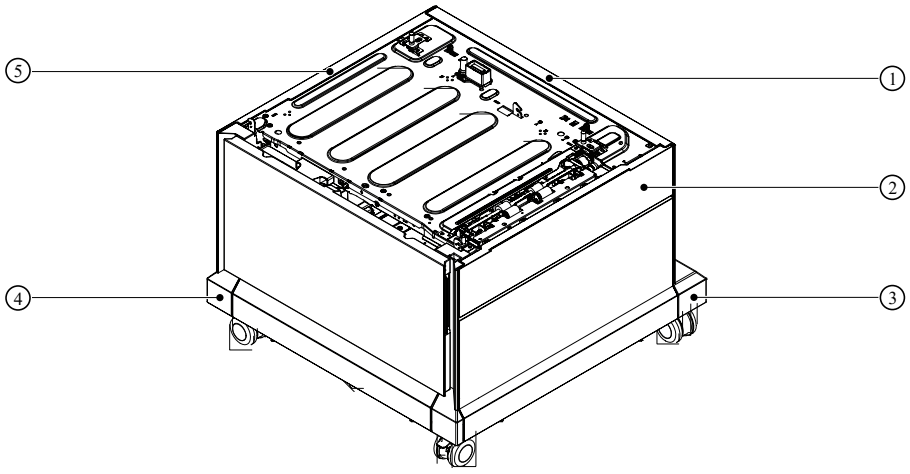
Figure 3-48 Cassette assemblies, 550-sheet paper feeder



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Cassette separation roller assembly	2	Cassette pickup roller assembly

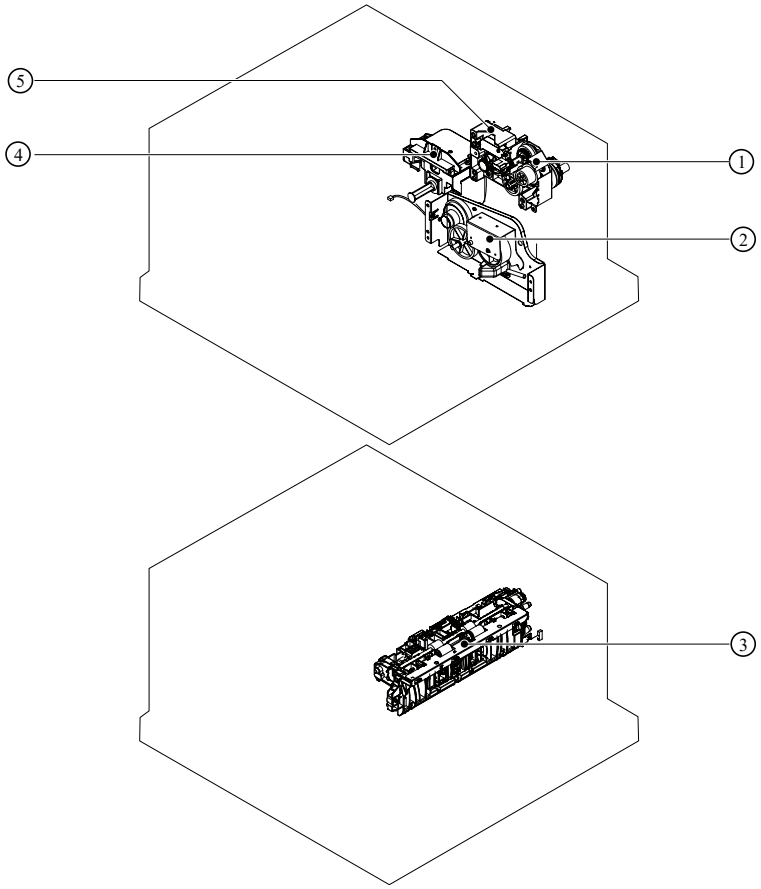
Major components, HCI

Figure 3-49 Doors and covers, HCI



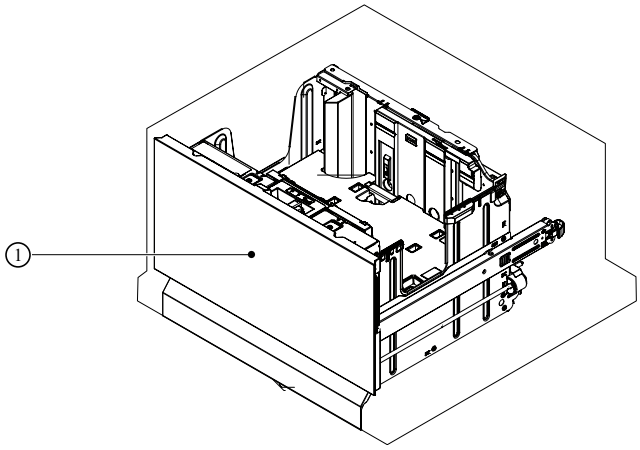
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Rear cover	4	Front left cover
2	Right door	5	Left cover
3	Rear lower cover		

Figure 3-50 Main parts, HCI (1 of 2)



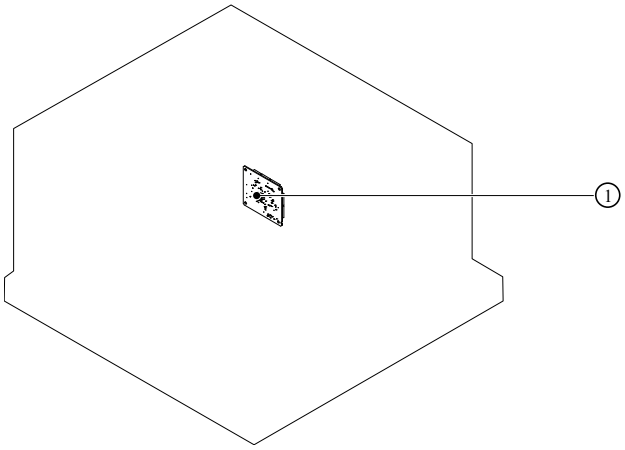
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Pickup drive assembly	4	Auto close assembly
2	Lifter drive assembly	5	Pickup alienation assembly
3	Pickup assembly		

Figure 3-51 Main parts, HCI (2 of 2)



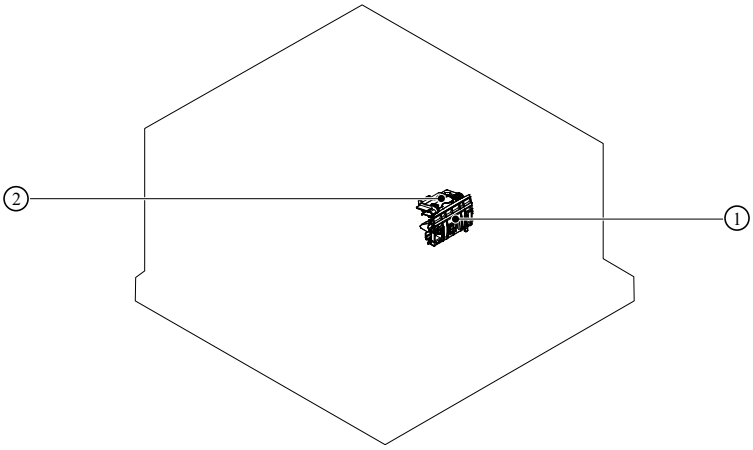
Item	Description
1	Cassette assembly

Figure 3-52 Printed circuit assemblies, HCI



Item	Description
1	Controller PCA

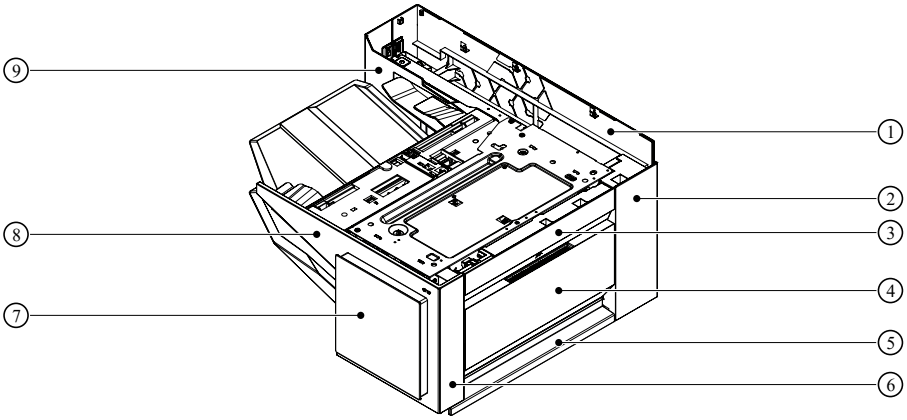
Figure 3-53 Cassette assemblies, HCI



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Cassette separation roller assembly	2	Cassette pickup roller assembly

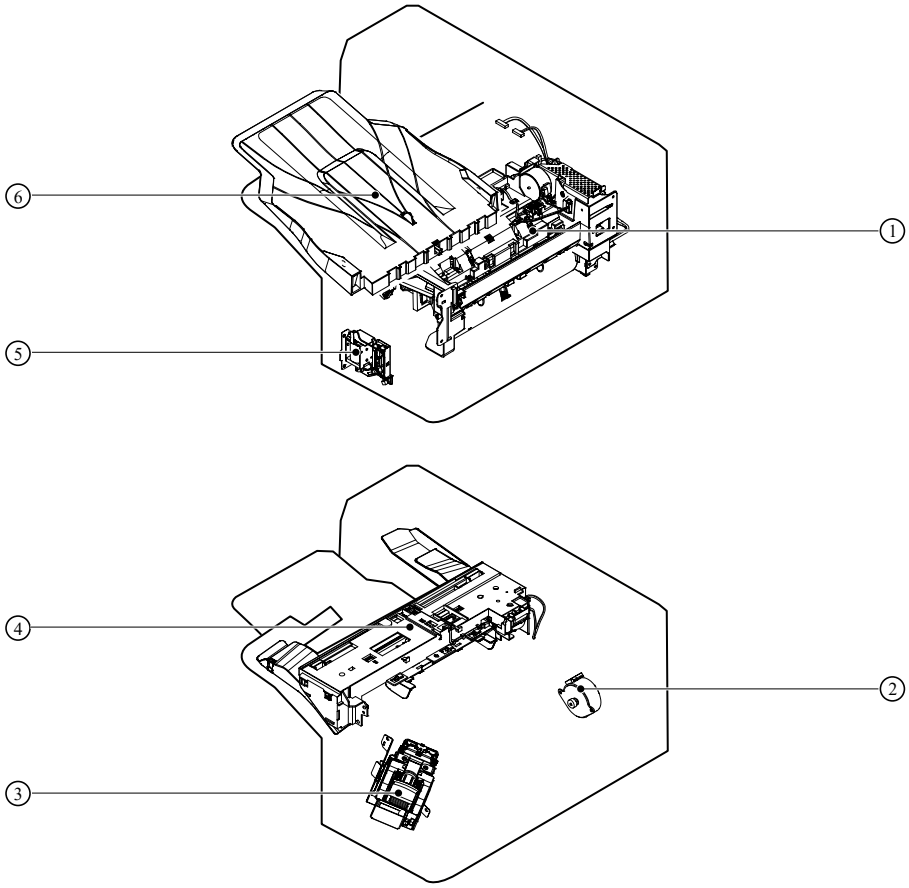
Major components, 3-bin stapler-stacker

Figure 3-54 Doors and covers, 3-bin stapler-stacker



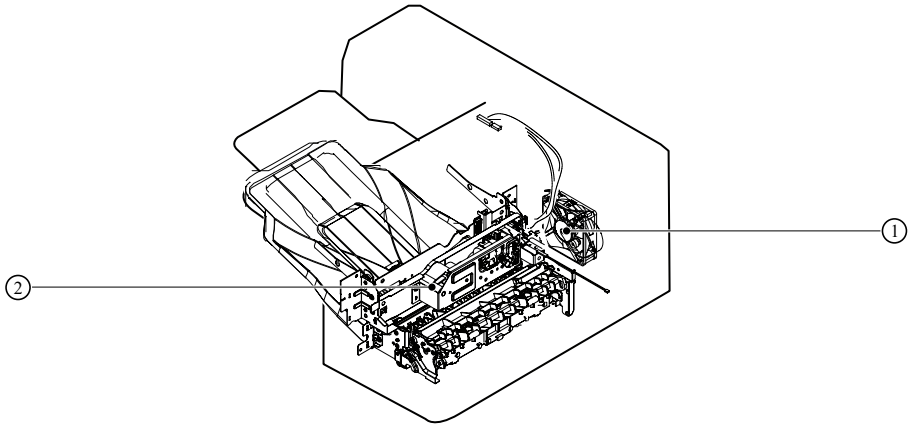
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Rear cover	6	Staple rear cover
2	Right corner cover	7	Staple door
3	Right upper cover	8	Staple cover
4	Stapler-stacker door	9	Rear inner cover
5	Right lower cover		

Figure 3-55 Main parts, 3-bin stapler-stacker (1 of 2)



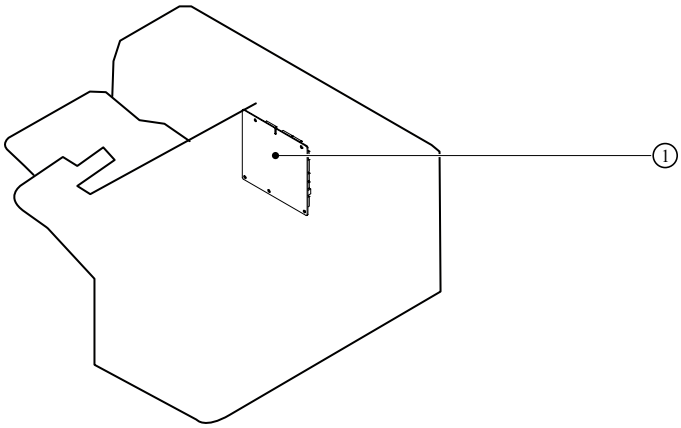
Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Upper feed assembly	4	Jogger assembly
2	Stapler-stacker feed motor	5	Solenoid assembly
3	Stapler assembly	6	Output bin 1 assembly

Figure 3-56 Main parts, 3-bin stapler-stacker (2 of 2)



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	MBM fan	2	Lower feed assembly

Figure 3-57 Printed circuit assemblies, 3-bin stapler-stacker



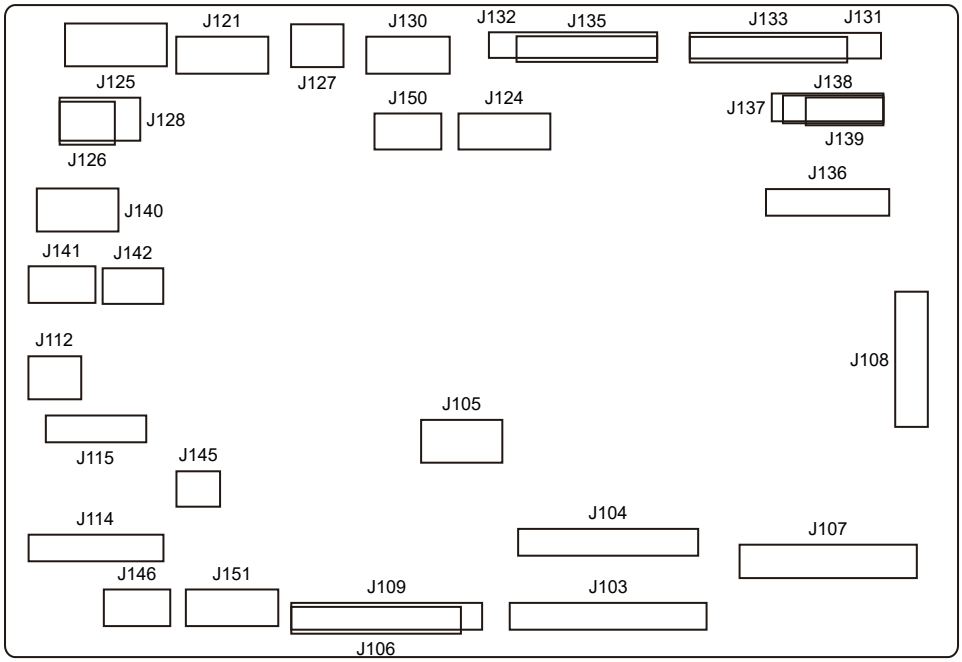
Item	Description
1	Controller PCA

Printed circuit assembly (PCA) connector locations

View printed circuit assembly (PCA) diagrams.

DC controller PCA connections

Figure 3-58 DC controller PCA connections

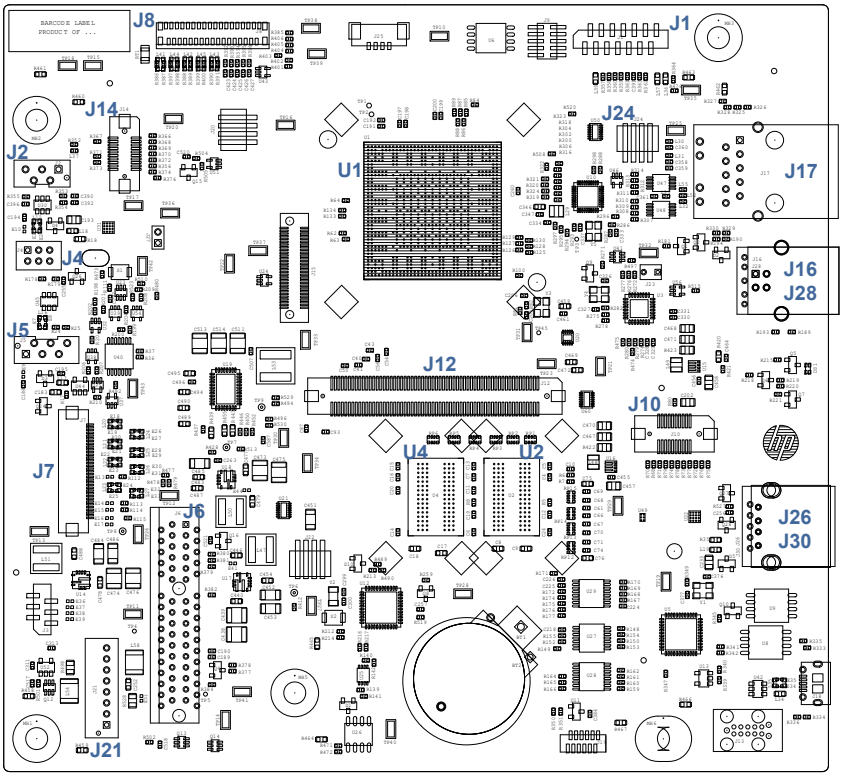


Item	Description	Item	Description
J103	Drive PCA	J130	Drive PCA
J104	Drive PCA	J131	High-voltage power supply (X57945 models)
J105	Formatter	J132	High-voltage power supply (X57945 models)
J106	Not used	J133	High-voltage power supply (5700/ X557/5800 models)
J107	Laser scanner assembly	J135	High-voltage power supply (5700/ X557/5800 models)
J108	Formatter	J136	Rear PCA
J109	Low-voltage power supply	J137	Rear PCA (X557 models)
J112	Front door switch Right door switch	J138	Rear PCA (5700/5800 models)
J114	Right PCA	139	Rear PCA (X57945 models)
J115	Right PCA	J140	Not used
J121	Duplex flapper solenoid FD1 media full sensor Duplex flapper position sensor	J141	Not used
J124	Output accessory (MFP models)	J142	Not used
J125	Fuser	J145	Not used

Item	Description	Item	Description
J126	Not used	J146	Not used
J127	Duplex motor	J150	Cartridge access release motor (X557 models) Cartridge access home position sensor (X557 models)
J128	Fuser	J151	E-label (X57945 models)

Formatter PCA connections

Figure 3-59 Formatter PCA connections

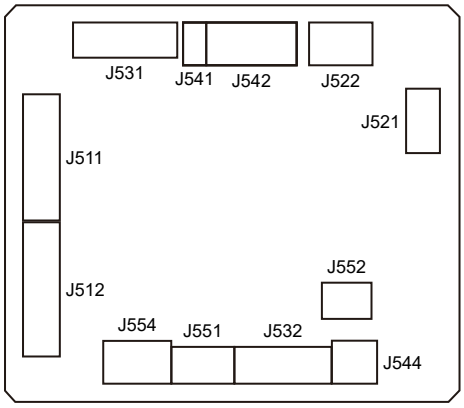


Item	Description	Item	Description
J1	WiFi	J16	USB device
J2	Island of Data (IOD)	J17	LAN
J4	USB (walk-up)	J21	Engine power
J5	UISB (HIP)	J24	BASH
J6	HDD riser	J26	USB host
J7	Engine VIF	J28	USB device
J8	Control panel	J30	USB host
J10	eMMC	U1	ASIC
J12	DIMM	U2	Memory

Item	Description	Item	Description
J14	Trusted Platform Module (TPM)	U4	Memory

550-sheet paper feeder PCA connectors

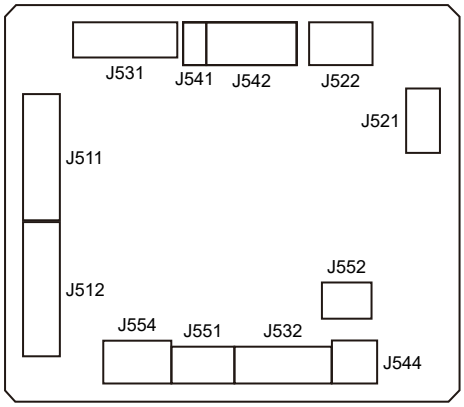
Figure 3-60 550-sheet paper feeder PCA connectors



Item	Description	Item	Description
J511	Printer or paper feeder	J541	Media size switch 1 Media size switch 2 Media size switch 3 Media size switch 4
J512	Not used	J542	Not used
J521	Not used	J544	Door switch
J522	Not used	J551	Lifter motor Lifter motor rotation sensor
J531	Feed motor Pickup clutch	J552	Not used
J532	Media out sensor Feed sensor Media surface sensor	J554	Not used

HCI controller PCA connectors

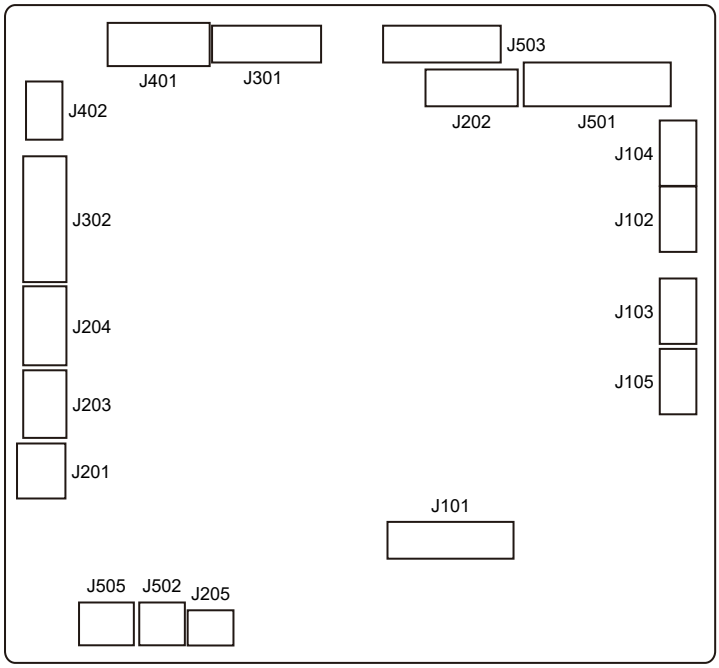
Figure 3-61 HCI controller PCA connectors



Item	Description	Item	Description
J511	Printer or paper feeder	J541	Not used
J512	Not used	J542	Media size switch 1 Media size switch 2 Lifting plate position switch
J521	Not used	J544	Door switch
J522	Not used	J551	Not used
J531	Feed motor Pickup clutch	J552	Lifter motor rotation sensor
J532	Media out sensor Feed sensor Media surface sensor	J554	Lifter motor

3-bin stapler-stacker controller PCA connectors

Figure 3-62 3-bin stapler-stacker controller PCA connectors



Item	Description	Item	Description
J101	Printer	J205	Staple door switch
J102	Not used	J301	Stapler-stacker output motor Y alignment home position sensor Bin 1 media full sensor 1
J103	Not used	J302	Y alignment motor Alienation home position sensor Stapler-stacker door switch
J104	Not used	J401	Jogger motor Jogger home position sensor
J105	Not used	J402	Stapler-stacker feed motor
J201	Interlock switch	J501	Bin 2 media presence sensor Bin 2 media full sensor Stapler-stacker inlet sensor Bin 2 flapper solenoid
J202	Lifter motor Bin 1 upper limit sensor Bin 1 lower limit sensor SS inlet sensor	J502	Inlet flapper solenoid

Item	Description	Item	Description
J203	Staple motor	J503	Bin 1 media presence sensor
			Stapler-stacker exit sensor
			Staple inlet sensor
			Stamp solenoid
J204	Staple low sensor	J505	Fan
	Staple ready sensor		
	Staple home position sensor		

Internal test and information pages

Learn about printer test and information pages.

Configuration and Jetdirect page

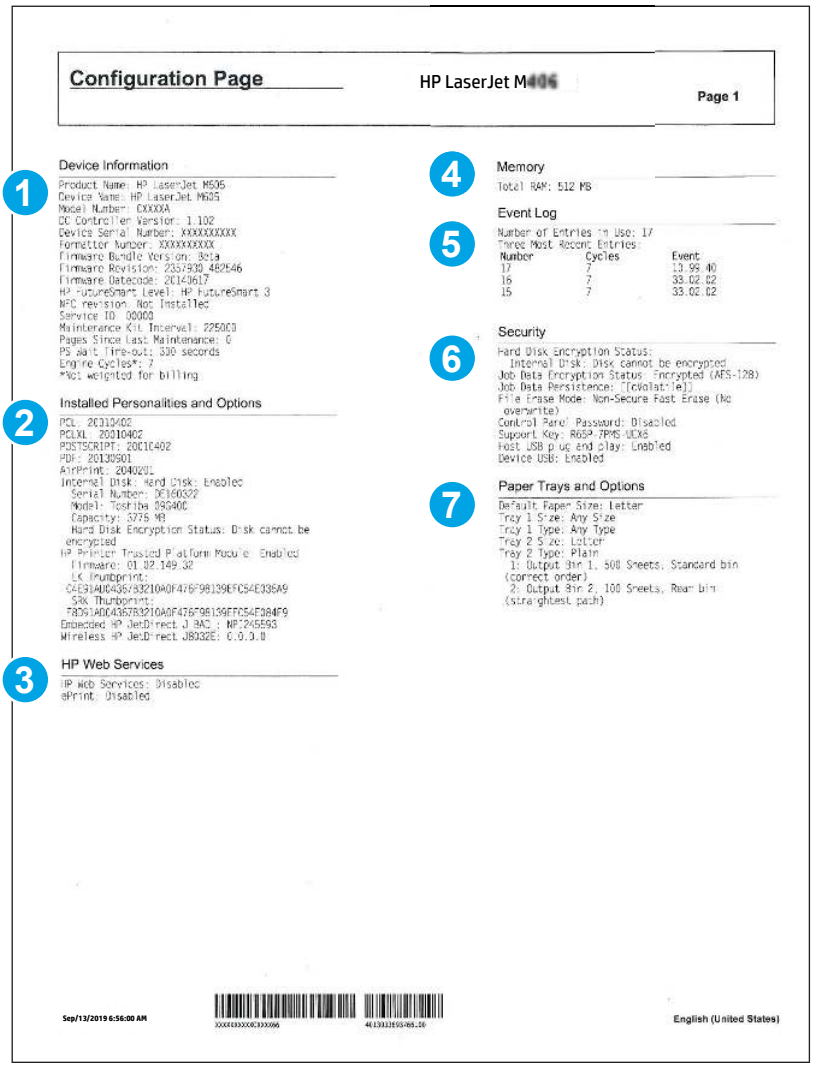
Print and find printer information on configuration and HP embedded Jetdirect information pages.

NOTE: Depending on the model, up to three pages print when printing a configuration page. In addition to the main configuration page, the HP embedded Jetdirect configuration and the wireless pages print.

Print the configuration page from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Configuration/Status pages
3. Touch Configuration Page to select it.
4. Touch the print icon  to print the pages.

Figure 3-63 Configuration page



Item	Description	Item	Description
1	Device information	5	Event log
2	Installed personalities and options	6	Security
3	HP Web services	7	Paper trays and options
4	Memory		

Certain information, such as the firmware date codes, the IP address, and the email gateways, is especially helpful while servicing the printer. This information is on the various configuration pages.

Table 3-10 Important information on the configuration pages

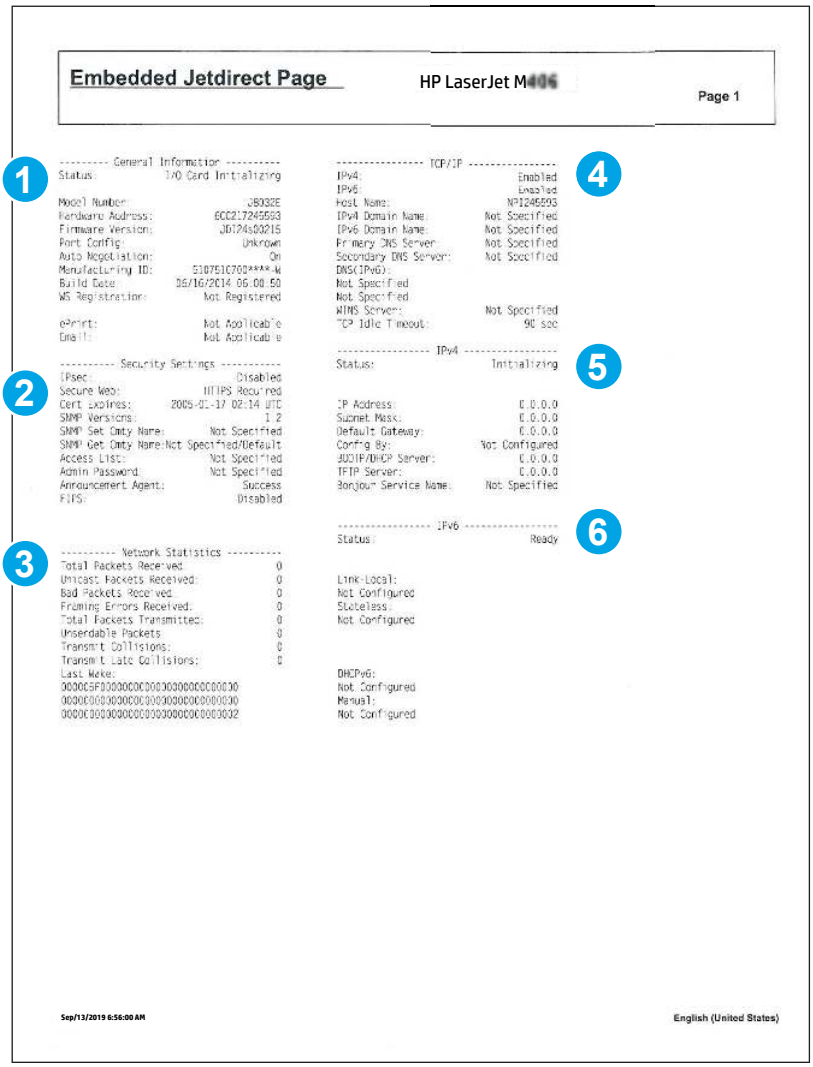
Type of information	Specific information	Configuration page
Firmware Bundle Version	Firmware information	Main configuration page (Device information)

Table 3-10 **Important information on the configuration pages (continued)**

Type of information	Specific information	Configuration page
Firmware Revision	Firmware information	Main configuration page (Device information)
Firmware Datecode	Firmware information	Main configuration page (Device information)
Accessories and internal storage All optional devices that are installed on the printer should be listed on the main configuration page. Separate pages print for the optional paper handling devices and the fax accessory. These pages list more-detailed information for those devices.	Optional installed formatter devices and accessories information	Main configuration page (Installed Personalities and Options)
Memory	Total RAM information	Main configuration page (Memory)
Tray and bin information	Size and type by tray (including installed optional paper feeders) information	Main configuration page (Paper Trays and Options)
Engine cycles, service ID, and cartridge information	Engine information	Main configuration page (Device Information)
Event-log information	Error information	Main configuration page (Event Log)

The second configuration page is the HP embedded Jetdirect page, which contains the following information:

Figure 3-64 HP embedded Jetdirect page



Item	Description
1	General Information indicates the printer status, model number, hardware firmware version, port select, port configuration, auto negotiation, manufacturing identification, and manufactured date.
2	Security Settings information
3	Network Statistics indicates the total packets received, unicast packets received, bad packets received, framing errors received, total packets transmitted, unsendable packets, transmit collisions, and transmit late collisions.
4	TCP/IP information, including the IP address
5	IPv4 information
6	IPv6 information

Reports menu

Learn about the control-panel Reports menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Reports menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch the printer icon .

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

NOTE: The View option is control-panel type dependent (might not be available).

Table 3-11 Reports menu

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	Settings Menu Map	Cancel View Print	Shows a map of the entire control panel system and the selected values for each setting.
Configuration/Status Pages	Current Settings Page	Cancel View Print	Shows a summary of the current settings for the printer. This might be helpful if you plan to make changes and need a record of the present configuration.
Configuration/Status Pages	Configuration Page	Cancel View Print	Shows the printer settings and installed accessories.
Configuration/Status Pages	How to Connect Page	Cancel View Print	Shows the network information typically needed to connect the printer to a network.
Configuration/Status Pages	Supplies Status Page	Cancel View Print	Shows the approximate remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information. HP provides approximations of the remaining life for the supplies as a customer convenience. The actual remaining supply levels might be different than the approximations provided.
Configuration/Status Pages	Usage Page	Cancel View Print	Shows a count of all paper sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex or duplex, and reports the page count.

Table 3-11 Reports menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Values	Description
Configuration/Status Pages	File Directory Page	Cancel View Print	Shows the file name and folder name for files that are stored in the printer memory.
Configuration/Status Pages	Web Services Status Page	Cancel View Print	Shows the detected Web Services for the printer.
Fax Reports Fax models only	Fax Activity Log	Cancel View Print	Contains a list of the faxes that have been sent from or received by this printer.
Fax Reports Fax models only	Billing Codes Report	Cancel View Print	Provides a list of billing codes that have been used for outgoing faxes. This report shows how many sent faxes were billed to each code.
Fax Reports Fax models only	Blocked Fax List	Cancel View Print	A list of phone numbers that are blocked from sending faxes to this printer.
Fax Reports Fax models only	Speed Dial List	Cancel View Print	Shows the speed dials that have been set up for this printer.
Fax Reports Fax models only	Fax Call Report	Cancel View Print	A detailed report of the last fax operation, either sent or received.
Other Pages	PCL Font List	Cancel Print	Prints the available PCL fonts.
Other Pages	PS Font List	Cancel Print	Prints the available PS fonts.

Settings menu

Learn about the control-panel Settings menu.

NOTE: You can perform basic printer setup by using the Settings menu. Use the HP Embedded Web Server for more advanced printer setup. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, enter the printer IP address or host name in the address bar of a Web browser.

TIP: If prompted, enter the EWS personal identification number (PIN) from a sticker on the printer (typically located inside the front door or on a toner cartridge tray).

General menu

Learn about the control-panel General (Settings) menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu, and then select the General menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the OK button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-12 General menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Date Format		DD/MMM/YYYY MMM/DD/YYYY YYYY/MMM/DD	Use the Date/Time Settings menu to specify the date and time and to configure date/time settings.
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time Format	Time Format		12 hour (AM/PM) 24 hours	Select the format that the printer uses to show the date and time, for example 12-hour format or 24-hour format.
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time	Time Zone		Select the time zone from a list.	
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time	Date		Select the date from a pop-up calendar.	
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time	Time		Select the time from a pop-up keypad.	
Date/Time Settings	Date/Time	Adjust for Daylight Savings		Checkbox	If you are in an area that uses daylight savings time, select the Adjust for Daylight Savings box.
Energy Settings MFP	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.		+ (Add) Edit Delete	Use to configure the printer to automatically wake up or go to sleep at specific times on specific days. Using this feature saves energy. **NOTE:** You must configure the date and time settings before you can use this feature.

Table 3-12 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Energy Settings MFP	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.	Event Type	Wake Sleep	Select whether to add or edit a Wake event or a Sleep event, and then select the time and the days for the wake or sleep event.
Energy Settings MFP	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.	Event Time		
Energy Settings MFP	Sleep Schedule	A list of scheduled events displays.	Event Days	Select days of the week from a list.	
Energy Settings MFP	Sleep Timer Settings	Sleep Mode/Auto Off After		Range: 1 to 120 minutes Default = 60 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Use the arrow buttons on the control panel to increase or decrease the number of minutes.
Energy Settings MFP	Wake/Auto On to These Events			All Events* Network port Power button only	
Energy Settings SFP	Sleep Timer Settings	Sleep/Auto Off Timer		Enabled* Disabled	Enable or disable the printer sleep or auto off function.
Energy Settings SFP	Sleep Timer Settings	Sleep Mode/Auto Off After		Range: 1 to 120 minutes Default = 60 minutes	Set the number of minutes after which the printer enters Sleep or Auto Off mode. Use the arrow buttons on the control panel to increase or decrease the number of minutes.
Display Settings	Display Brightness	A sliding bar displays with the indicator set in the middle. Use the arrow keys to select the desired brightness and then select Done.			Use to specify the intensity of the LCD control panel display.
Display Settings	System Sound			On* Off	Use to enable or disable sounds on the printer.

Table 3-12 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Display Settings	Language Settings	Language		Select from a list of languages that the printer supports.	Use to select a different language for control panel messages and specify the default keyboard layout. When you select a new language, the keyboard layout automatically changes to match the factory default for the selected language.
Display Settings		Keyboard Layout		Each language has a default keyboard layout. To change it, select from a list of layouts.	Select the default keyboard layout that matches the language you want to use.
Display Settings	Information Screen			Show connection information* Hide connection information	Use this menu item to display or hide connection information on the Home screen.
Display Settings	Inactivity Timeout			Range: 10-300 seconds Default = 60 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that elapses between any activity on the control panel and when the printer resets to the default settings. When the timeout expires, the control panel display returns to the Home menu, and any user signed in to the printer is signed out.

Table 3-12 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Display Settings	Clearable Warnings			Display during job* Display until cleared	Use this feature to set the period that a clearable warning displays on the control panel. If the On setting is selected, clearable warnings appear until the Clearable Warnings button is pressed. If the Job setting is selected, clearable warnings stay on the display during the job that generated the warning and disappear from the display when the next job starts.
Display Settings	Continuable Events			Auto-continue (10 seconds)* Touch OK to continue	Use this option to configure the printer behavior when the printer encounters certain errors. If the Auto-continue (10 seconds) option is selected, the job will continue after 10 seconds. If the Touch OK to continue option is selected, the job will stop and require the user to touch the OK button before continuing.
Enable Device USB				Enabled Disabled*	Enables the printer to open a file from a USB drive.
Quiet Mode				Off* On Automatic transition Range: 10-300 pages Default = 10 pages	Quiet Mode slows the printer down to reduce the noise the printer makes when printing. Automatic transition allows you to set a predetermined job size of 10 to 999 pages, and print jobs will print in Quiet Mode for all print jobs up to the predetermined page size.

Table 3-12 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Jam Recovery				Automatic* Off On	This printer provides a jam recovery feature that reprints jammed pages. Select one of the following options: Automatic: The printer attempts to reprint jammed pages when sufficient memory is available. This is the default setting. Off: The printer does not attempt to reprint jammed pages. Because no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance is optimal. NOTE: When using this option, if the printer runs out of paper and the job is being printed on both sides, some pages can be lost. On: The printer always reprints jammed pages. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed. This might cause overall performance to suffer.
Auto Recovery				Enabled Disabled*	If Auto Recovery is enabled and an unrecoverable error occurs in the device firmware, the device automatically turns off and turns back on to recover from the error.

Table 3-12 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Enable Auto Send				Disabled* Enabled	Browse to the HP Embedded Web Server AutoSend configuration page for advanced set up and the HP online Privacy Statement Information. Use the Enable Auto Send menu to enable or disable the AutoSend feature. The AutoSend feature enables your product to periodically send product configuration information including serial number, event logs, page usage counts and supplies status information to HP web addresses (URLs), or email addresses. Information sent to HP is used to improve products and services, and to monitor the product if you have a relationship with HP that provides you services such as proactive cartridge replacement, pay-per-page contracts, support agreements, or usage tracking.
Hold Off Print Job				Enabled* Disabled	Enable this feature if you want to prevent print jobs from starting while a user is initiating a copy job from the control panel. Held print jobs start printing after the copy job is finished, provided that no other copy job is in the print queue.

Table 3-12 General menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Reset Factory Settings				Address Book (MFP) Copy (MFP) Digital Send (MFP) E-mail (MFP) Fax (MFP) General (MFP) Print (MFP) Security (MFP) Cancel (SFP) Reset (SFP)	Use to restore all printer settings to their factory defaults.

Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP)

Learn about the control-panel Scan/Digital Send Settings (MFP) menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu, and then select the Scan/Digital Send Settings menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the OK button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Scan to Email Settings Scan to Network Folder Settings Scan to USB Drive Settings **NOTE:** The same options are available for each of these features, except where noted.	E-mail Setup **NOTE:** Email Settings only	E-mail Setup Wizard			Use to configure settings that apply to sending documents through email or saving documents to a folder on the network or on a USB multi-drive. The E-mail Setup Wizard feature configures the printer to send scanned images as email attachments. To open the printer HP Embedded Web Server and set up the email notification server, enter the printer IP address into a Web browser.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Default Job Options	Image Preview		Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	Defines the default job options for each function. If you do not specify the job options when creating the job, the default options are used. For complete setup, go to the HP Embedded Web Server by typing the IP address of the printer into a Web browser. Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer. Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in. Require preview Previews are required for all users. Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.
		Default File Name		[Untitled]*	The printer is shipped with a factory default file name of [Untitled] for any scanned files that are sent or saved. Use this feature to specify a different default file name. If you are saving a file to a network folder or USB storage device and a file with the default file name already exists, a number is appended to the file name, for example, [Untitled]001.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Document File Type		Select from a list of file types.	PDF provides the best overall image and text quality. JPEG is a good choice for most graphics. Most computers have a browser that can view .JPEG files. This file type produces one file per page. TIFF is a standard file format that many graphics programs support. This file type produces one file per page. MTIFF: stands for multi-page TIFF. This file type saves multiple scanned pages in a single file. XPS (XML Paper Specification) creates an XAML file that preserves the original formatting of the document and supports color graphics and embedded fonts. PDF/A (Archivable): provides archivable text and image quality. **NOTE:** OCR file types are not supported on this printer unless attached to DSS.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Optimize Text/ Picture		Mixed* Text Printed picture Photograph	Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Mixed: Use to optimize the setting for text and for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.
		Quality and File Size		High (large file) Medium* Low (small file)	Use to select the quality for the output. Higher-quality images require a larger file size than lower-quality images. Larger files take more time to send, and some recipients might have trouble receiving larger files.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Original Sides		1-sided 2-sided	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
			Orientation	Automatically detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Resolution		600 dpi 400 dpi 300 dpi 200 dpi 150 dpi* 75 dpi	Sets the resolution for sent documents. Higher resolution images have more dots per inch (dpi), so they show more detail. Lower resolution images have fewer dots per inch and show less detail, but the file size is smaller. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might automatically change to a valid value.
		Content Orientation	Orientation	Auto Detect Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait orientation means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape orientation means the long edge of the page is along the top. In the Orientation area, select whether the original document has a portrait or landscape orientation.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Color/Black		Automatically detect color or black* Automatically detect color or gray Color Black Black/Gray	Use to enable or disable color scanning. Automatically detect color or black: When pages without color are detected, the printer creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in grayscale. Automatically detect color or gray: When pages without color are detected, the printer creates an image of the page in grayscale. Select this option for the best image quality for non-color pages. Color: Scans documents in color. Black/Gray: Scans documents in grayscale. Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
		Original Size		Select from a list of supported sizes.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only.
				Print E-mail	Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully. Print: Select to print the notification at this printer.
			Include Thumbnail		**NOTE:** When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
			Notification E-mail address		E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then type the email address for the notification.
		Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
			Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
			Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.
			Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
			Automatic Tone		
			Default		Select this to make the selected Image Adjustment setting the default value.
		Cropping Options		Do not crop* Crop to content Crop to paper	Use this menu item to automatically crop the scan for digital sending. Use the Crop to content option to scan the smallest possible area that has detectable content.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
		Erase Edges		Use Inches Back side erase Front side erase	Use this menu item to remove blemishes, such as dark borders or staple marks, by cleaning the specified edges of the scanned image. In each of the text boxes enter the measurements, in millimeters or inches, for how much of the top edge, bottom edge, left edge, and right edge to clean.
		Multi-feed Detection		On* Off	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
		Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Use to prevent blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
Digital Send Service Setup	Allow Usage of Digital Sending Software (DSS) Server			Enabled* Disabled	Configure how the printer interacts with the HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) server. HP DSS handles digital sending tasks, such as faxing, emailing, and sending scanned documents to a network folder or USB storage device. Use the Allow Usage of Digital Sending Software (DSS) Server option to configure the printer to use HP DSS.

Table 3-13 Scan/Digital Send Settings menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
	Allow Transfer to New Digital Sending Software (DSS) Server			Enabled* Disabled	Use the Allow Transfer to New Digital Sending Software (DSS) Server option to specify whether DSS management of a printer is transferable to a different DSS.

Fax menu (MFP)

Learn about the control-panel Fax menu (MFP).

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu, and then select the Fax menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the OK button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Internal Fax Modem Setup					Configure settings for sending faxes from the printer. Use the Internal Fax Modem Setup feature to set up options for faxing. **NOTE:** To set up LAN fax or Internet fax, use the HP Embedded Web Server. To open the HP Embedded Web Server, type the printer network address into a Web browser. To configure the fax features, select the **Fax** tab.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Fax Dial Volume	Off Low* High	These settings control how the fax modem dials the outgoing fax number when faxes are sent.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Dialing Mode	Tone* Pulse	

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Redial Interval	1 - 5 Minutes Default = 5 minutes	
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Fax Send Speed	Fast* Medium Slow	
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Dialing Prefix		
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Detect Dial Tone		
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Redial on Error	Range: 0 - 9 Default = 2	
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Redial on No Answer	Range: 0 - 2 Default = 0	
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Fax Dialing Settings	Redial on Busy	Range: 0 - 9 Default = 3	
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	General Fax Send Settings	Fax Number Confirmation	Enabled Disabled*	If this feature is enabled, you must enter the fax number twice.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	General Fax Send Settings	PC Fax Send	Enabled* Disabled	Enables users who have the correct driver installed to send faxes through the printer from their computers.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	General Fax Send Settings	JBIG Compression	Enabled* Disabled	The JBIG compression reduces fax-transmission time, which can result in lower phone charges. However, using JBIG compression sometimes causes compatibility problems with older fax machines. If this occurs, turn off the JBIG compression.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	General Fax Send Settings	Error Correction Mode	Enabled* Disabled	When error-correction mode is enabled and an error occurs during fax transmission, the printer sends or receives the error portion again.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	General Fax Send Settings	Fax Header	Prepend* Overlay	Use to prepend or overlay the fax header page.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Billing Codes	Enable Billing Codes	Off On*	When billing codes are enabled, a prompt displays that asks the user to enter the billing code for an outgoing fax. This prompt does not appear if the Allow users to edit billing codes check box is not checked. You can also use the billing codes report in the Reports menu to view the list of the billing codes that have been used for faxes that have been sent from the printer. The list is grouped by billing code and also shows fax details. This feature can be used for billing or usage tracking.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Billing Codes	Default Billing Code		Specify a default billing code for faxing. If you specify a default billing code, this code displays in the Billing Code field when the user sends an outgoing fax. If this field is blank, no default billing code is provided for the user.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Billing Codes	Minimum Length	Range: 1 - 16 Default = 1	Specify the required length of the billing code. Billing codes can be between 1 and 16 characters long.
Fax Send Settings	Fax Send Setup	Billing Codes	Allow users to edit billing codes	Off On*	
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Image Preview		Make optional* Require preview Disable preview	Use the Image Preview feature to scan a document and display a preview before completing the job. Select whether this feature is available on the printer. Make optional: The feature is optional, depending on the user who is signed in. Require preview Previews are required for all users. Disable preview: Previews are disabled for all users.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Resolution		Standard (100 x 200dpi)* Fine (200 x 200dpi) Superfine (300 x 300dpi)	Select the resolution for outgoing faxes. If you increase the resolution, faxes might be clearer but they could transmit more slowly. Some file types, for example a file that will be processed with OCR, require a specific resolution. When these file types are selected, the Resolution setting might be automatically changed to a valid value.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Original Sides		1-sided* 2-sided Pages flip up	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document. If the Pages flip up option is selected, the back side of the page is printed upside-down. This option is for print jobs that are bound along the top edge.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Original Sides	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Use to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Notification		Print E-mail	Print: Select to print the notification at this printer. E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Notification	Include Thumbnail		When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Notification	Notification E-mail address		Provide the email address that will receive notifications.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Content Orientation	Orientation	Portrait* Landscape	For some features to work correctly, you must specify the way the content of the original document is placed on the page. Portrait: This setting means the short edge of the page is along the top. Landscape: This setting means the long edge of the page is along the top.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Original Size		Select from a list of sizes that the printer supports.	Use to describe the page size of the original document.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Image Adjustment	Darkness		Use to improve the overall quality of the copy. Adjust the Darkness setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Image Adjustment	Contrast		Adjust the Contrast setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Image Adjustment	Background Cleanup		Adjust the Background Cleanup setting if you are having trouble copying a faint image.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Image Adjustment	Sharpness		Adjust the Sharpness setting to clarify or soften the image. For example, increasing the sharpness could make text appear crisper, but decreasing it could make photographs appear smoother.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Image Adjustment	Automatic Tone		The printer automatically adjusts the Darkness, Contrast, and Background Cleanup settings to the most appropriate for the scanned document.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Optimize Text/ Picture	Manually adjust*	Optimize For Text Printed picture Photograph	Optimizes the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture. Manually adjust: Use to manually optimize the setting for text or for pictures. Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy where text and/or pictures are on the original. Printed picture: Use for line drawings and preprinted images, such as magazine clippings or pages from books. Photograph: Best suited for making copies of printed pictures.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Multi-feed Detection		Disabled Enabled*	This setting stops the scanning process if it detects multiple-page feeds through the document feeder.
Fax Send Settings	Default Job Options	Blank Page Suppression		Disabled* Enabled	Prevents blank pages in the original document from being included in the output document.
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ringer Volume		Off Low* High	Use to configure settings for receiving faxes.
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Rings To Answer		Range: 1-6 Default = 1	
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Fax Send Speed		Fast* Medium Slow	
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ring Interval		Range: 220-600 ms Default = 600 ms	
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Receive Setup	Ring Frequency		Range: 1-200 Default = 68hz	
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Printing Schedule			Always store faxes Always print faxes* Use schedule	If you have concerns about the security of private faxes, use this feature to store faxes rather than having them automatically print. Select Incoming Fax Options, and then you can choose to always store faxes, always print them, or you can set up a schedule for each day of the week.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Receive Settings	Fax Printing Schedule	Schedule Touch this to set up a fax printing schedule if you selected the Use Fax Printing Schedule option.	Add Edit Delete	Print incoming faxes Store incoming faxes Time Event Days	If you are using a fax printing schedule, use this menu to configure when to print faxes.
Fax Receive Settings	Blocked Fax Numbers	Fax Number to Block			The blocked fax list can contain up to 30 numbers. When the printer receives a call from one of the blocked fax numbers, it deletes the incoming fax. It also logs the blocked fax in the activity log along with job-accounting information. Add blocked numbers: Enter a fax number into the Fax Number to Block field, and then touch the arrow button to add a new number to the blocked fax list. To remove blocked numbers: Select a number and touch the Delete button to delete it from the blocked fax list. To clear all blocked numbers: Touch the Delete All button to clear all of the numbers from the blocked fax list. You can also use the Blocked Fax List report in the Information menu to view the list of the fax numbers that have been blocked on this printer.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options	Notification		Do not notify* Notify when job completes Notify only if job fails	Configure to receive notification about the status of a sent document. Do not notify: Turns off this feature. Notify when job completes: Select to receive notification for this job only. Notify only if job fails: Select to receive notification only if the job is not sent successfully.
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options			Print E-mail*	E-mail: Select to receive the notification in an email. Touch the text box following Email Address, and then enter the email address for the notification.
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options		Include Thumbnail		**NOTE:** When sending an analog fax, select Include Thumbnail to receive a thumbnail image of the first page of the fax in your notification.
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options		Notification E-mail address		
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options	Stamp Received Faxes		Enabled Disabled*	Use this option to add the date, time, sender's phone number, and page number to each page of the faxes that this printer receives.

Table 3-14 Fax menu (MFP) (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options	Fit to Page		Enabled* Disabled	Use to shrink faxes that are larger than Letter-size or A4-size so that they can fit onto a Letter-size or A4-size page. If this feature set to Disabled, faxes larger than Letter or A4 will flow across multiple pages.
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options	Paper Selection		Automatic* Select from a list of the trays.	
Fax Receive Settings	Default Job Options	Output sides		1-sided* 2-sided Pages flip up	Use to describe the layout for each side of the original document. First select whether the original document is printed on one side or both sides. Then touch the Orientation setting to indicate whether the original has portrait or landscape orientation. If it is printed on both sides, also select the 2-sided format that matches the original document.
Fax Forwarding	Enable Fax Forwarding			Disabled* Enabled	Use to forward received faxes to another fax machine.
Fax Forwarding	Type of Fax Job to Forward			All faxes Sent faxes Received faxes	
Fax Forwarding	Fax Forwarding Number				Enter the fax forwarding number.
Clear Fax Activity Log				Cancel Clear	Clears all events from the Fax Activity Log list.

Manage Supplies menu

Learn about the control-panel Manage Supplies menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu, and then select the Manage Supplies menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the OK button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-15 Manage Supplies menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Low Warning Thresholds	Cyan Cartridge Magenta Cartridge Yellow Cartridge Black Cartridge			1-100% Default = 4%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when a toner cartridge is very low.
Low Warning Thresholds	Document Feeder Kit MFP			1-100% Default = 10%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when the document feeder kit is very low.
Low Warning Thresholds	Maintenance Kit SFP			1-100% Default = 10%	Set the estimated percentage at which the printer notifies you when the maintenance kit is very low.
Low Warning Threshold Message				On* Off	Displays a message on the control panel when a cartridge is very low.
Low Behavior				Continue* Stop	Use one of these options to specify the action for the device to take when a supply reaches a low condition. Stop: Stops the current print job. Continue: Completes the current print job.

Table 3-15 Manage Supplies menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Very Low Behavior	Cyan Cartridge Magenta Cartridge Yellow Cartridge Black Cartridge			Stop Continue* Prompt to continue	Use one or more of these options to specify the action for the device to take when a supply reaches a very low condition. Stop: Stops the current print job. Continue: Completes the current print job. Prompt to continue: Allows the user to decide whether or not to finish printing.
Very Low Behavior	Document Feeder Kit MFP			Stop Continue Prompt to continue*	Use one or more of these options to specify the action for the device to take when a supply reaches a very low condition. Stop: Stops the current print job. Continue: Completes the current print job. Prompt to continue: Allows the user to decide whether or not to finish printing.
Very Low Behavior	Maintenance Kit SFP			Stop Continue Prompt to continue*	Use one or more of these options to specify the action for the device to take when a supply reaches a very low condition. Stop: Stops the current print job. Continue: Completes the current print job. Prompt to continue: Allows the user to decide whether or not to finish printing.

Table 3-15 Manage Supplies menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Store Usage Data				On supplies* Not on supplies	Store Usage Data provides a way to suppress the toner cartridges from storing most of the information gathered exclusively for the purpose of understanding the usage of the printer. Select the On supplies setting to store the data on the toner cartridge memory chip. Select the Not on supplies setting to suppress the information from being stored on the memory chip.
Cartridge Protection				Off* Protect cartridges	Select to permanently protect cartridges so that they can be used only in this product or fleet of products.
Cartridge Policy				Off* Authorized HP	Set Authorized HP to allow only genuine HP cartridges to be used in this printer.
Reset Supplies	Document Feeder Kit MFP Maintenance Kit SFP			Reset Cancel	Select this option if you have installed a new document feeder kit or maintenance kit.

Networking menu

Learn about the control-panel Networking menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Settings menu, and then select the Networking menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the OK button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-16 Networking menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	Information	Print Security Report		Yes No*	Yes: Prints a page that contains the current security settings on the HP Jetdirect print server. No: A security settings page is not printed.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Host Name		Use the arrow buttons to edit the host name. **NPIXXXXXX***	An alphanumeric string, up to 32 characters, used to identify the printer. This name is listed on the HP Jetdirect configuration page. The default host name is NPIxxxxxx, where xxxxxx is the last six digits of the LAN hardware (MAC) address.

Table 3-16 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV4 Settings	Config Method	Bootp DHCP* Auto IP Manual	Specifies the method that TCP/IPv4 parameters will be configured on the HP Jetdirect print server. Bootp (Bootstrap Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a BootP server. DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol): Use for automatic configuration from a DHCPv4 server. If selected and a DHCP lease exists, the DHCP Release menu and the DHCP Renew menu are available to set DHCP lease options. Auto IP: Use for automatic link-local IPv4 addressing. An address in the form 169.254.x.x is assigned automatically. If you set this option to the Manual setting, use the Manual Settings menu to configure TCP/IPv4 parameters.

Table 3-16 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV4 Settings	Default IP	Auto IP* Legacy	Specify the IP address to default to when the print server is unable to obtain an IP address from the network during a forced TCP/IP reconfiguration (for example, when manually configured to use BootP or DHCP). **NOTE:** This feature assigns a static IP address that might interfere with a managed network. Auto IP: A link-local IP address 169.254.x.x is set. Legacy: The address 192.0.0.192 is set, consistent with older HP Jetdirect printers.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV4 Settings	DHCP Release	Yes No*	
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV4 Settings	DHCP Renew	Yes No*	
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV4 Settings	Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV4 Settings	Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV6 Settings	Enable	Off On*	Use this item to enable or disable IPv6 operation on the print server. Off: IPv6 is disabled. On: IPv6 is enabled.

Table 3-16 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV6 Settings	Address	Manual Settings Enable Address	Use this item to enable and manually configure a TCP/IPv6 address.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV6 Settings	DHCPV6 Policy	Router Specified Router Unavailable* Always	Router Specified: The stateful auto-configuration method to be used by the print server is determined by a router. The router specifies whether the print server obtains its address, its configuration information, or both from a DHCPv6 server. Router Unavailable: If a router is not available, the print server should attempt to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server. Always: Whether a router is available, the print server always attempts to obtain its stateful configuration from a DHCPv6 server.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV6 Settings	Primary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = xxx.xxx.xx.xx	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Primary Domain Name System (DNS) Server.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	IPV6 Settings	Secondary DNS	Range: 0-255 Default = 0.0.0.0	Specify the IP address (n.n.n.n) of a Secondary DNS Server.

Table 3-16 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Proxy Server		Select from a provided list.	Specifies the proxy server to be used by embedded applications in the printer. A proxy server is typically used by network clients for Internet access. It caches Web pages, and provides a degree of Internet security for those clients. To specify a proxy server, enter its IPv4 address or fully-qualified domain name. The name can be up to 255 octets. For some networks, you might need to contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP) for the proxy server address.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Proxy Port		Range: 1-65535 Default = 00080	Enter the port number used by the proxy server for client support. The port number identifies the port reserved for proxy activity on your network, and can be a value from 0 to 65535.
Ethernet	TCP/IP	Idle Timeout		Range: 1-3600 Default = 0270	The time period, in seconds, after which an idle TCP print data connection is closed (default is 270 seconds, 0 disables the timeout).

Table 3-16 Networking menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
I/O Timeout				Range: 5 - 300 sec Default = 10	Use to set the I/O timeout period in seconds. I/O timeout refers to the elapsed time before a print job fails. If the stream of data that the printer receives for a print job gets interrupted, this setting indicates how long the printer will wait before it reports that the job has failed.

Support Tools menu

Learn about the control-panel Support Tools menu.

NOTE: The Support Tools sub-menu contains the options for maintaining the printer and troubleshooting printer problems.

Maintenance menu

Learn about the control-panel Maintenance menu.

Backup/Restore menu

Learn about the control-panel Backup/Restore menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the Backup/Restore menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the OK button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-17 Backup/Restore menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Values
Back up Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Backup Time	Enter a time
Back up Data	Enable Scheduled Backups	Days Between Backups	Enter the number of days
Back up Data	Back up Now		
Back up Data	Export Last Backup		
Restore Data			Insert a USB drive that contains the backup file.

Calibration/Cleaning menu

Learn about the control-panel Calibration/Cleaning menu .

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the Calibration/Cleaning menu.

To print: At the printer control panel, touch (MFP) or use the arrow buttons (SFP) to select the printer icon . For the SFP, press the OK button to print the pages.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-18 Calibration/Cleaning menu

First level	Values	Description
Cleaning Page	Automatic Cleaning Interval Off* 1000 pages 2000 pages 5000 pages 10000 pages 20000 pages	Use this menu to configure the settings for the product to automatically print a cleaning page. Select Off to disable automatic cleaning. Select a cleaning interval to set the number of pages to be printed before an automatic cleaning page is printed. Touch Print to manually print a cleaning page. **NOTE:** Cleaning pages print on the default paper size configured for the printer.
Quick Calibration	Start	The printer automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, the user can calibrate the printer immediately if the printer experiences problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a partial calibration. Use this calibration if color density or tone seem incorrect. Before calibrating, make sure that the Ready indicator displays on the control panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.

Table 3-18 Calibration/Cleaning menu (continued)

First level	Values	Description
Full Calibration	Start	The printer automatically calibrates itself at various times. However, the user can calibrate the printer immediately if the printer experiences problems with print quality. Use this feature to perform a full calibration, which can take up to three minutes. Use this calibration if the color layers seem to be shifted on the page. Before calibrating, make sure that the Ready indicator displays on the control panel display. If a job is in progress, the calibration occurs when that job is complete.
Power on Calibration	No delay Delay 15 minutes	This feature controls the timing of calibration when the printer wakes up or is turned on.
Calibrate Scanner MFP	Done Start	Touch Start to calibrate the device scanner. Messages on the control panel display will lead you through the calibration process.
Reset Calibration	Reset Cancel	Use this feature to return the product to the factory-set default values for color calibration. Select Reset to reset the color calibration. The printer will restart with the factory-set defaults. Select Cancel to close the menu without resetting the color calibration.

USB Firmware Upgrade menu

Learn about the control-panel USB Firmware Upgrade menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu, select the Maintenance menu, and then select the USB Firmware Upgrade menu.

Insert a USB storage device with a firmware upgrade bundle into the USB port, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Service menu

Learn about the control-panel Service menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu, and then select the Service menu.

The Service menu is locked and requires a personal identification number (PIN) for access. This menu is intended for use by authorized service personnel. See the Service menu section of this manual.

Troubleshooting menu

Learn about the control-panel Troubleshooting menu.

To display: At the printer control panel, select the Support Tools menu, and then select the Troubleshooting menu.

In the following table, asterisks (*) indicate the factory default setting.

Table 3-19 Troubleshooting menu

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Reports	Configuration/ Status Pages			Settings Menu Map Current Settings Page Configuration Page Supplies Status Page Usage Page Paper Path Page File Directory Page Web Services Status Page PCL Font List PS Font List Event Log Warning Log Page T.30 Protocol Trace PQ Troubleshooting Pages Paper Path Test	Select the desired report and then select the print icon to print the page.
Reports	Fax Reports			Fax Activity Log Billing Codes Report Blocked Fax List Fax Call Report	Select the desired report and then select the print icon to print the page.

Table 3-19 Troubleshooting menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Reports	Other Pages			PCL Font List PS Font List	Select the desired report and then select the print icon  to print the page.
Fax Tools Fax models only	Fax T.30 Trace Report			Never automatically print* Print after every fax Print only after fax send jobs Print only after received faxes Print only after fax send errors Print only after fax receive errors Print after any fax error	Use to print or configure the fax T.30 trace report. T.30 is the standard that specifies handshaking, protocols, and error correction between fax machines.
Fax Tools Fax models only	Fax V.34			Enable* Disable	Use to disable V.34 modulations if several fax failures have occurred or if phone line conditions require it.
Fax Tools Fax models only	JBIG Compression			On Off*	
Fax Tools Fax models only	Fax Speaker Mode			Normal* Diagnostic	Used by a technician to evaluate and diagnose fax issues by listening to the sounds of fax modulations
Fax Tools Fax models only	Fax Service Log			Print	The standard fax log includes basic information such as the time and whether the fax was successful. The detailed fax log shows the intermediate results of the redial process not shown in the standard fax log.

Table 3-19 Troubleshooting menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Print Quality Pages	PQ Troubleshooting Pages			Print	Use to print pages that help you resolve problems with print quality.
Event Log					Prints the 50 most recent events in the Event Log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.
Paper Path Page				Print	Shows how many pages were printed from each tray.
Diagnostic Tests	Disable Cartridge Check			Continue	Use this diagnostic test to print internal pages or send an external job to the printer when the toner cartridge is removed or exchanged. Supply errors are ignored while the printer is in this mode.
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Test	Source Tray		Select from a list of the available trays.	Generates a test page for testing paper handling features. You can define the path that is used for the test in order to test specific paper paths
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Test	Number of Copies		Range: 1–500 Default = 1	Sets the default number of copies for a copy job. This default applies when the Copy or Quick Copy function is initiated from the printer Home screen. The factory default setting is 1.
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Test	Test Duplex Path		Enable Disable*	Prints on both sides of the paper.
Diagnostic Tests	Print/Stop Test				Specify the length of time in milliseconds (0-60,000).

Table 3-19 Troubleshooting menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Diagnostic Tests	Paper Path Sensor Test			Select from a list of the printer sensors.	Initiates a test of the paper path sensors.
Diagnostic Tests	Manual Sensor Test **NOTE:** This item appears in the control-panel menus. However, the function is not available for this printer			Select from a list of available components Reset	Test the printer sensors and switches for correct operation. Each sensor is displayed on the control-panel screen, along with its status. Manually trip each sensor and watch for it to change on the screen. Press the Stop button to abort the test.
Diagnostic Tests	Tray/Bin Manual Sensor Test **NOTE:** This item appears in the control-panel menus. However, the function is not available for this printer			Select from a list of available components Reset	Test the printer sensors and switches for correct operation. Each sensor is displayed on the control-panel screen, along with its status. Manually trip each sensor and watch for it to change on the screen. Press the Stop button to abort the test.
Diagnostic Tests	Component Test **NOTE:** This item appears in the control-panel menus. However, the function is not available for this printer			Select from a list of available components.	Use to exercise individual parts independently to isolate noise, leaking, or other issues. To start the test, select one of the components. The test will run the number of times specified by the Repeat option. You might be prompted to remove parts from the printer during the test. Press the Stop button to abort the test.
Diagnostic Tests	Continuous Scan MFP			2-sided	
Diagnostic Tests	Scanner Tests MFP			Sensors	

Table 3-19 Troubleshooting menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Values	Description
Generate Debug Data				Start	
Retrieve Diagnostic Data				Create device data file Create zipped debug information file Include crash dump files Clean up debug information Send to E-mail Export to USB	Create files that contain information about the printer that can help identify the cause of problems.
Retrieve Fax Diagnostic Data				Create device data file Create zipped debug information file Include crash dump files Clean up debug information Send to E-mail Export to USB	Create files that contain information about the printer that can help identify the cause of problems.

Service menu

Learn about the printer Service menu.

Service menu access is restricted by using a personal identification number (PIN). Only authorized service people should access the Service menu. When selecting Service from the list of menus, the printer prompts the user to enter an eight-digit PIN.

NOTE: The printer automatically exits the Service menu after about one minute if no items are selected or changed.

Open the Service menu from a SFP control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to Support Tools, and then press the OK button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to Service, and then press the OK button.
3. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected for the Access Type item.

NOTE: Use the arrow buttons to select and change the Access Type item if necessary.

4. Enter the following service access PIN for the printer:
    - 10570022 (SFP)
    - 10580022 (MFP)

Open the Service menu from an MFP control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
    - Service
3. Make sure that Service Access Code is selected for the Access Type item.
4. Enter the following service access PIN for the printer:
    - 10570022 (SFP)
    - 10580022 (MFP)

Service menu table

The following menu items appear in the Service menu.

Table 3-20 Service menu

First level	Second level	Value	Description
Event Log	Print		Print or view the event log.
Clear Event Log	Clear		Use this item to clear the printer event log.
Cycle Counts	Total Engine Cycles		Set the page count that was stored in NVRAM prior to installing a new formatter.
Cycle Counts	Refurbish Cycle Count		Use this item to record the page count when the printer was refurbished.
Cycle Counts	Document Feeder MFP		Total number of pages since the document feeder kit was replaced.
Cycle Counts	Document Feeder Kit Interval MFP		Use this item to set the interval that causes the printer to prompt the customer to replace document feeder maintenance kit.
Cycle Counts	Clean Rollers Count MFP		Total number of pages since the document feeder rollers were cleaned.
Cycle Counts	Clean Rollers Interval MFP		Use this item to set the interval that causes the printer to prompt the customer to clean the document feeder rollers and separation pad.

Table 3-20 Service menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Value	Description
Cycle Counts	ADF Count MFP		Set the total pages fed through the document feeder.
Cycle Counts	Flatbed Count MFP		Set the total pages scanned from the flatbed.
Cycle Counts	ADF Simplex Count MFP		Set the total single-sided pages fed through the document feeder.
Cycle Counts	ADF Duplex Count MFP		Set the total two-sided pages fed through the document feeder.
Cycle Counts	Copy Scan Count MFP		Set the total copy pages that have been scanned.
Cycle Counts	Send Scan Count MFP		Set the number of scanned pages sent to email.
Cycle Counts	Fax Scan Count Fax models only		Set the number of scanned pages that have been faxed.
Cycle Counts	Copy Pages Count MFP		Set the number of scanned pages that have been printed.
Scanner Settings MFP	ADF Settings	Leading edge front Leading edge back Trailing edge front Trailing edge back Left side front Left side back	Set the calibration values. **WARNING!** Do not change these values unless instructed to do so.
Scanner Settings MFP	Glass Settings	Leading edge glass Left Side Glass	
Serial Number			Set the serial number.
Service ID			Use this item to show the date that the printer was first used on the control panel. This eliminates the need for users to keep paper receipts for proof of warranty.

Table 3-20 Service menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Value	Description
Cold Reset Paper			When you perform a cold reset, the paper size that is stored in NVRAM is reset to the default factory setting. If you replace a formatter board in a country/region that uses A4 as the standard paper size, use this menu to reset the default paper size to A4. LETTER and A4 are the only available values.
Low Alerts		Enable Disable	Turn on (or off) low alerts (for supplies).
Reset Low Alerts	• Reset to level 1 • Reset to level 2 • Reset to level 3 • Set to non-HP managed mode		
PTT Test Mode Fax models only			Test the internal modem for the analog fax accessory.
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Hook Operations	Off Hook On Hook	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Generate Random Data	Select a value from the list.	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Generate DTMF Tone Burst	Select a value from the list.	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Generate DTMF Continuous Tone	Select a value from the list.	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Generate Pulse Burst	Select a value from the list.	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Generate Tone Dial Number	Enter dial number.	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Generate Pulse Dial Number	Enter dial number.	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Generate Single Modem Tone	Range: 1100–2100 Hz Default = 2100 Hz	
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Line Measurements		

Table 3-20 Service menu (continued)

First level	Second level	Value	Description
PTT Test Mode Fax models only	Fax Transmit Signal Loss		
Test Support	Continuous Scan	2-sided	
	MFP	Save to Disk	
Test Support	Continuous Copy	2-sided	
	MFP	Save to Disk	
Test Support	Raw Scan	2-sided	
	MFP	Mechanical Calibration	
Test Support	Continuous Print from USB		
Test Support	Automatic Calibrations	Disabled	
	MFP	Enabled*	
Test Support	Runtime Configuration	Standard	
	MFP	StandardEIC	
		Workflow	
		WorkflowEIC	
		Reconfigure	

Printer resets

Learn about the printer resets.

Restore factory-set defaults from a non-touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, use the arrow buttons to navigate to Settings, and then press the OK button.
2. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to General, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to Restore Factory Settings, and then press the OK button.
4. A verification message advises that completing the reset function might result in loss of data. Select the Reset button to complete the process.

Restore factory-set defaults from a touchscreen control panel

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Settings button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - General Settings
   - Reset Factory Settings

3. A verification message advises that completing the reset function might result in loss of data. Touch the Reset button to complete the process.

Restore the Service ID

When replacing the formatter, the Service ID date is lost. Use this menu item to reset the date to the original date that the printer was first used. The date format is YYDDD. Use the following formula to calculate the Service ID.

Calculate the service ID

For the calculation below, the placed-in-service date is 17OCT2002.

1. To calculate YY, subtract 1990 from the calendar year. If the printer was first used in 2002, calculate YY as follows: 2002 - 1990 = 19. YY = 12.
2. Subtract 1 from 10 (October is the tenth month of the year): 10 - 1 = 9.
   - Multiply 9 by 30: 9 x 30 = 270 and add 17 to 270: 270 + 17 = 287. Thus, DDD = 287.
3. In this example the Service ID is 12287.

Convert the Service ID to an actual date

Use the printer Service ID number to determine whether the printer is still under warranty. Use the following formula to convert the Service ID into the actual date the printer was placed-in-service. For the example below, use the Service ID previously calculated (12287).

1. Add 1990 to YY to get the actual year that the printer was installed.
2. Divide DDD by 30. If there is a remainder, add 1 to the result. This is the month.
3. The remainder from the calculation in step 2 is the date.
   a. 12 + 1990 = 2002, so the year is 2002.
   b. 287 divided by 30 = 9 with a remainder of 17. Because there is a remainder, add 1 to 9 to get 10, which represents October.
   c. The remainder in step 2 is 17, so that is the date. The complete date is 17-October-2002.

   NOTE: A six-day grace period is built into the date system.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a non-touchscreen control panel

CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Press the Cancel button when you see the 1/8 under the logo
2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +8:Startup Options item, and then press the OK button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to highlight 2 Cold Reset item, and then press the OK button.

5. Press the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then press the OK button.

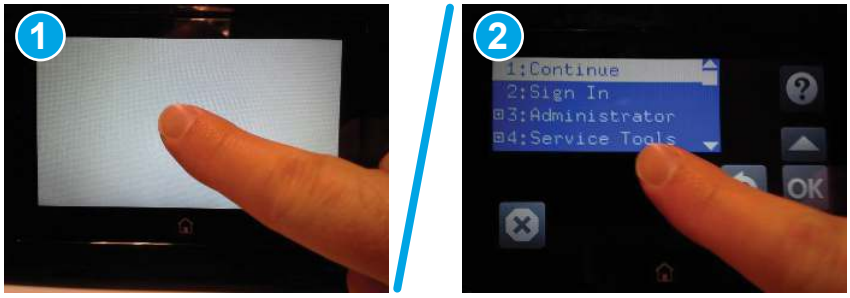
NOTE: The printer initializes.

Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

CAUTION: This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo

Figure 3-65 Open the Pre-boot menu (MFP)



2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +8:Startup Options item, and then press the OK button.
4. Use the arrow buttons to highlight 2 Cold Reset item, and then press the OK button.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then press the OK button.

NOTE: The printer initializes.

Format Disk and Partial Clean functions

Learn about the printer Format Disk and Partial Clean functions.

Active and repository firmware locations

The firmware bundle consists of multiple parts. The main components are the Windows CE Operating System and the printer/peripheral firmware files.

There are two locations/partitions on the hard drive where the firmware components are stored:

- The Active, where the operating system and firmware currently are executing.
- The Repository, the recovery location.

If the Active location is damaged, or a Partial Clean was performed, the printer automatically copies over the OS and firmware files from the Repository location and the printer recovers.

If both the Active and Repository locations are damaged, or a Format Disk was performed, then both locations are gone and the error message **99.09.67** displays on the control-panel display. The user must upload the firmware to the printer in order for it to function again.

⚠ **CAUTION:** The Format Disk option performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) are completely lost. HP does not recommend this action.

Partial Clean

The Partial Clean option erases all partitions and data on the disk drive, except for the firmware repository where a backup copy of the firmware file is stored. This allows the disk drive to be reformatted without having to download a firmware upgrade file to return the printer to a bootable state.

Characteristics of a Partial Clean

- Customer-defined settings, third-party solutions, firmware files, and the operating system are deleted.
- Rebooting the printer restores the firmware files from the Repository location, but does not restore any customer-defined settings.
- For previous HP printers, a Hard Disk Initialization is similar to executing the Partial Clean function for this printer.

⚠ **CAUTION:** HP recommends backing-up printer configuration data before executing a Partial Clean to retain customer-defined settings (if needed). See the Backup/Restore item in the Device Maintenance menu.

Reasons for performing Partial Clean

- The printer continually boots up in an error state.

NOTE: Try clearing the error prior to executing a Partial Clean.

- The printer will not respond to commands from the control panel.
- Executing the Partial Clean function is helpful for troubleshooting hard disk problems.
- To reset the printer by deleting all solutions and customer-defined settings.
- The printer default settings are not properly working.

Execute a Partial Clean from a non-touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Press the Cancel button when you see the 1/8 under the logo
2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight Partial Clean item, and then press the OK button.
4. Press the OK button again.

5. Press the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the Continue item, and then press the OK button.

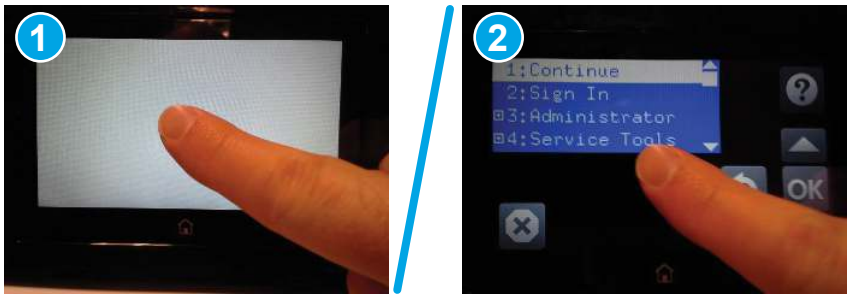
NOTE: The printer initializes.

Execute a Partial Clean from a touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo

Figure 3-66 Open the Pre-boot menu (MFP)



2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight Partial Clean item, and then press the OK button.
4. Press the OK button again.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the Continue item, and then press the OK button.

NOTE: The printer initializes.

Format Disk

The Format Disk option erases the entire disk drive.

CAUTION: After executing a Format Disk option, the printer is not bootable.

Characteristics of a Format Disk

- Customer-defined settings, third-party solutions, firmware files, and the operating system are deleted.

NOTE: Rebooting the printer *does not* restore the firmware files

- Rebooting the printer restores the firmware files from the Repository location, but does not restore any customer-defined settings.
- After executing the Format Disk function, the message **99.09.67** displays on the control panel.
- After executing the Format Disk function, the printer firmware must be reloaded.

CAUTION: HP recommends not using the Format Disk option unless an error occurs and the solution in the printer service manual recommends this solution. After executing the Format Disk function, the printer is unusable.

HP recommends backing-up printer configuration data before executing a Format Disk to retain customer-defined settings (if needed). See the Backup/Restore item in the Device Maintenance menu.

Reasons for performing Format Disk

- The printer continually boots up in an error state.

NOTE: Try clearing the error prior to executing a Format Disk.

- The printer will not respond to commands from the control panel.
- Executing the Format Disk function is helpful for troubleshooting hard disk problems.
- To reset the printer by deleting all solutions and customer-defined settings.

Execute a Format Disk from a non-touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Press the Cancel button when you see the 1/8 under the logo
2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight Format Disk item, and then press the OK button.
4. Press the OK button again.

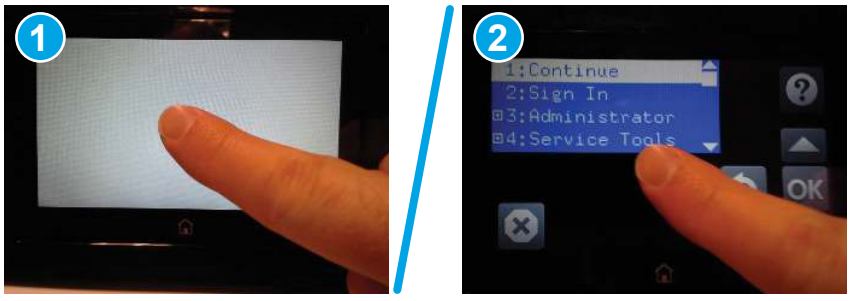
NOTE: When the Format Disk operation is complete, reload the printer firmware.

Execute a Format Disk from a touchscreen control panel

This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo

Figure 3-67 Open the Pre-boot menu (MFP)



2. Use the arrow buttons to highlight +3:Administrator item, and then press the OK button.
3. Use the arrow buttons to highlight Format Disk item, and then press the OK button.
4. Press the OK button again.

NOTE: When the Format Disk operation is complete, reload the printer firmware.

Power on troubleshooting

Learn about power on troubleshooting.

Power-on checks

Learn about power-on checks.

The basic printer functions should start up when the printer is connected into an electrical outlet and the power switch is pushed to the on position. If the printer does not start, use the information in this section to isolate and solve the problem.

If the control panel display remains blank, random patterns display, or asterisks remain on the control panel display, perform power-on checks to find the cause of the problem.

Power on troubleshooting overview

Learn about general power on troubleshooting.

During normal operation, a cooling fan begins to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place a hand over the fan intake vents located on the right-side cover. When the fan is correctly operating, air passing into the printer is felt. Lean close to the printer to hear the fan operating. If the fan is operating, the dc side of the power supply is functioning.

After the fan is operating, the main motor turns on (unless the top cover is open, a jam condition is sensed, or the paper-path sensors are damaged). Visually and audibly determine that the main motor is turned on.

If the fan and main motor are operating correctly, the next troubleshooting step is to isolate print engine, formatter, and control panel problems. Perform an engine test. If the formatter is damaged, it might interfere with the engine test. If the engine-test page does not print, try removing the formatter, and then performing the engine test again. If the engine test is then successful, the problem is almost certainly with the formatter, the control panel, or the cable that connects them.

Troubleshooting power-on or blank control panel problems

If the printer is not powering on correctly, use the following steps to begin troubleshooting the problem.

1. Verify that power is available to the printer. If the printer is plugged into a surge protector or uninterruptible power supply (UPS), remove it. Plug the printer directly into a known operating wall receptacle (make sure that the wall receptacle provides the correct voltage and current for the printer).

   NOTE: Unplug any other devices on the same circuit that the printer is using.

2. Try another known operating wall receptacle and a different power cord.
3. To eliminate a thermal switch issue, unplug the power cord and leave it unplugged for over 20 minutes. Re-attach the power cord, and then turn the power on again.
4. During normal operation, a cooling fan or fans begin to spin briefly after the printer power is turned on. Place a hand over the cover vent or vents to feel air passing out of the printer. Lean close to the printer to hear the fan or fans operating. Look for illuminated lights on the control panel and formatter LEDs.

   NOTE: Operational fans, motors, and control-panel lights indicate the following:

- AC power is present at the printer.
- The power supply is providing either or both 24 Vdc and 5 Vdc voltages.
- The DC controller microprocessor is functioning.

5. If the printer powers on, but the control panel is blank, make sure that the control-panel display wire harness or harnesses and flat flexible cable or cables (FFCs) are connected.

NOTE: The following conditions indicate that the printer has frozen while in Sleep mode or Sleep delay. Opening a door or pressing a control-panel button should cause the printer to wake up from Sleep mode or Sleep delay.

- The control panel home button LED is illuminated
- The power-switch LED flashes once every three to five seconds

If the control panel is not responding, or if it appears black or blank, try the following:

a. Turn the printer power off, and then on again.

b. Verify that the system is correctly functioning by printing a test page. Does the test page print correctly?

   Is the printer HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) accessible?

c. Verify that the control panel is correctly functioning. If it is not, turn the printer off and reseat the control-panel assembly cable connections at the control-panel assembly and the formatter.

d. Try upgrading the firmware. If the firmware upgrade fails to resolve the problem, and the printer still freezes while in Sleep mode or Sleep delay, elevate the case.

e. If the error persists and the EWS functions correctly, replace the control-panel assembly.

6. If normal start-up noises are not heard, turn the printer off, and then remove any installed accessories (for example, envelope feeders, paper feeders, or output accessories).

7. Turn the printer on, and then listen for start-up noises. If normal start-up noises are heard, the problem might be with an accessory.

8. Perform an engine test. The engine test procedure varies by printer, so refer to the printer Service Manual to get instructions.

9. If the engine test page prints, the print engine is operating normally. Replace the formatter.

CAUTION: Under **NO** circumstances should a formatter from a different printer be installed during the repair or troubleshooting processes. The formatter stores important data specific to the model of printer it is installed in and is not designed to be swapped or repurposed in any way. Return a used formatter to HP.

Issues that can occur from swapping a formatter include:

- Serial number, product number, product name, page count, and supported cartridges information change and might make a product unusable
- 33.02.01 Used board/Disk installed errors

If a used formatter is installed and causes this issue, the **partner** must cover the costs of the repair in the form of a product replacement. **There is no method in the field to recover a printer where a used formatter is installed.**

NOTE: If the engine test page does not print, turn the printer off, reconnect the formatter power connector, remove the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC), and then try the engine test again. If the page prints, the problem might be the eMMC.

10. If after replacing the formatter or eMMC normal start-up noises are still not heard, replace the DC controller.
11. If the print engine appears to be correctly operating (the engine test page successfully printed) and the control panel is still blank, replace the power supply.

Engine diagnostics

Learn about internal engine diagnostics that help in troubleshooting print quality, paper path, noise, assembly, and timing issues.

Engine test

Learn about troubleshooting the printer using the engine test diagnostic.

When the engine test is performed, a test page with lines prints if the engine is functioning correctly.

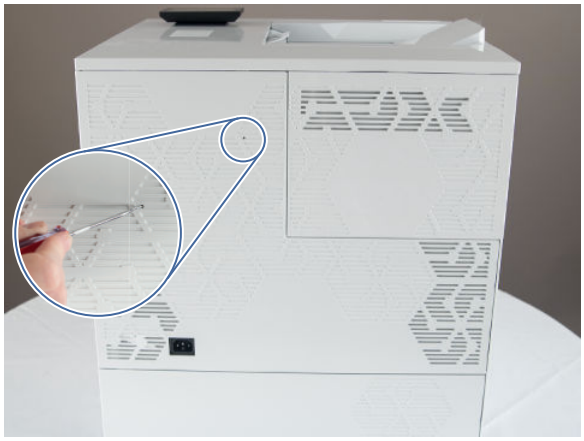
NOTE: Depending on printer models, either a simplex engine test page, a duplex engine test page, or both simplex and duplex engine test pages might be available.

Use a small pointed object to depress and hold the engine test button (location varies depending on the printer model). An engine test page prints. The test page can use only Tray 2 as the paper source, so make sure that paper is loaded in Tray 2.

Possible engine test pages (printer dependent)

- A series of lines parallel to the **short** end of the page.
- A series of lines parallel to the **long** end of the page.

Figure 3-68 **Engine test button**



Defeating interlocks

Learn about defeating printer interlocks.

Different tests can be used to isolate different types of issues. For assembly or noise isolation, run the diagnostic test when the front, right or toner supply (model specific) door is open.

Defeating the door interlocks allows observation of the paper pick operation.

Defeat the front door interlock

1. Open the front door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a strip, and insert the strip into the slot for the door interlock logic switch.

It might be easier to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to defeat the door interlock.

Figure 3-69 **Defeat the front door interlock**



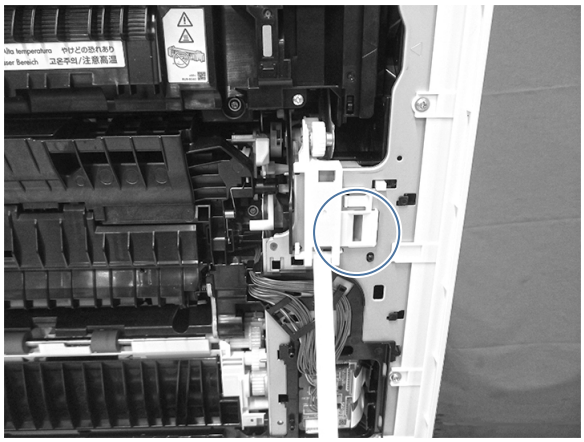
Defeat the right door interlock

1. Open the right door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a strip, and insert the strip into the slot for the door interlock logic switch.

It might be easier to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to defeat the door interlock.

Figure 3-70 Defeat the right door interlock



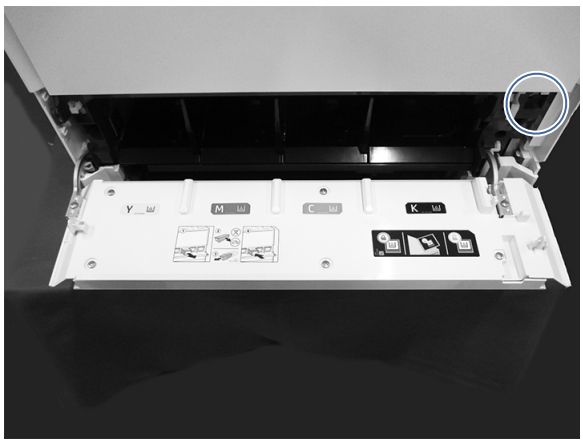
Defeat the toner supply door interlock (X57945 models)

1. Open the toner supply door.
2. Insert a folded piece of paper into the slot.

TIP: Fold a stiff piece of paper, for example a business card or index card, into a strip, and insert the strip into the slot for the door interlock logic switch.

It might be easier to use a small flat-blade screwdriver to defeat the door interlock.

Figure 3-71 Defeat the toner supply door interlock (X57945 models)



Disable cartridge check

Learn about the disable cartridge check troubleshooting diagnostic.

CAUTION: Do not perform a disable cartridge check on color printers that use a two-part cartridge design. Doing so might result in toner cross contamination in the supply lines.

Use this diagnostic test to print internal pages or send an external job to the printer when a toner cartridge is removed or exchanged. Supply errors are ignored while the printer is in this mode.

When the printer is in this mode, access the troubleshooting menus and print internal pages (the print quality pages will be the most useful). This test can be used to isolate problems, such as noise, and to isolate print-quality problems that are related to a toner cartridge.

NOTE: Do not remove or exchange the toner cartridge until after beginning the disable cartridge check diagnostic.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Troubleshooting
   - Diagnostic Tests
   - Disable Cartridge Check

LED diagnostics (formatter)

Learn about troubleshooting the printer using formatter LEDs.

The formatter has two network port LEDs. When the printer is connected to a properly working network through a network cable, the amber LED indicates network activity, and the green LED indicates the link status.

A blinking amber LED indicates network traffic. If the green LED is off, a link has failed. For link failures, check all of the network cable connections.

In addition, try to manually configure the network card link speed setting by using the printer control panel. To change the link speed, complete the following steps.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Settings button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Networking
   - Ethernet
   - Link Speed
3. Touch the desired link speed setting, and then touch the Done button.

Use the solve problems checklist

Learn about using the solve problems checklist.

If the printer is not correctly functioning, complete the steps (in the order given) in the following checklist. If the printer fails a checklist step, follow the corresponding troubleshooting suggestions for that step. If a checklist step resolves the problem, skip the remaining checklist items.

1. If the control panel is blank or black, check the following before proceeding:
   - Check to make sure that the printer is not in Sleep mode (press a button on the control panel).
   - Check the power cable.
   - Check that the power is turned on.

- Make sure that the line voltage is correct for the printer power configuration. (See the label that is on the back of the printer for voltage requirements.) If a power strip is in use, and its voltage is not within specifications, connect the printer directly into the electrical outlet. If it is already connected into the outlet, try a different outlet.

NOTE: The following conditions indicate that the printer has frozen while in Sleep mode. Opening a door or pressing a control-panel button causes the printer to wake up from Sleep mode.

- The control panel home button LED is illuminated
- The power-switch LED flashes once every three to five seconds

If the control panel is not responding, or if it appears black or blank, try the following:

a. Turn the printer power off, and then on again.

b. Verify that the system is correctly functioning.

TIP: The LED on the formatter will blink if the control panel is not detected or the cables are not properly seated.

- Try printing from a host computer. Does the printer print a test page?
- Is the printer HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) accessible?

c. Verify that the control panel is correctly functioning.

i. Turn the power off.

ii. Reseat the cable connections on the bottom of the control-panel assembly and the control-panel connectors at the formatter.

iii. Turn the printer power on, and then check for functionality of the control-panel by pressing a button on the control panel.

d. Try upgrading the firmware. If the firmware upgrade fails to resolve the problem, and the printer still freezes while in Sleep mode, elevate the case.

e. If the error persists and the EWS functions correctly, replace the control-panel assembly.

2. The control panel should indicate a Ready, Paused, or Sleep mode on status. If an error message displays, resolve the error.

- Try using the Power-on checks section in this manual to solve the problem.

3. For network connection errors, verify that the network port is active and that the cables are securely seated.

a. Check the network cable connections between the printer and the computer or network port. Make sure that the connections are secure.

NOTE: The network LEDs should be illuminated and flashing.



b. Make sure that the cables are not faulty by trying different cables, if possible.

c. Check the network connection. Verify that the port is active.

4. Print a configuration page. If the printer is connected to a network, an HP Jetdirect page also prints.

   a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button. Open the following menus:

      i. Configuration/Status Pages

      ii. Configuration Page

   b. Touch Configuration Page to select it.

   TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

   c. Touch the Print button to print the pages.

   - If the pages do not print, check that at least one tray contains paper.

   TIP: Make sure that the selected paper size and type meet HP specifications. Also open the **Trays** menu on the printer control panel and verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.

   - If the page jams in the printer, follow the instructions on the control panel to clear the jam.
   - If the page does not print correctly, the problem is with the printer hardware.
   - If the page prints correctly, the printer hardware is working. The problem is with the host computer, with the print driver, or with the program.

5. Print a supplies status page and then check that the maintenance items below are not at their end-of-life.

NOTE: HP long-life consumables and maintenance kit life specifications are estimations. Actual individual life/yield during normal use varies depending on usage, environment, media, and other factors. Estimated life is not an implied guarantee or warrantable.

   a. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports button. Open the following menus:

      i. Configuration/Status Pages

      ii. Supplies Status Page

b. Touch Supplies Status Page to select it.

TIP: Multiple report pages can be selected, and then printed together.

c. Touch the Print button to print the pages.

If a maintenance item needs to be replaced, order the replacement part.

6. Verify that the correct print driver for this printer is installed. Check the program to make sure that the print driver for this printer is used. The print driver is on the CD that came with the printer, or can be downloaded from this Web site: http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP.

7. Print a short document from a different program that has worked in the past. If this solution works, the problem is with the program. If this solution does not work (the document does not print), complete these steps:

   a. Try printing the job from another computer that has the printer software installed.

   b. If the printer is connected to the network, connect the printer directly to a host computer with a USB cable. Redirect the printer to the correct port, or reinstall the software (make sure to select the new connection type).

Control panel troubleshooting

If the control panel is not responding normally or has display issues, use the following procedures to troubleshoot the issues.

Control panel system diagnostics

Learn about printer firmware control panel troubleshooting.

Use the diagnostics in this section to test the control panel hardware and display using the printer firmware system diagnostics.

Open the control panel system diagnostic tests

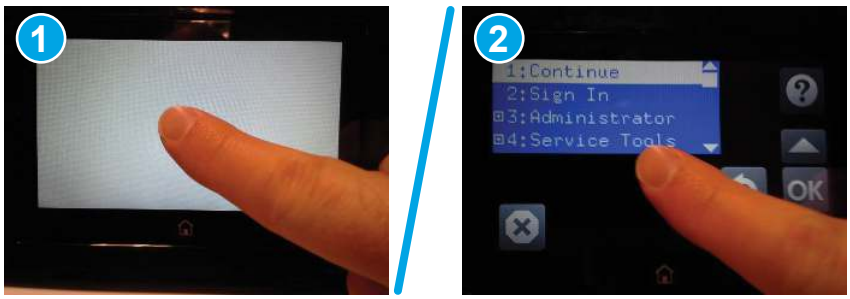
Learn about accessing the control panel system diagnostics tests from a touchscreen control panel.

Use the following procedure to open the control panel system diagnostics tests.

1. Turn the printer power off, and then on again.

2. Touch the middle of the control panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-72 Open the Pre-boot menu



3. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 3-73 Pre-boot menu

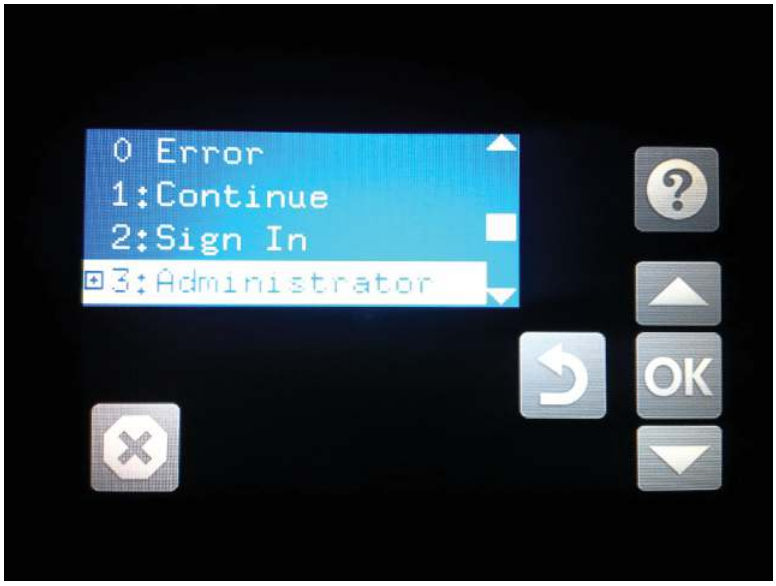


Table 3-21 Pre-boot menu button descriptions

Button	Description
	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.

4. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to +3 Administration, and then press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-74 Access the administration menu



5. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to +E CP Diagnostics, and then press the OK button to select it.

NOTE: An administrator password might be required to continue.

Figure 3-75 Access the diagnostics menu



Screen test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic screen test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.

2. With 1 Screen Test highlighted, press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-76 Open the screen test



The blue horizontal gradient screen appears.

Figure 3-77 Blue horizontal gradient screen



3. Touch the touchscreen to scroll though the remaining touchscreen test screens.

NOTE: Touch the Home button to exit the test.

Table 3-22 Touchscreen test screens

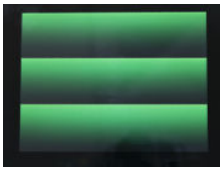
Screen	Description
	Green horizontal gradient

Table 3-22 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

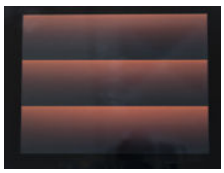
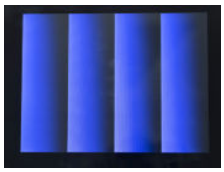
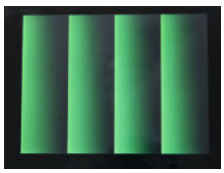
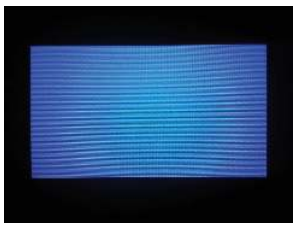
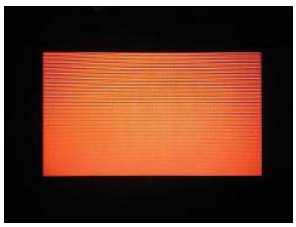
Screen	Description
	Red horizontal gradient
	Blue vertical gradient
	Green vertical gradient
	Red vertical gradient
	Blue with horizontal interlaced
	Green with horizontal interlaced
	Red with horizontal interlaced

Table 3-22 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

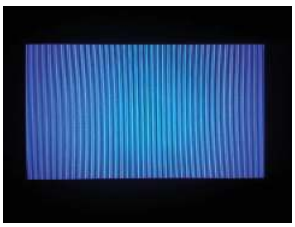
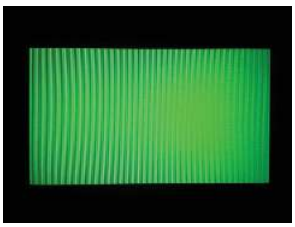
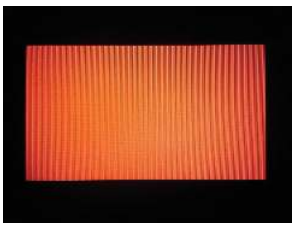
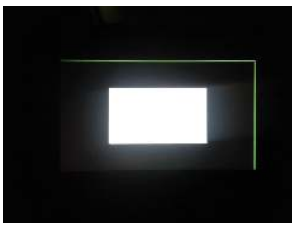
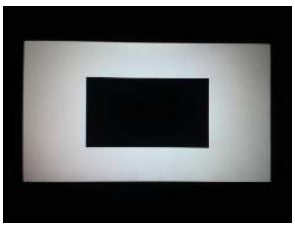
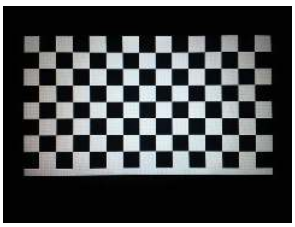
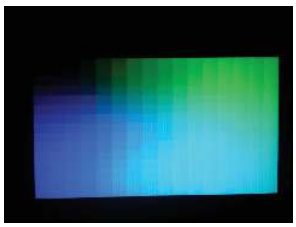
Screen	Description
	Blue with vertical interlaced
	Green with vertical interlaced
	Red with vertical interlaced
	Black with white center
	White with black center
	Checkerboard

Table 3-22 Touchscreen test screens (continued)

Screen	Description
	Multicolor stripes
	Blue green grid meshing

Touch test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic touch test.

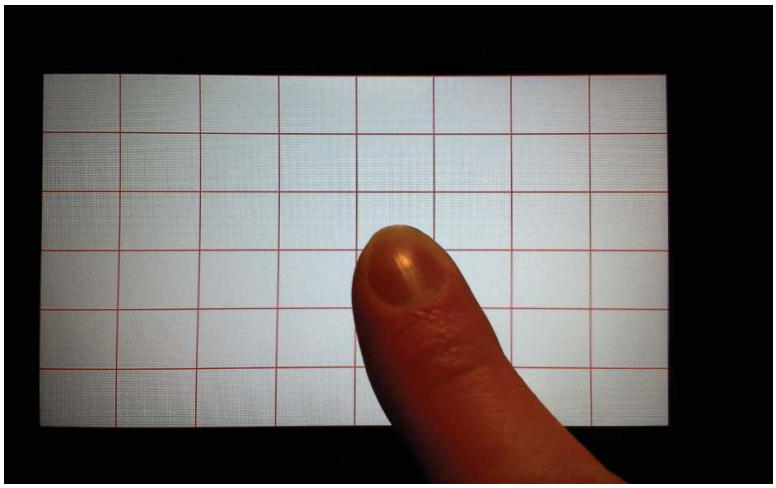
1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 2 Touch Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-78 Open the touch test



3. Use your finger to touch the white grid on the display.

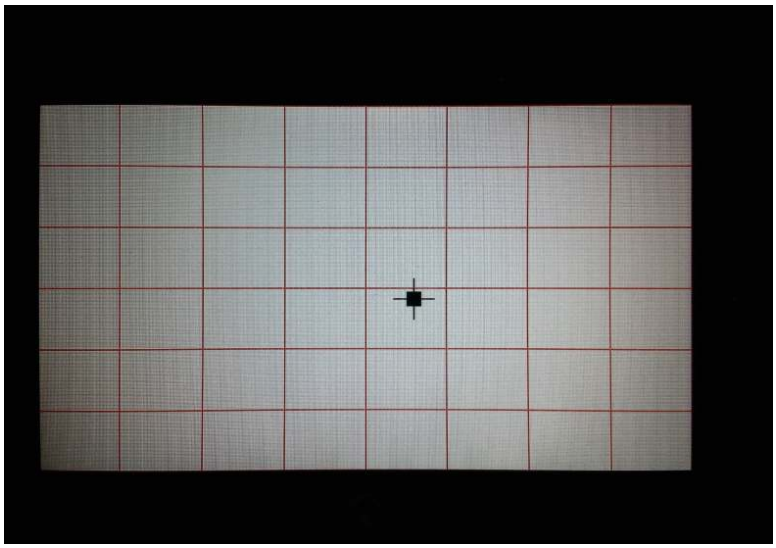
Figure 3-79 **Touch the white grid**



A mark appears on the grid where it was touched.

NOTE: Touch the Home button to exit the test.

Figure 3-80 **Verify the mark**



SoftKey test

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic SoftKey test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.

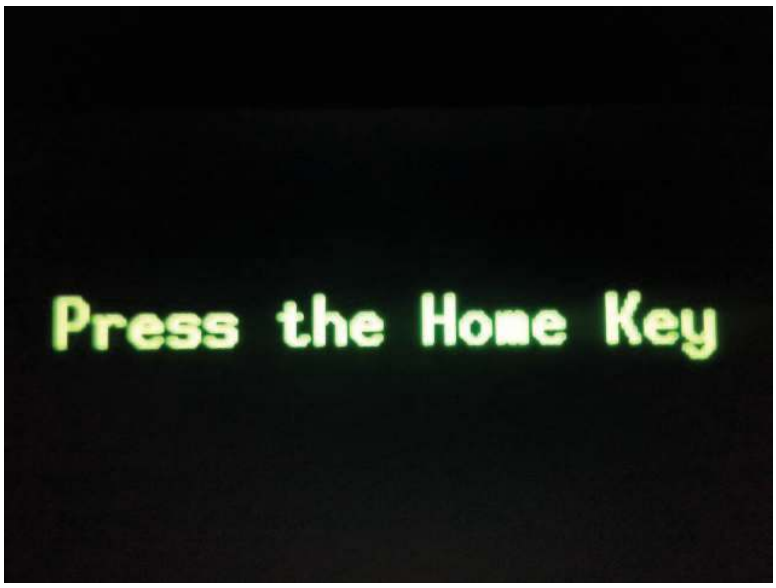
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 3 SoftKey Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-81 Open the softkey test



3. When prompted, touch the Home button.

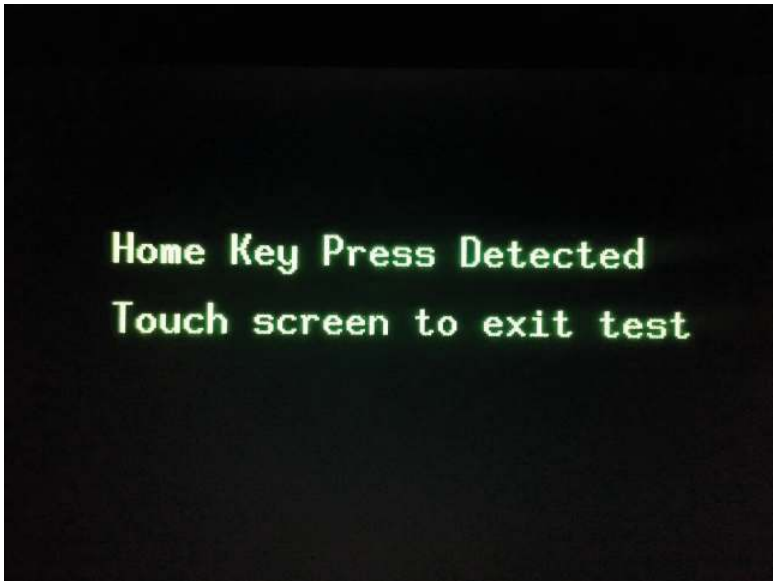
Figure 3-82 Touch the Home button



If the test is successful, the following screen appears on the display.

NOTE: Touch the screen to exit the test.

Figure 3-83 Successful test



Backlight test

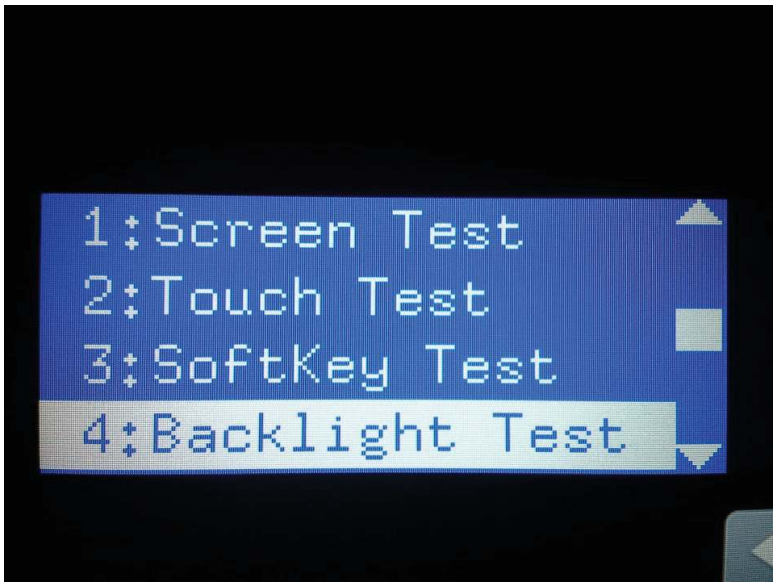
Learn about the control panel system diagnostic backlight test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 4 Backlight Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

   After selecting the 4 Backlight Test, the screen automatically dims, and then returns to full brightness.

NOTE: Touch any key to exit the test.

Figure 3-84 Open the backlight test



Sound test

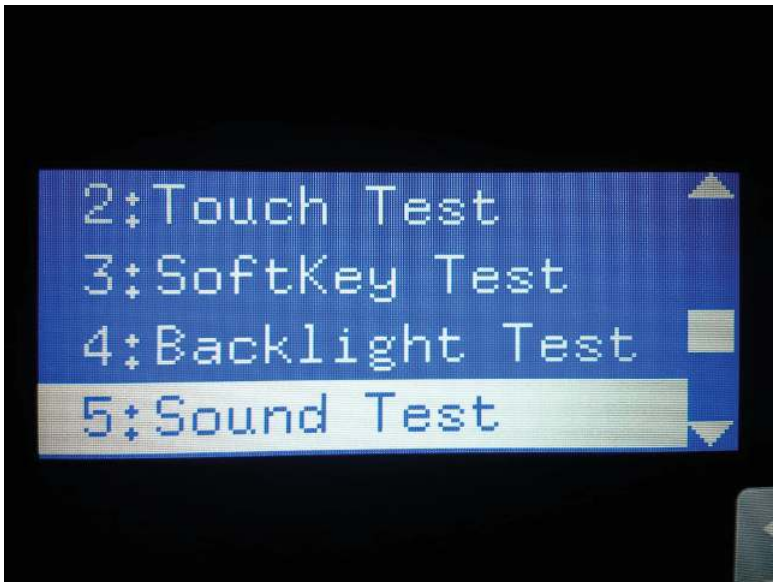
Learn about the control panel system diagnostic sound test.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 5 Sound Test, and then press the OK button to select it.

   After selecting the 5 Sound Test, the printer emits a series of audible tones.

NOTE: Touch any key to exit the test.

Figure 3-85 Open the sound test



Version

Learn about the control panel system diagnostic version information.

1. Open the control panel system diagnostic tests.
2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to scroll to 7 Version, and then press the OK button to select it.

NOTE: Touch any key to exit the test.

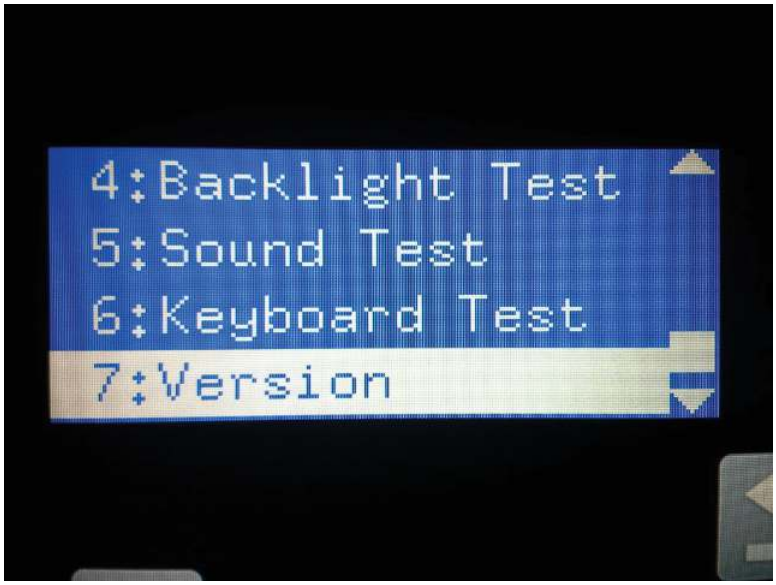
Select 7 Version to view the following types of information:

NOTE: The following types of information are for the control panel only, not the printer.

- Panel ID
- Hardware (version)
- Firmware (version)
- KB Hw (version)
- KB Firm (version)
- LCD Vendor

- Touch Controller Version

Figure 3-86 **Open the version information**



Control panel messages document (CPMD)

Learn about the printer control panel messages document (CPMD).

NOTE: A complete CPMD is not included in this service manual.

You can use the error code look-up tool from product home page.

Error codes (types and structure)

Error codes and control-panel messages display on the printer control panel to indicate the current printer status or situations that might require action. Error codes are numerical, or alphanumerical, and have a set structure with six characters (example: 13.WX.YZ).

- The first two characters are numeric and represent the system component that is causing the error. For example, in error code `10.22.15`, **10** = **Supplies** for HP LaserJets.
- The remaining four characters (W, X, Y, and Z values) further define the error.

Table 3-23 **ERROR CODES: The first two characters**

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
10.WX.YZ	Supplies (LaserJet)	Supply error or supply memory error.
11.WX.YZ	Real-time clock	Internal error with the clock on the formatter.
13.WX.YZ	Jam (LaserJet)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
15.WX.YZ	Jam (PageWide)	Paper jam or open door jam error.
17.WX.YZ	Supplies (PageWide)	Supply error or supply memory error.
20.WX.YZ	Printer memory	Insufficient memory or buffering error.

Table 3-23 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
21.WX.YZ	Page	Page complexity causing a decompression error when trying to process job.
30.WX.YZ	Scanner	Flatbed scanner error occurring inside the unit.
31.WX.YZ	Document feeder	Document feeder, scanner, or jam error.
32.WX.YZ	Backup, restore, or reset	Backup, restore, or reset notification or error.
33.WX.YZ	Security	Backup, Disk, EFI BIOS, Firmware integrity (SureStart), or Trusted Platform Module (TPM) notification or error.
40.WX.YZ	Input/Output (I/O)	Partition manager, secure erase, or USB accessory error.
41.WX.YZ	Fuser, Laser scanner, or Paper path	Miscellaneous error including general and misprint or mismatch errors typically involving (but not limited to) the fuser, the laser scanner, or the paper path.
42.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving the Event Log, Shell, System Manager, or other component.
44.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware failure involving a digital sending component.
45.WX.YZ	OXPd/Web Kit (PageWide)	Informational notifications involving the OXPd Web Kit (communications log).
46.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	Engine communication error.
47.WX.YZ	Firmware	Job parser or printer calibration error.
48.WX.YZ	Firmware	PJA job accounting, job management, or job pipeline error.
49.WX.YZ	Firmware	Firmware communication error.
50.WX.YZ	Fuser (LaserJet)	Fuser error.
51.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner beam error.
52.WX.YZ	Laser scanner (LaserJet)	Laser scanner startup error.
54.WX.YZ	Sensor	Sensor error (not jam related).
55.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller communication error.
56.WX.YZ	Paper handling (LaserJet)	Paper input/output or accessory error.
57.WX.YZ	Fan	Fan error.
58.WX.YZ	Sensor	Engine sensor failure.
59.WX.YZ	Motor (LaserJet)	Motor error.
60.WX.YZ	Tray motor error (LaserJet)	Tray lifting or pick up error.
61.WX.YZ	Engine (PageWide)	Print engine error with the 8-bit data package.
62.WX.YZ	System (LaserJet) Print bar (PageWide)	LaserJet internal system error. PageWide print system error.
63.WX.YZ	Engine (LaserJet)	General engine error (electrical, communication, etc.).

Table 3-23 ERROR CODES: The first two characters (continued)

Error code	System Component	System Error Description
65.WX.YZ	Connector	Output accessory connection error.
66.WX.YZ	Output accessory	Output accessory error.
67.WX.YZ	Input accessory	Input accessory connection error
69.WX.YZ	Duplexer	Duplexer error.
70.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	DC controller firmware error.
76.WX.YZ	DC controller (LaserJet)	Power supply fluctuations causes formatter and DC controller communication issue and results them not to be in synchronization.
80.WX.YZ	Managed device	Embedded Jetdirect error.
81.WX.YZ	Near Field Communication (NFC)	Wireless, Bluetooth or internal EIO error.
82.WX.YZ	Memory (hard disk, EMMC, etc.)	Disk hardware error.
90.WX.YZ	Internal diagnostics	Internal test of systems (i.e. disk, CPB, display) or interconnection error.
98.WX.YZ	Hard disk	Hard disk partition error.
99.WX.YZ	Firmware installer	Remote Firmware Upgrade (RFU), firmware install (engine or accessory), or disk error.

Print the supplies status page

The supplies status page indicates the cartridge status.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Reports menu icon.
2. Touch the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Touch Supplies Status Page, and then touch the Print icon to print the page.

Pre-boot menu options

The Pre-boot menus are available prior to the printer initializing.

CAUTION: The Format Disk option performs a disk initialization for the entire disk. The operating system, firmware files, and third party files (among other files) will be completely lost. HP does not recommend this action unless it is specified as a solution in the CPMD.

TIP: The Pre-boot menu is also remotely accessible by using a telnet network protocol (Remote Admin) to establish an administration connection to the printer.

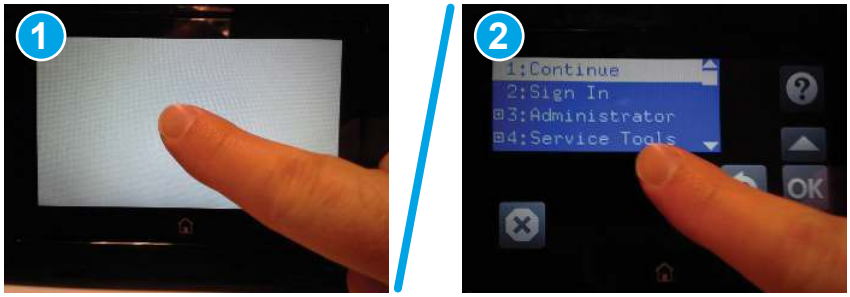
Open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Use the following procedure to open the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

1. Turn the printer on.

2. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-87 Open the Pre-boot menu



3. On the Pre-boot menu screen, use the following buttons to navigate the tests.

Figure 3-88 Pre-boot menu



Button	Description
	Use this button to see more information about a selected item.
	Use this button to scroll up through menu items.
	Use this button to select a highlighted menu item.
	Use this button to scroll down through menu items.

Button	Description
	Use this button to go back to the previous menu.
	Not used.

4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to navigate the Pre-boot menu.
5. Touch the OK button to select a menu item.

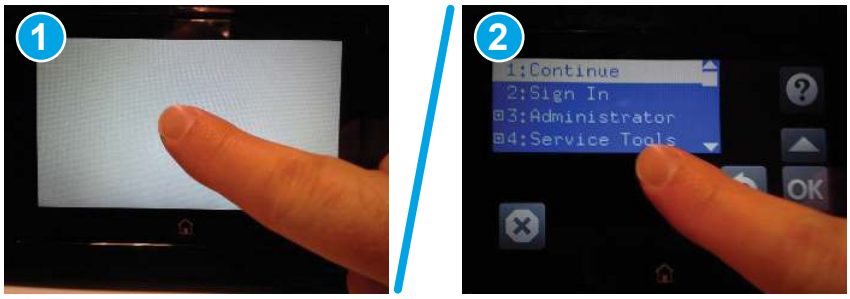
Cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel

Use the following procedure to perform a cold reset using the Pre-boot menu from a touchscreen control panel.

⚠ **CAUTION:** This procedure resets all printer configurations and settings to factory defaults (customer configurations and settings are lost).

1. Touch the middle of the control-panel display when you see the 1/8 under the logo.

Figure 3-89 **Open the Pre-boot menu**



2. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button.
3. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the +8:Startup Options item, and then touch the OK button.
4. Use the down arrow ▼ button to highlight the 2 Cold Reset item, and then touch the OK button to select it.
5. Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the 1:Continue item, and then touch the OK button.

NOTE: The printer will initialize.

Remote Admin

Learn about the printer Remote Admin function.

The Remote Admin feature allows remote access the printer Pre-boot menu (BIOS environment). The printer functions as a telnet server which uses the telnet networking protocol to transmit text data. Any

computer (with telnet installed and enabled) can function as the telnet client to remotely display and interact with the Pre-boot menu.

IMPORTANT: While the Remote Admin function allows remote access the Pre-boot menu, for security reasons the Remote Admin connection must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer.

Required software and network connection

Before using the Remote Admin feature, make sure that the telnet network protocol is installed and enabled on the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: This section describes enabling and configuring the telnet feature for computers using a Windows® operating system.

HP recommends that the telnet client computer be a Windows-based system; however, there are other operating systems that support the telnet network protocol. For information about enabling and configuring the telnet network protocol for other operating systems, see the owner's manual for that operating system.

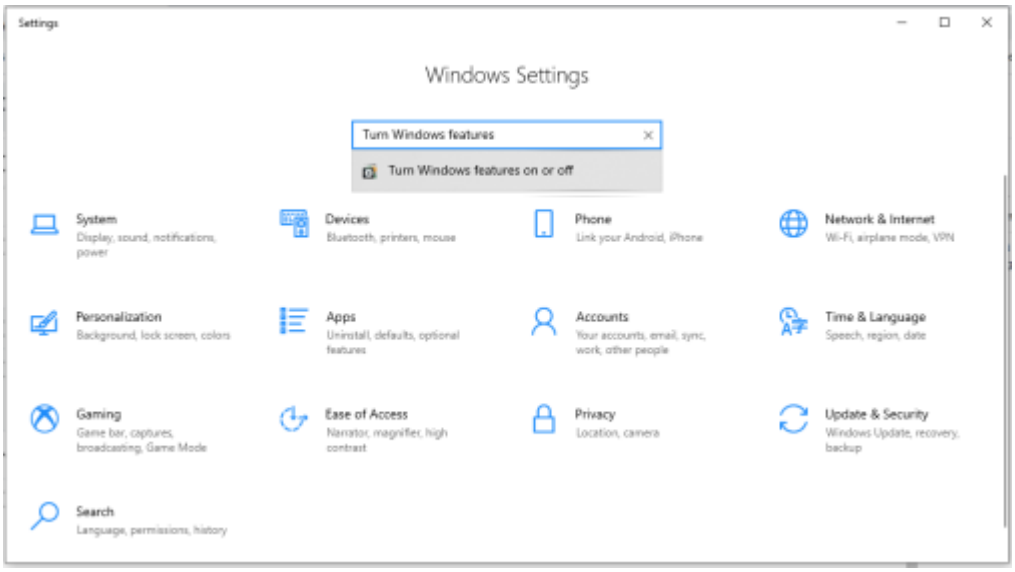
Enable the Windows telnet client

All computers using the Windows operating system have the telnet client installed, however, the telnet client function might not be enabled by default.

NOTE: The figures and menus in this section are for the Windows 10® operating system. Screens and menu selections might vary slightly for other operating systems.

1. Use the **Start** menu to open the **Windows Settings** dialog box, and then search for **Turn Windows features on or off**. Click the **Turn Windows features on or off** item.

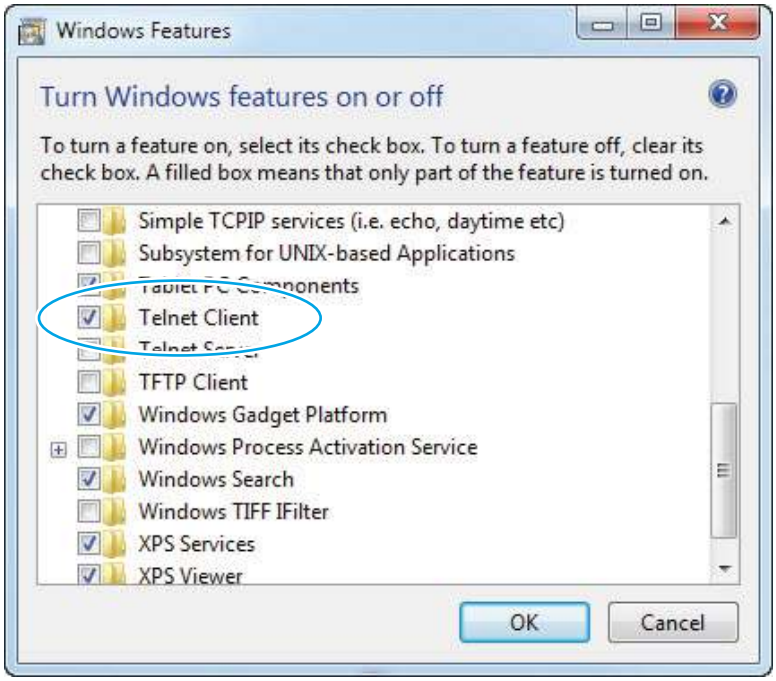
   Figure 3-90 **Open Windows Settings**

2. In the **Windows Features** box, scroll down to **Telnet Client**. If the check box is not checked, click the box to select it, and then click the **OK** button.

TIP: If the check box is already checked then the telnet client function is already enabled. Click the **Cancel** button.

Figure 3-91 Enable the telnet client feature



Network connection

The remote telnet client computer must have direct network access to the printer for the Remote Admin function to operate. This means that the telnet client computer must be on the same network as the printer.

The Remote Admin function cannot be accessed through a network firewall or other remote access network security programs.

If a private network is not accessible, ask the network administrator to set up a virtual private network (VPN) connection to the network.

Connect a remote connection

Use the following procedures to connect a remote connection.

Start the telnet server function at the printer

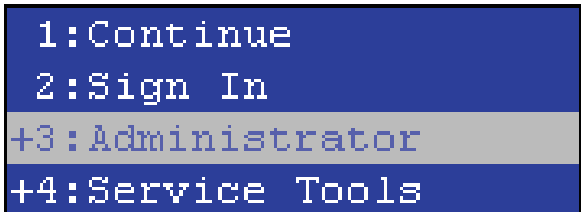
For security reasons the Remote Admin feature must be initiated by a person that is physically present at the printer. The following steps must be performed by a person that is physically present at the printer.

NOTE: This person might need to sign in with an administrator or service password depending on how the printer is configured.

1. Turn the printer on.
2. The HP logo displays on the printer control panel. When a 1/8 with an underscore displays, touch the middle of the screen to open the Pre-boot menu.

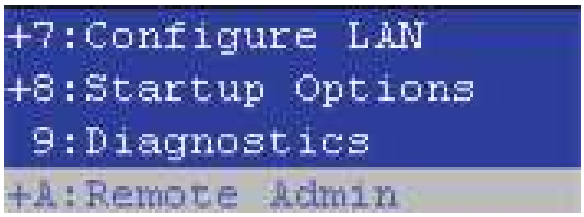
3. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the +3:Administrator item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-92 Select the +3:Administrator item



4. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the +A:Remote Admin item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-93 Select the +A:Remote Admin item



5. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to scroll down and highlight the 1:Start Telnet item, and then touch the OK button to select it.

Figure 3-94 Select the 1:Start Telnet item



6. Do one of the following

- If a connecting message displays briefly, go to 7.

  Figure 3-95 Telnet connecting message

- If an error message displays, use the steps below to identify the problem.

Figure 3-96 **Telnet error message**



a. The printer network cable is not correctly connected.

b. The BIOS LAN settings are incorrect.

   – The printer should be configured to use a static IP address, but is configured to use DHCP instead.

   – The printer is configured to use a static IP address, but the IP address is incorrect.

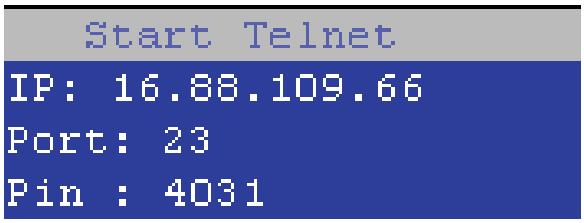
c. The printer is correctly configured to use DHCP, but the DHCP server is not turned on or is malfunctioning.

7. When the printer telnet server function is initialized, the following screen appears. Use the information on this screen to connect the remote telnet client computer to the printer.

NOTE: The printer is now ready to receive remote telnet client commands.

- **IP**: The static or dynamically allocated IP address for the printer.
- **Port**: The standard telnet port (23).
- **Pin**: A randomly generated 4-digit personal identification number (PIN).

Figure 3-97 **Telnet server function initialized**



Start the telnet client function at the remote computer

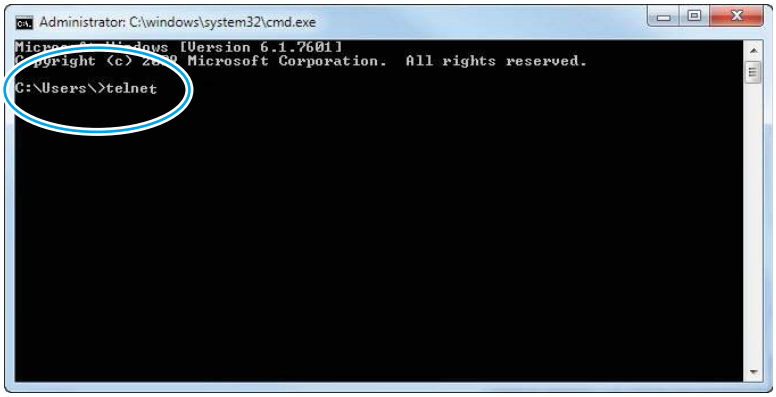
The following steps establish a Remote Admin connection from a remote computer to the printer.

1. From the **Start** menu open the **Command Prompt** desktop application.

TIP: Type `cmd` in the application search dialogue box to find the application.

2. From any displayed directory, type `telnet` at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-98 Start a telnet session

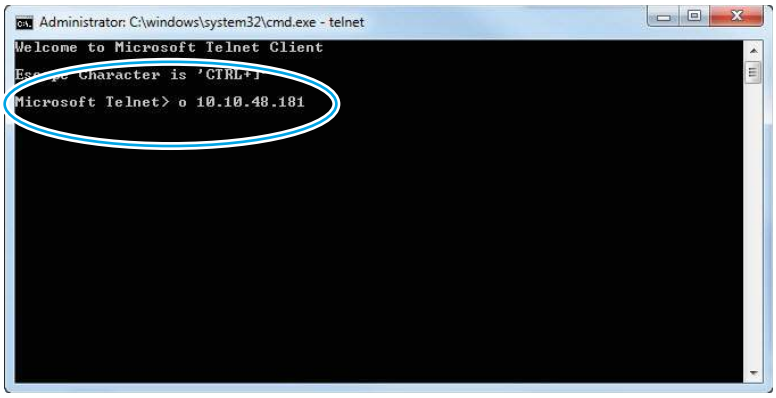


3. Type `o <IP ADDRESS>` at the telnet prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

NOTE: For `<IP ADDRESS>`, substitute the IP address that was displayed in step 7 of the "Start the telnet server function at the printer" topic.

TIP: If the telnet connection fails to establish a connection, the printer is probably behind a firewall or on a different network that the remote telnet client computer.

Figure 3-99 Establish a telnet connection



4. Type the PIN that was displayed in step 7 of then "Start the telnet server function at the printer" topic at the prompt, and then press the **Enter** key.

IMPORTANT: Make sure to type the PIN correctly. After five incorrect PIN entries, the printer terminates the Remote Admin connection. The Remote Admin feature must be re-initiated at the printer. See the "Start the telnet server function at the printer" topic.

Figure 3-100 Enter the PIN

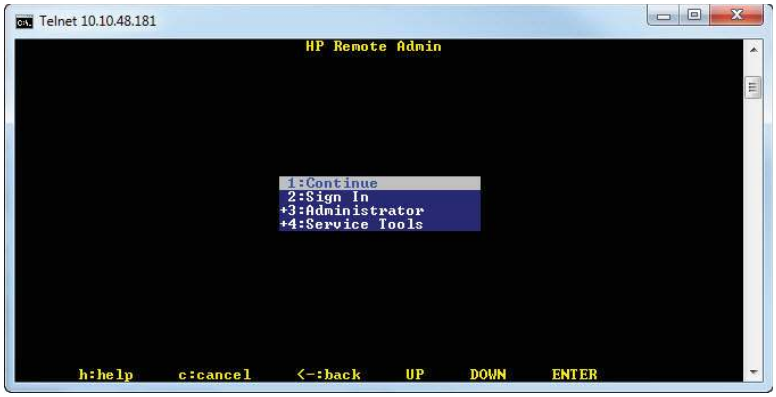


5. The following screen displays when the correct PIN is entered. and the Remote Admin connection is successful. For information about the Pre-boot menu and options, see "Pre-boot menu options" in the printer *Service Manual*.

NOTE: Because a Remote Admin connection is an unsecured telnet network protocol connection, the following Pre-boot menu items are disabled for the remote telnet client computer.

- The **+3:Administrator** menu **4:Change Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **5:Clear Password** item.
- The **+3:Administrator** menu **6:Disk Manage** item.

Figure 3-101 Remote Admin window



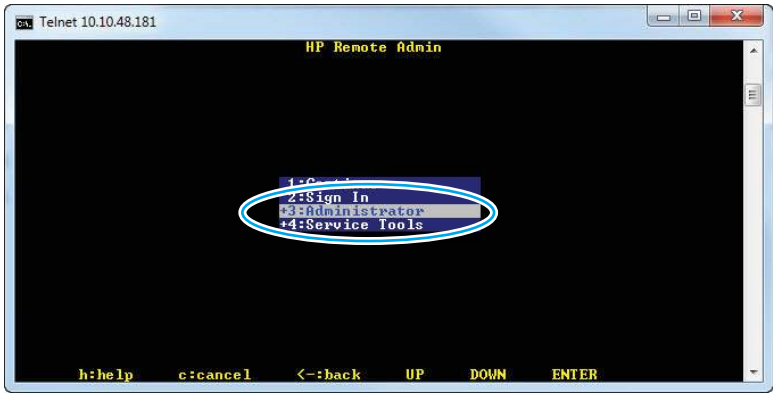
Disconnect a remote connection

The Remote Admin connection can be terminated from the printer control panel or the remote telnet client computer.

NOTE: The following procedure describes terminating a Remote Admin connection from the remote telnet client computer.

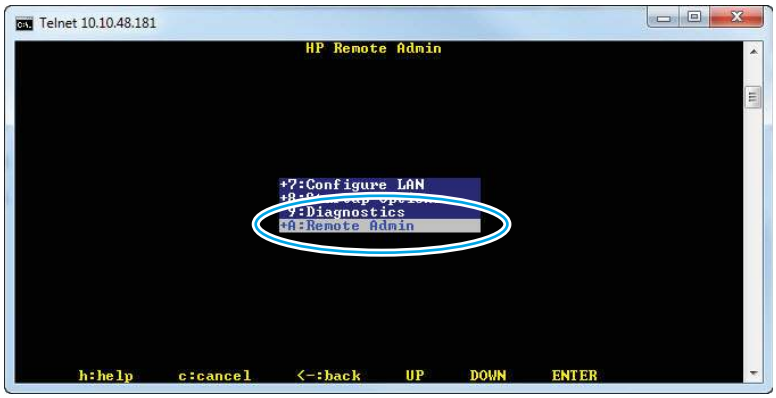
1. From the Pre-boot main menu, use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+3:Administrator** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-102 Access the administrator menu



2. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **+A:Remote Admin** item, and then press the **Enter** key.

Figure 3-103 Access the remote admin menu

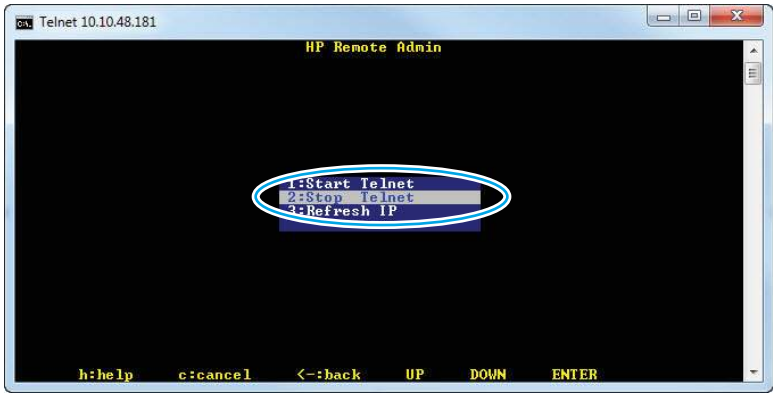


3. Use the arrow buttons on the keyboard to scroll down to the **2:Stop Telnet** item, and then press the **Enter** key. The Remote Admin connection between the printer and the remote telnet client computer terminates.

IMPORTANT: The printer remains in the Pre-boot menu. Have the person that is physically present at the printer do the following:

- Touch the Home button to return to the main Pre-boot menu and highlight the **1:Continue** item, and then touch the OK button. The printer will continue to initialize.

Figure 3-104 Terminate the telnet connection



Print the event log

Learn how to print the event log.

Print the 50 most recent events in the Event Log. For each event, the printed log shows the error number, page count, error code, and description or personality.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Troubleshooting menu icon.
2. Touch Event Log.
3. Touch the Print icon to print the page.

Solve paper handling problems

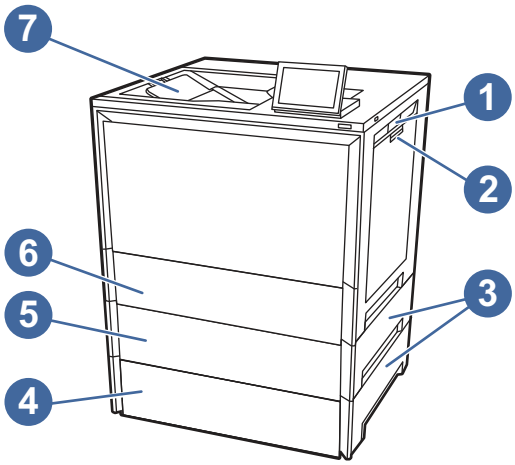
Review the following information to solve paper handling problems.

Clear paper jams (SFP models)

Use the procedures in this section to clear jammed paper from the printer paper path.

Paper jam locations

Jams can occur in these locations.



Item	Description
1	Right door and fuser area
2	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
3	Tray jam access doors
4	Optional Tray 4
5	Optional Tray 3
6	Tray 2
7	Output bin

Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams

Learn about printer jam clearing auto-navigation.

The auto-navigation feature assists in clearing jams by providing step-by-step instructions on the control panel.

When you complete a step, the printer displays instructions for the next step until you have completed all steps in the procedure.

Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?

To reduce the number of paper jams, try these solutions.

View a video that demonstrates how to load paper in a way that reduces the number of paper jams

1. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
2. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
3. Use paper that has not previously been printed or copied on.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.

5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides so they are touching the paper stack without bending it.
6. Make sure that the tray is fully inserted in the printer.
7. If you are printing on heavy, embossed, or perforated paper, use the manual feed feature and feed sheets one at a time.
8. Open the Trays menu on the printer control panel. Verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.
9. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

13.B2.D1 jam error in Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in Tray 1 (multipurpose tray). When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

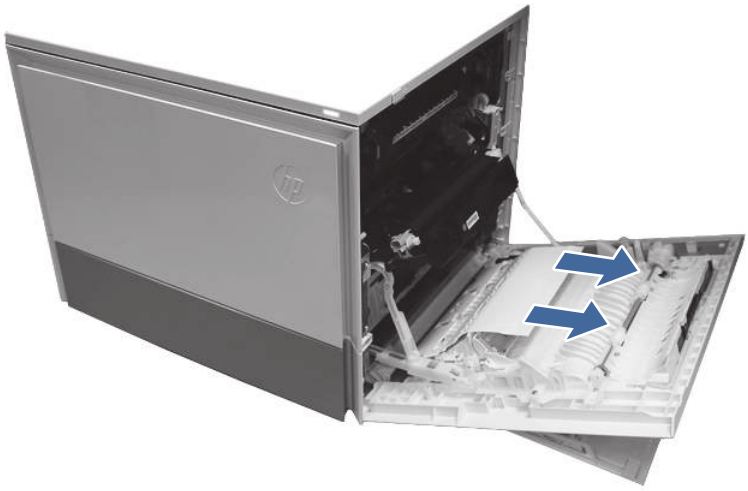
- **13.B2.D1 Jam in tray 1**

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 1

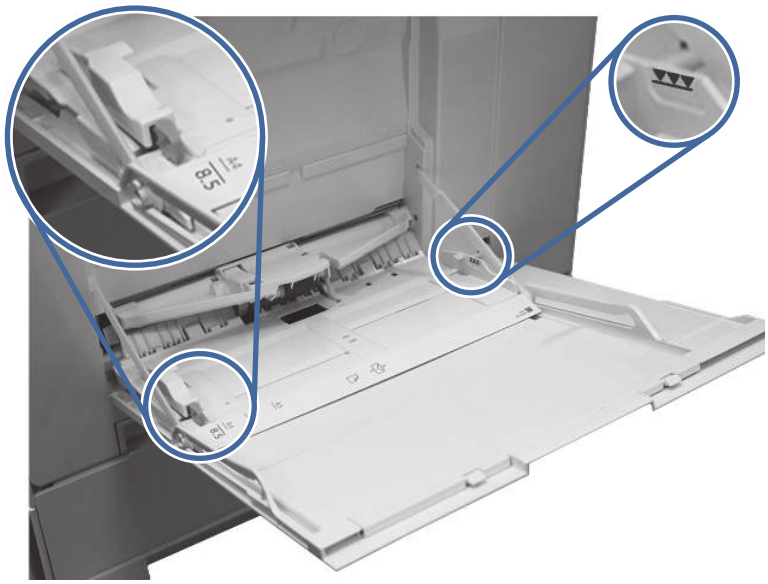
1. If you can see the jammed sheet in Tray 1, remove the jammed sheet by gently pulling it straight out.



2. Open the right door and remove paper from the area shown.



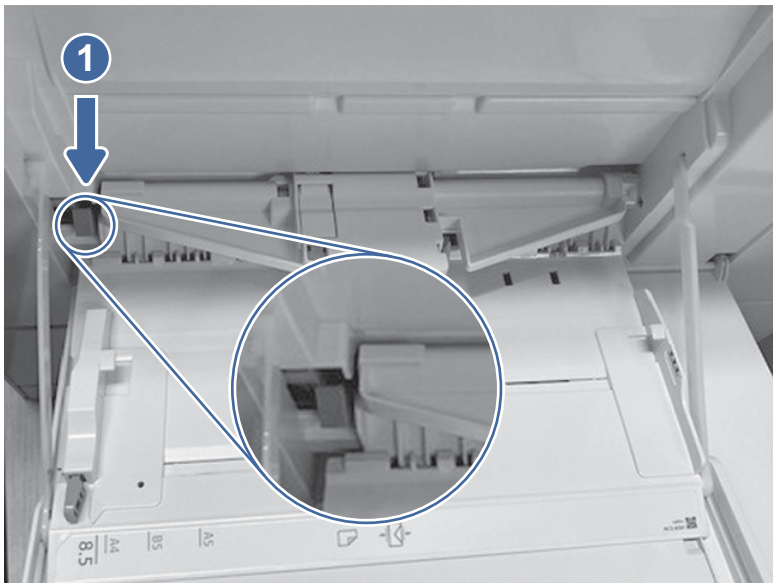
3. Close the right to allow the printer to clear the message.
4. Make sure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
5. Make sure the Tray 1 guides are set to the correct paper size and that the paper tray is not overfilled (paper is below the 3 triangles on the right guide).



6. Load the paper back into the tray and restart the print job.
7. If the same jam appears remove and clean the tray 1 pick, feed and separation rollers.

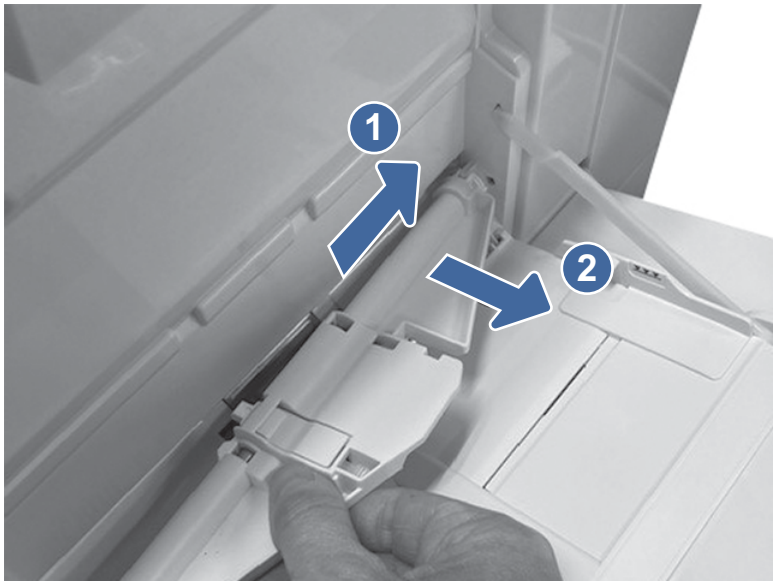
a. Locate and release the pickup roller assembly release tab.

Figure 3-105 Locate the pickup roller assembly tab



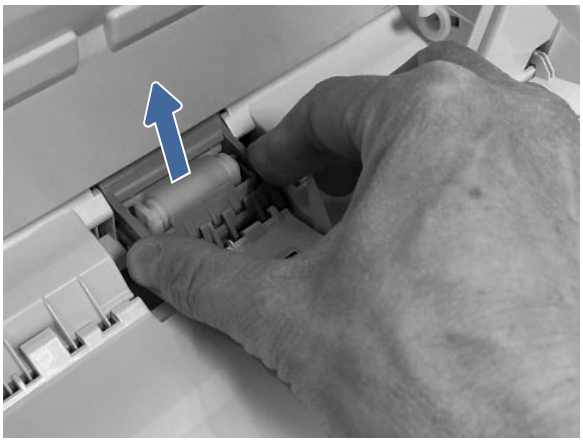
b. Push the pickup roller assembly to the right and then away from the printer.

Figure 3-106 Remove the pickup roller assembly



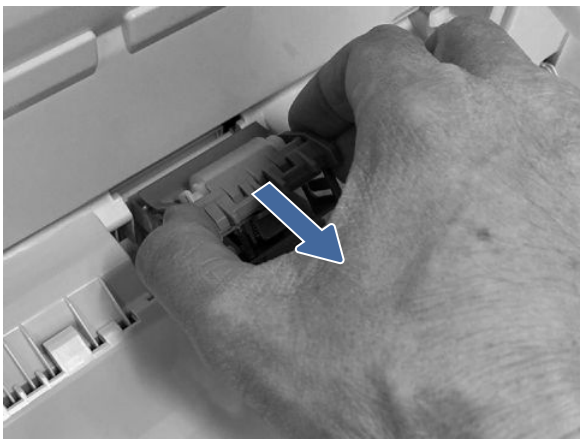
c. Grasp the left- and right-side of the separation roller assembly, and then lift the assembly up.

Figure 3-107 **Lift the separation roller assembly**



d. Pull the separation roller assembly straight out to remove it.

Figure 3-108 **Remove the separation roller assembly**



e. Clean the roller with a dampened lint free cloth.

f. Install the rollers back into tray one and test the tray by printing from tray 1.

8. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B2.D2 jam error in Tray 2

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

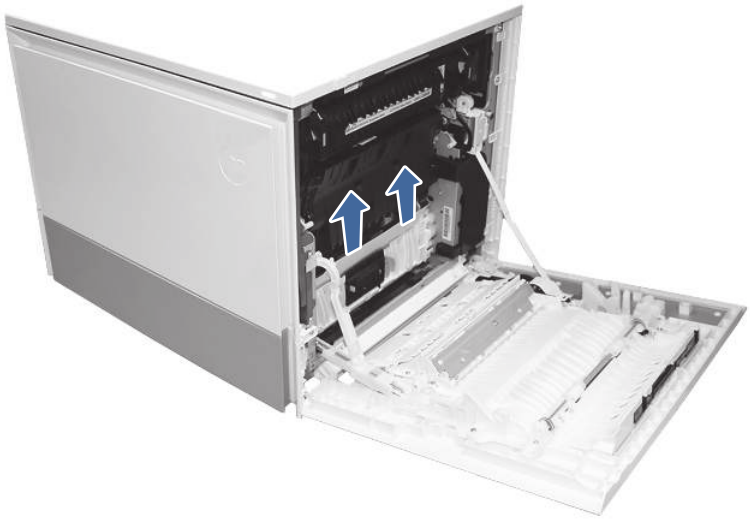
- 13.B2.D2 Paper jam in tray 2

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 2

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the right door to clear the control panel message.

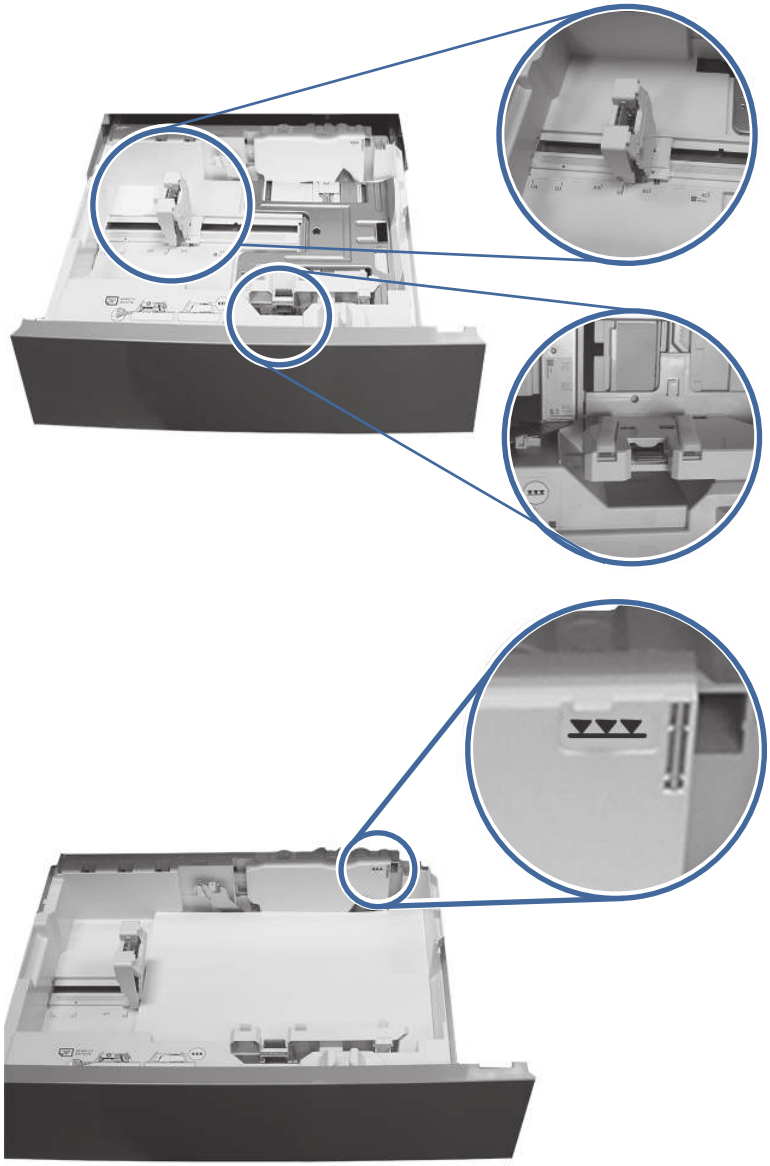
4. Open Tray 2.



5. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.



6. Make sure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

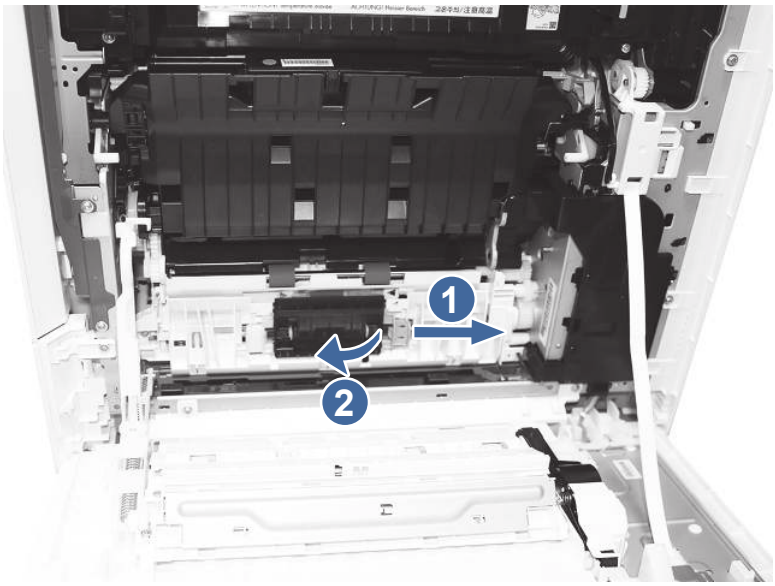


7. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
8. If the error persists, clean the Tray 2 pick, feed, separation rollers.

a. Open the right door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 2 separation roller.



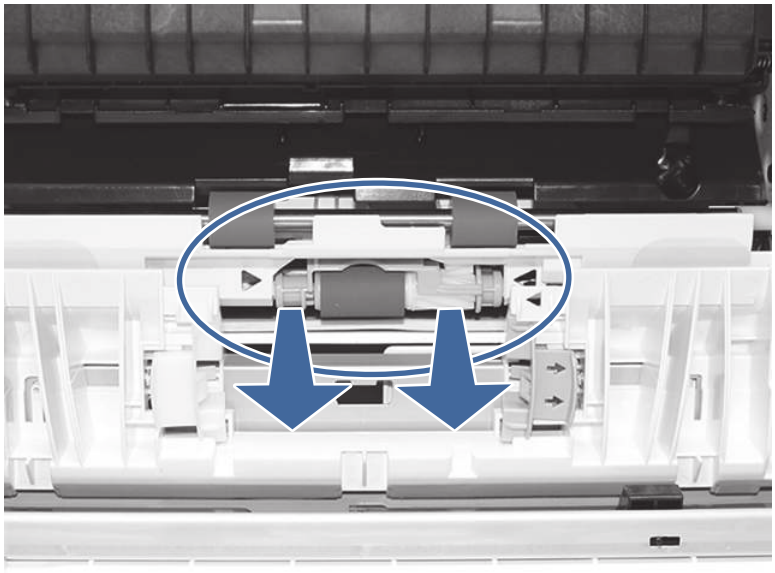
Call-out 1- slide blue locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

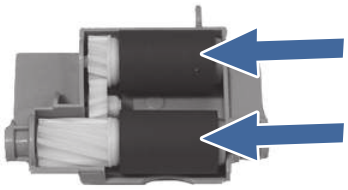
c. Remove the Tray 2 pick and feed rollers.

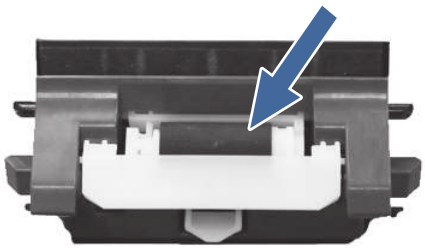
To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on the side of the assembly and slide out as shown.

NOTE: Make sure your hands are clean before touching the rollers. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.





e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 2.

9. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.A3 jam error in Tray 3

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 3. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

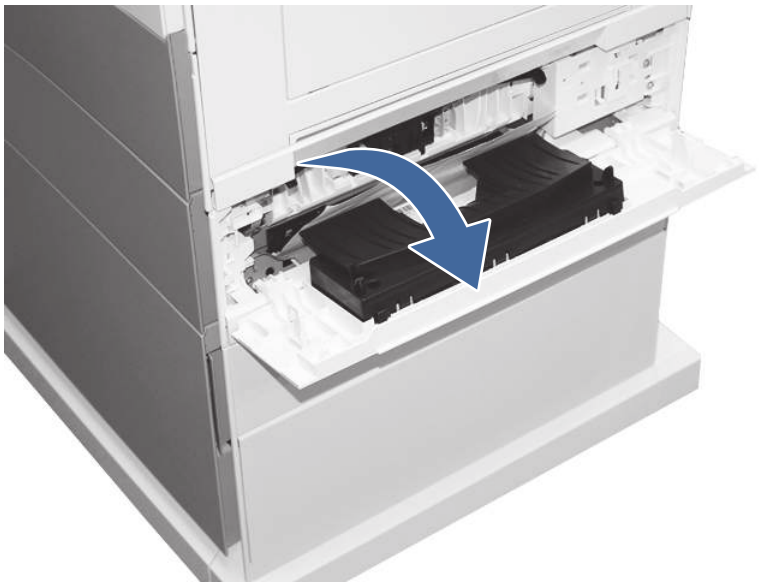
Recommended action for customers

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 550-sheet trays. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

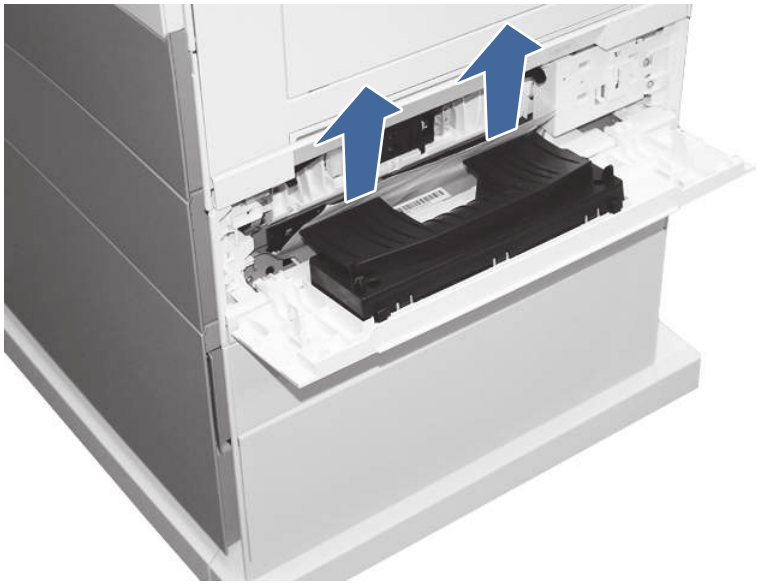
- **13.A3.A3 Jam in tray 3**
- **13.A3.D3 Jam in tray 3**

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 3, and the optional trays

1. Open the Tray 3 right side access door.



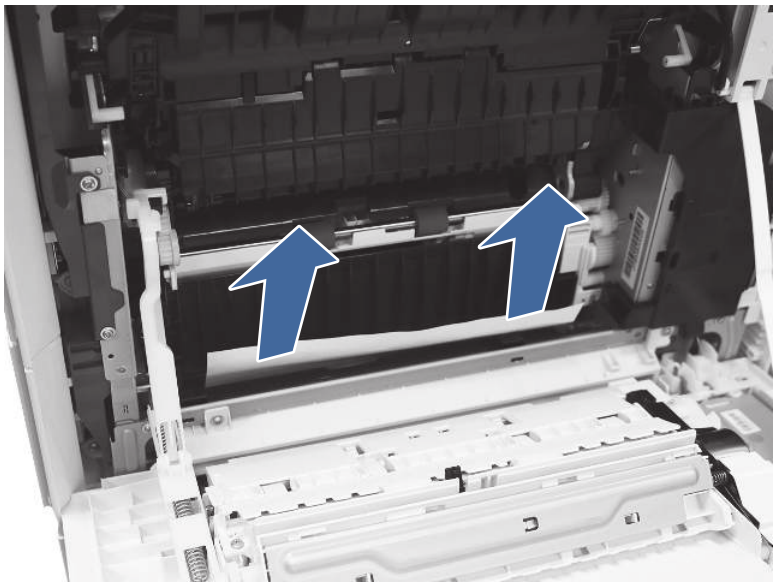
2. Remove any jammed paper found in access area.



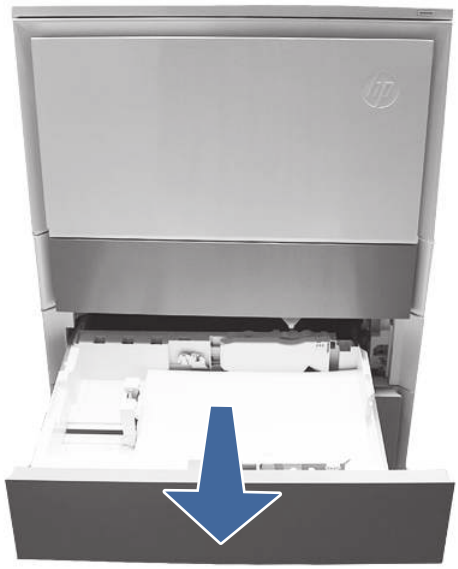
3. Open the right door.



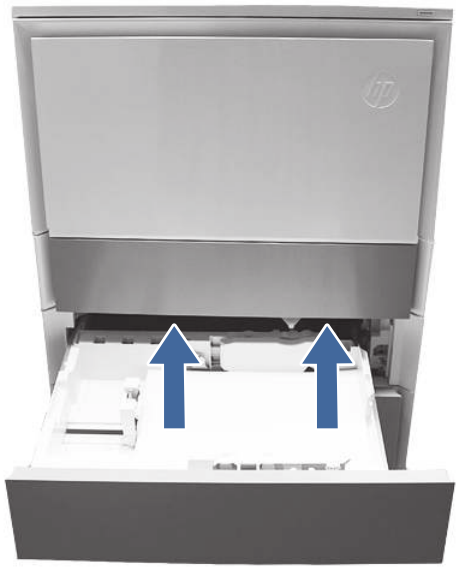
4. Gently remove any jammed paper.



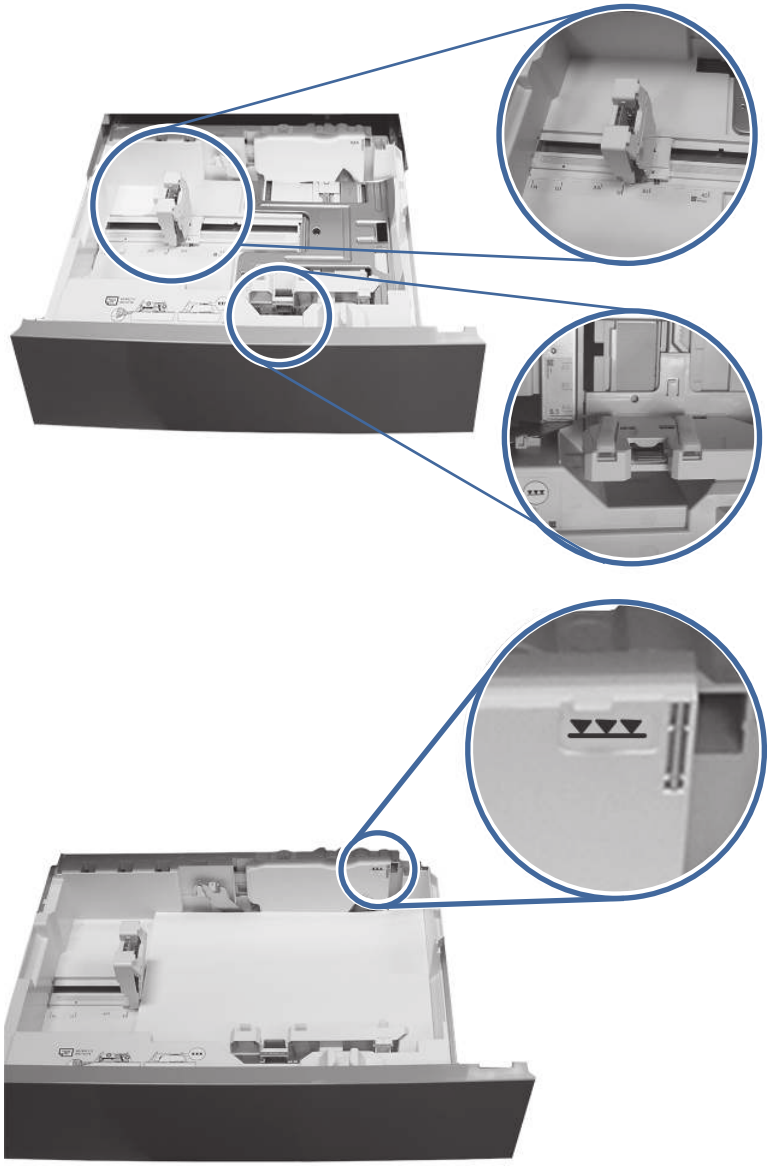
5. Open Tray 3.



6. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.

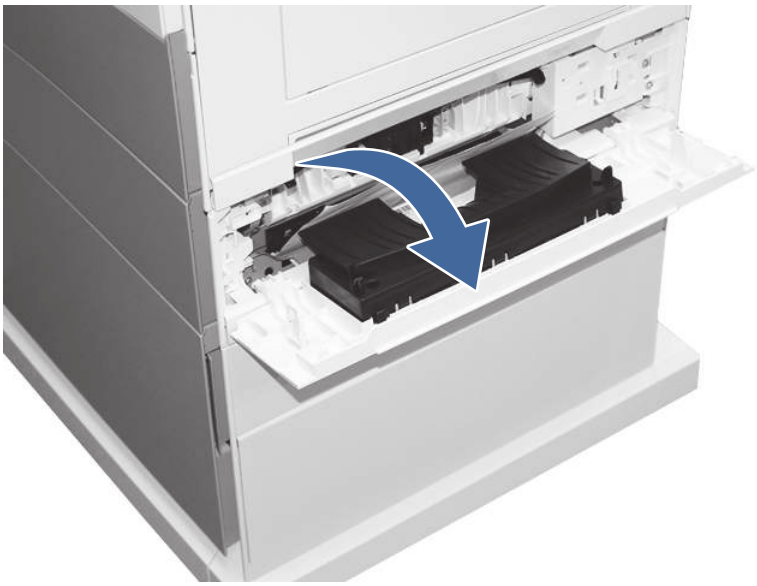


7. Make sure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

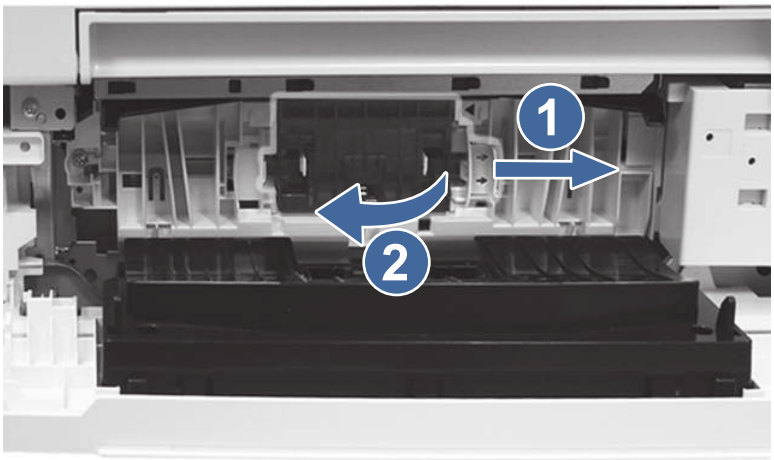


8. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
9. If the error persists, clean the Tray 3 pick, feed, separation rollers.

a. Open the Tray 3 right door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 3 separation roller.



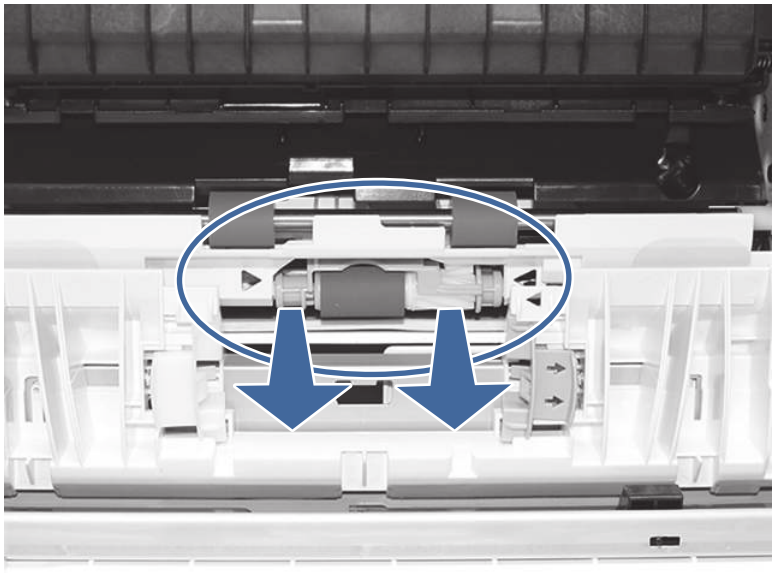
Call-out 1- slide blue locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

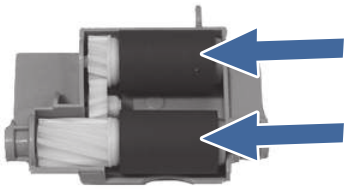
c. Remove the Tray 3 pick and feed rollers.

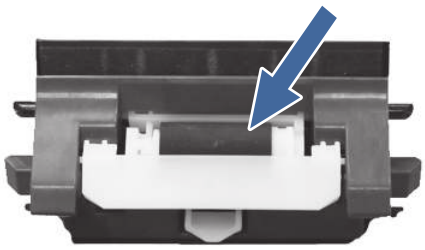
To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on the side of the assembly and slide out as shown.

NOTE: Make sure your hands are clean before touching the rollers. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.





e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 3.

10. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.A4 jam error in Tray 4

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 550 sheet Tray 4. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

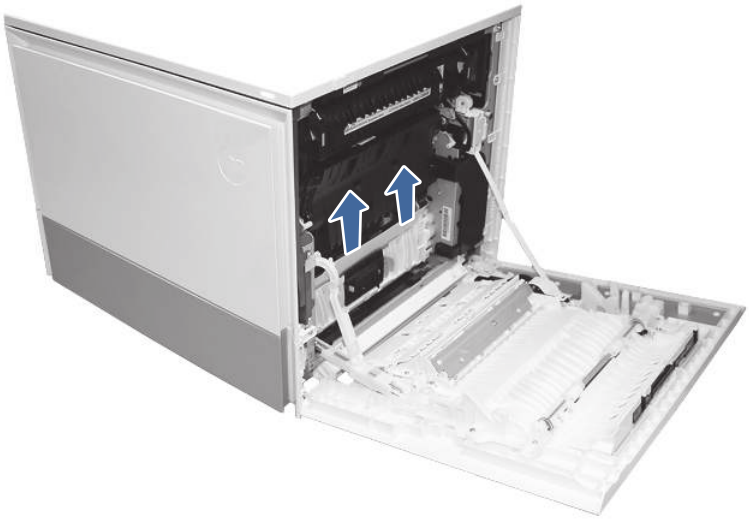
- 13.A4.A4 Paper jam in tray 4
- 13.A4.D4 Paper jam in tray 4

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 4

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



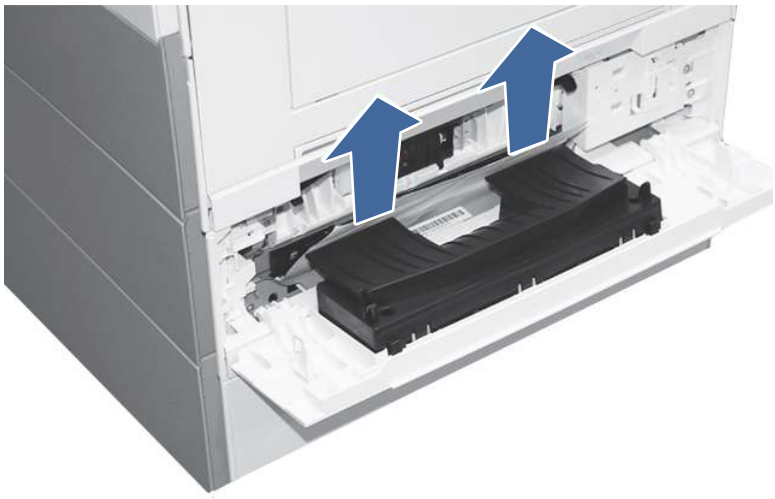
3. Open the Tray 4 right access door.



4. Gently remove any jammed paper.



5. Open the Tray 3 access door and gently remove any jammed paper.



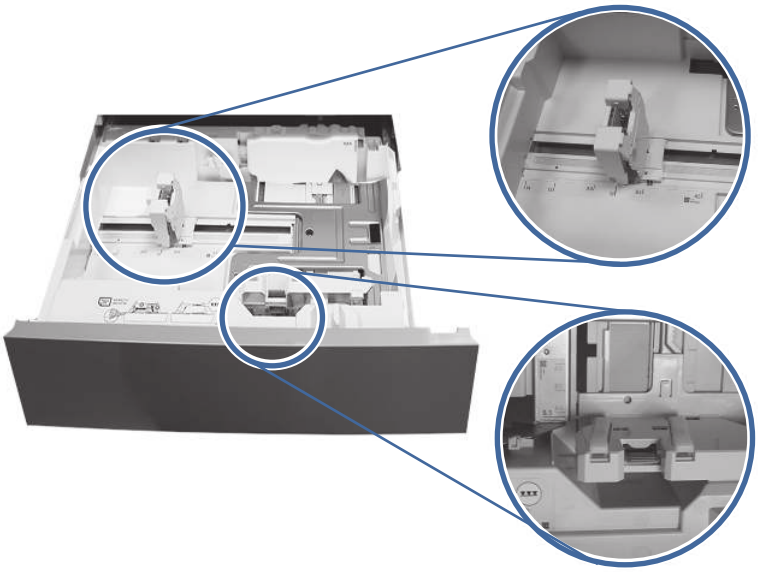
6. Close the right door to clear the control panel message.
7. Open Tray 4.

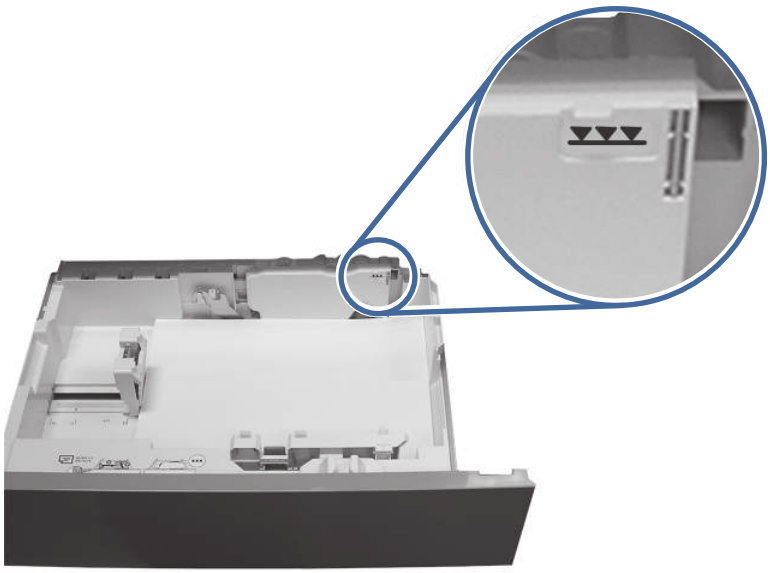


8. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.



9. Make sure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

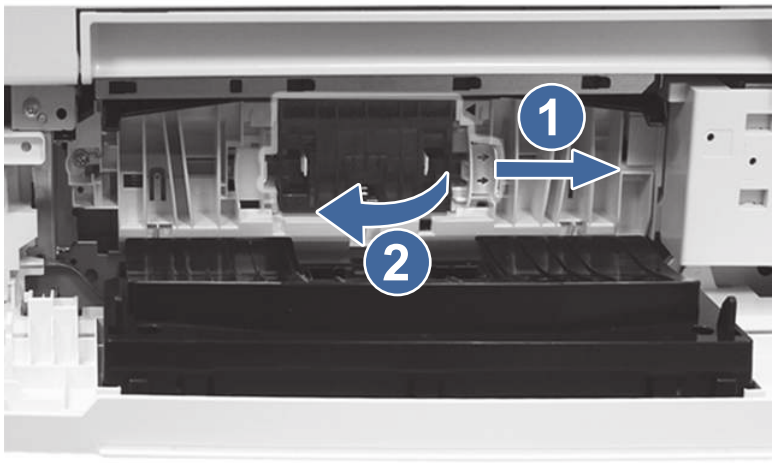




10. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
11. If the error persists, clean the Tray 4 pick, feed, separation rollers.
    a. Open the Tray 4 door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 4 separation roller.



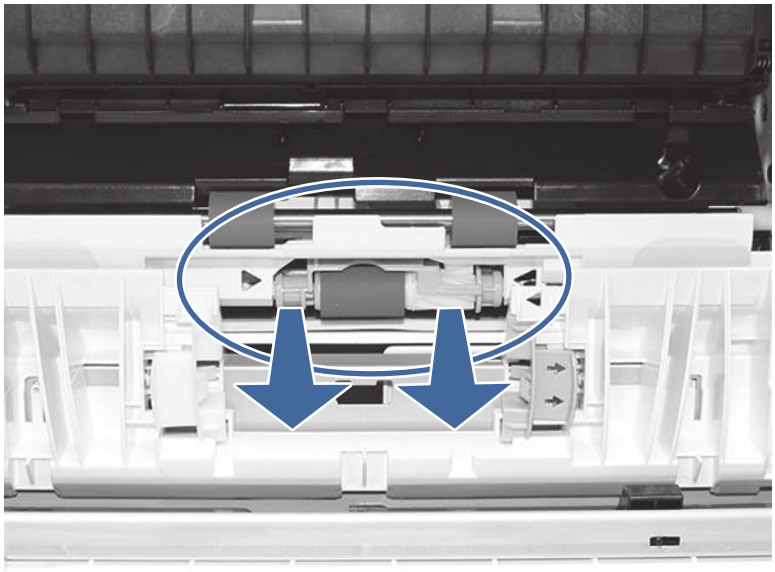
Call-out 1- slide blue locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

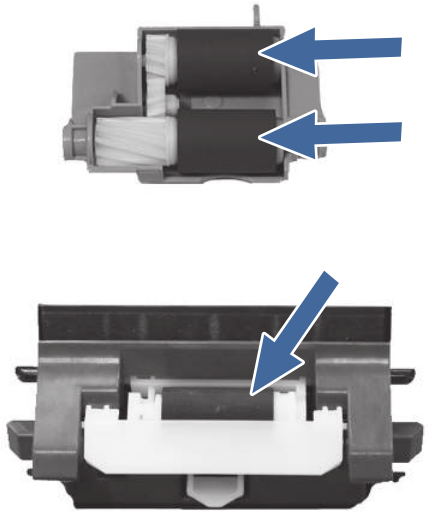
c. Remove the Tray 4 pick and feed rollers.

To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on to the side of the rollers as shown.

NOTE: Make sure your hands are clean before touching the rollers. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.



e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 4.

12. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.A4 jam error in Tray 4 (2,100 sheet feeder HCI)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the HCI Tray 4. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

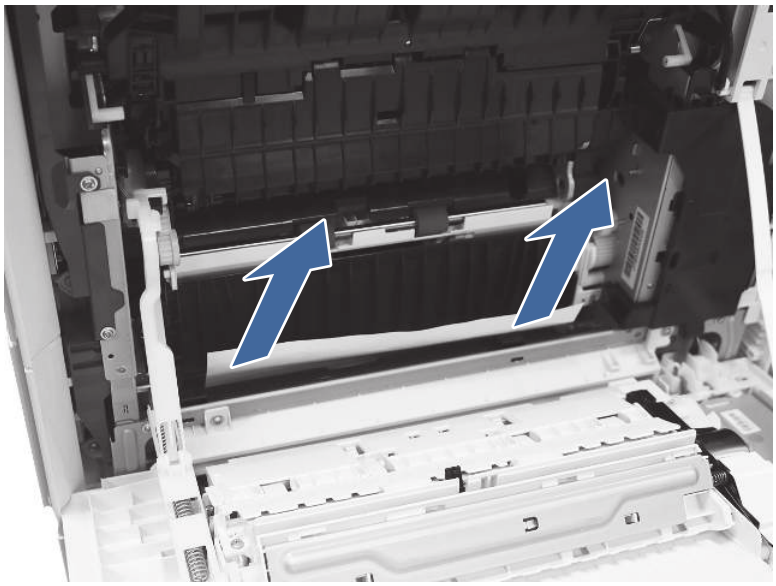
- 13.A4.A4 Paper jam in tray 4
- 13.A4.D4 Paper jam in tray 4

View a video of how to clear a jam in the high-capacity input Tray 4

1. Open the printer right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



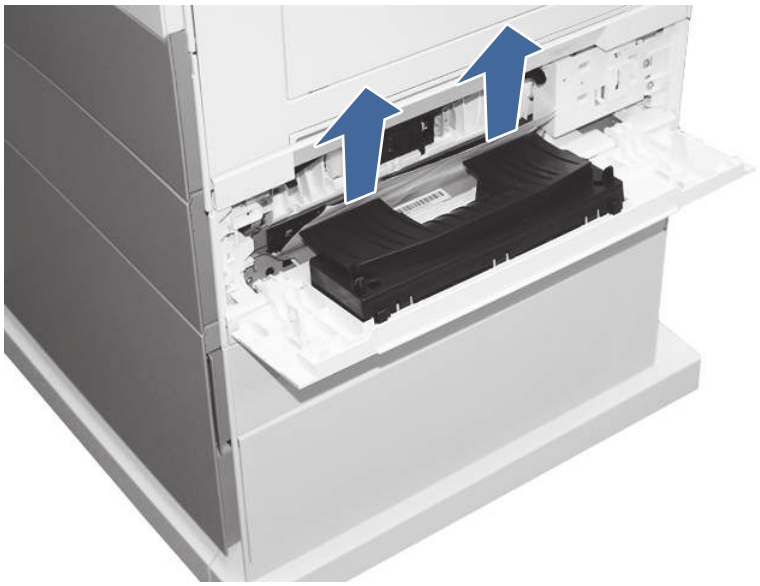
3. Open the Tray 4 right access door.



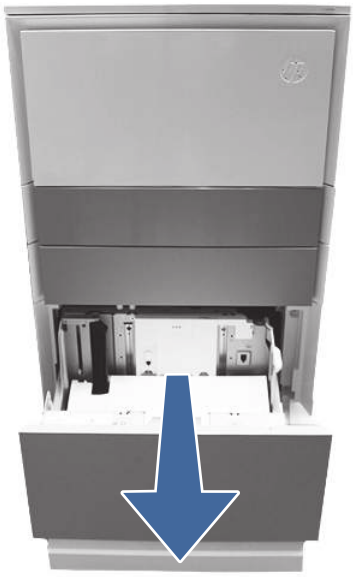
4. Gently remove any jammed paper.



5. Open the Tray 3 access door and gently remove any jammed paper.



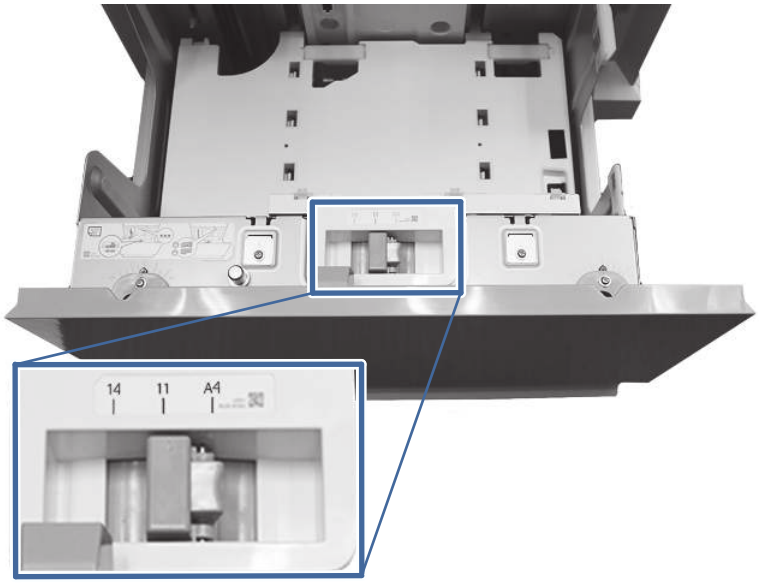
6. Close the right door to clear the control panel message.
7. Open Tray 4.

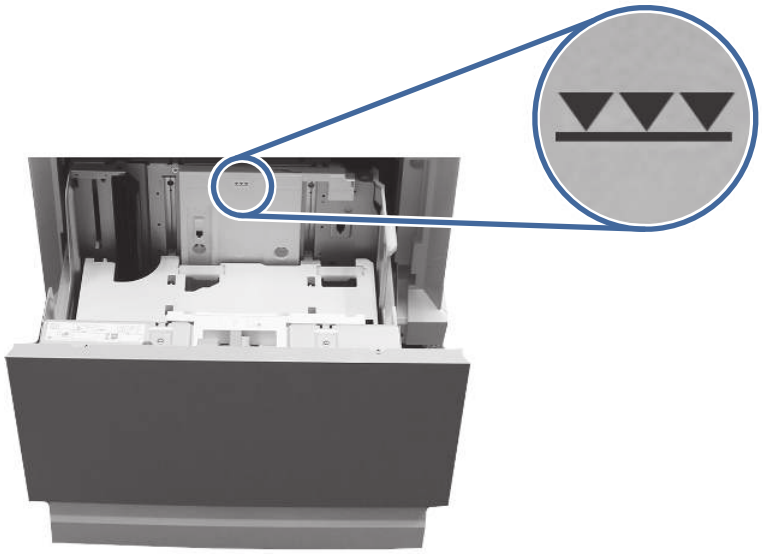


8. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.



9. Make sure that the tray width guide is set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

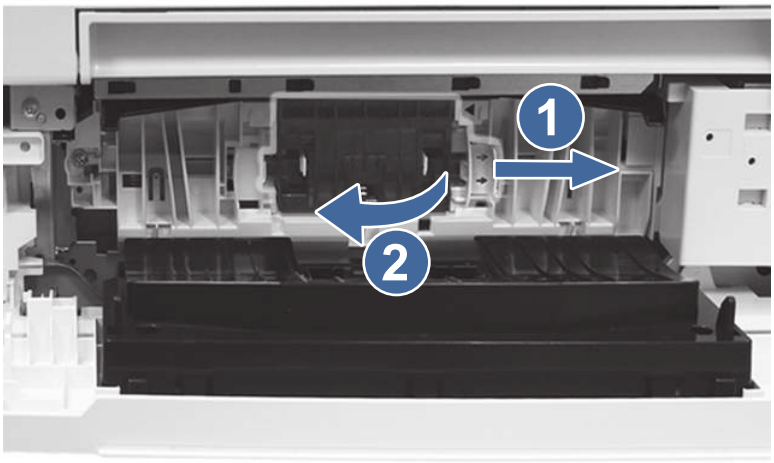




10. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
11. If the error persists, clean the Tray 4 pick, feed, and separation rollers.
    a. Open the Tray 4 door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 4 separation roller.



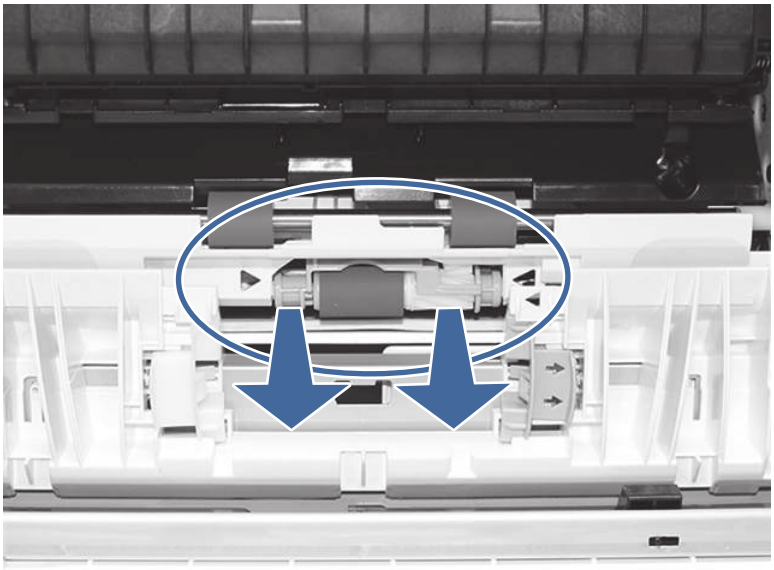
Call-out 1- slide locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

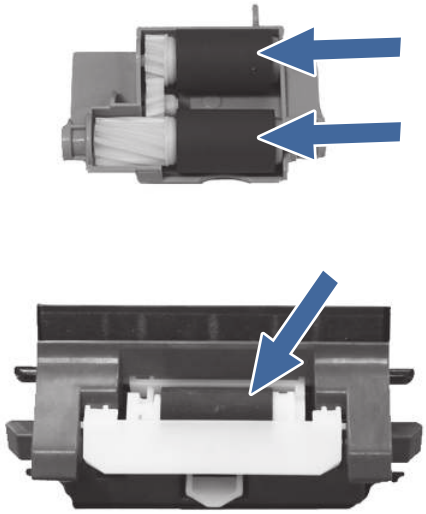
c. Remove the Tray 4 pick and feed rollers.

To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on to the side of the rollers as shown.

NOTE: Do not touch the rubber part of the rollers with hands. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.



e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 4.

12. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B2 jam error in right door

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.B2.Az Stay jam in right door
- 13.B2.Dz Delay jam in right door
- 13.B2.5z Inappropriate page to the Delivery Path jam
- 13.B2.FF Residual paper jam in right door

z = paper tray. This can be trays 1-5 or "D" for duplex jobs

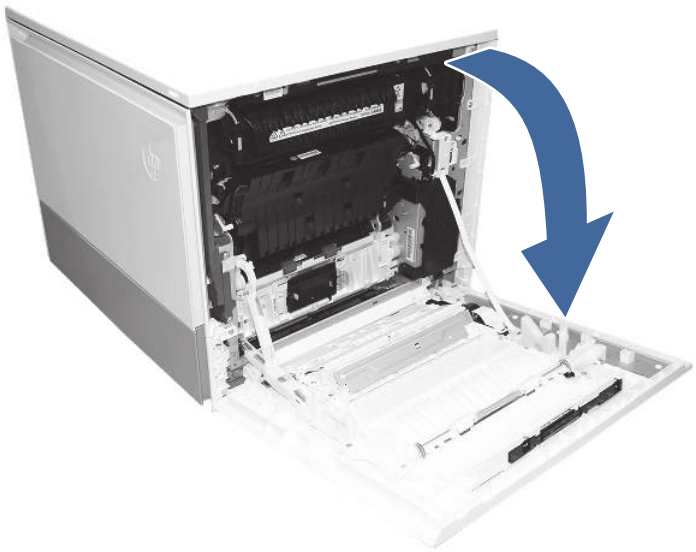
Or

z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

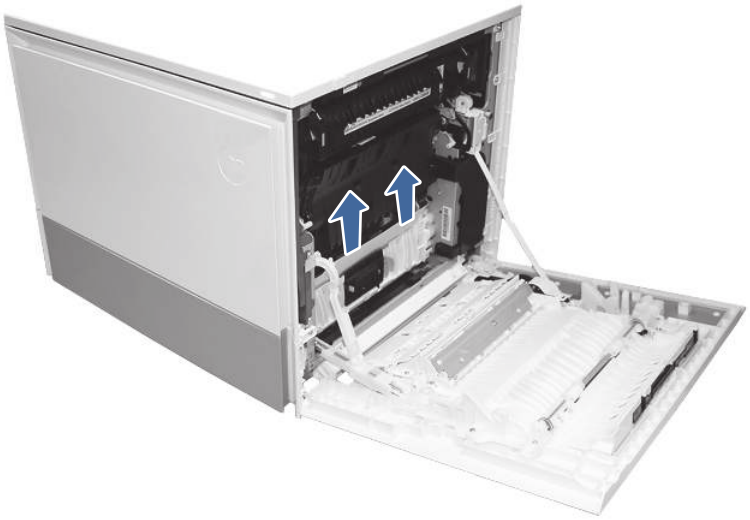
View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area

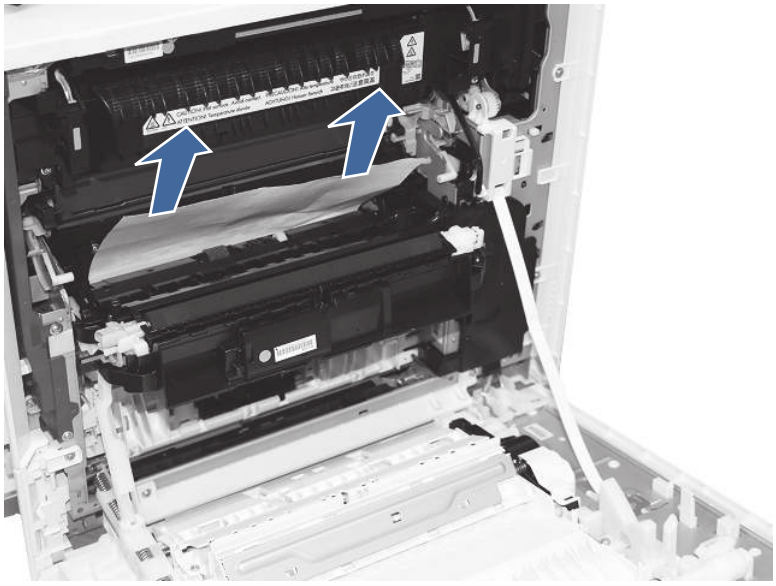
⚠ **CAUTION:** The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

1. Open the right door.

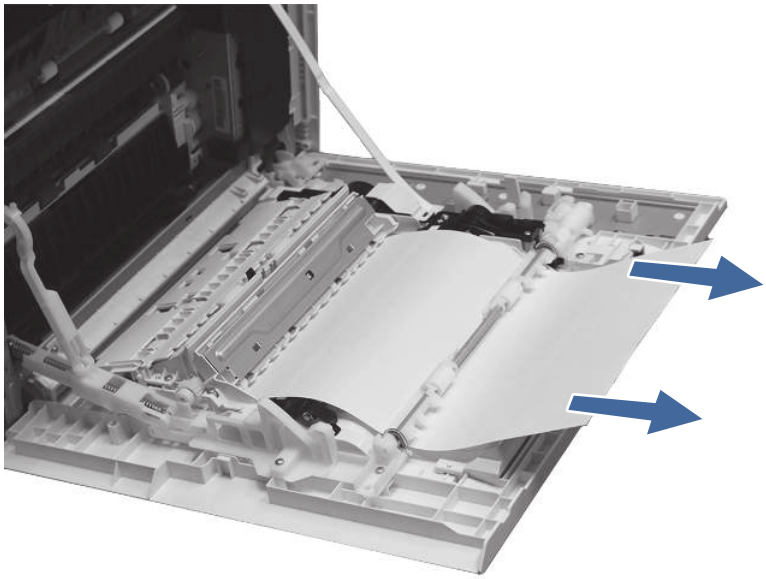


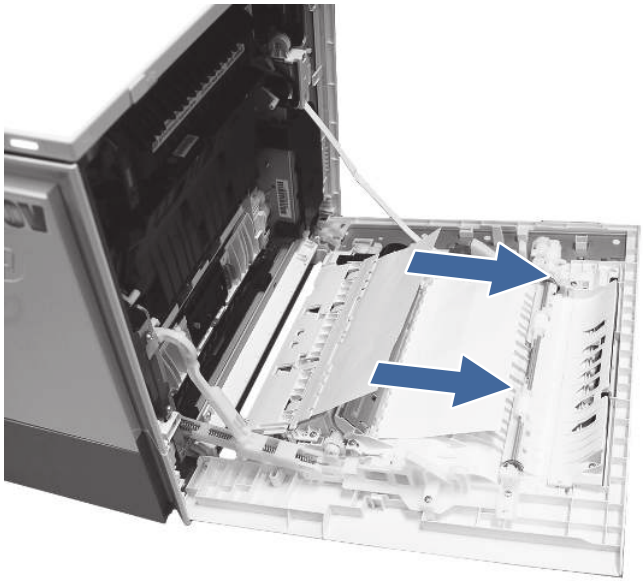
2. Gently remove any jammed paper.





3. Gently remove any jammed paper from the duplexer paper path.





IMPORTANT: Make sure the paper being used is not too short for the printers duplexer requirements.

4. Close the right door.
5. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
6. Ensure the paper tray guides are set to the correct size for the paper loaded.
7. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B4 jam errors in the right door

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

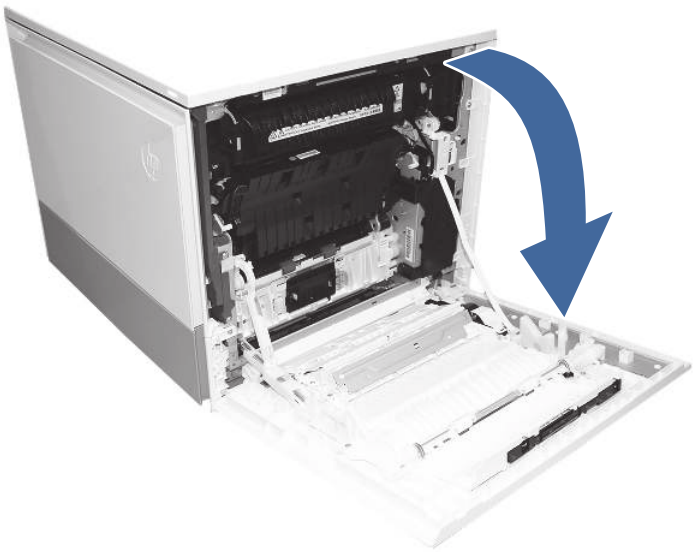
- 13.B4.Cz Jam in right door
- 13.B4.FF Residual paper jam in right door

z = paper tray. This can be trays 1-5 or "D" for duplex print jobs.

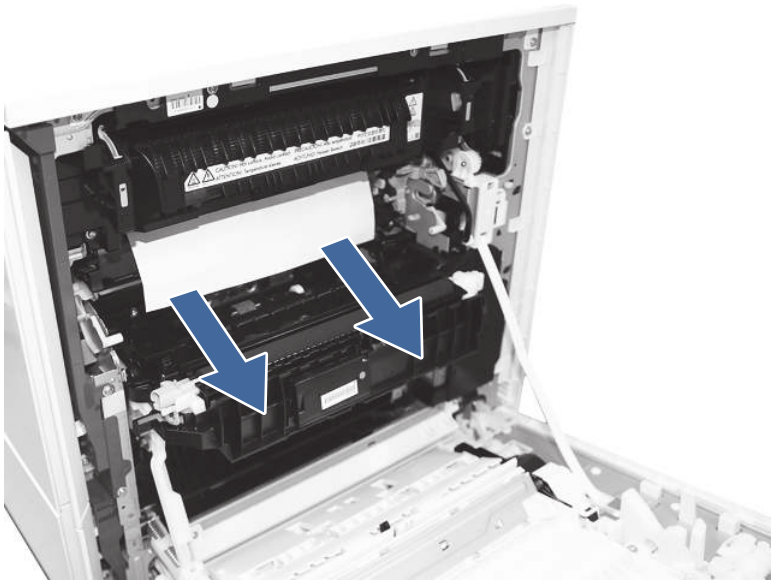
View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area

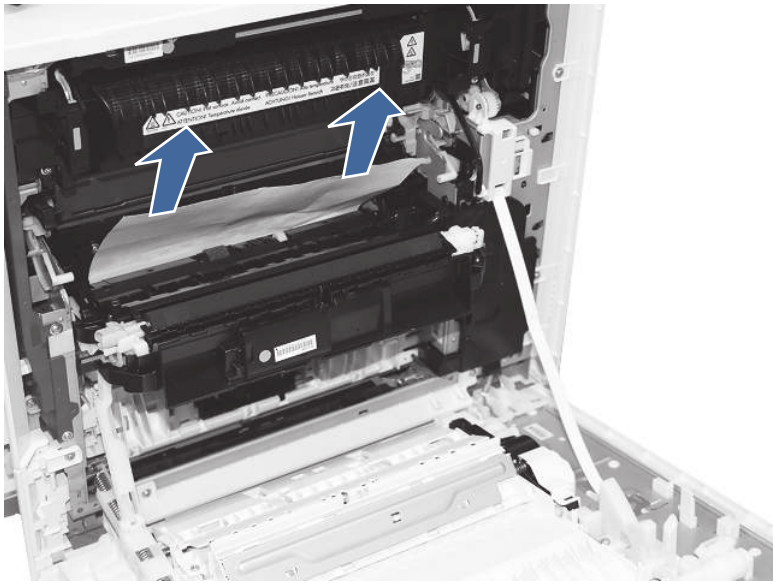
CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.





3. Close the right door.
4. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
5. Ensure the paper tray guides are set to the correct size for the paper loaded.
6. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B9 jam errors in the fuser

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.B9.yz Jam in right door

y = jam type (A or D)

z = Paper tray. This can be 0-5 or "D" for duplex print jobs.

Or

z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

- 13.B9.Cz Jam in right door (Fuser wrap jam)

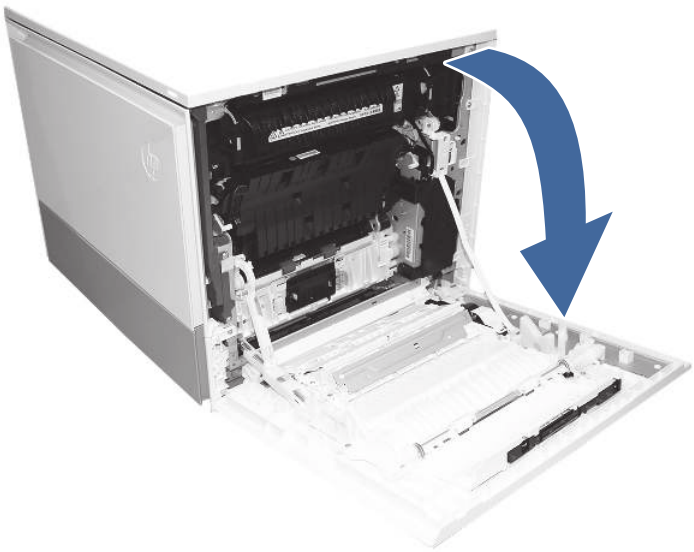
z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

- 13.B9.FF Residual paper jam in right door

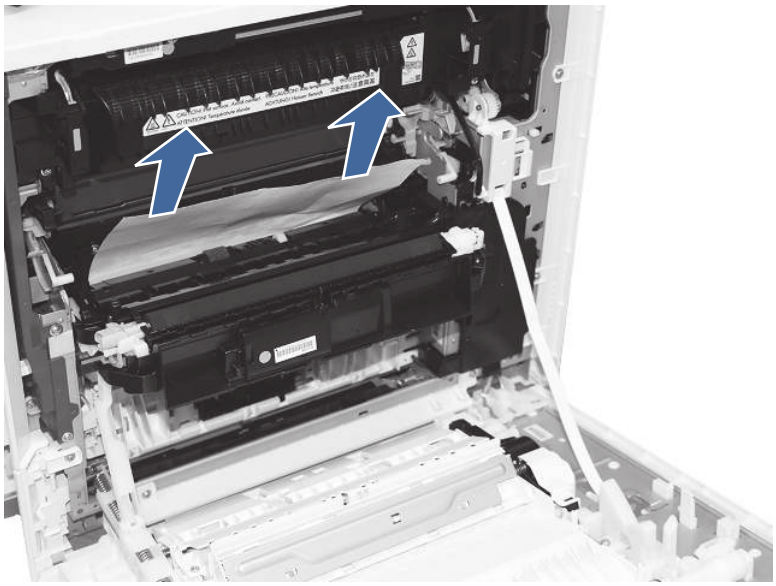
View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area

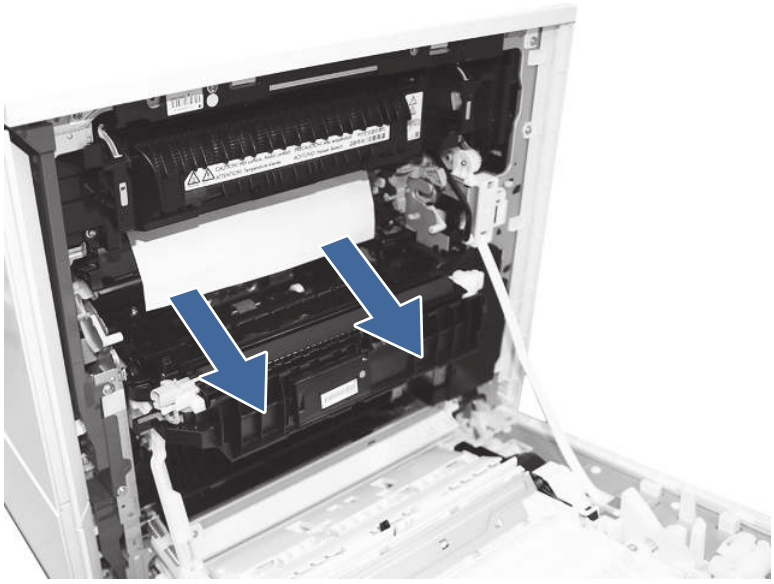
NOTE: The fuser is hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before clearing jams.

1. Open the right door.



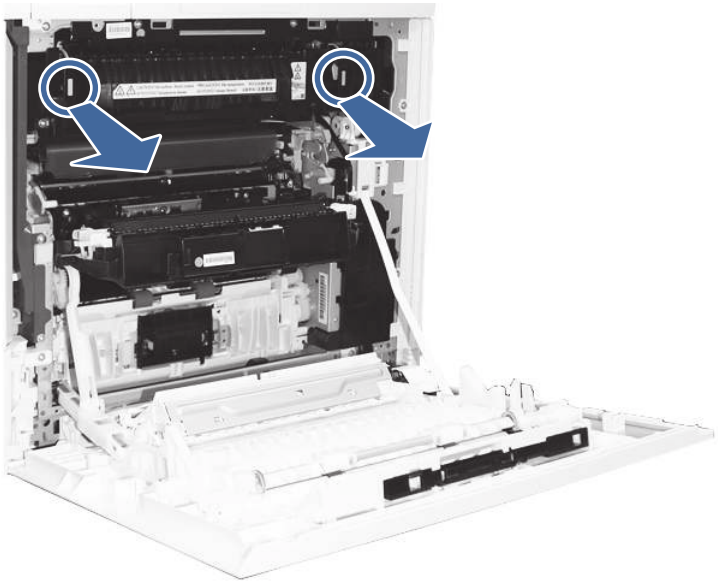
2. Gently remove any jammed paper from the fuser input.



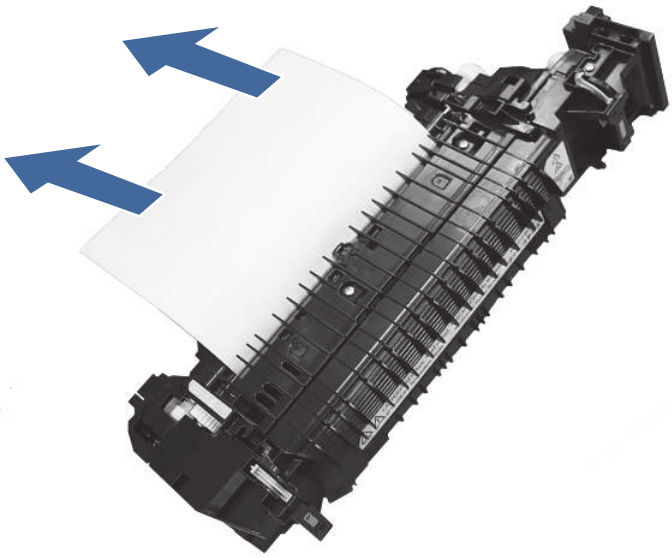


3. Remove the fuser and remove any jammed paper found.

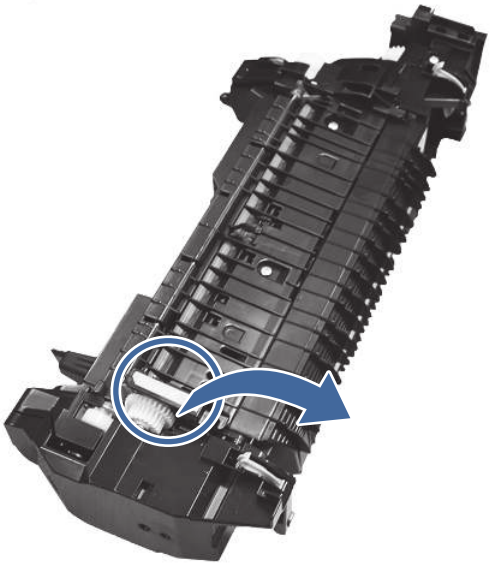
   a. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle call-outs) and then remove the fuser.



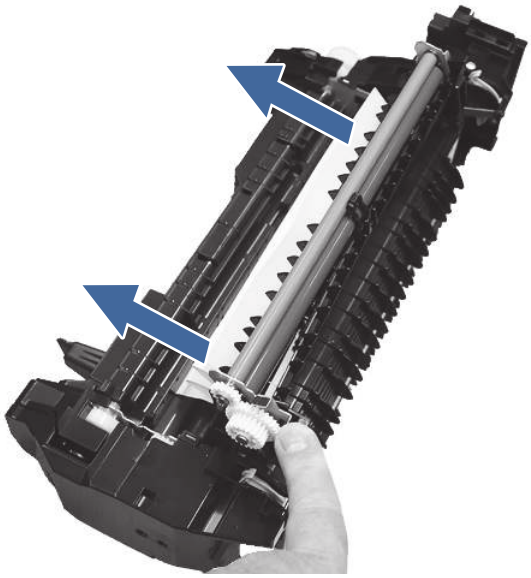
b. Remove any paper from the exit of the fuser.



c. Open the fuser access and check for a z-fold paper jam.



d. Remove jammed paper from fuser.



e. Reinstall the fuser and close the right door.

4. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.

5. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.D3 jam errors in the duplexer

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the duplexer area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

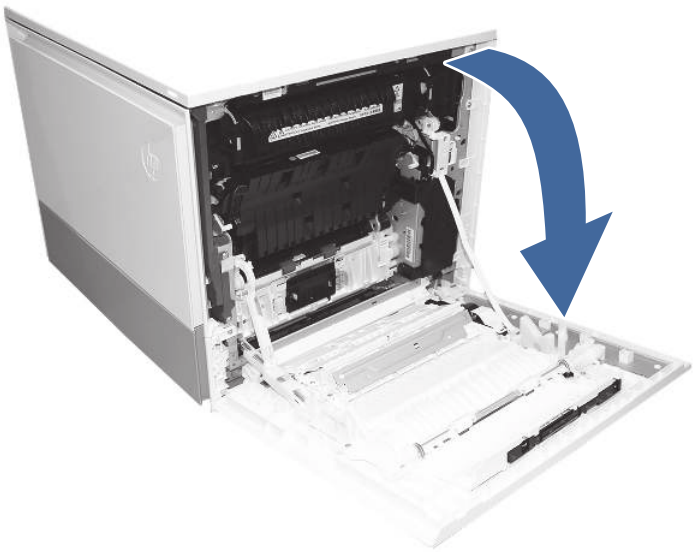
- 13.D3.Dz Duplex delivery delay jam
- 13.D3.FF Residual paper jam in right door

z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

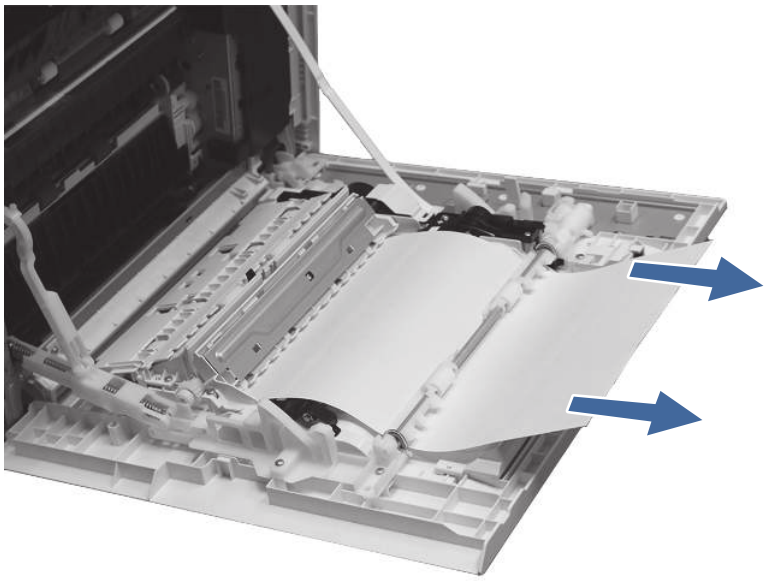
View a video of how to clear a jam in the duplexer area

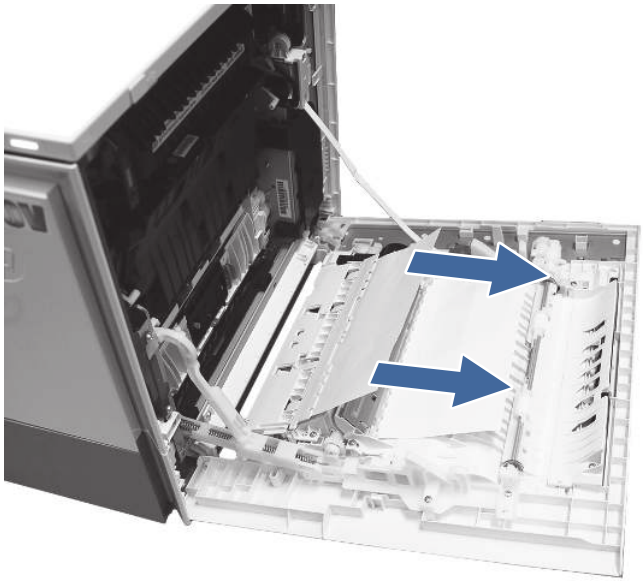
NOTE: The fuser is hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before clearing jams.

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper from the duplexer paper path.





3. Close the right door.
4. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
5. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.E1 jam error in the output bin

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations in the output bin. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.E1.Dz Jam in output bin
- 13.E1.FF Residual paper jam in output bin

z = paper type that is being printer on. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

View a video of how to clear a jam in the output bin

1. If paper is visible in the output bin, grasp the leading edge and remove it.



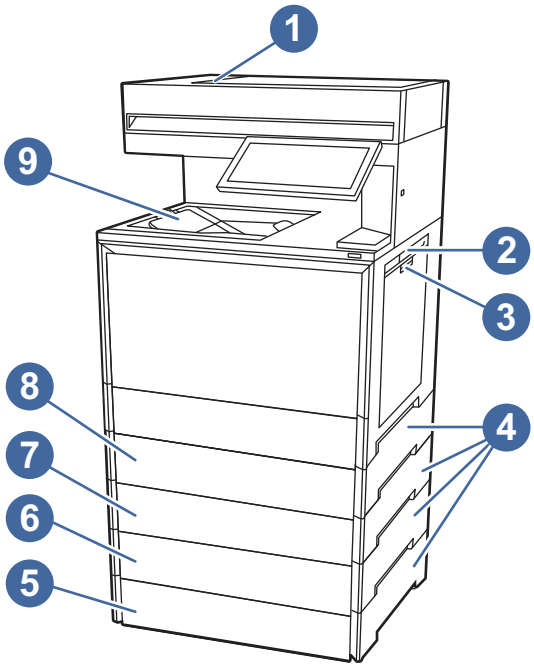
2. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
3. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

Clear paper jams (MFP models)

Use the procedures in this section to clear jammed paper from the printer paper path.

Paper jam locations

Jams can occur in these locations.



Item	Description
1	Document feeder
2	Right door and fuser area
3	Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)
4	Tray jam access doors
5	Optional Tray 5
6	Optional Tray 4
7	Optional Tray 3
8	Tray 2
9	Output bin

Auto-navigation for clearing paper jams

Learn about printer jam clearing auto-navigation.

The auto-navigation feature assists in clearing jams by providing step-by-step instructions on the control panel.

When you complete a step, the printer displays instructions for the next step until you have completed all steps in the procedure.

Experiencing frequent or recurring paper jams?

To reduce the number of paper jams, try these solutions.

View a video that demonstrates how to load paper in a way that reduces the number of paper jams

1. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.

2. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
3. Use paper that has not previously been printed or copied on.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides so they are touching the paper stack without bending it.
6. Make sure that the tray is fully inserted in the printer.
7. If you are printing on heavy, embossed, or perforated paper, use the manual feed feature and feed sheets one at a time.
8. Open the Trays menu on the printer control panel. Verify that the tray is configured correctly for the paper type and size.
9. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.

31.13.yz jam error in the document feeder

The following information describes how to clear paper jams in the document feeder. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

In addition to the instructions provided below

NOTE: The printer model referenced in this video might be different from your printer model, but the steps to clear the jam are the same.

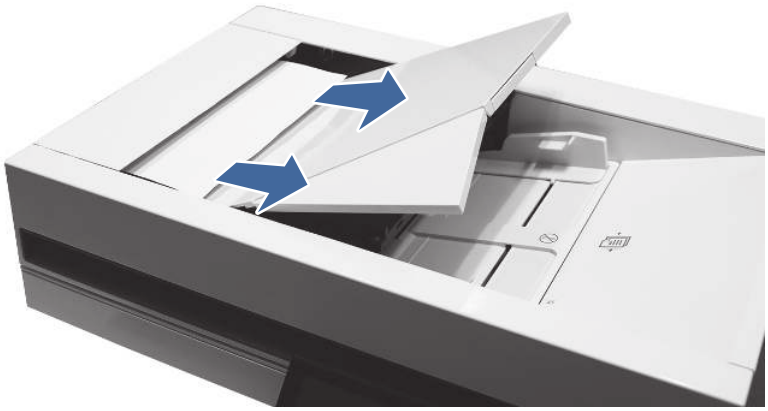
Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 31.13.01 Jam in document feeder
- 31.13.02 Jam in document feeder
- 31.13.13 Jam in document feeder

View a video of how to clear a jam in the document feeder

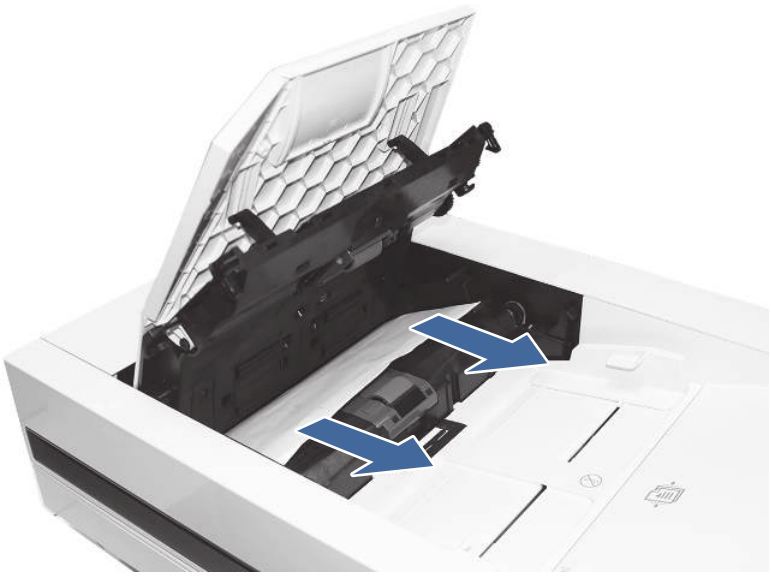
1. Remove paper from the exit assembly of the document feeder.



2. Open the document-feeder cover.



3. Remove any jammed paper from the document feeder input area.



4. Lift the document feeder and check the lower side of the feed path.



5. Make sure the guides in the document-feeder input tray are adjusted to the correct size for the document before loading paper.



NOTE: To avoid document feeder jams, to copy narrow documents, use the flatbed scanner. Remove all staples and paper clips from original documents. Do not feed damaged or wrinkled paper.

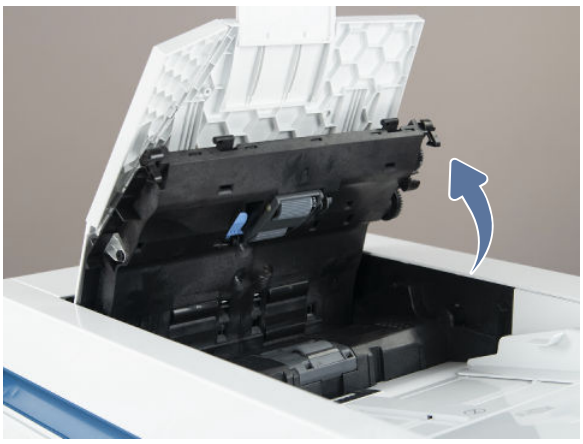
NOTE: Original documents that are printed on heavy, glossy paper can jam more frequently than originals that are printed on plain paper.

IMPORTANT: Warning: Do not run labels through the automatic document feeder (ADF).

6. If the paper continues to jam, remove and clean the document feeder rollers.

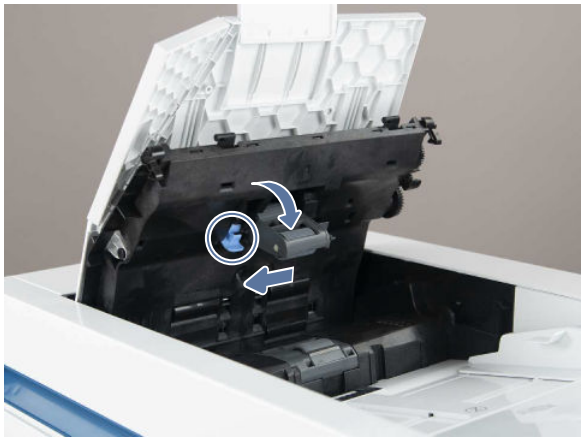
   a. Open the document-feeder jam access door.

   Figure 3-109 **Open the document-feeder jam access door**



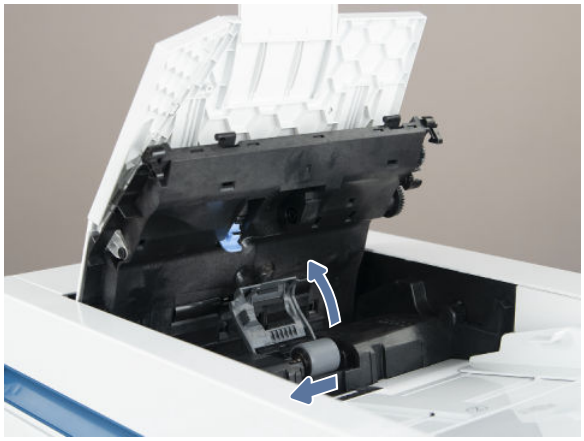
b. Release the blue locking arm to drop the assembly down. Slide the pickup and feed roller assembly to the left, and then pull it away from the document feeder to remove it.

Figure 3-110 **Release the blue locking arm**



c. Lift the roller cover up and then slide the roller toward the front of the printer to remove it.

Figure 3-111 **Release the separation roller cover**



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.

e. Reinstall the rollers in the document feeder and perform a copy job to test.

7. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B2.D1 jam error in Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in Tray 1 (multipurpose tray). When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

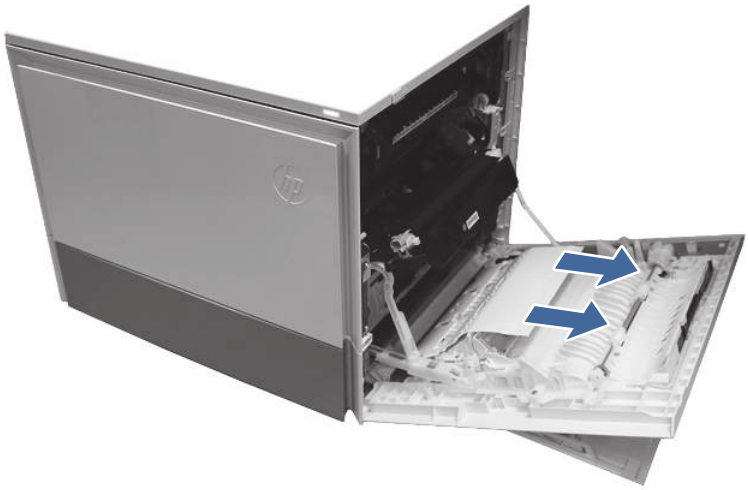
- **13.B2.D1 Jam in tray 1**

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 1

1. If you can see the jammed sheet in Tray 1, remove the jammed sheet by gently pulling it straight out.

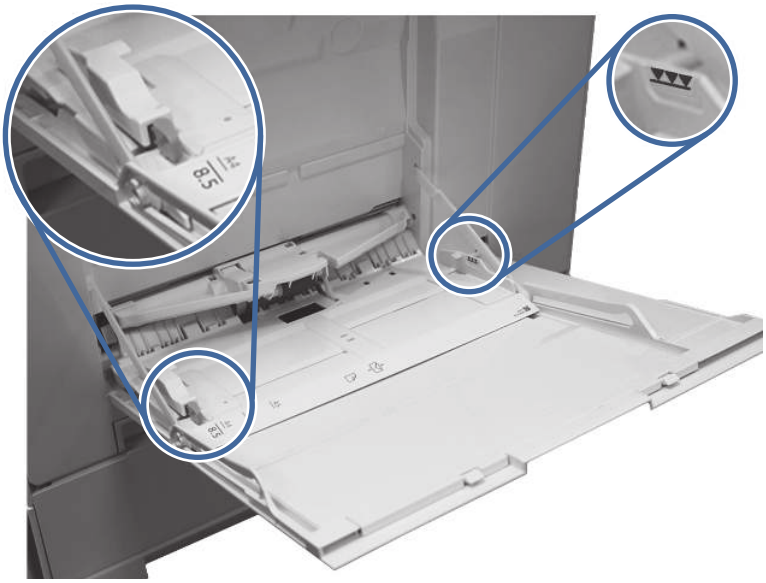


2. Open the right door and remove paper from the area shown.



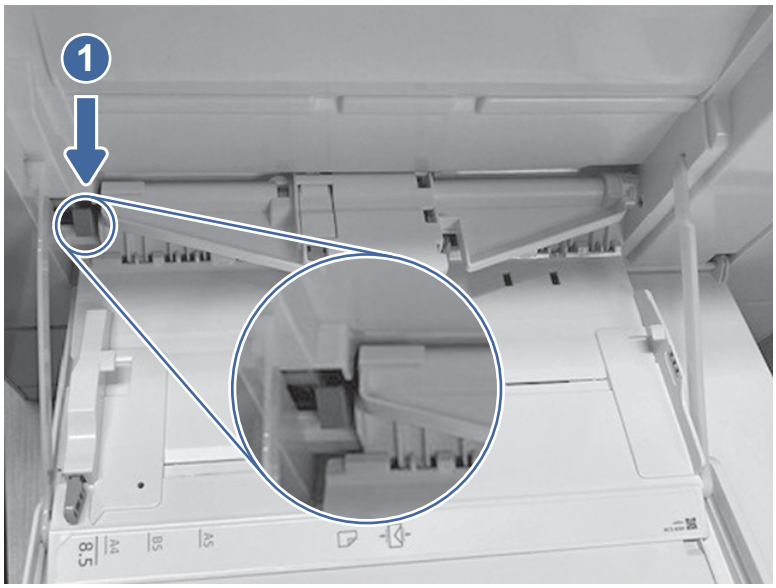
3. Close the right to allow the printer to clear the message.
4. Make sure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.

5. Make sure the Tray 1 guides are set to the correct paper size and that the paper tray is not overfilled (paper is below the 3 triangles on the right guide).



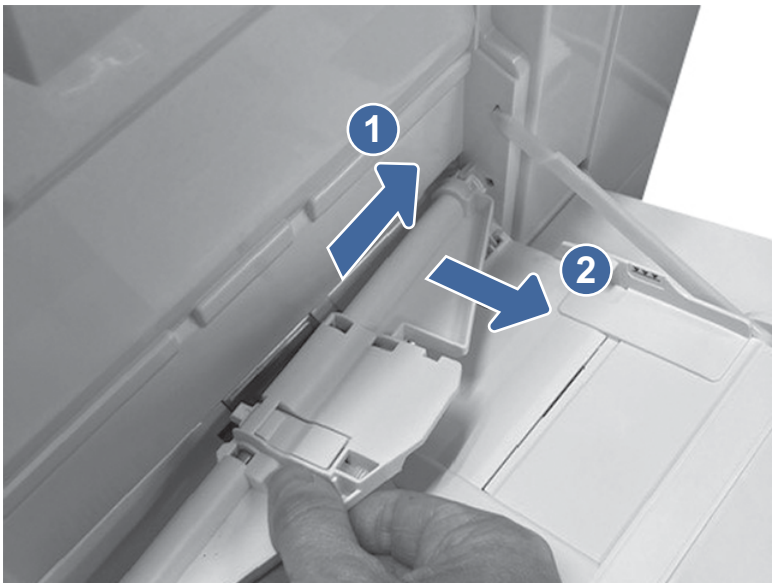
6. Load the paper back into the tray and restart the print job.
7. If the same jam appears remove and clean the tray 1 pick, feed and separation rollers.
   a. Locate and release the pickup roller assembly release tab.

Figure 3-112 **Locate the pickup roller assembly tab**



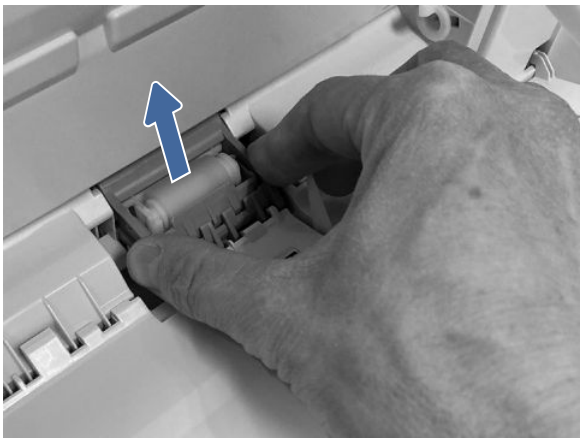
b. Push the pickup roller assembly to the right and then away from the printer.

Figure 3-113 Remove the pickup roller assembly



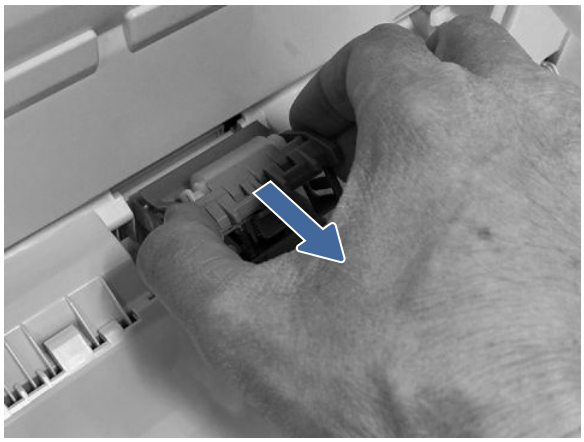
c. Grasp the left- and right-side of the separation roller assembly, and then lift the assembly up.

Figure 3-114 Lift the separation roller assembly



d. Pull the separation roller assembly straight out to remove it.

Figure 3-115 **Remove the separation roller assembly**



e. Clean the roller with a dampened lint free cloth.

f. Install the rollers back into tray one and test the tray by printing from tray 1.

8. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B2.D2 jam error in Tray 2

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 2. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

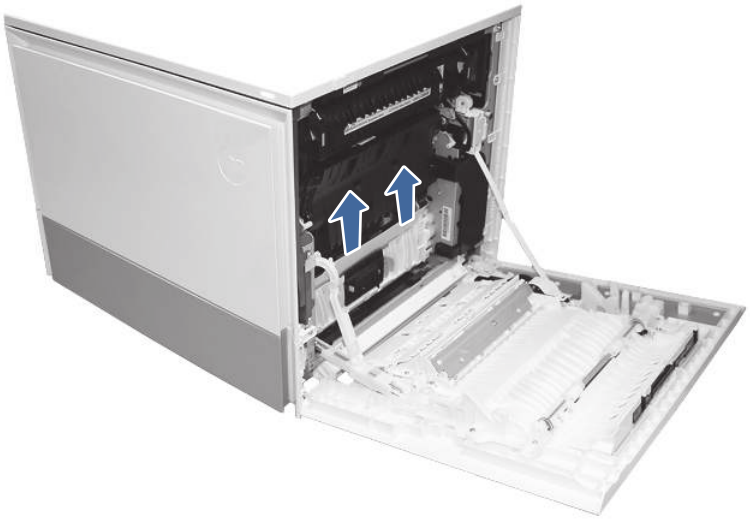
- 13.B2.D2 Paper jam in tray 2

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 2

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



3. Close the right door to clear the control panel message.

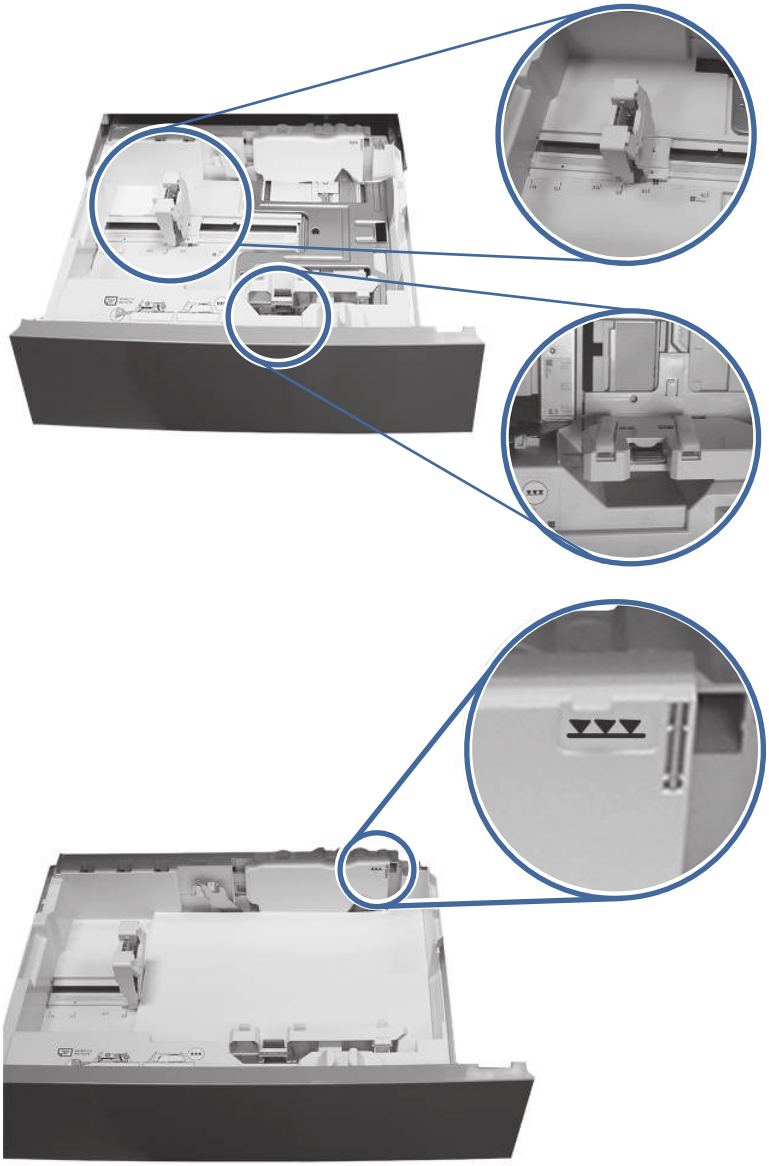
4. Open Tray 2.



5. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.



6. Make sure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

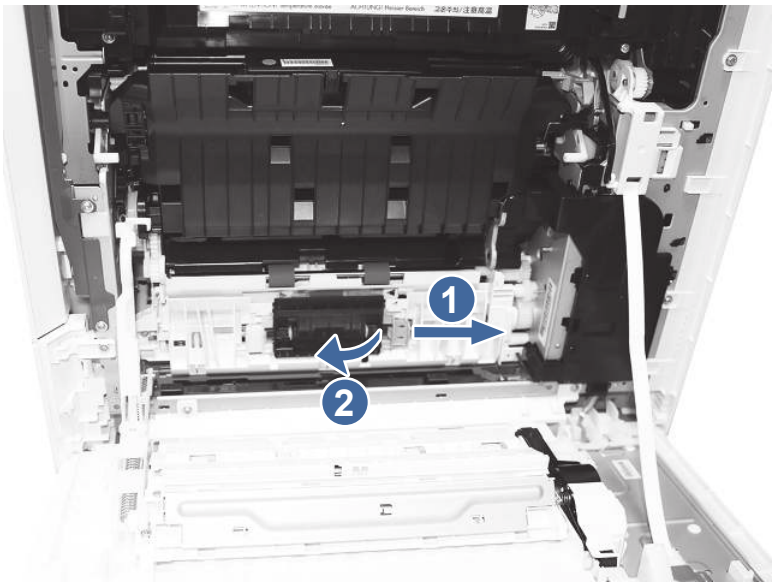


7. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
8. If the error persists, clean the Tray 2 pick, feed, separation rollers.

a. Open the right door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 2 separation roller.



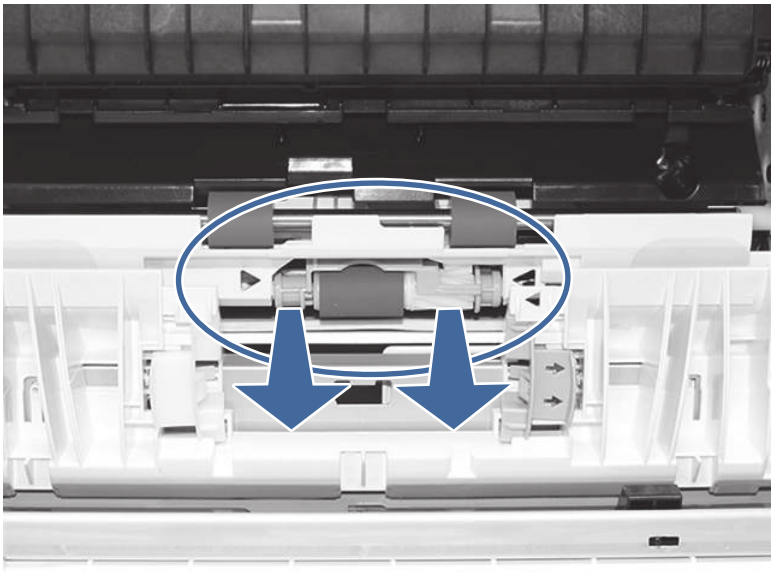
Call-out 1- slide blue locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

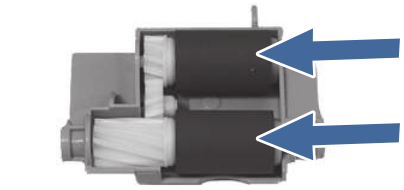
c. Remove the Tray 2 pick and feed rollers.

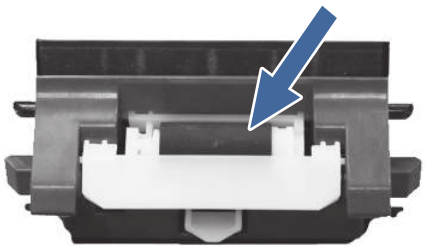
To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on the side of the assembly and slide out as shown.

NOTE: Make sure your hands are clean before touching the rollers. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.





e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 2.

9. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.A3 jam error in Tray 3

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to Tray 3. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

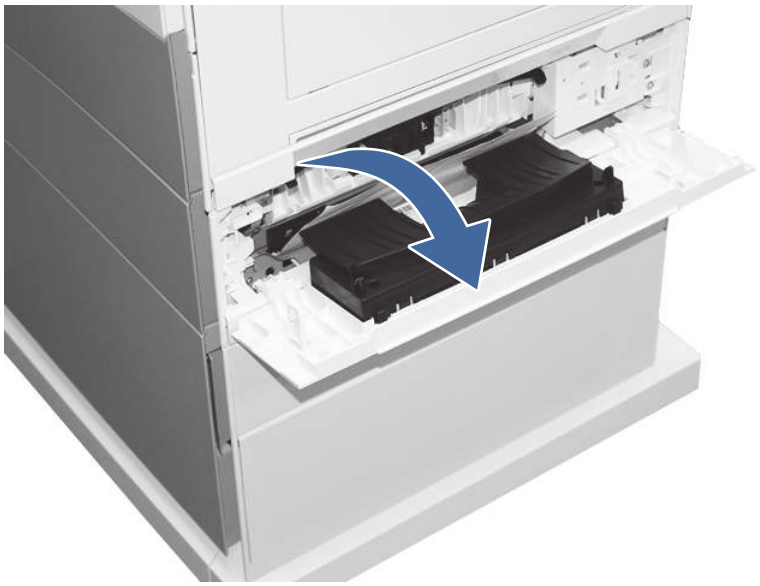
Recommended action for customers

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 550-sheet trays. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

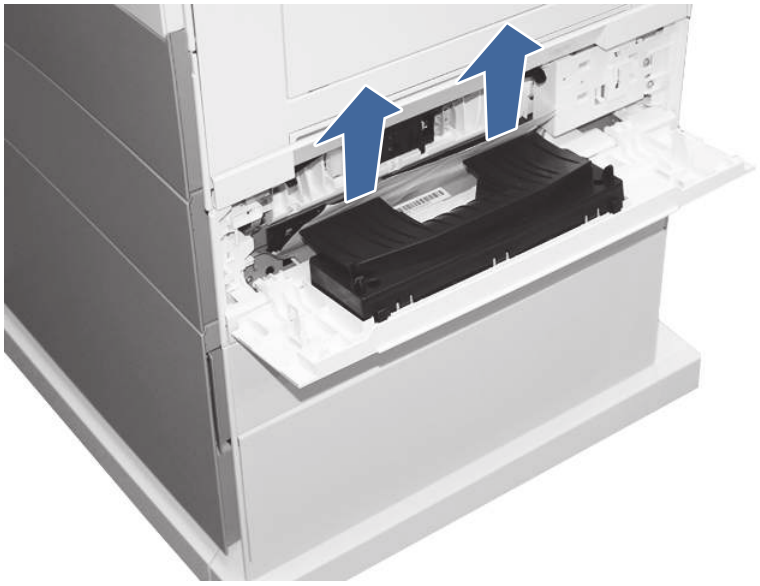
- **13.A3.A3 Jam in tray 3**
- **13.A3.D3 Jam in tray 3**

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 3, and the optional trays

1. Open the Tray 3 right side access door.



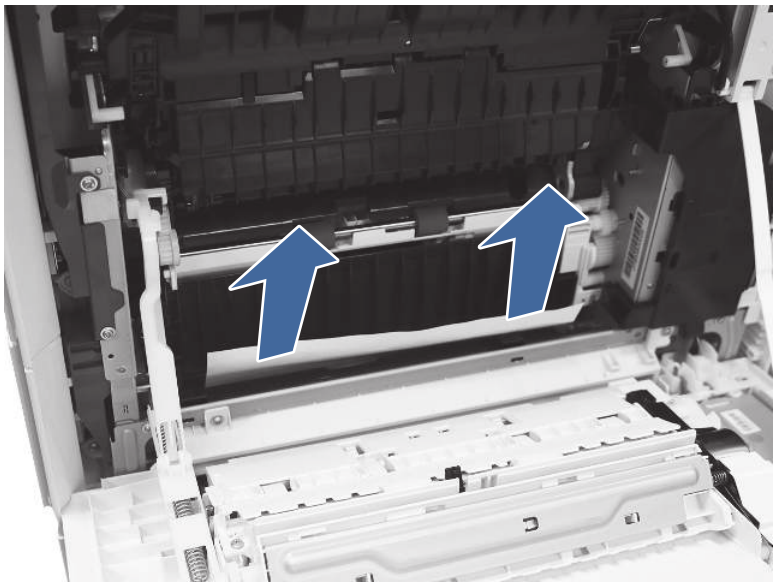
2. Remove any jammed paper found in access area.



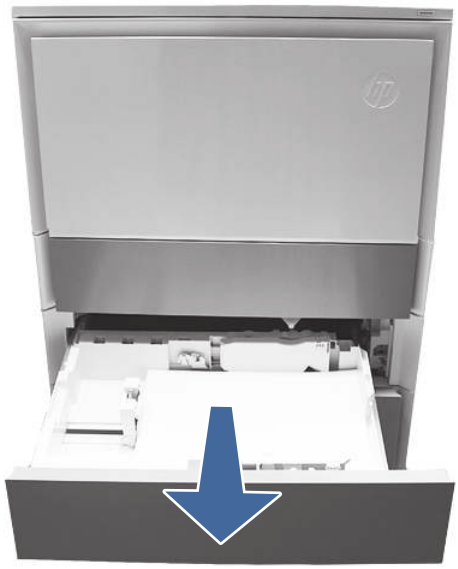
3. Open the right door.



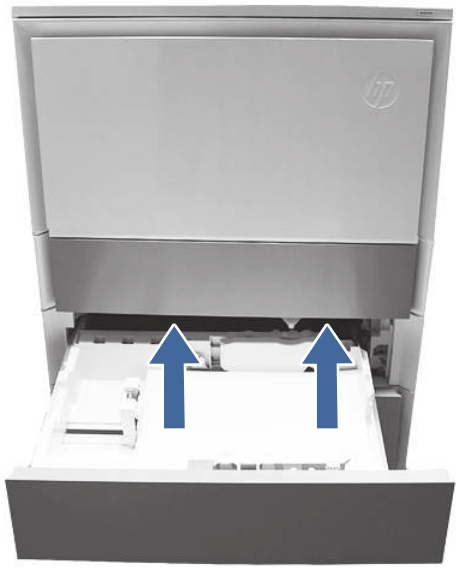
4. Gently remove any jammed paper.



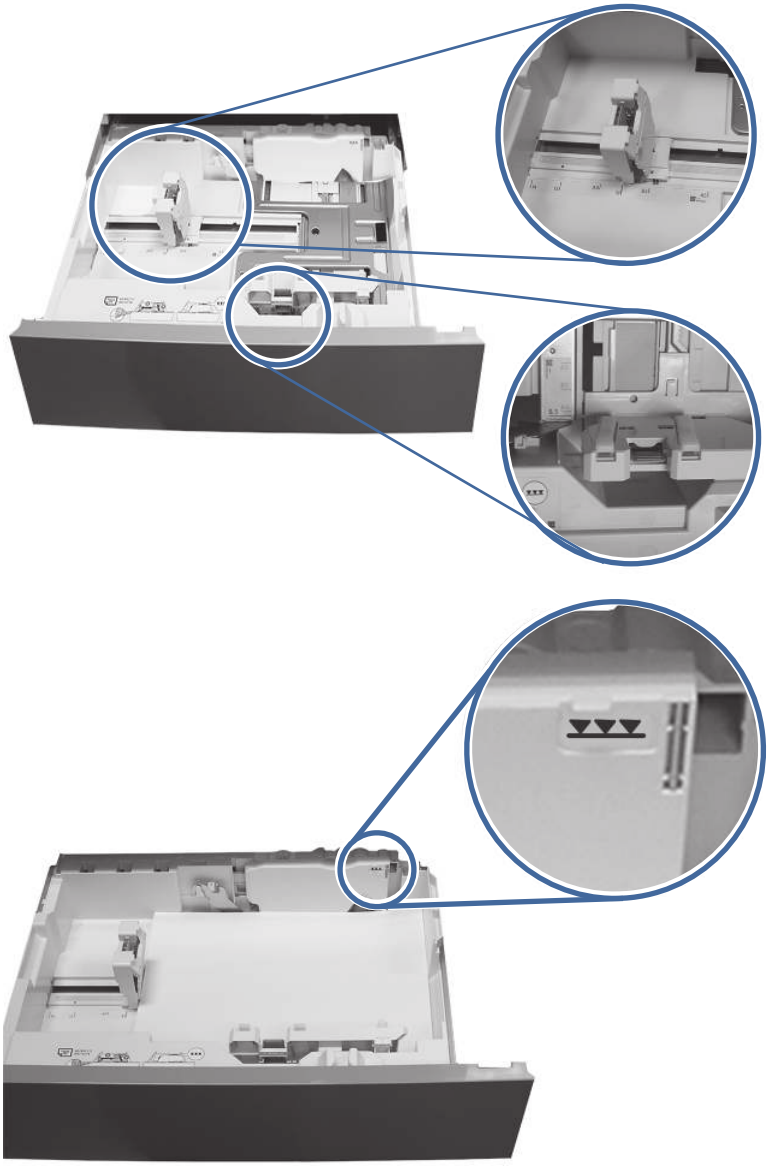
5. Open Tray 3.



6. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.

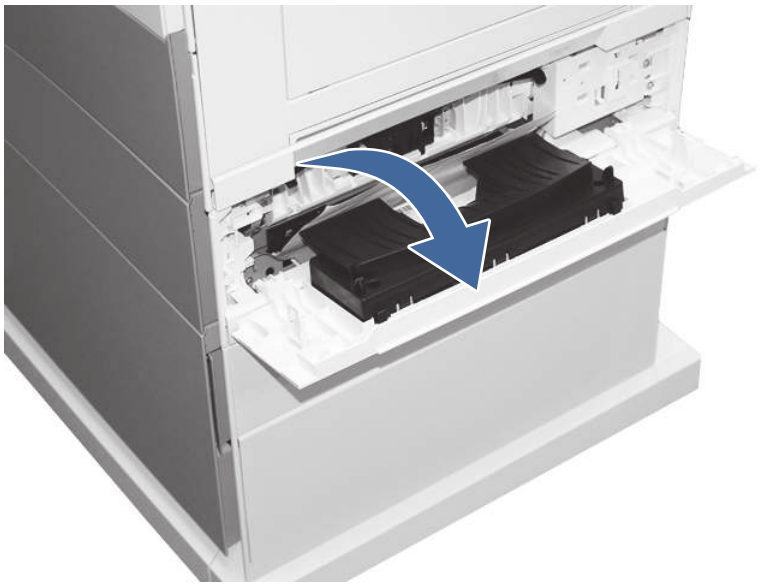


7. Make sure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

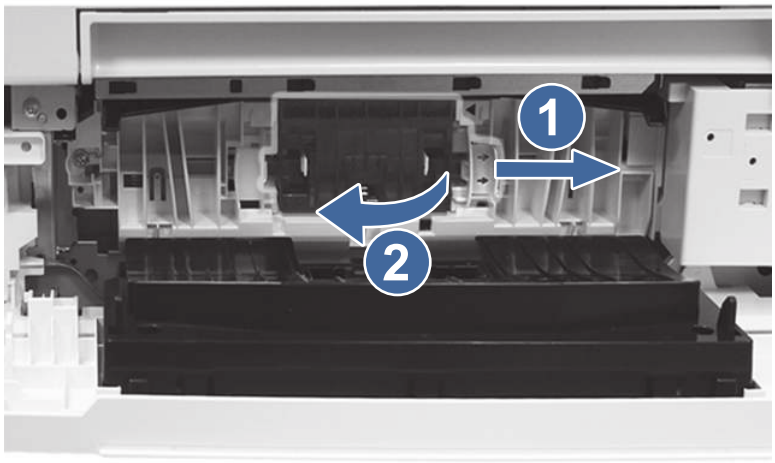


8. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
9. If the error persists, clean the Tray 3 pick, feed, separation rollers.

a. Open the Tray 3 right door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 3 separation roller.



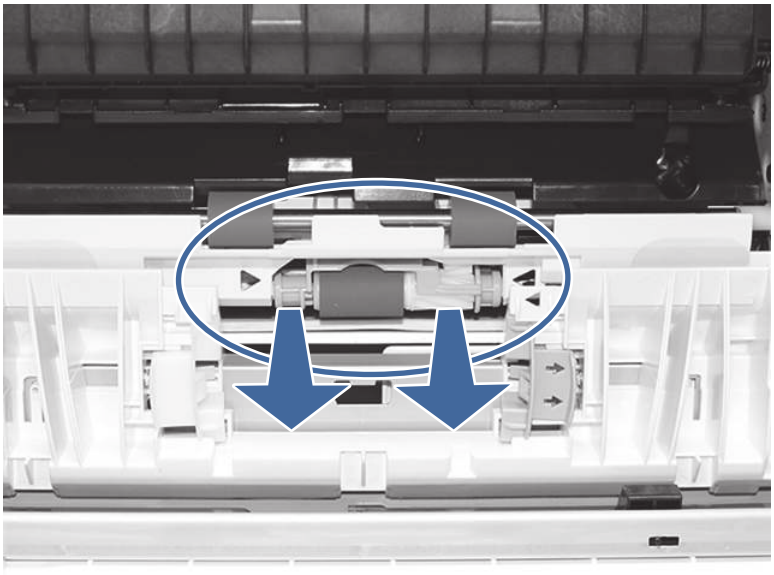
Call-out 1- slide blue locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

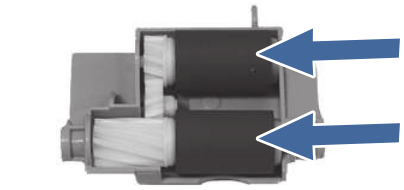
c. Remove the Tray 3 pick and feed rollers.

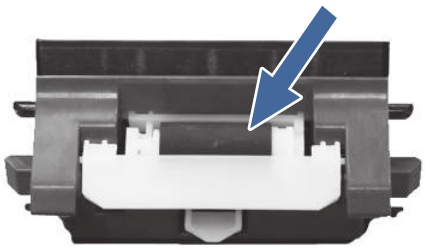
To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on the side of the assembly and slide out as shown.

NOTE: Make sure your hands are clean before touching the rollers. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.





e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 3.

10. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.A4 jam error in Tray 4

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the 550 sheet Tray 4. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

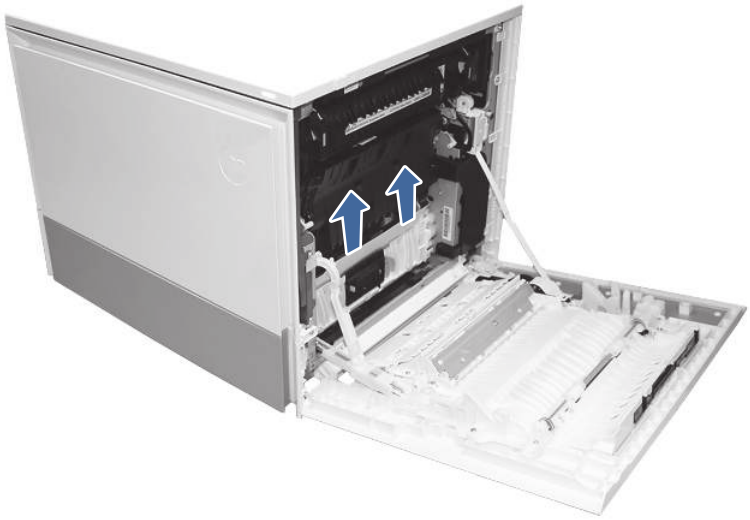
- 13.A4.A4 Paper jam in tray 4
- 13.A4.D4 Paper jam in tray 4

View a video of how to clear a jam in Tray 4

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



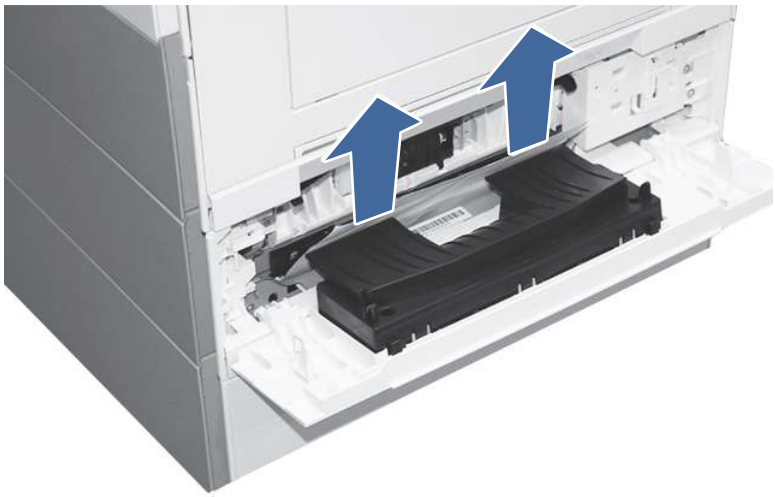
3. Open the Tray 4 right access door.



4. Gently remove any jammed paper.



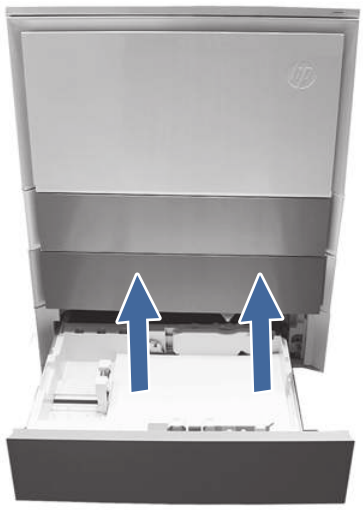
5. Open the Tray 3 access door and gently remove any jammed paper.



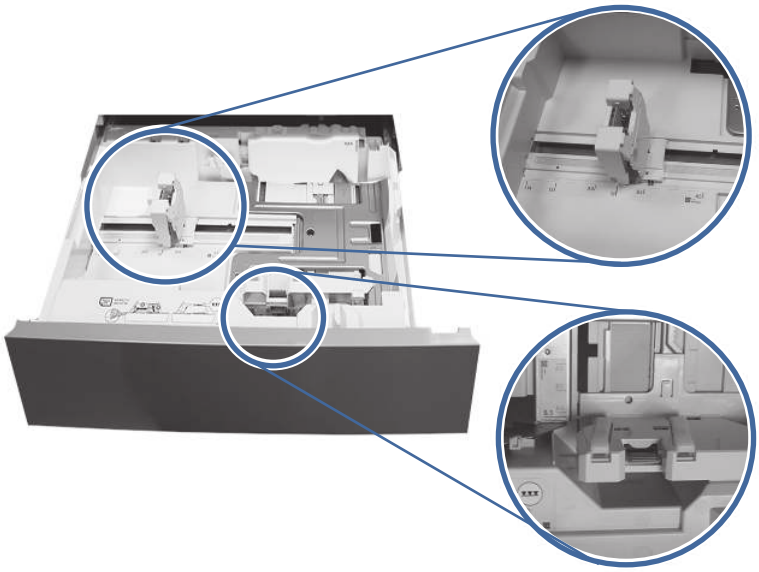
6. Close the right door to clear the control panel message.
7. Open Tray 4.

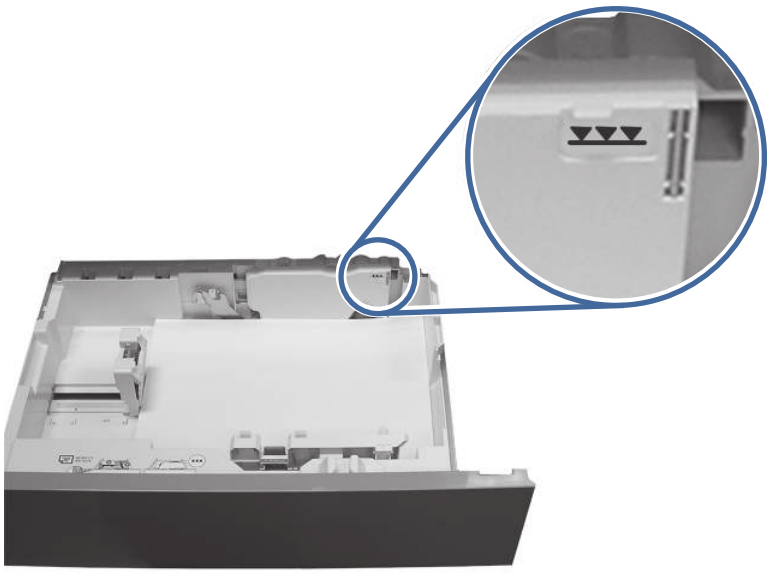


8. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.



9. Make sure that the tray width and length guides are set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

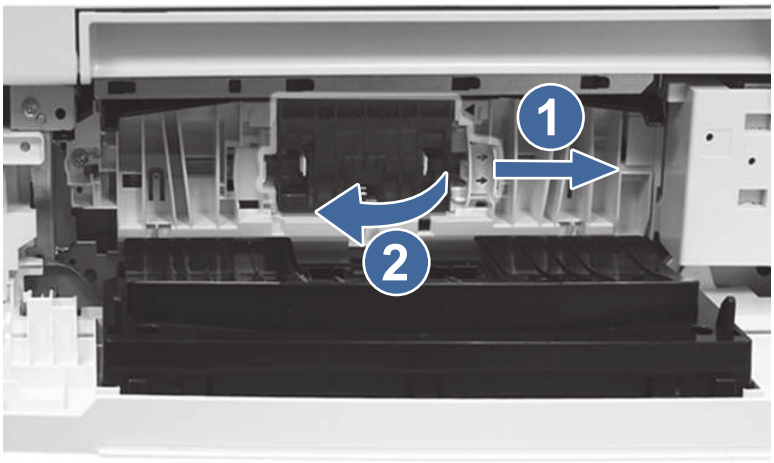




10. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
11. If the error persists, clean the Tray 4 pick, feed, separation rollers.
    a. Open the Tray 4 door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 4 separation roller.



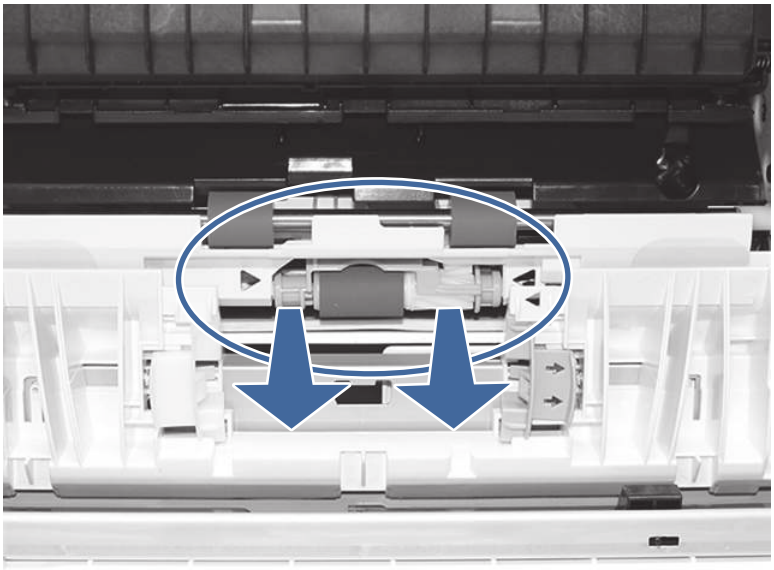
Call-out 1- slide blue locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

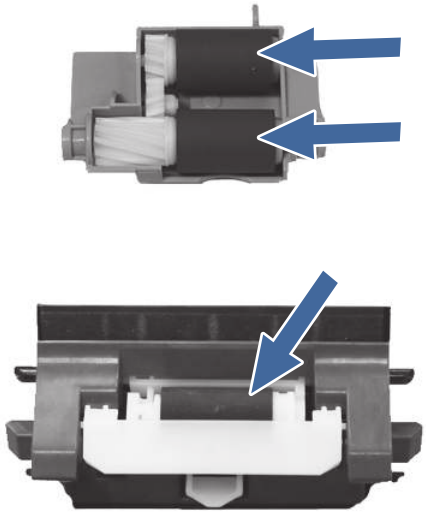
c. Remove the Tray 4 pick and feed rollers.

To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on to the side of the rollers as shown.

NOTE: Make sure your hands are clean before touching the rollers. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.



e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 4.

12. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.A4 jam error in Tray 4 (2,100 sheet feeder HCI)

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations related to the HCI Tray 4. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

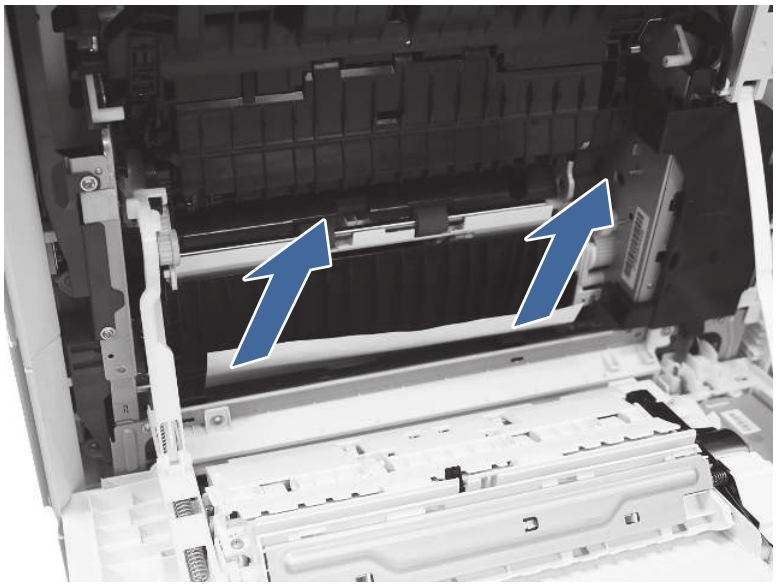
- 13.A4.A4 Paper jam in tray 4
- 13.A4.D4 Paper jam in tray 4

View a video of how to clear a jam in the high-capacity input Tray 4

1. Open the printer right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.



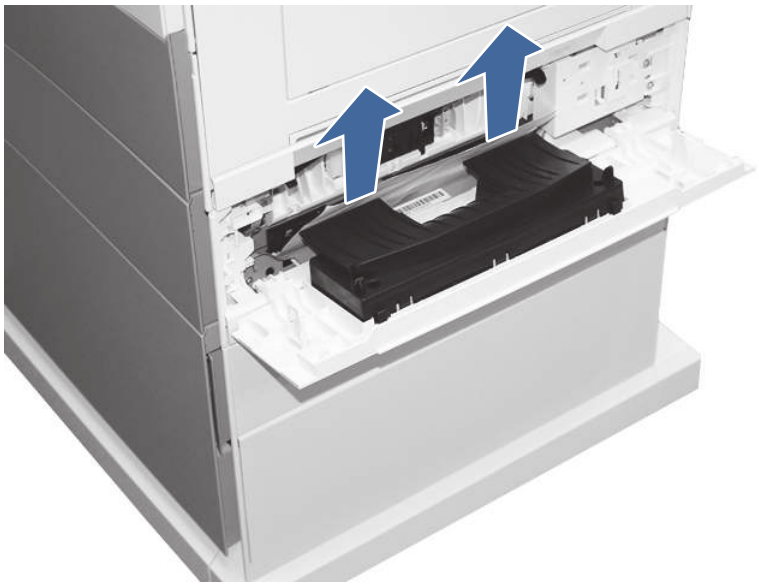
3. Open the Tray 4 right access door.



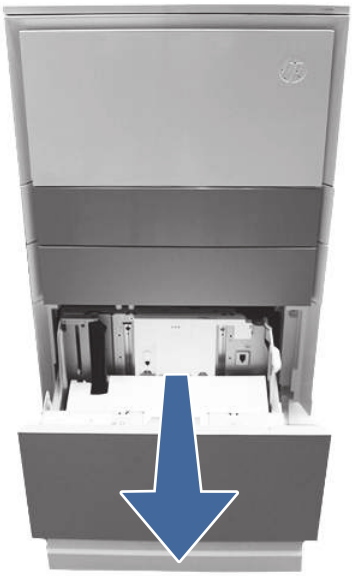
4. Gently remove any jammed paper.



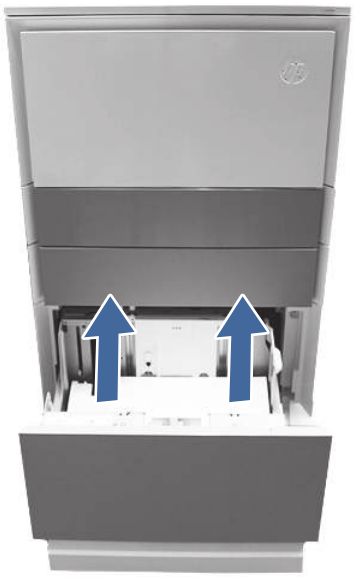
5. Open the Tray 3 access door and gently remove any jammed paper.



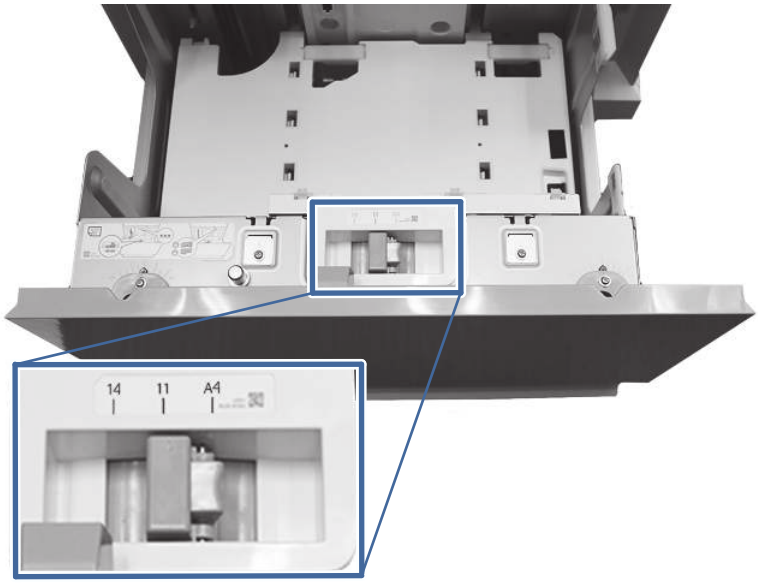
6. Close the right door to clear the control panel message.
7. Open Tray 4.

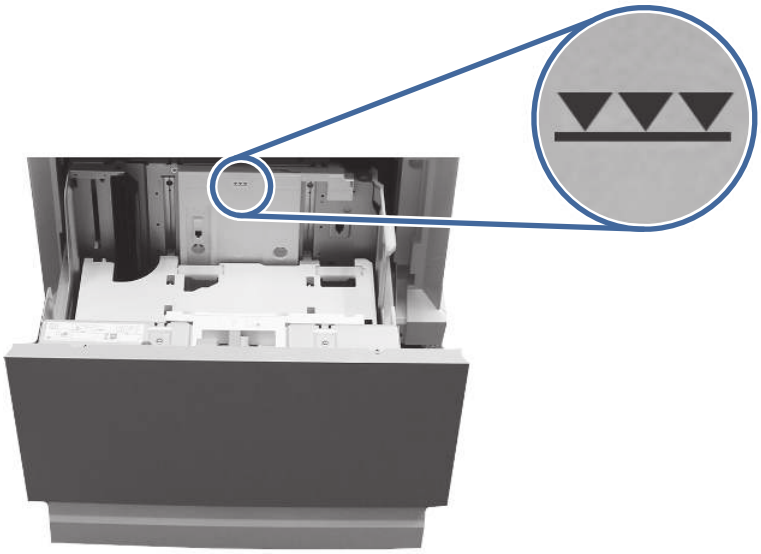


8. Remove the paper from the tray and discard any bent, curled, or damaged sheets.



9. Make sure that the tray width guide is set to the correct paper size for the paper being installed into the tray and that the tray is not over filled above the fill mark (line below 3 triangles on rear guide).

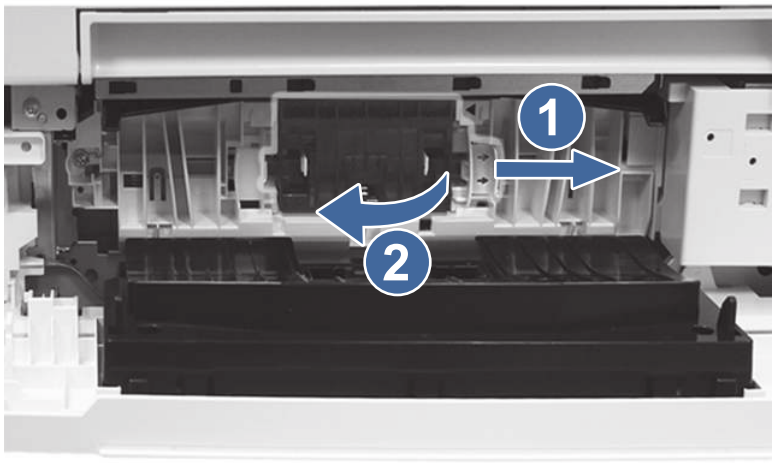




10. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
11. If the error persists, clean the Tray 4 pick, feed, and separation rollers.
    a. Open the Tray 4 door to access the rollers.



b. Locate and remove the Tray 4 separation roller.



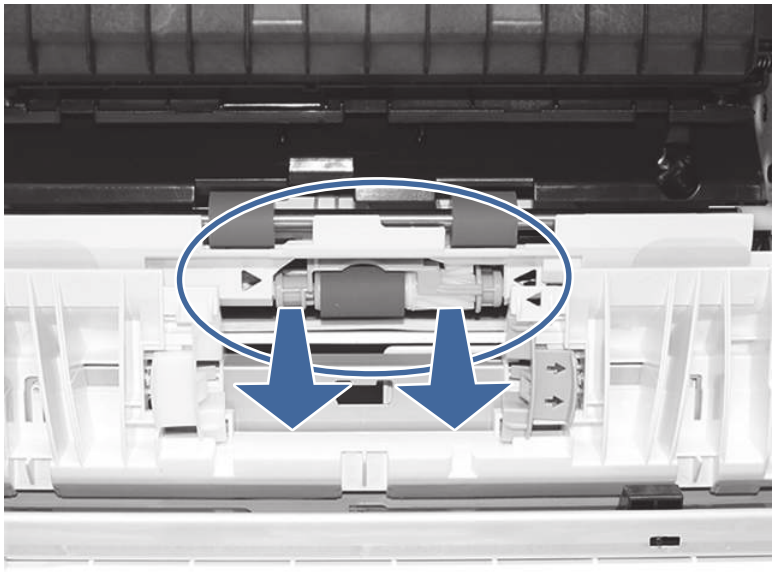
Call-out 1- slide locking lever

Call-out 2- Remove the roller assembly.

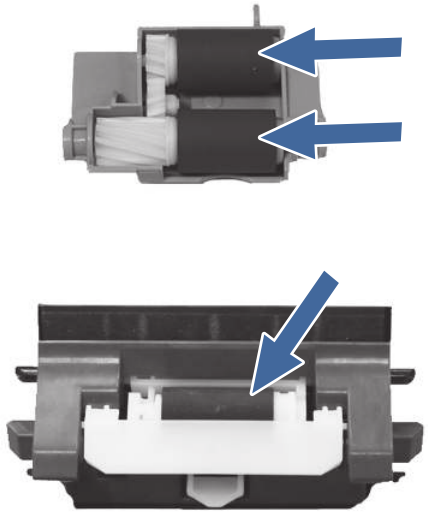
c. Remove the Tray 4 pick and feed rollers.

To remove the roller assembly, gently pull on to the side of the rollers as shown.

NOTE: Do not touch the rubber part of the rollers with hands. Oils or debris from hands can cause paper pickup issues.



d. Clean the rollers with a dampened lint free cloth.



e. Reinstall the roller assemblies and close the right door.

f. Run a print job from Tray 4.

12. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B2 jam error in right door

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.B2.Az Stay jam in right door
- 13.B2.Dz Delay jam in right door
- 13.B2.5z Inappropriate page to the Delivery Path jam
- 13.B2.FF Residual paper jam in right door

z = paper tray. This can be trays 1-5 or "D" for duplex jobs

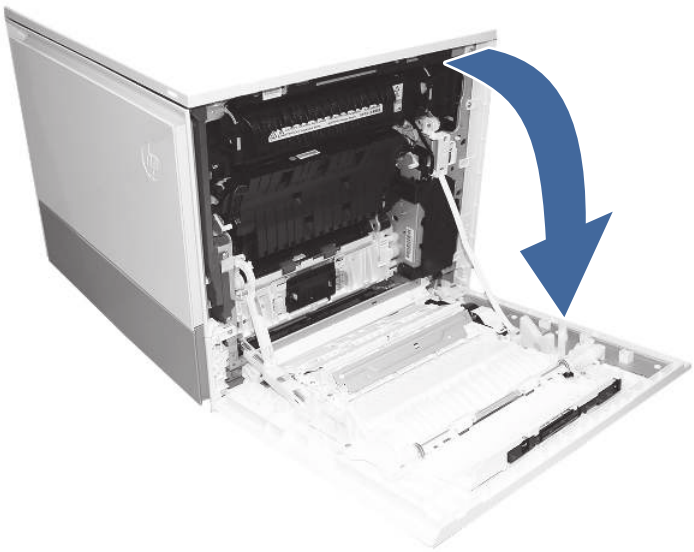
Or

z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

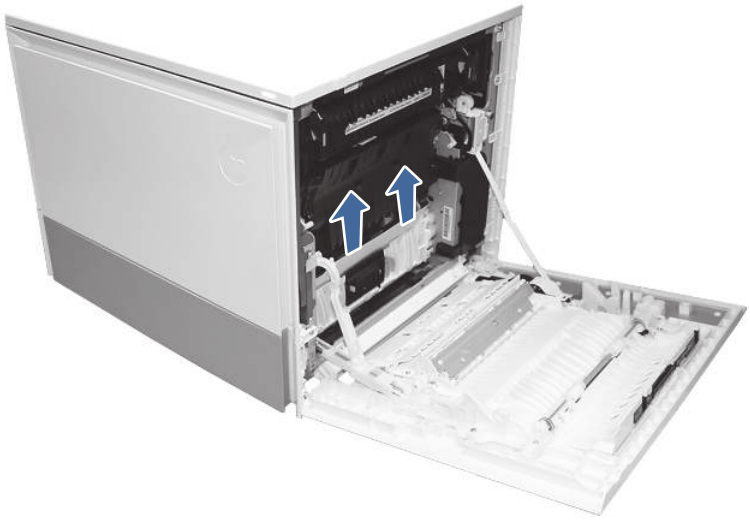
View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area

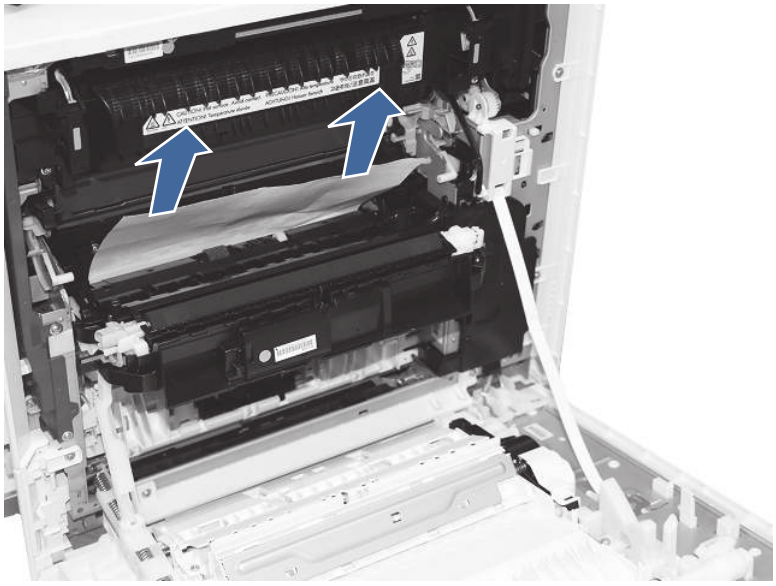
⚠ **CAUTION:** The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

1. Open the right door.

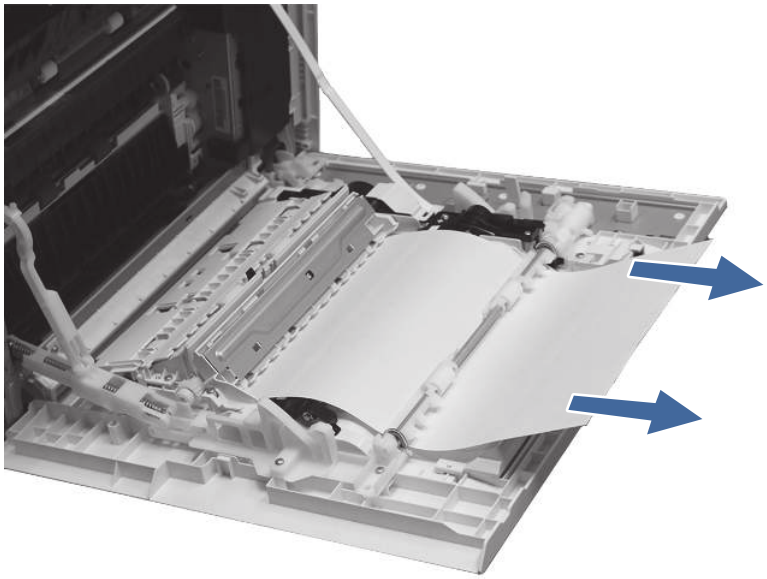


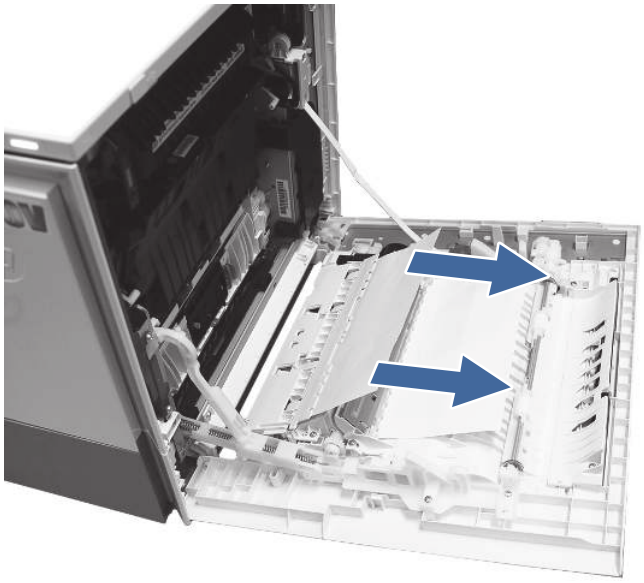
2. Gently remove any jammed paper.





3. Gently remove any jammed paper from the duplexer paper path.





IMPORTANT: Make sure the paper being used is not too short for the printers duplexer requirements.

4. Close the right door.
5. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
6. Ensure the paper tray guides are set to the correct size for the paper loaded.
7. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B4 jam errors in the right door

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

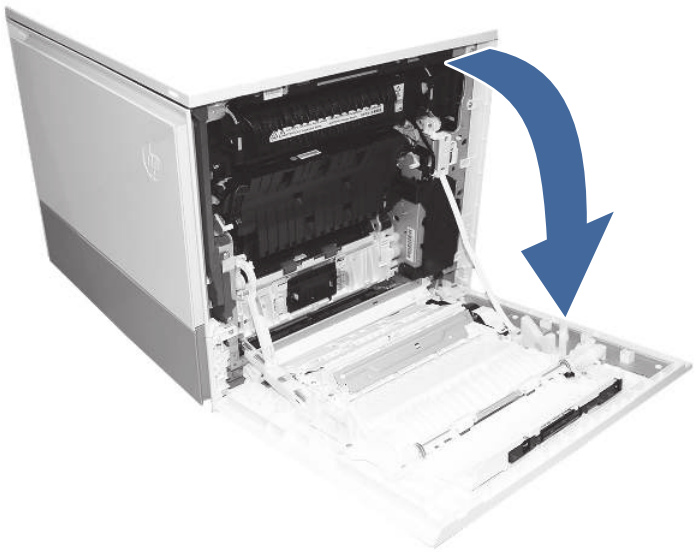
- 13.B4.Cz Jam in right door
- 13.B4.FF Residual paper jam in right door

z = paper tray. This can be trays 1-5 or "D" for duplex print jobs.

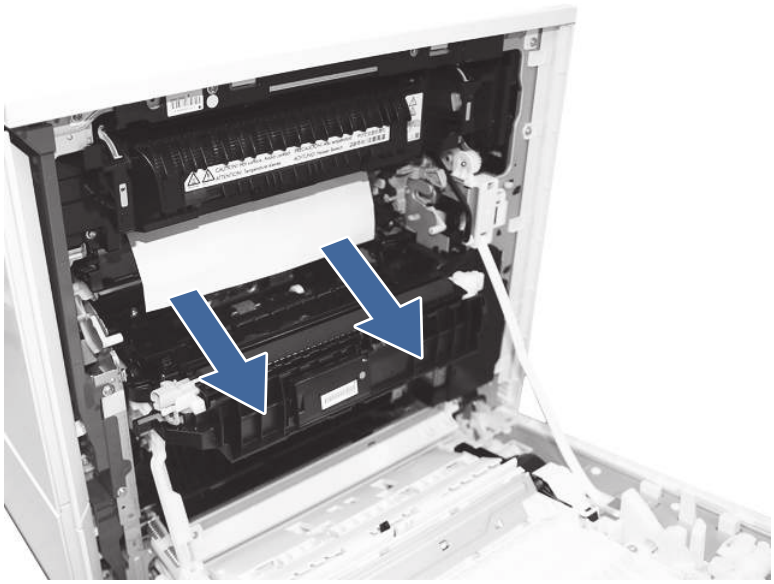
View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area

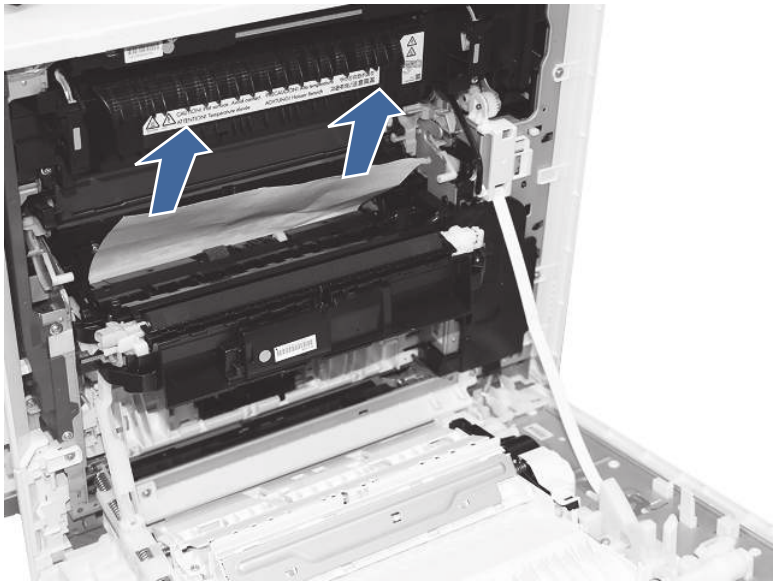
CAUTION: The fuser can be hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before handling it.

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper.





3. Close the right door.
4. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
5. Ensure the paper tray guides are set to the correct size for the paper loaded.
6. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.B9 jam errors in the fuser

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the right door and fuser area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.B9.yz Jam in right door

y = jam type (A or D)

z = Paper tray. This can be 0-5 or "D" for duplex print jobs.

Or

z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

- 13.B9.Cz Jam in right door (Fuser wrap jam)

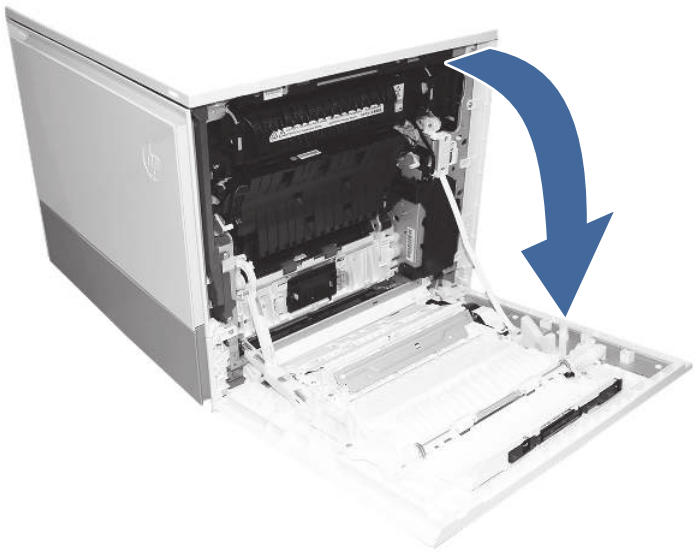
z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

- 13.B9.FF Residual paper jam in right door

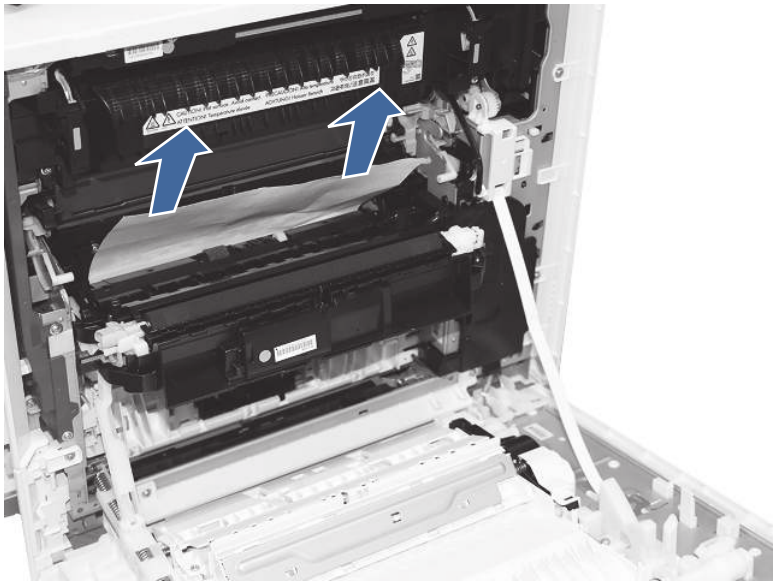
View a video of how to clear a jam in the right door and fuser area

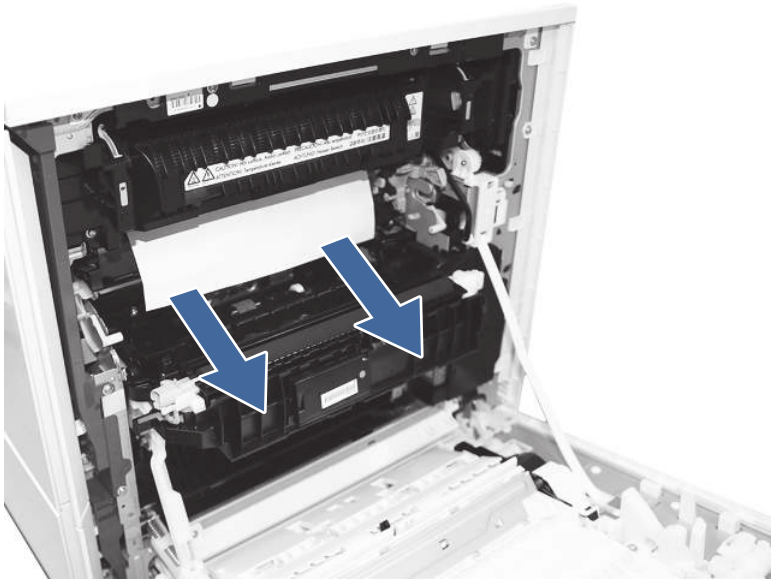
NOTE: The fuser is hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before clearing jams.

1. Open the right door.



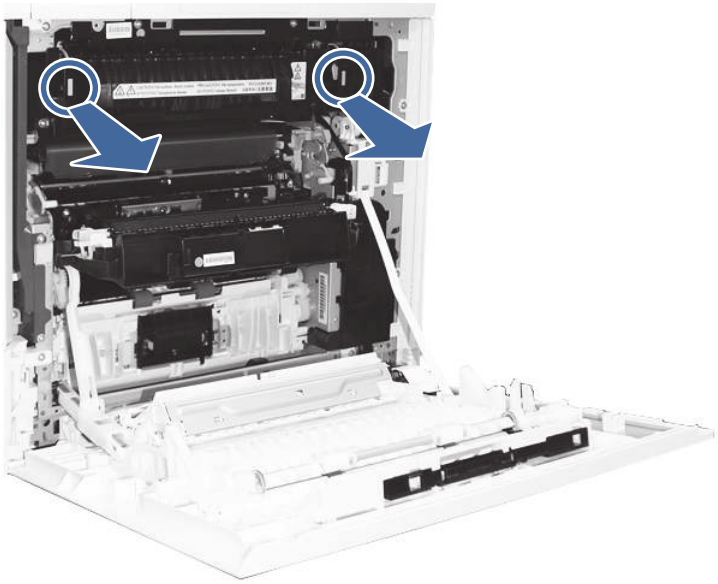
2. Gently remove any jammed paper from the fuser input.



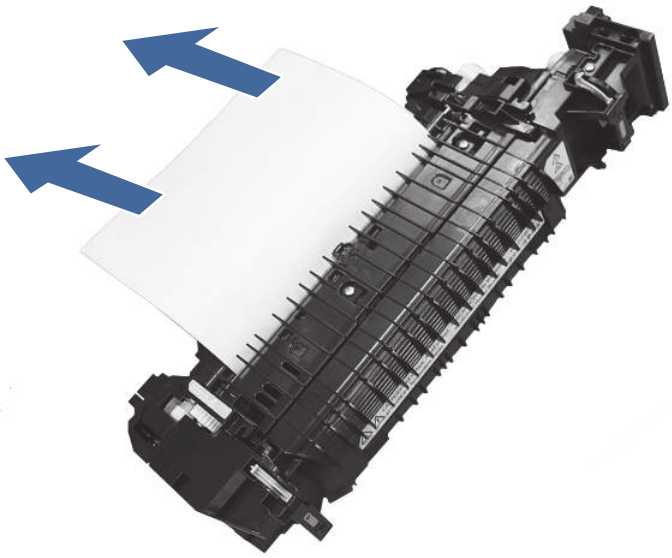


3. Remove the fuser and remove any jammed paper found.

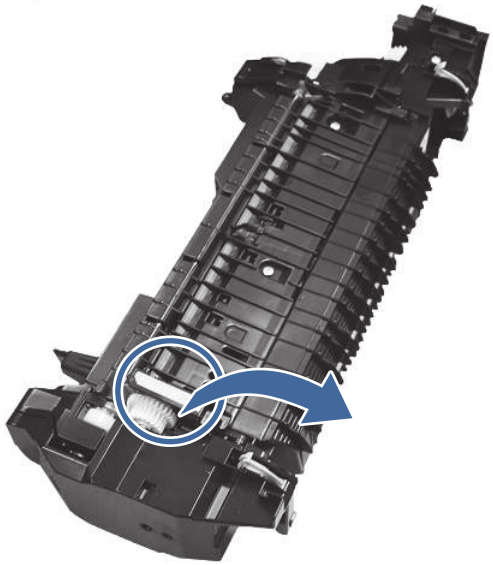
   a. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle call-outs) and then remove the fuser.



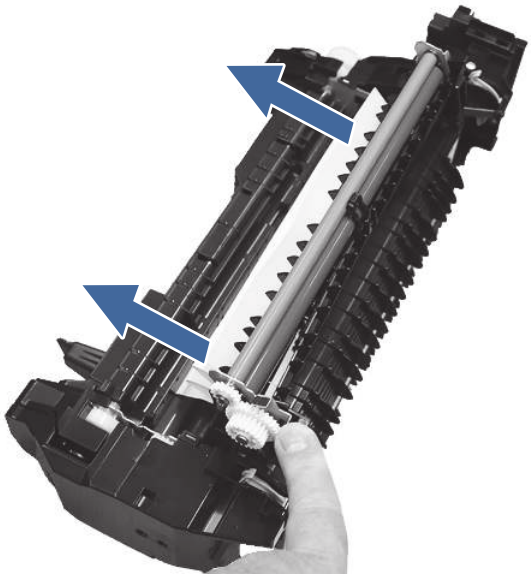
b. Remove any paper from the exit of the fuser.



c. Open the fuser access and check for a z-fold paper jam.



d. Remove jammed paper from fuser.



e. Reinstall the fuser and close the right door.

4. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.

5. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.D3 jam errors in the duplexer

Use the following procedure to clear paper jams in the duplexer area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

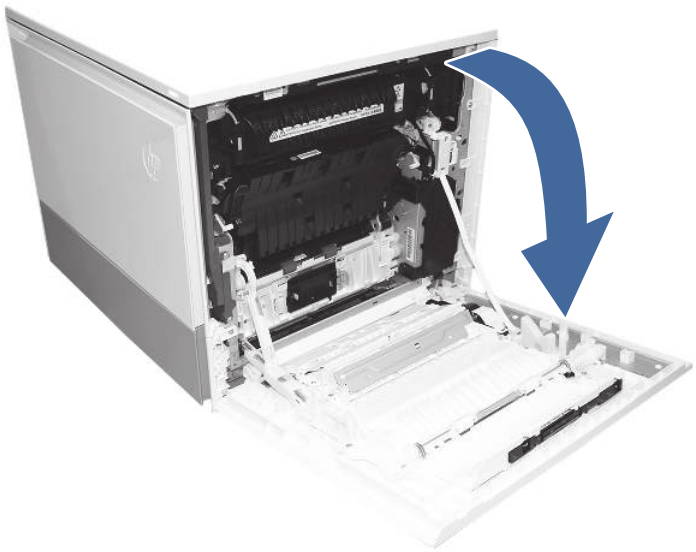
- 13.D3.Dz Duplex delivery delay jam
- 13.D3.FF Residual paper jam in right door

z = Fuser mode. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

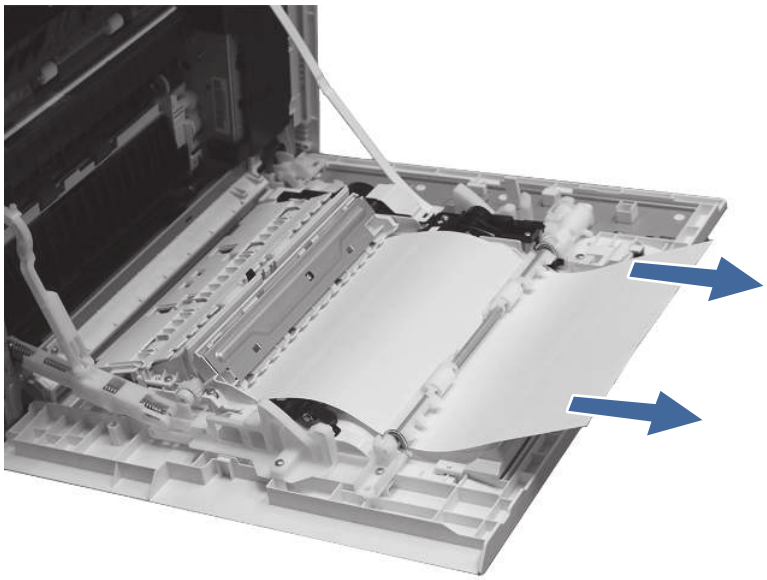
View a video of how to clear a jam in the duplexer area

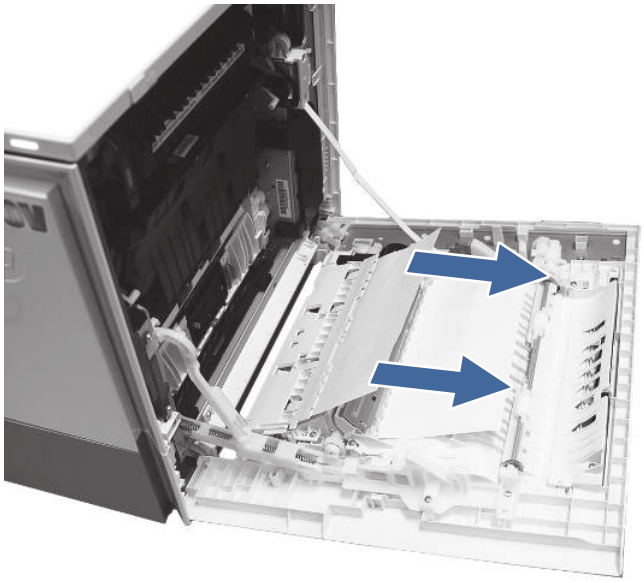
NOTE: The fuser is hot while the printer is in use. Wait for the fuser to cool before clearing jams.

1. Open the right door.



2. Gently remove any jammed paper from the duplexer paper path.





3. Close the right door.
4. If the error persists, ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
5. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.E1 jam error in the output bin

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations in the output bin. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.E1.Dz Jam in output bin
- 13.E1.FF Residual paper jam in output bin

z = paper type that is being printed on. This can be 0-9 or A-F.

View a video of how to clear a jam in the output bin

1. If paper is visible in the output bin, grasp the leading edge and remove it.



2. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
3. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.E2 jam error in top cover

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations in the top cover area. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.E2.yz Jam in Top cover

y = "A" (stay jam) or "D" (delay jam)

z = 1-4 (output bin page is going to)

These jams can only be present if the floor standing finisher is installed

View a video of how to clear a jam in the top cover.

1. Open the printer top access cover.



2. Remove all paper from inside the top cover.





3. Make sure that the floor standing finisher is correctly secured to the printer.
4. Make sure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
5. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.60 jam errors in the fuser exit area when printing to a stapler/stacker or floor-standing finisher

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations in the fuser exit area when printing to a finisher. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

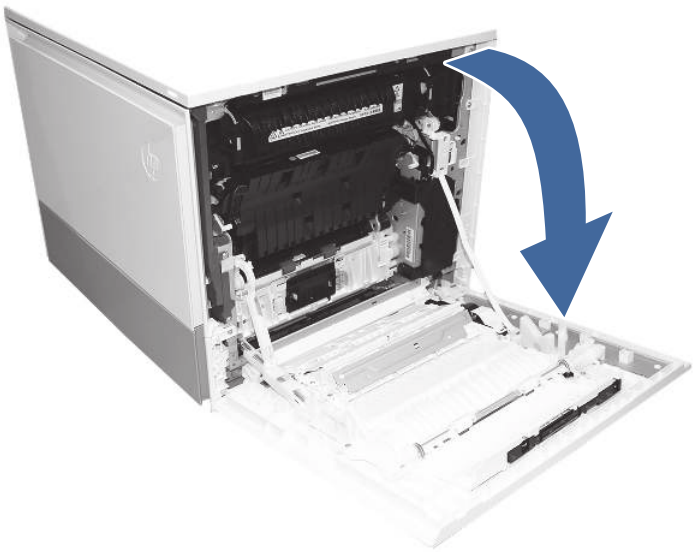
When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.60.51, 13.60.52 Paper too short jam
- 13.60.61, 13.60.62, 13.60.63, 13.60.64 Inter-Page Gap Jam

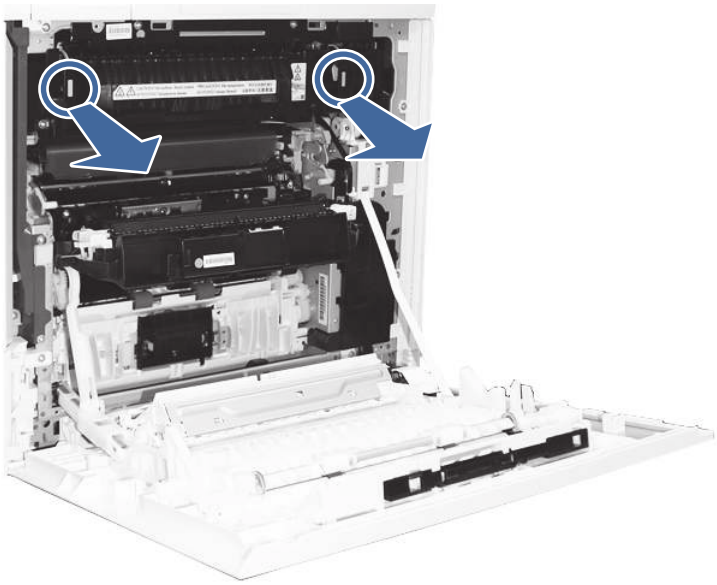
NOTE: The images provide do not show any accessories or copy module attached to the printer.

View a video of how to clear a jam in the fuser exit area on finisher.

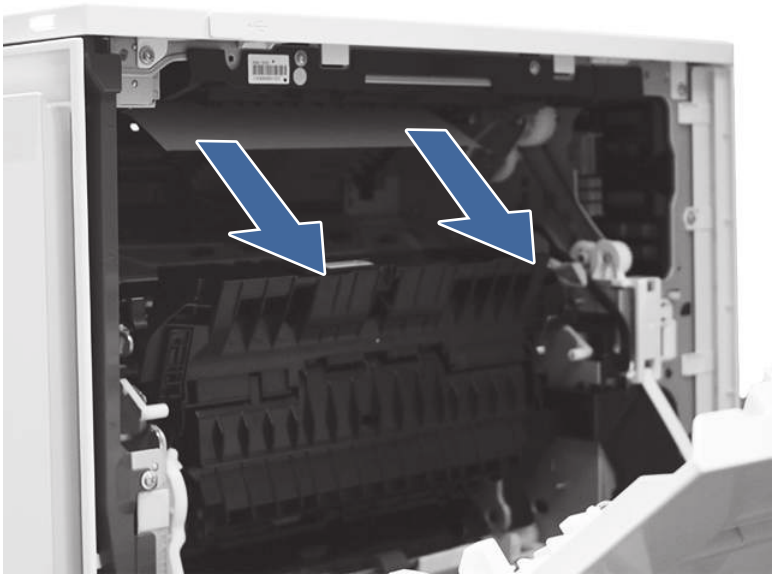
1. Open the right door.



2. Remove the fuser and remove any jammed paper found.
   a. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle call-outs) and then remove the fuser.



b. Remove any paper jammed in the fuser exit area.



c. Reinstall the fuser and close the right door.

3. Close right door to allow the printer to clear jam message.
4. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
5. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

13.80, 13.83, or 13.84 jam errors in the 3 Bin Stapler/Stacker

Use the following procedure to check for paper in all possible jam locations in the 3-bin stapler/stacker. When a jam occurs, the control panel displays an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

Recommended action for customers

When a jam occurs, the control panel displays a message and an animation that assists in clearing the jam.

- 13.80.yz Jam in 3 Bin stapler/stacker
- 13.83.yz Jam in 3 Bin stapler/stacker
- 13.84.yz Jam in 3 Bin stapler/stacker

y = "A" (stay jam), "B" (delay jam) "F" (residual jam)

z = Output destination tray 0-4

View a video of how to clear a jam in the 3-bin stapler/stacker area.

1. Remove any paper from the output bins.



2. Clear all paper from upper right door.

   a. Open the upper right door.



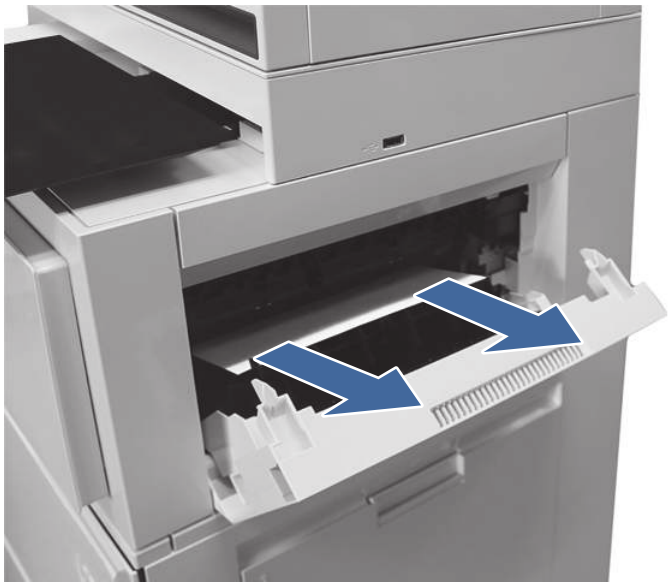
b. Remove paper from input area inside the door.



c. Remove paper from upper output area inside the door.

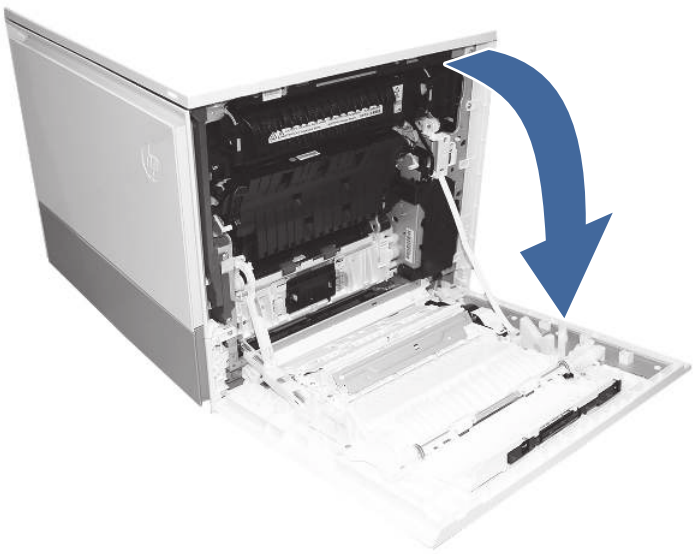


d. Remove paper from upper standard exit area.



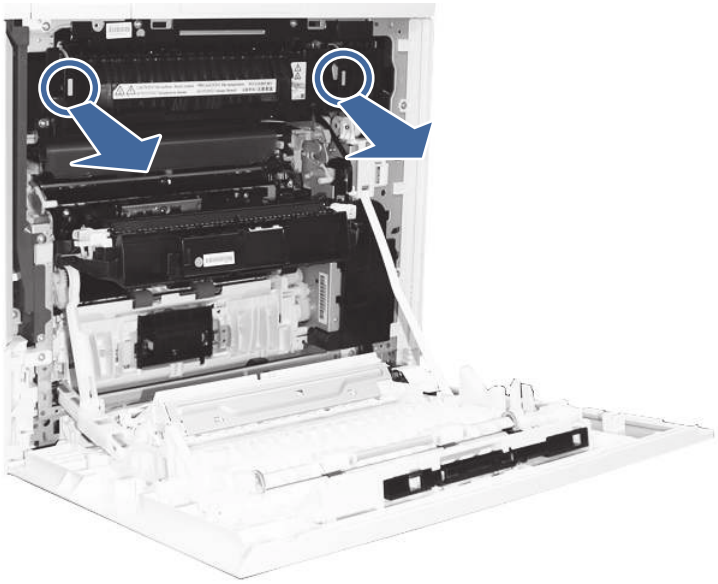
e. Close the upper right door.

3. Open the right door.

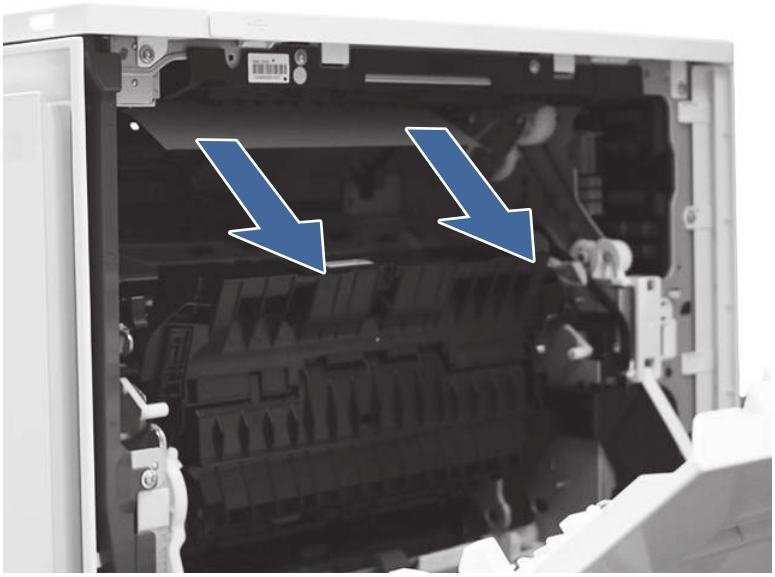


4. Remove the fuser and remove any jammed paper found.

a. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle call-outs) and then remove the fuser.



b. Remove any paper jammed in the fuser exit area.



c. Reinstall the fuser and close the right door.

5. Ensure the type and quality of the paper being used meets the HP specifications for the printer.
6. If the error persists, contact your HP-authorized service or support provider, or contact customer support at www.hp.com/go/contactHP.

Printer feeds incorrect page size

Review the following information when the printer feeds an incorrect page size.

Table 3-24 **Printer feeds incorrect page size**

Cause	Solution
The correct size paper is not loaded in the tray.	Load the correct size paper in the tray.
The correct size paper is not selected in the software program or printer driver.	Confirm that the settings in the software program and printer driver are correct, because the software program settings override the printer driver and control panel settings, and the printer driver settings override the control panel settings.
The correct size paper for the tray is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the control panel, select the correct size paper for the tray.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the tray.	Print a configuration page to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the paper guides are touching the paper.

Printer pulls from incorrect tray

Review the following information when the printer pulls from an incorrect tray.

Table 3-25 **Printer pulls from incorrect tray**

Cause	Solution
A driver for a different printer is in use.	Use a driver for this printer.
The specified tray is empty.	Load paper in the specified tray.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the guides are touching the paper.

Printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly (duplex models)

Review the following information when the printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly.

Table 3-26 **Printer will not duplex (print 2-sided jobs) or duplexes incorrectly**

Cause	Solution
The duplex job is trying to use unsupported paper.	Verify that the paper is supported for duplex printing.
The printer driver is not set up for duplex printing.	Set up the printer driver to enable duplex printing.
The first page is printing on the back of preprinted forms or letterhead.	Load preprinted forms and letterhead in Tray 1 with the letterhead or printed side down, with the top of the page leading into the printer. For Tray 2-X, load the paper printed side up with the top of the page toward the right of the printer.
The printer model does not support automatic 2-sided printing.	The printer model does not support automatic 2-sided printing.

Paper does not feed from Tray 2-X

Review the following information when the paper does not feed from Tray 2-X.

Table 3-27 **Paper does not feed from Tray 2-X**

Cause	Solution
The correct size paper is not loaded.	Load the correct size paper.
The input tray is empty.	Load paper in the input tray.
The correct paper type for the input tray is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the printer control panel, select the correct paper type for the input tray. Trays configured for a paper type with a specific weight range will not match a print job that specifies an exact weight, even if the specified weight is within the weight range.
Paper from a previous jam has not been completely removed.	Open the printer and remove any paper in the paper path. Closely inspect the fuser area for jams.
None of the optional trays appear as input tray options.	The optional trays only display as available if they are installed. Verify that any optional trays are correctly installed. Verify that the printer driver has been configured to recognize the optional trays.
An optional tray is incorrectly installed.	Print a configuration page to confirm that the optional tray is installed. If not, verify that the tray is correctly attached to the printer.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the guides are touching the paper.

Output is curled or wrinkled

Review the following information when the output is curled or wrinkled.

Table 3-28 **Output is curled or wrinkled**

Cause	Solution
Paper does not meet the specifications for this printer.	Use only paper that meets the HP paper specifications for this printer. Non-recycled, 75 g/m2 (20 lb) paper is optimal for office use.
The correct paper type for the input tray is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the printer control panel, select the correct paper type for the input tray. Trays configured for a paper type with a specific weight range will not match a print job that specifies an exact weight, even if the specified weight is within the weight range.
Paper is damaged or in poor condition.	Remove paper from the input tray and load paper that is in good condition.
The printer is operating in an excessively humid environment.	Verify that the printing environment is within humidity specifications.
The print job consist of large, solid-filled areas.	Large, solid-filled areas can cause excessive curl. Try using a different pattern.
Paper used was not stored correctly and might have absorbed moisture.	Remove paper and replace it with paper from a fresh, unopened package. Store paper in a plastic bag to protect it from humidity.
Paper has poorly cut edges.	Remove paper, flex it, rotate it 180 degrees or turn it over, and then reload it into the input tray. Do not fan paper. If the problem persists, replace the paper.

Table 3-28 **Output is curled or wrinkled (continued)**

Cause	Solution
The specific paper type was not configured for the tray or selected in the software.	Configure the software for the paper (see the software documentation). Configure the tray for the paper.
The paper has previously been used for a print job.	Do not re-use paper.

The printer does not pick up paper

If the printer does not pick up paper from the tray, try these solutions.

NOTE: Tray 1 and Tray 2 are optimal for paper pickup when using special paper or media other than 20lb plain paper. For Tray 1 and Tray 2 the printer increases the number of attempts to pick up a page, which increases the reliability of successfully picking the page from the tray and decreases the possibility of a mispick jam.

HP recommends using Tray 1 or Tray 2 if the printer is experiencing excessive or reoccurring jams from trays other than Tray 1 and Tray 2, or for print jobs that require media other than 20lb plain paper.

1. Open the printer and remove any jammed sheets of paper.
2. Load the tray with the correct size of paper for the job.
3. Make sure the paper size and type are set correctly on the printer control panel.
4. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides to the appropriate indentation in the tray.
5. Check the printer control panel to see if the printer is waiting for an acknowledgment to the feed the paper manually prompt. Load paper, and continue.
6. The rollers above the tray might be contaminated. Clean the rollers with a lint-free cloth dampened with warm water.

The printer picks up multiple sheets of paper

If the printer picks up multiple sheets of paper from the tray, try these solutions.

1. Remove the stack of paper from the tray and flex it, rotate it 180 degrees, and flip it over. *Do not fan the paper*. Return the stack of paper to the tray.
2. Use only paper that meets HP specifications for this printer.
3. Use paper that is not wrinkled, folded, or damaged. If necessary, use paper from a different package.
4. Make sure the tray is not overfilled. If it is, remove the entire stack of paper from the tray, straighten the stack, and then return some of the paper to the tray.
5. Make sure the paper guides in the tray are adjusted correctly for the size of paper. Adjust the guides to the appropriate indentation in the tray.
6. Make sure the printing environment is within recommended specifications.
7. The tray pick and/or feed rollers might be contaminated. Clean the rollers with a lint-free cloth dampened with warm water.

The document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper (MFP)

Learn about MFP document feeder paper handling problems.

Review the following information when the document feeder jams, skews, or picks up multiple sheets of paper.

- Check to see if there are areas on the page that might have had staples removed. This can cause jams and/or mispicks.
- The original might have something on it, such as staples or self-adhesive notes that must be removed.
- Check that all rollers are in place and correctly installed.
- Make sure that the top document-feeder cover is closed.
- The pages might not be placed correctly. Straighten the pages and adjust the paper guides to center the stack.
- The paper guides must be touching the sides of the paper stack to work correctly. Make sure that the paper stack is straight, and the guides are against the paper stack.
- The document feeder input tray or output bin might contain more than the maximum number of pages. Make sure the paper stack fits below the guides in the input tray and remove pages from the output bin.
- Verify that there are no pieces of paper, staples, paper clips, or other debris in the paper path.
- Clean the document-feeder rollers and the separation pad. Use compressed air or a clean, lint-free cloth moistened with warm water. If misfeeds still occur, replace the rollers.
- Use the control panel menus to check the status of the document-feeder kit and replace it if necessary.

Paper does not feed automatically

Review the following information when the paper does not feed automatically.

Table 3-29 **Paper does not feed automatically**

Cause	Solution
Manual feed is selected in the software program.	Load Tray 1 with paper, or, if the paper is loaded, press the OK button.
The correct size paper is not loaded.	Load the correct size paper.
The input tray is empty.	Load paper into the input tray.
Paper from a previous jam has not been completely removed.	Open the printer and remove any paper in the paper path.
The paper size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the paper size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the rear and width paper guides are touching the paper.

Image-quality troubleshooting

Learn about image-quality troubleshooting.

Use the information in this topic to troubleshoot and resolve image-quality (what you see on the final printed page) problems including copy-quality, print-quality, and color problems (color printers only).

Various printer hardware problems can cause image-quality defects. This topic is a guide to the steps used to isolate the specific areas of the printer that are causing image-quality defects on the printed page, and to provide solutions to resolve those image-quality defects.

Image-quality problems are defined as:

- **Print-quality (PQ) problems**: PQ problems are associated with the print engine (printer base) of an MFP printer (single function non MFP image-quality problems are always PQ defects). PQ defects appear on pages that are **printed** by the print engine and not fed through an integrated scanner assembly (ISA).
- **Copy-quality (CQ) problems**: CQ problems are associated with the integrated-scanner assembly (ISA) portion of an MFP printer. CQ defects appear on pages that are **copied** using the document feeder or flatbed glass.

If the print defect is already known to be a PQ or CQ problem, skip to the appropriate troubleshooting topic listed below. Otherwise, follow the steps in the next section below to get started troubleshooting image-quality problems.

- **Print-quality (PQ) problems**: See Print-quality troubleshooting on page 316.
- **Copy-quality (CQ) problems**: See Copy-quality troubleshooting on page 331.

Get started troubleshooting image-quality problems

Print a demonstration page to identify the defect as a PQ (print engine) or CQ (ISA) problem.

NOTE: If the image defect appears on the printed demonstration page, the issue is a print-quality (PQ) problem (associated with the print engine and not the document feeder or flatbed glass) and not a CQ problem.

Make sure that the demonstration page is printed on **plain paper**.

Enterprise printers

1. Select **Reports** > **Other pages**.
2. Select Demonstration Page.

Pro printers

1. At the printer, scroll to or select Setup.
2. Go to Reports, and then select Demonstration Page.

Does the demonstration page show any image-quality defects?

- **Yes**: If defects appear on the printed demonstration page the issue is PQ related. See Print-quality troubleshooting on page 316.
- **No**: If defects does not appear on the printed demonstration page the issue is CQ related. See Copy-quality troubleshooting on page 331.

Print-quality troubleshooting

Learn about the print-quality troubleshooting.

NOTE: Print-quality (PQ) problems are associated with the print engine (printer base) of an MFP printer (single function non MFP image-quality problems are always PQ defects). PQ defects appear on pages that are **printed** by the print engine and not feed through an integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

Repetitive image defect ruler

Review the following information about a repetitive image defect ruler.

When troubleshooting the source of some print image defects, one solution is to identify if it is a repetitive defect (does the print quality defect appear multiple times on the printed page?). If this is the case, use a ruler to measure occurrences of repetitive image defects to help solve image-quality problems. For more information, see Using a ruler to measure between repetitive defects.

Use a ruler to measure occurrences of repetitive image defects to help solve image-quality problems. Place the ruler next to the first occurrence of the defect on the page. Find the distance between identical defects and use the table below to identify the component that is causing the defect.

CAUTION: Do not use solvents or oils to clean rollers. Instead, rub the roller with a lint-free cloth. If dirt is difficult to remove, rub the roller with a lint-free cloth that has been dampened with water.

NOTE: The primary charging roller, photosensitive drum, and developer roller cannot be cleaned because they are internal assemblies in the toner cartridge or imaging drum. If one of these assemblies is causing the defect, replace the toner cartridge. The primary fuser sleeve unit or pressure roller cannot be cleaned because they are internal assemblies in the fuser. If one of these assemblies is causing the defect, replace the fuse.

TIP: To make a printer specific repetitive defect ruler, use a metric ruler to transfer the measurements in the table below to a transparency or the edge of a piece of paper—clearly label each ruler mark with the associated defective assembly.

Table 3-30 **Repetitive defects**

Component	Distance between defects	Notes
Primary charging roller	27 mm (1 in)	Appears as dropouts. Appears only in one color.
Photosensitive drum	77 mm (3 in)	Appears as dirt or dropouts. Appears only in one color.
Developer roller	43 mm (1.7 in)	Appears as dropouts. Appears only in one color.
RS Roller	38 mm (1.5 in)	Appears only in one color.
Secondary transfer roller	50 mm (1.97 in)	Appears as dropouts or dirt on the back of the page. Appears on all color planes on front or back of page.
ITB drive roller	47 mm (1.85 in)	Appears on all color planes.
Fuser film	76 mm (3 in)	Appears as dirt, dropouts, or loose toner. Appears on all color planes.

Table 3-30 Repetitive defects (continued)

Component	Distance between defects	Notes
Fuser Pressure roller	79 mm (3.1 in)	Appears as dirt, loose toner, or dirt on the back of the page. Appears on all color planes.
Registration roller	44 mm (1.7 in)	Appears as dirt or dirt on the back of the page. Appears on all color planes.

Use a ruler to measure between repetitive defects

The figures in this section show color repetitive defect pages. However, the process for measuring repetitive defects is valid for mono pages.

1. Identify a repetitive defect on the page.

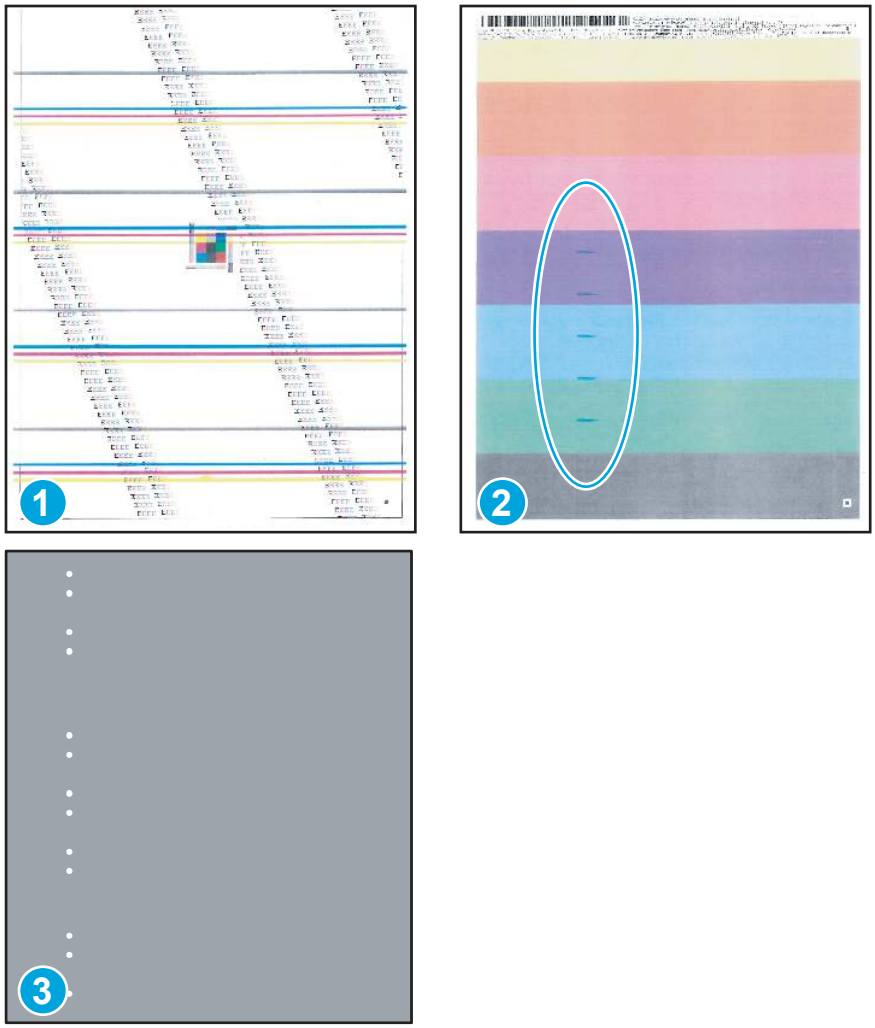
TIP: Print a cleaning page to see if that resolves the defect.

NOTE: Some printers allow loading Letter and A4 media in short-edge-first or long-edge-first orientation in the paper trays. When measuring repetitive defects, make sure to place the ruler at the leading edge of the page. This is the edge of the page that feeds into the printer first.

The example pages below show the following types of repetitive defects.

- Lines (callout 1)
- Smudges (callout 2)
- Dots or spots (callout 3)

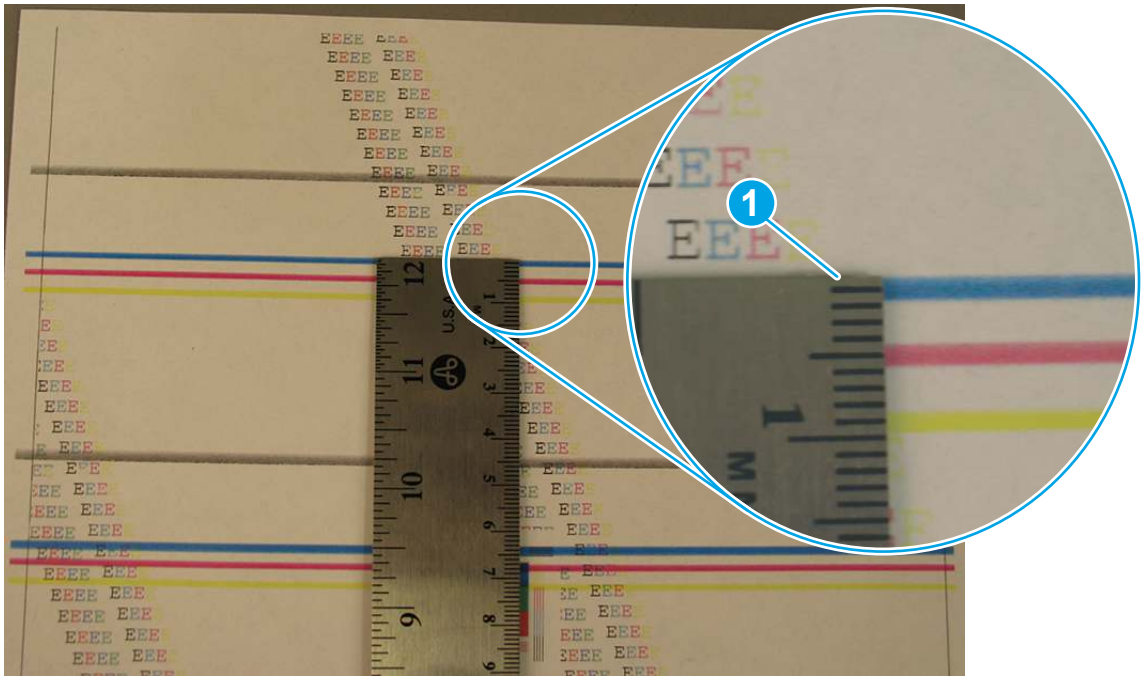
Figure 3-116 Examples of repetitive defects



NOTE: These are examples only, other types of repetitive defects might appear on a page.

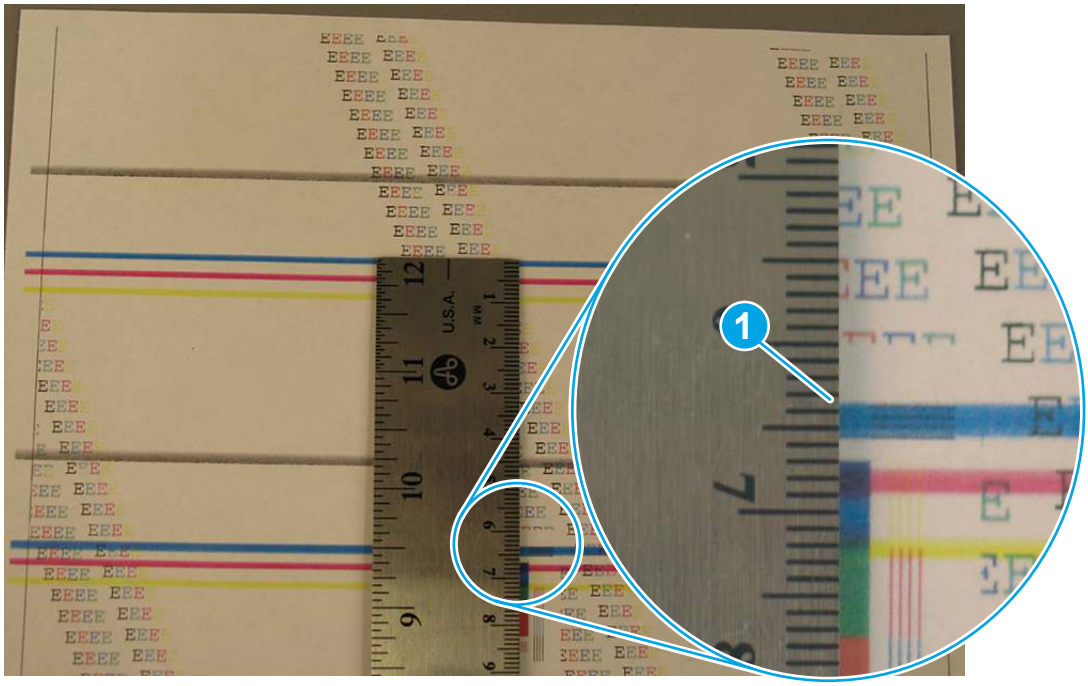
2. Position a metric ruler on the page with the “zero” ruler mark at one occurrence of the defect (callout 1).

Figure 3-117 Place the ruler on the page



3. Locate the next occurrence of the defect (callout 1).

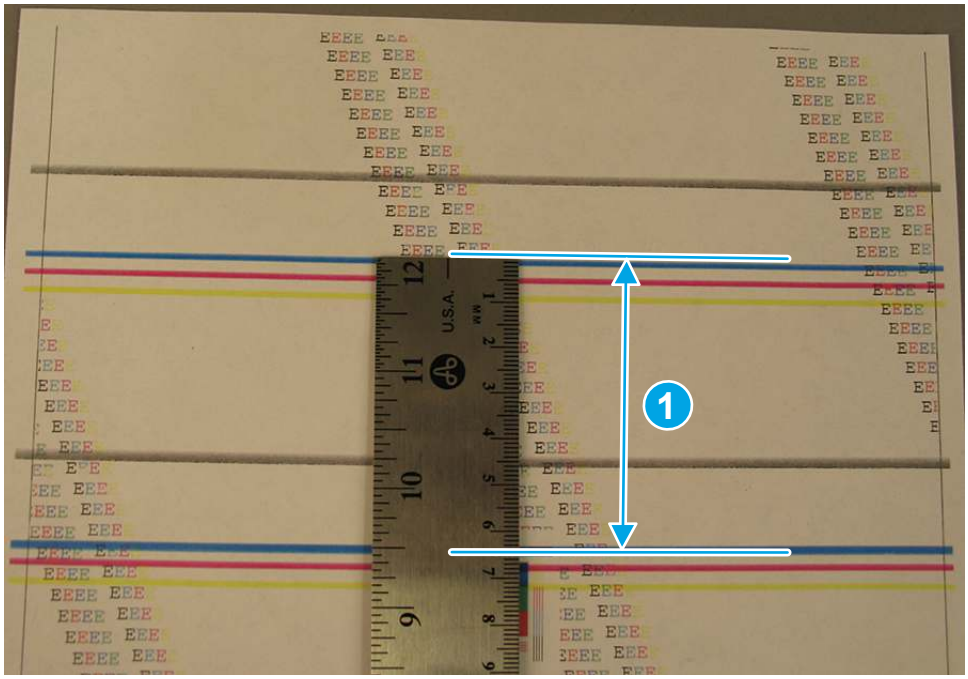
Figure 3-118 Locate the next repetitive defect



4. Measure the distance (in millimeters) between the two occurrences (callout 1), and then use the Repetitive defects table to determine the defective assembly.

TIP: Always measure from and to the same point on the defects. For example, if the ruler is "zeroed" at the top edge of a defect, measure to the top edge of the next occurrence of that defect.

Figure 3-119 Determine the defective assembly



Print from a different software program

Try printing from a different software program.

If the page prints correctly, the problem is with the software program from which you were printing.

Check the paper-type setting for the print job

Check the paper type setting when printing from a software program and the printed pages have smears, fuzzy or dark print, curled paper, scattered dots of toner, loose toner, or small areas of missing toner.

Check the paper type setting on the control panel

Check the paper type setting on the printer control panel, and change the setting as needed.

1. Open and close the paper tray.
2. Follow the control panel prompts to confirm or modify the paper type and size settings for the tray.
3. Make sure the paper loaded meets specifications.
4. Adjust the humidity and resistance setting on the control panel to match the environment.
   a. Open the following menus:
      i. Settings

ii. Copy/Print

iii. Print quality

iv. Adjust paper type

b. Select the paper type that matches the type loaded in the tray.

c. Use the arrows to increase or decrease the humidity and resistance setting.

5. Make sure the driver settings match the control panel settings.

NOTE: The print driver settings will override any control panel settings.

Check the paper type setting (Windows)

Check the paper type setting for Windows, and change the setting as needed.

NOTE: The print driver settings will override any control panel settings.

1. From the software program, select the **Print** option.
2. Select the printer, and then click the **Properties** or **Preferences** button.
3. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.
4. From the **Paper Type** drop-down list, click the **More...** option.
5. Expand the list of **Type is:** options.
6. Expand the category of paper types that best describes your paper.
7. Select the option for the type of paper you are using, and click the **OK** button.
8. Click the **OK** button to close the **Document Properties** dialog box. In the **Print** dialog box, click the **OK** button to print the job.

Check the paper type setting (macOS)

Check the paper type setting for macOS, and change the setting as needed.

1. Click the **File** menu, and then click the **Print** option.
2. In the **Printer** menu, select the printer.
3. Click **Show Details** or **Copies & Pages**.
4. Open the menus drop-down list, and then click the **Paper/Quality** menu.
5. Select a type from the **Media Type** drop-down list.
6. Click the **Print** button.

Check toner-cartridge status

Follow these steps to check the estimated life remaining in the toner cartridges and if applicable, the status of other replaceable maintenance parts.

Step one: Print the Supplies Status Page

The supplies status page indicates the cartridge status.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Reports menu.
2. Select the Configuration/Status Pages menu.
3. Select Supplies Status Page, and then select Print to print the page.

Step two: Check supplies status

Check the supplies status report as follows.

1. Look at the supplies status report to check the percent of life remaining for the toner cartridges and, if applicable, the status of other replaceable maintenance parts.

   Print quality problems can occur when using a toner cartridge that is at its estimated end of life. The supplies status page indicates when a supply level is very low. After an HP supply has reached the very low threshold, HP's premium protection warranty on that supply has ended.

   The toner cartridge does not need to be replaced now unless the print quality is no longer acceptable. Consider having a replacement available to install when print quality is no longer acceptable.

   If you determine that you need to replace a toner cartridge or other replaceable maintenance parts, the supplies status page lists the genuine HP part numbers.

2. Check to see if you are using a genuine HP cartridge.

   A genuine HP toner cartridge has the word "HP" on it, or has the HP logo on it. For more information on identifying HP cartridges go to www.hp.com/go/learnaboutsupplies.

Print a cleaning page

Learn how to print a cleaning page.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, scroll to and touch the Support Tools button.
2. Open the following menus:
   - Maintenance
   - Calibration/Cleaning
3. Touch Cleaning Page, and then touch the Print button to print the cleaning page.

NOTE: A **Cleaning...** message displays on the control-panel display. Do not turn the printer off until the cleaning process has finished. When it is finished, discard the printed page.

TIP: Use this screen to set up automatic cleaning page intervals if desired.

Check paper and the printing environment

Use the following information to check the paper selection and the printing environment.

Step one: Use paper that meets HP specifications

Some print-quality problems arise from using paper that does not meet HP specifications.

- Always use a paper type and weight that this printer supports.
- Use paper that is of good quality and free of cuts, nicks, tears, spots, loose particles, dust, wrinkles, voids, staples, and curled or bent edges.

- Use paper that has not been previously printed on.
- Use paper that does not contain metallic material, such as glitter.
- Use paper that is designed for use in laser printers. Do not use paper that is designed only for use in Inkjet printers.
- Use paper that is not too rough. Using smoother paper generally results in better print quality.

Step two: Check the environment

The environment can directly affect print quality and is a common cause of print-quality or paper-feeding issues. Try the following solutions:

- Move the printer away from drafty locations, such as open windows or doors, or air-conditioning vents.
- Make sure the printer is not exposed to temperatures or humidity outside of printer specifications.
- Do not place the printer in a confined space, such as a cabinet.
- Place the printer on a sturdy, level surface.
- Remove anything that is blocking the vents on the printer. The printer requires good air flow on all sides, including the top.
- Protect the printer from airborne debris, dust, steam, grease, or other elements that can leave residue inside the printer.

Step three: Set the individual tray alignment

Follow these steps when text or images are not centered or aligned correctly on the printed page when printing from specific trays.

1. From the Home screen on the printer control panel, select the Settings menu.
2. Select the following menus:
   a. Copy/Print or Print
   b. Print Quality
   c. Image Registration
3. Select Tray, and then select the tray to adjust.
4. Select Print Test Page, and then follow the instructions on the printed pages.
5. Select Print Test Page again to verify the results, and then make further adjustments if necessary.
6. Select Done to save the new settings.

Try a different print driver

Try a different print driver when printing from a software program and the printed pages have unexpected lines in graphics, missing text, missing graphics, incorrect formatting, or substituted fonts.

Download a different print driver from the HP support Web site: http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP.

Troubleshoot image defects

Review examples of image defects and steps to resolve these defects.

Table 3-31 Image defects table quick reference

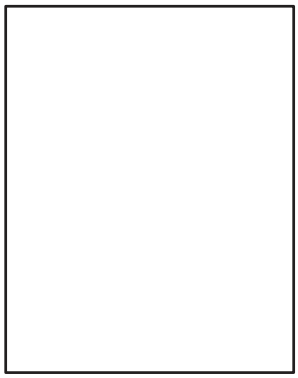
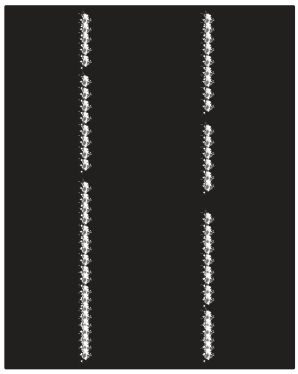
Defect	Defect	Defect
Table 3-39 Light print on page 329 	Table 3-37 Gray background or dark print on page 328 	Table 3-34 Blank page - No print on page 327 
Table 3-33 Black page on page 326 	Table 3-32 Banding defects on page 326 	Table 3-41 Streak defects on page 331 

Table 3-31 Image defects table quick reference (continued)

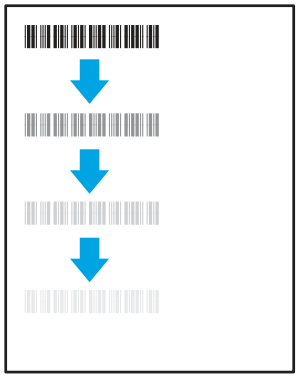
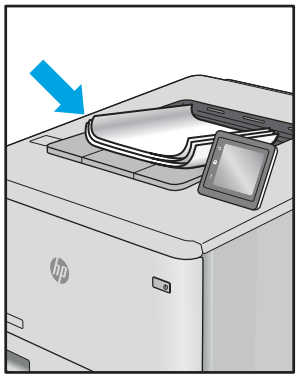
Defect	Defect	Defect
Table 3-36 Fixing/fuser defects on page 327 	Table 3-38 Image placement defects on page 329 	Table 3-35 Color plane registrations defects (color models only) on page 327 
Table 3-40 Output defects on page 330 		

Image defects, no matter the cause, can often be resolved using the same steps. Use the following steps as a starting point for solving image defect issues.

1. Reprint the document. Print quality defects can be intermittent in nature or can go away completely with continued printing.
2. Check the condition of the cartridge or cartridges. If a cartridge is in a **Very Low** state (it has passed the rated life), replace the cartridge.
3. Make sure that the driver and tray print mode settings match the media that is loaded in the tray. Try using a different ream of media or a different tray. Try using a different print mode.
4. Make sure the printer is within the supported operating temperature/humidity range.
5. Make sure that the paper type, size, and weight are supported by the printer. See the printer support page at support.hp.com for a list of the supported paper sizes and types for the printer.

NOTE: The term "fusing" refers to the part of the printing process where toner is affixed to paper.

The following examples depict letter-size paper that has passed through the printer with the short edge first.

Table 3-32 Banding defects

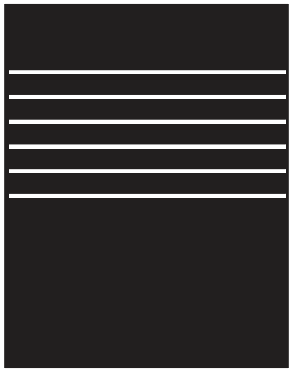
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	Dark or light lines which repeat down the length of the page, and are wide-pitch and/or impulse bands. They might be sharp or soft in nature. The defect displays only in areas of fill, not in text or sections with no printed content.	1. Reprint the document. 2. Try printing from another tray. 3. Replace the cartridge. 4. Use a different paper type. 5. **Enterprise models only**: From the Home screen on the printer control panel, go to the Adjust Paper Types menu, and then choose a print mode that is designed for a slightly heavier media than what you are using. This slows the print speed and might improve the print quality. 6. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-33 Black page

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	The entire printed page is black.	1. Visually inspect the cartridge to check for damage. 2. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly. 3. Replace the cartridge. 4. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-34 Blank page - No print

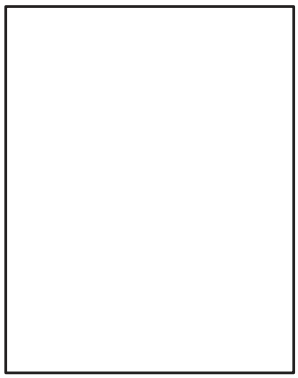
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	The page is completely blank and contains no printed content.	1. Make sure that the cartridges are genuine HP cartridges. 2. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly. 3. Print with a different cartridge. 4. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a lighter paper type. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-35 Color plane registrations defects (color models only)

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	One or more color plane(s) is not aligned with the other color planes. This registration error will typically occur with yellow.	1. Reprint the document. 2. From the printer control panel, calibrate the printer. 3. If a cartridge has reached a **Very Low** state, or the printed output is severely faded, replace the cartridge. 4. From the printer control panel use the Restore Calibration feature to reset the printer's calibration settings to the factory defaults. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-36 Fixing/fuser defects

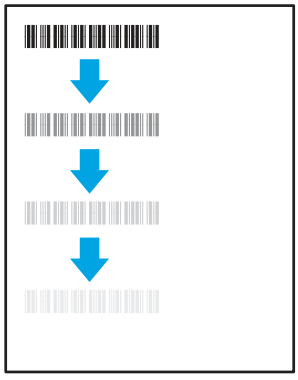
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	Slight shadows or offsets of the image are repeated down the page. The repeated image might fade with each recurrence.	1. Reprint the document. 2. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a lighter paper type. 3. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-36 Fixing/fuser defects (continued)

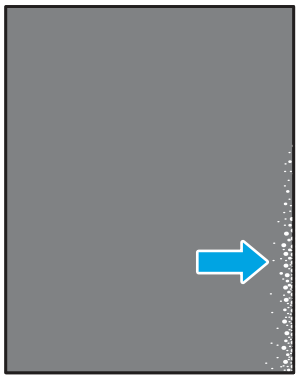
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	Toner rubs off along either edge of the page. This defect is more common at the edges of high-coverage jobs, and on light media types, but can occur anywhere on the page.	1. Reprint the document. 2. Check the paper type in the paper tray and adjust the printer settings to match. If necessary, select a heavier paper type. 3. **Enterprise models only**: From the printer control panel, go to the Edge-to-Edge menu and then select Normal. Reprint the document. 4. **Enterprise models only**: From the printer control panel, select Auto Include Margins and then reprint the document. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-37 Gray background or dark print

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	The image or text is darker than expected and/or the background is gray.	1. Make sure that the paper in the trays has not already been run through the printer. 2. Use a different paper type. 3. Reprint the document. 4. **Mono models only**: From the Home screen on the printer control panel, go to the Adjust Toner Density menu, and then adjust the toner density to a lower level. 5. Make sure that the printer is within the supported operating temperature and humidity range. 6. Replace the cartridge. 7. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-38 Image placement defects

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	The image is not centered, or is skewed on the page. The defect occurs when the paper is not positioned properly as it is pulled from the tray and moves through the paper path.	1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the paper and then reload the tray. Make sure that all the paper edges are even on all sides. 3. Make sure that the top of the paper stack is below the tray-full indicator. Do not overfill the tray. 4. Make sure that the paper guides are adjusted to the correct size for the paper. Do not adjust the paper guides tightly against the paper stack. Adjust them to the indentations or markings in the tray. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-39 Light print

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	The printed content is light or faded on the entire page.	1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see *Replace the toner cartridges*. 3. **Mono models only**: Make sure that the EconoMode setting is disabled, both at the printer control panel and in the print driver. 4. Make sure that the cartridge is installed correctly. 5. Print a Supplies Status Page and check the life and usage of the cartridge. 6. Replace the cartridge. 7. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-40 Output defects

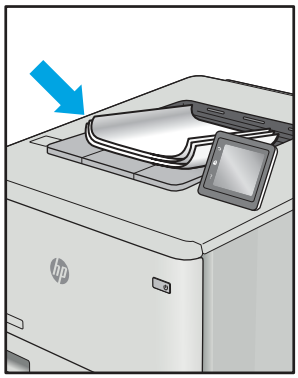
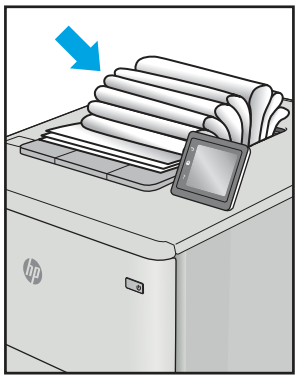
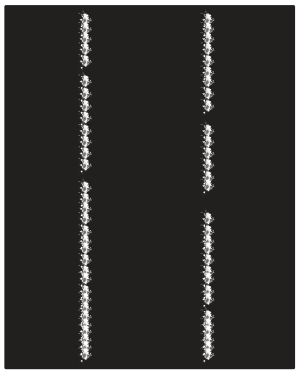
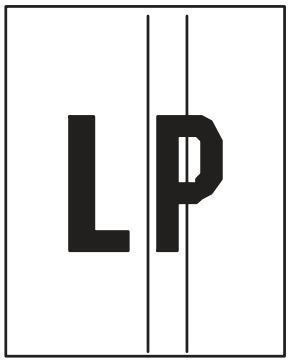
Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	Printed pages have curled edges. The curled edge can be along the short or long side of the paper. Two types of curl are possible: • **Positive curl:** The paper curls toward the printed side. The defect occurs in dry environments or when printing high-coverage pages. • **Negative curl:** The paper curls away from the printed side. The defect occurs in high-humidity environments or when printing low-coverage pages.	1. Reprint the document. 2. **Positive curl**: From the printer control panel, select a heavier paper type. The heavier paper type creates a higher temperature for printing. **Negative curl**: From the printer control panel, select a lighter paper type. The lighter paper type creates a lower temperature for printing. Try storing the paper in a dry environment prior to use, or use freshly opened paper. 3. Print in duplex mode. 4. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.
	The paper does not stack well in the output tray. The stack might be uneven, skewed, or the pages might be pushed out of the tray and onto the floor. Any of the following conditions can cause this defect: • Extreme paper curl • The paper in the tray is wrinkled or deformed • The paper is a non-standard paper type, such as envelopes • The output tray is too full	1. Reprint the document. 2. Extend the output bin extension. 3. If the defect is caused by extreme paper curl, refer to the troubleshooting steps for "Output curl." 4. Use a different paper type. 5. Use freshly opened paper. 6. Remove the paper from the output tray before the tray gets too full. 7. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Table 3-41 Streak defects

Sample	Description	Possible solutions
	Light vertical streaks that usually span the length of the page. The defect displays only in areas of fill, not in text or sections with no printed content.	1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see *Replace the toner cartridges*. 3. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com. NOTE: Both light and dark vertical streaks can occur when the printing environment is outside the specified range for temperature or humidity. Refer to your printer's environmental specifications for allowable temperature and humidity levels.
	Dark vertical lines which occur down the length of the page. The defect might occur anywhere on the page, in areas of fill or in sections with no printed content. On color models, these lines or streaks will also be visible on the ITB cleaning page.	1. Reprint the document. 2. Remove the cartridge, and then shake it to redistribute the toner. Reinsert the toner cartridges into the printer and close the cover. For a graphical representation of this procedure, see *Replace the toner cartridges*. 3. Print a cleaning page. 4. Check the toner level in the cartridge. 5. If the issue persists, go to support.hp.com.

Copy-quality troubleshooting

Learn about copy-quality troubleshooting.

NOTE: Copy-quality (CQ) problems are associated with the integrated-scanner assembly (ISA) portion of an MFP printer. CQ defects appear on pages that are **copied** using the document feeder or flatbed glass.

Identify the location and type of the CQ problem

Resolving CQ problems involves isolating the defect to the document feeder or flatbed glass. Comparing printed output between the document feeder and the flatbed glass might determine the ISA location that is causing the CQ defect.

NOTE: If a CQ defect appears on printed output from both the document feeder **and** the flatbed glass, carefully inspect the original source for a print-quality (PQ) problem.

Document feeder isolation test

1. Mark a printed page in a way that clearly identifies it as the source document used in this isolation procedure.
2. Place the source page in the document feeder, and then make a copy.
3. Mark the copied output page to clearly identify it as output from the document feeder.
4. Compare the original and copied pages. Defects appearing on the copied page are caused by a problem in the document feeder.

Flatbed isolation test

1. Mark a printed page in a way that clearly identifies it as the source document used in this isolation procedure.
2. Place the source page on the flatbed glass, and then make a copy.
3. Mark the copied output page to clearly identify it as output from the flatbed.
4. Compare the original and copied pages. Defects appearing on the copied page are caused by a problem in the flatbed.

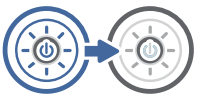
Check the scanner glass for dirt and smudges

Learn about solving copy-quality debris problems.

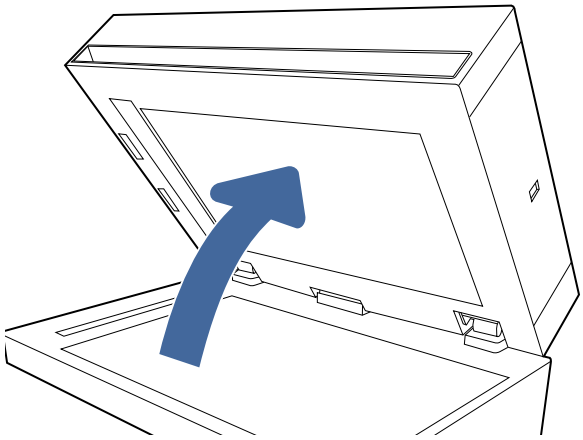
Over time, specks of debris might collect on the scanner glass and document feeder white plastic backing, which might cause print defects. Use the following procedure to clean the scanner if the printed pages have streaks, unwanted lines, black dots, poor print quality, or unclear text.

View a video of cleaning the document feeder glass and flatbed glass.

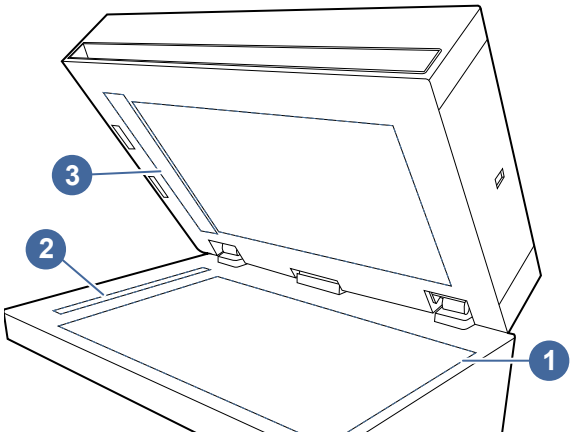
1. Press the power button to turn the printer off, and then disconnect the power cable from the electrical outlet.



2. Open the scanner lid.



3. Clean the scanner glass (callout 1) and the document feeder strips (callout 2, callout 3) with a soft cloth or sponge that has been moistened with nonabrasive glass cleaner.



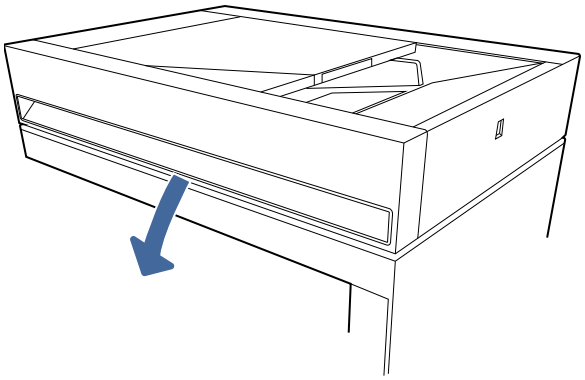
⚠ CAUTION: Do not use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ammonia, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on any part of the printer; these can damage the printer. Do not place liquids directly on the glass or platen. They might seep and damage the printer.

NOTE: If you are having trouble with streaks on copies when you are using the document feeder, be sure to clean the small strips of glass on the left side of the scanner (callout 2, callout 3).

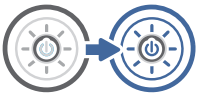
4. Dry the glass and white plastic parts with a chamois or a cellulose sponge to prevent spotting.

5. Close the scanner lid.

Figure 3-120 **Close the scanner lid**



6. Connect the power cable to an outlet, and then press the power button to turn the printer on.



Vertical lines, bands, or streaks

Learn about vertical lines, bands, or streaks copy-quality problems.

Vertical lines or streaks appear on copies and/or scans in the same direction that the paper feeds when copying and/or scanning from the document feeder. Lines or streaks might be visible on the front and/or

the back side of the page. Copies and/or scans from the flatbed glass look normal. Printouts also look normal.

The line or streak might be black or in color, and can also be present on fax or digital send output (for example, when using Scan to folder or Scan to email features.

NOTE: HP has determined that **99%** of all lines and streaks on copies made by feeding the original documents through the document feeder are caused by **debris on the document feeder glass strip**. Even small specks can cause the light reflected off the original to be distorted, resulting in a line, streak, or smudge on copies or scans made from the document feeder.

Even if the document feeder glass strip and/or flatbed glass has been wiped clean, the defect might persist. Persistent vertical lines, bands, or streaks when copying from the document feeder might mean that the debris causing the print quality are not readily visible and cannot be removed with a quick cleaning.

Use the procedures below to resolve persistent lines, bands, or streak copy-quality (CQ) problems.

Locate debris and thoroughly clean the document feeder glass

1. Place a blank sheet of paper in the document feeder and mark an **X** in the lower right corner as shown.

   Figure 3-121 **Load the document feeder**

2. Press the Start button to make a copy of the blank page.
3. Place the copied paper face-up on the flatbed glass with the **X** located as shown.

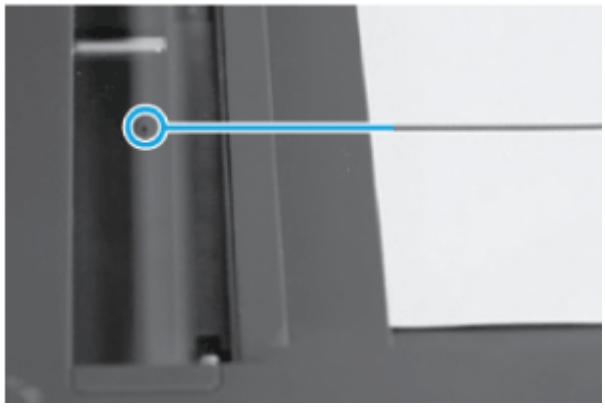
NOTE: Make sure the upper left corner of the copy is aligned with the upper left corner of the flatbed glass.

Figure 3-122 Place the copy on the flatbed



4. Follow the line or streak on the paper to the area on the document feeder glass that is causing the CQ problem.

Figure 3-123 Identify the CQ defect location



5. Use a fingernail to loosen any stubborn debris.

⚠ WARNING! Use only a fingernail. Other objects can scratch the document feeder glass.

Clean this specific area again (with a lint-free cloth dampened with water), and then dry the glass with a soft, lint-free cloth.

Figure 3-124 Clean the glass



6. Make another copy or scan to determine if the defect is gone.

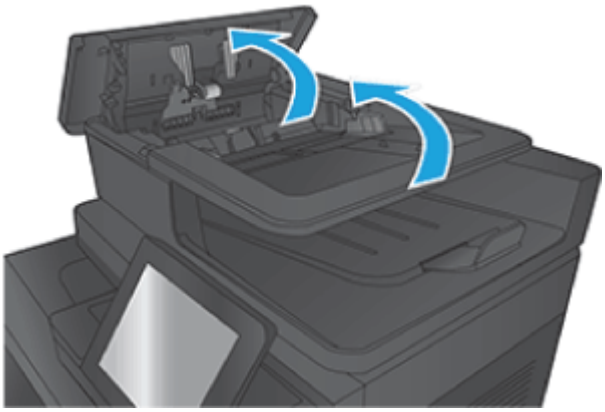
Clean the duplexer scanner glass (model specific)

NOTE: Not all MFP printers use a background selector for duplex printing.

If a *Side 2 Background Selector* cannot be located for the printer (it might not include one) skip this procedure.

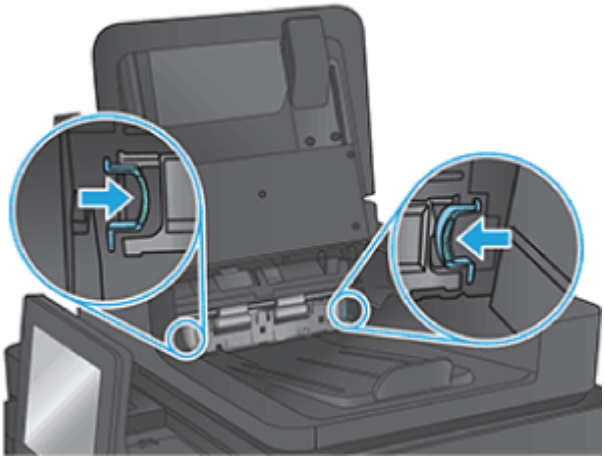
1. Release the latch and open the document feeder jam-access door.

   Figure 3-125 Open the jam-access door

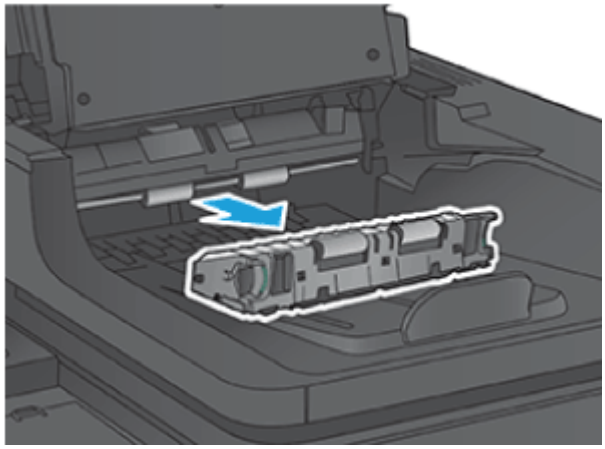
2. Unlock the Side 2 Background Selector by pressing and holding both green tabs inward towards each other.

   Figure 3-126 Release the Side 2 Background Selector

3. While holding the green tabs, pull out and remove the Side 2 Background Selector.

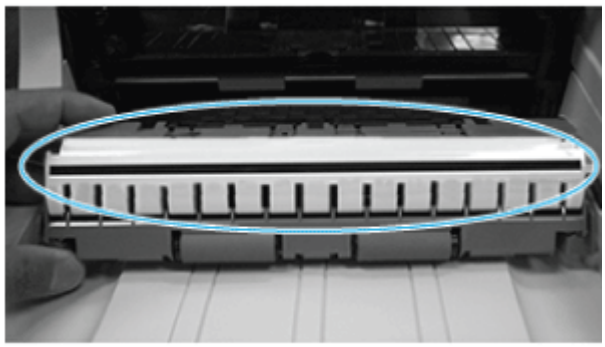
Figure 3-127 Remove the Side 2 Background Selector



4. Rotate the top to reveal the white and black backside reflector (circled in blue).

NOTE: If the white and black areas do not come clean, wipe the surface thoroughly with a damp cloth again. Dry the area with a soft, dry cloth to prevent spotting.

Figure 3-128 Locate the backside reflector



5. With the background selector removed from the document feeder, clean the inside of the scan module.

6. In the back area from where the background selector was removed, locate the Side 2 Scan Module glass found under the top area.

NOTE: The glass surface of the Side 2 Scan module sits horizontally flat and might not be easily viewable.

7. Use a soft, lint-free cloth moistened with water and apply pressure upwards behind the rollers to clean the Side 2 Scan Module Glass, making sure to that the entire width of the glass is cleaned from left to right.

NOTE: If needed, lens cleaner or non-abrasive glass cleaner can be applied to the cloth before cleaning the glass. Spray only onto the cloth and not directly onto the glass or device. Do not spray water or glass cleaner on the glass as it can seep under it and possibly damage the printer. Do not

use abrasives, acetone, benzene, ethyl alcohol, or carbon tetrachloride on the glass; these can damage it and/or leave residue on the glass resulting in degraded copy/scan quality.

8. Reverse the removal steps to reinstall the Side 2 Background Selector.
9. Make another copy or scan to determine if the defect is gone.

Modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality

Learn about printer settings to improve scan or copy quality.

Optimize printer settings to potentially improve scan or copy quality.

IMPORTANT: The printer settings described in this section are firmware dependent and might not be available for a specific printer (for example, color adjustment settings do not apply to mono printers).

Image Adjustment settings

NOTE: Settings > Print (SFP) or Copy/Print (MFP) > Image Adjustment > Background Cleanup.

Use the sliders to perform a Background Cleanup, adjust the image Darkness as well as changing the Sharpness and Contrast.

Use this feature to improve the overall quality of the copy (for example, adjusting the Darkness and Sharpness. Use the Background Cleanup setting to remove faint images from the background or to remove a light background color.

- Darkness: Adjust this setting to increase or decrease the amount of white and black in the colors.
- Contrast: Adjust this setting to increase or decrease the difference between the lightest and darkest color on the page.
- Background Cleanup: Adjust this setting if copying a faint image is a problem.
- Sharpness: Adjust this setting to clarify or soften the image. Increasing the sharpness might make text appear crisper, but decreasing it would make photographs appear smoother.

Optimize Text/Picture settings

NOTE: Settings > Scan/Digital Send Settings > Optimize Text/Picture.

Use to optimize the output for a particular type of content. You can optimize the output for text, printed pictures, or a mixture.

Use this setting to optimize the output for a particular type of content.

- Mixed: Use to optimize the setting for text and for pictures.
- Text: Use to optimize the text portion of the copy when text and/or pictures are on the original.
- Printed picture: Use to optimize line drawing and preprinted images such as magazine clippings or pages from a book. If you see bands of irregular intensity on copies, try selecting Printed picture to improve quality.
- Photographs: Use to optimize photographic prints.

Color/Black settings

NOTE: Settings > Scan/Digital Send Settings > Color/Black.

Use to enable or disable color scanning.(some highlighters will not auto detect as color).

- Automatically detect color or black: When pages without color are detected, the printer creates an image of the page in 1-bit black if other settings allow. If the other settings don't allow (File Type, for example), the image is in grayscale.
- Automatically detect color or gray: When pages without color are detected, the printer creates an image of the page in grayscale. Select this option for the best image quality for non-color pages.
- Color: Scans the documents in color.
- Black: Scans documents in black and white with a compressed file size.
- Black/Gray: Scans or prints documents in grayscale.

Light or faint copies (color models)

Learn how to resolve light or faint copy-quality problems.

Are you attempting to copy or scan highlighted text?

NOTE: When digitally sending or copying highlighted images or text objects, the image might appear lighter than expected or does not show up at all with certain brands/types of highlighter pens.

Highlighters come in bright, often fluorescent colors. Fluorescent highlighter inks tend to reflect more light than that which is absorbed by the paper source. This reflection might cause the image to not show up as well as non-fluorescent colors depending upon the scanner/MFP being used.

The most common color for highlighters is yellow, but many other colors are also found such as pink, blue, green, orange, and purples. Yellow is often the preferred color to use when making a photocopy as it tends to not produce as much of a shadow on copies or scans.

There are different color and ink properties depending upon the brand of highlighters used. Due to these differences, scanning of the images might vary greatly from not being seen at all to changing colors (for example, orange highlighter might appear brown in the copy or scan or yellow highlighter might appear green).

Automatic color detect

HP has a feature in all FutureSmart (LaserJet Enterprise Series only) printers which automatically detects color on each page. Depending upon the amount of color information on a page, the scanner might determine the page to be black and white due to a very, very small amount of color which might be considered background artifacts. This helps to reduce the file size of sent files as well as toner usage on a copied page. You might see small highlighted marks on pages print out in black and white or even disappear.

The black and white effect is due to the printer not seeing enough color on the page, in which case the whole image is rendered as a black and white page. The highlighted mark disappearing might be due to the marker characteristics not being detected by the scanner.

Does the printer have the latest firmware version installed?

No or I don't know.

A Firmware enhancement has been introduced for certain LaserJets to help with the reproduction of highlighted images.

NOTE: Some Multifunction Printers (MFPs) using FutureSmart firmware v3.5.3 or later have improved color reproduction of fluorescent highlighters when scanning or copying.

Use the following steps to identify the installed firmware version, and then upgrade the firmware if needed.

1. Print a configuration page (from the printer control panel).
2. On the printed configuration page look in the section marked **Device Information**, and then identify the **Firmware Datecode** and **Firmware Revision**.

   This is the current version of firmware installed on this printer.
3. In the US, go to http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP.
   a. Select **Get drivers, Software, and Firmware**, and then select the appropriate product by name.

   NOTE: More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

   b. Select the driver language and operating system.
   c. Locate the firmware download. If the firmware version is more recent than the one shown on the printed configuration page, select **Download**.
4. Outside the U.S., go to www.hp.com/support.
   a. Select your country/region.
   b. Select **Drivers & Downloads**.
   c. Enter the product name in the **Find my product** dialogue box, and then select **Go**.

   TIP: Click on the **How do I find my product name/number?** link to see a short video on identifying the printer name and number.

   d. Select the appropriate product by name.

   NOTE: More than one printer model might be listed. Make sure to select the correct model so that the upgraded firmware supports all of the printer functions.

   e. Select the driver language and operating system.
   f. Locate the firmware download. If the firmware version is more recent than the one shown on the printed configuration page, select **Download**.
5. Perform a firmware upgrade. See the *Firmware upgrades* topic in the product service manual.
6. When the upgrade process is complete, print a configuration page and verify that the upgrade firmware version was installed.

Yes

These procedures help provide settings which affect the way highlighters are scanned or copied. A firmware enhancement is available for certain printers that helps with the reproduction of highlighted images.

- **Enable Firmware Enhancement**

  1. From the Home screen, select the desired scanning application (for example, Copy, E-Mail, Save to Network Folder).
  2. Select More Options > Optimize Text/Picture > Text button (not slider). This enables the improved color reproduction of fluorescent highlighters.

  TIP: Administrators can set Text as the default setting on the device.

- **Alternative Settings**

  See Modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality on page 338 for more information.

Performance and connectivity troubleshooting

Learn about performance and connectivity troubleshooting.

Solve fax or email problems

Learn about solving fax and email problems.

Fax or email troubleshooting information is not provided in this service manual. The most current information is available in WISE. Search using model number then use "fax troubleshooting" as the search term.

For HP Channel partners, open the HP Partner First Portal located at https://partner.hp.com, and then do the following:

1. Select the **Services & Support** tab, and then select **Technical Support**.
2. Select **Technical Documentation**.
3. You will be taken to the WISE portal.

For HP service personnel, go to one of the following Web-based Interactive Search Engines (WISE) sites:

Americas (AMS)

- WISE - English
- WISE - Spanish
- WISE - Portuguese
- WISE - French

Asia Pacific / Japan (APJ)

- WISE - English
- WISE - Japanese
- WISE - Korean

- WISE - Chinese (simplified)
- WISE - Chinese (traditional)
- WISE - Thai

Europe / Middle East / Africa (EMEA)

- WISE - English

Solve performance problems

Review the following information and procedures to solve performance problems.

NOTE: Tray 1 and Tray 2 are optimal for paper pickup when using special paper or media other than 75-80gsm (20lb) plain paper. For Tray 1 and Tray 2 the printer increases the number of attempts to pick up a page, which increases the reliability of successfully picking the page from the tray and decreases the possibility of a mis-pick jam.

HP recommends using Tray 1 or Tray 2 if the printer is experiencing excessive or reoccurring jams from trays other than Tray 1 and Tray 2, or for print jobs that require media other than 75-80gsm (20lb) plain paper.

Factors affecting print performance

Review the following information about factors affecting print performance.

Table 3-42 Solve performance problems

Problem	Cause	Solution
Pages print but are totally blank.	The document might contain blank pages.	Check the original document to see if content is present on all of the pages.
Pages print but are totally blank.	The printer might be malfunctioning.	To check the printer, print a Configuration page.
Pages print but are totally blank.	Make sure that the printer is not feeding multiple pages (especially if very thin paper is used).	Make sure that the paper meets HP specifications for this printer. For a complete list of specific HP-brand paper that this printer supports, go to http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP.
Pages print very slowly. **NOTE:** Some software programs process print jobs slowly.	Heavier paper types can slow the print job.	Print on a different type of paper.
Pages print very slowly. **NOTE:** Some software programs process print jobs slowly.	Complex pages can print slowly.	Proper fusing might require a slower print speed to ensure the best print quality.
Pages print very slowly. **NOTE:** Some software programs process print jobs slowly.	Large batches, narrow paper, and special paper such as gloss, transparency, cardstock, and HP Tough Paper can slow the print job.	Print in smaller batches, on a different type of paper, or on a different size of paper.

Table 3-42 Solve performance problems (continued)

Problem	Cause	Solution
Pages did not print.	The printer might not be pulling paper correctly.	Make sure paper is loaded in the tray correctly.
Pages did not print.	The paper is jamming in the printer.	Clear the jam.
Pages did not print.	The USB cable might be defective or incorrectly connected.	• Disconnect the USB cable at both ends and reconnect it. • Try printing a job that has printed in the past. • Try using a different USB cable.
Pages did not print.	Other devices are running on the host computer.	The printer might not share a USB port. If an external hard drive or network switchbox is connected to the same port as the printer, the other device might be interfering with the printer. To connect and use the printer, disconnect the other device or use two USB ports on the host computer.
Pages did not print.	The print job might not have arrived at the printer.	Check the printer status queue. Also, the Printing message should appear on the control panel display.

Print speeds

Print speed is the number of pages that print in one minute. Print speed depends on different engine-process speeds or operational pauses between printed pages during normal printer operation. Factors that determine the print speed of the printer include the following:

- Page formatting time

  The printer must pause for each page to be formatted before it prints. Complex pages take more time to format, resulting in reduced print speed. However, most jobs print at full engine speed.

- Media size

  Legal-size media reduces print speed because it is longer than the standard Letter- or A4–size media. A reduce print speed is used when printing on narrow media to prevent the edges of the fuser from overheating.

- Media mode

  Some media types require a reduced print speed to achieve maximum print quality on that media. For example, glossy, heavy, and specialty media (for example, envelopes or photos) require a reduced print speed. To maximize the print speed for special media types, make sure that the correct media type in the print driver is selected.

- Printer temperature

  To prevent printer damage, print speed is reduced if the printer reaches a specific internal temperature (thermal slow down). The starting temperature of the printer, ambient environment temperature, and the print job size effect the number of pages that can be printed before the printer reduces the print speed. Thermal slow down reduces print speed by printing four pages and then pausing for an amount of time before printing continues.

- Other print speed reduction factors

  Other factors (especially during large print jobs) that can cause reduced print speeds include:

  – Density control sequence; occurs every 150 pages and takes about 120 seconds

The printer does not print

If the printer does not print at all, try the following solutions.

1. Make sure the printer is turned on and that the control panel indicates it is ready.
   - If the control panel does not indicate the printer is ready, turn the printer off and then on again.
   - If the control panel indicates the printer is ready, try sending the job again.
2. If the control panel indicates the printer has an error, resolve the error and then try sending the job again.
3. Make sure the cables are all connected correctly. If the printer is connected to a network, check the following items:
   - Check the bottom LED next to the network connection on the printer. If the network is active, the light is green.
   - Make sure that a network cable and not a phone cord is used to connect to the network.
   - Make sure the network router, hub, or switch is turned on and that it is working correctly.
4. Install the HP software for the printer. Using generic printer drivers can cause delays clearing jobs from the print queue.
5. From the list of printers on your computer, right-click the name of this product, click **Properties**, and open the **Ports** tab.
   - If a network cable is used to connect to the network, make sure the printer name listed on the **Ports** tab matches the one on the printer configuration page.
   - If a USB cable is used, and the printer is connected to a wireless network, make sure the box is checked next to **Virtual printer port for USB**.
6. If a personal firewall system on the computer is used, it might be blocking communication with the printer. Try temporarily disabling the firewall to see if it is the source of the problem.
7. If the host computer or the printer is connected to a wireless network, low signal quality or interference might be delaying print jobs.

The printer prints slowly

If the printer prints, but it seems slow, try the following solutions.

1. Make sure the computer meets the minimum specifications for this printer. For a list of specifications, go to this Web site: http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5700 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX557 or http://www.hp.com/support/colorlj5800MFP or http://www.hp.com/support/colorljX57945MFP.
2. When the printer is configured to print on some paper types, such as heavy paper, the printer prints more slowly so it can correctly fuse the toner to the paper. If the paper type setting is not correct for the type of paper you are using, change the setting to the correct paper type.

3. If the host computer or the printer is connected to a wireless network, low signal quality or interference might be delaying print jobs.

Solve connectivity problems

Review the following information and procedures to solve connectivity problems.

Solve USB connection problems

If you have connected the product directly to a computer, check the cable.

- Verify that the cable is connected to the computer and to the product.
- Verify that the cable is not longer than 2 m (6.65 ft). Try using a shorter cable.
- Verify that the cable is working correctly by connecting it to another product. Replace the cable if necessary.

Solve wired network problems

Review the following information and procedures to solve wired network problems.

Introduction

Learn about solving wired network problems.

Certain types of problems can indicate there is a network communication problem. These problems include the following issues:

- The periodic loss of ability to communicate with the printer
- The printer cannot be found during driver installation
- A periodic failure to print

Check the items in this topic to verify that the printer is communicating with the network. Before beginning, print a configuration page from the printer control panel and locate the printer IP address that is listed on this page.

Poor physical connection

Use the following procedure when the printer has a poor physical connection.

1. Verify that the printer is attached to the correct network port using a cable of the correct length.
2. Verify that cable connections are secure.
3. Look at the network port connection on the back of the printer, and verify that the amber activity light and the green link-status light are lit.
4. If the problem continues, try a different cable or port on the hub.

The computer is using the incorrect IP address for the printer

Use the following procedure when the computer is using the incorrect IP address for the printer.

1. Open the printer properties and click the **Ports** tab. Verify that the current IP address for the printer is selected. The printer IP address is listed on the printer configuration page.
2. If you installed the printer using the HP standard TCP/IP port, select the box labeled **Always print to this printer, even if its IP address changes**.

3. If you installed the printer using a Microsoft standard TCP/IP port, use the hostname instead of the IP address.
4. If the IP address is correct, delete the printer and then add it again.

The computer is unable to communicate with the printer

Use the following procedure when the computer is unable to communicate with the printer.

1. Test network communication by pinging the network.
   a. Open a command-line prompt on your computer.
      - For Windows, click **Start**, click **Run**, type `cmd`, and then press Enter.
      - For macOS, go to **Applications**, then **Utilities**, and open **Terminal**.
   b. Type `ping` followed by the IP address for your printer.
   c. If the window displays round-trip times, the network is working.
2. If the ping command failed, verify that the network hubs are on, and then verify that the network settings, the printer, and the computer are all configured for the same network.

The printer is using incorrect link and duplex settings for the network

HP recommends leaving these settings in automatic mode (the default setting). If you change these settings, you must also change them for your network.

New software programs might be causing compatibility problems

Verify that any new software programs are correctly installed and that they use the correct print driver.

The computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly

Use the following procedure when the computer or workstation might be set up incorrectly.

1. Check the network drivers, print drivers, and the network redirection settings.
2. Verify that the operating system is configured correctly.

The printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect

Use the following procedure when the printer is disabled, or other network settings are incorrect.

1. Review the configuration page to check the status of the network protocol. Enable it if necessary.
2. Reconfigure the network settings if necessary.

4 Removal and replacement

When servicing the printer, several items must be considered to ensure a successful repair and to avoid damage to the printer or personal injury. Learn about these considerations and find detailed instructions for removing and replacing printer parts.

Safety precautions

Follow these safety protocols when handling or repairing the printer.

Product safety classification: This is a Safety Class I product, which means it has a protective earth terminal. This terminal must be connected to earth ground.

IMPORTANT: Before operation or repair, check the product and review this manual for safety warnings and instructions. Safety warnings for specific procedures are located at appropriate places in the manual.

WARNING: Hazardous voltages exist within the product.

NOTE: HP recommends that only qualified personnel trained in working with high voltage power equipment should service this unit.

Follow these precautions always:

NOTE: If you do not want to disassemble and repair the printer yourself, contact your local HP Service Representative for service, see Contact HP Support on page viii section.

Warnings and Cautions

To ensure the proper use of the printer and to prevent the printer from being damaged, follow the warning and caution symbols marked in this guide. See Conventions used in this guide on page iii.

Electrical precautions

- **Power cord instructions**
  - Make sure your power source is adequate for the product voltage rating. The voltage rating is on the product label.

    Typically, the product uses either 110-127 Vac or 220-240 Vac and 50/60 Hz. Depending on a product, the voltage usage might change (100-127 Vac, for example). It is recommended to refer your product manual for the specified voltage.
  - Connect the power cord between the product and a grounded AC outlet.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to the product, use only the power cord that is provided with the product.

Do not damage, cut, or repair the power cord. A damaged power cord can cause fire or electric shock. Replace a damaged power cord with an HP-approved power cord.

- Unplug the power cord when disassembling or assembling the printer.

  The printer utilizes a power switch (button) that is turned "ON" or "OFF". Be aware that electricity may flow on the primary side of the printer even when the printer is "OFF".

- Power off the printer and unplug the power cord and fax cord (if available) from the electrical outlet in any of the following cases:
  - When removing product enclosure or covers from the printer or when accessing internal parts of a printer.
  - If there is smoke or an unusual smell coming from the printer.
  - A piece of metal or a liquid (not part of cleaning and maintenance routines) touches internal parts of the printer.
  - During an electrical storm (with thunder and/or lightning).
  - During an electrical power failure.

Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) precautions

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can damage electronic components inside your printer.

Use these guidelines to protect sensitive parts against damage from electrostatic discharge.

- Touch a metal object that is not painted and is grounded.
- Leave electronic parts such as a memory chip in the bag it was shipped in until you are ready to perform the installation.
- ESD wrist straps can also be used to help release excess electrostatic charge.

  - **CAUTION:** 

    Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Look for the ESD reminder when removing printer parts.

    Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly.

  - Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

Handling toner

HP recommends that you wear gloves when handling toner cartridges and toner system components.

Do not expose toner or toner cartridge to fire or any heat source.

Keep imaging unit and/or toner cartridge away from children. The toner powder contained in the imaging unit and toner cartridge may be harmful, and if swallowed, you should contact a doctor.

Lifting equipment

Follow the recommendations for lifting or moving your printer.

The printed inbox guides and support documentation available on support.hp.com for your printer model will provide the lifting requirements to avoid injury and to safely move the printer.

NOTE: Do not attempt to lift heavy equipment without assistance.

Safety measures during disassembling or reassembling

IMPORTANT: Before disassembling or reassembling a printer, be sure to unplug its power cord from the electrical outlet.

NOTE: Assembly is the reverse of disassembly unless otherwise specified.

- During disassembly, reassembly, or transportation of a printer, remove the toner cartridge as necessary.
- Only fuses with the required rated current, voltage, and specified type (normal blow, time delay, etc.) should be used.

  Do not use repaired fuses or short-circuited fuse holders. Doing so, could cause a shock or fire hazard.
- Capacitors inside this product may hold a hazardous charge even if the product has been disconnected from its power source.
- Do not disable safety functions (Interlocks or safety circuits). Safety will not be assured leading to a safety hazard and potential injury.
- Note the length, diameters, and locations of screws as you remove them. When reassembling the printer, be sure to use them in their original locations.
- As a best practice safety rule, do not run the printer with any parts removed.

Ingestion hazards

This product may contain a button cell or coin battery that is not intended to be replaced.

- A swallowed button cell or coin battery can cause internal chemical burns in as little as two (2) hours.

  Death or serious injury can occur if ingested.
- Keep new and used batteries out of reach of children. Used batteries may cause severe injury or death.

  Seek immediate medical attention if a battery is suspected to be swallowed or inserted inside any part of the body. Call a local poison control center for treatment information.
- Remove and immediately recycle or dispose of used batteries according to local regulations and keep away from children. Do not dispose of batteries in household trash or incinerate.

Laser radiation hazards

The printer is certified as a Class 1 laser product.

WARNING: Using controls, adjusting or performing procedures other than those specified in the user guide could result in exposure to hazardous radiation. Do not disassemble the laser/scanner unit as the laser beam can injure your eyes. An invisible laser beam is emitted within the laser/scanner unit.

Mechanical hazards

The printer has moving parts that could cause injury. To avoid personal injury, take the following precautions when working close to the printer.

- Keep your clothes and body away from the printer's moving parts.
  - Avoid wearing dangling jewelry or other hanging objects around the printer as it might be caught by moving parts and lead to injury.
  - Keep long hair tied up and away from the paper feed mechanism.
  - Ensure the sleeves or gloves do not get caught in the printer's moving parts.
- Avoid standing close to the fans as it could cause injury and could also affect print quality (by obstructing the air flow).
- Do not touch gears or moving rolls during printing.
- Do not operate the printer when having enclosure covers removed or interlock switches bypassed.
- The product may have internal sharp edges.

  Make sure the wiring does not come into contact with sharp edges, burrs, or other pointed parts. Current can leak, leading to a risk of electrical shock or fire hazard.
- During and after repair, check internal electrical wiring for squeezing, sheaths and any damage.
- – Make sure that all screws, components, wiring, connectors and so forth that were removed, have been reinstalled in the original location.
  - Do not allow any metal parts such as clips, staples and screws to fall into the printer. This could potentially short internal circuits and cause an electrical shock hazard.
  - Do not allow liquids (except those used in HP cleaning kits) to touch the internal parts of the printer. Doing so may cause fire, electric shock, or other serious hazards.

Thermal hazards

Caution: Inspection before repair for fuser

The area around the fuser unit may be hot. Wait for a few minutes until the fuser assembly cools down.

Contact HP Support

HP offers phone support to assist you for printer issues. Ensure to read the following information before contacting HP Support.

Before contacting HP Support

Before contacting support, consider checking the resources available on HP Customer Support.

1. Go to HP Customer Support (https://support.hp.com) to locate your product support page.
2. Review the documents for troubleshooting before contacting HP.

Information required when contacting HP Support

If you call an HP support representative for assistance, ensure you have the following information for HP support to answer your questions quickly:

- **Product model**: Note the printer model, product number, and serial number you are using. The product number and the serial number are typically found on the label at the back of the product.
- **Error code**: If there is an error code or message displaying on the printer control panel, note the error code and message.
- **Computer (operating system)**: Provide the name of the computer/computer operating system you are using.
- Any **special equipment or software** you are using (for example, spoolers, networks, switch-boxes, modems or special software drivers).
  - The type of interface used on your product (USB or network).
  - The software and driver name and firmware version number that you are currently using.
- **Printer service information**: You can obtain the printer service information from the Embedded Web Server (EWS). If you need to send this information by email, download it as a file from your browser, and send the file.

NOTE: Depending on your printer firmware version, the menu items in the EWS might vary.

1. Open a Web browser on your computer, and then enter the IP address of your printer to access the Embedded Web Server.
2. Click **Support** > **Service support** > **Service information** > **Display**.

Phone support

HP phone support is available on the HP support website. For assistance, go to one of the following websites:

- https://support.hp.com/contact or
- https://support.hp.com/contact/help/printer or
- https://www.hp.com/us-en/contact-hp/contact.html.

Customer self-repair (CSR) A parts and accessories

Customer self-repair (CSR) A parts are parts that a customer replaces without assistance from a field technician. These parts can be replaced without the use of any tools.

Customer-replaceable units

Learn about customer-replaceable parts removal and replacement.

Internal parts and assemblies

Learn how to remove and replace the printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges (5700/X557/5800 models)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner cartridges.

View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridges.

Before performing service

CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-1 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
W2130A	6QN29-67013	HP 213A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge
W2130X	6QN29-67014	HP 2130X High Yield Black Toner Cartridge
W2130Y	6QN29-67016	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Black Toner Cartridge
W2131A	6QN29-67017	HP 213A Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge
W2131X	6QN29-67018	HP 2131X High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge
W2131X	6QN29-67019	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge
W2132A	6QN29-67021	HP 213A Yellow Original LaserJet Toner
W2132X	6QN29-67022	HP 2132X High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge
W2132Y	6QN29-67023	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge
W2133A	6QN29-67025	HP 213A Magenta LaserJet Toner Cartridge
W2133X	6QN29-67026	HP 2133X High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge
W2133Y	6QN29-67027	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Make sure that the cartridge door is fully closed after replacing a toner cartridge.

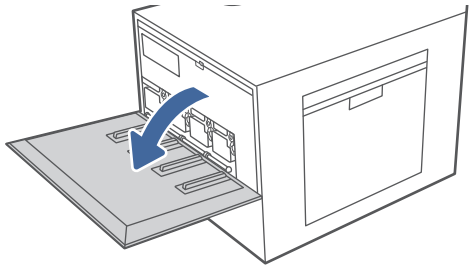
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

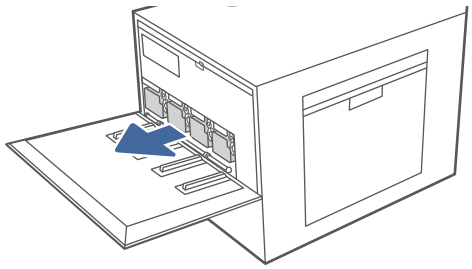
1. Remove the toner cartridges (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove a toner cartridge.

1. . Open the front door.



2. . Grasp the end of the toner cartridge and pull it straight out of the printer.



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

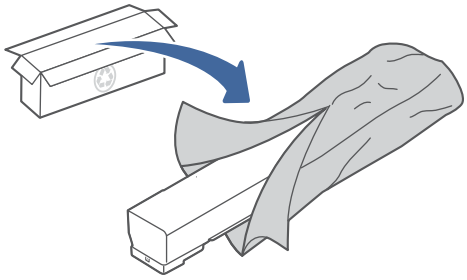
2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

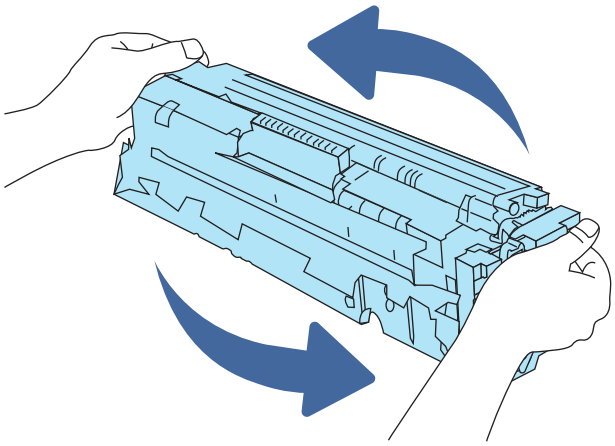
3. Install the toner cartridges (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to install a toner cartridge.

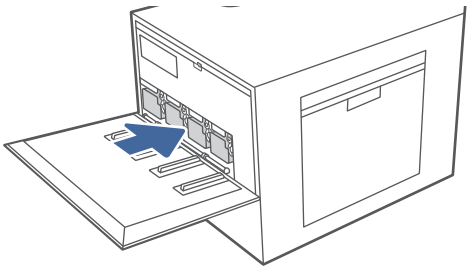
1. Remove the new toner cartridge from its package. Save all packaging for recycling the used toner cartridge.



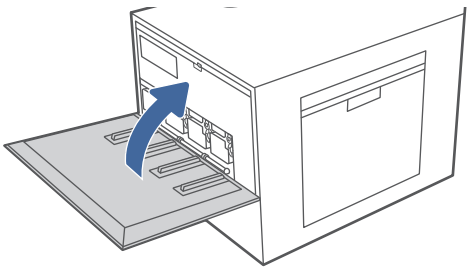
2. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it back and forth end to end to evenly distribute the toner that is inside.



3. Align the toner cartridge with its slot and insert it into the printer.



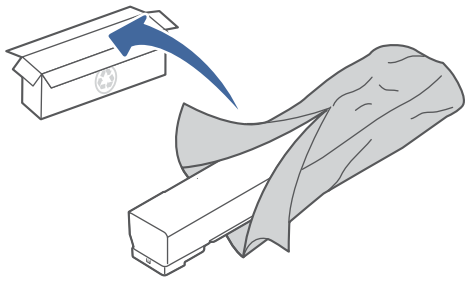
4. Close the front door.



5. . Pack the used toner cartridge into the box that the new toner cartridge came in. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

   In the U.S. and Canada, a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

   Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used cartridge to HP for recycling.



Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges (X57945 models)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the toner cartridges.

View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridges.

Before performing service

⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-2 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
W9240MC	6QN29-67029	HP W9240MC Black Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (SFP)
W9241MC	6QN29-67030	HP W9241MC Cyan Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (SFP)
W9242MC	6QN29-67031	HP W9242MC Yellow Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (SFP)
W9243MC	6QN29-67032	HP W9243MC Magenta Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (SFP)
W9250MC	6QN29-67033	HP W9250MC Black Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)
W9251MC	6QN29-67034	HP W9251MC Cyan Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)
W9252MC	6QN29-67035	HP W9252MC Yellow Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)
W9253MC	6QN29-67036	HP W9253MC Magenta Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Make sure that the cartridge door is fully closed after replacing a toner cartridge.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Eject the toner cartridges (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to eject a toner cartridge.

NOTE: Two methods are available to eject a toner cartridge using the control panel.

- Eject a toner cartridge with the printer in the Ready state.

  See Eject a toner cartridge using the control panel (Ready state) on page 356.

- Eject a toner cartridge with the printer in a cartridge low or very low error state.

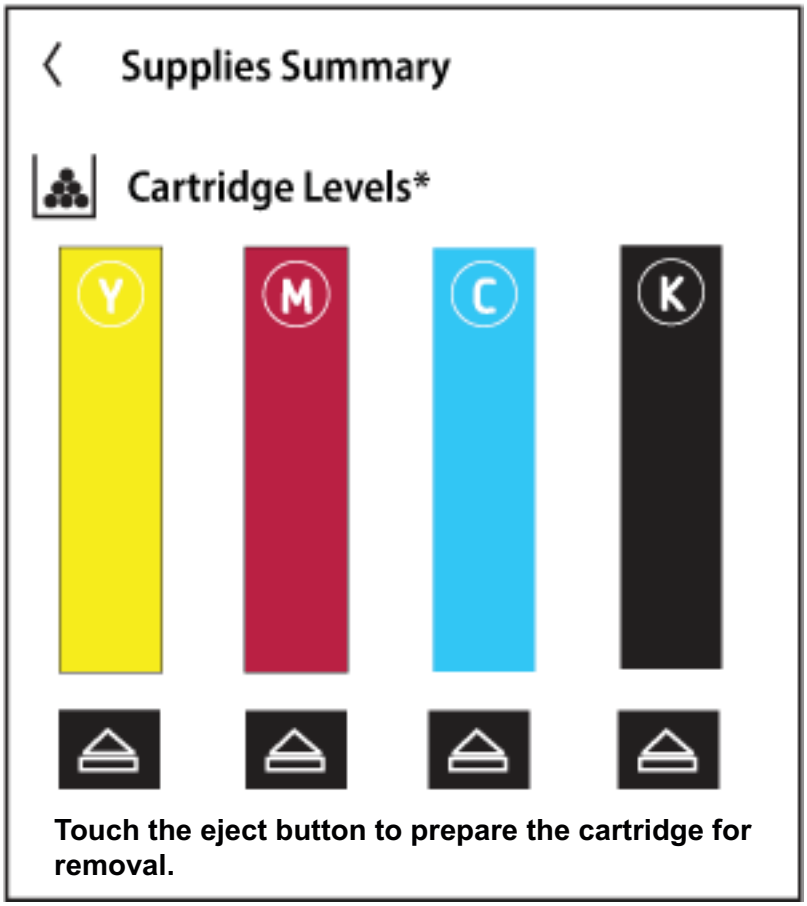
  See Eject a toner cartridge using the control panel (error condition) on page 357.

Eject a toner cartridge using the control panel (Ready state)

Use the following steps to eject a toner cartridge when the printer is in the Ready state.

1. From the control panel Home screen, scroll to and select the Supplies button.
2. Select the Eject button (located below the Cartridge Levels indicators.

Figure 4-1 Eject the toner cartridge (Ready state)



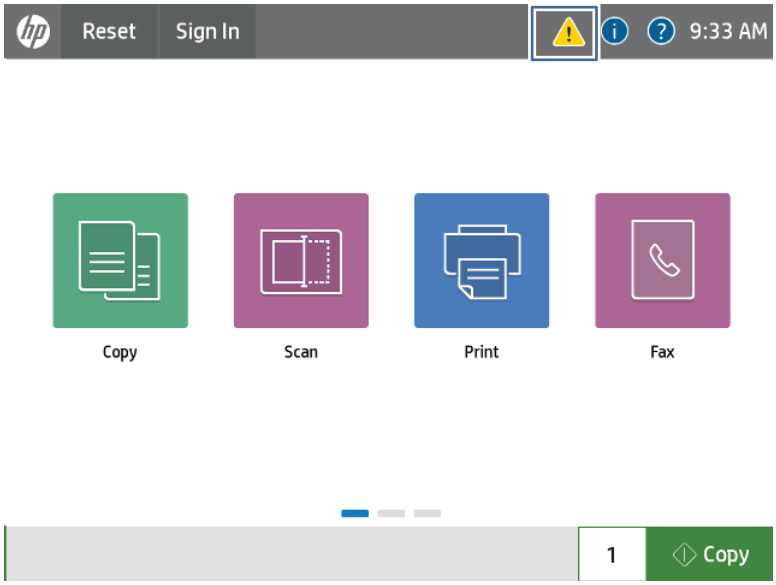
3. A prompt appears on the control-panel display to open the toner cartridge door.

Eject a toner cartridge using the control panel (error condition)

Use the following steps to eject a toner cartridge when the printer is in a cartridge low or very low error state.

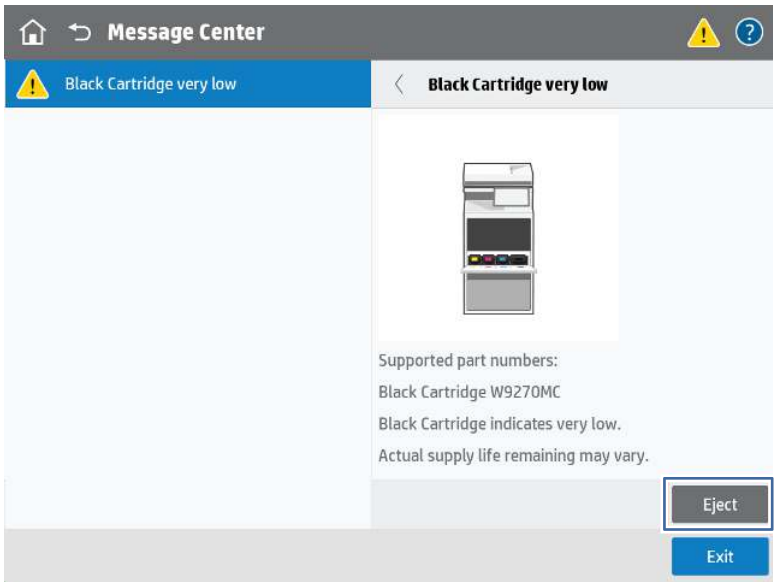
1. On the control panel Home screen, Touch the error icon at the top of the display.

Figure 4-2 Eject the toner cartridge (error state) (1 of 2)



2. Touch the Eject button at the bottom of the display.

Figure 4-3 Eject the toner cartridge (error state) (2 of 2)



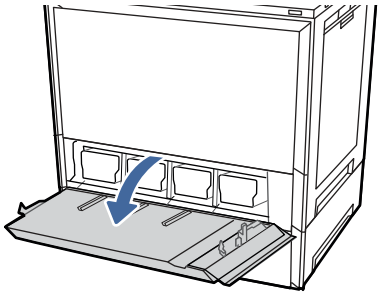
3. A prompt appears on the control-panel display to open the toner cartridge door.

2. Remove the toner cartridges (X579 models)

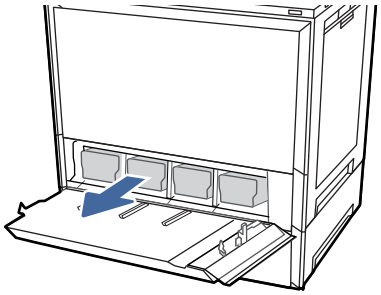
Follow these steps to remove a toner cartridge.

NOTE: The toner cartridges must be released before removing them. See Eject the toner cartridges (X57945 models) on page 356.

1. . Open the toner cartridge door on the front of the printer.



2. . Grasp the end of the toner cartridge and pull it straight out of the printer.



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

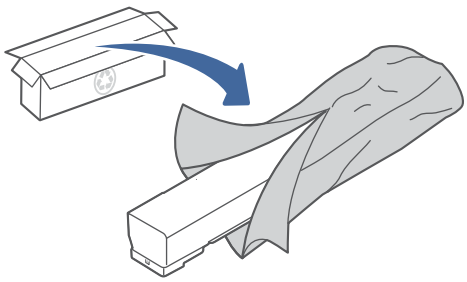
2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

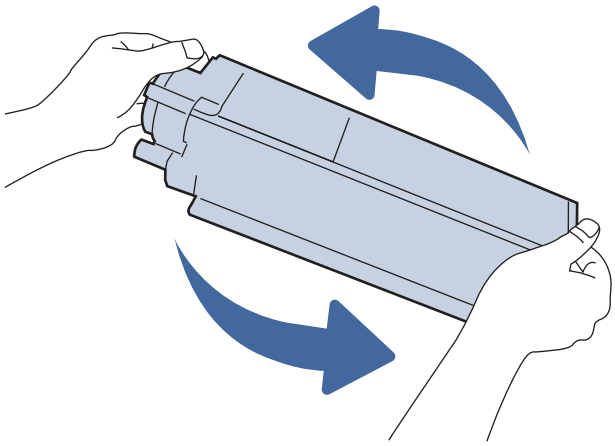
4. Install the toner cartridges (X579 models)

Follow these steps to install a toner cartridge.

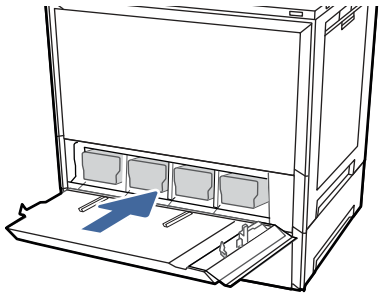
1. . Remove the new toner cartridge from its package. Save all packaging for recycling the used toner cartridge.



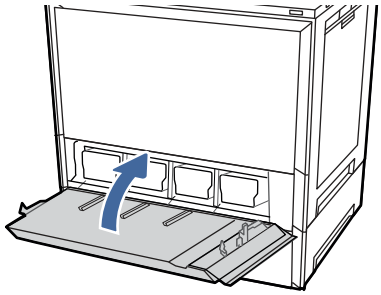
2. Hold both ends of the toner cartridge and rock it to evenly distribute the toner that is inside.



3. Align the toner cartridge with its slot and insert it into the printer.



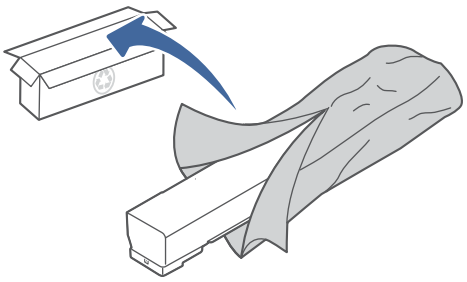
4. Close the toner cartridge door.



5. Pack the used toner cartridge into the box that the new toner cartridge came in. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

   In the U.S. and Canada, a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

   Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used cartridge to HP for recycling.



Removal and replacement: Imaging drums (X57945 models)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the imaging drums.

View a video of removing and replacing the image drums.

Before performing service

⚠ **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to an imaging drum, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if it must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-3 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
W9280MC	6QN35-67027	HP W9280MC Black Mngd Imaging Drum
W9281MC	6QN35-67028	HP W9281MC Cyan Mngd Imaging Drum
W9282MC	6QN35-67029	HP W9282MC Yellow Mngd Imaging Drum
W9283MC	6QN35-67030	HP W9283MC Magenta Mngd Imaging Drum

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

- Make sure that the front door is fully closed after replacing an image drum.

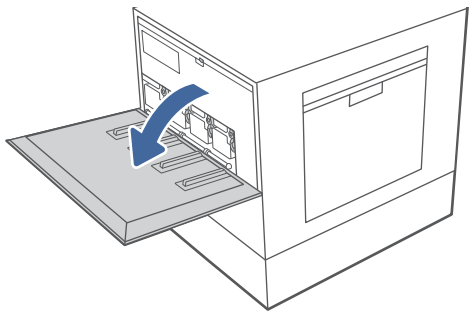
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the imaging drums (X579 models)

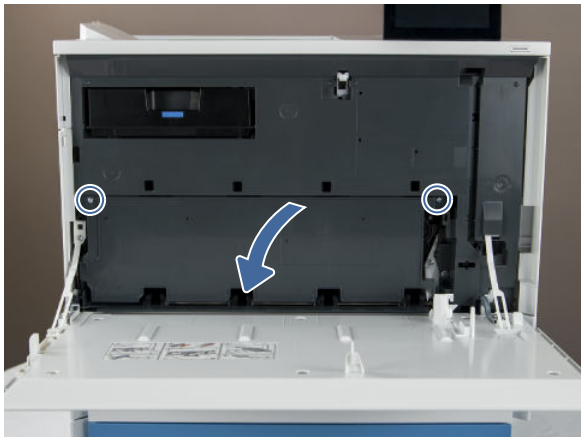
Follow these steps to remove an imaging drum.

1. . Open the front door.

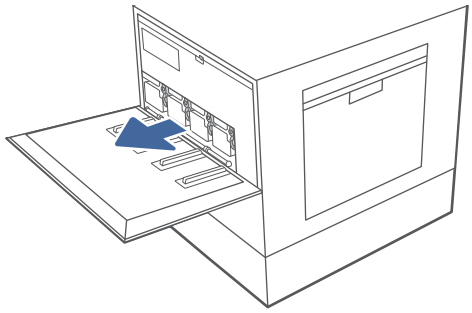


NOTE: If necessary, remove two screws holding the imaging drum access cover in place, and then lower the cover to access the imaging drums. See the figure below.

Figure 4-4 Remove two screws, open the cover



2. . Grasp the end of the imaging drum cartridge and pull it straight out of the printer.



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

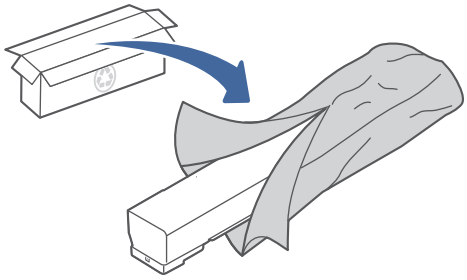
2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. Install the imaging drums (X579 models)

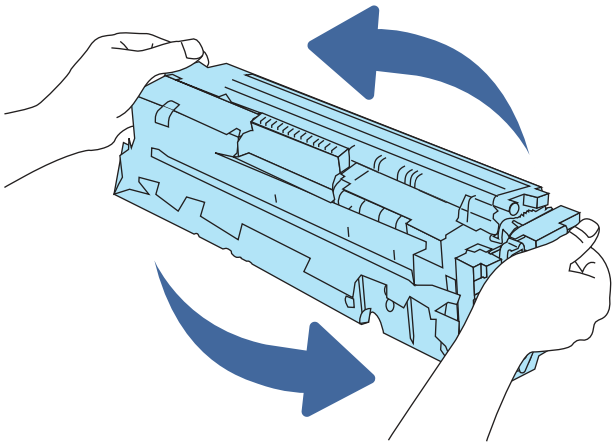
Follow these steps to install an imaging drum.

1. . Remove the new imaging drum cartridge from its package. Save all packaging for recycling the used imaging drum.

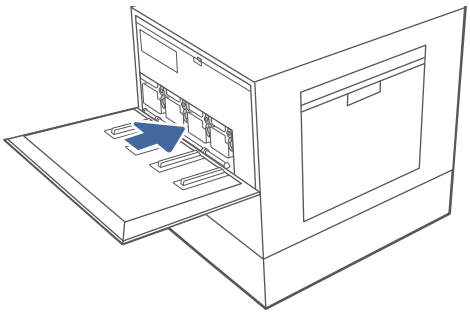


⚠ CAUTION: To prevent damage to the imaging drum, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the blue imaging drum if the imaging drum cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time. Do not touch the blue imaging drum.

2. . Hold both ends of the imaging drum cartridge and rock it back and forth end to end to evenly distribute the toner that is inside.

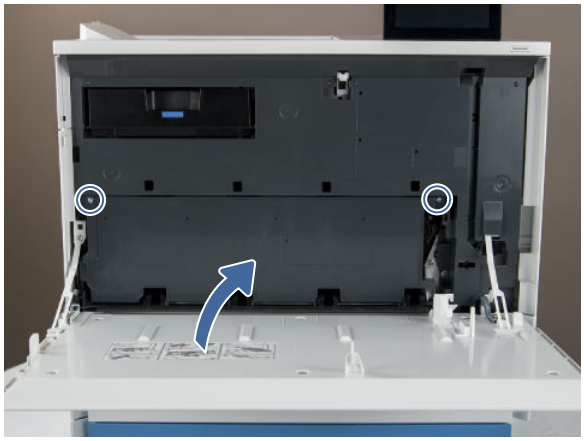


3. . Align the imaging drum cartridge with its slot and insert it into the printer.

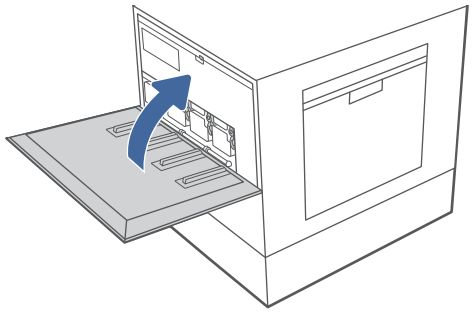


NOTE: If necessary, close the imaging drum access cover, and then install the two screws to secure the cover. See the figure below.

Figure 4-5 Close the cover, install two screws



4. . Close the front door.

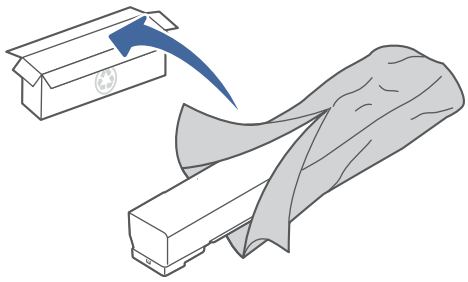


NOTE: If necessary, close the access cover and replace the two screws before closing the front door.

5. . Pack the used imaging drum into the box that the new imaging drum came in. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

   In the U.S. and Canada, a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

   Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used imaging drum to HP for recycling.



Removal and replacement: Toner collection unit (TCU)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner collection unit (TCU).

View a video of removing and replacing the TCU.

Before performing service

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-4 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527F9A	6QN29-67007	HP LaserJet Toner collection unit (TCU)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Make sure that the front door is fully closed after replacing the TCU.

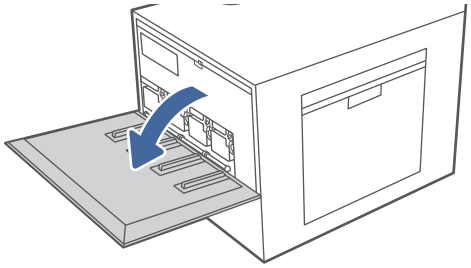
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

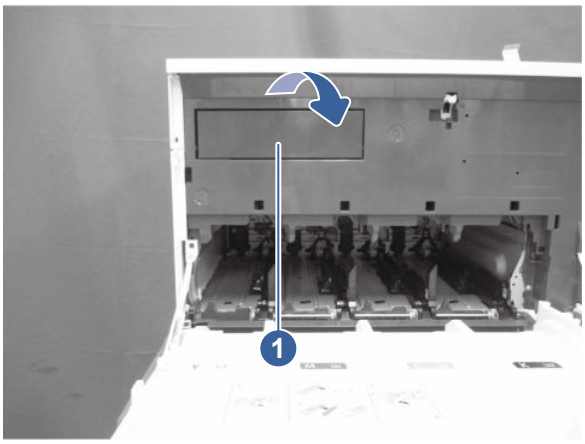
Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front door.

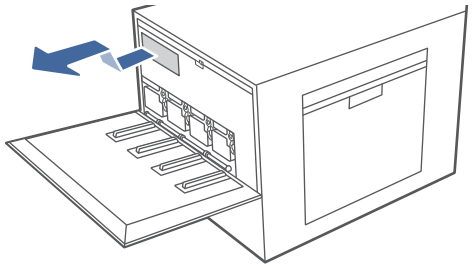


2. Rotate and then pull the TCU cover to remove it.

Figure 4-6 Remove the TCU cover



3. Lift the TCU slightly and then pull it out of the printer.



NOTE: Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Place the unit into the clear plastic bag the new TCU was packaged in.

2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

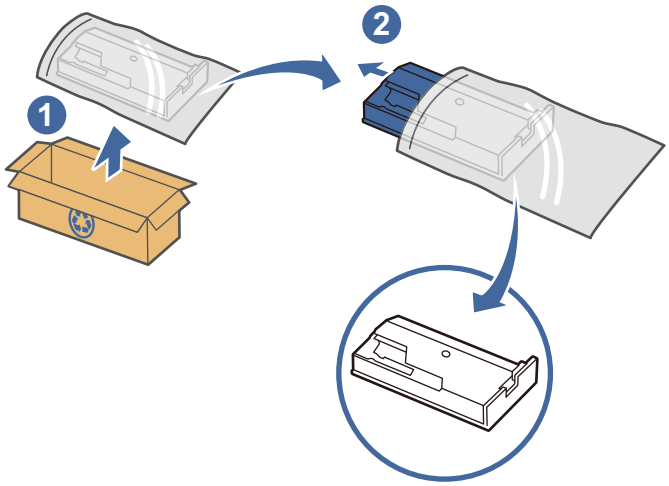
2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

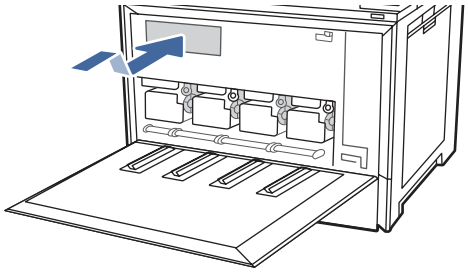
3. Install the TCU

Follow these steps to install the toner collection unit (TCU).

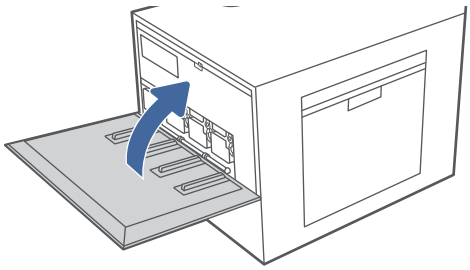
1. Remove the new TCU from its package. Save all packaging for recycling the used TCU.



2. Install the new TCU by inserting it into the printer, and then lifting slightly to make sure it pushes all the way in.



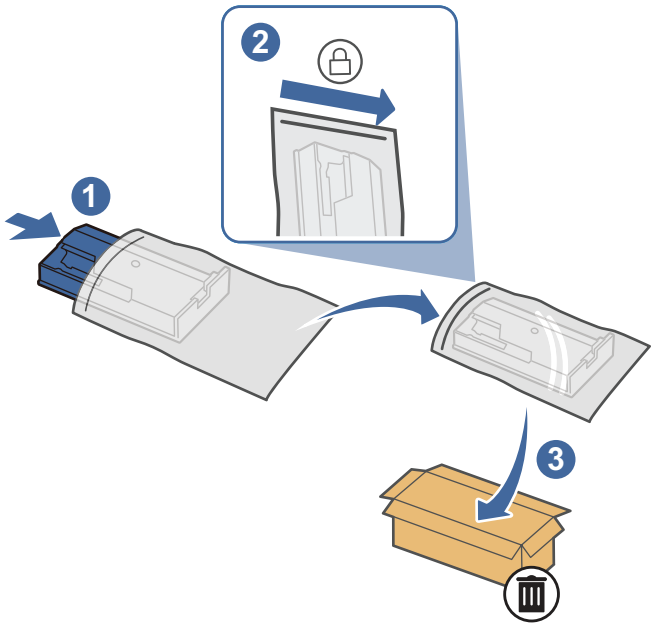
3. Replace the TCU cover.
4. Close the front door.



5. Pack the used TCU into the box that the new TCU came in. See the enclosed recycling guide for information about recycling.

   In the U.S. and Canada, a pre-paid shipping label is included in the box. In other countries/regions, go to www.hp.com/recycle to print a pre-paid shipping label.

   Adhere the pre-paid shipping label to the box, and return the used TCU to HP for recycling.



Removal and replacement: 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cartridge (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the 3-bin stapler/stacker staple cartridge.

View a video of removing and replacing the staple cartridge.

Before performing service

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-5 Part information

Part number	Part description
J8J96A	HP Staple Cartridge Refill for the floor-standing finisher or 3-bin stapler-stacker

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

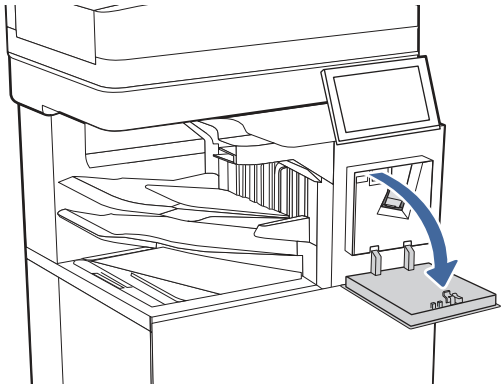
Post service test

Use the stapler to staple two pages together.

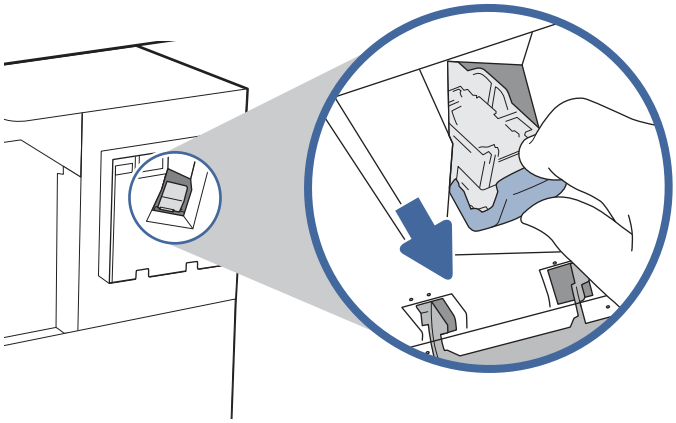
1. Remove the staple cartridge (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Follow these steps to remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cartridge.

1. Open the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple door.



2. Pull down the colored handle on the staple carriage, and then pull the staple carriage straight out.



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

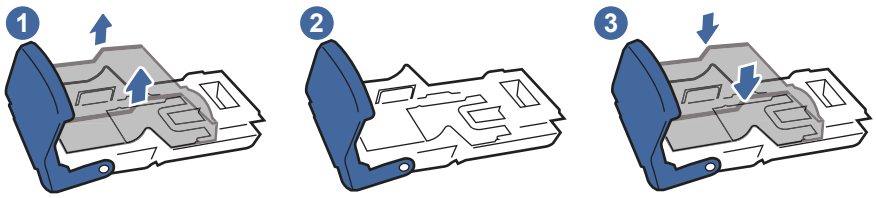
3. Install the staple cartridge (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Follow these steps to install the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cartridge.

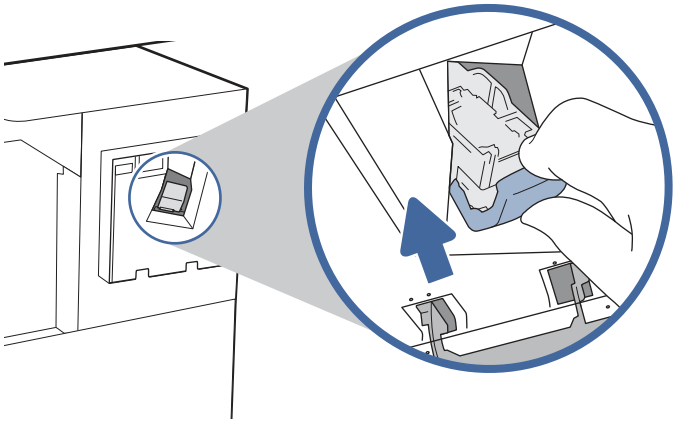
NOTE: Do not dispose of the staple carriage. The carriage is not an orderable or replaceable part. If the carriage is disposed of, the entire staple cartridge assembly will need to be replaced.

1. Remove the staple cartridge from the carrier/sled and replace it with the new staple cartridge.

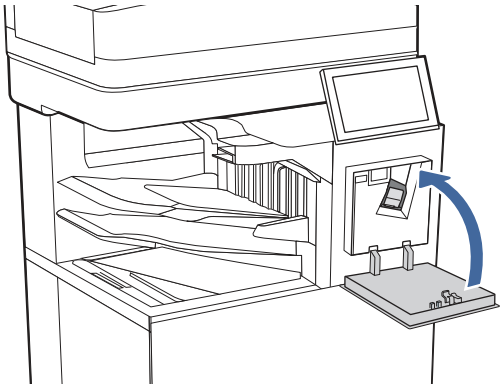
NOTE: Do not dispose of the staple carrier/sled. The sled is not an orderable or replaceable part.



2. Reinstall the staple carriage into the stapler by pressing the colored handle inward until it snaps into place.



3. Close the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple door.



Removal and replacement: Convenience staple cartridge (convenience stapler models)

Learn about removing and replacing the convenience stapler staple cartridge.

View a video of removing and replacing the staple cartridge.

Before performing service

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-6 Part information

Part number	Part description
Q7432A	HP Staple Cartridge Pack for the convenience stapler

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

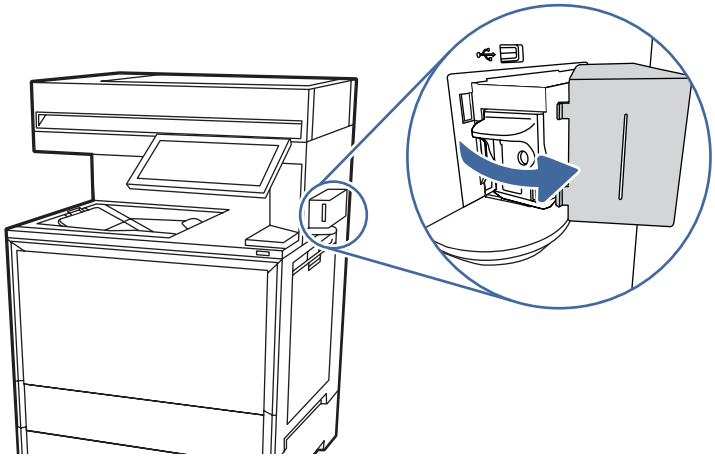
Post service test

Use the stapler to staple two pages together.

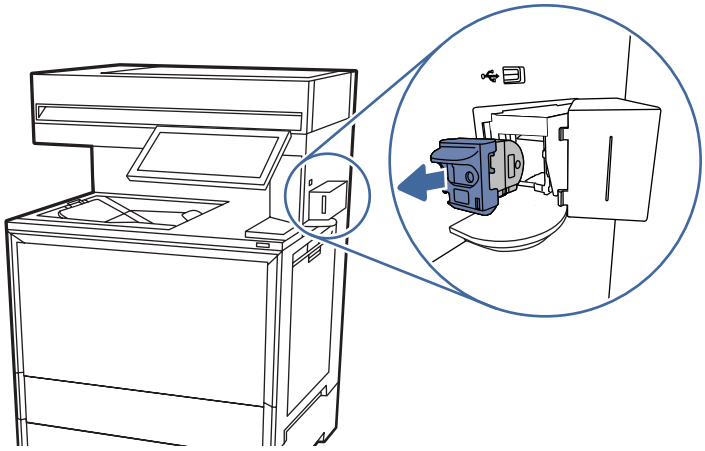
1. Remove the staple cartridge (convenience stapler)

Follow these steps to remove the convenience stapler staple cartridge.

1. Open the stapler door.



2. Pull the staple carriage straight out.



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

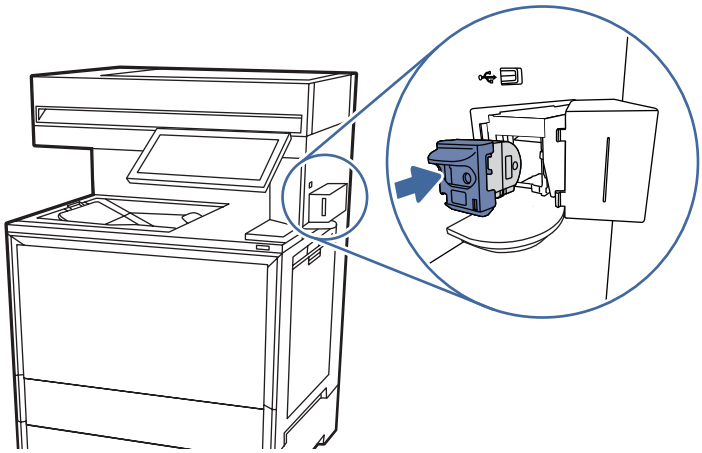
2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

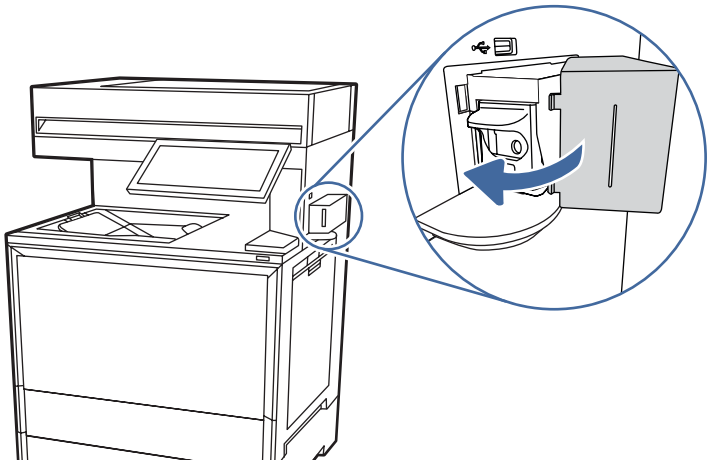
3. Install the staple cartridge (convenience stapler)

Follow these steps to install the convenience stapler staple cartridge.

1. Insert the new staple carriage into the stapler.



2. Close the stapler door.



Removal and replacement: Fuser

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the fuser.

View a video to remove and replace the fuser

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

⚠ **WARNING!** The fuser is hot. Wait at least 30 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-7 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527G0A	6QN29-67008	HP LaserJet 110V Fuser Kit
527G1A	6QN29-67009	HP LaserJet 220V Fuser Kit
527G6A	6QN28-67002	HP LaserJet 110V Enhanced Fuser Kit
527G7A	6QN28-67003	HP LaserJet 220V Enhanced Fuser Kit

Required tools

No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Make sure that the right door is fully closed after replacing the fuser.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

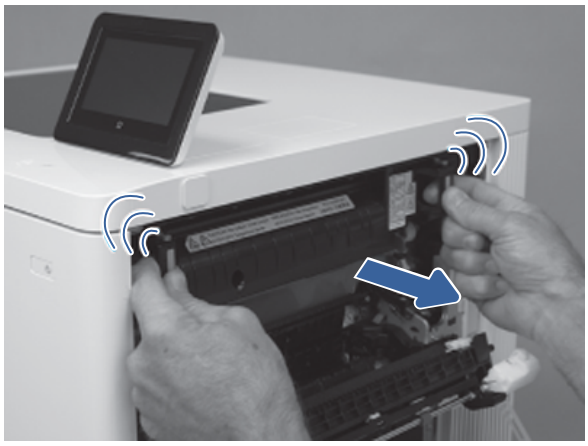
⚠ **CAUTION:** The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-7 Open the right door



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-8 Remove the fuser



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

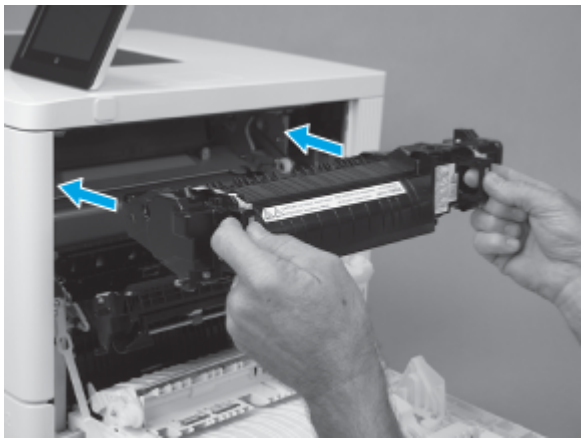
IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. Install the fuser

Follow these steps to install the fuser.

1. Align the fuser with the opening in the printer.

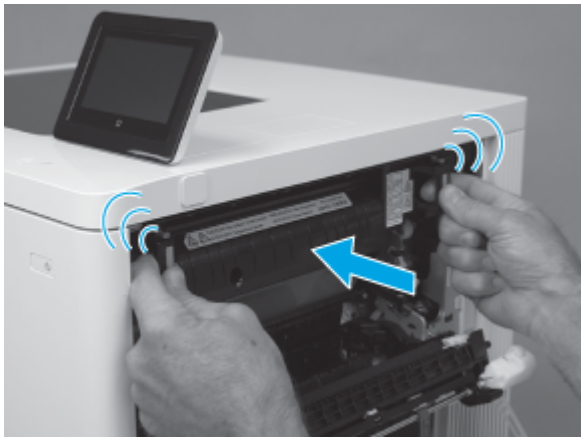
Figure 4-9 Align the fuser with the opening



2. Slide the fuser into the printer, push in to install it, and then make sure that it is fully seated.

TIP: When the fuser is fully seated, the release levers on the handles make an audible click.

Figure 4-10 Install the fuser



3. Close the right door.

Removal and replacement: Image transfer belt (ITB)

This document provides instructions about removing and replacing the image transfer belt (ITB) assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the image transfer belt.

Mean time to repair: 5 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

To order a replacement assembly, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts

Table 4-8 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527G8A	6QN29-67010	HP LaserJet Image Transfer Belt

Required tools

No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Make sure that the right door is fully closed after replacing the ITB.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-11 **Open the right door**



2. Hold the two side levers and pull out the ITB assembly.

⚠ **CAUTION:** Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 4-12 **Release the ITB**



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

3. Install the ITB

Follow these steps to install the ITB.

1. Hold the ITB by the edges (do not touch the gray plastic belt).
2. Align the ITB with the slots in the printer, and then carefully push it into the printer.
3. Continue to carefully push the ITB into the printer until it is fully installed.
4. Close the right door.

TIP: The right door should close easily if the ITB assembly is correctly installed.

Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer roller

Learn about removing and replacing the secondary transfer roller.

View a video of removing and replacing the T2 roller.

Before performing service

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-9 Part information

Part number	Part description
527H1MC	HP LaserJet Managed Trans Roller Kit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Make sure that the right door is fully closed after replacing the roller.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the secondary transfer roller

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer roller.

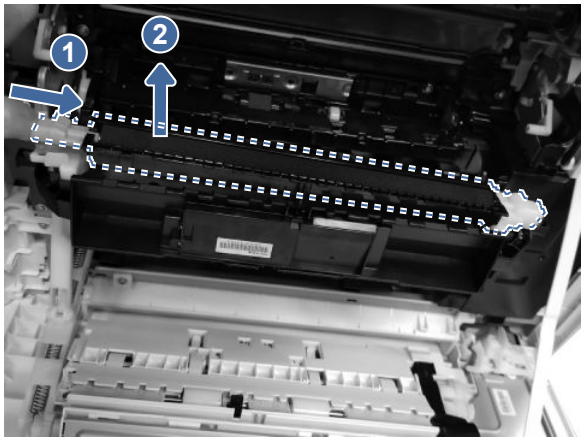
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-13 Open the right door



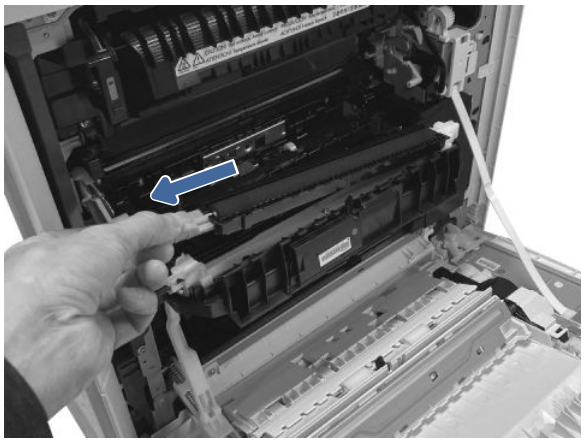
2. Push the blue left end (callout 1) of the roller assembly to the right, and then lift that end of the secondary transfer roller (callout 2).

Figure 4-14 Release the left end of the secondary transfer roller



3. With the left end of the roller lifted up, pull the roller to the left and out of the printer. Take care in removing the right end of the roller from its holder.

Figure 4-15 Remove the secondary transfer roller



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

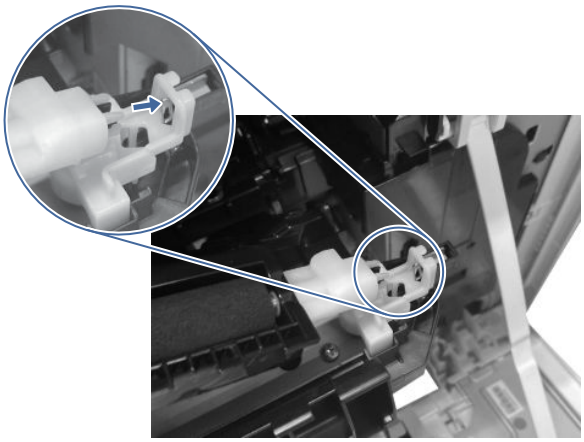
3. Install the secondary transfer roller

Follow these steps to install the secondary transfer roller.

1. Carefully align and insert the right end of the replacement roller into the holder

IMPORTANT: Make sure that right end of the roller assembly is fully seated in the holder.

Figure 4-16 Install right end of the secondary transfer roller



2. Push down on the blue left end until the roller snaps into place.

Figure 4-17 Secure the secondary transfer roller



3. Close the right door.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder rollers (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder rollers.

View a video of removing and replacing the document feeder rollers.

Before performing service

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-10 Part information

Part number	Part description
6H121-67001	ADF Pick/Sep Roller Kit (5xxx Series)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

Post service test

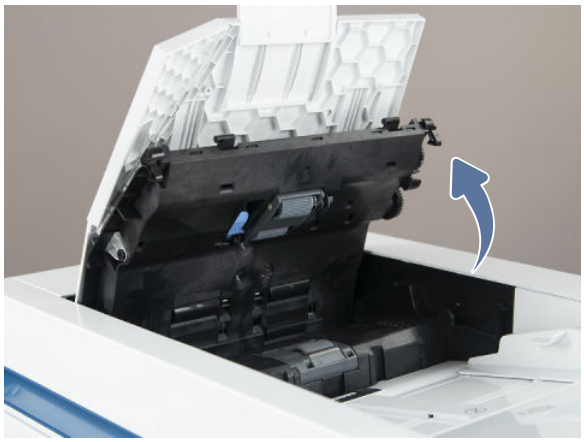
Use the document feeder to copy a page, and then verify that the document correctly copies, scans, or prints.

1. Remove the ADF pickup and feed roller assembly

Follow these steps to remove the ADF pickup and feed roller assembly.

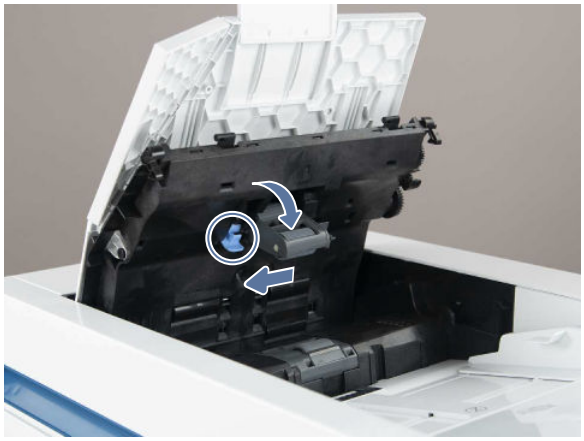
1. Open the document-feeder jam access door.

Figure 4-18 Open the document-feeder jam access door



2. Release the blue locking arm to drop the assembly down. Slide the pickup and feed roller assembly to the left, and then pull it away from the document feeder to remove it.

Figure 4-19 Release the blue locking arm

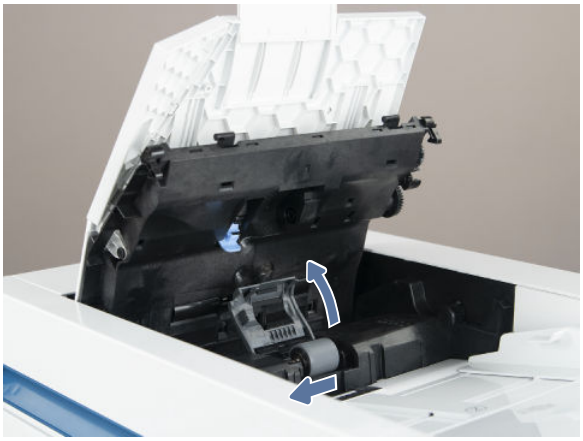


2. Remove the ADF separation roller

Follow these steps to remove the ADF separation roller.

- Lift the roller cover up and then slide the roller toward the front of the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-20 Release the separation roller cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

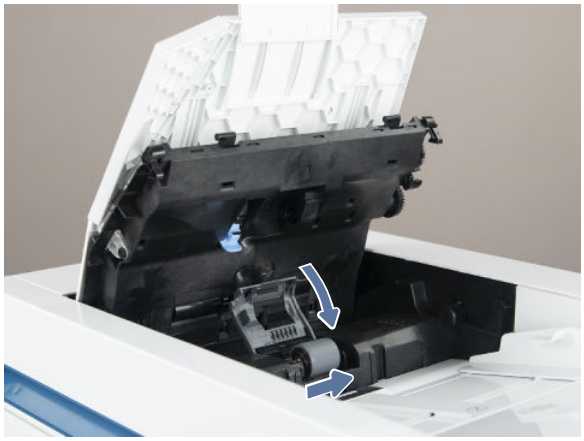
IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

4. Install the ADF separation roller

Follow these steps to install the ADF separation roller.

- Lower the separation roller into the document feeder, slide it to the right to install it, and then bring the cover down over the roller and snap it into place.

Figure 4-21 Install the ADF separation roller

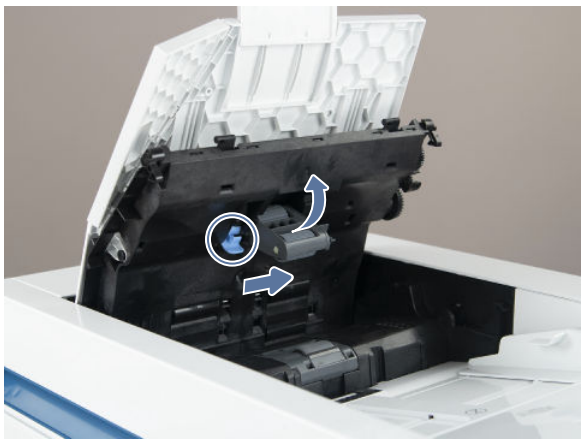


5. Install the ADF pickup and feed roller assembly

Follow these steps to install the pickup and feed roller assembly.

- Position the pickup and feed roller assembly in the document feeder, slide the assembly to the right to seat it in the ADF, and then push the lever up to lock the roller assembly in place.

Figure 4-22 Install the ADF pickup and feed roller assembly



Installation: Keyboard overlay (MFP models)

Learn about installing a keyboard overlay.

Introduction

View a video of how to install the keyboard overlay.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-11 Part information

Part number	Part description
A7W12A	Keyboard Overlay Kit - Chinese
A7W13A	Keyboard Overlay Kit - (DN/FR-Swiss/GN)
A7W14A	HP LaserJet Swedish Overlay Keyboard

Required tools

- No special tools are required to install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

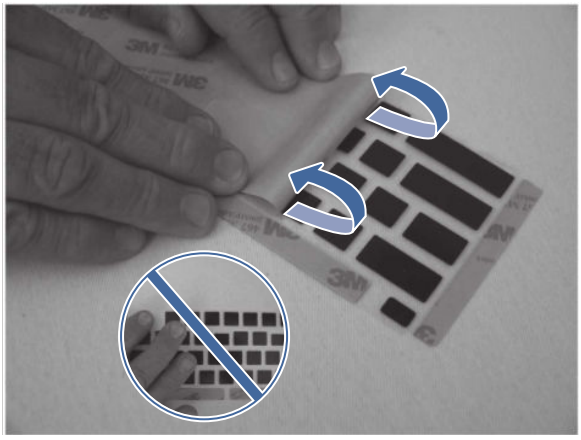
1. Install the keyboard overlay (Flow MFP models)

Follow these steps to install the keyboard overlay.

1. Carefully peel the backing from the control panel overlay.

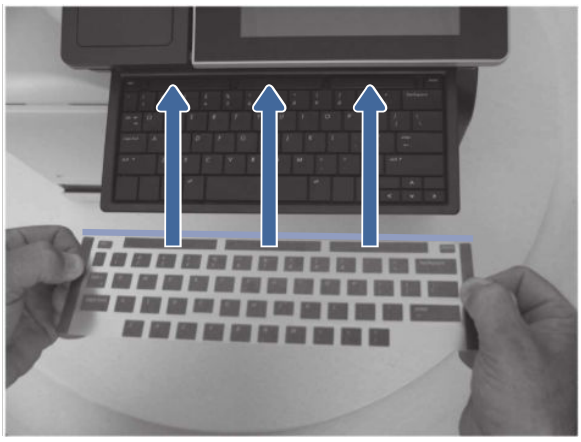
> ⚠ **CAUTION:** Do not touch the adhesive squares and be careful so that the adhesive squares do not come off with the backing.

Figure 4-23 Remove the backing



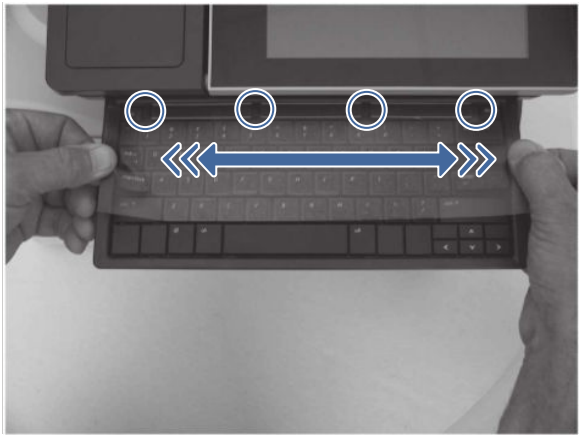
2. Position the keyboard overlay on the keyboard by aligning the upper edge of the overlay with the top edge of the keyboard.

Figure 4-24 Position the keyboard overlay top edge



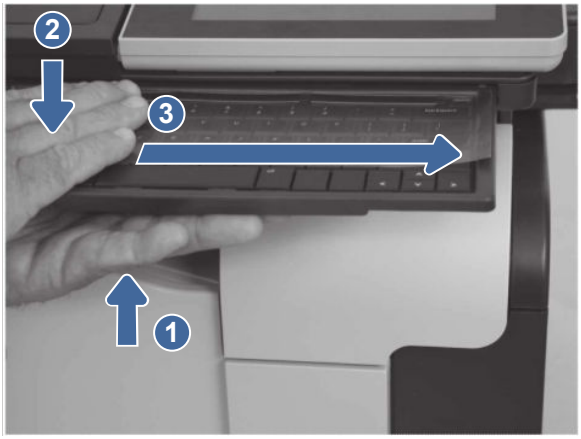
3. With the top edge positioned, align the side edges of the overlay with the keyboard edges.

Figure 4-25 Position the keyboard overlay side edges



4. Place one hand under the keyboard and press upward (callout 1). Place the other hand on top of the keyboard overlay and press downward (callout 2). Continue to press while sliding both hands to the right (callout 3) to adhere the overlay to the keyboard.

Figure 4-26 Apply the keyboard overlay



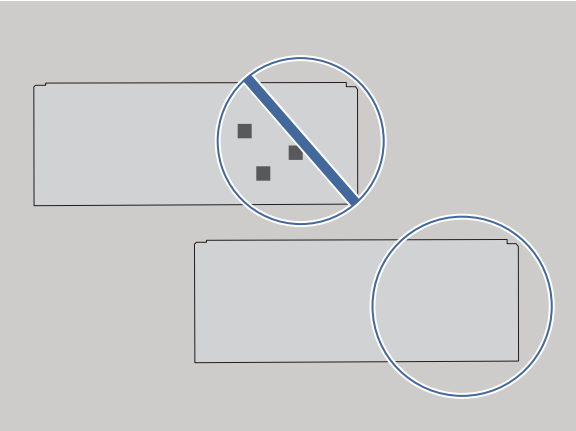
5. Carefully remove the protective top sheet from the keyboard overlay.

Figure 4-27 Apply the keyboard overlay



⚠ CAUTION: Make sure that the adhesive squares do not come off of the keyboard with the protective sheet.

Figure 4-28 Ensure that the squares do not stick to the top sheet



Removal and replacement: Tray 1 pickup and separation roller assemblies

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 1 rollers.

View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 1 rollers.

Before performing service

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-12 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527H3A	6QN29-67012	HP LaserJet MP Tray Roller Kit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

Post service test

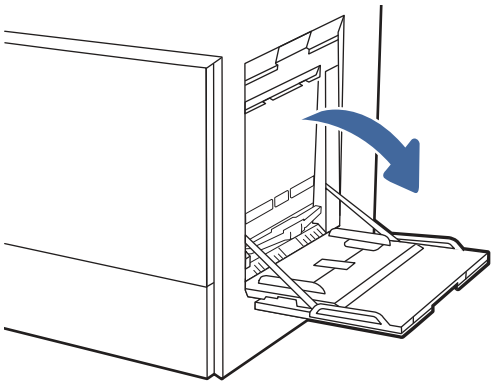
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the Tray 1 pickup roller

Follow these steps to remove and replace the Tray 1 pickup roller.

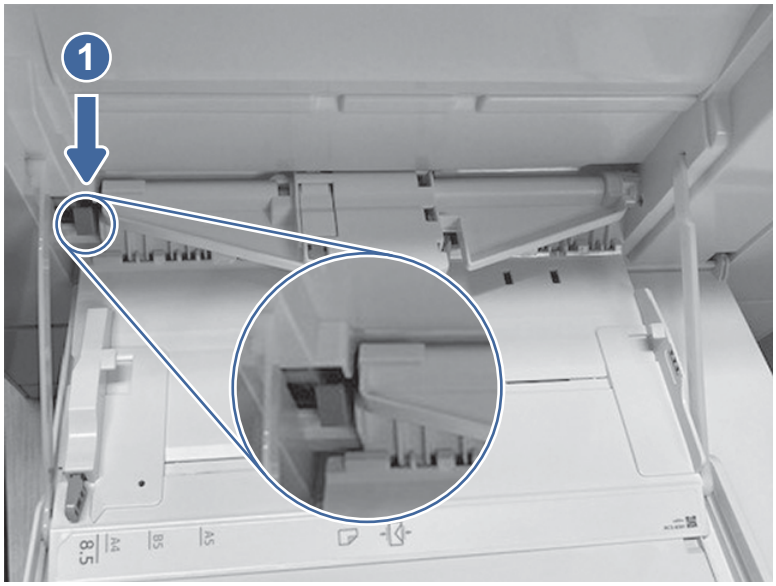
1. On the right side of the printer, release the lower of the two latches to open Tray 1.

Figure 4-29 **Open Tray 1**



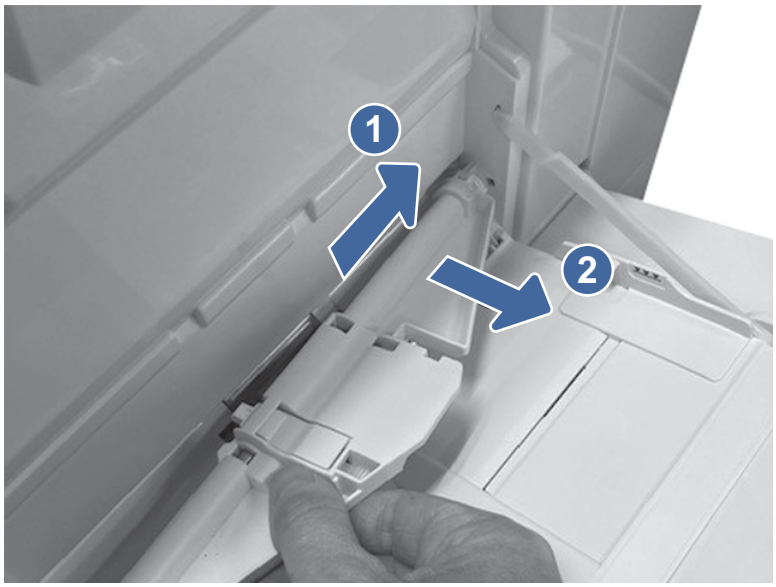
2. Locate and release the blue pickup roller assembly release tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-30 **Locate the pickup roller assembly tab**



3. Push the pickup roller assembly to the right and then away from the printer.

Figure 4-31 **Remove the pickup roller assembly**



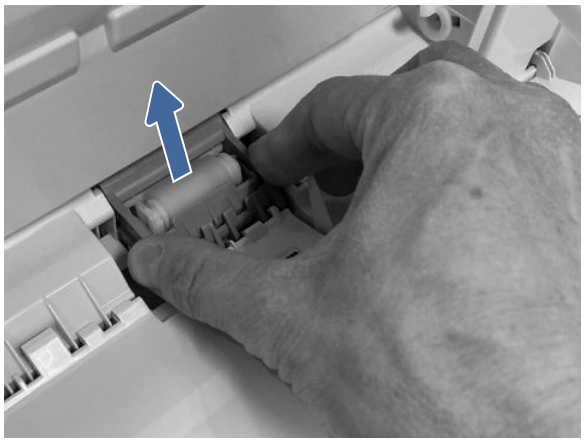
2. Remove the Tray 1 separation roller

Follow these steps to remove and replace the Tray 1 separation roller.

NOTE: Even if you want to replace only the separation roller, you must first remove the pickup roller assembly.

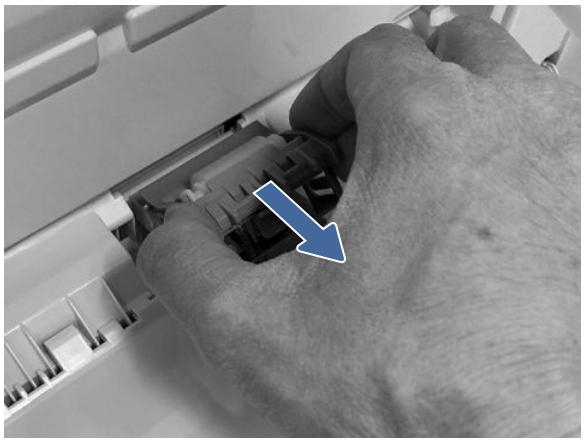
1. Grasp the left- and right-side of the separation roller assembly, and then lift the assembly up.

Figure 4-32 **Lift the separation roller assembly**



2. Pull the separation roller assembly straight out to remove it.

Figure 4-33 **Remove the separation roller assembly**



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

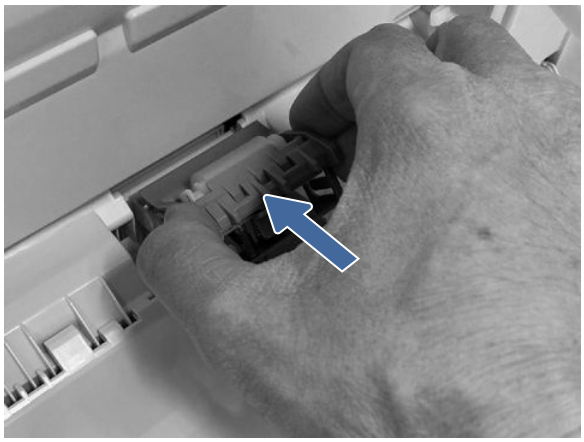
4. Install the Tray 1 separation roller

Follow these steps to install the Tray 1 separation roller.

CAUTION: Do not touch the spongy portion of the roller. Skin oils on the roller can cause paper-handling and print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves or thoroughly washing your hands before handling the assembly.

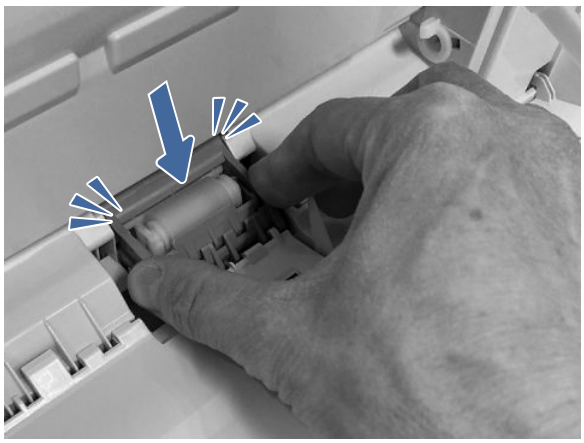
1. Insert the separation roller assembly into the printer.

Figure 4-34 **Insert the separation roller assembly**



2. Push down on the Tray 1 separation roller until it snaps into place.

Figure 4-35 **Secure the separation roller assembly**



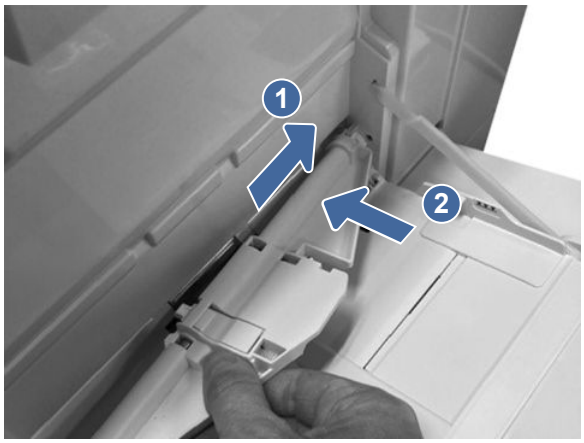
5. Install the Tray 1 pickup roller

Follow these steps to install the Tray 1 pickup roller.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the spongy portion of the roller. Skin oils on the roller can cause paper-handling and print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves or thoroughly washing your hands before handling the assembly.

- Insert the keyed right end of the pickup roller assembly into the provided slot, and then rotate the left end into place to install it.

Figure 4-36 Install the pickup roller assembly



Removal and replacement: Tray 2 pickup and separation roller assemblies

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 rollers.

View a video of removing and replacing the Tray 2 rollers.

Before performing service

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-13 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527H2A	6QN29-67011	HP LaserJet Tray 2-x Roller Kit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

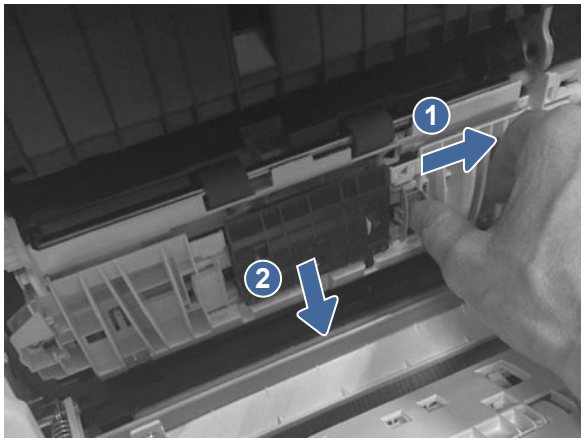
1. Remove the Tray 2 separation roller assembly

Learn about removing the Tray 2 separation roller assembly.

1. Depending on the printer model, perform one of the following steps.
   - 5700/X557/5800 models: Open the right door.
   - X57945 models: Open the lower right door.

2. Slide the blue lever (callout 1) to the right, and then remove the separation roller assembly (callout 2) by pulling it out from the printer.

Figure 4-37 Remove the separation roller assembly



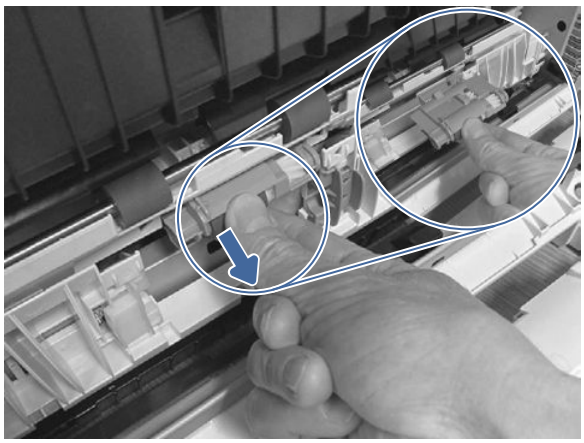
2. Remove the Tray 2 paper pickup roller assembly

Learn about removing the Tray 2 pickup rollers.

NOTE: Even if you want to replace only the pickup roller assembly, you must first remove the separation roller assembly.

- Locate the pickup roller assembly, and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-38 Remove the pickup roller assembly



NOTE: As the roller assembly can be hard to grip, you might need to reach under and behind the rollers to securely grip it.

3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

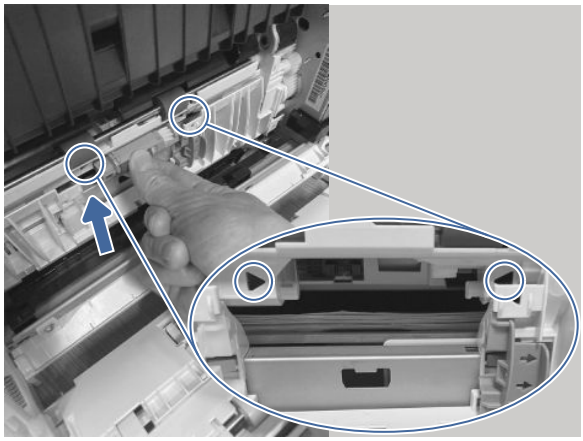
4. Install the Tray 2 paper pickup roller assembly

Learn about installing the Tray 2 pickup roller assembly.

CAUTION: Do not touch the spongy portion of the roller. Skin oils on the roller can cause paper-handling and print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves or thoroughly washing your hands before handling the assembly.

- Position the pickup roller assembly in the printer in the correct orientation, and then press the assembly into place.

Figure 4-39 **Install the pickup roller assembly**



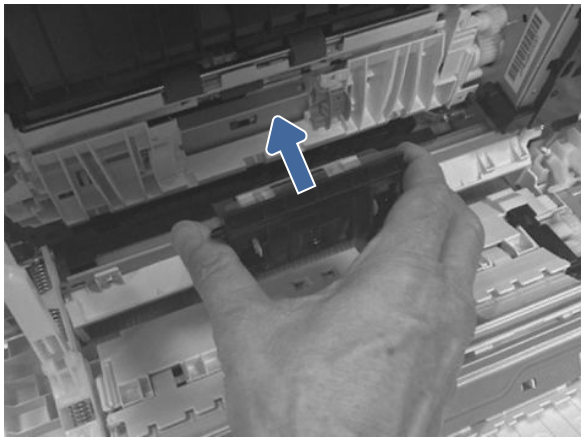
5. Install the Tray 2 separation roller assembly

Learn about installing the Tray 2 separation roller assembly.

CAUTION: Do not touch the spongy portion of the roller. Skin oils on the roller can cause paper-handling and print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves or thoroughly washing your hands before handling the assembly.

- Insert the separation roller assembly into the printer to install it.

Figure 4-40 Install the separation roller assembly



Customer self-repair (CSR) B parts and accessories

Customer self-repair (CSR) B parts are parts that a customer replaces without assistance from a field technician. These parts might require the use of tools.

Customer-replaceable units

Learn about customer-replaceable parts removal and replacement.

Internal parts and assemblies

Learn how to remove and replace the printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Keyboard (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the keyboard.

Introduction

View a video of how to remove and replace the keyboard.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-14 Part information

Part number	Part description
1M0Q2A	HP LaserJet Workflow Keyboard

Required tools

- Use the reversible screwdriver, the bracket, and the two screws included in the kit.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

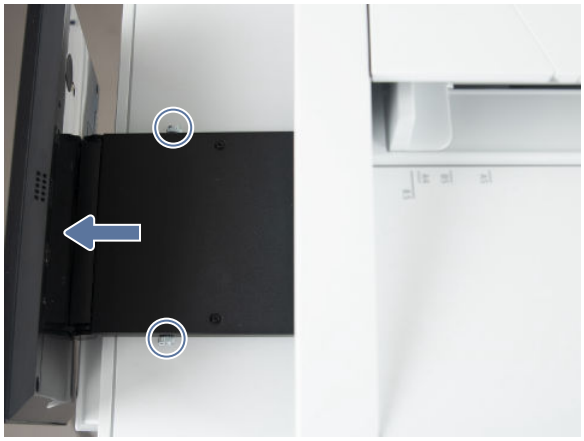
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the control panel (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

- Pull the control panel out and tilt it up, and then remove the two thumbscrews on the control panel arm. Remove the control panel by pulling it away from the printer.

Figure 4-41 **Remove two thumbscrews**

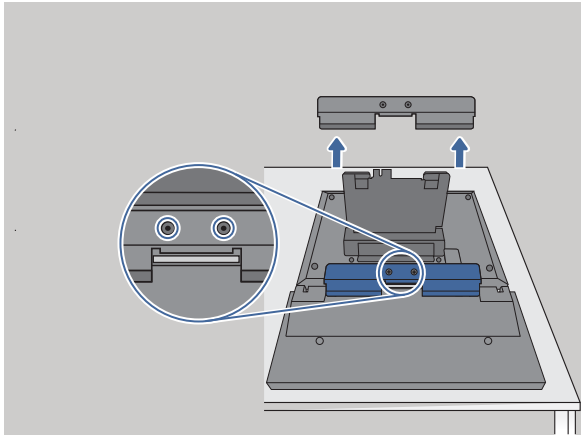


2. Remove the keyboard (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the keyboard.

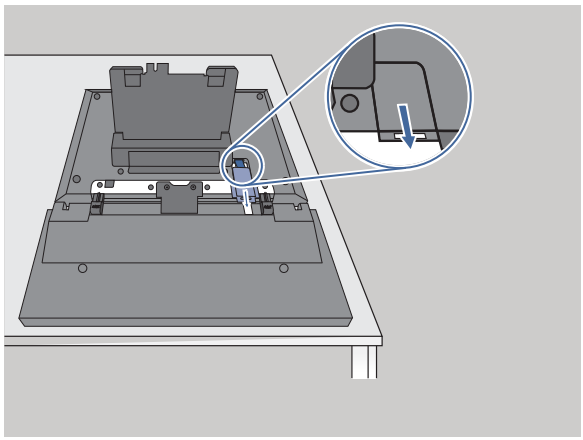
1. On the back off the control panel, remove two screws, and then remove the bracket from the assembly.

Figure 4-42 **Remove the bracket**



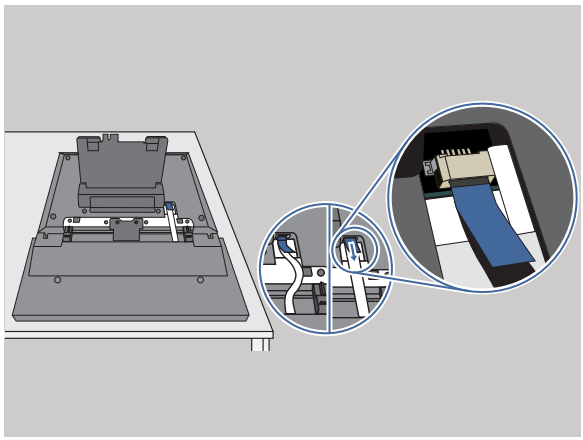
2. Remove the flat flexible cable (FFC) connector cover.

Figure 4-43 **Remove the FFC connector cover**



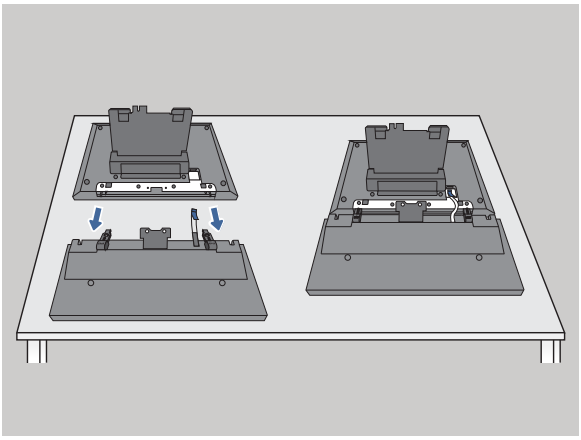
3. Use the pull tab to disconnect the FFC from the connector in the control panel.

Figure 4-44 **Disconnect the keyboard FFC**



4. Pull the keyboard away from the control panel.

Figure 4-45 **Remove the keyboard**



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

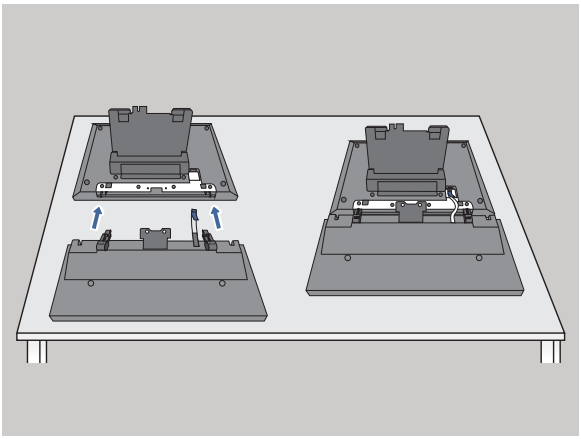
IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

4. Install the keyboard (MFP models)

Follow these steps to install the keyboard.

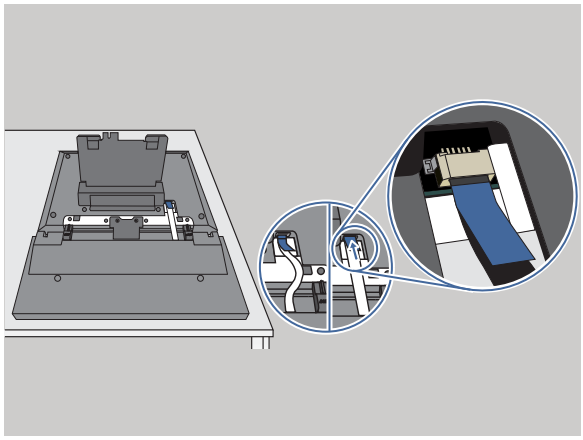
1. Align the back of the keyboard with the back of the control panel and then join them by connecting the hinges.

Figure 4-46 **Connect the keyboard to the control panel**



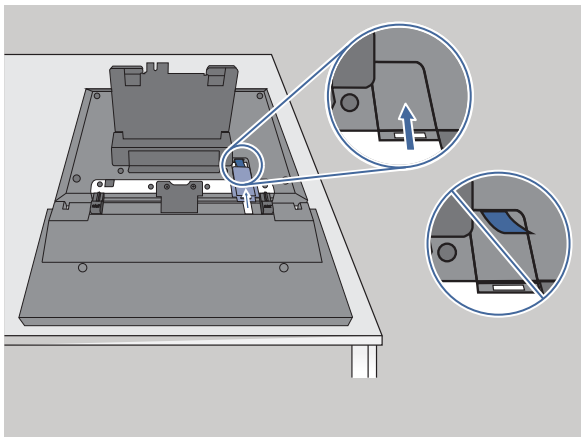
2. Connect the keyboard flat flexible cable (FFC) with the connector in the control panel.

Figure 4-47 **Connect the keyboard FFC**



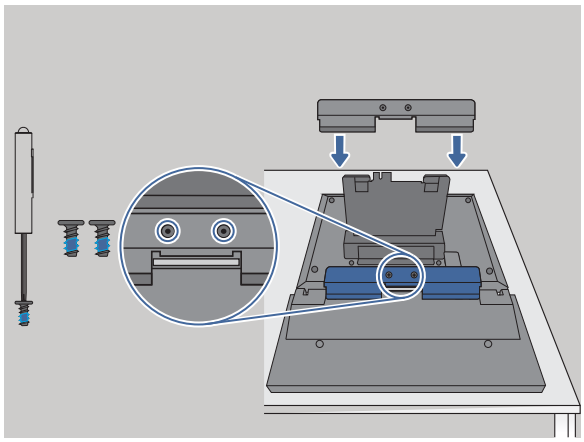
3. Install the FFC cover. Make sure that the FFC pull tab does not stick out after the cover is installed.

Figure 4-48 **Install the FFC cover**



4. Use the reversible screwdriver to install the two bracket screws to attach the bracket to the control panel.

Figure 4-49 **Install the bracket**

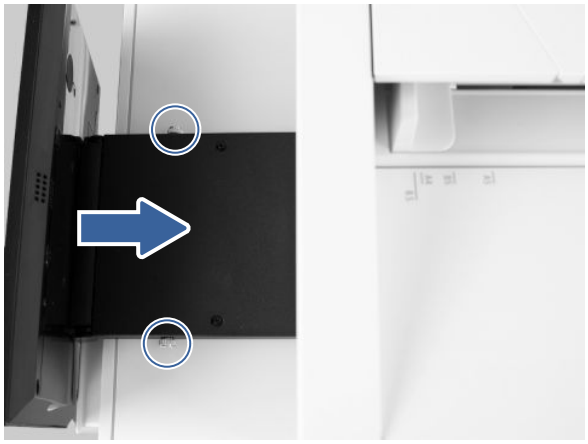


5. Install the control panel (MFP models)

Follow these steps to install the control panel.

- Slide the control panel into the control panel arm, and then install the two thumbscrews on the control panel arm.

Figure 4-50 **Install the control panel**



Removal and replacement: Hard-disk drive (HDD)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the hard-disk drive (HDD).

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the hard-disk drive.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Basic

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and eMMC PCA or hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-15 **Part information**

Part number	Part description
L41606-011	HDD, 500GB 5400RPM SED
L42243-021	HDD, 500GB 5400RPM FIPS/CCC OPAL2 7MM
6HN31A	HP 500GB CCC FIPS TAA Hard Disk Drive

Table 4-15 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
9EQ11A	HP 500GB CCC FIPS Hard Disk Drive

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the screw is fastened.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

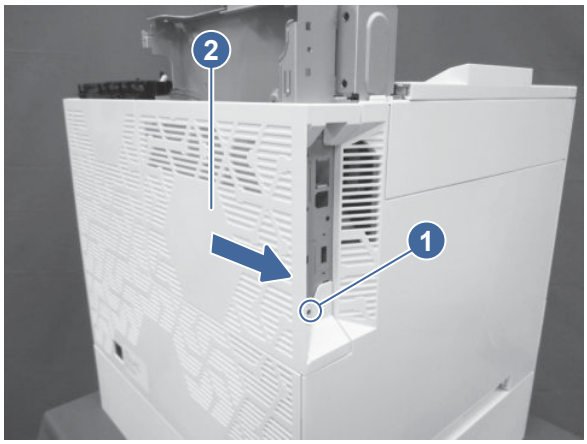
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-51 Remove the formatter cover



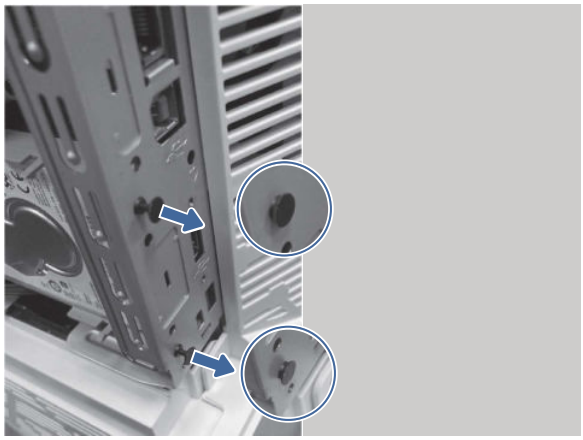
2. Remove the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to remove the hard-disk drive (HDD).

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

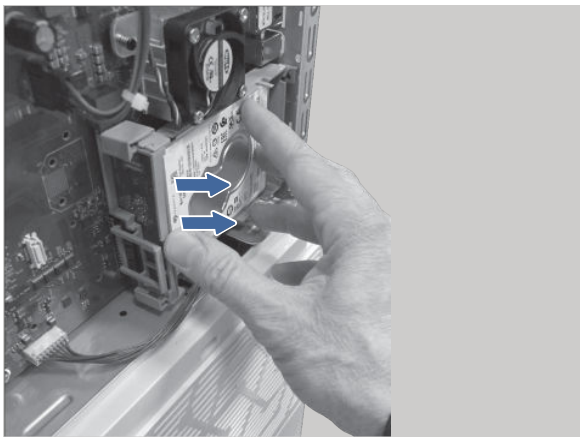
1. Release two pins from the formatter faceplate.

Figure 4-52 Release two pins



2. On the left side of the HDD, release the connector from the formatter, and then pull the HDD away from the formatter.

Figure 4-53 Release the HDD



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

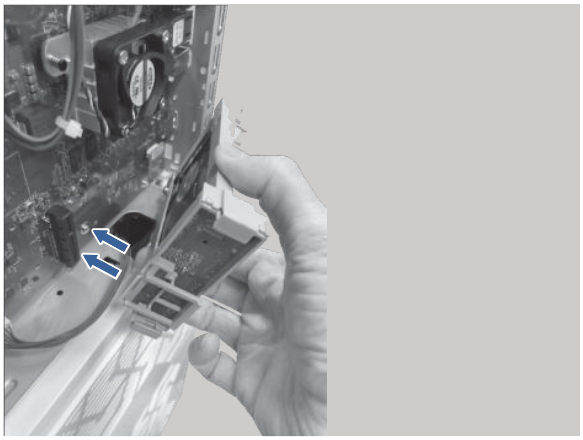
4. Install the hard-disk drive (HDD)

Follow these steps to install the hard-disk drive (HDD).

⚠ **CAUTION:** ESD sensitive part.

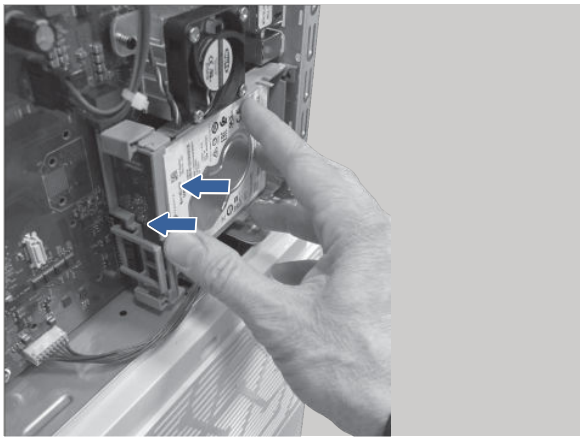
1. Align the connectors on the left side of the HDD with the connector on the formatter.

Figure 4-54 Align the connectors



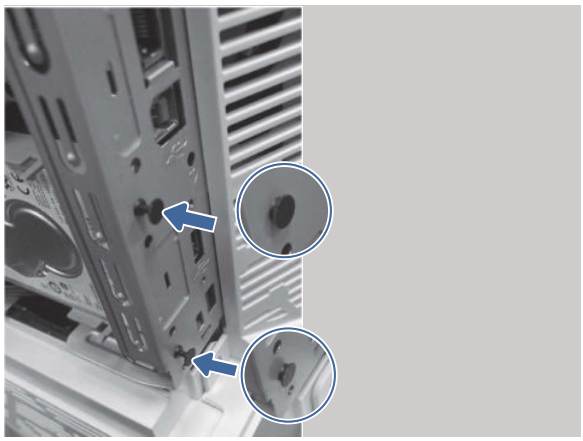
2. Press the connectors together to seat the HDD on the formatter.

Figure 4-55 Install the HDD



3. Install the two pins through the formatter plate to secure the HDD.

Figure 4-56 Install two pins

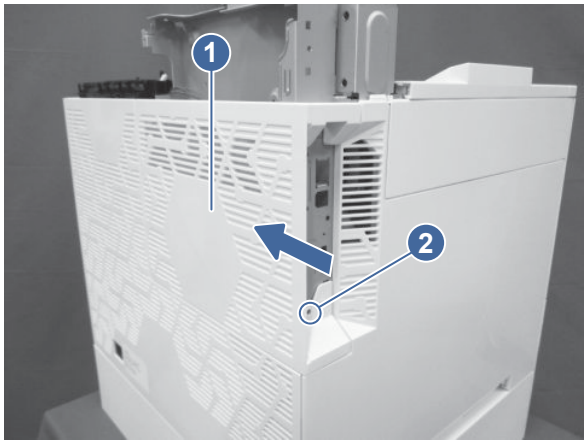


5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover (callout 1) onto the printer, and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure it.

Figure 4-57 Install the cover



Removal and replacement: Dual in-line memory module (DIMM) (SFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the dual in-line memory module (DIMM).

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the DIMM.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-16 Part information

Part number	Part description
6QY68A	HP 2GB DDR3Lx32 120-pin 933MHz DIMM

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

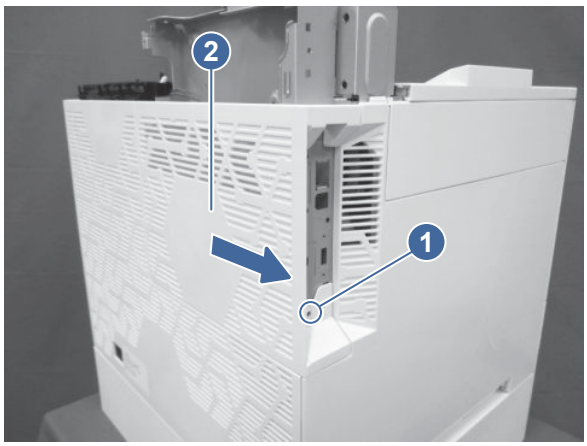
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-58 **Remove the formatter cover**



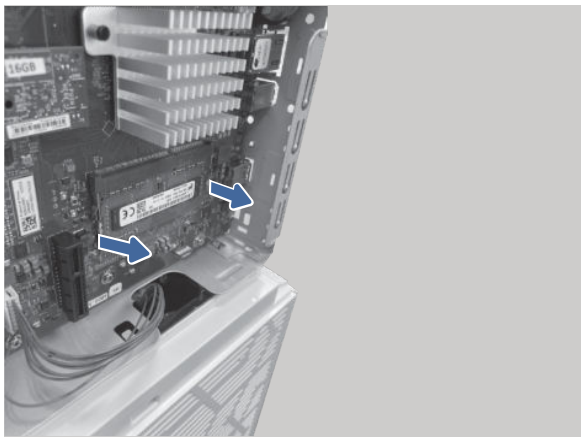
2. Remove the dual in-line memory module (DIMM)

Follow these steps to remove the DIMM.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

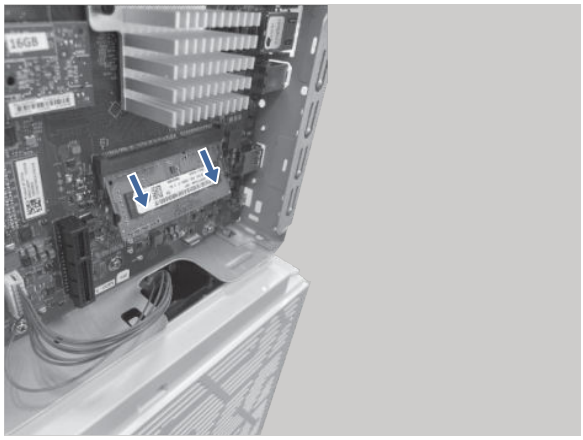
1. Pull the bottom edge of the DIMM away from the formatter to loosen the connector at the top of the DIMM.

Figure 4-59 **Pull the bottom edge of the DIMM**



2. Pull down on the DIMM to remove it from the formatter.

Figure 4-60 Remove the DIMM



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

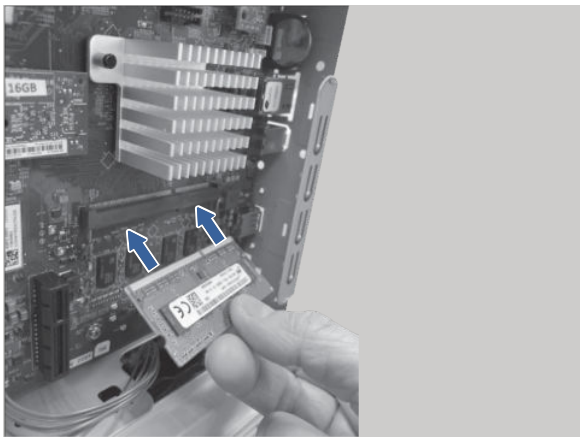
4. Install the DIMM

Follow these steps to install the DIMM.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

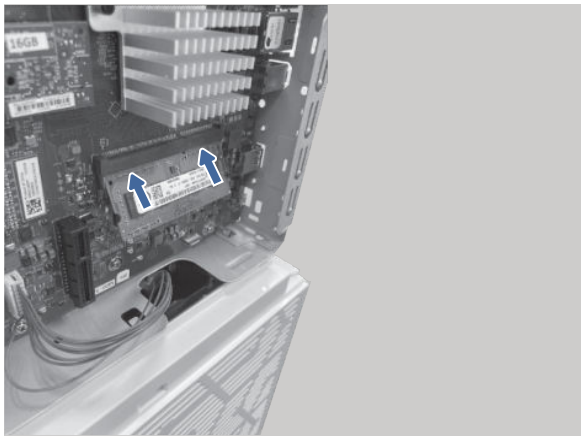
1. Align the connector edge on the DIMM with the slot on the formatter.

Figure 4-61 Align the DIMM



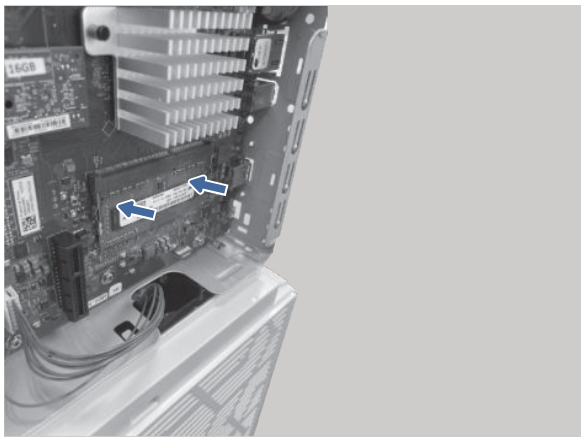
2. Gently insert the top edge of the DIMM up into the formatter slot.

Figure 4-62 **Insert the top edge into the formatter**



3. Press the bottom edge of the DIMM against the formatter to seat it firmly in the formatter slot.

Figure 4-63 **Install the DIMM**

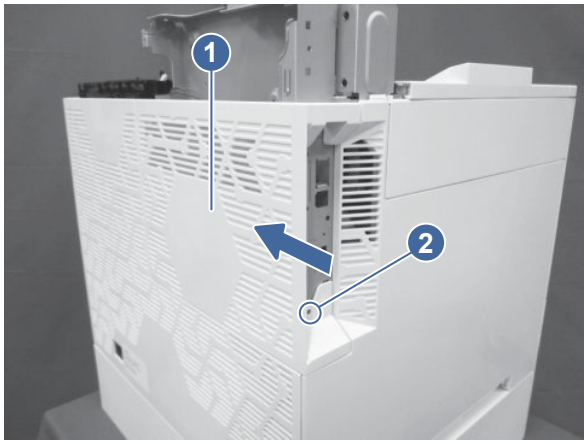


5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover (callout 1) onto the printer, and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure it.

Figure 4-64 Install the cover



Removal and replacement: Fax PCA (fax models)

Learn about removing and replacing the fax PCA.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the fax PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-17 Part information

Part number	Part description
1M0Q0A	HP MFP Analog Fax 702 Accessory

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

If possible, send and receive a fax from the printer.

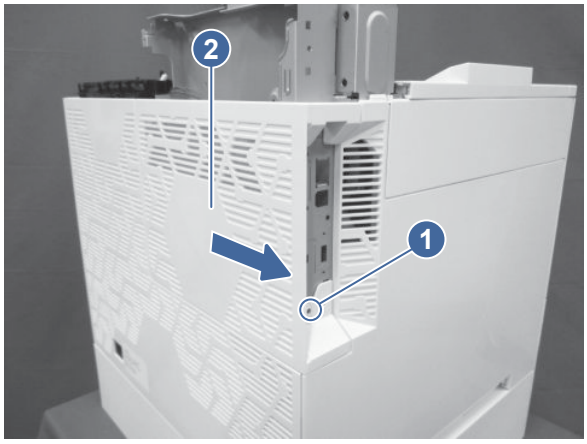
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-65 Remove the formatter cover



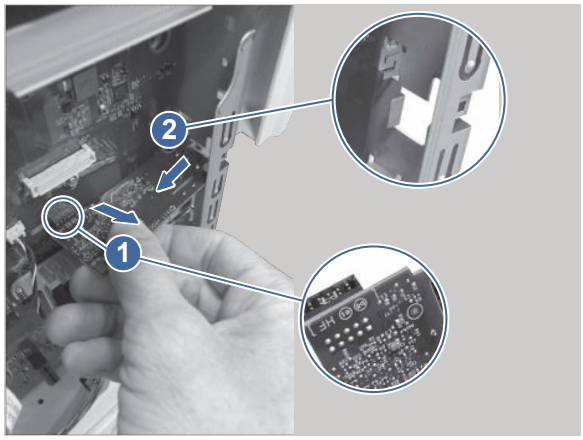
2. Remove the fax PCA (fax MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the fax PCA.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Rotate end left end of the fax PCA away from the formatter (callout 1) to disconnect the connector, and then slide the card away from the formatter faceplate (callout 2) to remove it.

Figure 4-66 Remove the fax PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

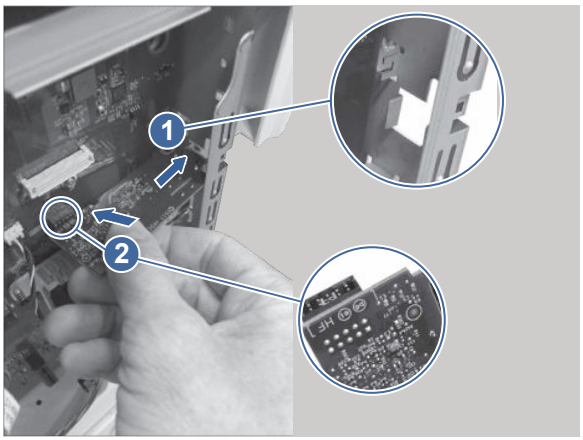
4. Install the fax PCA (fax MFP models)

Follow these steps to install the fax PCA.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

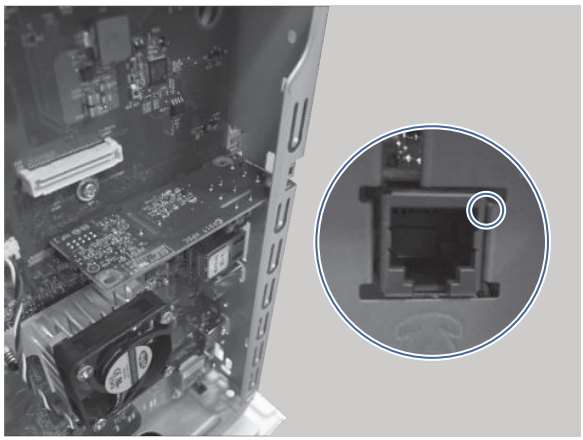
1. Align the fax port with the cut-out in the formatter faceplate, and then align the connector on the back of the card with the formatter connector. Press the connectors together to seat the card on the formatter.

Figure 4-67 Align the fax PCA



2. When installed, the port on the card should sit securely in the faceplate cut-out.

Figure 4-68 Check the fax PCA port

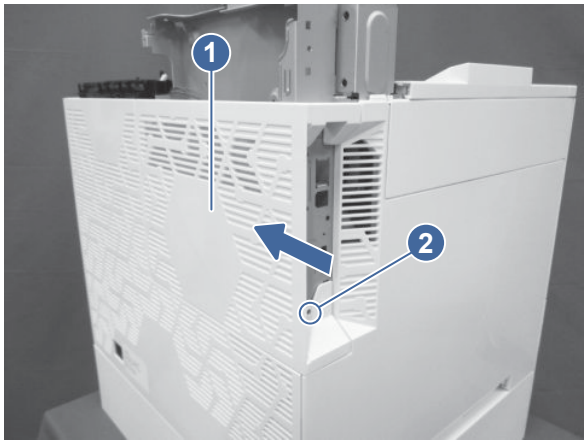


5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover (callout 1) onto the printer, and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure it.

Figure 4-69 Install the cover



Removal and replacement: Workflow accelerator

Learn about removing and replacing the workflow accelerator card.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the workflow accelerator.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-18 Part information

Part number	Part description
1M0Q5A	HP LaserJet Workflow Accelerator Card

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

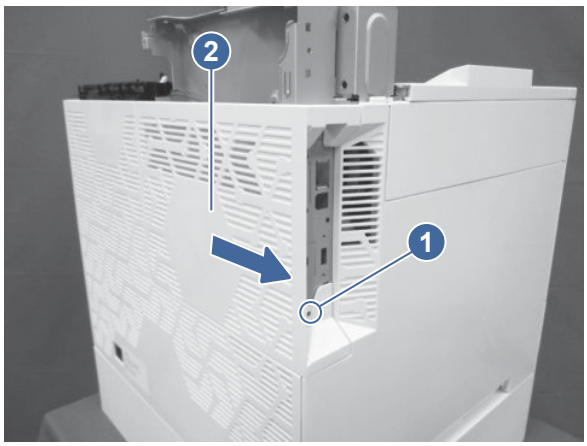
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-70 Remove the formatter cover



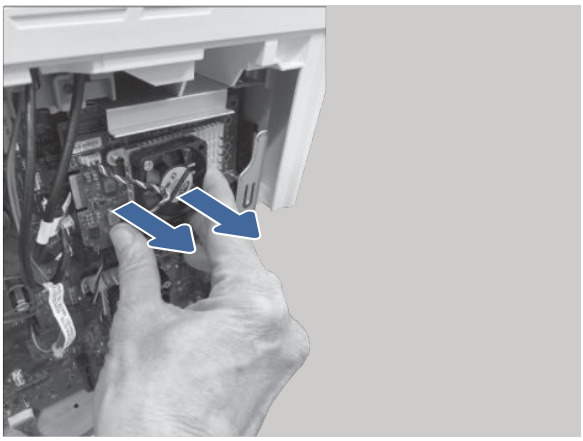
2. Remove the workflow accelerator

Follow these steps to remove the workflow accelerator.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

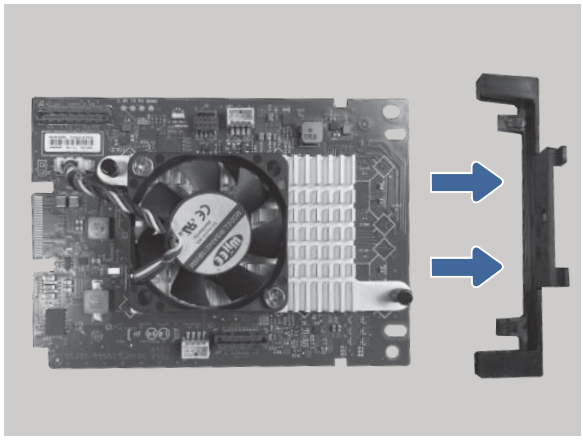
1. Pull the card away from the formatter to disconnect the connector and remove the card.

Figure 4-71 Remove the card



2. Remove the bracket from the workflow accelerator card.

Figure 4-72 **Remove the bracket**



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

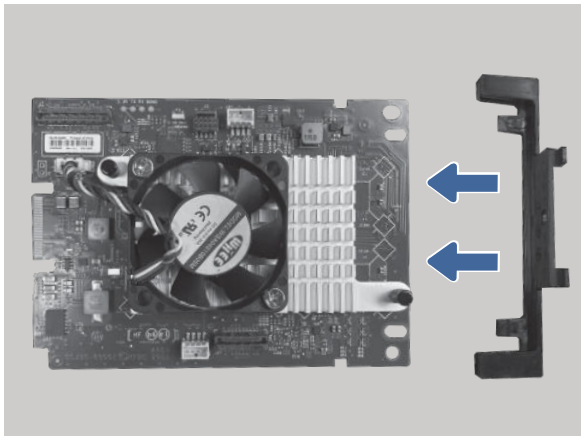
4. Install the workflow accelerator

Follow these steps to install the workflow accelerator.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

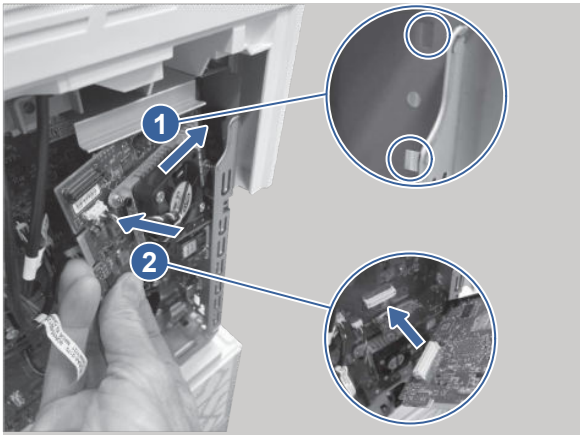
1. Slide the bracket onto the accelerator card.

Figure 4-73 **Attach the bracket**



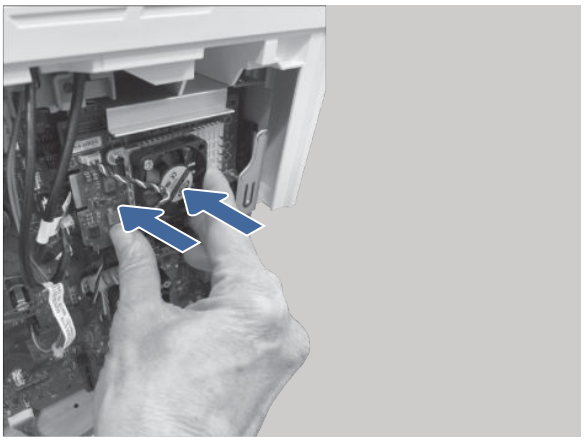
2. Push the right edge of the card into the faceplate slots, and then align the connector on the back of the card with the formatter connector.

Figure 4-74 Align the connectors



3. Press the connectors together to seat the card on the formatter.

Figure 4-75 Connect the connectors

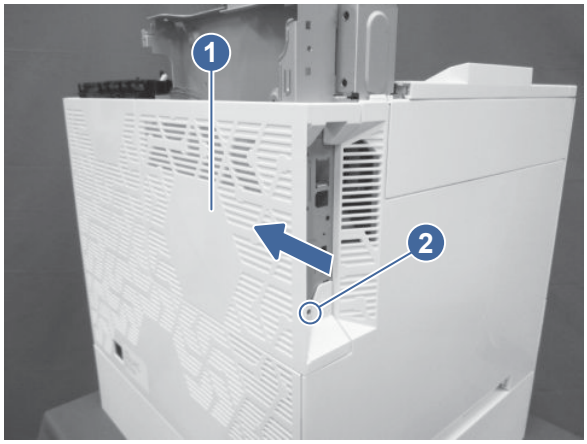


5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover (callout 1) onto the printer, and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure it.

Figure 4-76 **Install the cover**



Removal and replacement: USB expansion kit

Learn about removing and replacing the USB expansion kit.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the USB expansion kit.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-19 **Part information**

Part number	Part description
4XN67A	HP Internal USB Expansion Kit

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

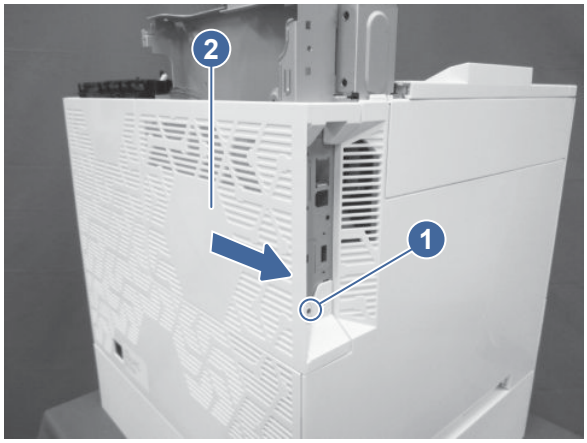
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-77 Remove the formatter cover



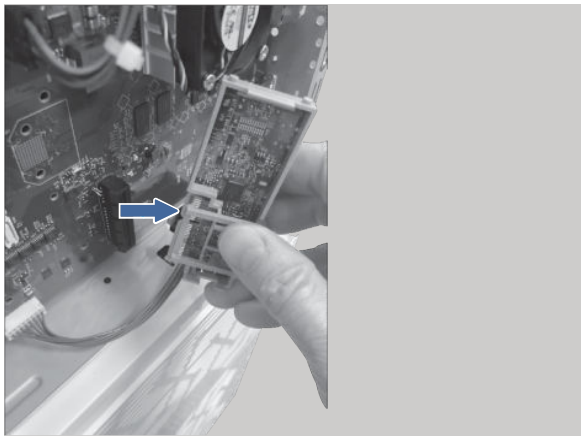
2. Remove the internal USB ports

Learn how to remove the internal USB ports.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

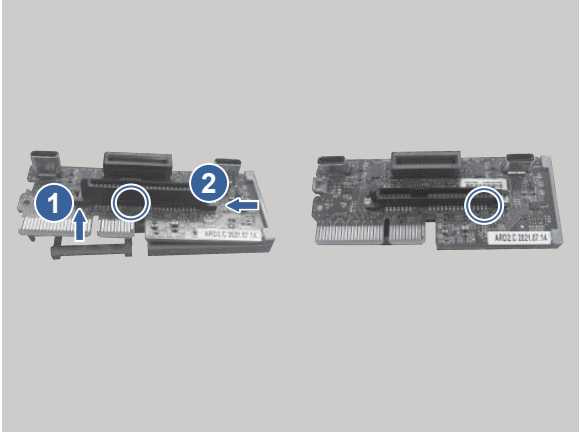
1. Pull the card away from the formatter to disconnect the connector.

Figure 4-78 Remove the USB ports card



2. Pull the free end of the card away from the bracket, and then pull the captive end of the card out of the bracket.

Figure 4-79 **Remove the bracket**



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

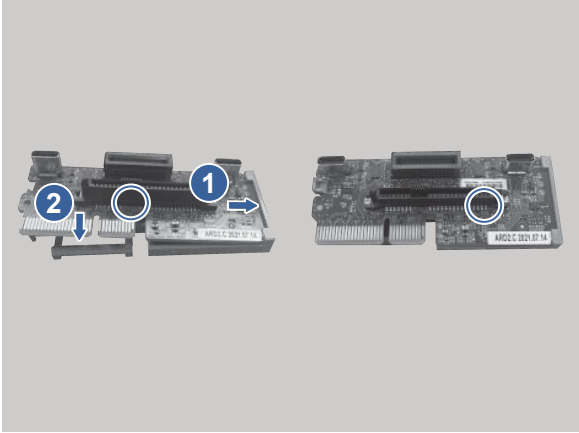
4. Install the internal USB ports

Learn how to install the internal USB ports.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

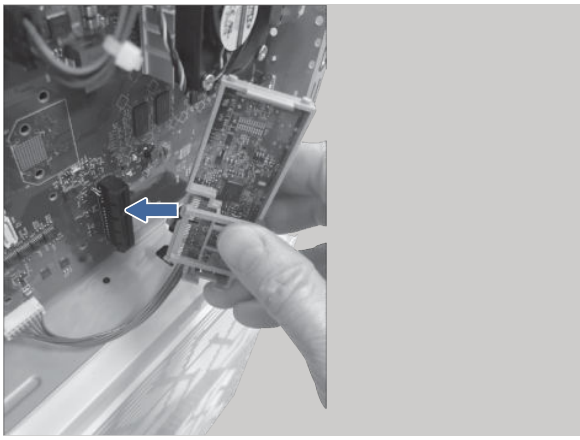
1. Push the short edge of the card into the bracket, and then press the card into the bracket until it is firmly seated.

Figure 4-80 Attach the bracket



2. Align the connector on the card with the formatter connector, and then press the connectors together to seat the card on the formatter.

Figure 4-81 Install the card on the formatter



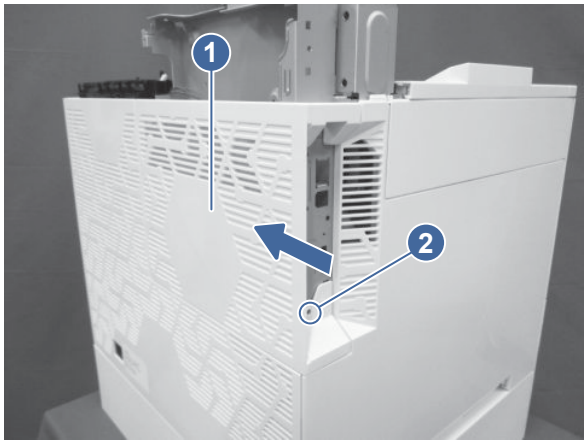
3. Install the formatter cover.

5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover (callout 1) onto the printer, and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure it.

Figure 4-82 Install the cover



Removal and replacement: Solid state drive (SSD)

Learn about removing and replacing the solid state drive.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the SSD.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-20 Part information

Part number	Part description
1M0Q4A	HP LaserJet Secure Solid State Drive

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

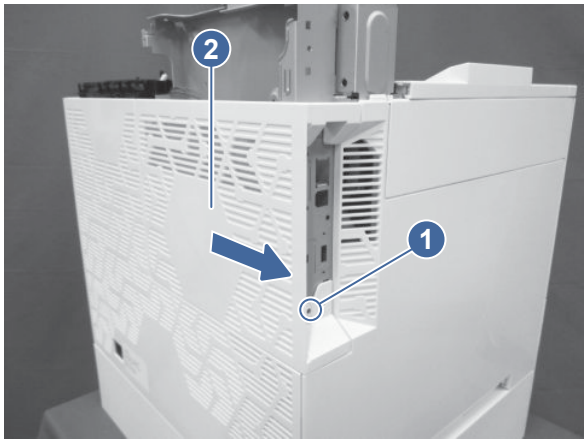
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-83 Remove the formatter cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

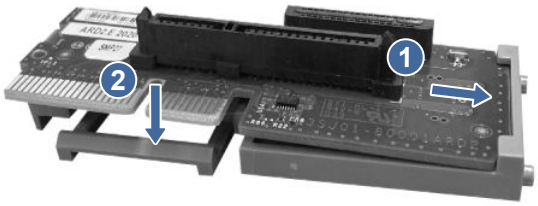
3. Install the SSD card only

Learn how to install the SSD card.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

1. Place one end of the riser PCA into the cradle, and then press the other end of the card into the cradle.

Figure 4-84 Install PCA in cradle



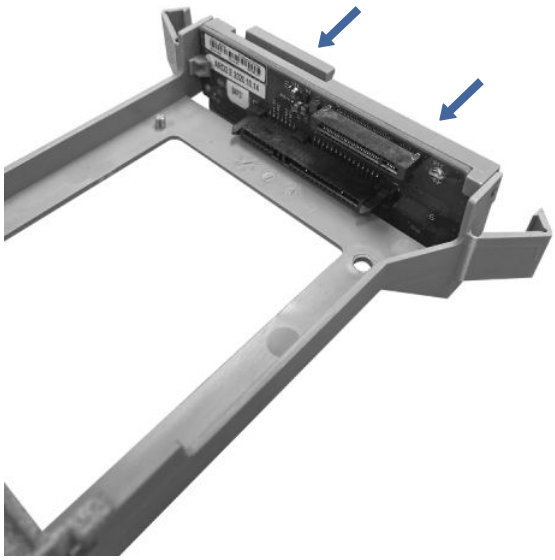
2. Verify that the PCA is properly installed by listening for a click when it is pressed into place. Also verify that the PCA is underneath the two indicated tabs at the end.

Figure 4-85 Verify PCA installation



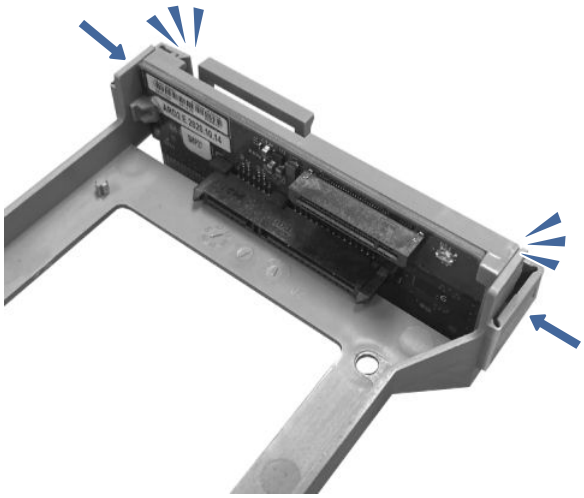
3. Position the PCA cradle on the bracket.

Figure 4-86 Position the PCA cradle



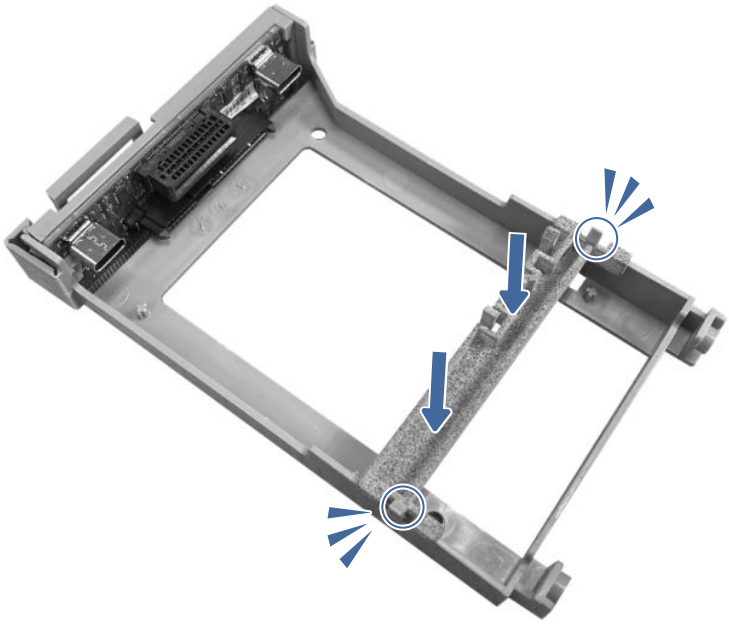
4. Close two clips at the end of the bracket to secure the PCA cradle.

Figure 4-87 Close the clips



5. Install the support cross member onto the bracket.

Figure 4-88 Install the cross member



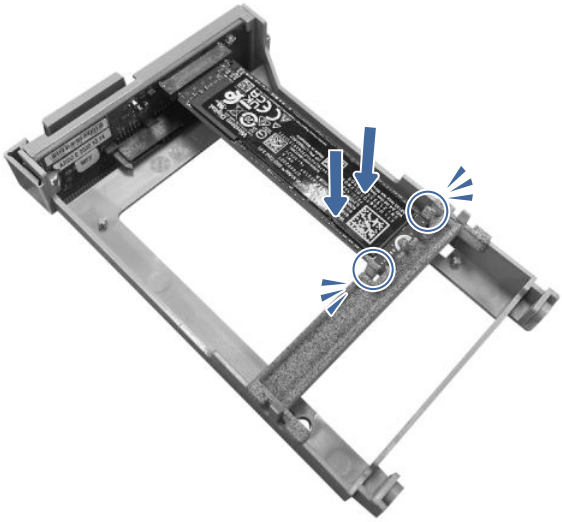
6. Align the SSD card with the connector on the PCA. Note how the end of the SSD is keyed so that it can be installed one way only.

Figure 4-89 **Align the SSD card**



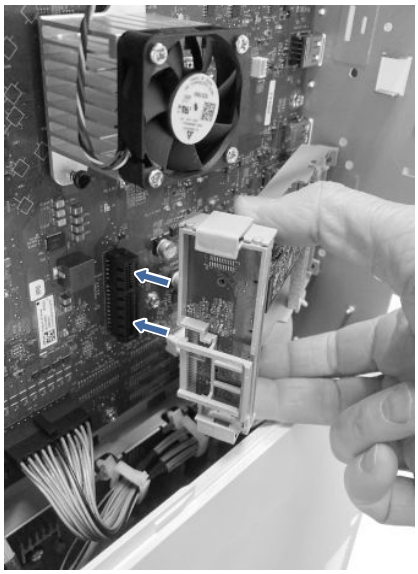
7. Seat the SSD in the PCA connector, and then snap the other end of the SSD on the cross member.

Figure 4-90 **Secure the SSD on the cross member**



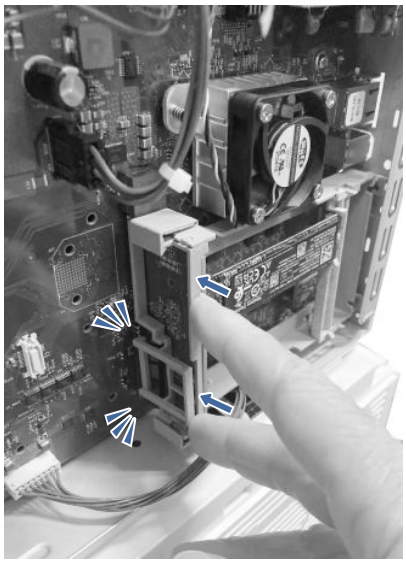
8. Align the bracket assembly with the formatter connector.

Figure 4-91 Align the bracket assembly



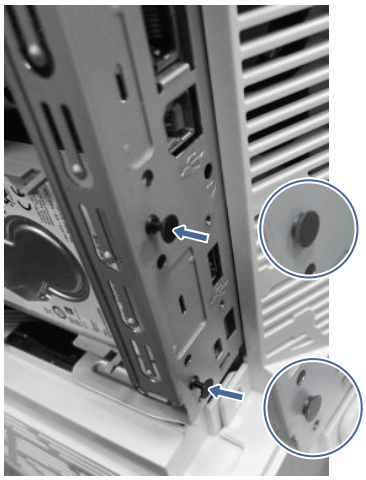
9. Press the bracket assembly to firmly seat it in the formatter connector.

Figure 4-92 Install the bracket assembly



10. Install two pins to secure the bracket assembly to the formatter faceplate.

Figure 4-93 Install two pins



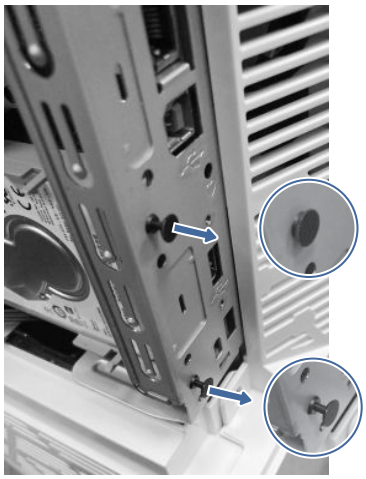
4. Install the SSD card with the HDD

Learn how to install the SSD card with an HDD.

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

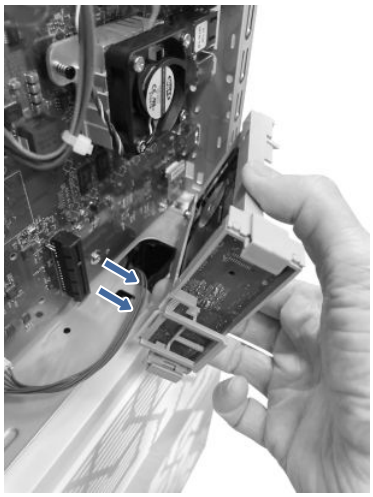
1. Release two pins from the formatter faceplate.

Figure 4-94 Release two pins



2. Remove the HDD assembly

Figure 4-95 Remove the HDD



3. Open two clips on the HDD bracket.

Figure 4-96 Open two clips



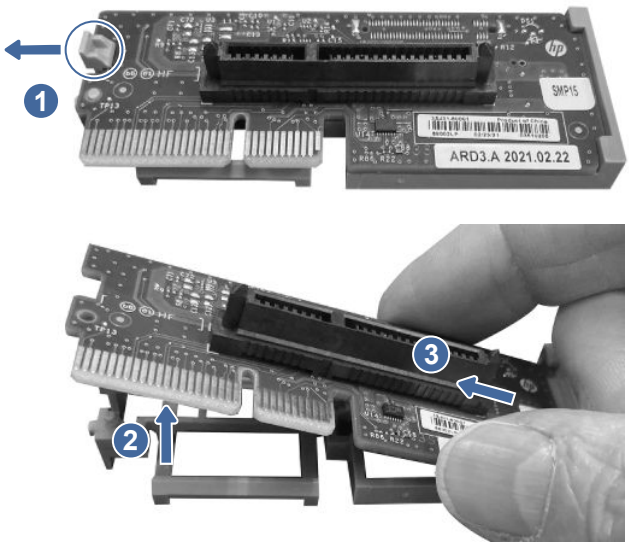
4. Remove the PCA cradle from the HDD bracket.

Figure 4-97 **Remove the PCA cradle**



5. Release one tab (callout 1), raise the end of the PCA up and off the cradle (callout 2), and then remove the PCA from the cradle (callout 3).

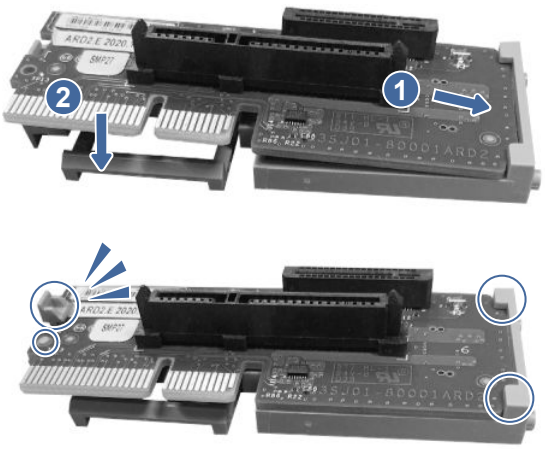
Figure 4-98 **Remove the PCA from the holder**



6. Place one end of the new PCA on the cradle (callout 1), and then rotate the other end down onto the cradle (callout 2). Make sure to orientate the PCA on the cradle as shown. Push down on the PCA to install it on the cradle (an audible click is heard when it snaps into place).

NOTE: Make sure that the PCA is firmly seated under the clips on the cradle.

Figure 4-99 Install the PCA in the cradle



7. Align the PCA cradle with the bracket.

Figure 4-100 Align the PCA cradle



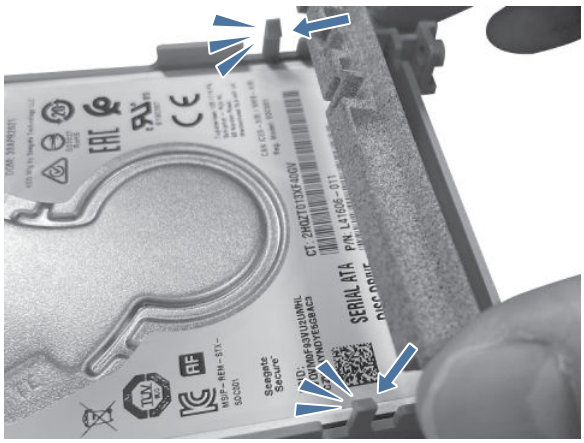
8. Close two clips to secure the PCA cradle to the bracket.

Figure 4-101 Close two clips



9. Install the support cross member onto the bracket.

Figure 4-102 Install the support cross member



10. Align the SSD card with the PCA connector. Note how the end of the SSD is keyed so that it can be installed one way only.

Figure 4-103 Align the SSD card



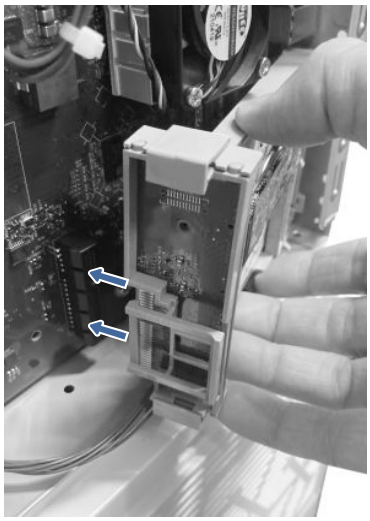
11. Seat the SSD in the PCA connector, and then snap the other end of the SSD on the cross member.

Figure 4-104 Secure the SSD on the cross member



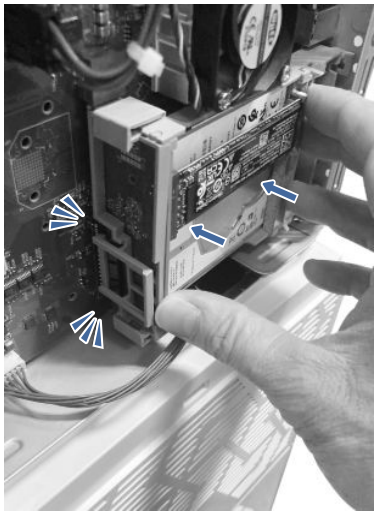
12. Align the bracket assembly with the formatter connector.

Figure 4-105 **Align the bracket assembly**



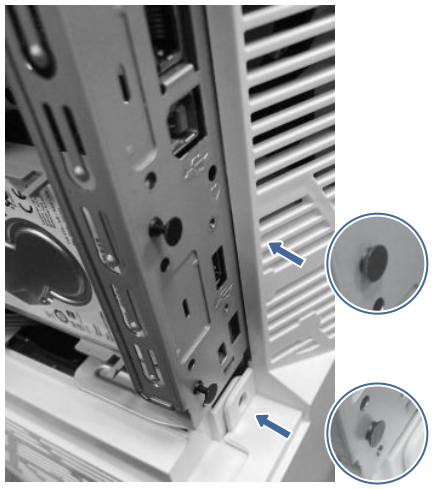
13. Press the bracket assembly to firmly seat it in the formatter connector.

Figure 4-106 **Install the bracket assembly**



14. Install two pins to secure the bracket assembly to the formatter faceplate.

Figure 4-107 **Install two pins**



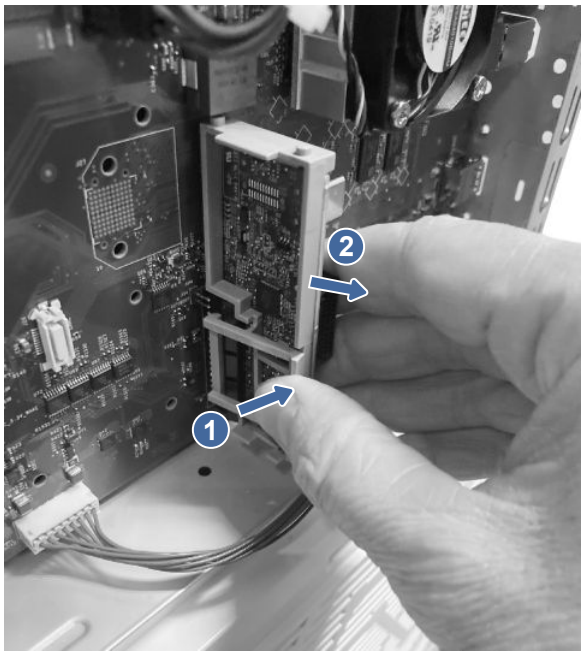
5. Install the SSD card with USB

Learn how to install the SSD card with a USB card.

⚠ **CAUTION:** ESD sensitive part.

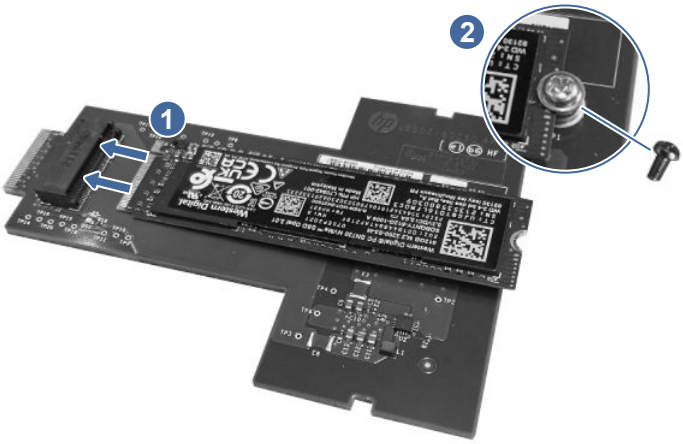
1. Remove the USB PCA from the formatter connector.

Figure 4-108 **Remove the USB PCA**



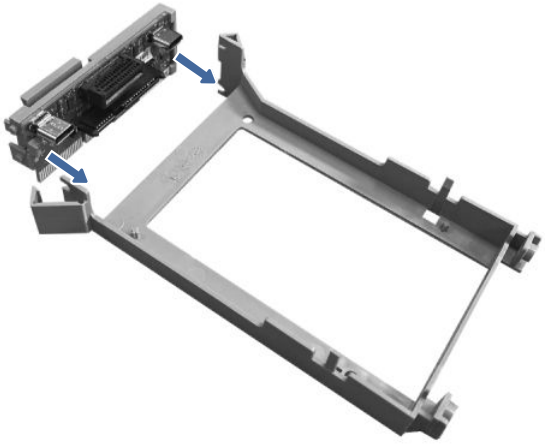
2. Install the SSD card on the board.

Figure 4-109 **Install the SSD card**



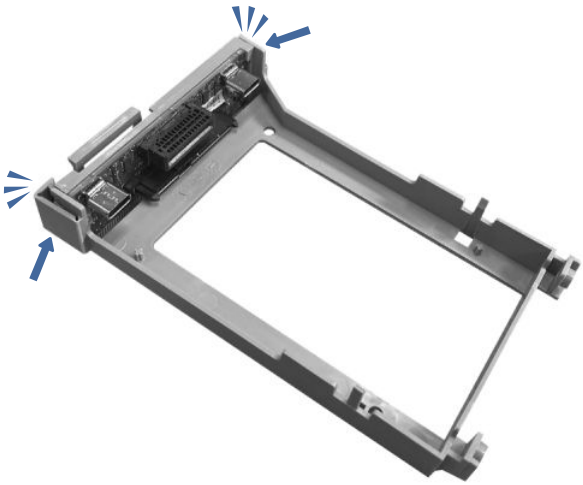
3. Position the PCA cradle on the bracket.

Figure 4-110 **Position the PCA cradle**



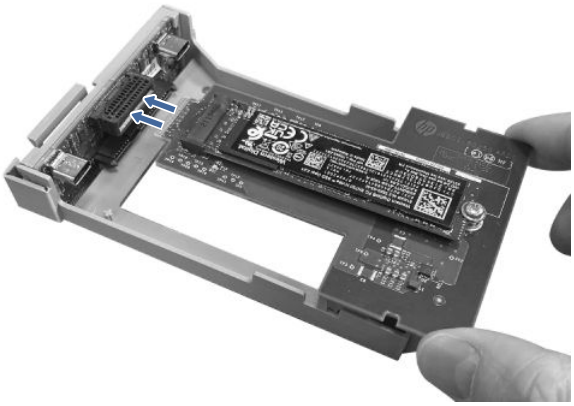
4. Close two clips to secure the PCA cradle to the bracket.

Figure 4-111 **Close two clips**



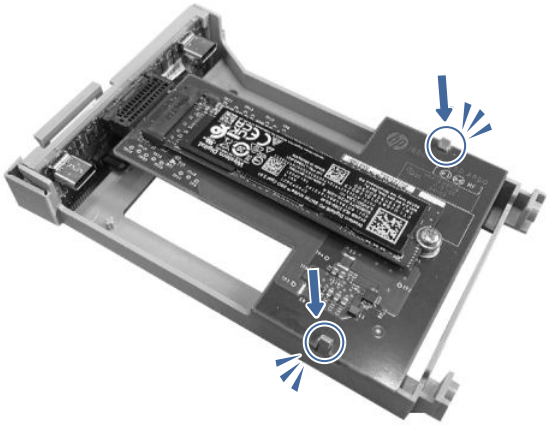
5. Insert the board into the PCA connector.

Figure 4-112 **Insert the board**



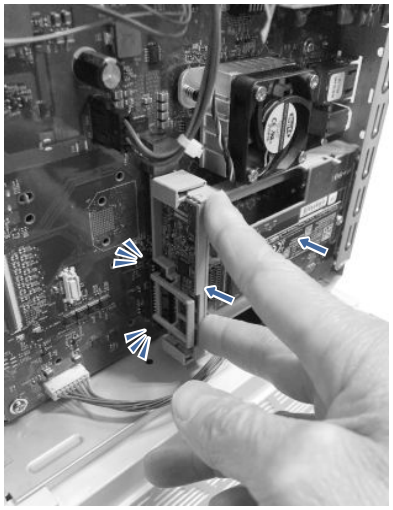
6. Secure the board to the bracket (an audible click is heard when it snaps into place).

Figure 4-113 **Secure the board to the bracket**



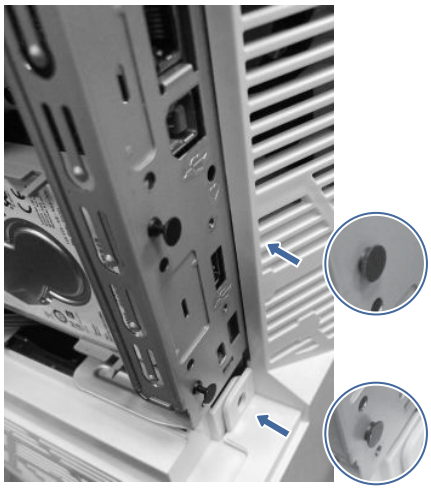
7. Align the bracket assembly with the formatter connector, and then press the bracket assembly to firmly seat it in the formatter connector.

Figure 4-114 Install the bracket assembly



8. Install two pins to secure the bracket assembly to the formatter faceplate.

Figure 4-115 Install two pins

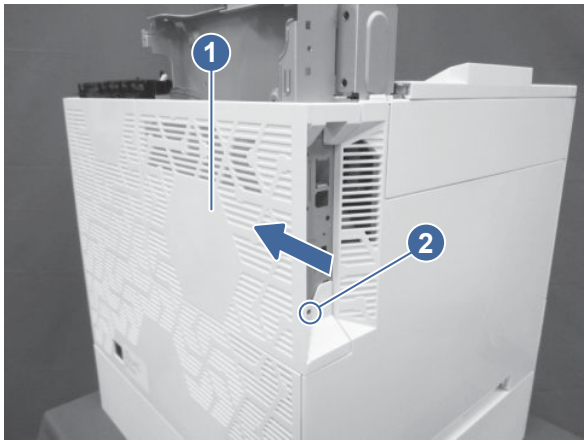


6. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover (callout 1) onto the printer, and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure it.

Figure 4-116 Install the cover



Removal and replacement: Near field communication (NFC) PCA (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the NFC PCA.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the NFC PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-21 Part information

Part number	Part description
1M0Q3A	HP JetDirect 3200w BLE/Wireless accessory
3JN69A	HP JetDirect 3100w BLE/NFC/Wireless accessory

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the HIP cover

Follow these steps to remove the HIP cover.

1. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release the tabs on the HIP cover.

   Figure 4-117 Release the cover

2. Rotate the cover up and off of the printer to remove it.

   Figure 4-118 Remove the cover

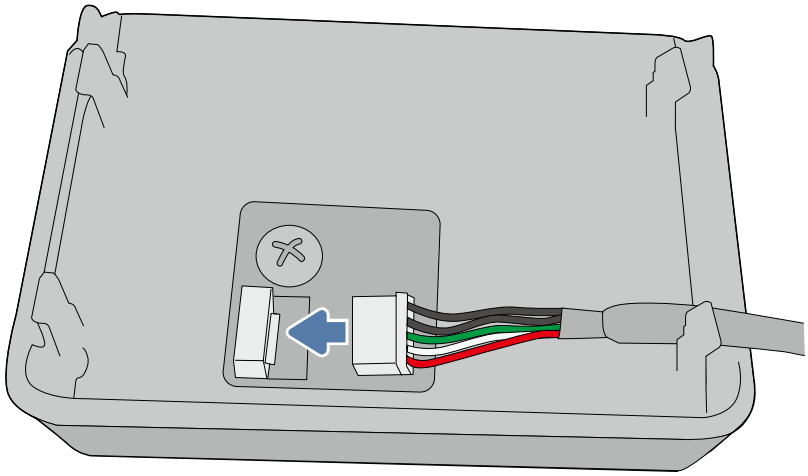
2. Install the wireless print server with NFC

Learn how to install the wireless print server with NFC.

⚠ CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

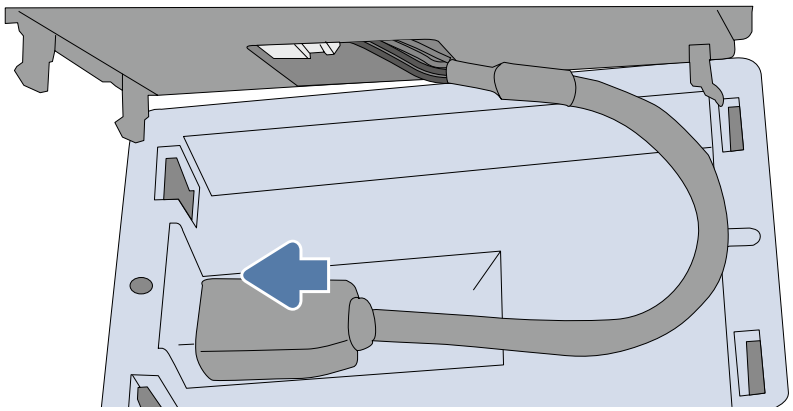
1. Connect the USB cable to the print server.

Figure 4-119 **Connect the USB cable to the print server**



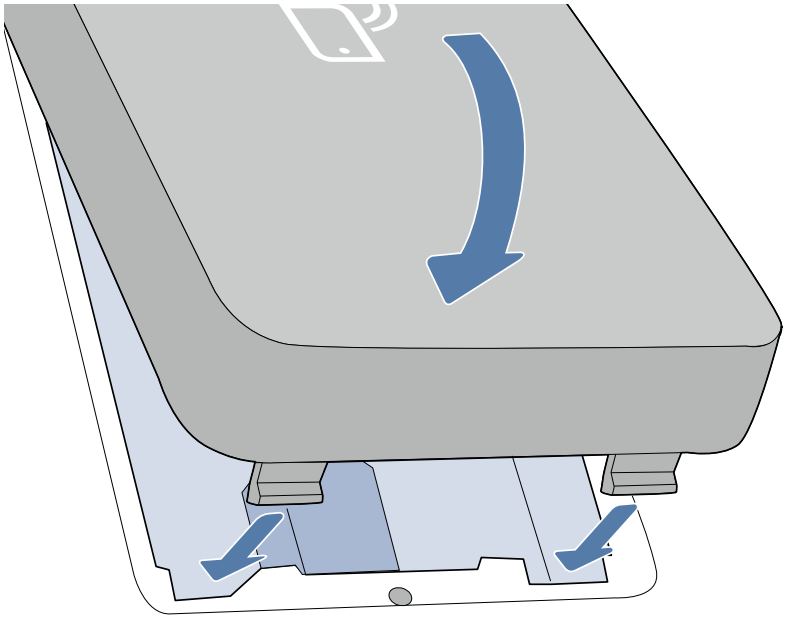
2. Connect the USB cable to the HIP port.

Figure 4-120 **Connect the USB cable to the HIP port**



3. Install the printer server in the HIP cavity.

Figure 4-121 **Install the printer server**



Removal and replacement: embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC) (SFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC).

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the eMMC.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-22 Part information

Part number	Part description
B5L32-60002	eMMC 16GB

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

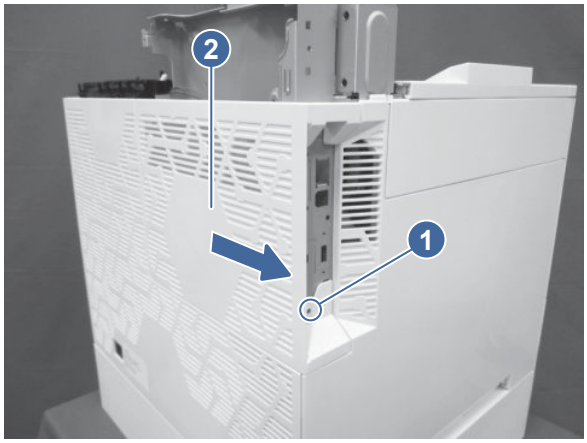
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-122 Remove the formatter cover



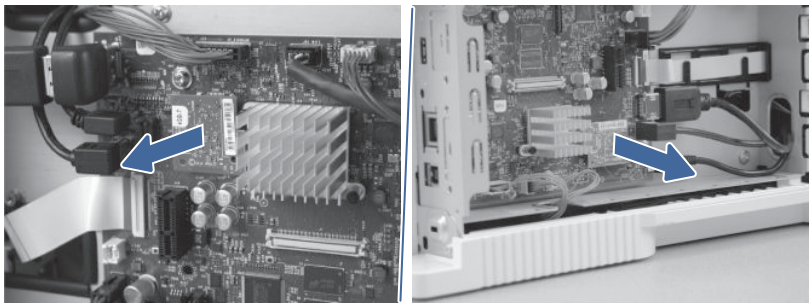
2. Remove the embedded MultiMedia Card (eMMC)

Follow these steps to remove the eMMC.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

- Locate the eMMC component on the formatter, and then pull it straight off of the formatter to remove it.

Figure 4-123 Remove the eMMC (SFP/MFP)



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

4. Install the eMMC

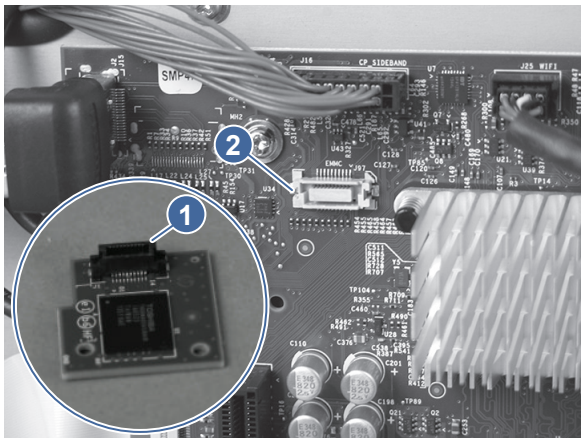
Follow these steps to install the eMMC.

CAUTION: ESD sensitive part.

1. Align the connector on the replacement eMMC (callout 1) with the connector on the formatter (callout 2), and then push the eMMC onto the formatter to install it.

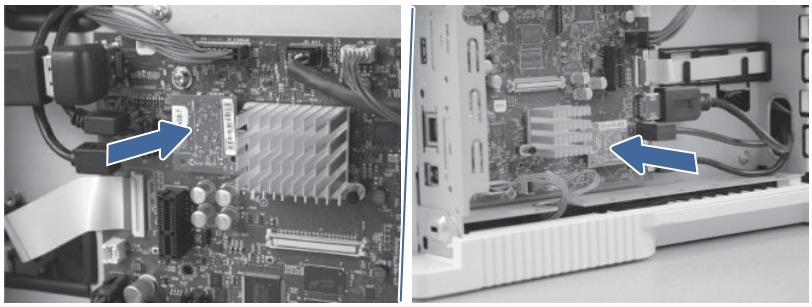
NOTE: The eMMC can only be installed in one direction on the formatter

Figure 4-124 Install the eMMC



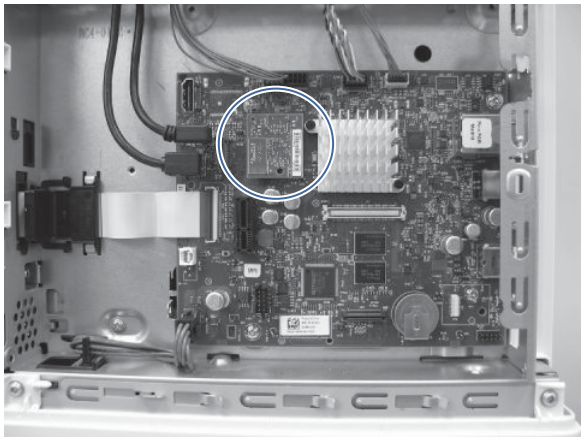
2. Push in on the eMMC to install it in the connector.

Figure 4-125 Install the eMMC (SFP/MFP)



3. Verify that the eMMC is fully seated in the connector.

Figure 4-126 Verify the installation

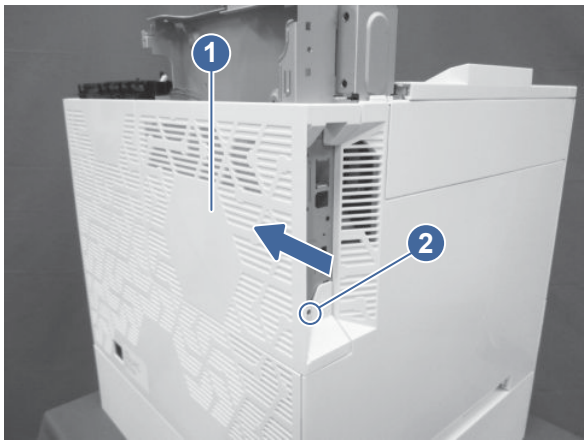


5. Install the formatter cover

Follow these steps to install the formatter cover.

- Slide the cover (callout 1) onto the printer, and then install one screw (callout 2) to secure it.

Figure 4-127 Install the cover



Document feeder / scanner

Learn about document feeder and scanner parts removal and replacement.

Field-replaceable units (FRUs)

Learn about FRU parts removal and replacement.

Internal parts and assemblies

Learn how to remove and replace the printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Scanner control board (SCB) (MFP models)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the scanner control board (SCB).

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-23 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-8961	Scanner control interconnect board (SCIB) (6xxxx Series)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

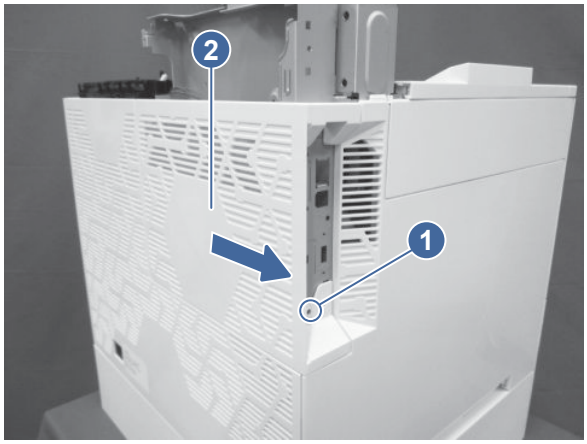
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-128 Remove the formatter cover



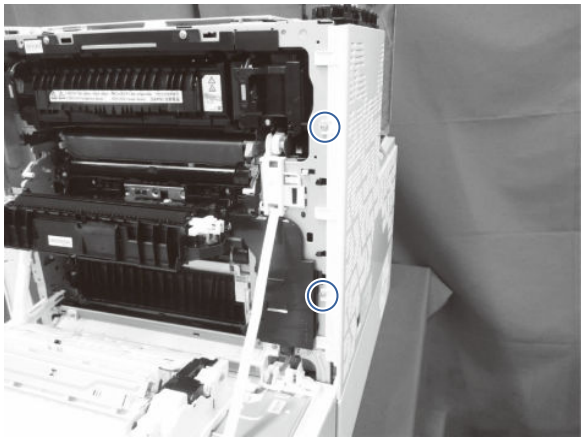
2. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

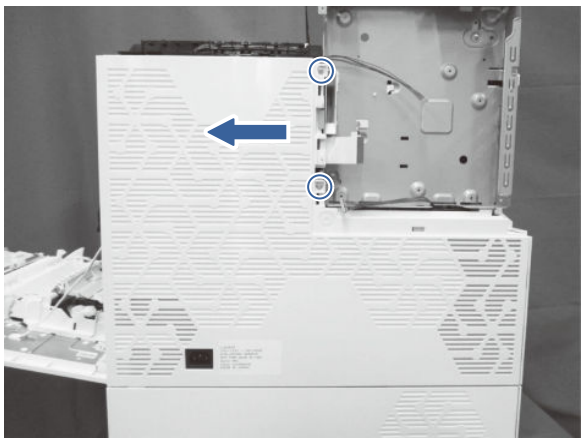
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-129 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-130 Remove the rear cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

NOTE: The task below shows the rear upper cover on a 6800zfsw model. The cover on your model might look different, but the process is the same.

- Remove two screws, pry the right side away from printer, and then pull the cover in the direction indicated.

Figure 4-131 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

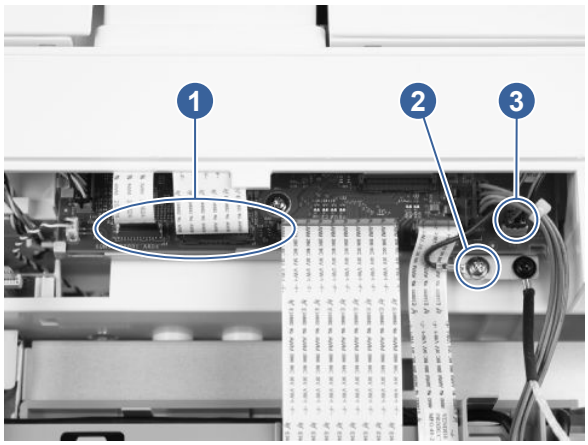
TIP: These are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling, rotate the screw counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw hole.

Figure 4-132 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1), remove one ground screw (callout 2) to release the grounding cable, and then disconnect the indicated connectors (callout 3) on the scanner control board.

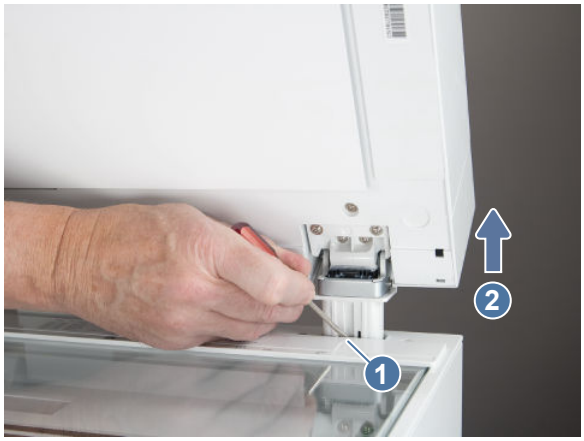
Figure 4-133 Disconnect the flat cable, ground cable, and connectors



3. Tilt the document feeder back until it stops, and then lift it off of the scanner until it stops.

4. Support the document feeder, and then use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the document feeder hinges.

Figure 4-134 Release two tabs



5. Lift the document feeder up to remove it.

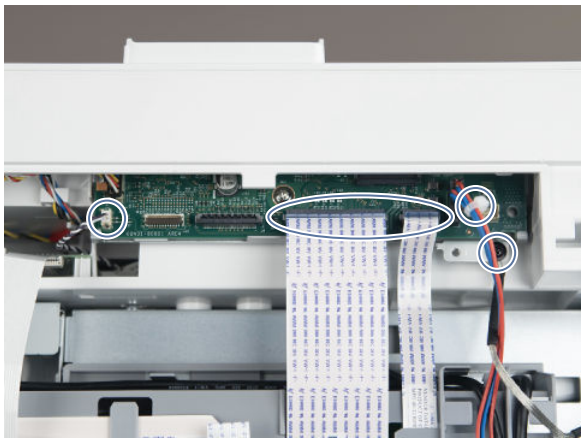
NOTE: While removing the document feeder, carefully pass the cables through the cable channel in the scanner bed.

5. Remove the flatbed scanner assembly

Follow these steps to remove the sub-scanner assembly (SSA).

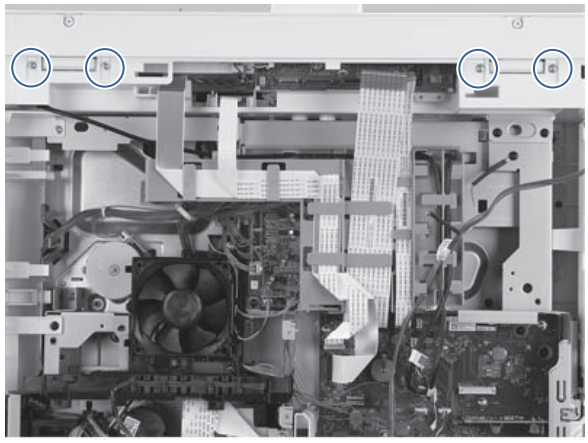
1. On the SCB, disconnect the cables indicated below.

Figure 4-135 Disconnect SCB connectors



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 4-136 **Remove four screws**



3. Pull the scan unit up to remove it from the printer.

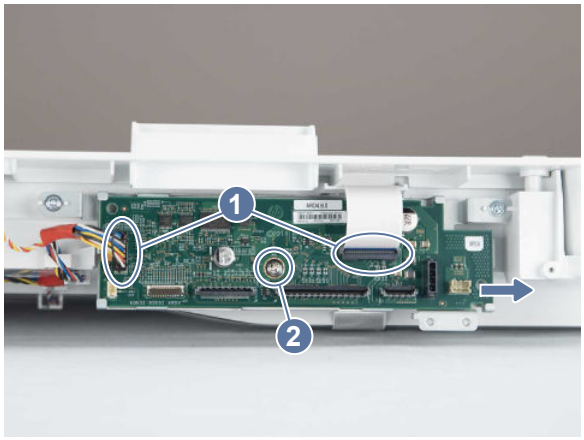
NOTE: Carefully ensure that the cables do not catch on the cable guides as you lift the assembly.

6. Remove the scanner control board (SCB)

Follow these steps to remove the scanner control board (SCB).

- On the SCB, disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2). Slide the SCB to the right, and then remove it from the integrated scanner assembly.

Figure 4-137 **Disconnect connectors**



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: White backing (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the document feeder white backing.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-24 Part information

Part number	Part description
5851-8850	ADF white backing kit (5800/X57945 models)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Whole-unit replacement (WUR)

Learn about WUR parts removal and replacement.

Automatic document feeder (WUR)

Learn about automatic document feeder whole-unit replacement.

Removal and replacement: Document feeder (MFP models)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the document feeder (MFP).

Mean time to repair: 20 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-25 Part information

Part number	Part description
C0M44-67002	ADF WUR (5xxx Series Non-Workflow)
C0M44-67003	ADF WUR (5xxx Series Workflow)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip.
- Small flat-blade screwdriver.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Use the document feeder to make a copy to make sure that it is properly functioning.

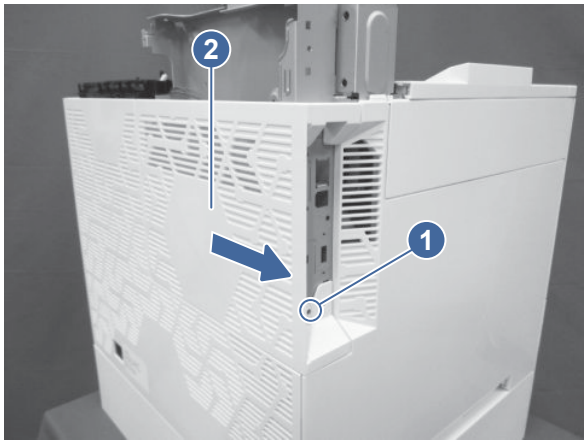
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-138 Remove the formatter cover



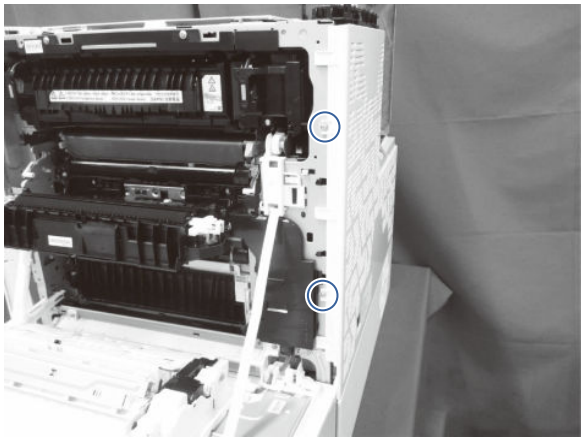
2. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

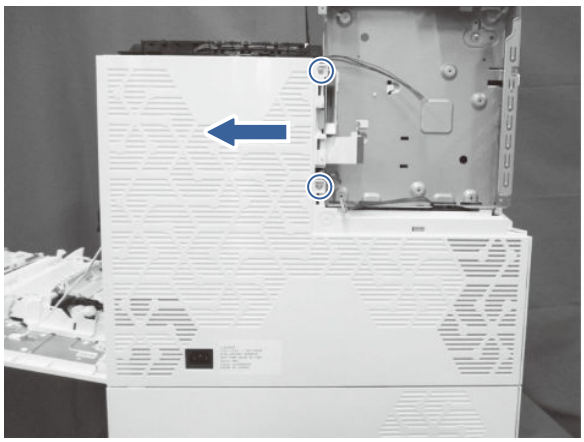
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-139 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-140 Remove the rear cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

NOTE: The task below shows the rear upper cover on a 6800zfsw model. The cover on your model might look different, but the process is the same.

- Remove two screws, pry the right side away from printer, and then pull the cover in the direction indicated.

Figure 4-141 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

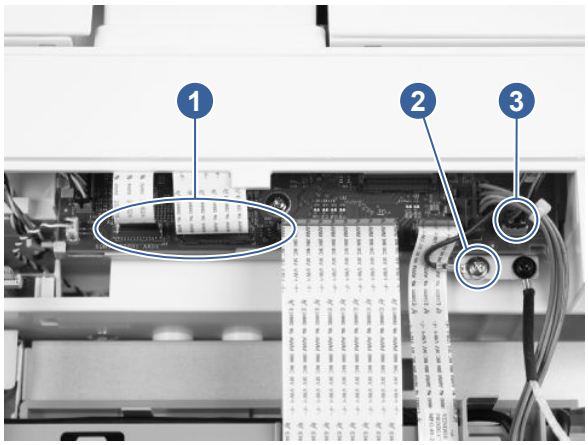
TIP: These are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling, rotate the screw counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw hole.

Figure 4-142 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1), remove one ground screw (callout 2) to release the grounding cable, and then disconnect the indicated connectors (callout 3) on the scanner control board.

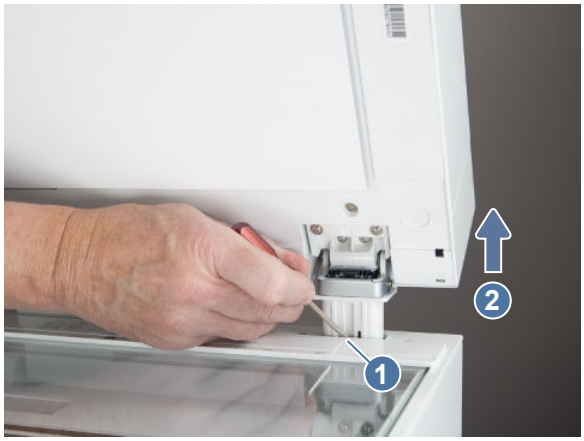
Figure 4-143 Disconnect the flat cable, ground cable, and connectors



3. Tilt the document feeder back until it stops, and then lift it off of the scanner until it stops.

4. Support the document feeder, and then use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the document feeder hinges.

Figure 4-144 Release two tabs



5. Lift the document feeder up to remove it.

NOTE: While removing the document feeder, carefully pass the cables through the cable channel in the scanner bed.

5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Integrated scanner assembly (WUR)

Learn about integrated scanner assembly (ISA) whole-unit replacement.

Removal and replacement: Flatbed scanner assembly (MFP models)

Learn how to remove and replace the sub-scanner assembly (SSA).

Mean time to repair: 22 minutes

Service level: Medium

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

NOTE: The integrated scanner assembly (ISA) includes the sub-scanner assembly (SSA) and the automatic document feeder (ADF).

Table 4-26 **Part information**

Part number	Part description
6QN29-67005	Flatbed scanner (5xxx Series)

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Make sure that the printer initializes to a **Ready** state.

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

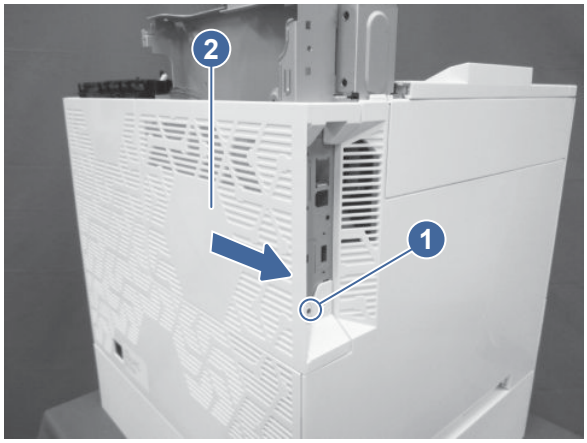
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-145 Remove the formatter cover



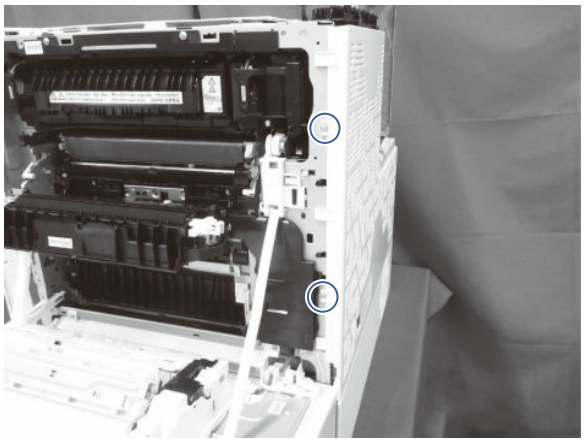
2. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

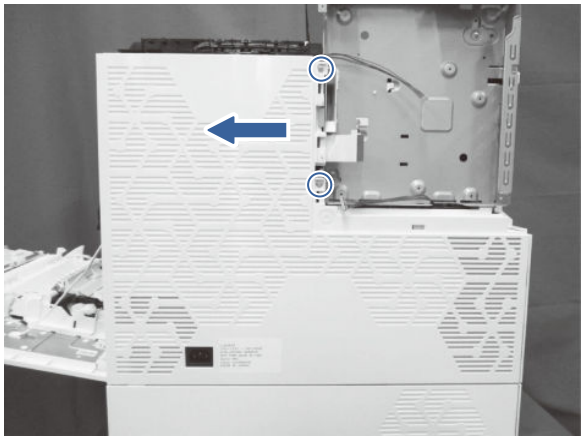
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-146 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-147 Remove the rear cover



3. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

NOTE: The task below shows the rear upper cover on a 6800zfsw model. The cover on your model might look different, but the process is the same.

- Remove two screws, pry the right side away from printer, and then pull the cover in the direction indicated.

Figure 4-148 Remove the cover



4. Remove the document feeder

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

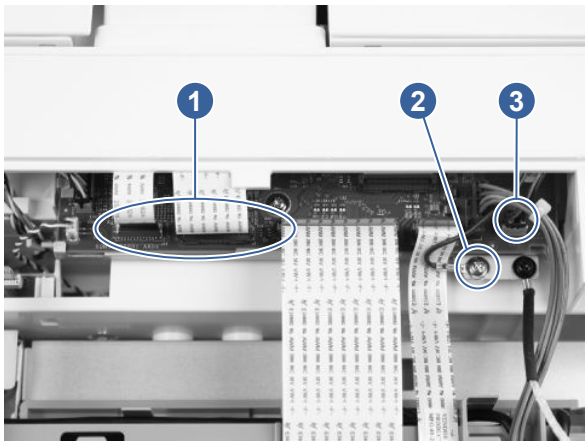
TIP: These are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling, rotate the screw counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw hole.

Figure 4-149 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1), remove one ground screw (callout 2) to release the grounding cable, and then disconnect the indicated connectors (callout 3) on the scanner control board.

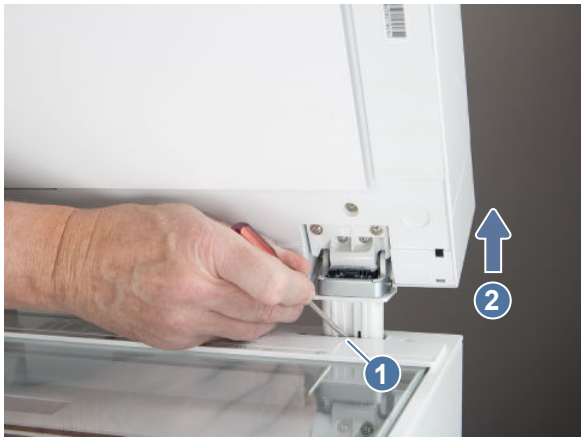
Figure 4-150 Disconnect the flat cable, ground cable, and connectors



3. Tilt the document feeder back until it stops, and then lift it off of the scanner until it stops.

4. Support the document feeder, and then use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the document feeder hinges.

Figure 4-151 Release two tabs



5. Lift the document feeder up to remove it.

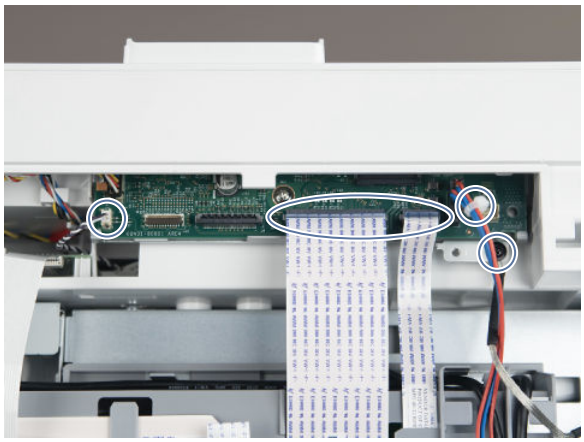
NOTE: While removing the document feeder, carefully pass the cables through the cable channel in the scanner bed.

5. Remove the flatbed scanner assembly

Follow these steps to remove the sub-scanner assembly (SSA).

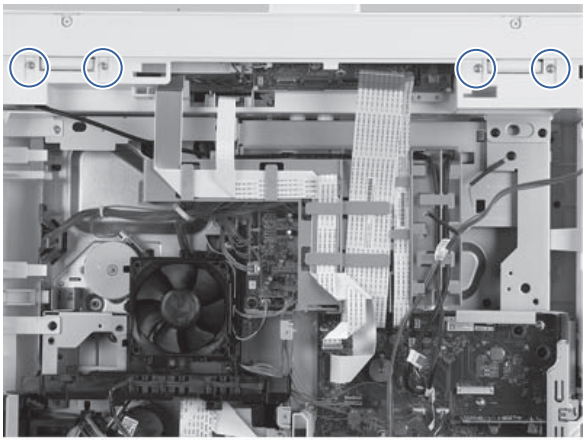
1. On the SCB, disconnect the cables indicated below.

Figure 4-152 Disconnect SCB connectors



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 4-153 **Remove four screws**



3. Pull the scan unit up to remove it from the printer.

NOTE: Carefully ensure that the cables do not catch on the cable guides as you lift the assembly.

6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Internal parts and assemblies (base printer)

Learn how to remove and replace the base printer internal parts and assemblies.

Field-replaceable units (FRUs)

Learn about FRU parts removal and replacement.

Covers, panels, and doors

Learn about covers, panels, and doors removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Formatter cover

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter cover.

NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

5800dn, 5800f, 5800zf, X57945dn, X58045dn, X57945z, X58045z, 6800dn, 6800zf, 6800zfw+, 6801zfw+, X677dn, X677z+, X67755dn, X67765dn, X67755z+, and X67765z+

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-27 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4480-000CN	Formatter cover assembly(all models)
RM2-4530-000CN	Formatter cover assembly(Sub-cover MFP models only)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

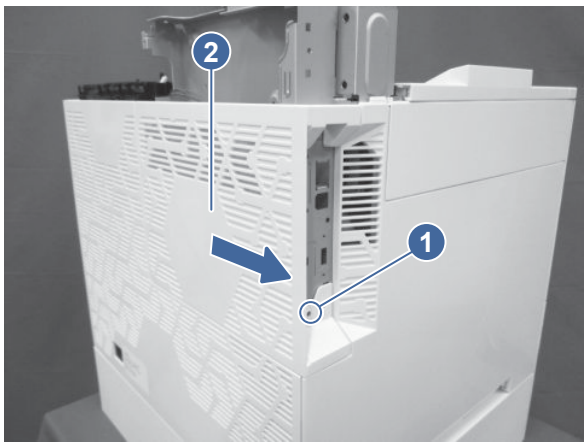
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-154 Remove the formatter cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter cover

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter cover.

NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-28 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4480-000CN	Formatter cover assembly(all models)
RM2-4530-000CN	Formatter cover assembly(Sub-cover MFP models only)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

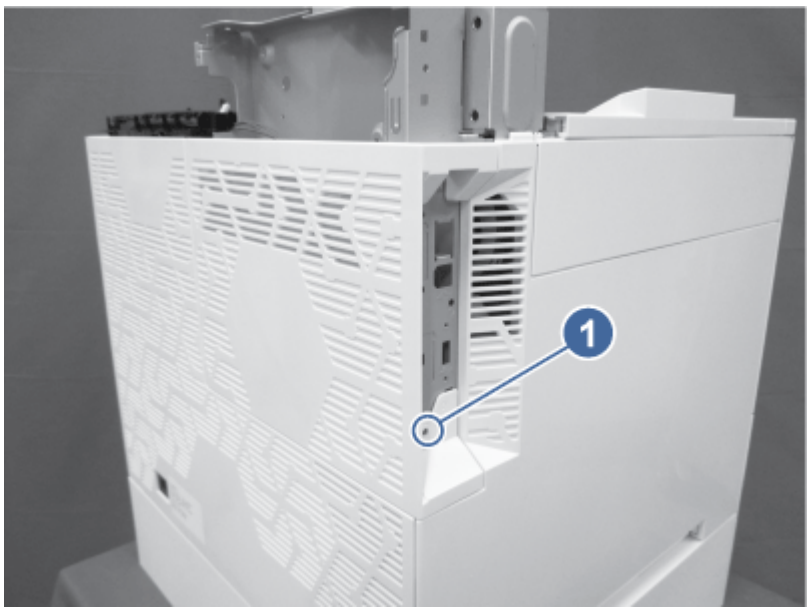
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-155 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using

disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front door

Learn about removing and replacing the front door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-29 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4473-000CN	Front door assembly (5700/5800/X58045dn models)
RM2-4479-000CN	Front door assembly (X57945/X654/X677 models)
RM2-4533-000CN	Front door assembly (X557/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs/6700/6800 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Make sure that the front door correctly opens and closes.

1. Remove Tray 2

Follow these steps to remove Tray 2.

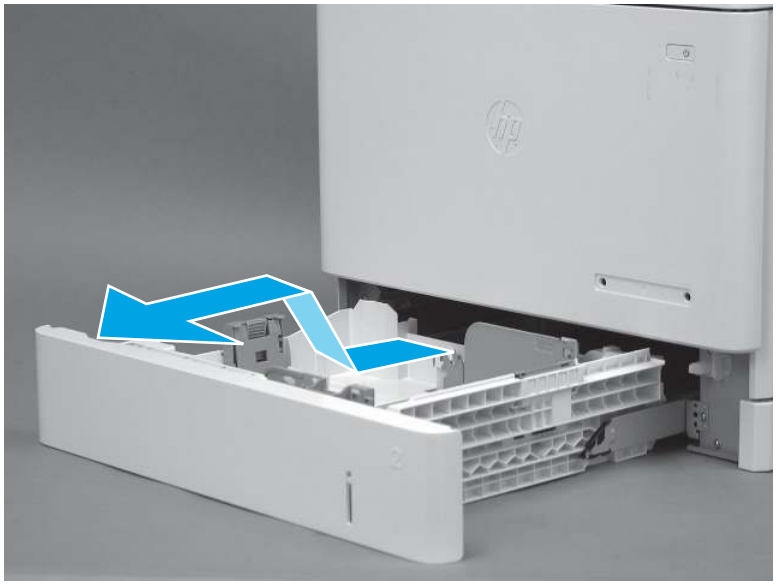
1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 4-156 **Pull the tray out**



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-157 **Remove the tray**



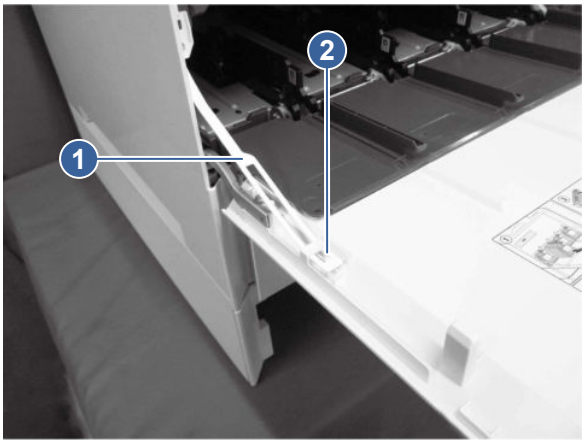
2. Remove the front door

Follow these steps to remove the front door.

1. Open the front door.

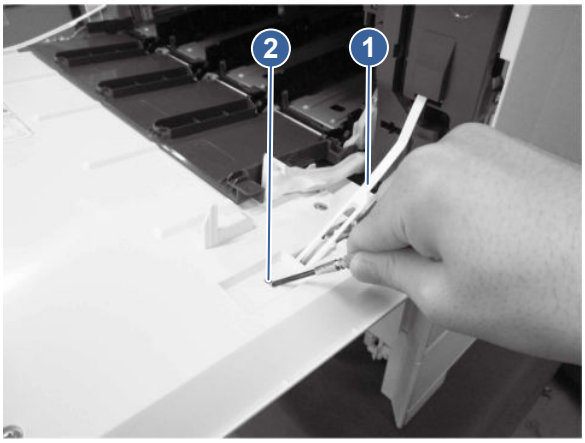
2. At the left side of the door, release the link arm (callout 1) from the clip (callout 2) on the front-door assembly.

Figure 4-158 Release the left link arm



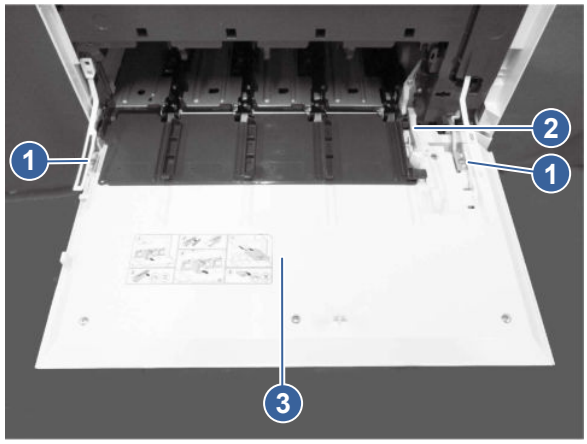
3. At the right side of the door, release the link arm (callout 1) from the clip (callout 2) on the front-door assembly.

Figure 4-159 Release the right link arm



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release the link lever (callout 2) from the front door assembly (callout 3), and then remove the front door.

Figure 4-160 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridge access door (X557/X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner cartridge access door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:** To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the green imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.
>
> If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-30 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3678-000CN	Toner supply door assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Make sure that the toner-cartridge door correctly opens and closes.

1. Remove Tray 2

Follow these steps to remove Tray 2.

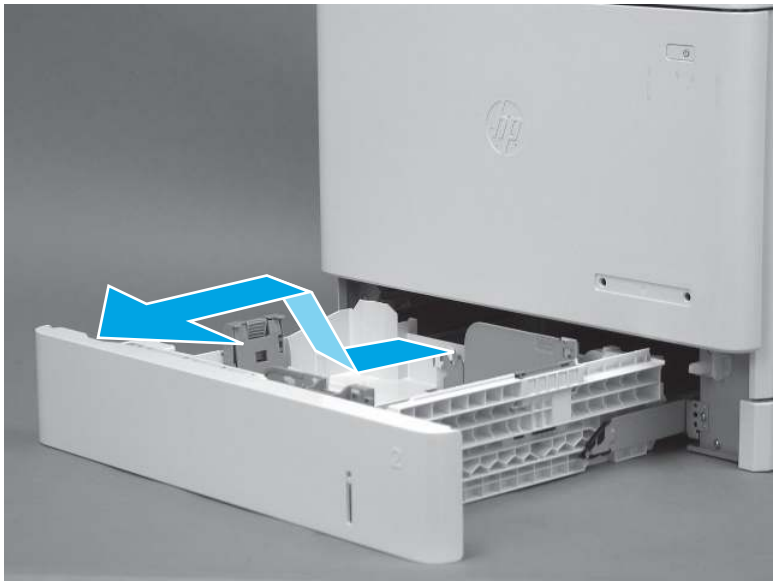
1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 4-161 **Pull the tray out**



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-162 **Remove the tray**



2. Remove the cartridge access door (X557/X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the cartridge access door.

1. Open the cartridge door.

2. At the right- and left-side of the door, remove two screws, and then remove the door.

Figure 4-163 Remove the door



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-31 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9168-000CN	Cover, rear (all models)
RC5-9409-000CN	Cover, rear lower (X57945/X654/X677 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

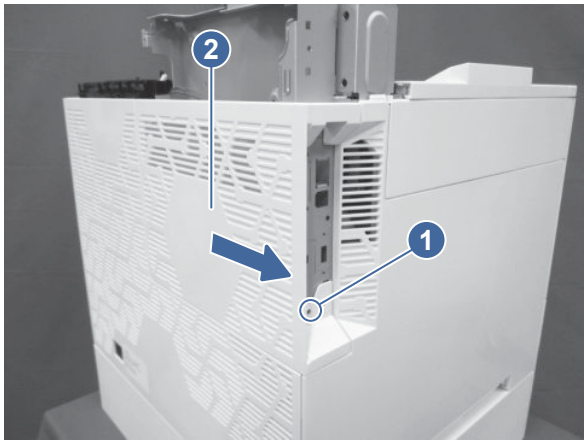
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-164 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

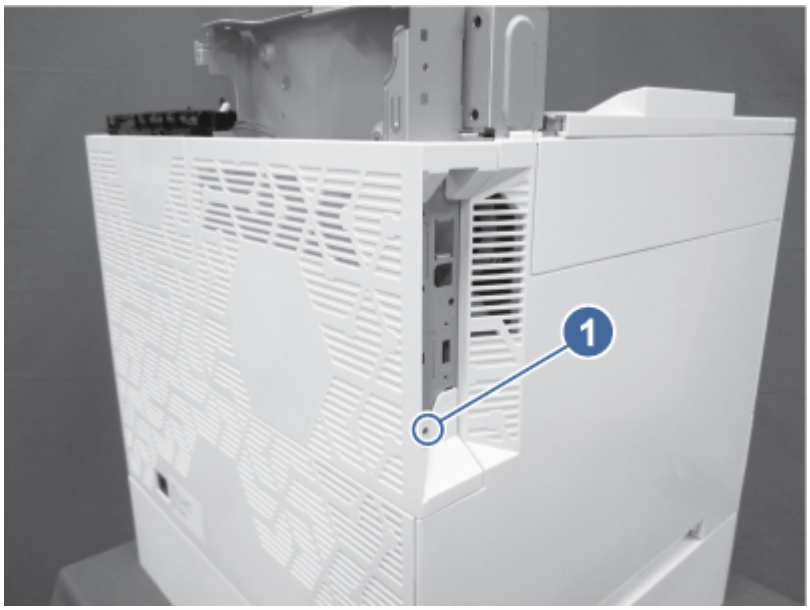
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-165 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



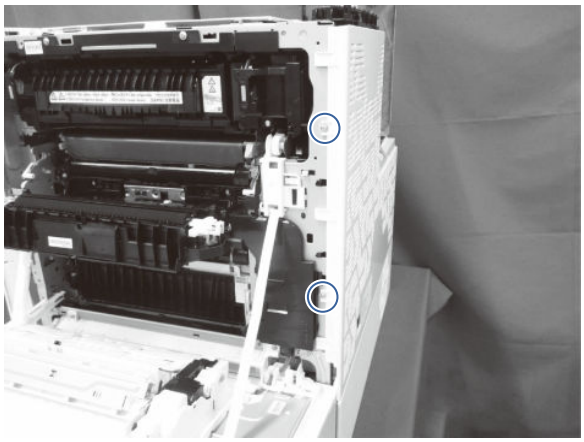
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

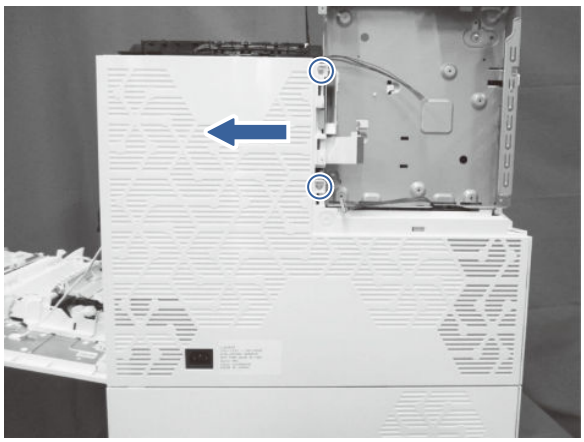
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-166 **Remove two screws**



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-167 Remove the rear cover



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear upper cover (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-32 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC6-1305-000CN	Cover, rear upper
RC6-0223-000CN	Cover, rear upper X58045z, X58045zs models

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

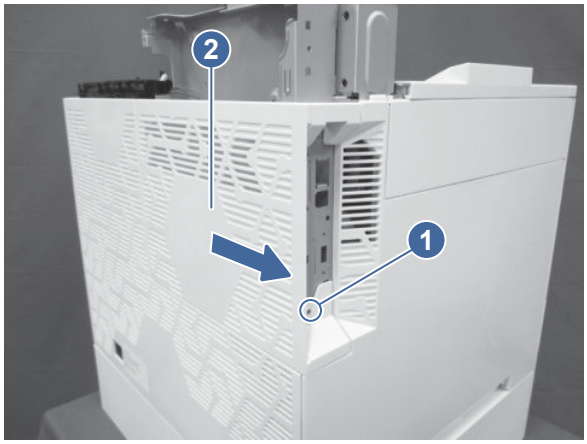
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-168 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

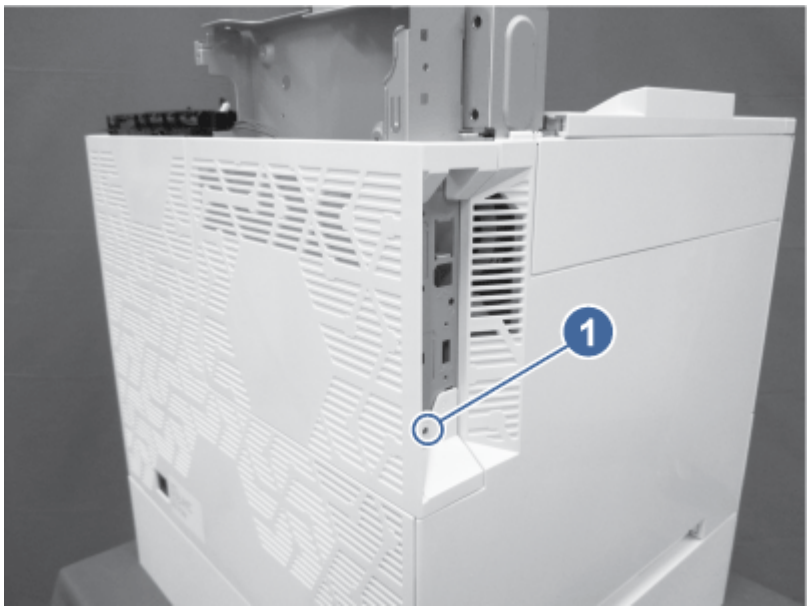
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-169 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



3. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP models 6800dn, 6800zf, 6800zfw+, 6801zfw+, X677dn, X677z+, X67755dn, X67765dn, X67755z+, and X67765z+)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

- Remove the 2 indicated screws the slide the cover slightly to the right and pull the cover away from the engine to remove.

  Figure 4-170 Remove the cover

4. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP models X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

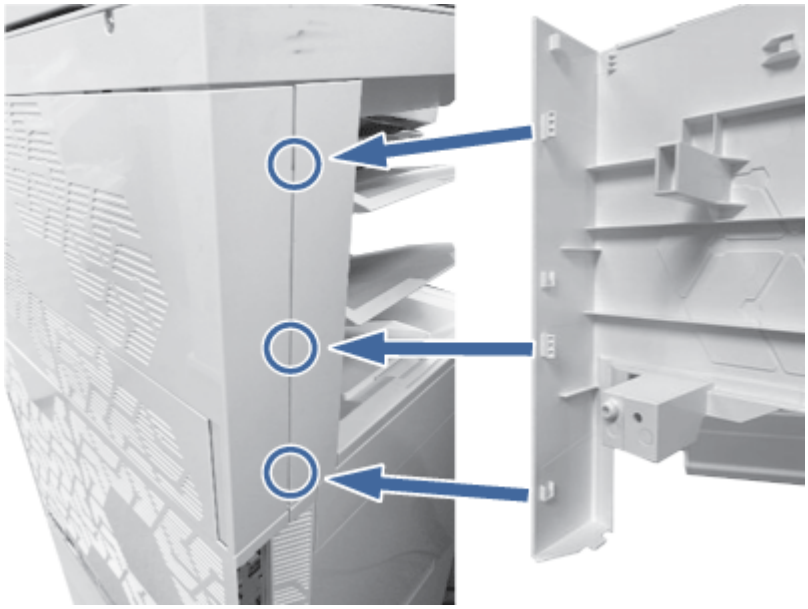
1. Remove the 2 highlighted screws.

   Figure 4-171 Remove 2 screws

2. Using a flat head screwdriver, disengage three snap-fit leavers then pull the cover away from the printer.

Figure 4-172 Remove the cover

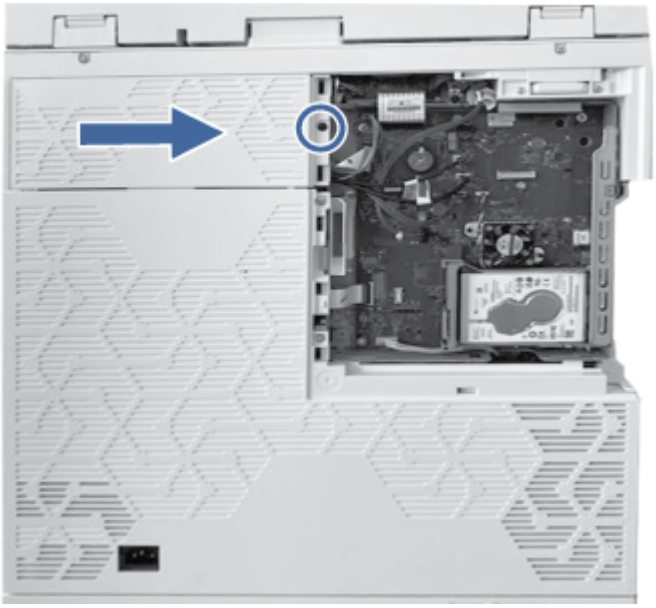


5. Remove the rear upper left cover (MFP models 5800dn, 5800f, 5800zf, X57945dn, X58045dn, X57945z, and X58045z)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

- Remove one screw (callout) and slide the panel to the right to remove it

Figure 4-173 Remove the cover



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left upper cover (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the left upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-33 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9204-000CN	Cover, left upper

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

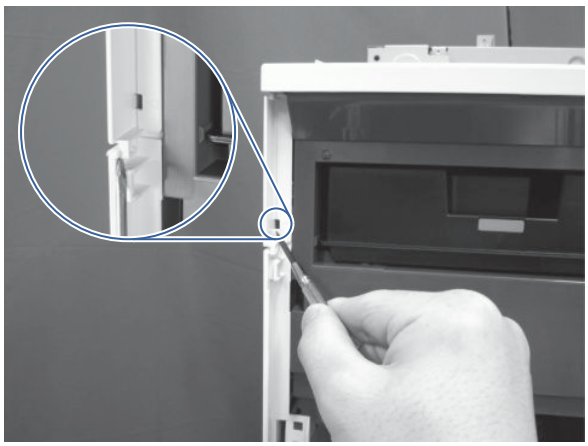
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:** If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

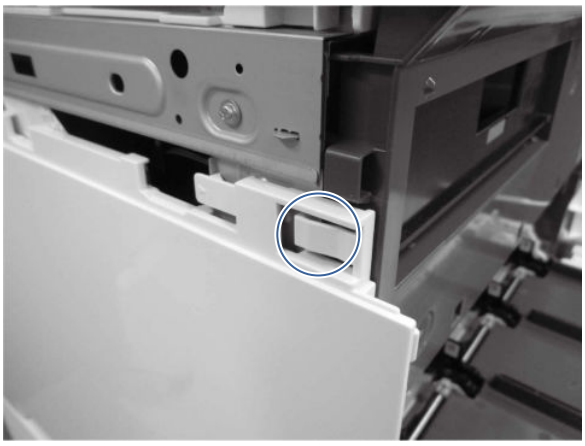
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-174 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



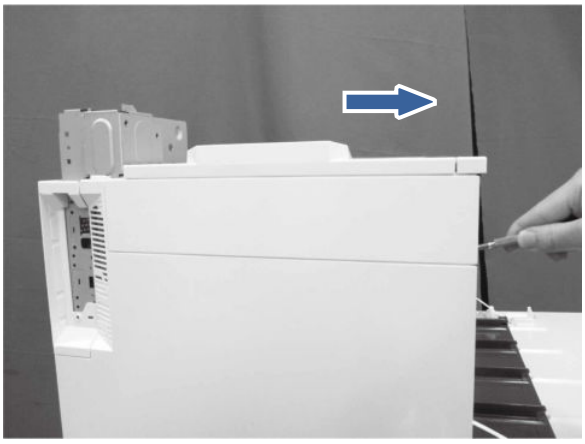
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-175 **Release the tab**



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-176 **Remove the left upper cover**



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the left cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-34 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4535-000CN	Left cover assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

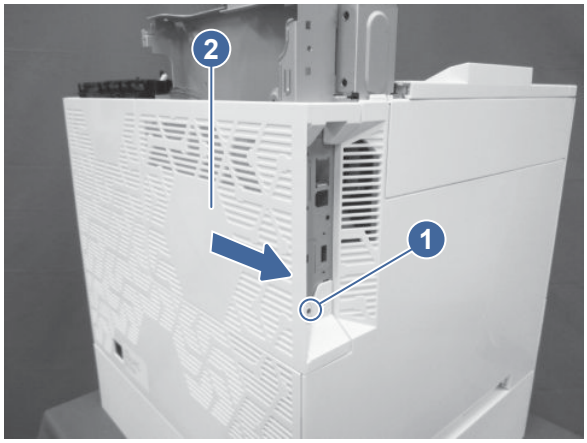
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-177 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

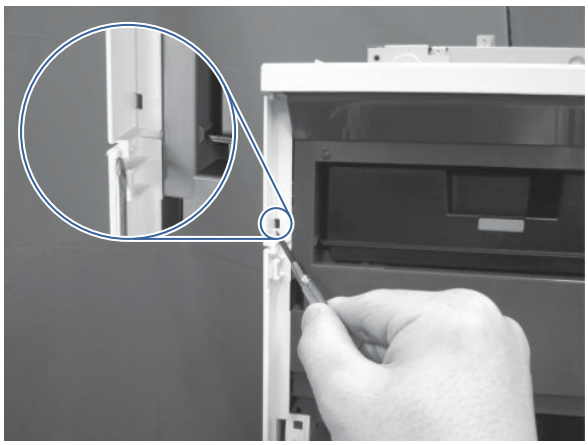
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

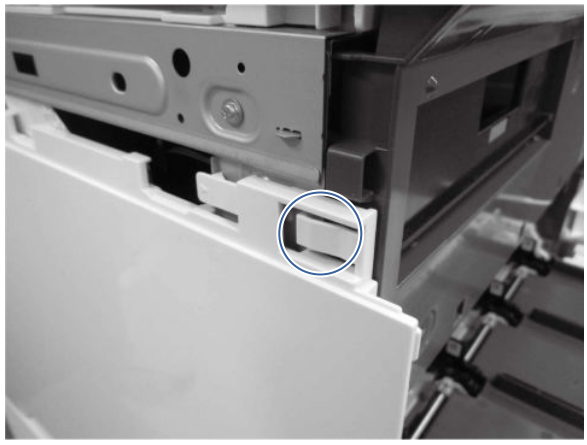
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-178 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



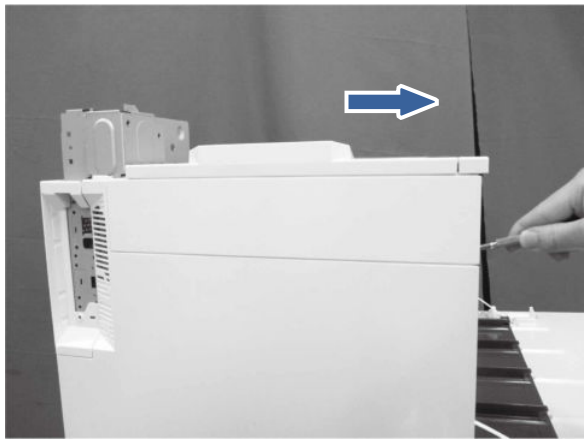
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-179 **Release the tab**



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-180 **Remove the left upper cover**

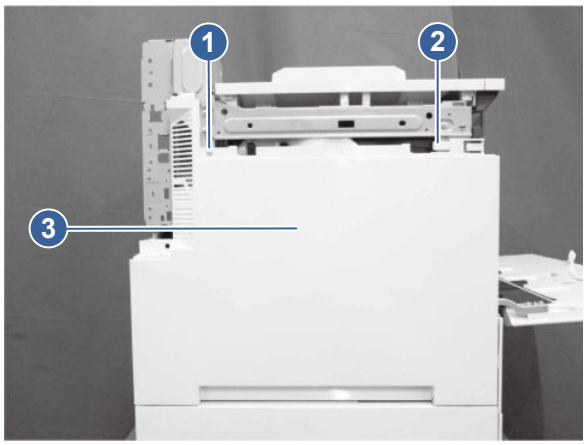


3. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

  Figure 4-181 Remove the left cover

4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left handle

Learn about removing and replacing the left handle.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-35 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9165-000CN	Handle, left

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

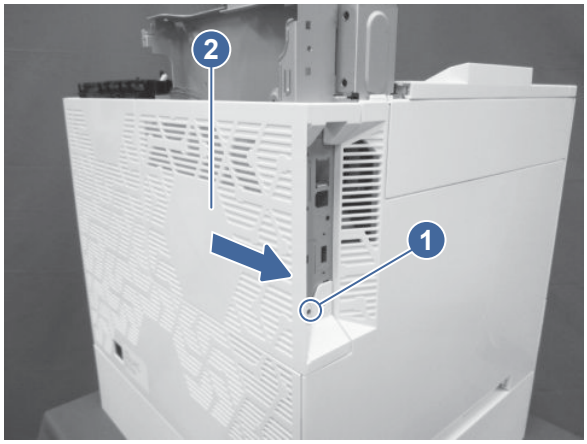
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-182 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

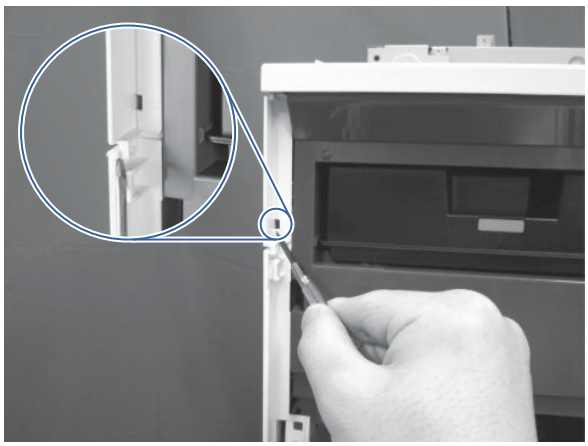
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

⚠ CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

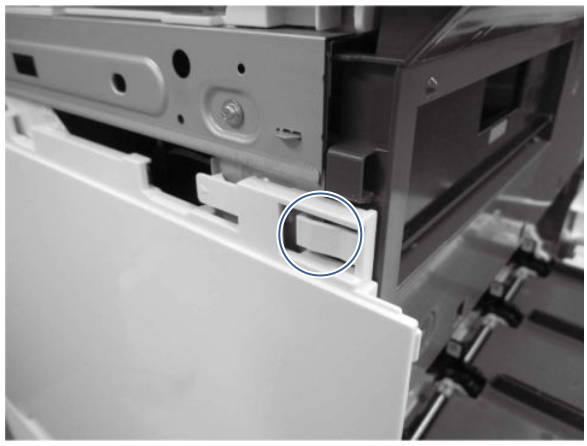
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-183 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



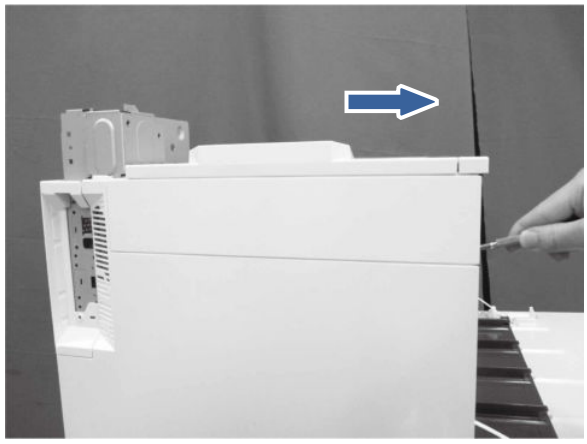
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-184 **Release the tab**



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-185 **Remove the left upper cover**

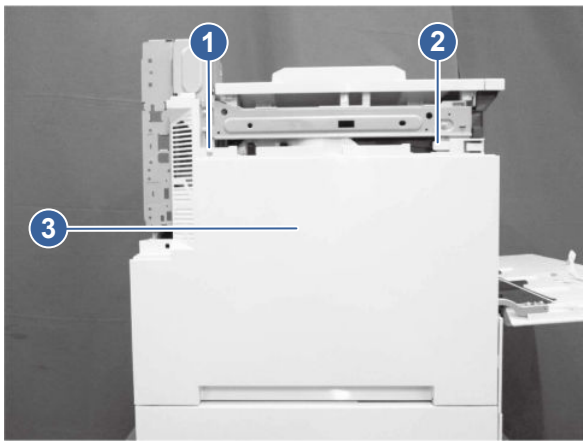


3. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-186 Remove the left cover

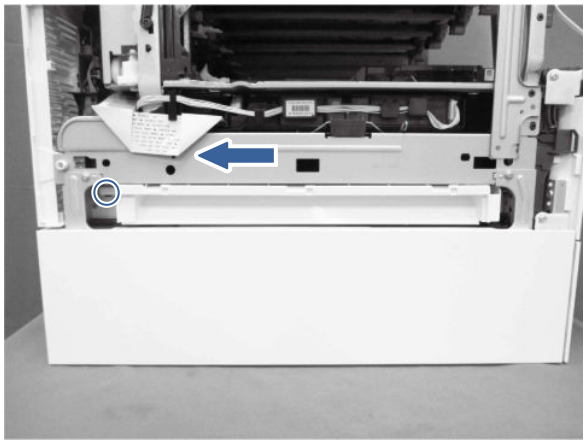


4. Remove the left handle

Follow these steps to remove the left handle.

- At the left side of the printer, release one tab, and then slide the handle as indicated to release it.

Figure 4-187 Remove the handle



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front left cover

Learn about removing and replacing the front left cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-36 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9198-000CN	Cover, front left

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

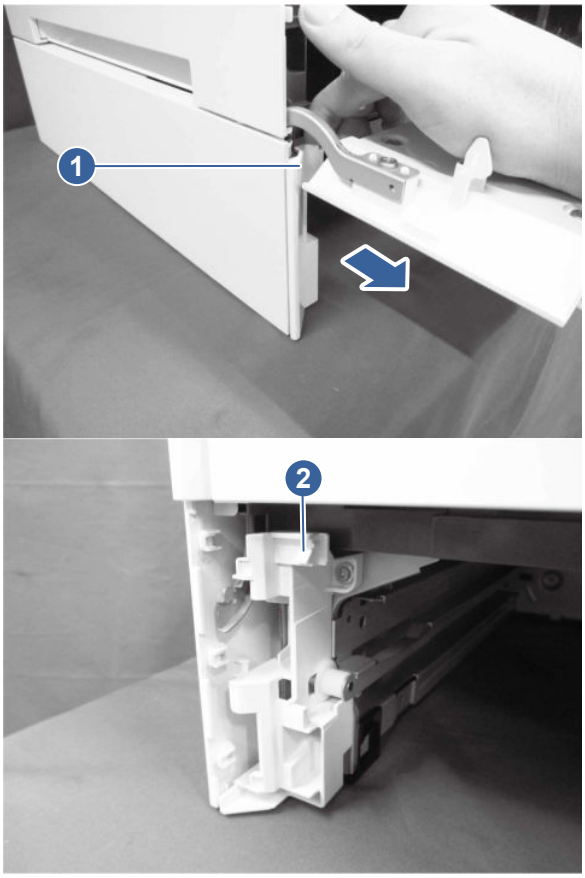
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front left cover

Follow these steps to remove the front left cover.

1. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **6700/6800 models**: Open the front door.
   - **X654/X677 models**: Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Pull the top part of the front left cover (callout 1) in the direction indicated, release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover upward to release it.

Figure 4-188 **Remove the cover**



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front right cover

Learn about removing and replacing the front right cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-37 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9199-000CN	Cover, front right

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

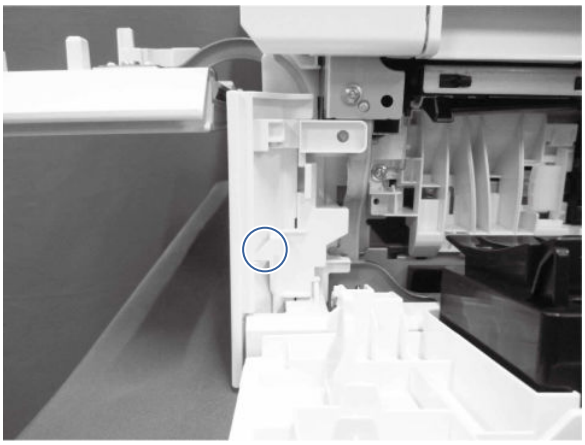
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **5700/X557/5800 models**: Open the front door.
   - **X57945 models**: Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **5700/X557/5800 models**: Open the right door.
   - **X57945 models**: Open the right lower door.
3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-189 Remove the front right cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door

Learn about removing and replacing the right door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-38 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3570-000CN	Right door (5700/X577/5800/X57945/X58045dn)

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

1. Open the right door.

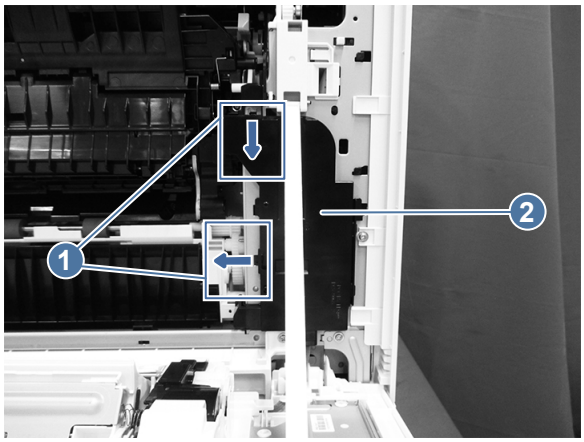
   Figure 4-190 **Open the right door**



2. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **5700/X557/5800 models**: Open the right door.
   - **X579 models**: Open the right lower door.
3. **5700/X557/5800 models**: Remove the front right cover.

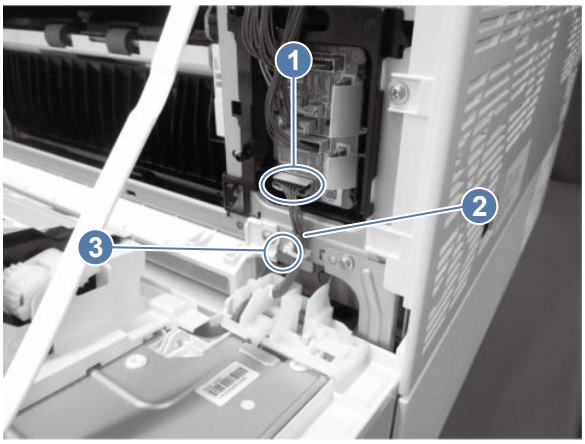
4. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-191 Remove the PCA cover



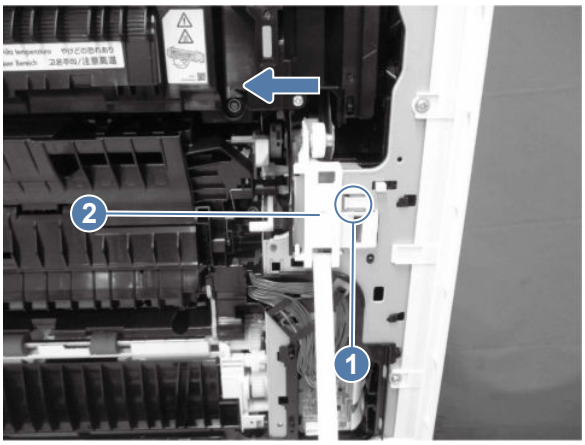
5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3).

Figure 4-192 Disconnect one connector



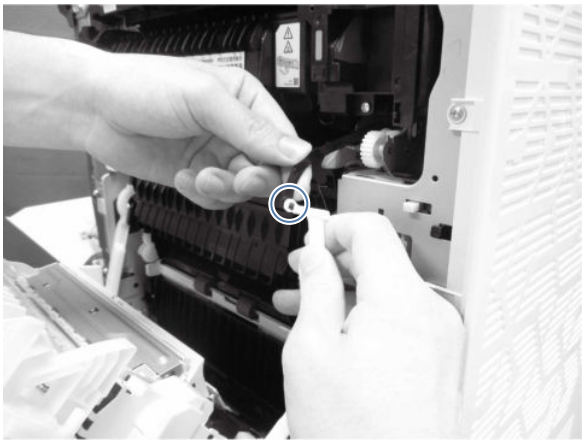
6. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the link arm (callout 2) in the direction indicated, and then remove it.

Figure 4-193 Remove the link arm



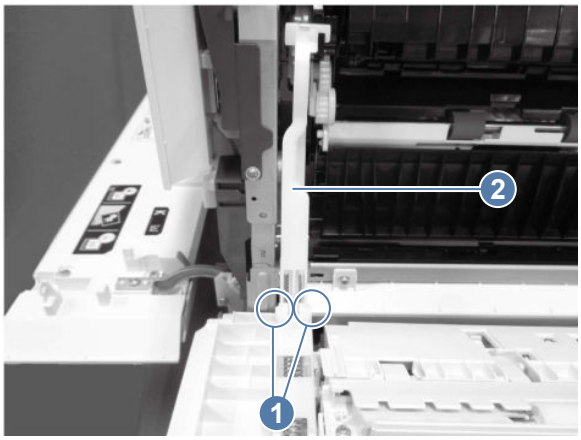
7. Close the front door a little, and then disconnect the joint that connects the two link arms.

Figure 4-194 Disconnect the link arms



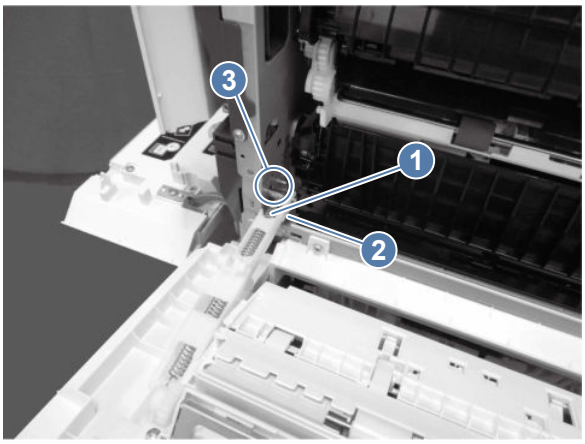
8. Release two bosses (callout 1), and then remove the link arm (callout 2).

Figure 4-195 Remove the link arm



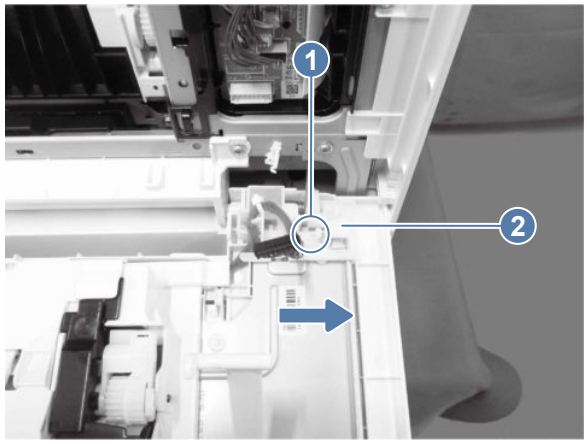
9. Close the front door a little, and then remove the spring (callout 1) from the link arm (callout 2) and from the shaft (callout 3).

Figure 4-196 Remove the spring



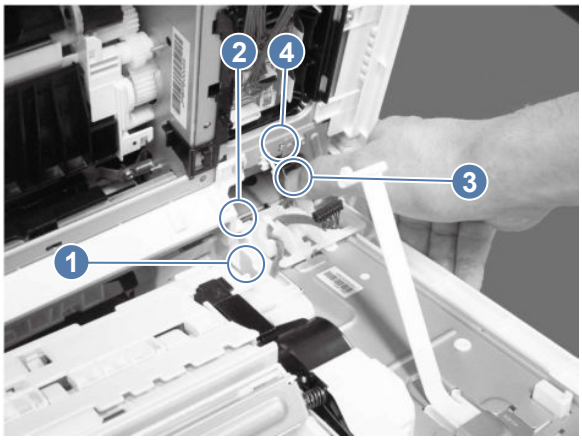
10. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the cable holder (callout 2) in the direction indicate, and then remove it.

Figure 4-197 Remove the cable holder



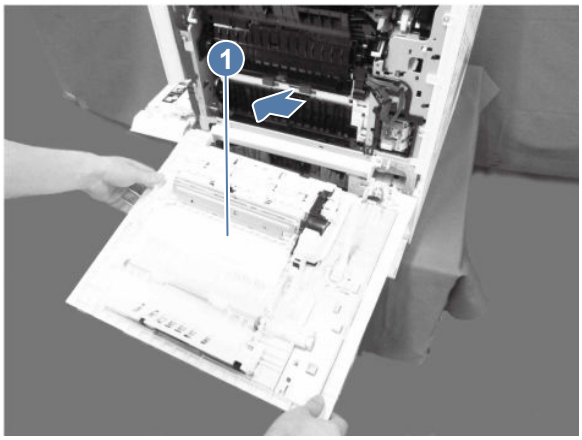
11. Remove the right door (callout 1) from the shaft (callout 2), and then unhook one spring (callout 3) from the frame (callout 4).

Figure 4-198 Remove the door from the shaft



12. Slide the right door (callout 1) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-199 Remove the door



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right lower door (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the right lower door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-39 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0004-000CN	Right lower door assembly

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

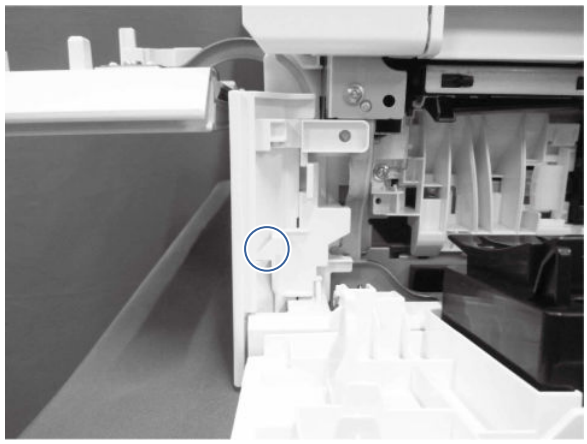
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.
3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-200 **Remove the front right cover**

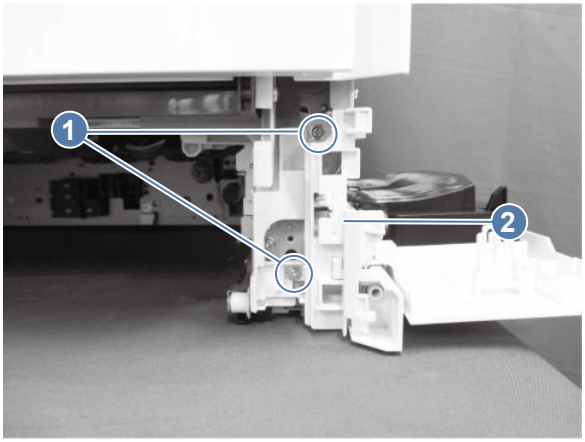


2. Remove the right lower door (X579 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

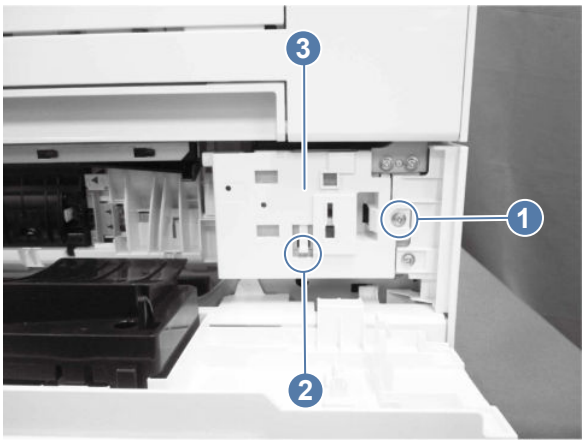
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-201 Remove the base frame



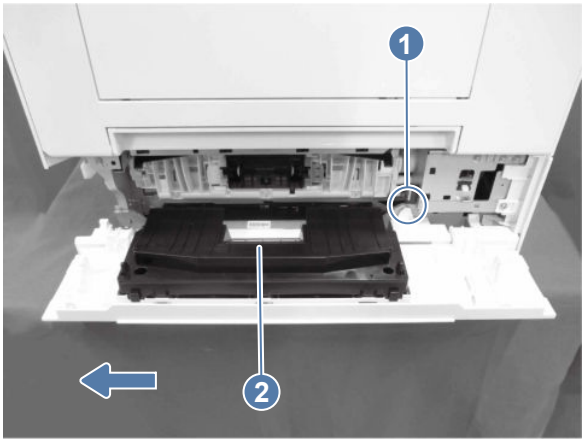
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-202 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-203 Remove the right lower door assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear lower cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-40 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9409-000CN	Cover, rear lower

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

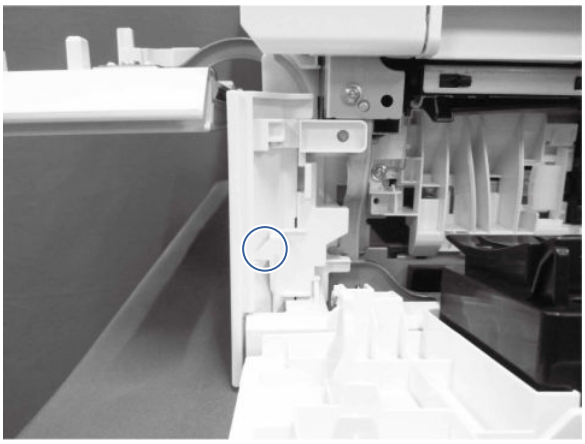
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.
3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-204 **Remove the front right cover**

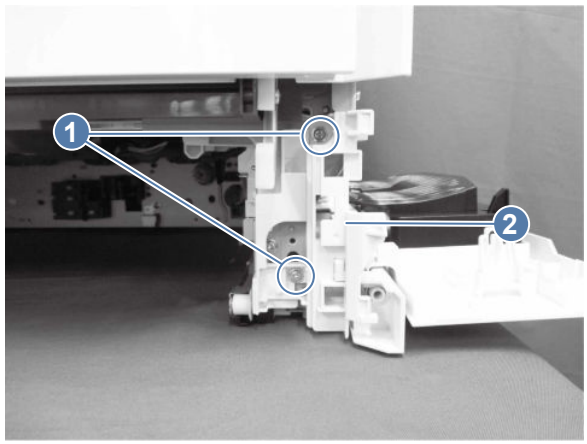


2. Remove the right lower door (X579 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

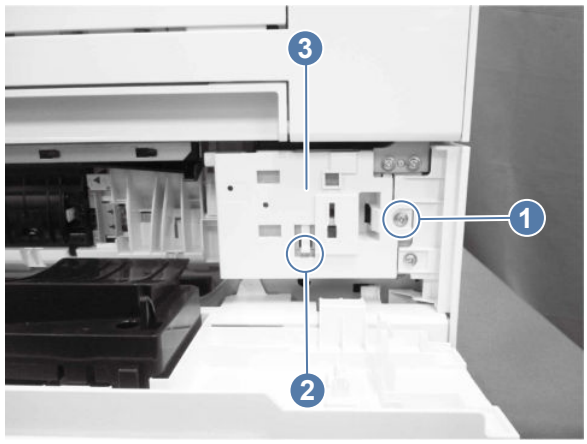
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-205 Remove the base frame



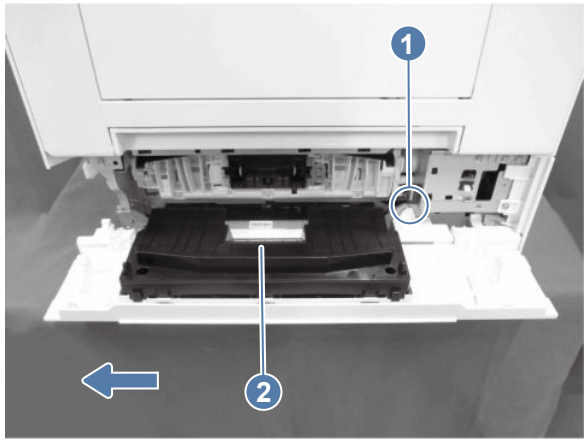
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-206 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-207 Remove the right lower door assembly

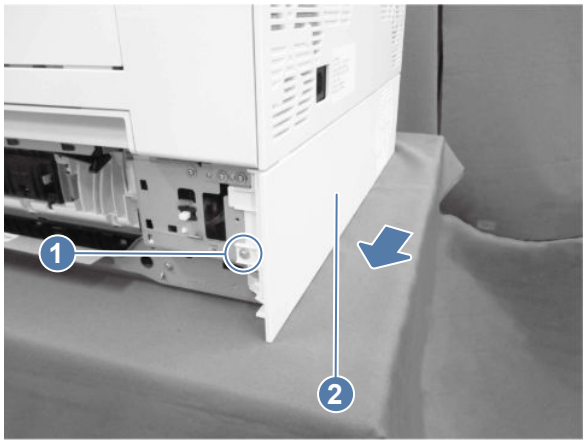


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X654/X677 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

Figure 4-208 **Remove the rear lower cover**



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left lower cover (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the left lower cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-41 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9408-000CN	Left lower cover

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

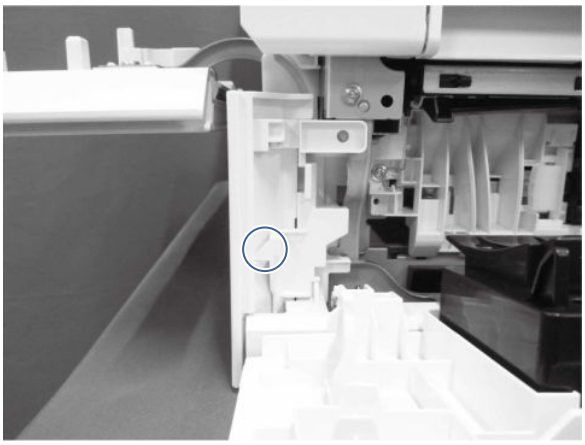
1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.

3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-209 Remove the front right cover

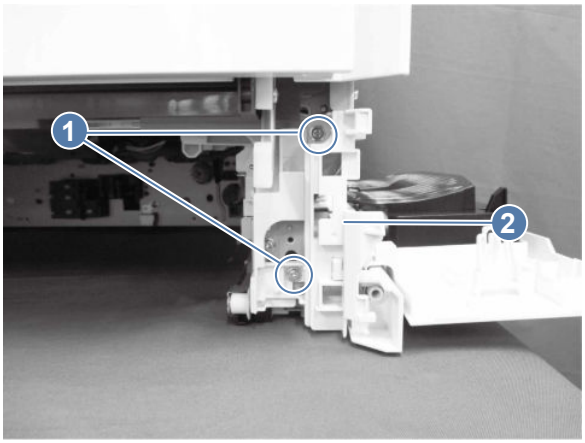


2. Remove the right lower door (X579 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

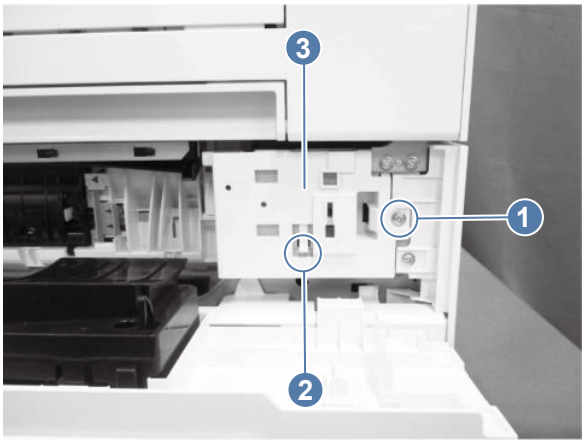
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-210 Remove the base frame



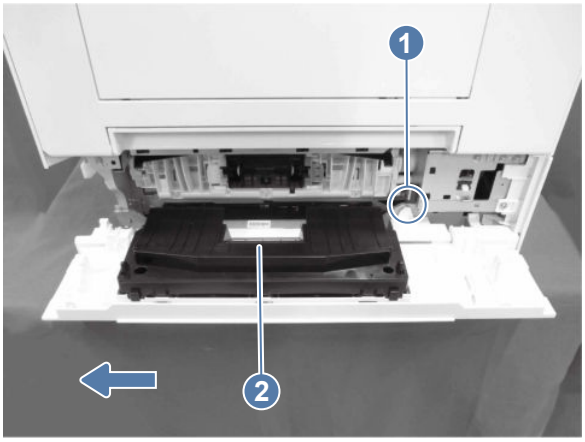
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-211 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-212 Remove the right lower door assembly

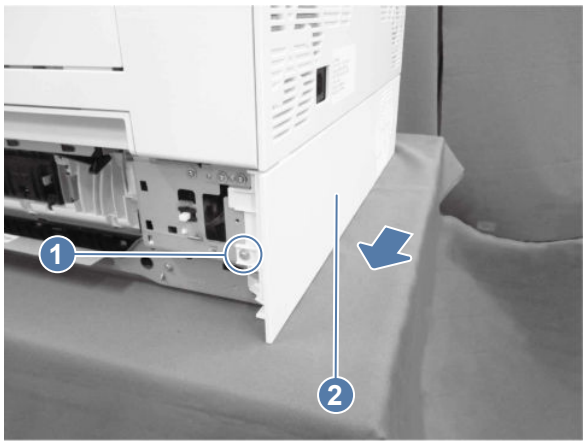


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X654/X677 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

Figure 4-213 Remove the rear lower cover

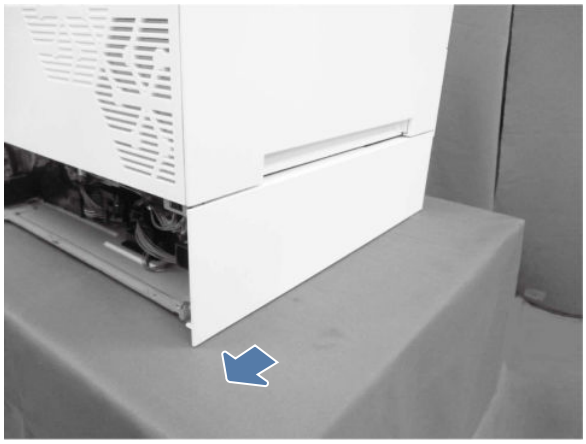


4. Remove the left lower cover (X579 models)

Follow these steps to remove the left lower cover.

- Slide the left lower cover in the direction indicated, and then remove it.

Figure 4-214 Remove the left lower cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output bin

Learn about removing and replacing the output bin.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-42 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4469-000CN	Face down tray assembly

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

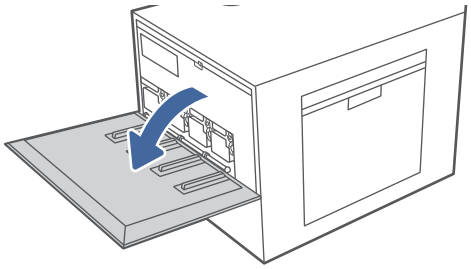
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

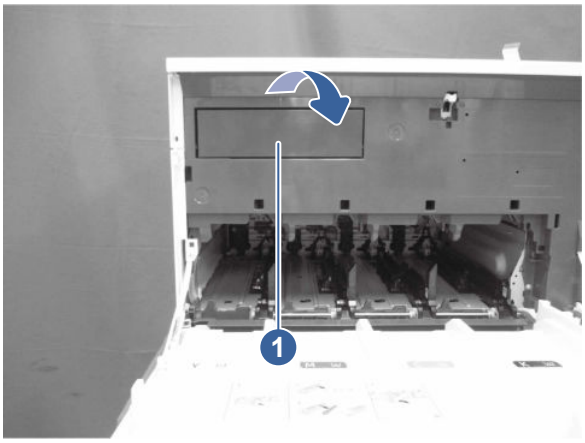
Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front door.

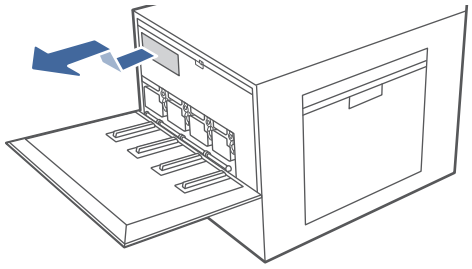


2. Rotate and then pull the TCU cover to remove it.

Figure 4-215 **Remove the TCU cover**



3. Lift the TCU slightly and then pull it out of the printer.



NOTE: Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Place the unit into the clear plastic bag the new TCU was packaged in.

2. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

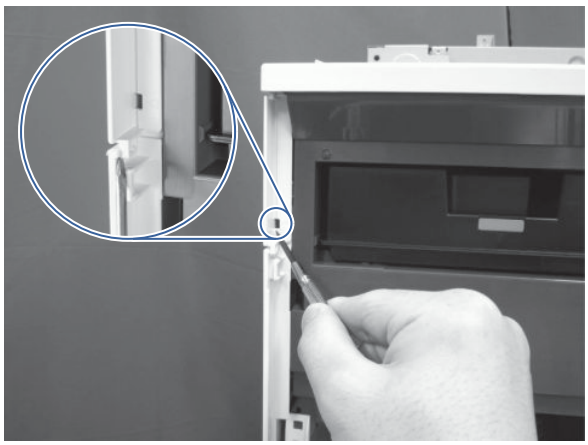
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

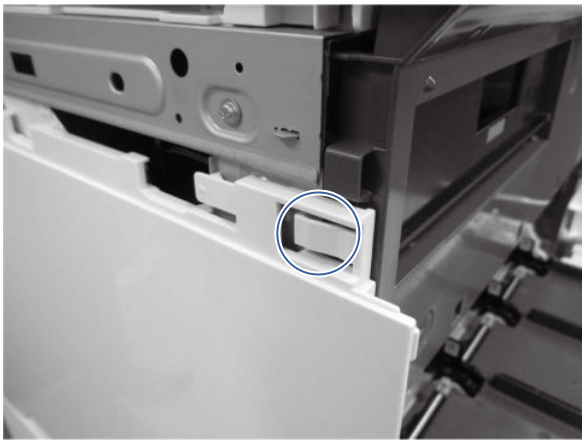
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-216 **Use a screwdriver to release the tab**



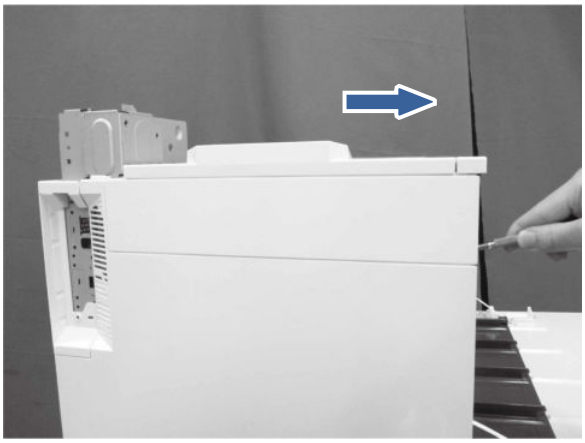
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-217 **Release the tab**



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-218 **Remove the left upper cover**

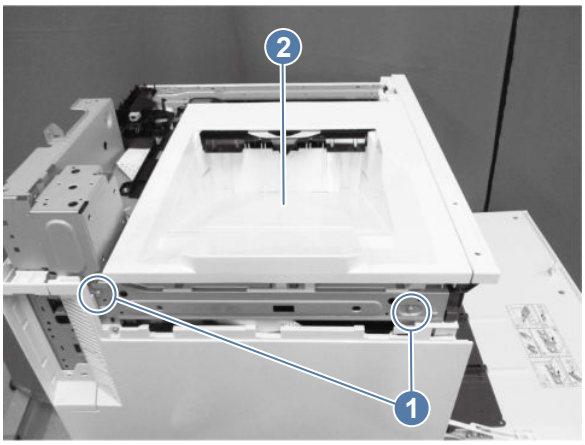


3. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

  Figure 4-219 Remove the output bin

4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right handle

Learn about removing and replacing the right handle.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-43 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-8516-000CN	Handle, right door lower

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the right door

Follow these steps to remove the right door.

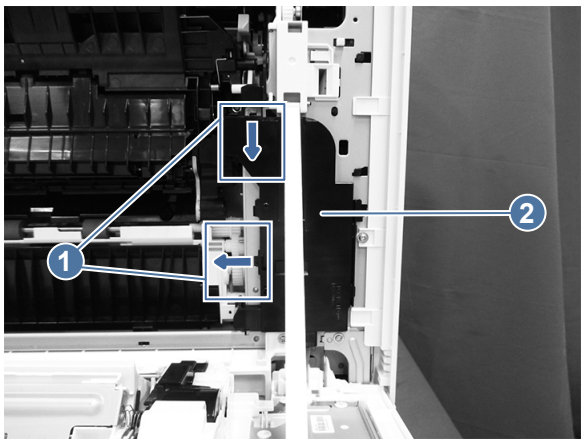
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-220 **Open the right door**



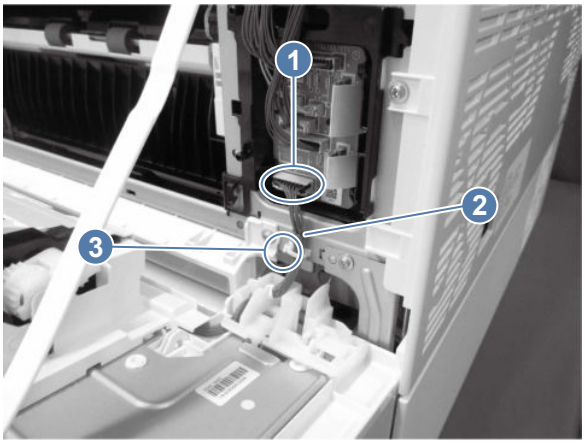
2. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **6700/6800 models**: Open the right door.
   - **X654/X677 models**: Open the right lower door.
3. **6700/6800 models**: Remove the front right cover.
4. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-221 **Remove the PCA cover**



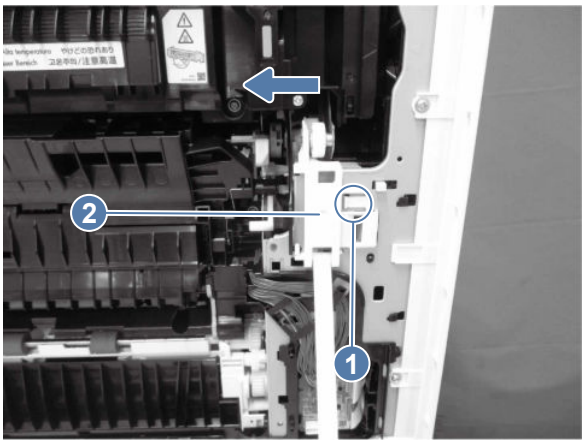
5. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3).

Figure 4-222 Disconnect one connector



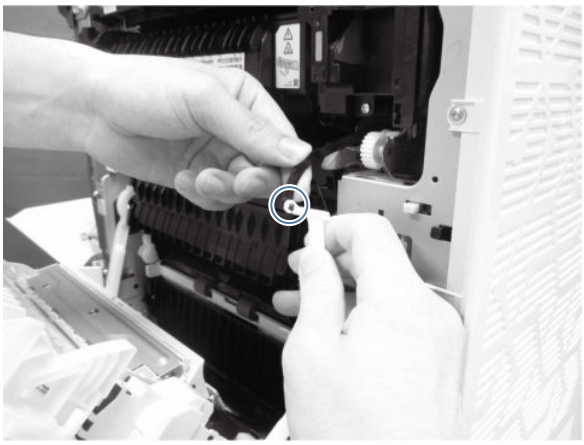
6. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the link arm (callout 2) in the direction indicated, and then remove it.

Figure 4-223 Remove the link arm



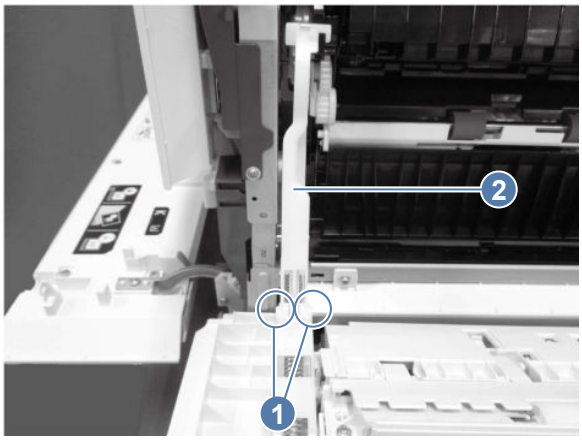
7. Close the front door a little, and then disconnect the joint that connects the two link arms.

Figure 4-224 Disconnect the link arms



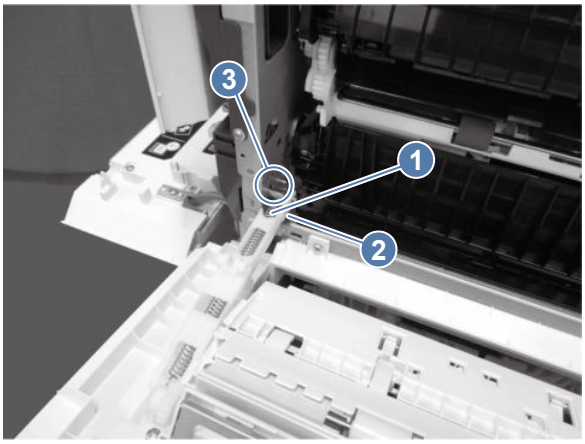
8. Release two bosses (callout 1), and then remove the link arm (callout 2).

Figure 4-225 Remove the link arm



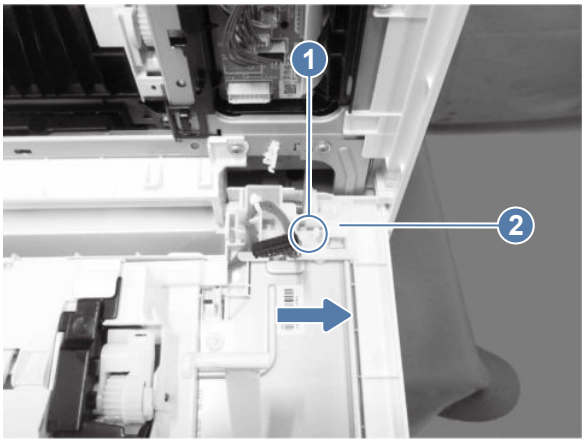
9. Close the front door a little, and then remove the spring (callout 1) from the link arm (callout 2) and from the shaft (callout 3).

Figure 4-226 Remove the spring



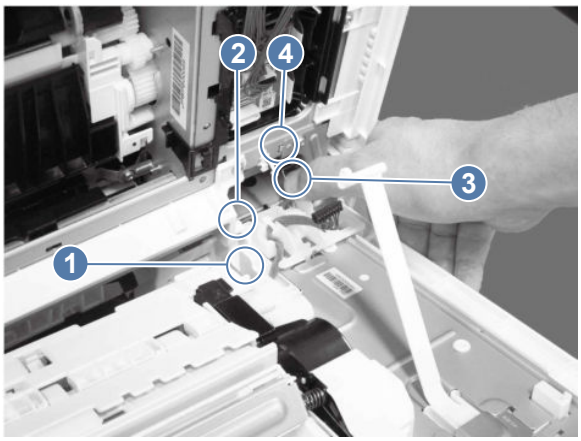
10. Release one tab (callout 1), slide the cable holder (callout 2) in the direction indicate, and then remove it.

Figure 4-227 Remove the cable holder



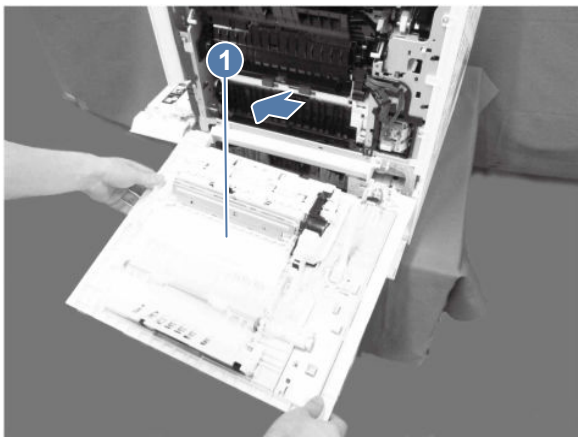
11. Remove the right door (callout 1) from the shaft (callout 2), and then unhook one spring (callout 3) from the frame (callout 4).

Figure 4-228 Remove the door from the shaft



12. Slide the right door (callout 1) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-229 Remove the door

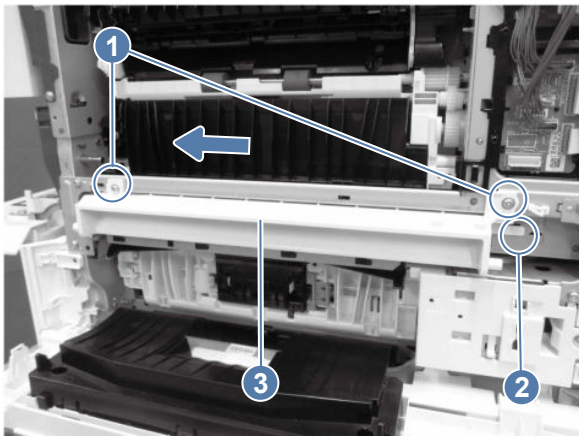


2. Remove the right handle

Follow these steps to remove the right handle.

- Remove two screws (callout 1)., release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the right handle (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-230 Remove the handle



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover (SFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the top cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-44 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4517-000CN	Top cover assembly

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

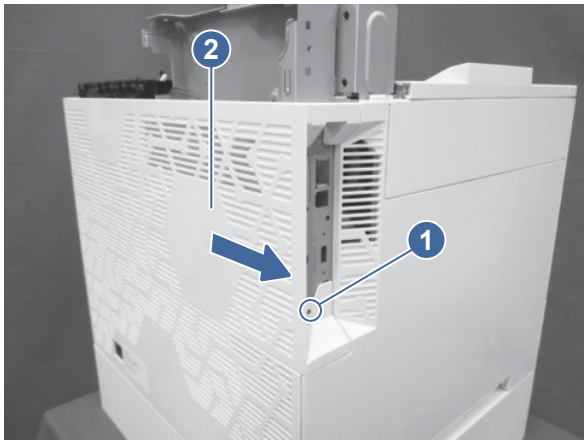
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

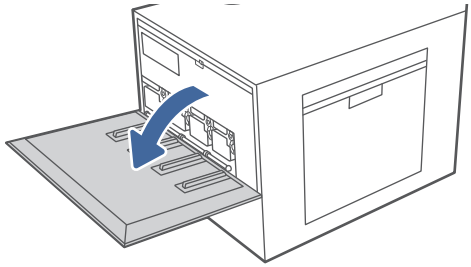
Figure 4-231 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

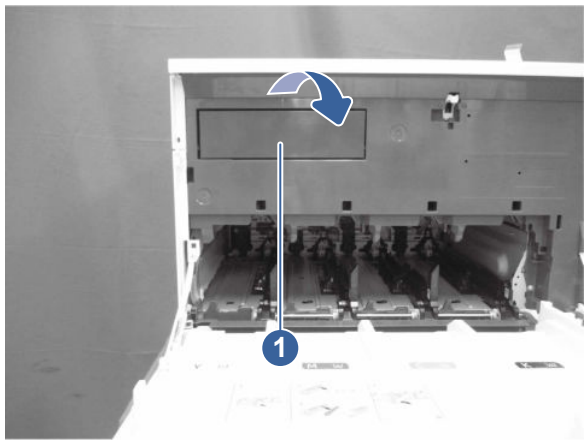
Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front door.

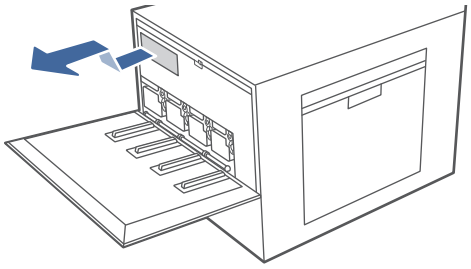


2. Rotate and then pull the TCU cover to remove it.

Figure 4-232 Remove the TCU cover



3. Lift the TCU slightly and then pull it out of the printer.



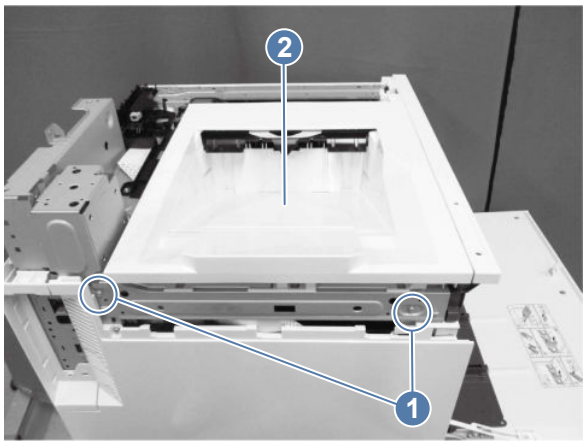
NOTE: Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Place the unit into the clear plastic bag the new TCU was packaged in.

3. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

Figure 4-233 **Remove the output bin**

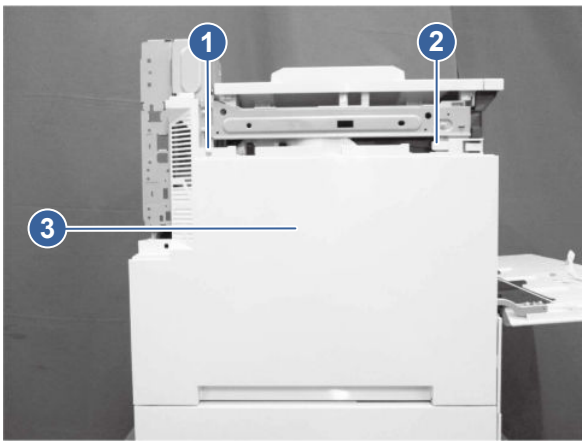


4. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-234 Remove the left cover



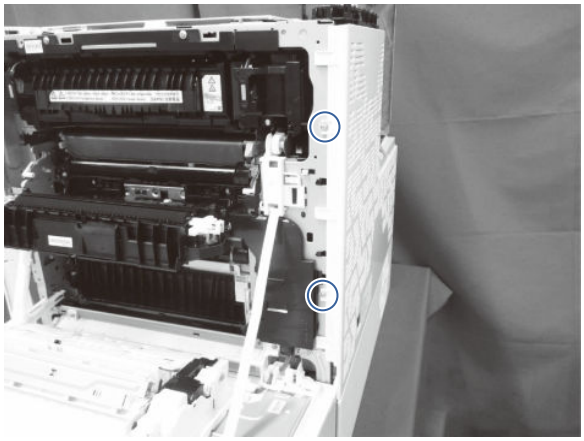
5. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

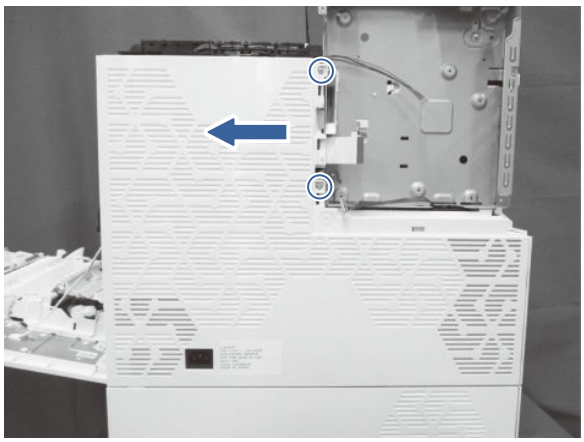
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-235 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-236 Remove the rear cover

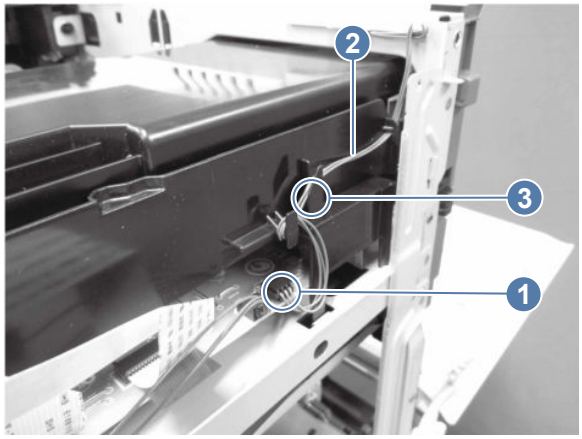


6. Remove the top cover (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-237 Disconnect the connector



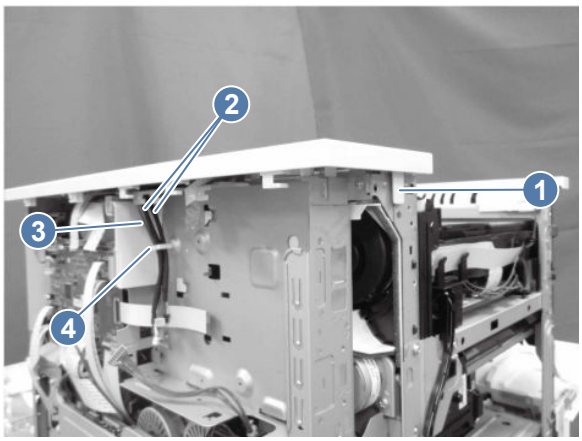
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 4-238 Remove two screws



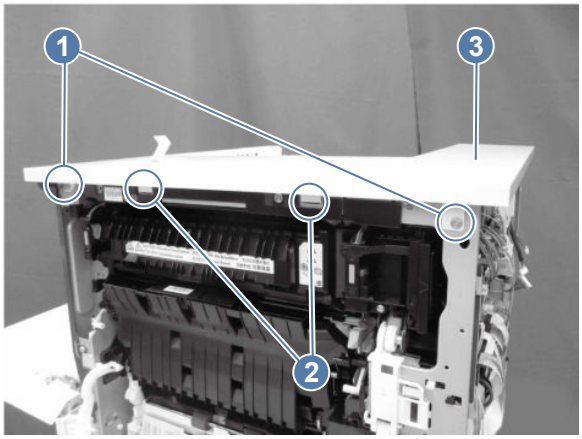
3. Release one tab (callout 1), release two USB cables (callout 2) and another cable (callout 3) from the cable clamp (callout 4).

Figure 4-239 Release one tab



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the top cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-240 Remove the cover



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top cover (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the top cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-45 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9172-000CN	Cover, top assembly

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

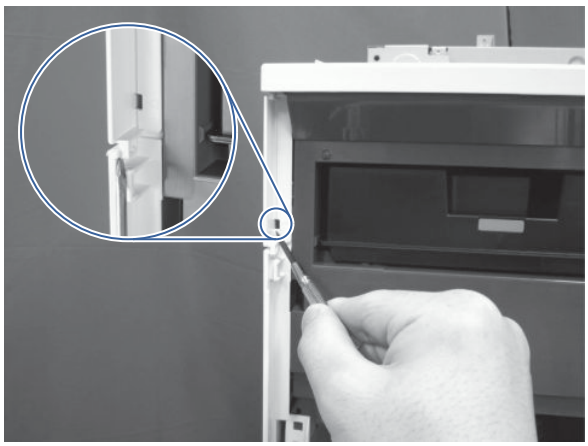
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

> ⚠ CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

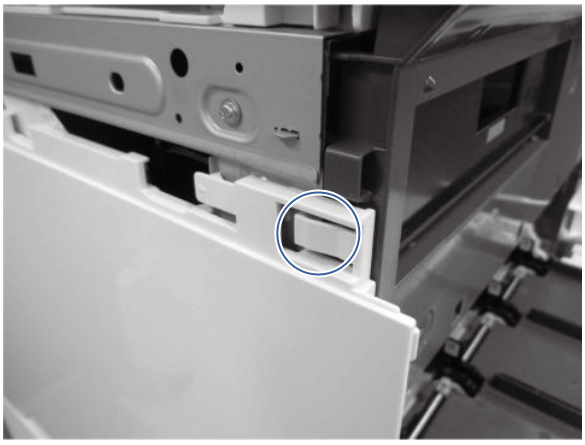
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-241 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



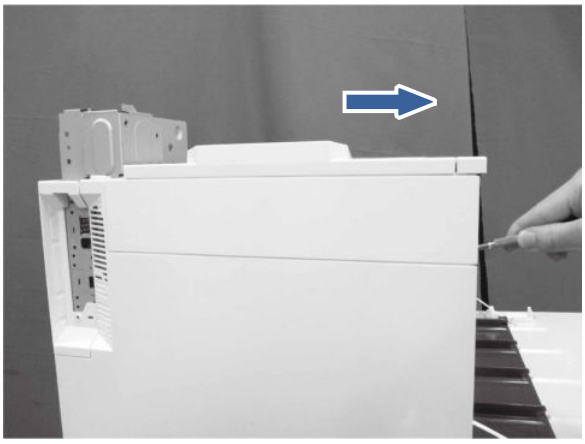
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-242 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-243 Remove the left upper cover

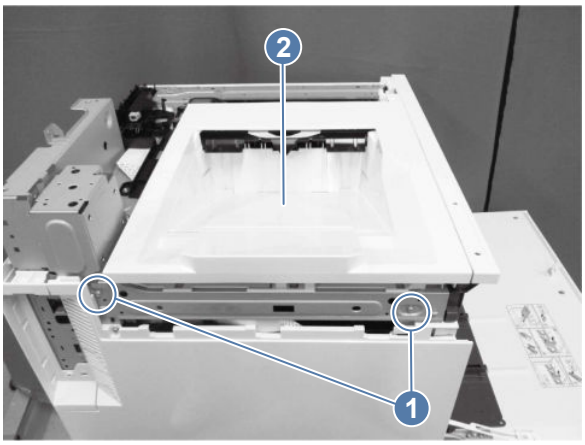


2. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

Figure 4-244 Remove the output bin

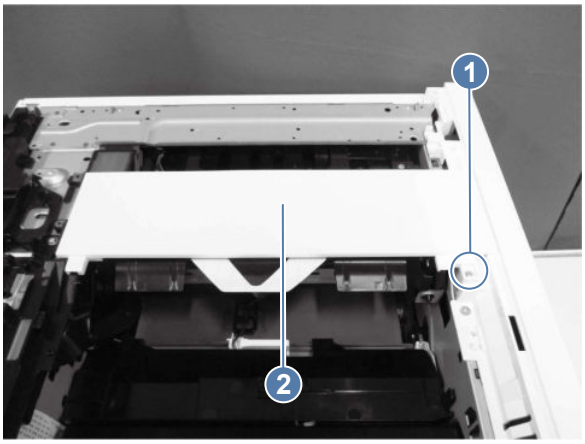


3. Remove the top cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-245 Remove the top cover



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Top front cover (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the top front cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-46 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4518-000CN	Top front cover assembly

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

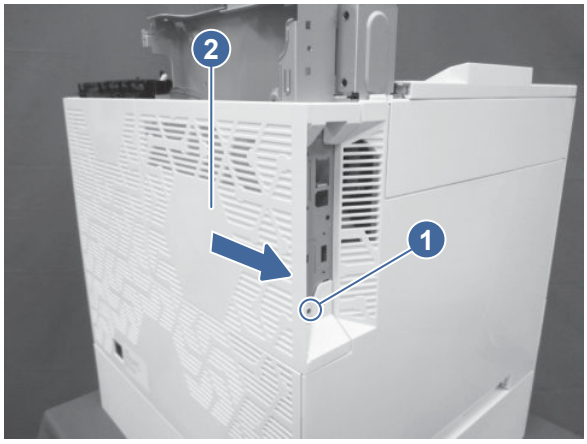
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-246 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

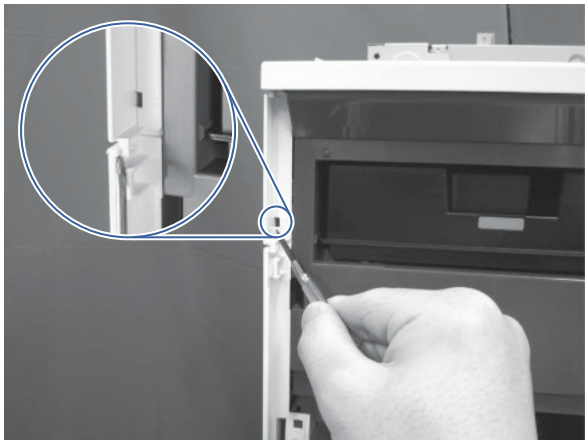
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

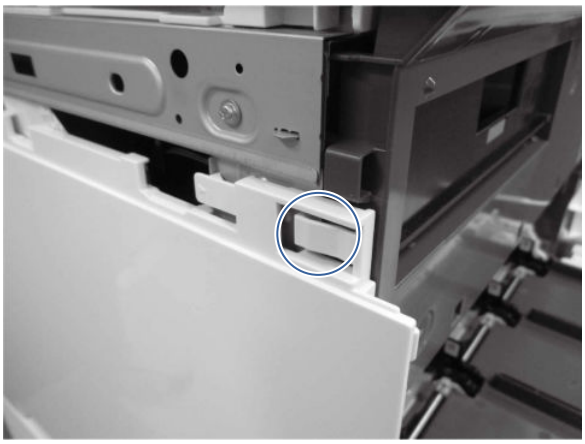
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-247 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



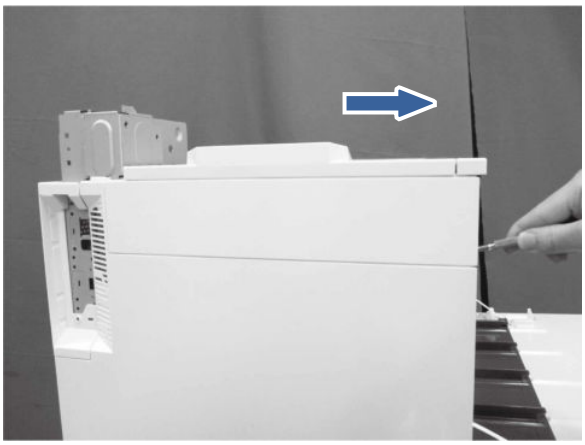
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-248 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-249 Remove the left upper cover

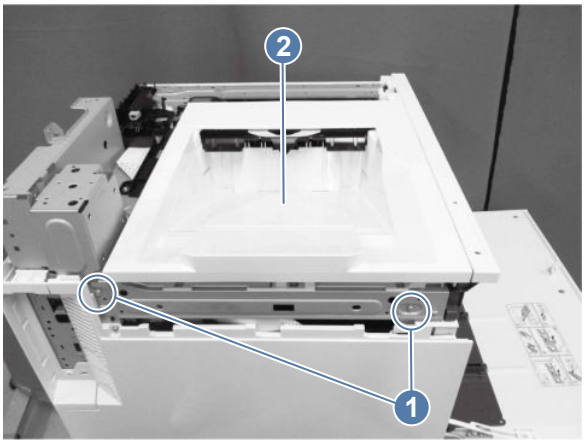


3. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

Figure 4-250 **Remove the output bin**

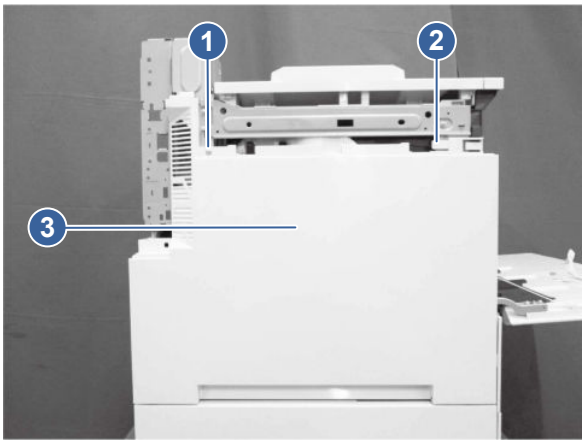


4. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-251 **Remove the left cover**

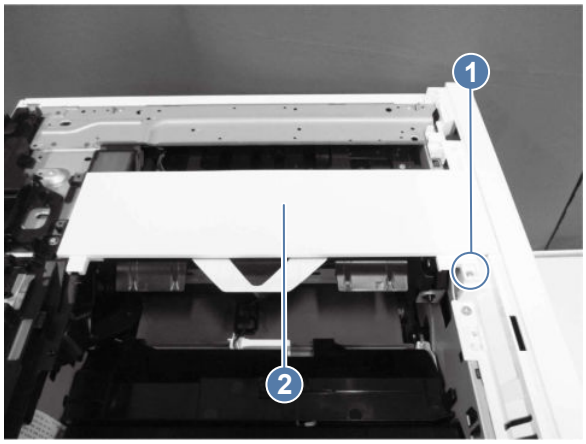


5. Remove the top cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-252 Remove the top cover

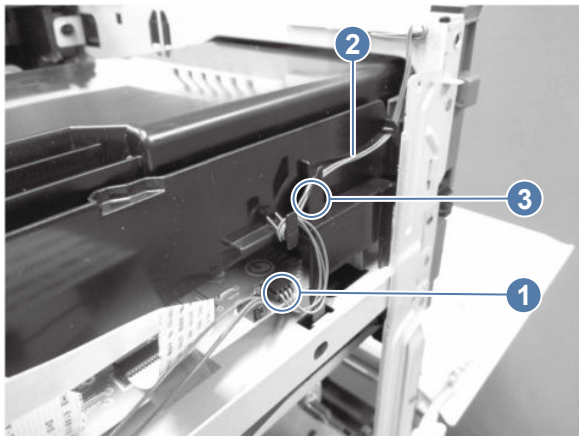


6. Remove the top front cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top front cover.

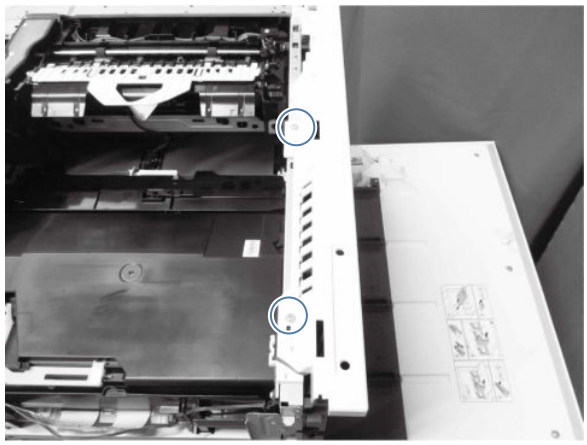
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-253 Disconnect one connector and release the cable



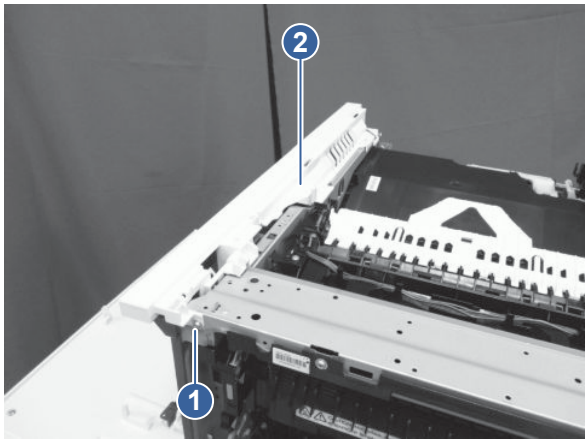
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 4-254 Remove two screws



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), hold up the top front cover (callout 2), and then remove it.

Figure 4-255 Remove the top front cover



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover

Learn about removing and replacing the Hardware Integration Pocket (HIP) cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-47 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)

Required tools

- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the HIP cover

Follow these steps to remove the HIP cover.

1. Use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release the tabs on the HIP cover.

Figure 4-256 Release the cover



2. Rotate the cover up and off of the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-257 Remove the cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Control panel (SFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the control panel.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-48 Part information

Part number	Part description
6QN28-60102	Control panel 10.9 cm (4.3 in)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the control panel (SFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

1. Tilt the control panel up.

Figure 4-258 **Remove one screw**



2. Pull up the control panel cover. A small flat blade screwdriver might be helpful with this.

Figure 4-259 **Remove the control panel cover**



3. Remove one screw.

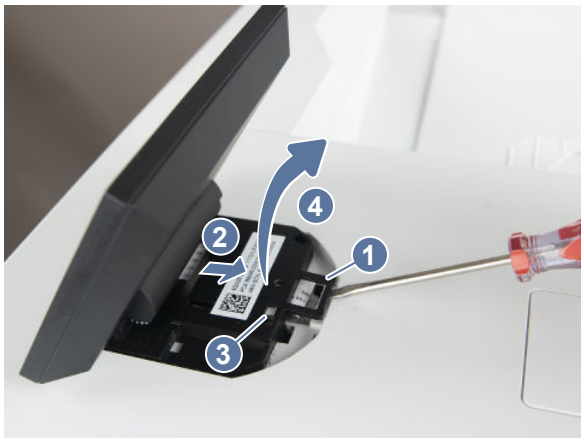
Figure 4-260 Remove one screw



4. Use a small flat blade screwdriver to pry and hold one tab (callout 1), push the assembly (callout 2) to the rear of the printer to release another tab (callout 3), and then lift the control panel up (callout 4), slightly and gently.

⚠ CAUTION: The control panel is still attached to the printer. Do not attempt to completely remove the control panel.

Figure 4-261 Release the tabs



5. Disconnect one FFC, and then remove the control panel.

Figure 4-262 **Remove the control panel**



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Control panel (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the control panel.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the control panel.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-49 Part information

Part number	Part description
6QN37-60102	Control panel 23.3 cm (8 in)
6QN35-60129	Control panel 25.6 cm (10.1 in)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

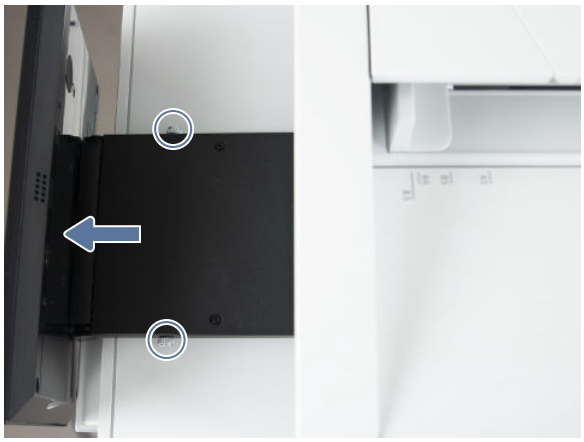
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the control panel (MFP)

Follow these steps to remove the control panel.

- Pull the control panel out and tilt it up, and then remove the two thumbscrews on the control panel arm. Remove the control panel by pulling it away from the printer.

  Figure 4-263 Remove two thumbscrews

2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Internal parts and assemblies

Learn how to remove and replace the printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Toner cartridges (manual unlock) (X57945 models)

Learn how to manually unlock the toner cartridges so that they can be removed to service other assemblies.

NOTE: This procedure describes manually unlocking the cartridges when the printer is not functioning.

To remove the cartridges by using the control-panel ejection method when the printer is operational, see the CSR instructions.

View a video of removing and replacing the toner cartridges (manual unlock)

Before performing service

CAUTION: To prevent damage to a toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover the imaging drum if the toner cartridge must be removed from the printer for an extended period of time.

If toner gets on the skin or clothing, wipe it off with dry tissue paper and wash in cold water. Hot water sets toner and it might be difficult, or impossible, to remove.

Required tools

- Tool with a ≤ 3mm point and < 120mm length

After performing service

- No post service test is available for this assembly.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove Tray 2

Follow these steps to remove Tray 2.

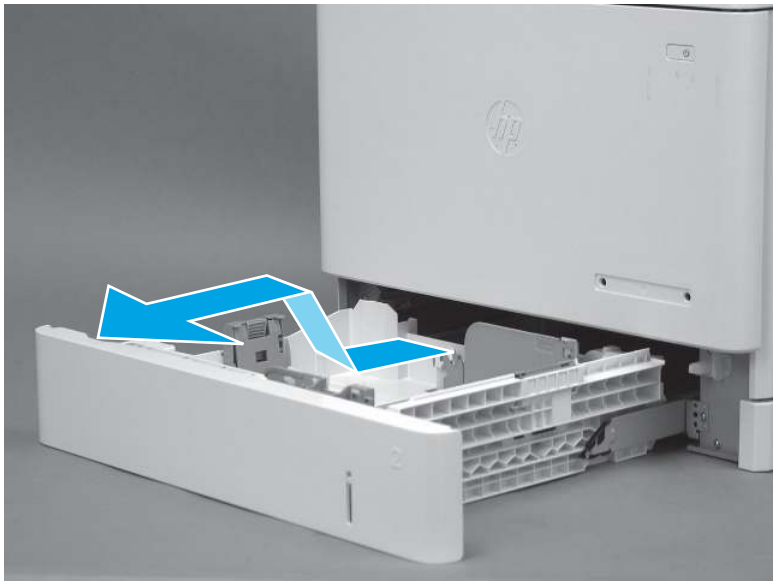
1. Pull the tray out until it stops.

Figure 4-264 **Pull the tray out**



2. Lift the front of the tray, and then pull it out of the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-265 **Remove the tray**

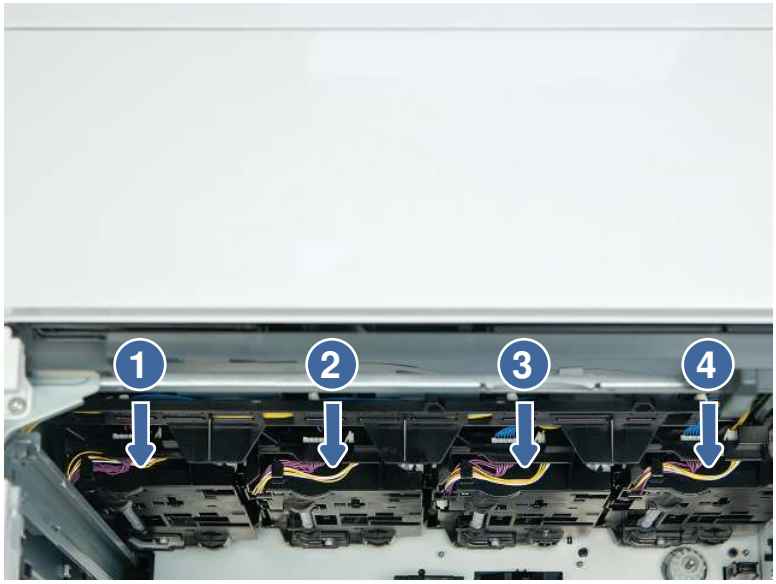


2. Manually unlock the toner cartridges (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to manually unlock the toner cartridges.

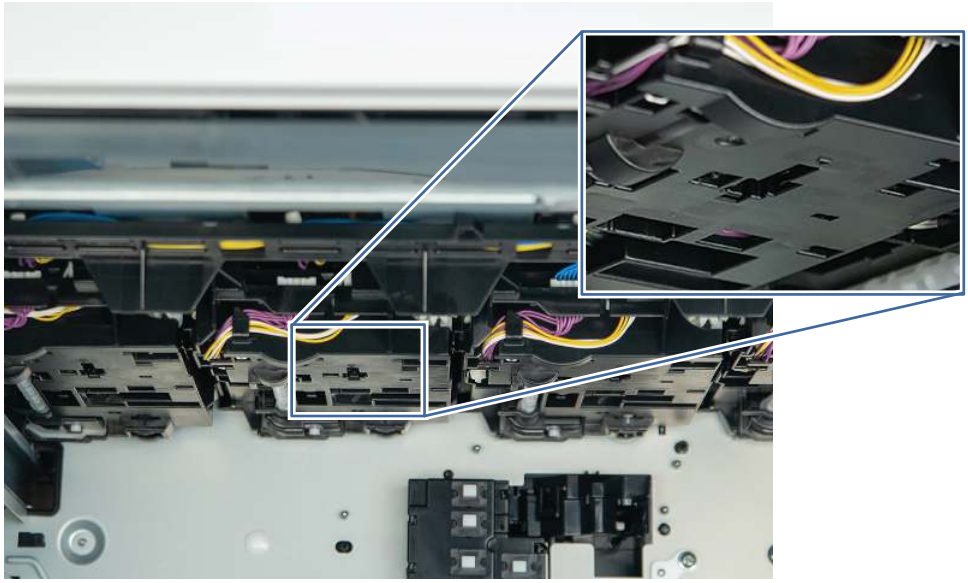
1. Locate the four toner cartridge drive units inside the Tray 2 cavity.

Figure 4-266 Locate the drive units



2. Locate the cartridge lock mechanism on one of the drive units.

Figure 4-267 Cartridge lock mechanism



3. Open the cartridge door. Use a tool with a less-than 3mm tip (and less than 120mm in length) to release the lock mechanism.

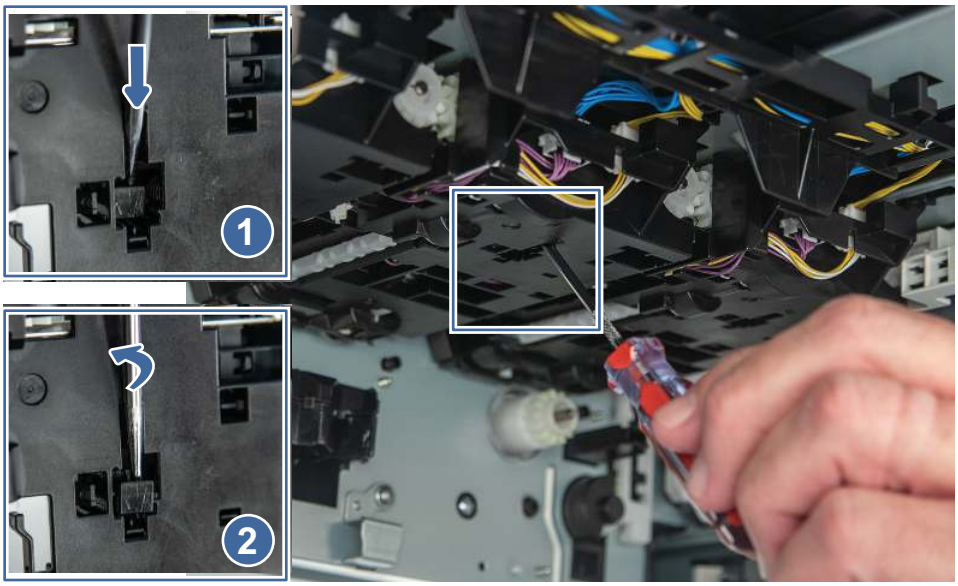
   a. Place the tip of the tool in the opening and under the lock mechanism (callout 1)

   b. Rotate the tool to release the lock mechanism (callout 2).

   NOTE: When the lock mechanism is released, the corresponding toner cartridge extends out of the printer.

   c. Repeat these steps for each drive unit.

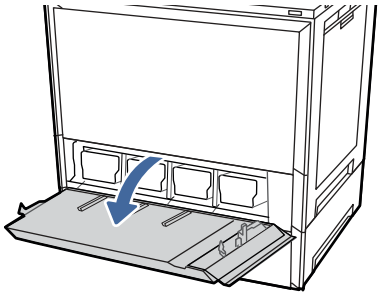
Figure 4-268 Release the lock mechanism



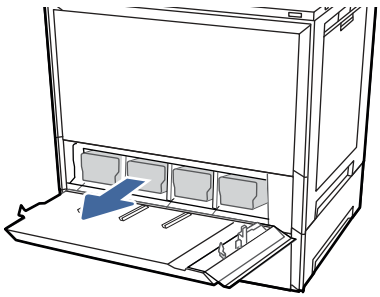
3. Remove the toner cartridges (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove a toner cartridges.

1. . If the toner cartridge door is not open, open it now.



2. . Grasp the end of the toner cartridge and pull it straight out of the printer.



Removal and replacement: Convenience stapler

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace of the convenience stapler.

Mean time to repair 27 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-50

Part number	Part Description
6QN30-60103	Assembly-Stapler (Convenience stapler)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver
- Torx 10 screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

- Make sure that the printer initializes to a Ready state.
- Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

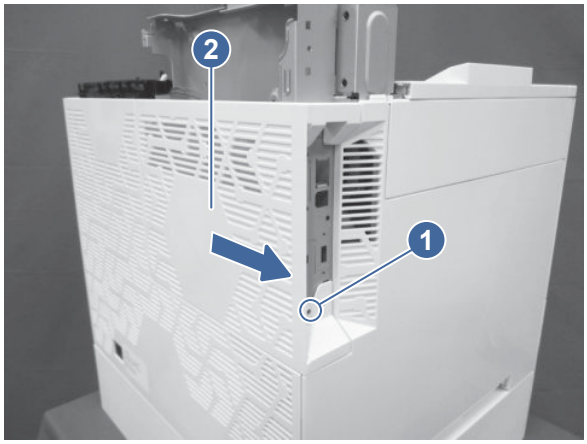
Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-269 Remove the formatter cover



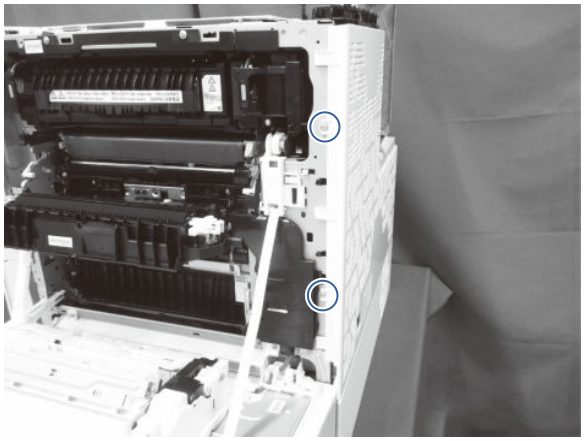
Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

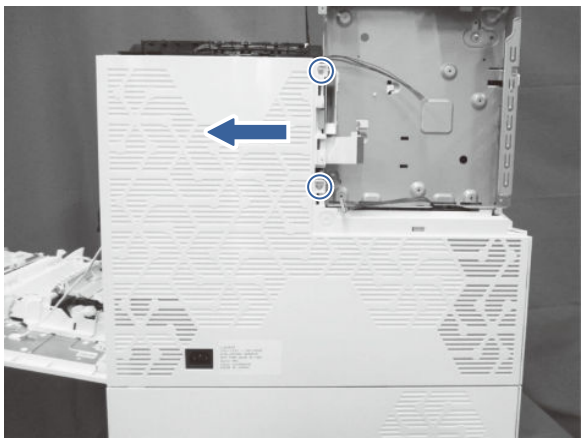
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-270 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-271 Remove the rear cover



Remove the rear upper cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

NOTE: The task below shows the rear upper cover on a 6800zfsw model. The cover on your model might look different, but the process is the same.

- Remove two screws, pry the right side away from printer, and then pull the cover in the direction indicated.

Figure 4-272 Remove the cover



Remove the document feeder

Follow these steps to remove the document feeder.

1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

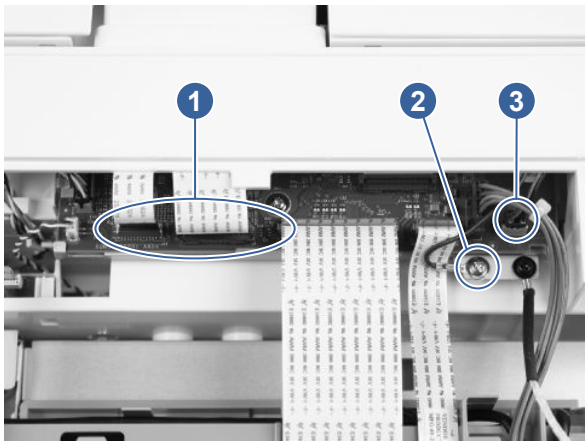
TIP: These are self-tapping screws for plastic. When reinstalling, rotate the screw counterclockwise to align it with the existing thread pattern, and then carefully turn it clockwise to tighten. Do not overtighten. This will prevent stripping the threads inside the screw hole.

Figure 4-273 Remove two screws



2. Disconnect one flat cable (callout 1), remove one ground screw (callout 2) to release the grounding cable, and then disconnect the indicated connectors (callout 3) on the scanner control board.

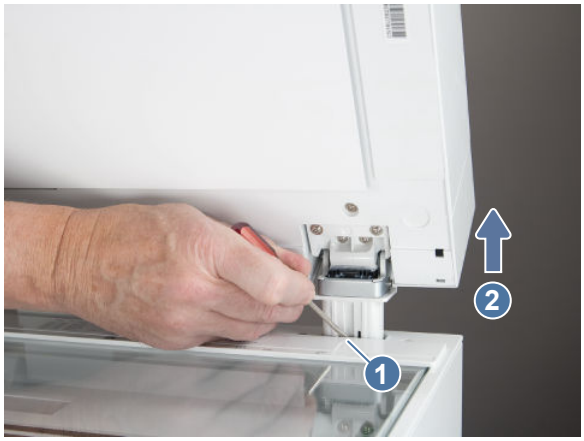
Figure 4-274 Disconnect the flat cable, ground cable, and connectors



3. Tilt the document feeder back until it stops, and then lift it off of the scanner until it stops.

4. Support the document feeder, and then use a small flat-blade screwdriver to release two tabs on the document feeder hinges.

Figure 4-275 Release two tabs



5. Lift the document feeder up to remove it.

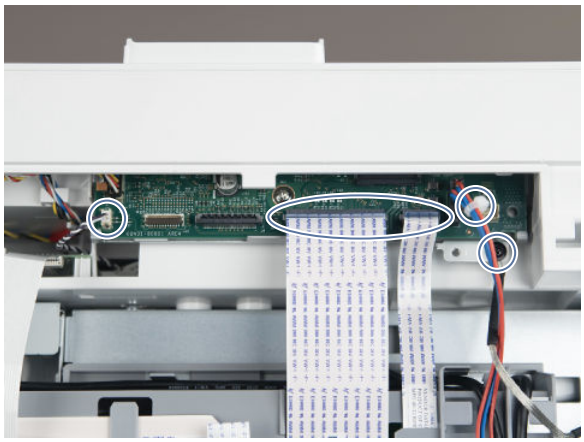
NOTE: While removing the document feeder, carefully pass the cables through the cable channel in the scanner bed.

Remove the flatbed scanner assembly

Follow these steps to remove the sub-scanner assembly (SSA).

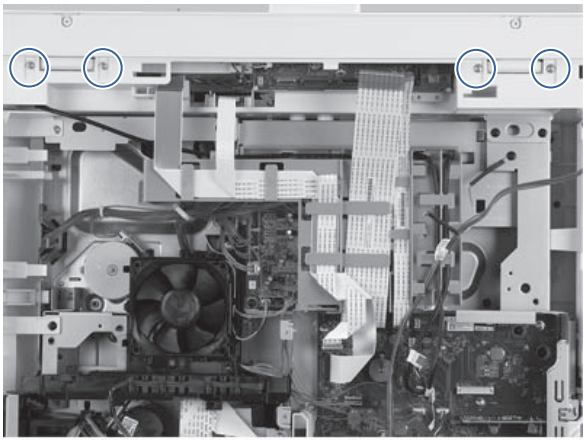
1. On the SCB, disconnect the cables indicated below.

Figure 4-276 Disconnect SCB connectors



2. Remove four screws.

Figure 4-277 **Remove four screws**



3. Pull the scan unit up to remove it from the printer.

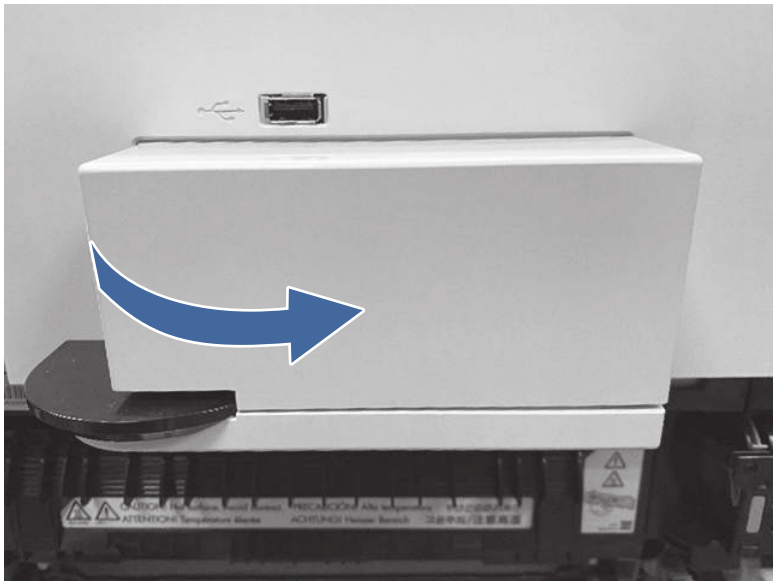
NOTE: Carefully ensure that the cables do not catch on the cable guides as you lift the assembly.

Remove the convenience stapler assembly

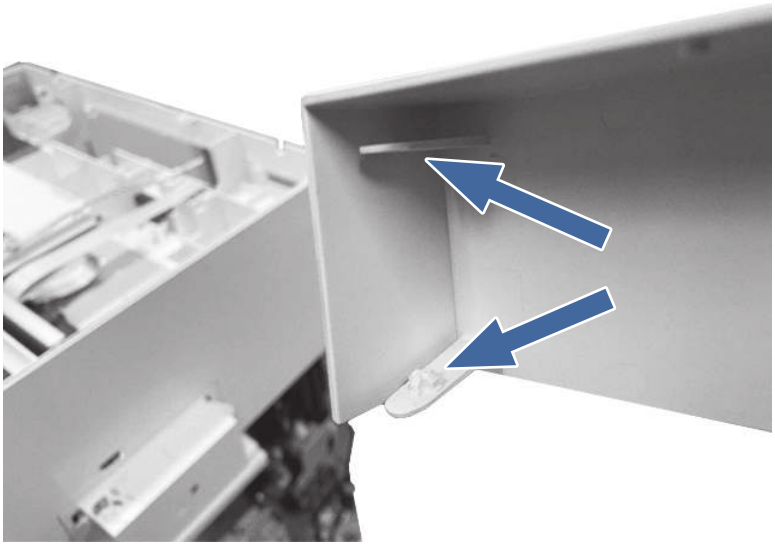
Follow these steps to remove and replace the convenience stapler.

1. Remove the stapler cover.

   a. Open the stapler cover from the end closest to the front on the engine.

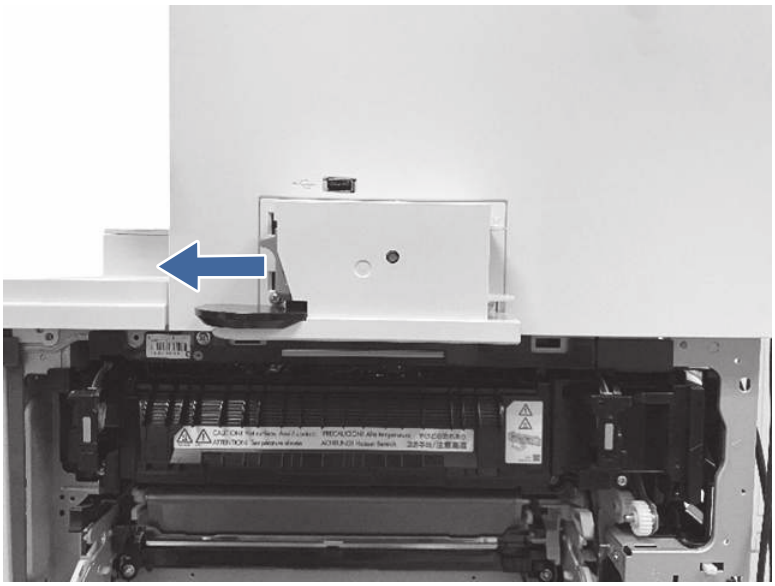


b. Gently lift the cover up and twist the top of the cover out\, let off the pressure and remove the cover.

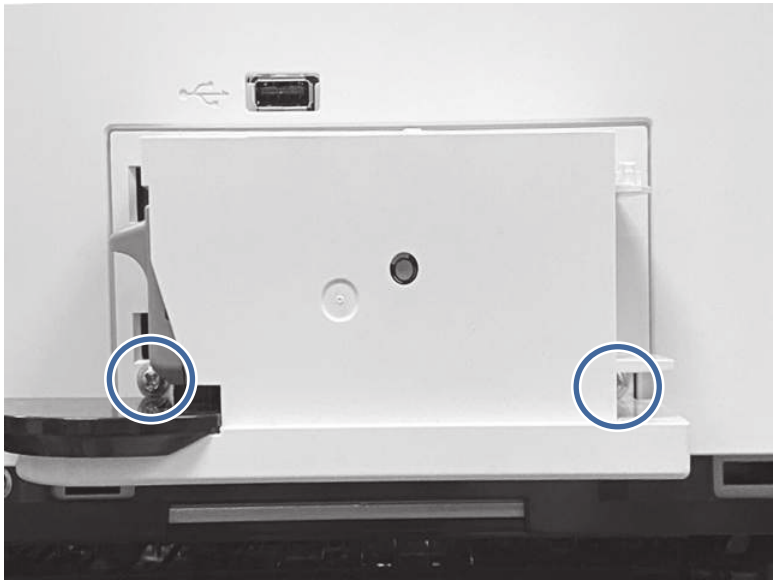


2. Remove the stapler housing.

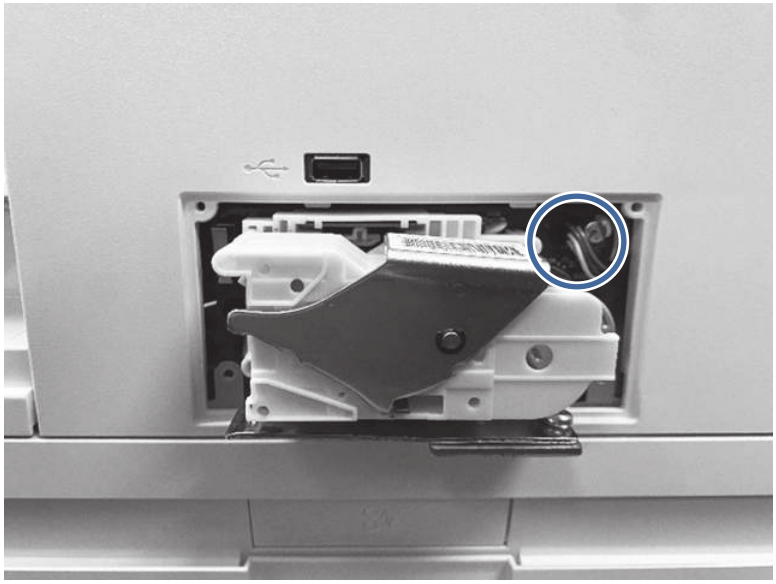
a. Remove the blue stable cartridge from the stapler.



b. Remove the 2 screws and twist the bottom of the housing out then pull away from the printer.

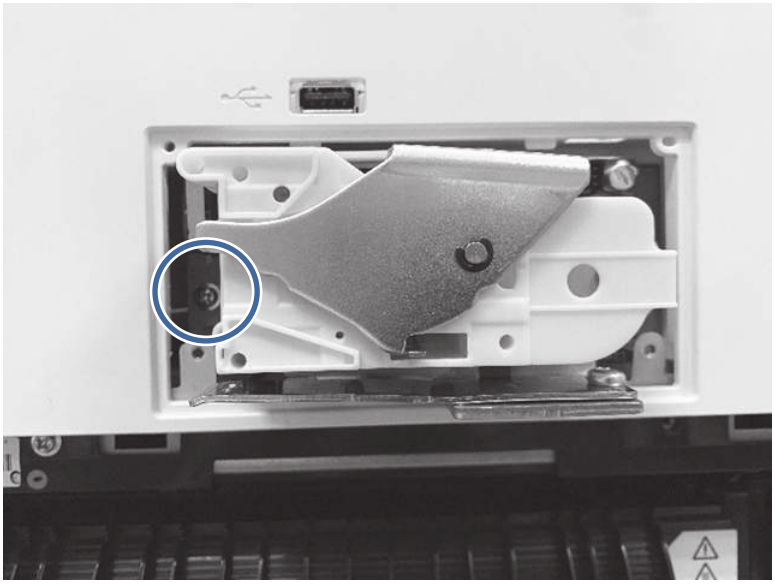


3. Disconnect the rainbow cable from the upper right corner of the Stapler



4. Remove the stapler assembly.

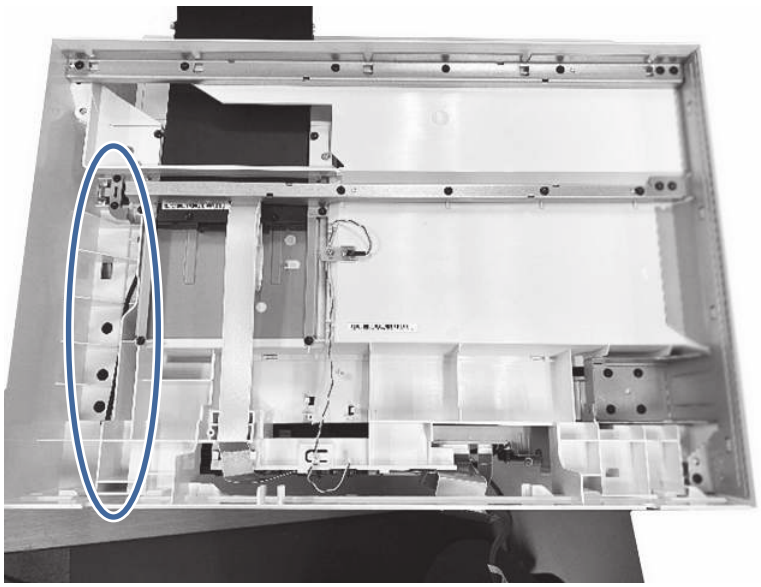
a. Remove 1 screw.



b. Push the stapler assembly to the right to unseat it then twist the stapler out of the printer.

5. Remove the stapler cable

If the stapler's cable is damaged, remove the cable from the engine.



Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Install the convenient stapler

Use the following to install then new convenient stapler.

1. If installing a convenient stapler on a printer that has not previously had one installed, remove the cover plate.



2. To install a new stapler assembly, go to the 'Remove the convenience stapler assembly' section and reverse the removal steps.

Removal and replacement: Secondary transfer assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the secondary transfer assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-51 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3586-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (5700/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs/ 6700)
RM2-3628-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (5800//X557/X57945/X58045dn/ X58045z/X58045zs)
RM2-3629-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly (X654/X677)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

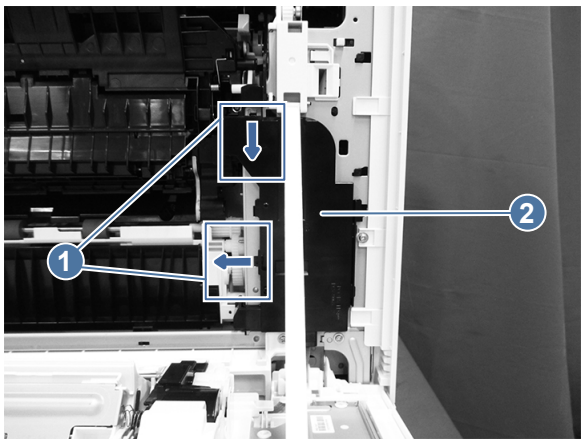
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-278 Open the right door



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

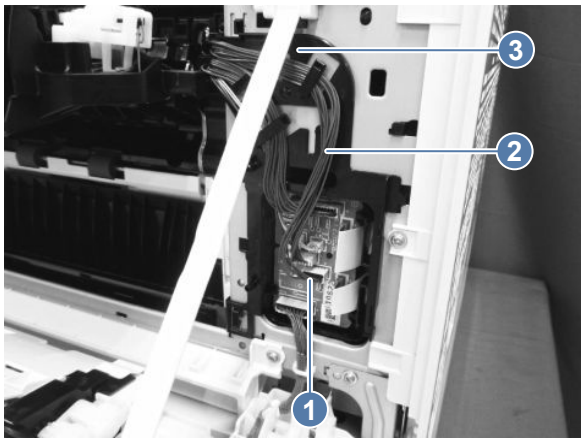
Figure 4-279 Remove the PCA cover



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalled, make sure the cable is correctly routed through the cable guide.

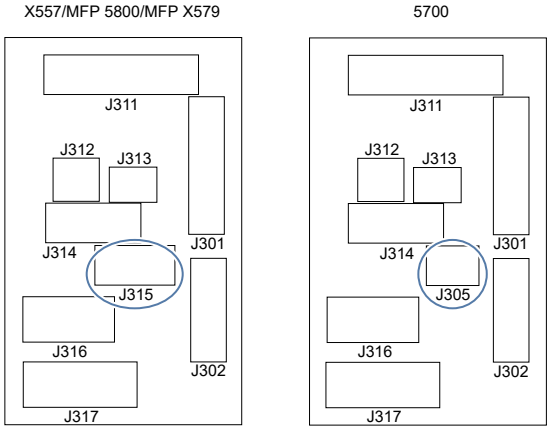
Figure 4-280 Release the cable



4. Perform one of the following steps.

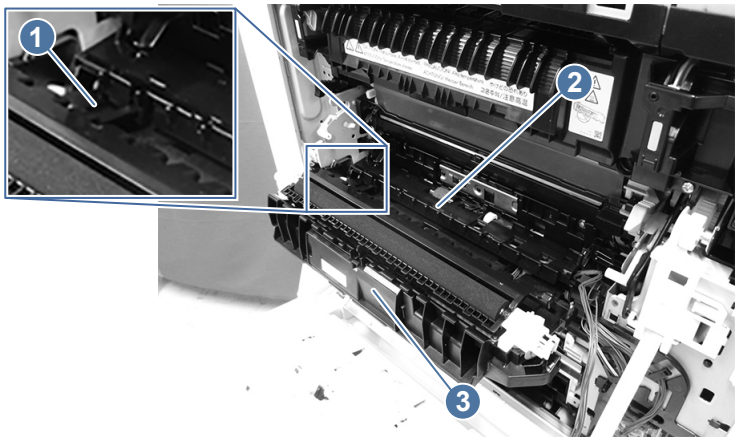
   - **X557/5800/X57945 models**: Disconnect the J315 formatter connector.
   - **5700 models**: Disconnect the J305 formatter connector.

Figure 4-281 Disconnect a formatter connector



5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up the registration assembly (callout 2) off the secondary transfer assembly (callout 3)

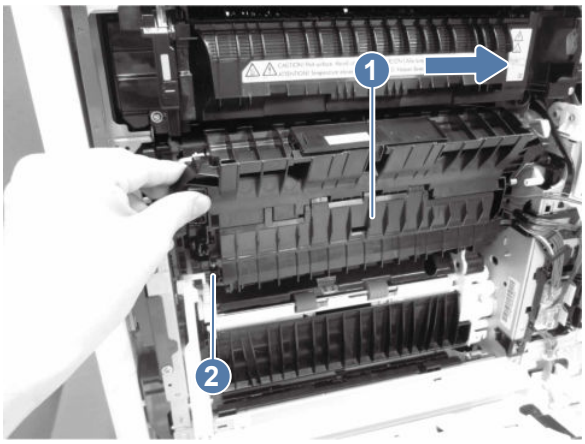
Figure 4-282 Release the tab



6. Close the secondary transfer assembly until it is only slightly open. Slide the assembly (callout 1) in the direction indicated below, and then dislodge the hinge pin (callout 2) from the holder to remove the assembly.

Reinstallation tip: Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 4-283 **Remove the secondary transfer assembly**



Reinstallation tip: On the assembly right side, make sure that the wire is nested in the plastic sleeve. Slide the wire sleeve into its place, depressing the spring, and then twist the left side of the assembly into place and allow the spring pressure to nest the hinge pin in its hole.

2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using

disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration density sensor assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the registration density sensor assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-52 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4492-000CN	Density detect assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the ITB

Follow these steps to remove the ITB.

1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-284 **Open the right door**



2. Hold the two side levers and pull out the ITB assembly.

⚠ CAUTION: Do not touch the gray plastic belt. Skin oils and fingerprints on the belt can cause print-quality problems.

Figure 4-285 **Release the ITB**



2. Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

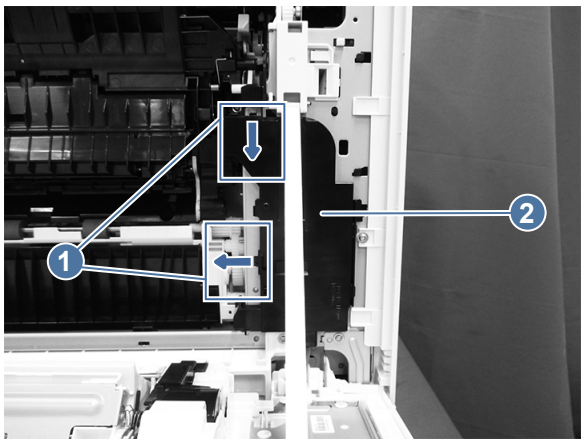
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-286 Open the right door



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

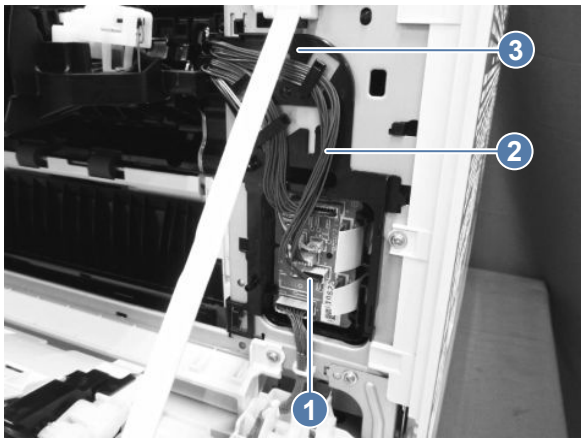
Figure 4-287 Remove the PCA cover



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalled, make sure the cable is correctly routed through the cable guide.

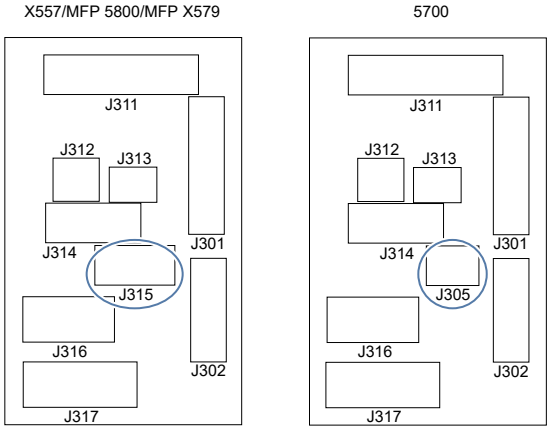
Figure 4-288 Release the cable



4. Perform one of the following steps.

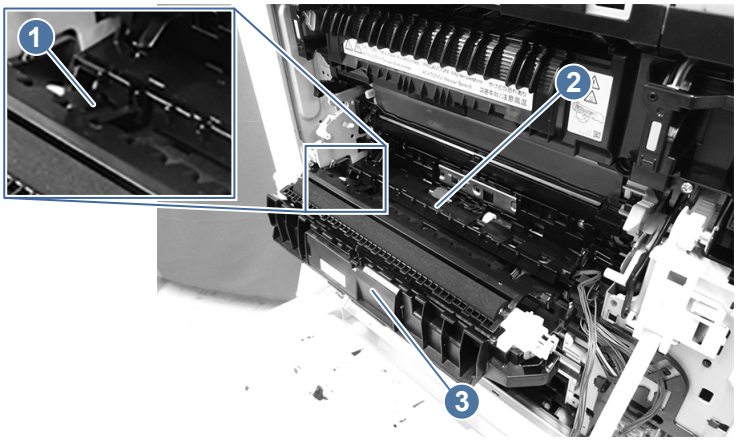
   - **X557/5800/X57945 models**: Disconnect the J315 formatter connector.
   - **5700 models**: Disconnect the J305 formatter connector.

Figure 4-289 Disconnect a formatter connector



5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up the registration assembly (callout 2) off the secondary transfer assembly (callout 3)

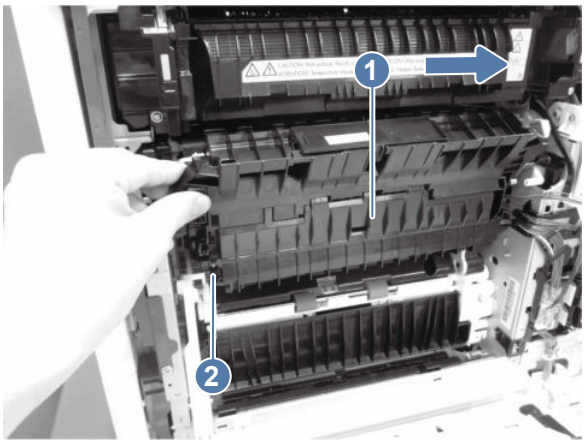
Figure 4-290 Release the tab



6. Close the secondary transfer assembly until it is only slightly open. Slide the assembly (callout 1) in the direction indicated below, and then dislodge the hinge pin (callout 2) from the holder to remove the assembly.

Reinstallation tip: Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 4-291 Remove the secondary transfer assembly



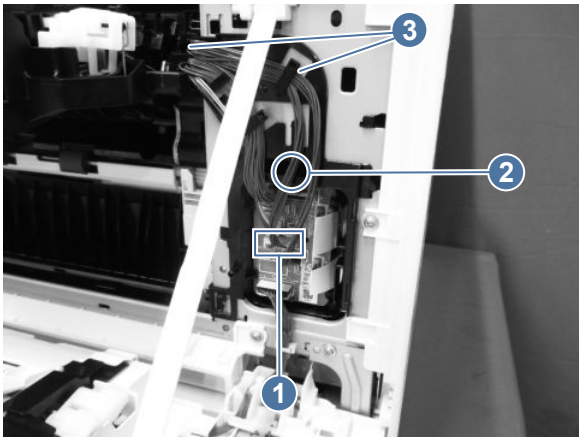
Reinstallation tip: On the assembly right side, make sure that the wire is nested in the plastic sleeve. Slide the wire sleeve into its place, depressing the spring, and then twist the left side of the assembly into place and allow the spring pressure to nest the hinge pin in its hole.

3. Remove the registration density sensor

Follow these steps to remove the registration density sensor.

1. Disconnect one connector (J314; callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guides (callout 3).

Figure 4-292 Disconnect one connector

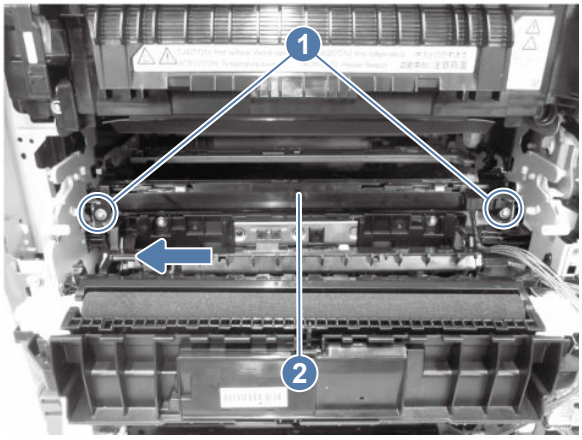


2. Remove two screws (callout 1). Pull out the registration density sensor assembly (callout 2) slightly towards you, and then move the registration density sensor assembly in the direction indicated below. Carefully pull out the right side first to remove the registration density sensor assembly.

NOTE: The shaft on the left side of the assembly is long and can break. Make sure to pivot the right side of the assembly out first to ensure that the shaft does not break. When installing a

registration density sensor assembly, insert the shaft on the left side first, and then pivot the right side into the printer.

Figure 4-293 Release the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Registration assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the registration assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-53 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4458-000CN	Registration assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

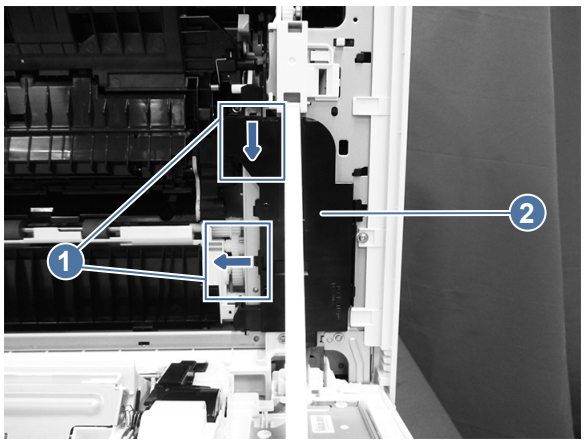
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-294 Open the right door



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

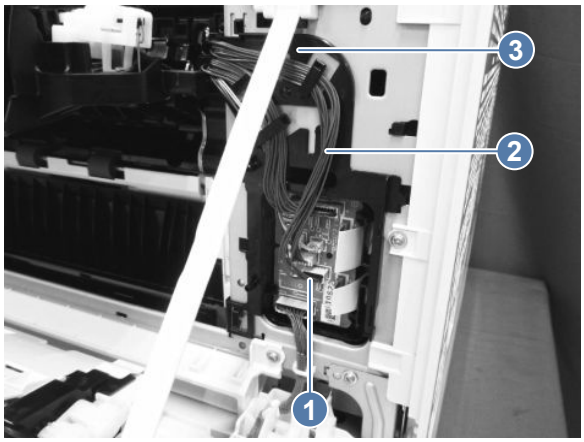
Figure 4-295 Remove the PCA cover



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalled, make sure the cable is correctly routed through the cable guide.

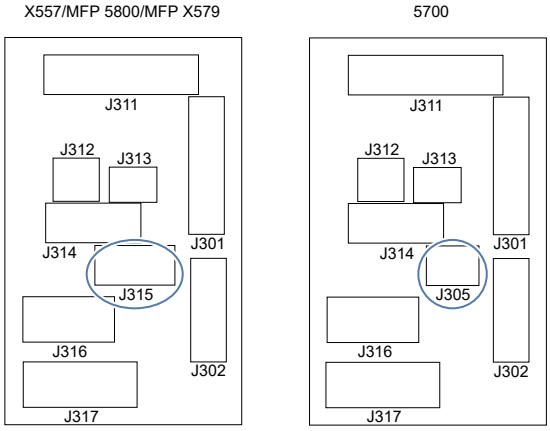
Figure 4-296 Release the cable



4. Perform one of the following steps.

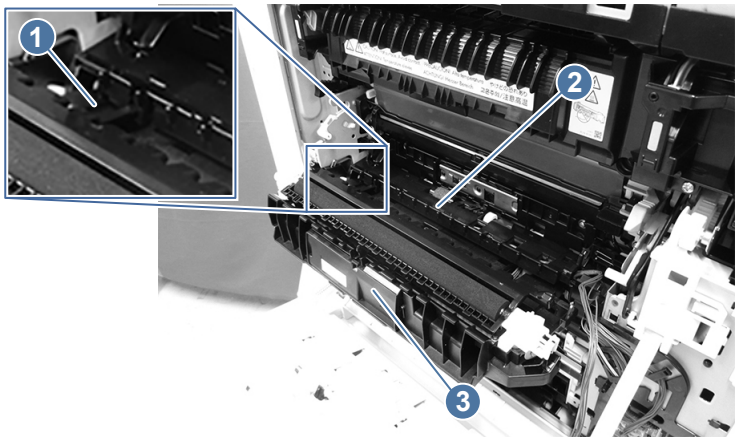
   - **X557/5800/X57945 models**: Disconnect the J315 formatter connector.
   - **5700 models**: Disconnect the J305 formatter connector.

Figure 4-297 Disconnect a formatter connector



5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up the registration assembly (callout 2) off the secondary transfer assembly (callout 3)

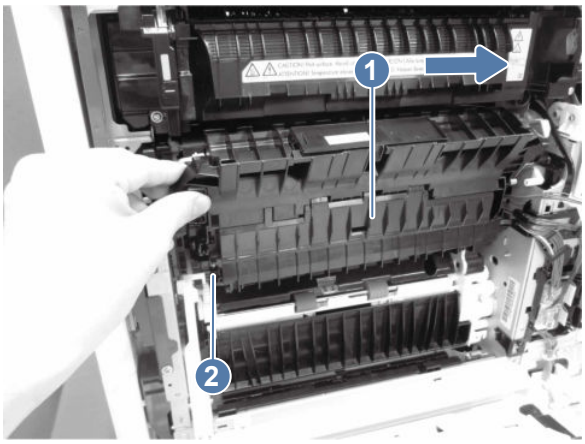
Figure 4-298 Release the tab



6. Close the secondary transfer assembly until it is only slightly open. Slide the assembly (callout 1) in the direction indicated below, and then dislodge the hinge pin (callout 2) from the holder to remove the assembly.

Reinstallation tip: Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 4-299 **Remove the secondary transfer assembly**



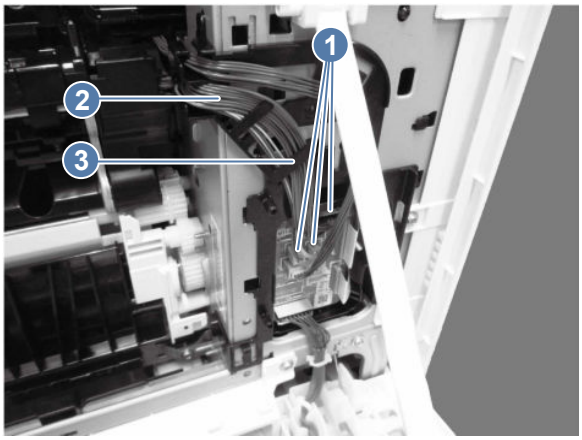
Reinstallation tip: On the assembly right side, make sure that the wire is nested in the plastic sleeve. Slide the wire sleeve into its place, depressing the spring, and then twist the left side of the assembly into place and allow the spring pressure to nest the hinge pin in its hole.

2. Remove the registration assembly

Follow these steps to remove the registration assembly.

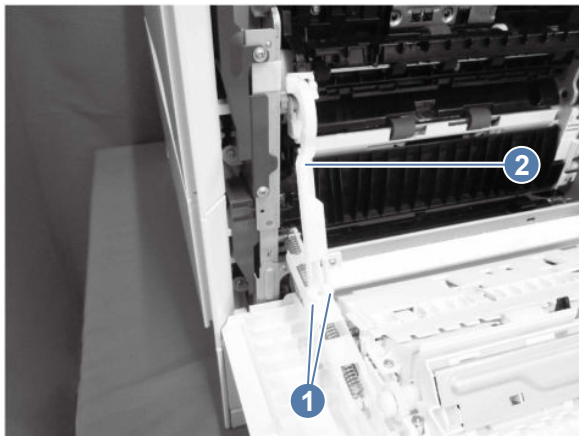
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1). and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-300 **Release the connectors**



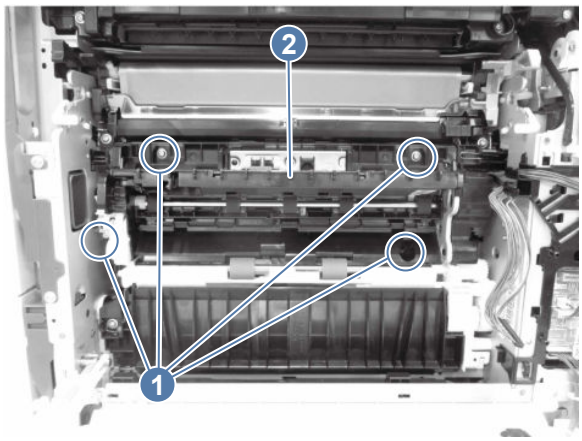
2. Release two bosses (callout 1), and then release the link arm (callout 2) from the door.

Figure 4-301 Release the link arm



3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the registration assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-302 Remove the registration assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper pickup assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the paper pickup assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-54 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3508-000CN	Paper pickup assembly (5700/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

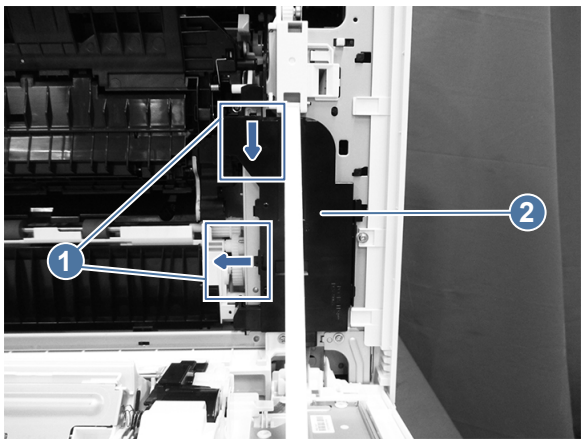
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-303 Open the right door



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

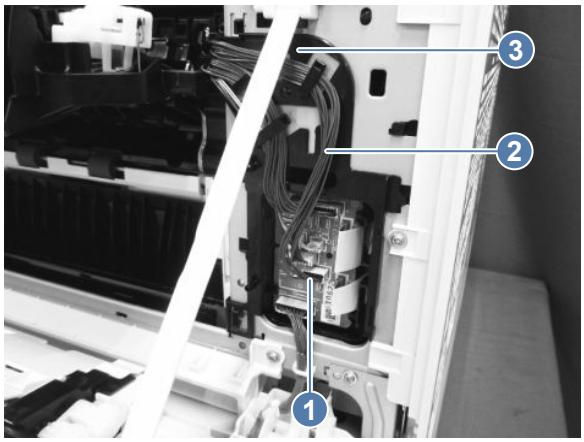
Figure 4-304 Remove the PCA cover



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalled, make sure the cable is correctly routed through the cable guide.

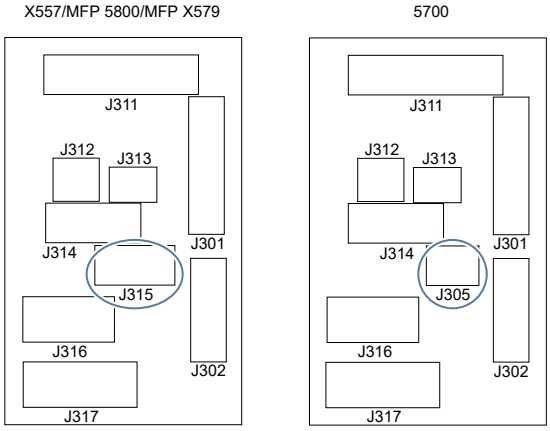
Figure 4-305 Release the cable



4. Perform one of the following steps.

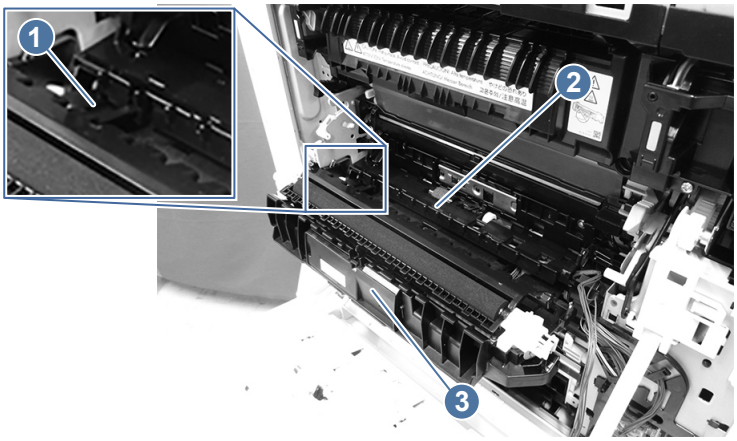
   - **X557/5800/X57945 models**: Disconnect the J315 formatter connector.
   - **5700 models**: Disconnect the J305 formatter connector.

Figure 4-306 Disconnect a formatter connector



5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up the registration assembly (callout 2) off the secondary transfer assembly (callout 3)

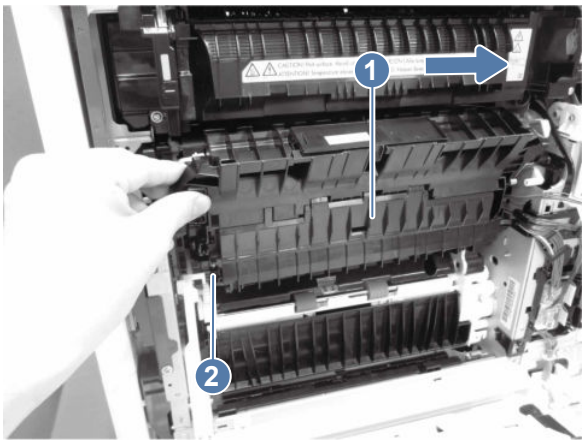
Figure 4-307 Release the tab



6. Close the secondary transfer assembly until it is only slightly open. Slide the assembly (callout 1) in the direction indicated below, and then dislodge the hinge pin (callout 2) from the holder to remove the assembly.

Reinstallation tip: Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 4-308 Remove the secondary transfer assembly



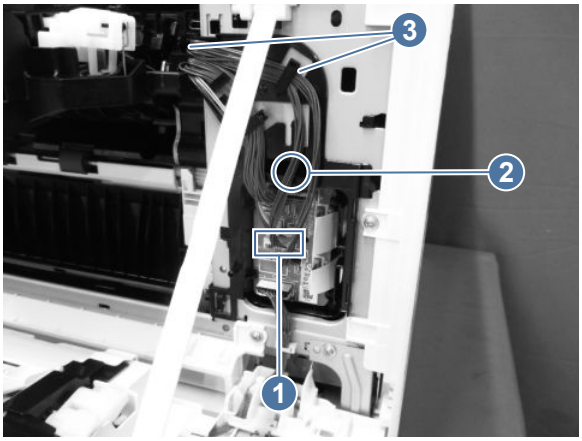
Reinstallation tip: On the assembly right side, make sure that the wire is nested in the plastic sleeve. Slide the wire sleeve into its place, depressing the spring, and then twist the left side of the assembly into place and allow the spring pressure to nest the hinge pin in its hole.

2. Remove the registration density sensor

Follow these steps to remove the registration density sensor.

1. Disconnect one connector (J314; callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guides (callout 3).

Figure 4-309 Disconnect one connector

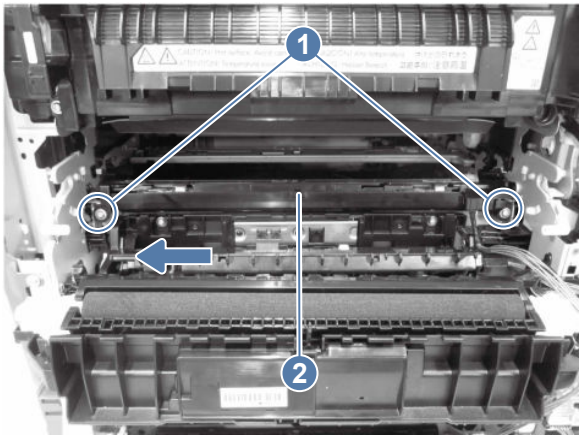


2. Remove two screws (callout 1). Pull out the registration density sensor assembly (callout 2) slightly towards you, and then move the registration density sensor assembly in the direction indicated below. Carefully pull out the right side first to remove the registration density sensor assembly.

NOTE: The shaft on the left side of the assembly is long and can break. Make sure to pivot the right side of the assembly out first to ensure that the shaft does not break. When installing a

registration density sensor assembly, insert the shaft on the left side first, and then pivot the right side into the printer.

Figure 4-310 Release the assembly

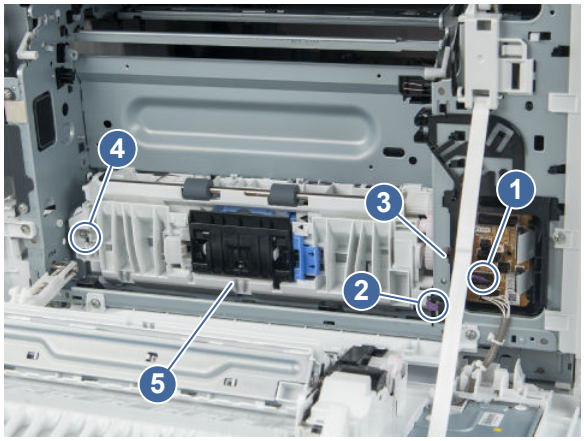


3. Remove the paper pickup assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the paper pickup assembly.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3), remove one screw (callout 4), and then remove the pickup assembly (callout 5).

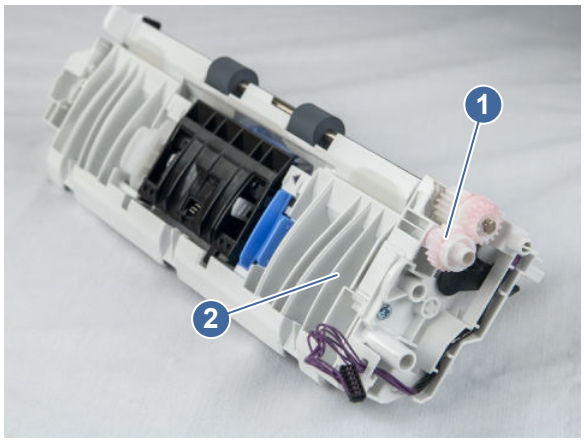
Figure 4-311 Remove the pickup assembly



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, there are two holes. The screw goes in the upper hole where it comes into contact with the grounding wire.

2. Remove the gear (callout 1) from the assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-312 Remove the gear



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Paper pickup assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper pickup assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-55 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3509-000CN	Paper pickup assembly (X57945 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

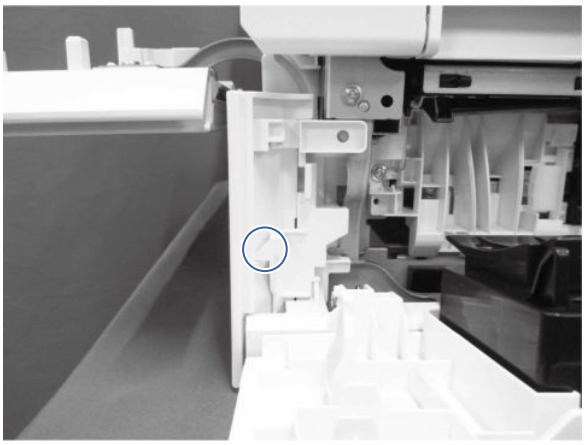
1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.

3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-313 Remove the front right cover

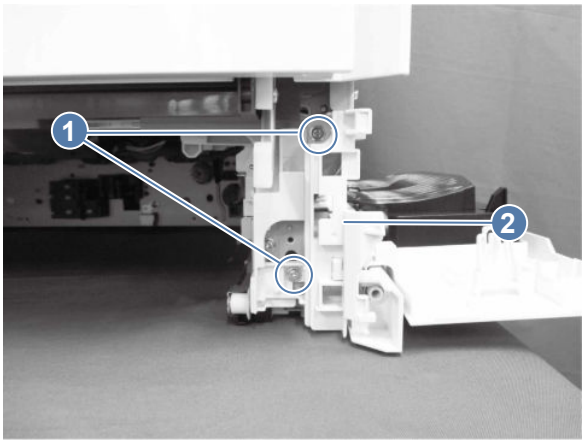


2. Remove the right lower door (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

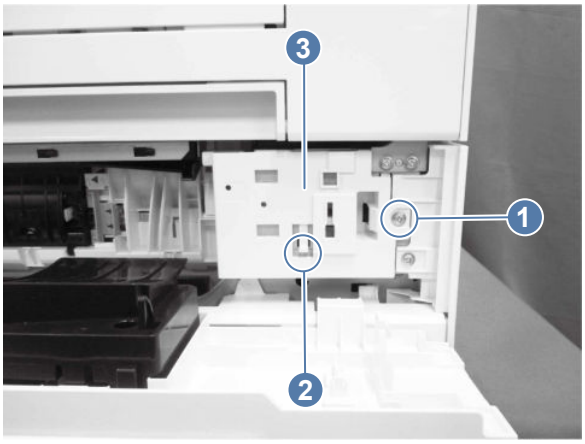
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-314 Remove the base frame



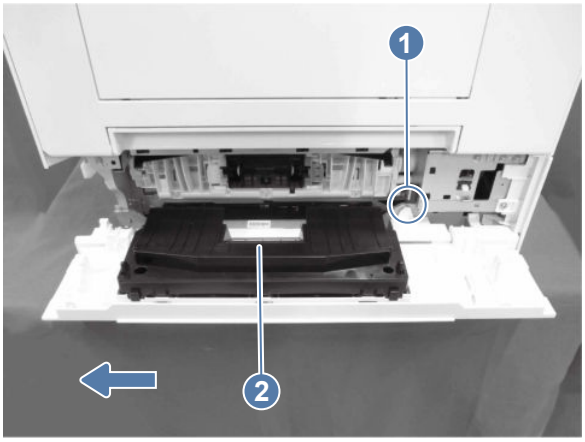
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-315 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-316 Remove the right lower door assembly

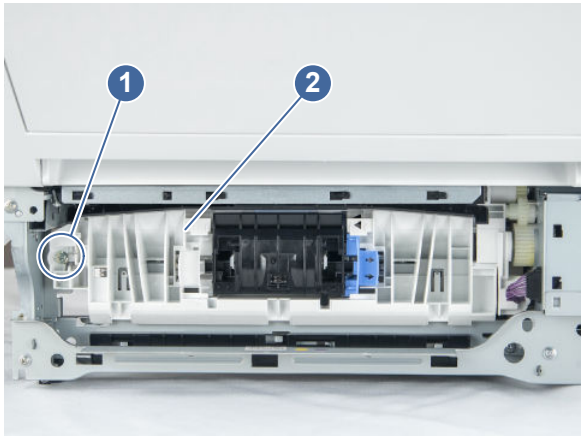


3. Remove the paper pickup assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the paper pickup assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the pickup assembly (callout 2).

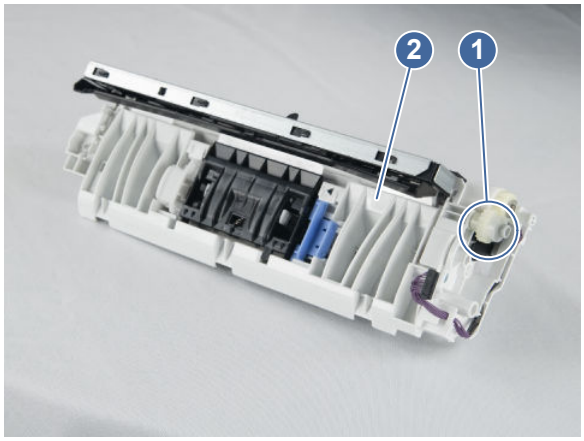
Figure 4-317 Remove the pickup assembly



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, there are two holes. The screw goes in the upper hole where it comes into contact with the grounding wire.

2. Remove the gear (callout 1) from the pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-318 Remove the gear



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Delivery assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the delivery assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-56 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3548-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (5700/X557/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM2-3554-000CN	Paper delivery assembly (5800/X57945/ X58045dn/X58045z/ X58045zs)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

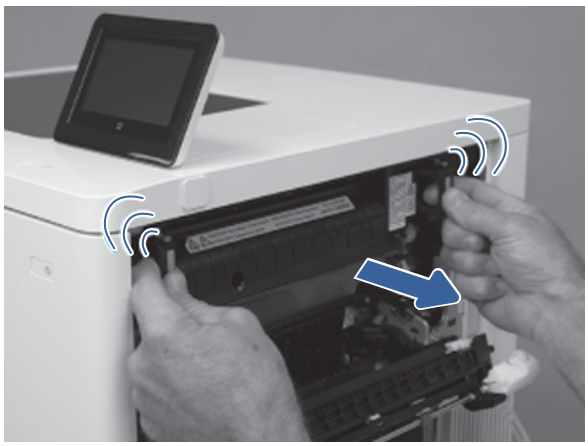
⚠ CAUTION: The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-319 Open the right door



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-320 Remove the fuser

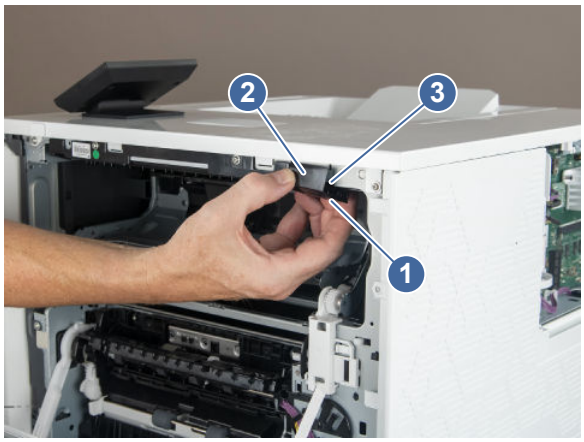


2. Remove the delivery assembly

Follow these steps to remove the delivery assembly.

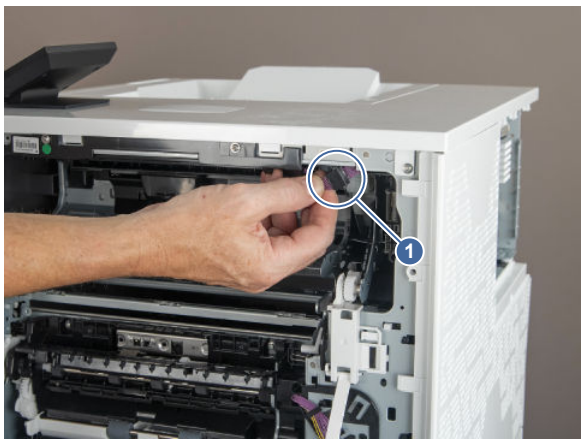
1. Pull the lever (callout 1) at the back of the cable cover (callout 2) to release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 4-321 **Remove the cable cover**



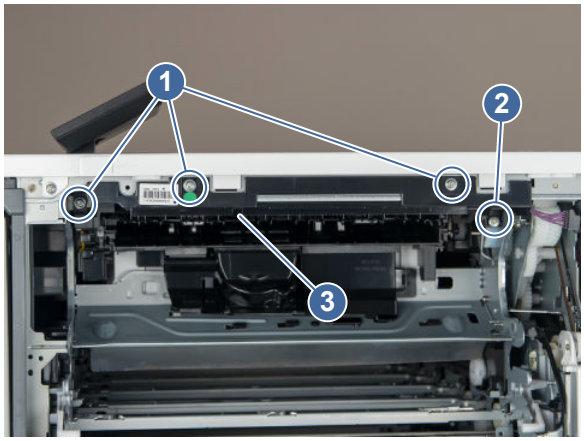
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-322 **Disconnect one connector**



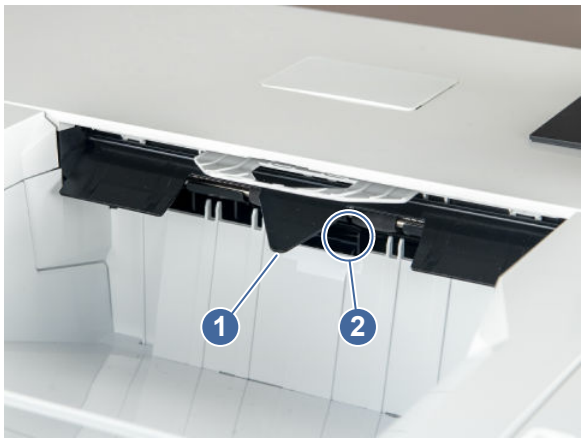
3. Remove three screws (callout 1), remove one binding screw (callout 2), and then pull out the delivery assembly (callout 3) away from the printer.

Figure 4-323 Remove the delivery assembly



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, lift the flag (callout 1) to prevent the flag from entering the duct (callout 2)

Figure 4-324 Lift the flag



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Laser scanner assembly

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the laser scanner assembly.

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-57 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3822-000CN	Laser scanner assembly (5700, 55745, 5800, 57945, X58045dn, X58045z, X58045zs)
RM2-3787-000CN	Laser scanner assembly (6700, 654, 6800, 677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the HVPS are fully seated.

Make sure that all of the connectors on the LVPS are fully seated.

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

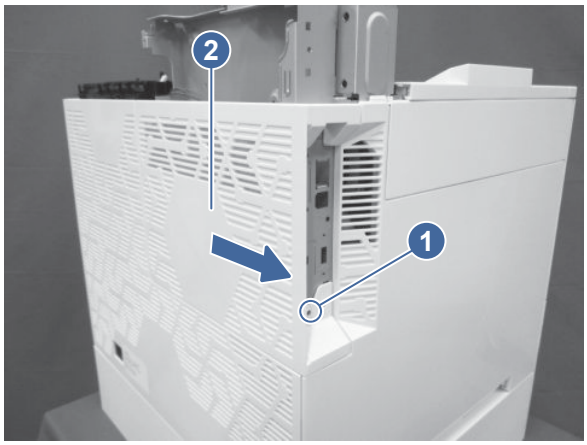
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-325 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

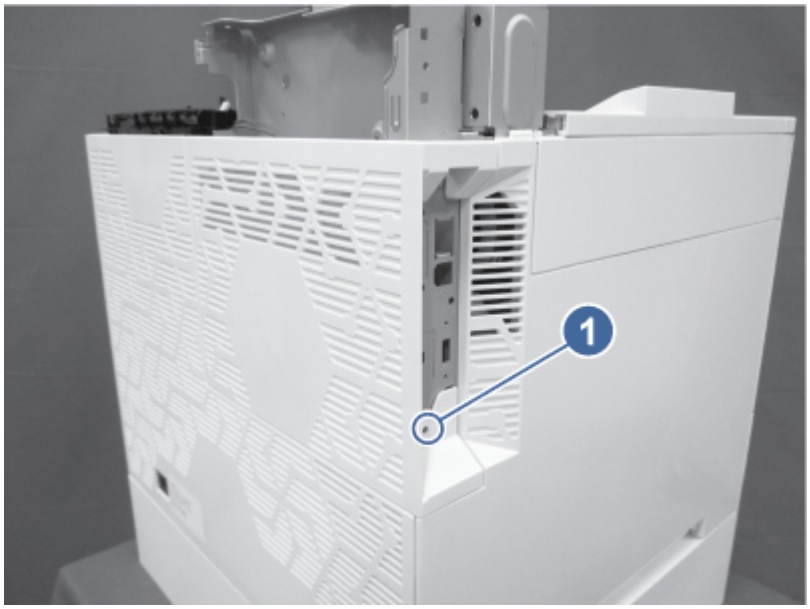
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-326 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



3. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

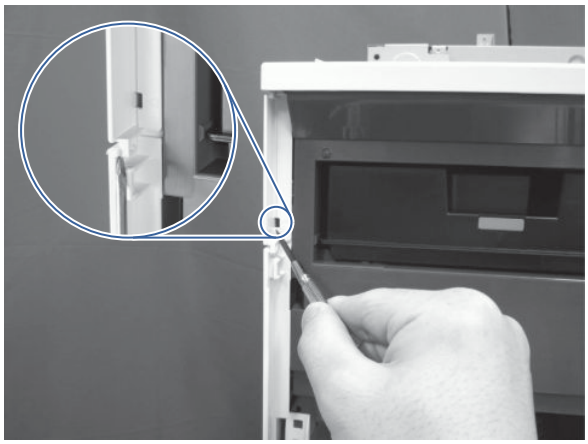
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

⚠ **CAUTION:** If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

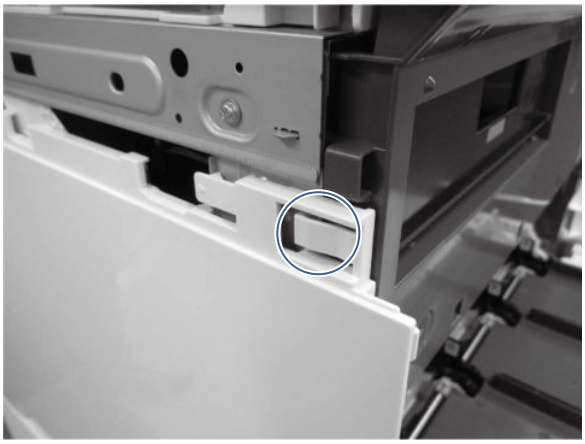
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-327 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



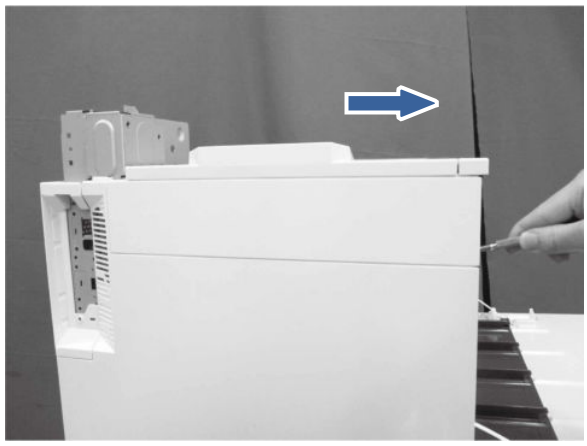
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-328 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-329 Remove the left upper cover

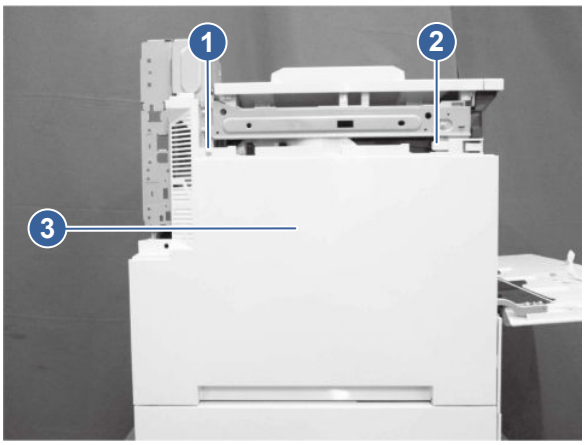


4. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-330 Remove the left cover

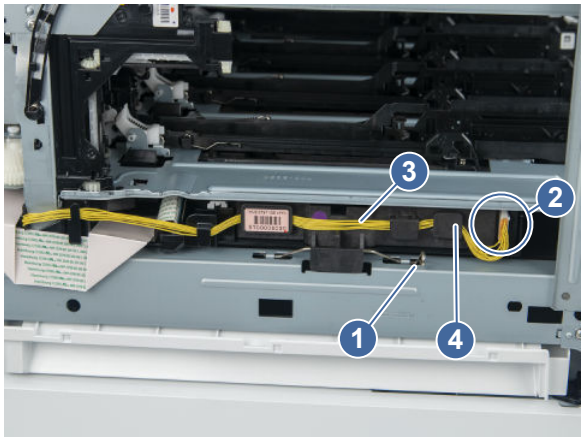


5. Remove the laser scanner assembly

Follow these steps to remove the laser scanner assembly.

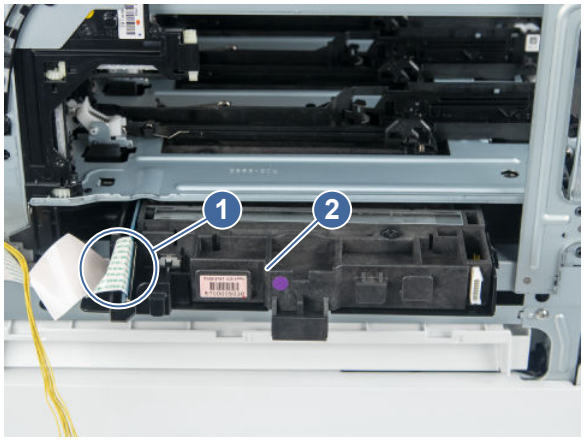
1. Unhook the spring (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), release the cable (callout 3) from the laser scanner assembly (callout 4), and then pull out the laser scanner assembly slightly.

Figure 4-331 Unhook the spring



2. Disconnect the FFC (callout 1), and then pull the laser scanner assembly (callout 2) out of the printer.

Figure 4-332 Remove the assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: DC controller (DCC)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the DC controller (DCC).

Mean time to repair: 30 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and eMMC PCA or hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-58 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7751-010CN	DC controller PCA (5700)
RM3-7752-010CN	DC controller PCA (5800)

Table 4-58 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
RM3-7755-010CN	DC controller PCA (X55745)
RM3-7756-010CN	DC controller PCA (X57945)
RM3-7759-010CN	DC Controller PCA (X58045)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the DC controller are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated, and that the thumbscrews are finger tight after replacing it.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

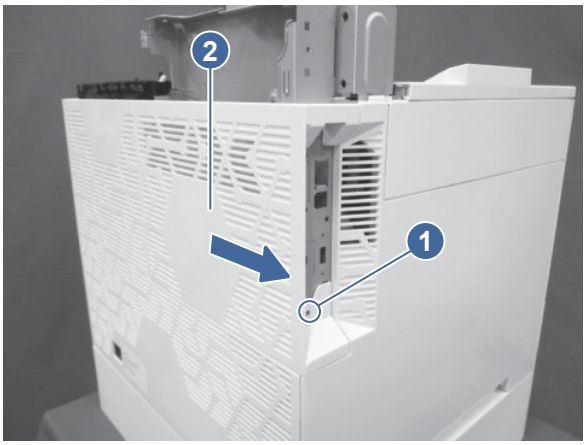
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-333 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

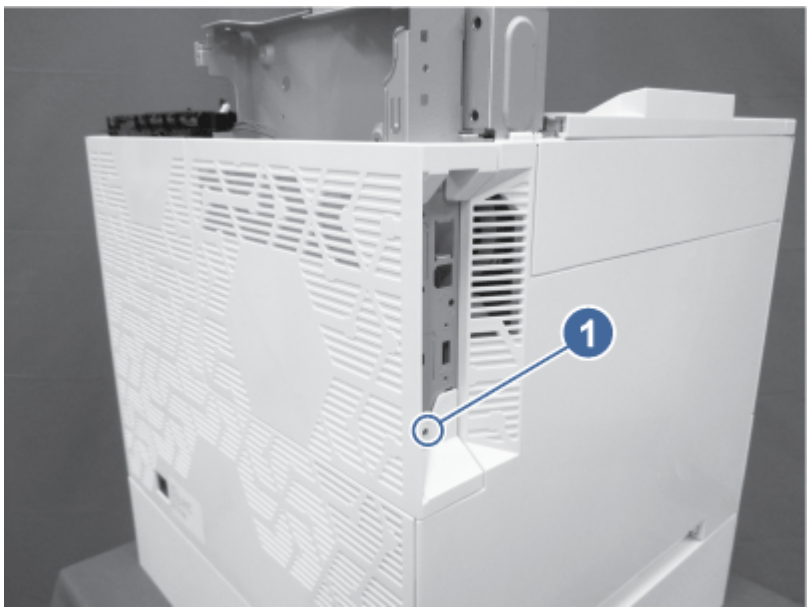
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-334 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



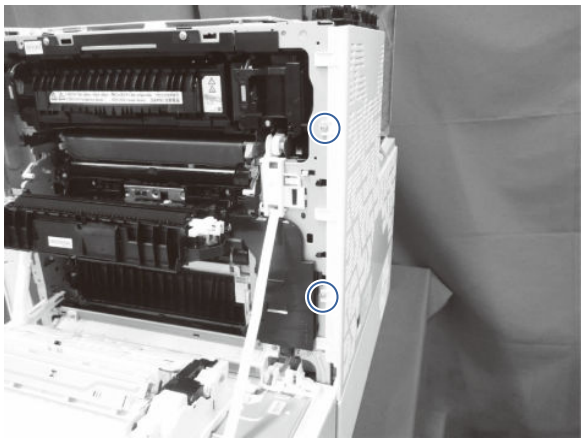
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

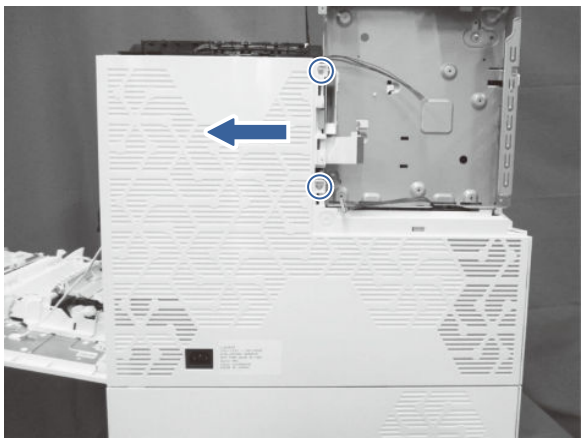
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-335 **Remove two screws**



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-336 Remove the rear cover



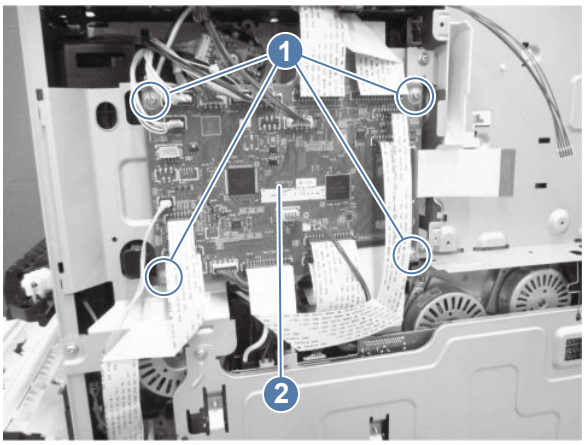
4. Remove the DC controller

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller.

- Disconnect all of the connectors on the DC controller, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the DC controller (callout 2).

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

Figure 4-337 Remove the DC controller



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the formatter.

Mean time to repair: 10 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

CAUTION: Under **NO** circumstances should a formatter from a different printer be installed during the repair or troubleshooting processes. The formatter stores important data specific to the model of printer it is installed in and is not deigned to be swapped or re-purposed in any way. Return a used formatter to HP.

Issues that can occur from swapping a formatter include:

- Serial number, product number, product name, page count, and supported cartridges information change and might make a product unusable.
- 33.02.01 Used board/Disk installed errors.

If a used formatter is installed and causes this issue, the partner must cover the costs of the repair in the form of a product replacement. **There is no method in the field to recover a printer where a used formatter is installed.**

IMPORTANT: Do not replace the formatter, DC controller, and hard-disk drive simultaneously during a single printer servicing. Doing so might cause the printer to become unstable or inoperable.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-59 Part information

Part number	Part description
6QN27-67002	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx)
6QN27-67004	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx) (China/India)
6QN29-67002	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx / X58xxx)
6QN29-67004	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx) (China/India)
6QN32-67002	Formatter (67xx / X65xxx)
6QN32-67004	Formatter (67xx / X65xxx) (China/India)
6QN35-67002	Formatter (68xx / X67xxx)
6QN35-67005	Formatter (68xx / X67xxx) (China/India)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

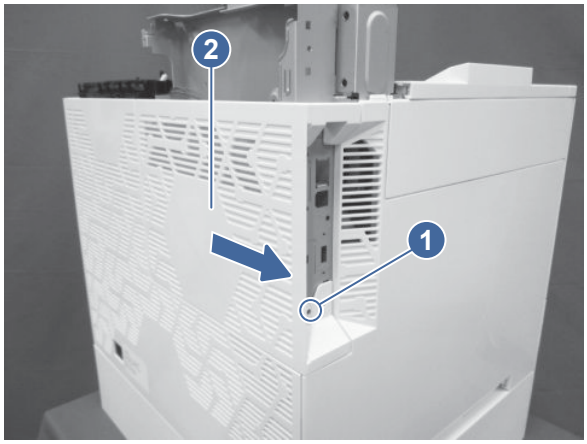
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-338 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

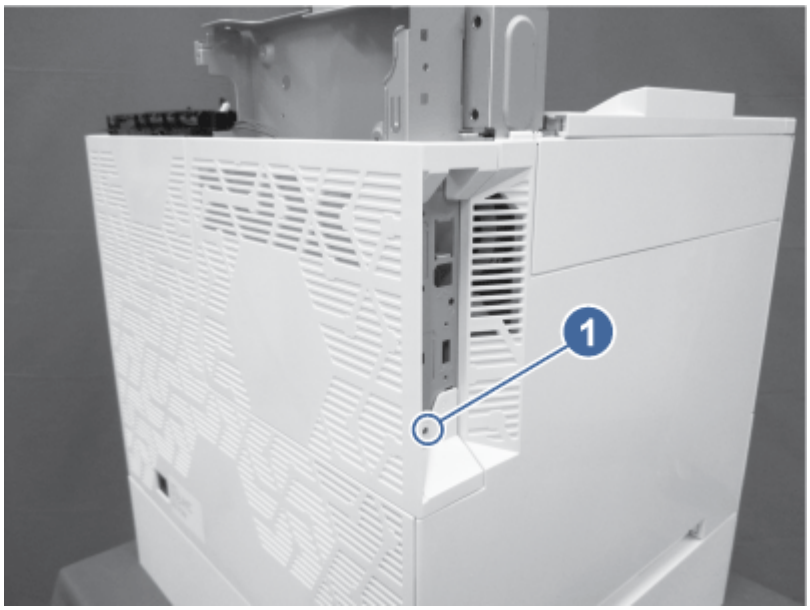
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-339 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



3. Remove the formatter

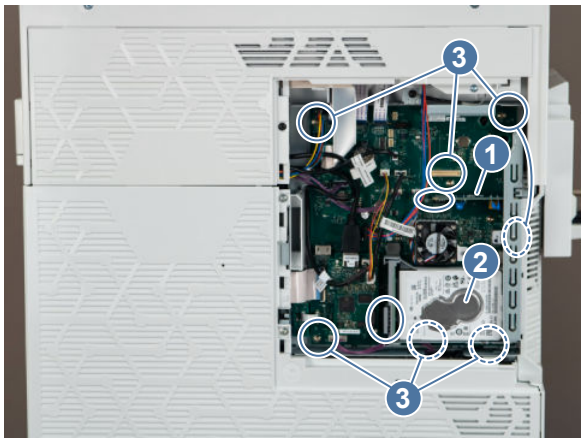
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

> IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-340 **Remove the formatter**



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter cage assembly (SFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter cage assembly for SFP models.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-60 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4520-000CN	Formatter cage assembly (SFP)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

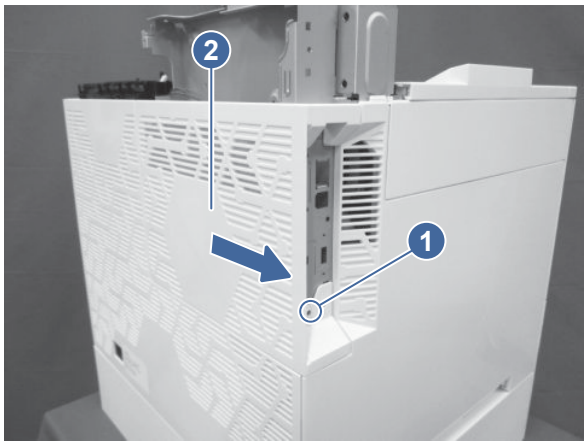
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-341 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

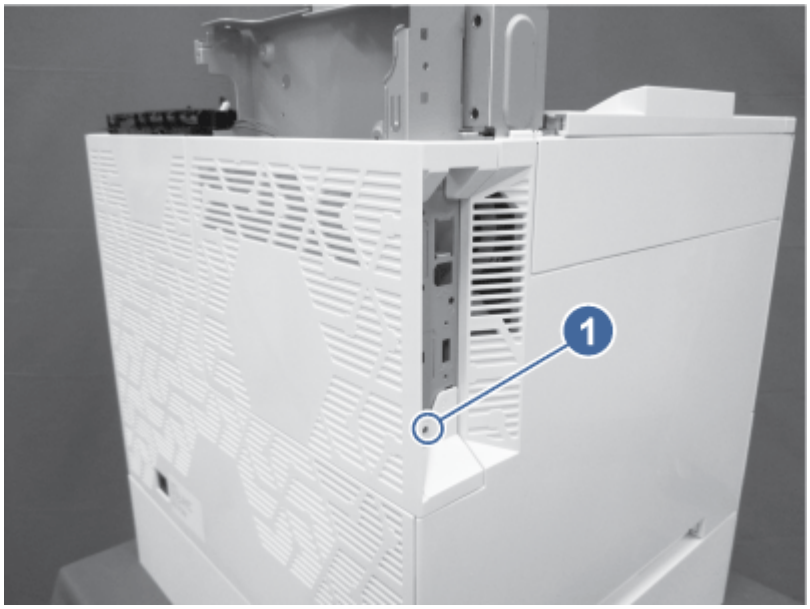
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-342 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



3. Remove the formatter

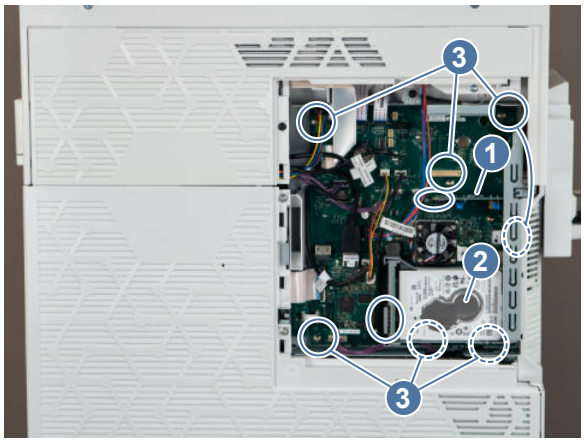
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-343 Remove the formatter



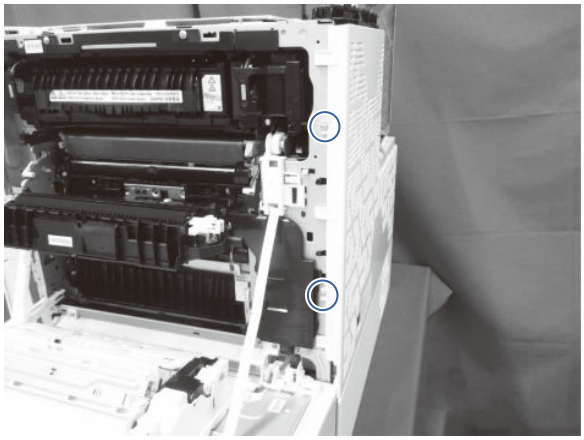
4. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

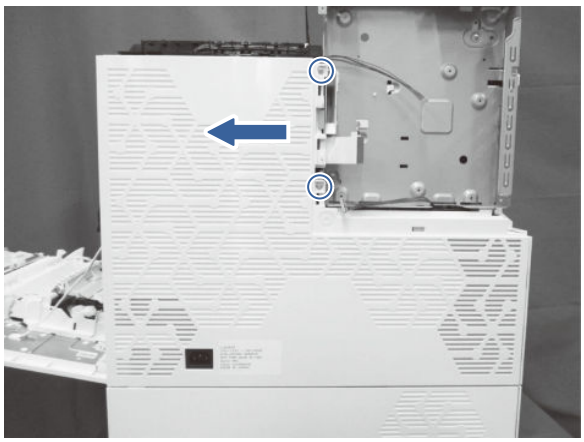
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-344 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-345 Remove the rear cover



5. Remove the formatter cage (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

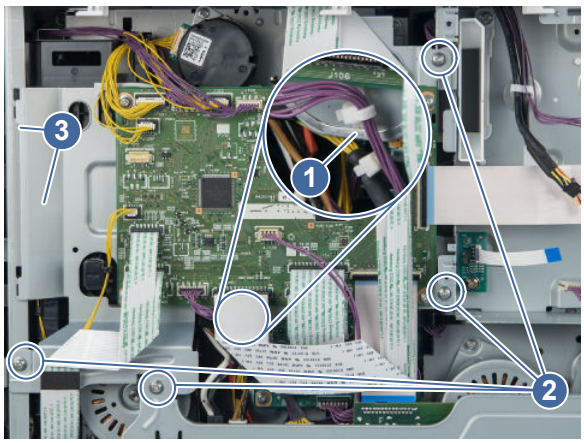
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) out to remove it.

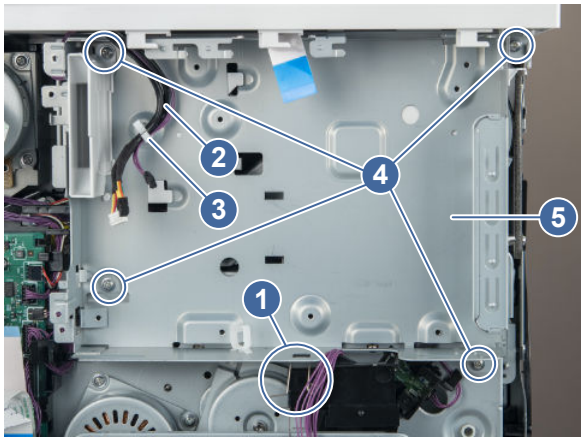
NOTE: Be careful not to drop any of the screws into the low-voltage power supply assembly below the DC controller.

Figure 4-346 Remove the DC controller stay



3. Unhook one spring (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3), remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 5).

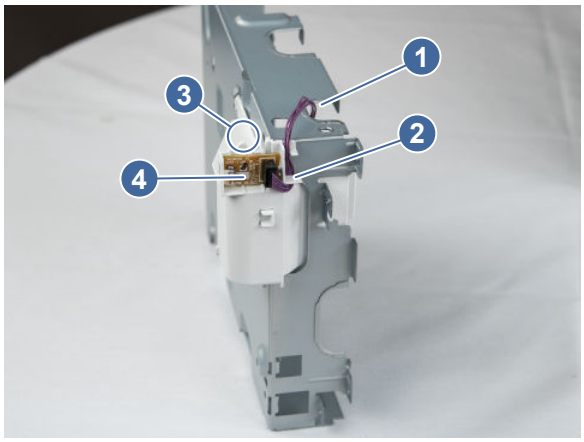
Figure 4-347 **Remove the formatter cage**



4. **For a replacement formatter cage only:** Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-348 **Remove the memory PCA**



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Formatter cage assembly (MFP models)

Learn about removing and replacing the formatter cage assembly for MFP models.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-61 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4521-000CN	Formatter cage assembly (MFP)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

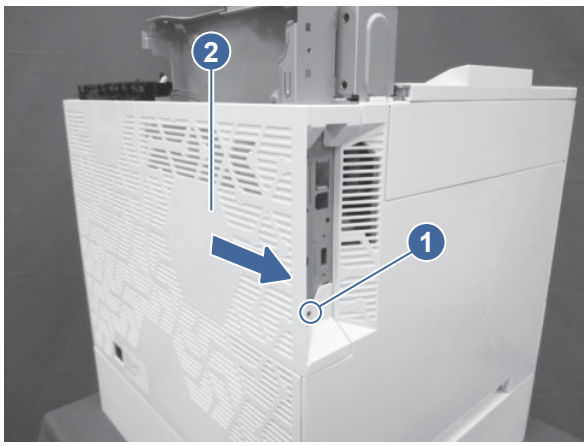
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-349 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

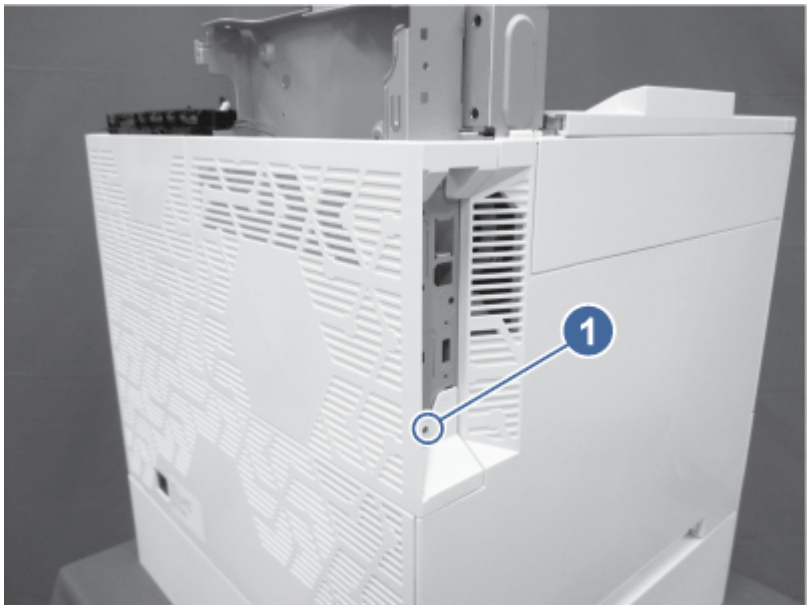
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-350 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



3. Remove the formatter

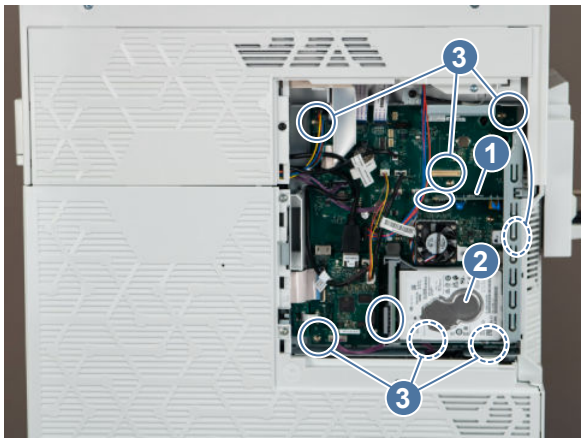
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-351 Remove the formatter



4. Remove the rear upper cover (MFP models X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs)

Follow these steps to remove the rear upper cover.

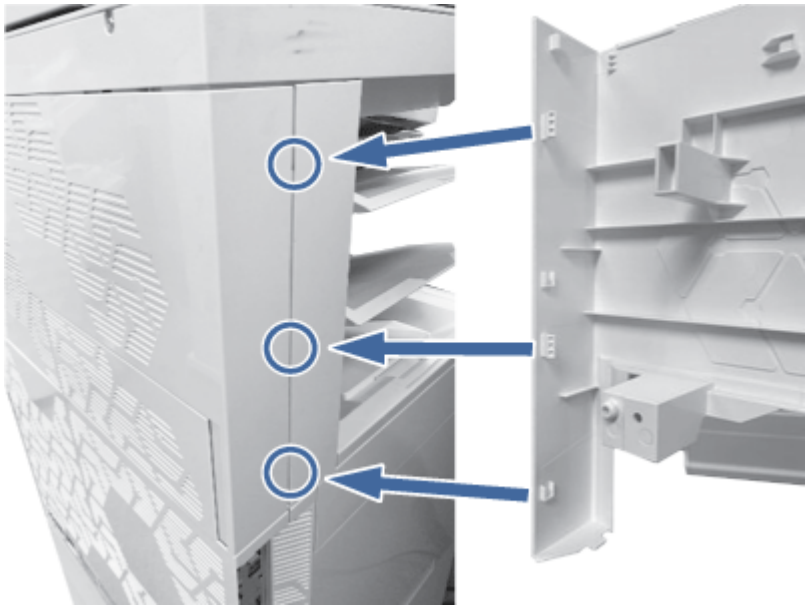
1. Remove the 2 highlighted screws.

Figure 4-352 Remove 2 screws



2. Using a flat head screwdriver, disengage three snap-fit leavers then pull the cover away from the printer.

Figure 4-353 Remove the cover



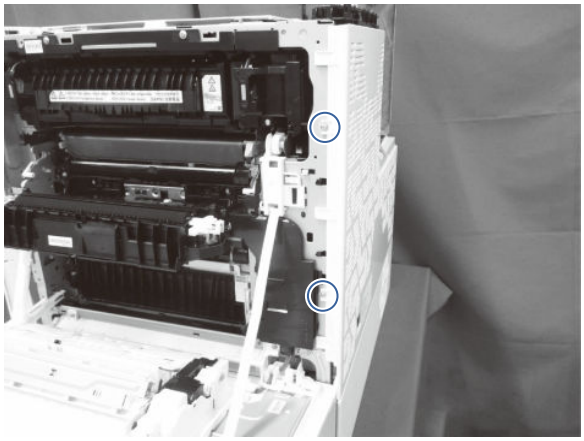
5. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

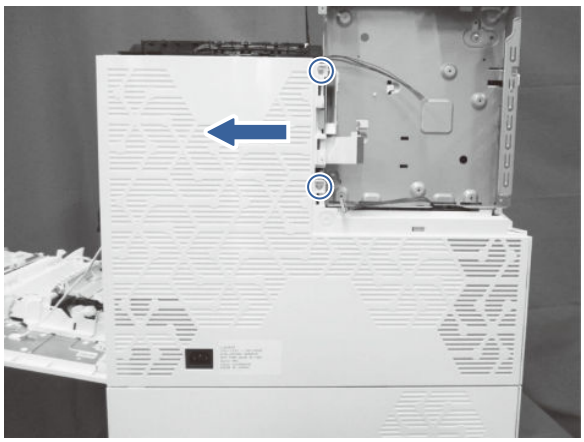
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-354 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-355 Remove the rear cover

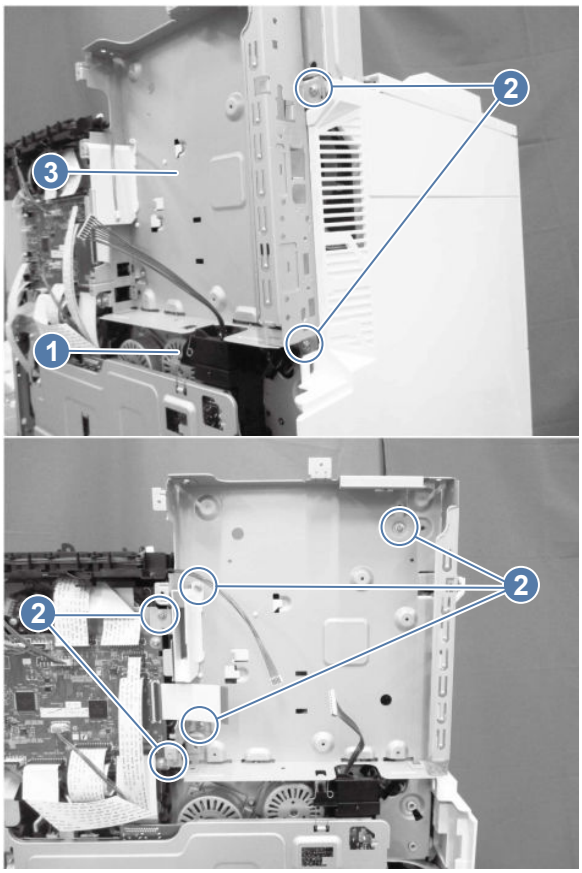


6. Remove the formatter cage (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 3).

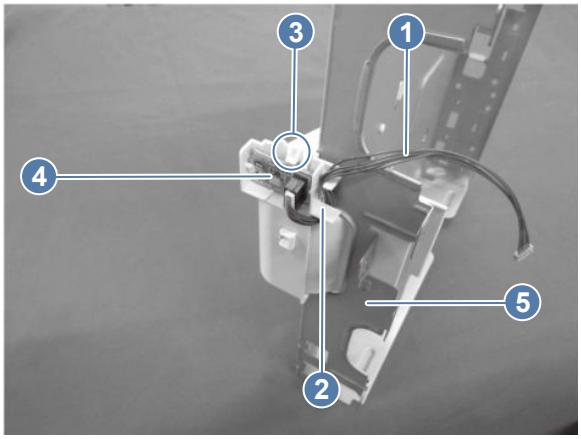
Figure 4-356 Remove the formatter cage



2. **For a replacement formatter cage only**: Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-357 **Remove the memory PCA**



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed drive assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the feed drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-62 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3702-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (X57945)
RM2-3683-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (X654/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

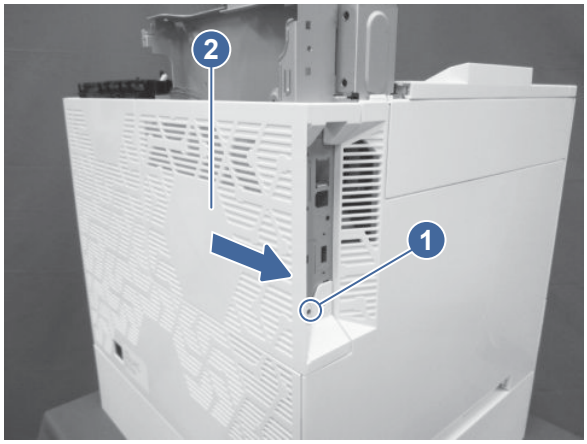
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-358 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

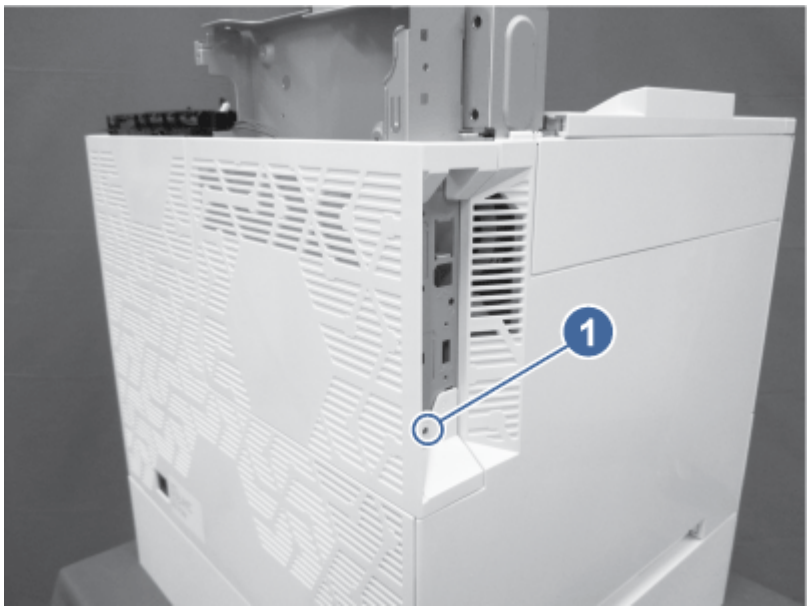
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-359 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



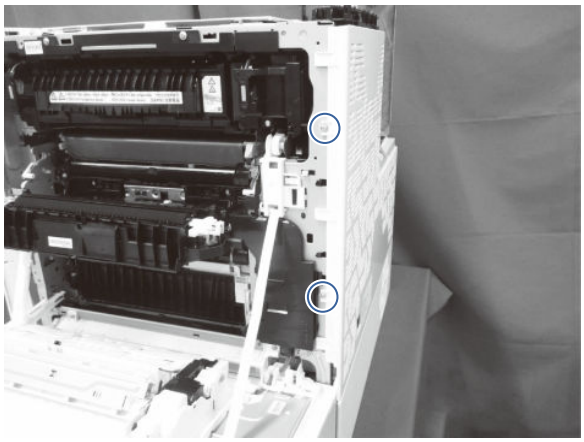
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

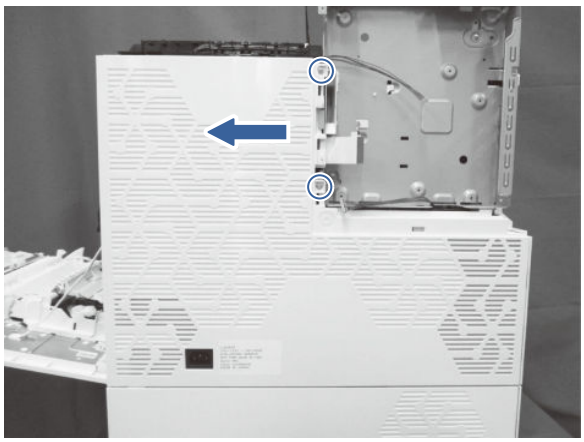
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-360 **Remove two screws**



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-361 Remove the rear cover



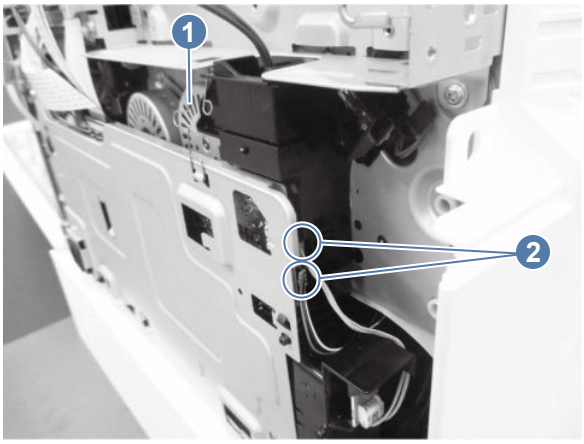
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

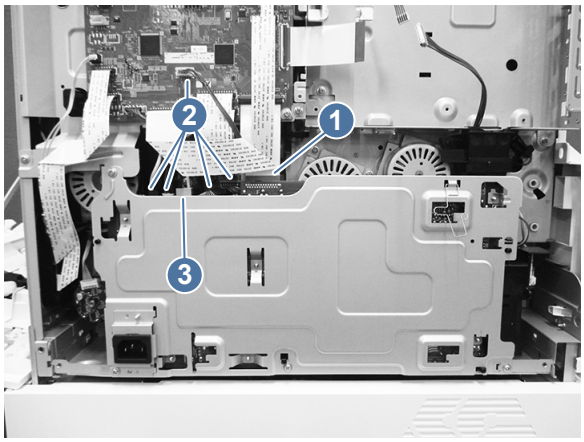
Figure 4-362 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-363 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

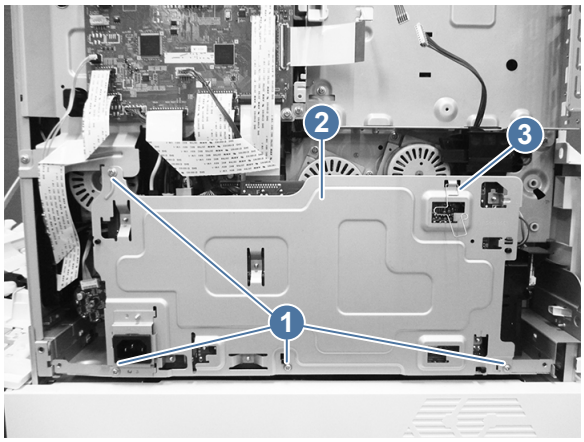


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

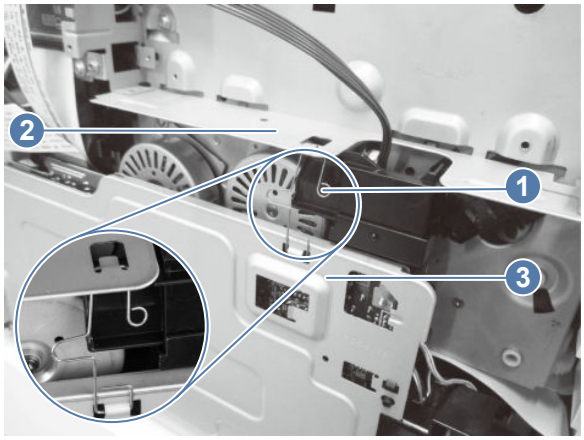
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-364 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-365 Reinstalling the LVPS

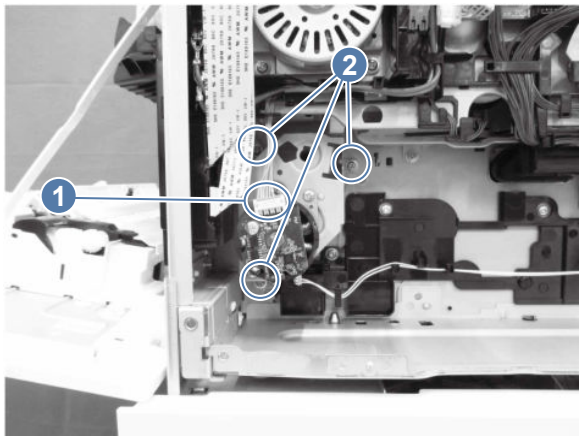


5. Remove the feed drive assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the feed drive assembly.

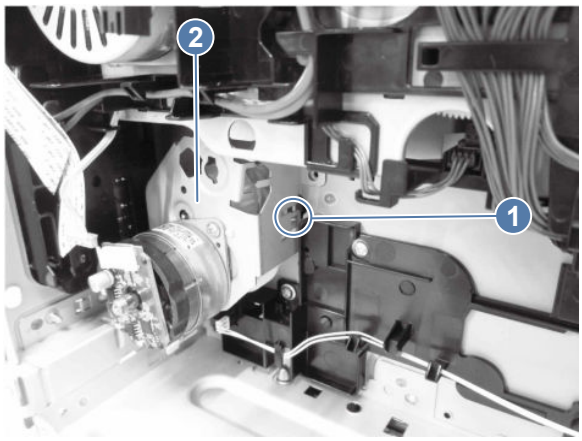
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-366 Disconnect connector, remove 3 screws



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the feed drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-367 Remove the feed drive assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models)

Learn about removing and replacing the pickup drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-63 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3681-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM2-3682-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (X58045z/X58045zs/6700/6800)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

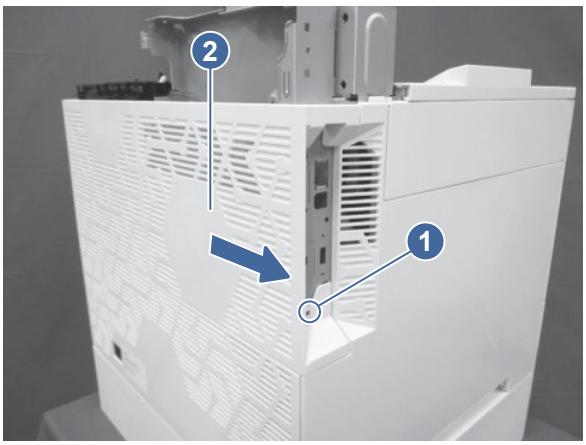
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-368 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

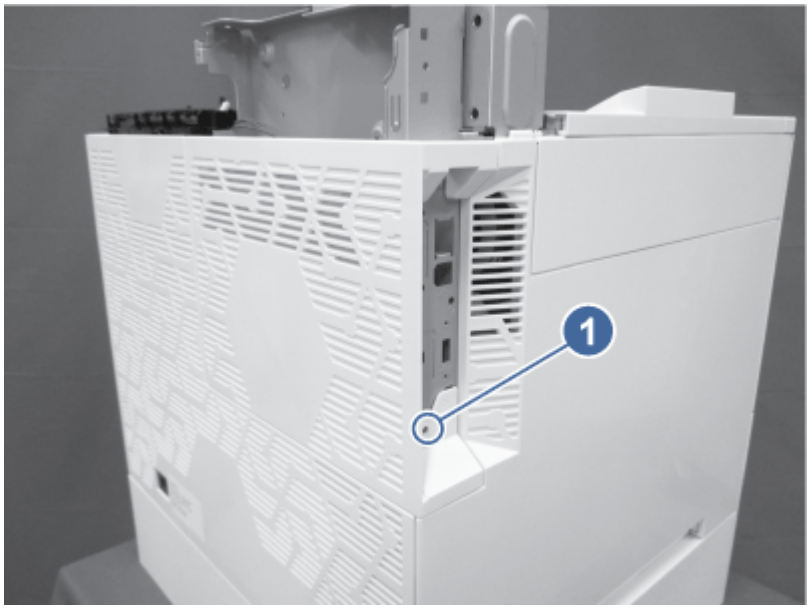
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-369 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



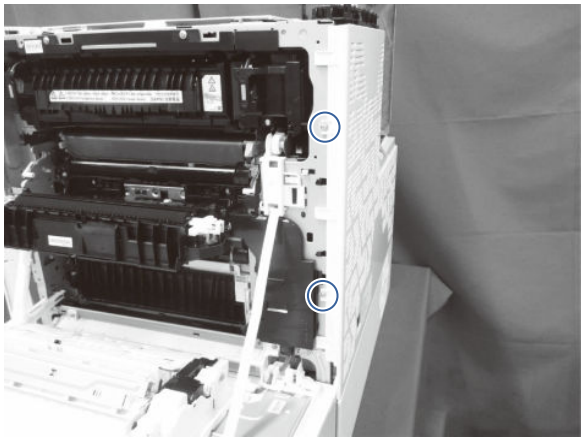
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

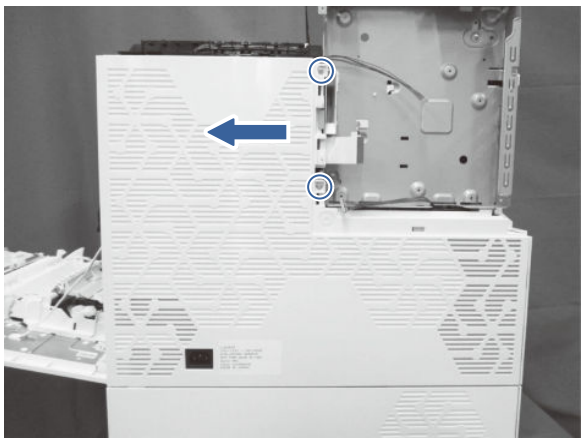
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-370 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-371 Remove the rear cover



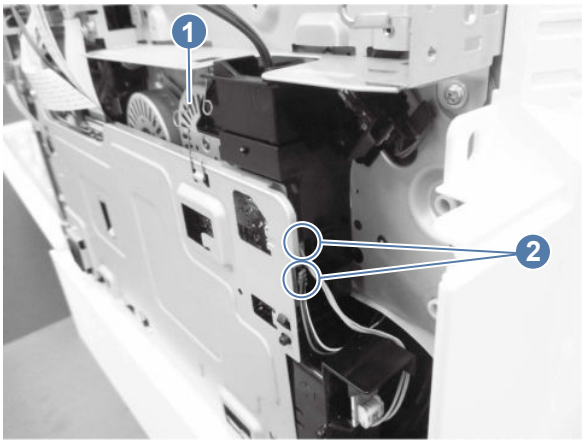
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

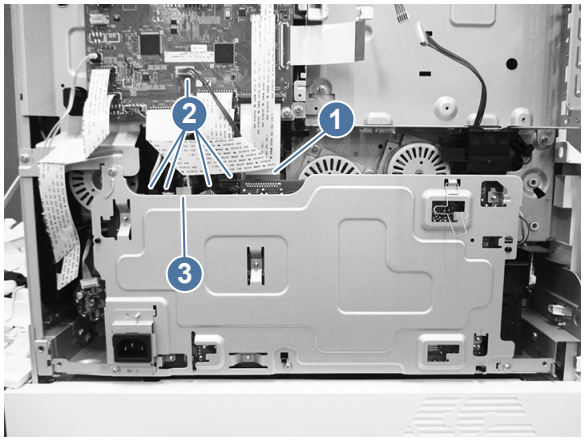
Figure 4-372 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-373 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

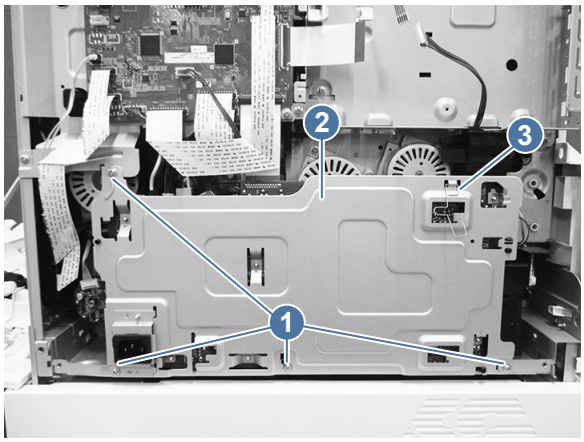


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

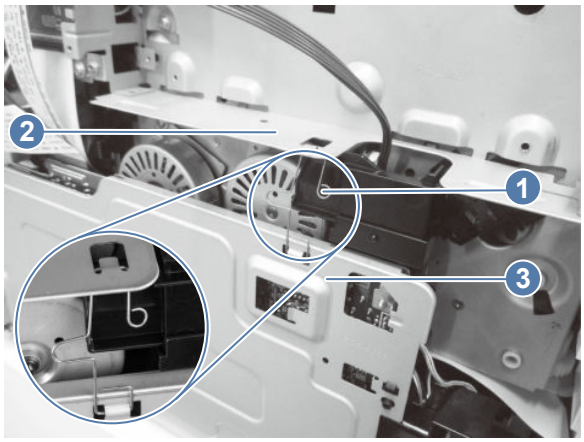
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-374 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-375 Reinstalling the LVPS

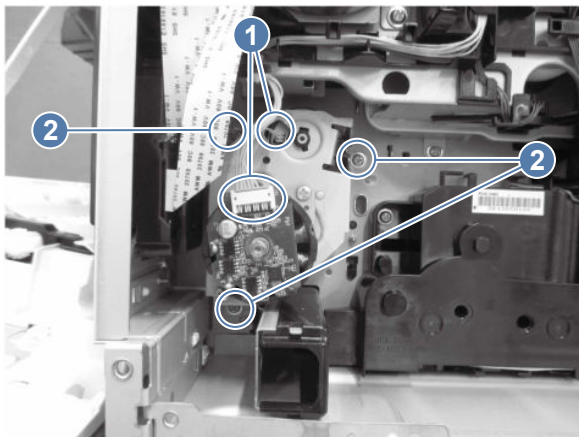


5. Remove the pickup drive assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive assembly.

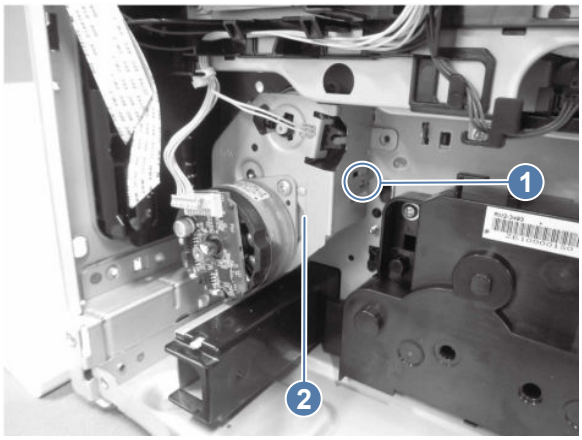
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove three screws (callout 2).

Figure 4-376 Disconnect two connectors, remove three screws



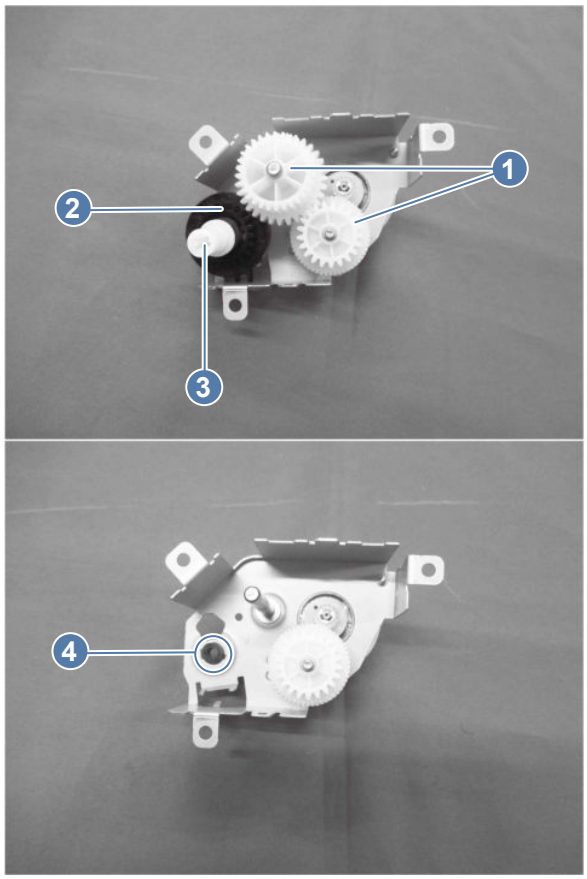
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-377 Remove the pickup drive assembly



Reinstallation tip: The indicated gears (callout 1), clutch (callout 2), shaft (callout 3), and bushing (callout 4) are not fixed to the assembly plate. Ensure that these components do not fall apart when installing or removing the paper pickup drive assembly.

Figure 4-378 Do not lose unfastened components



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the pickup drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-64 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3683-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (X654/X677)
RM2-3702-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (X57945)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

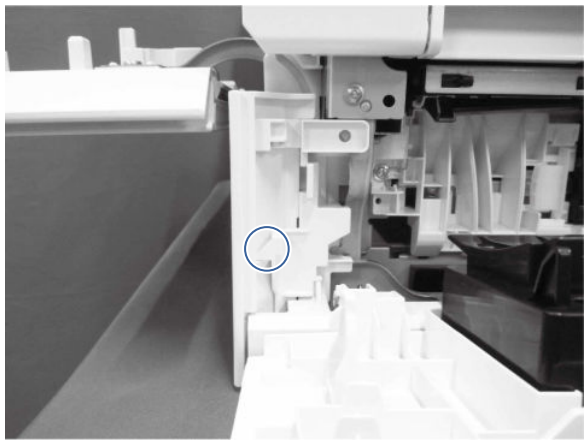
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.
3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-379 **Remove the front right cover**

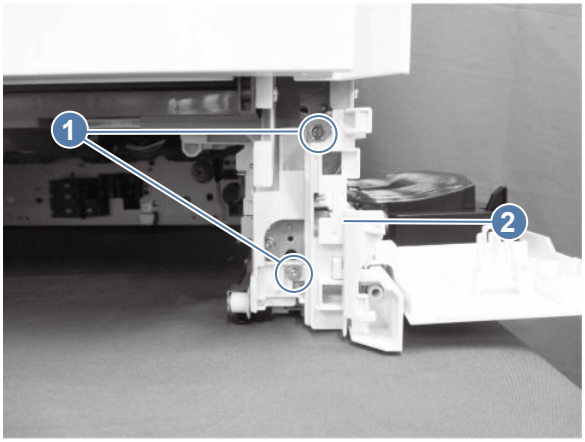


2. Remove the right lower door (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

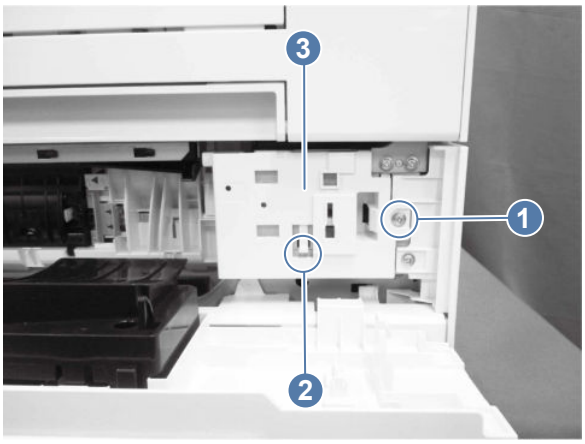
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-380 Remove the base frame



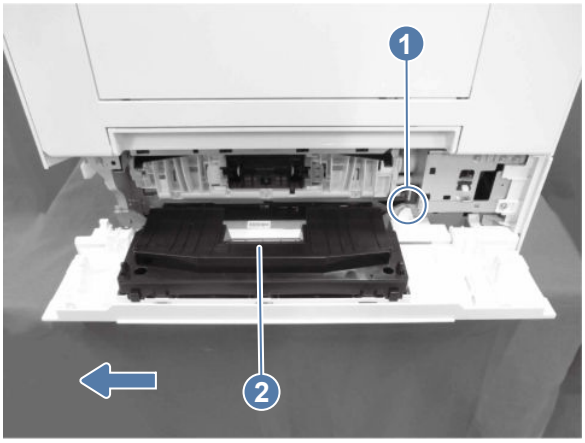
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-381 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-382 Remove the right lower door assembly

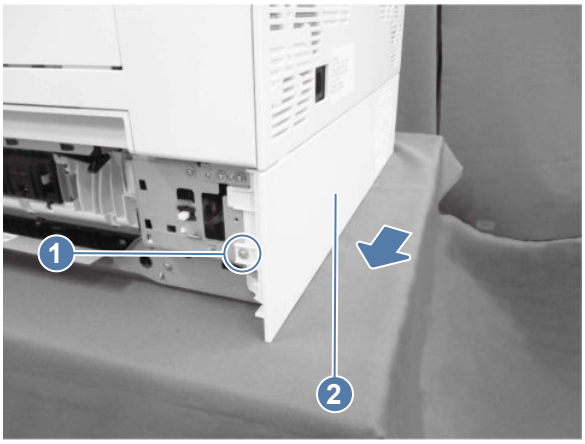


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

Figure 4-383 Remove the rear lower cover

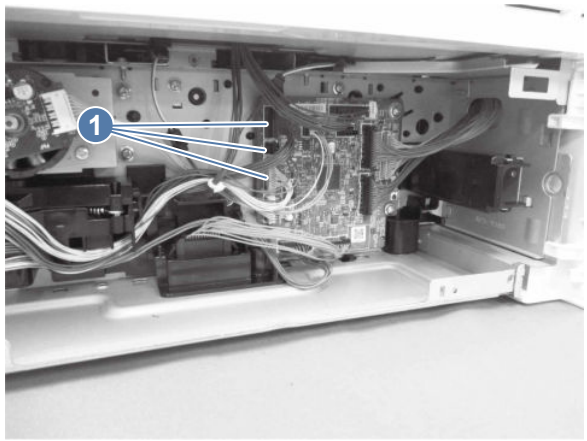


4. Remove the pickup drive assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive assembly.

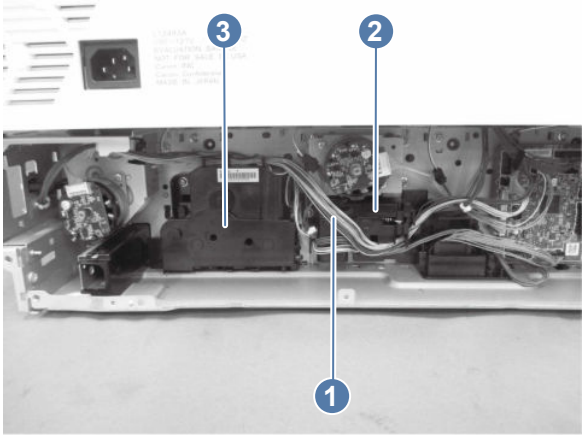
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-384 Disconnect three connectors



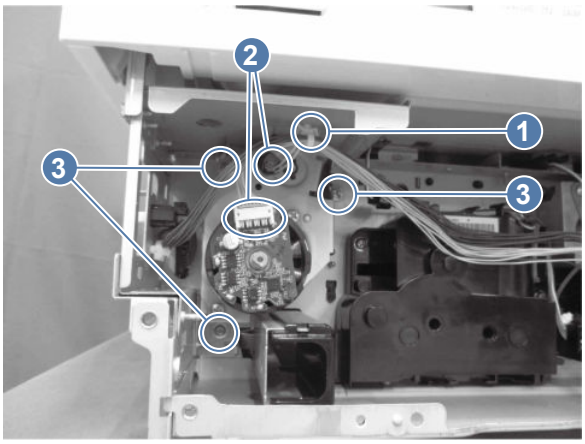
2. Release the cable (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2) and the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-385 Release the cable



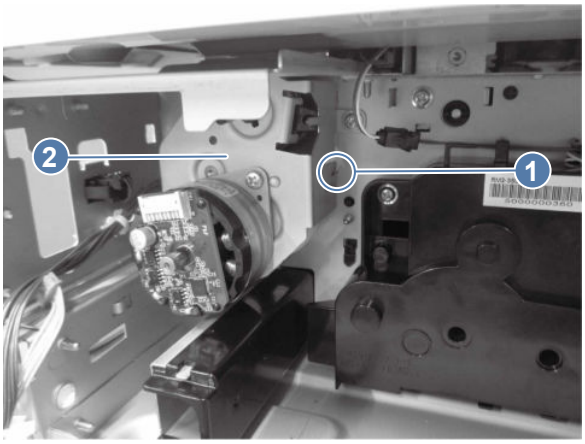
3. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws (callout 3).

Figure 4-386 Remove the cable clamp



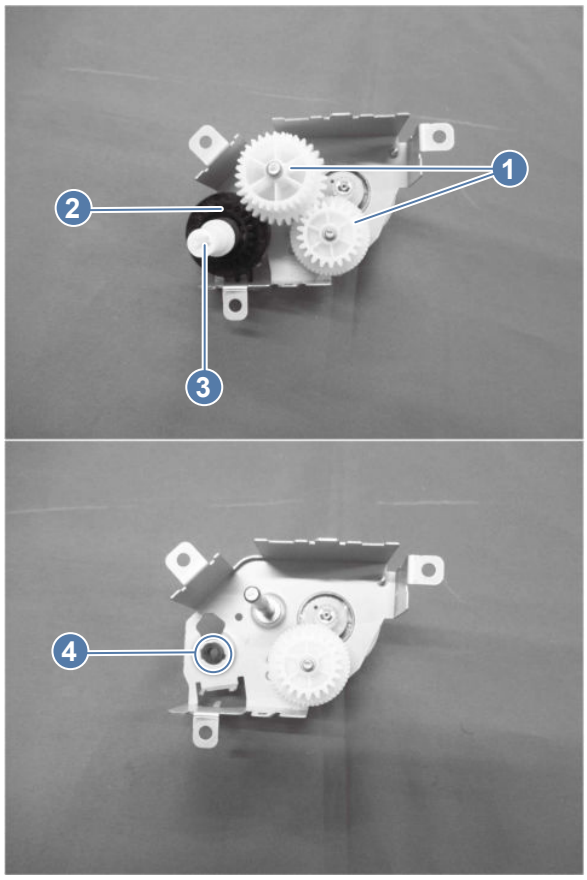
4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-387 Remove the pickup drive assembly



Reinstallation tip: The indicated gears (callout 1), clutch (callout 2), shaft (callout 3), and bushing (callout 4) are not fixed to the assembly plate. Ensure that these components do not fall apart when installing or removing the paper pickup drive assembly.

Figure 4-388 Do not lose unfastened components



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner supply motor assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner supply motor assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-65 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3612-000CN	Toner supply drive motor assembly (X57945 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

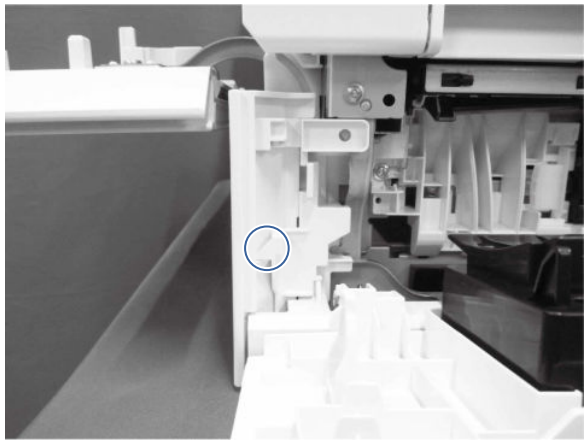
1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.

2. Open the right lower door.
3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-389 **Remove the front right cover**

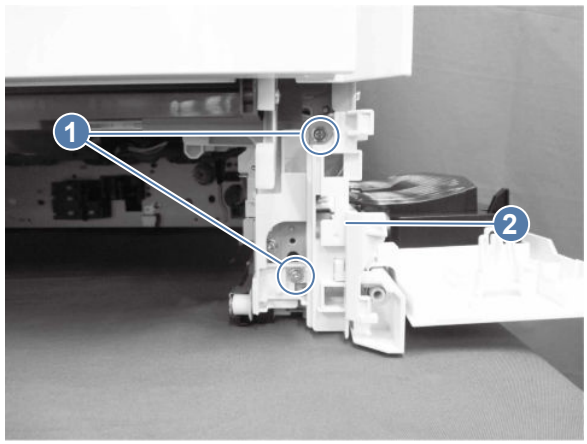


2. Remove the right lower door (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

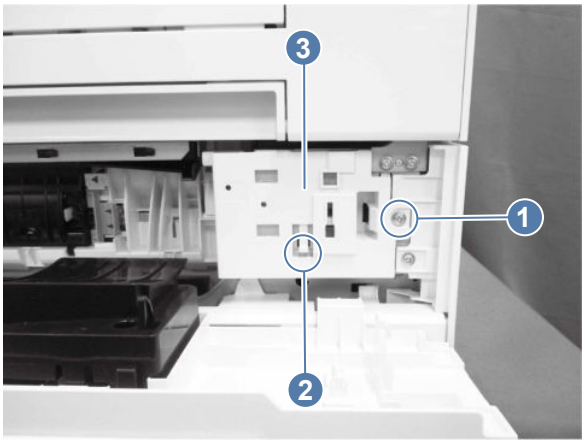
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-390 **Remove the base frame**



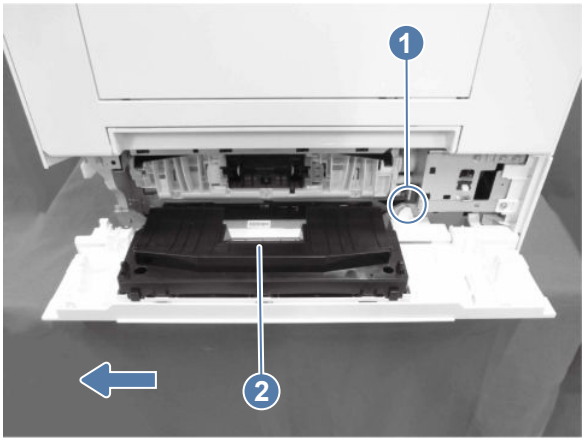
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-391 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-392 Remove the right lower door assembly

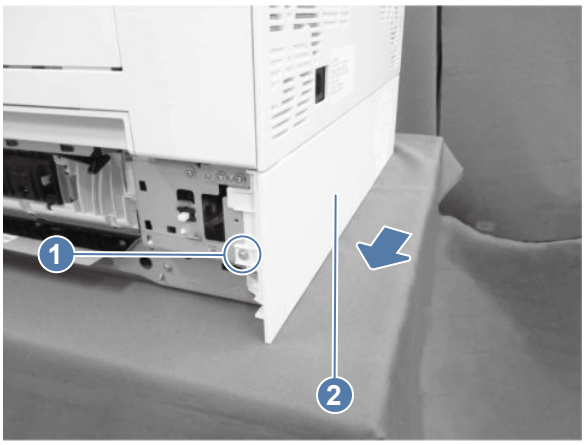


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

Figure 4-393 Remove the rear lower cover

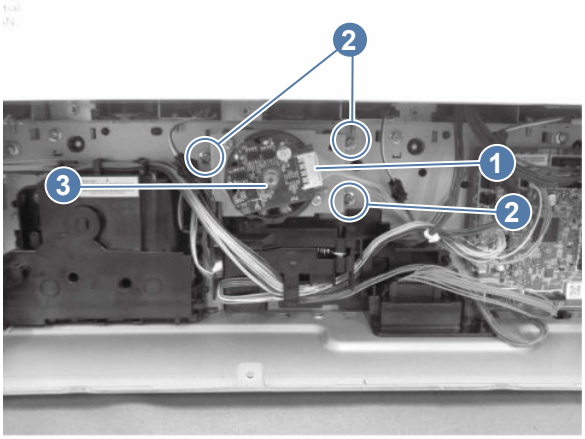


4. Remove the toner supply motor assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply motor assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the toner supply motor assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-394 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models)

Learn about removing and replacing the lifter drive assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the lifter drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-66 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3493-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (5700/5800)
RM2-3500-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (X557/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs/6700/6800)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

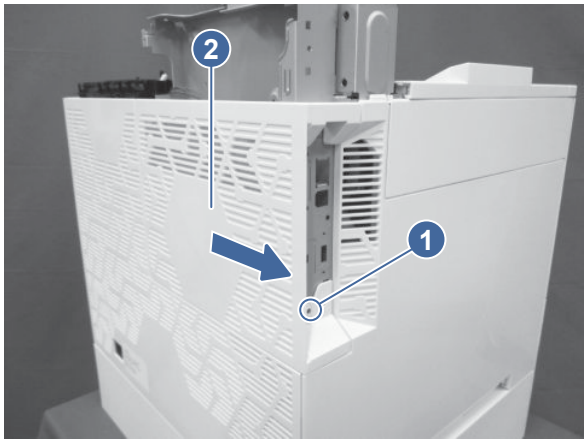
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-395 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

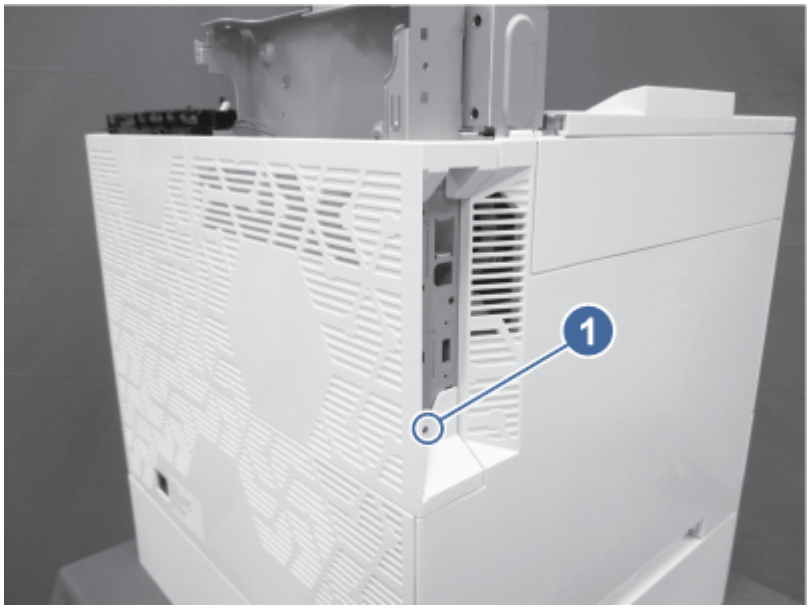
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-396 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



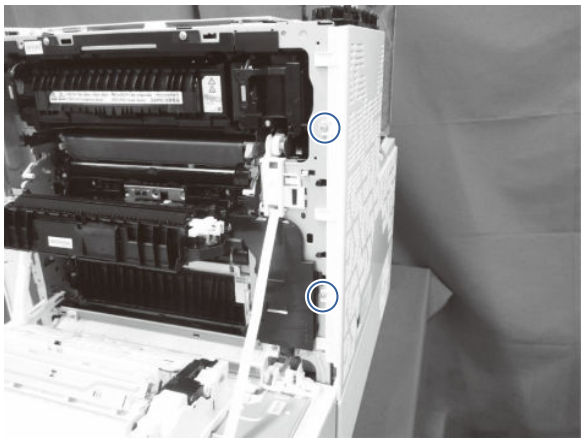
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

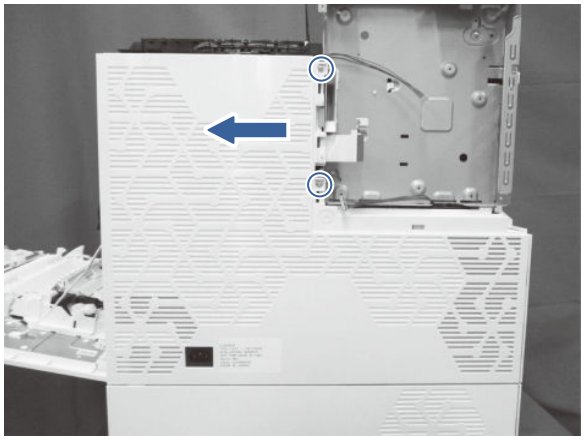
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-397 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-398 Remove the rear cover



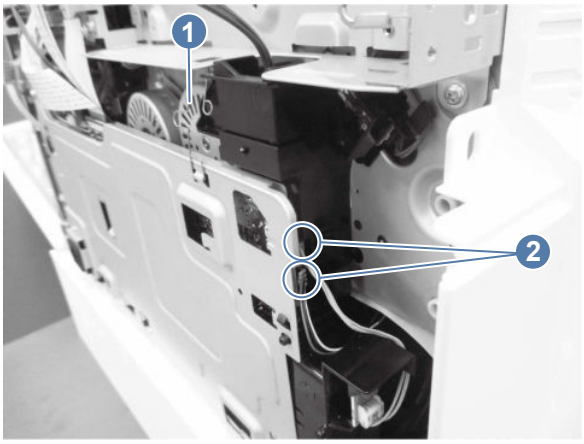
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

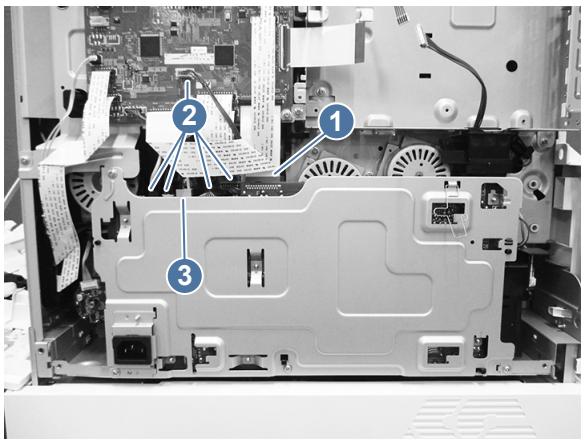
Figure 4-399 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only:** Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-400 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

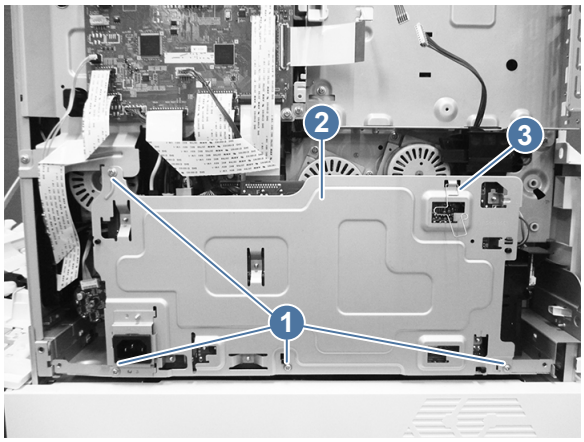


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

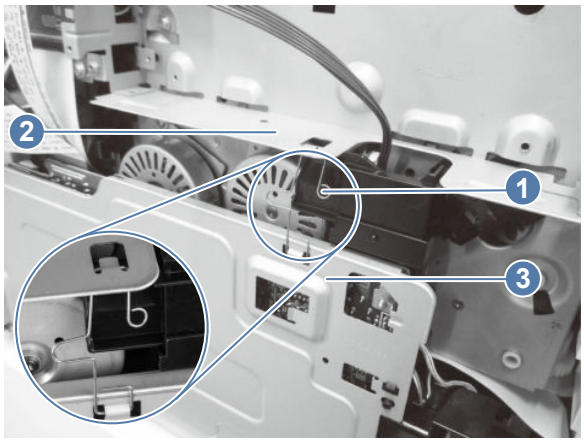
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-401 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-402 Reinstalling the LVPS

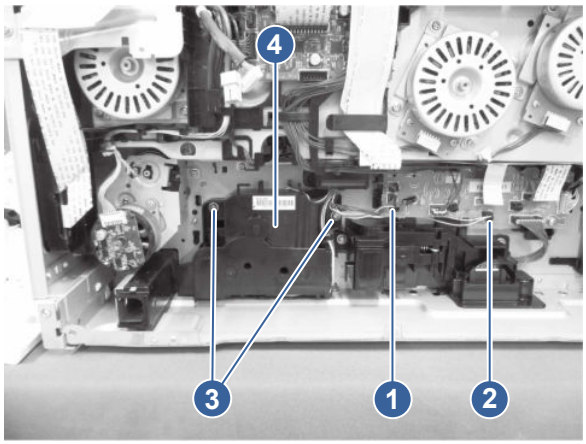


5. Remove the lifter drive assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the lifter drive assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 4).

Figure 4-403 Remove the assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the lifter drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-67 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3501-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (X57945/X654/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

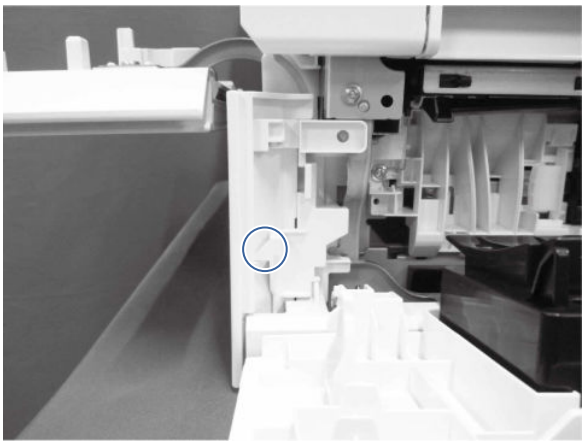
1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.

3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-404 Remove the front right cover

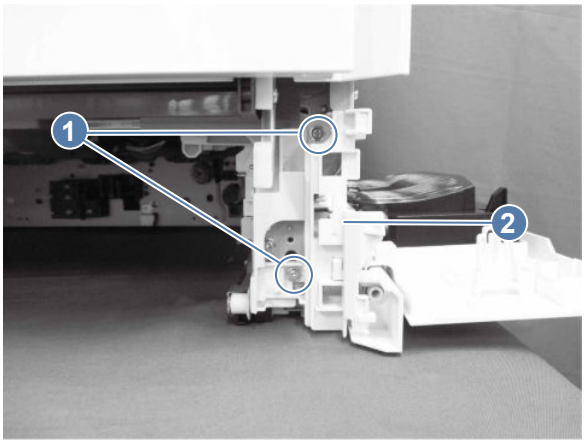


2. Remove the right lower door (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

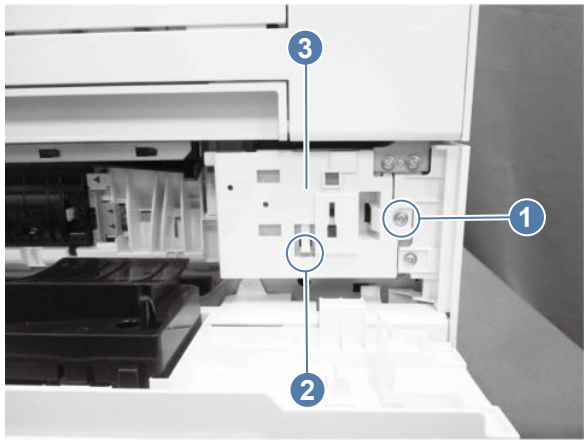
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-405 Remove the base frame



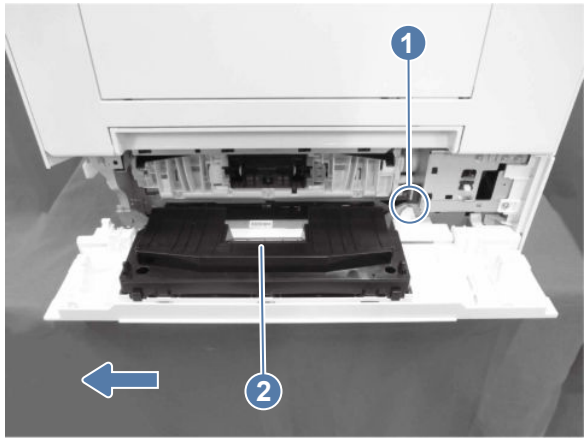
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-406 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-407 Remove the right lower door assembly

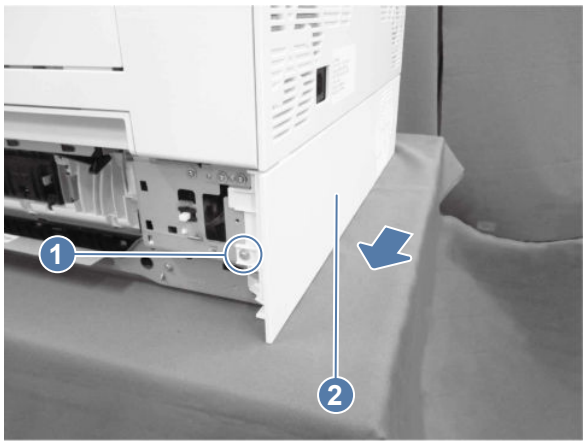


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

Figure 4-408 Remove the rear lower cover

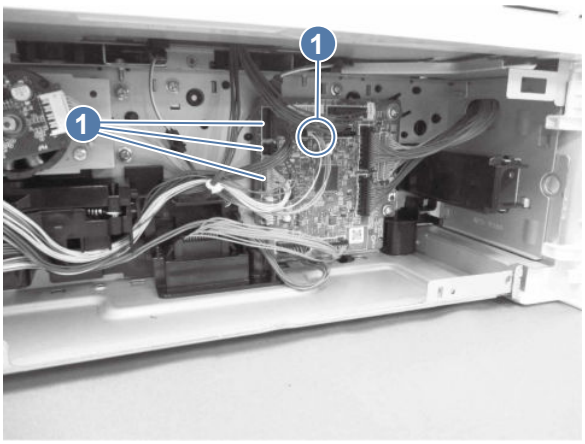


4. Remove the lifter drive assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the lifter drive assembly.

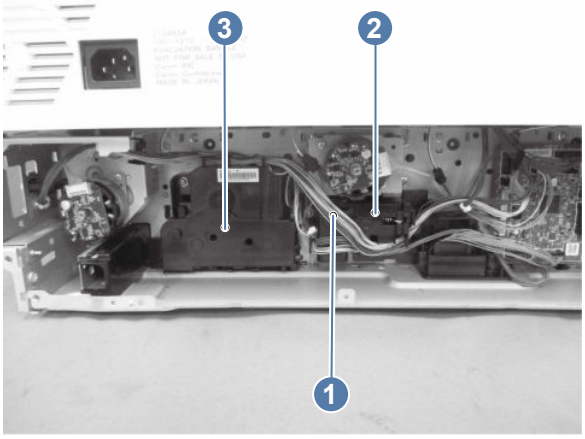
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-409 Disconnect four connectors



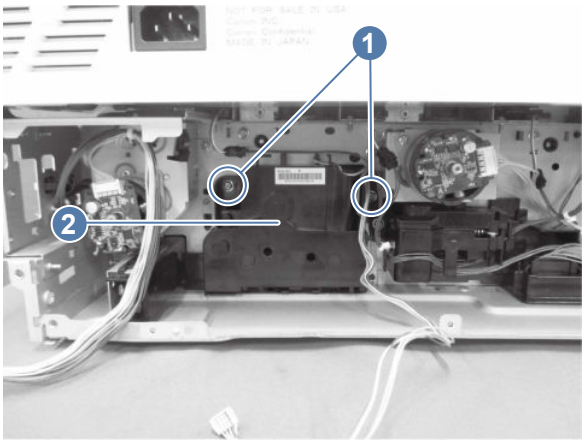
2. Release the cable (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2) and from the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-410 Release the cable



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-411 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the auto close assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-68 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3559-000CN	Auto close assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

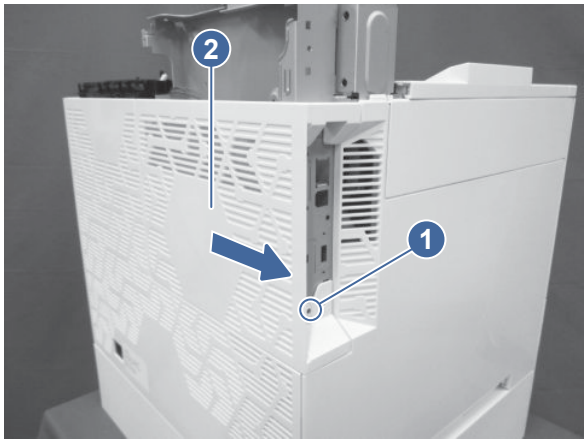
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-412 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

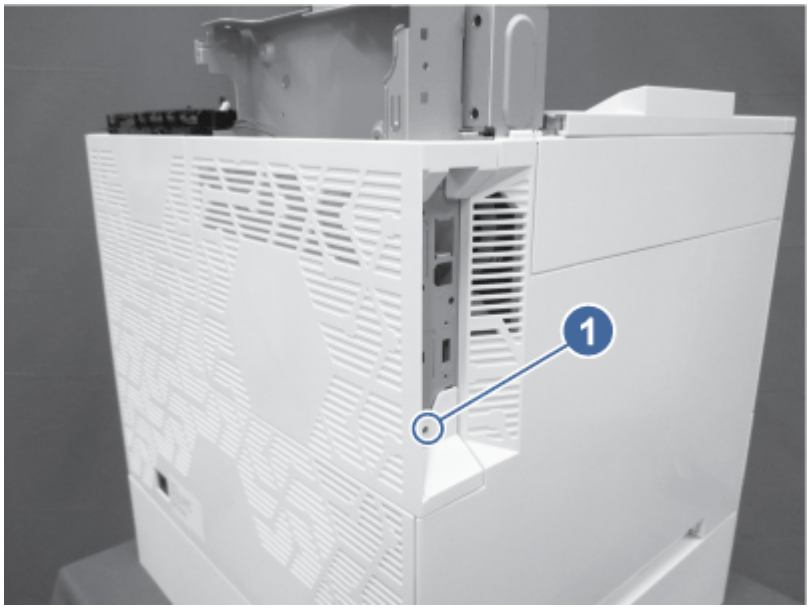
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-413 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



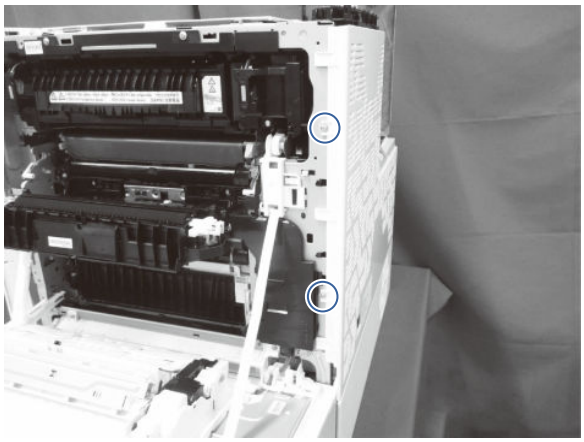
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

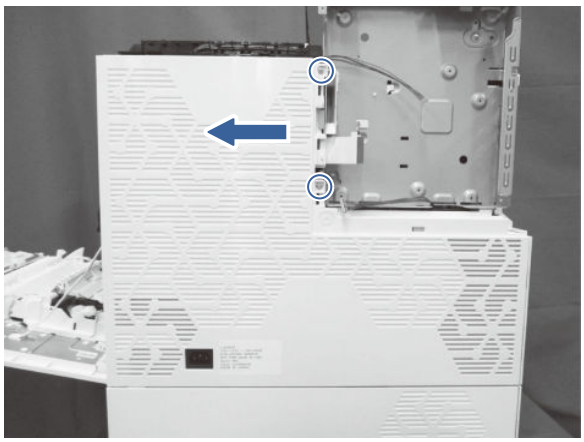
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-414 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-415 Remove the rear cover



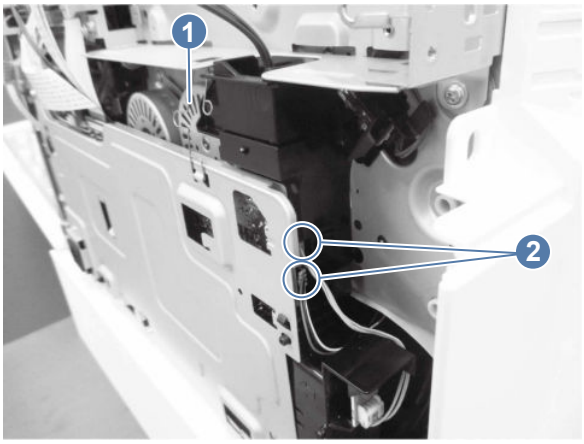
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

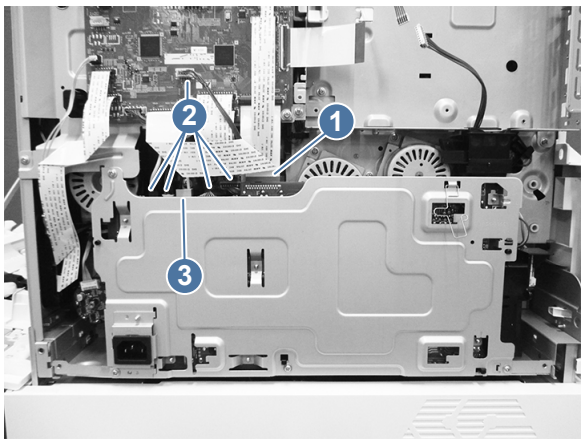
Figure 4-416 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only:** Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-417 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

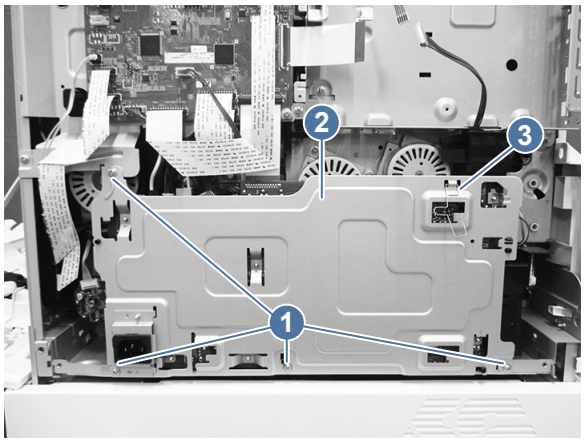


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

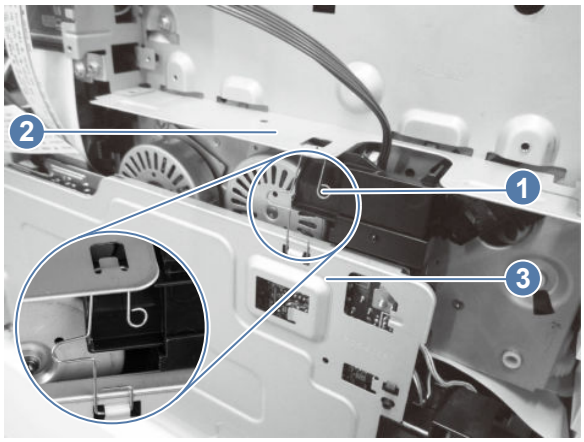
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-418 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-419 Reinstalling the LVPS

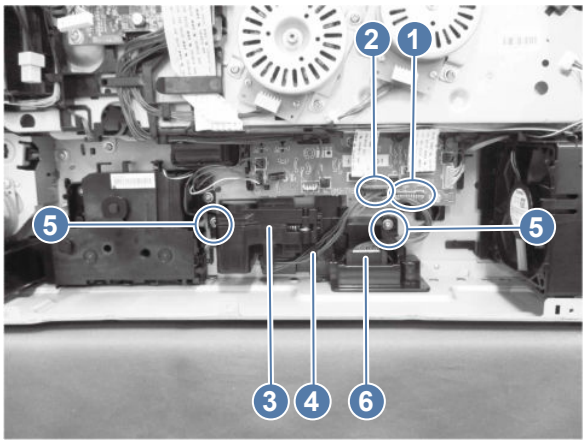


5. Remove the auto close assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), release the cables (callout 3) from the auto close assembly (callout 4), remove two screws (callout 5), remove the auto close assembly, and then remove the drawer connector (callout 6) from the auto close assembly.

Figure 4-420 Remove the auto close assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the auto close assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-69 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3559-000CN	Auto close assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

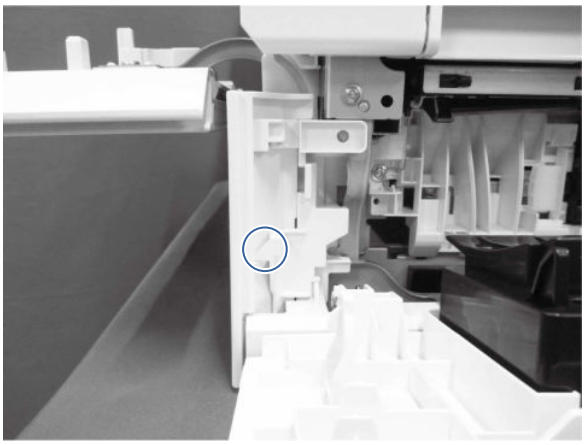
1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.

3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-421 Remove the front right cover

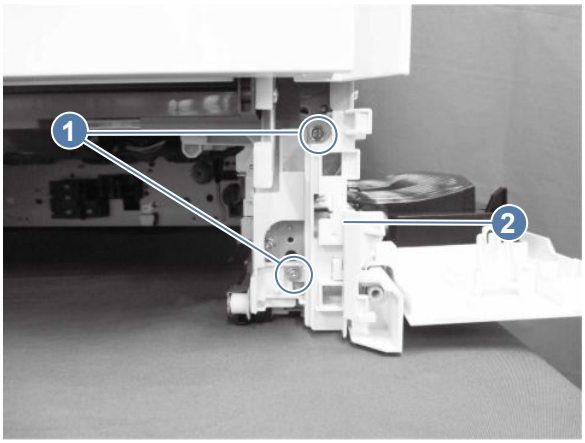


2. Remove the right lower door (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

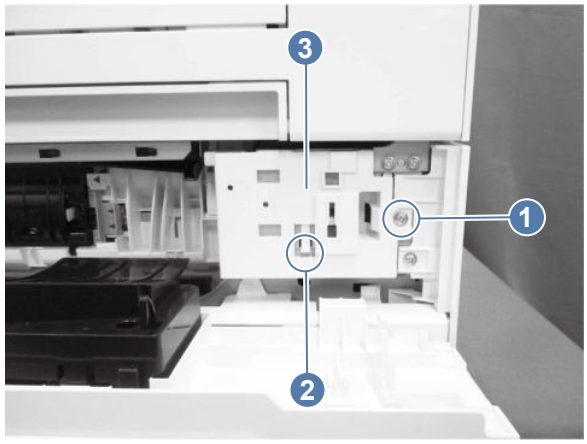
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-422 Remove the base frame



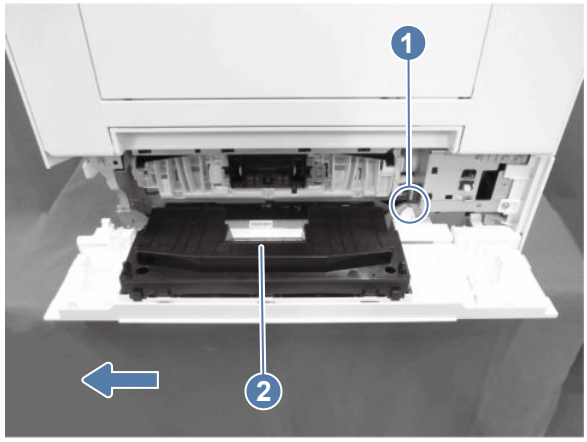
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-423 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-424 Remove the right lower door assembly

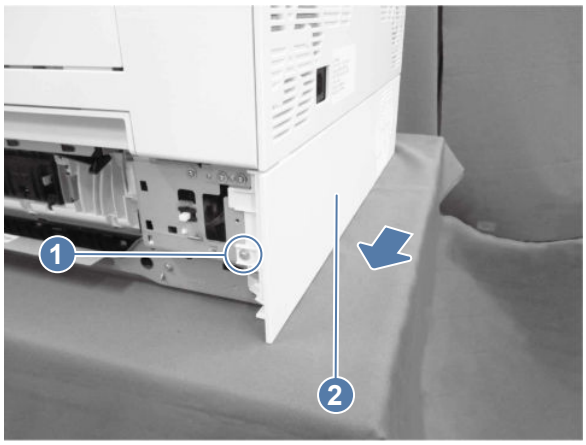


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

Figure 4-425 Remove the rear lower cover

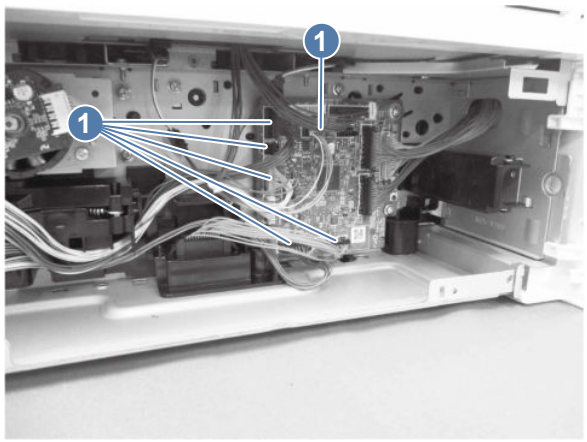


4. Remove the auto close assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

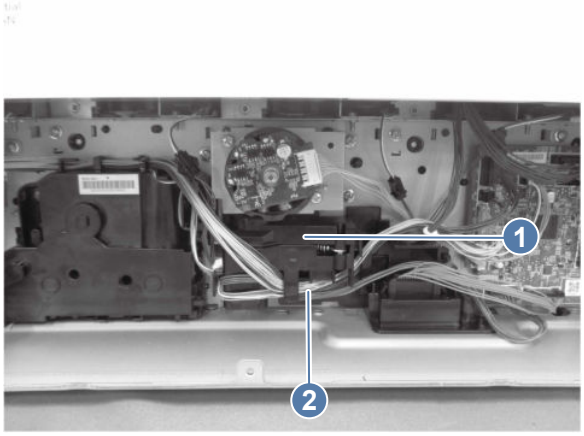
1. Disconnect six connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-426 Disconnect six connectors



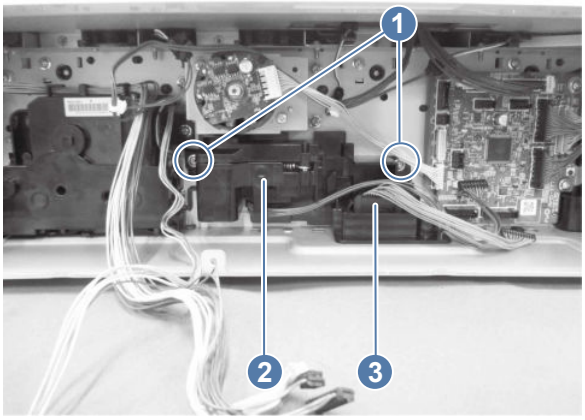
2. Release the cables (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-427 Release the cable



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the auto close assembly (callout 2), and then remove the drawer connector (callout 3) from the auto close assembly.

Figure 4-428 Remove the auto close assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 media size detect assembly (X557 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 media size detect assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-70 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3585-000CN	Size detect assembly (X58045z/X58045zs6700/6800)
RM2-3634-000CN	Size detect assembly (5700/X557/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM2-3614-000CN	Size detect assembly (5800)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

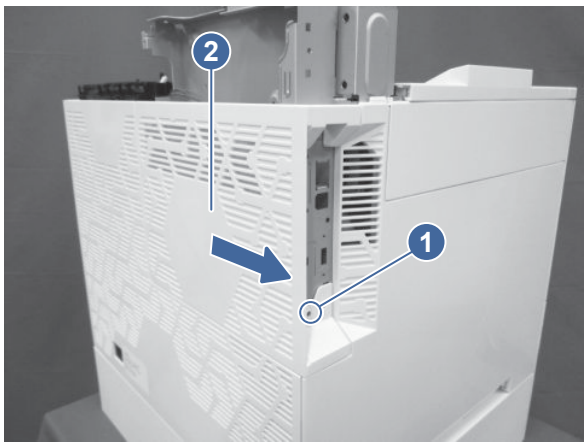
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-429 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

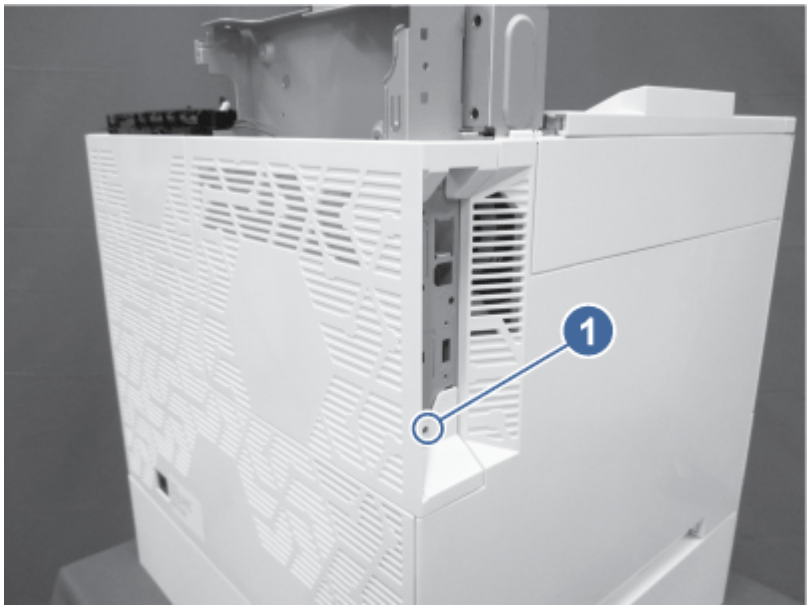
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-430 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



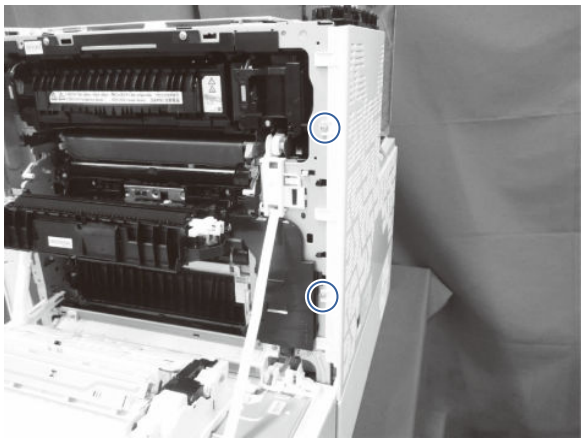
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

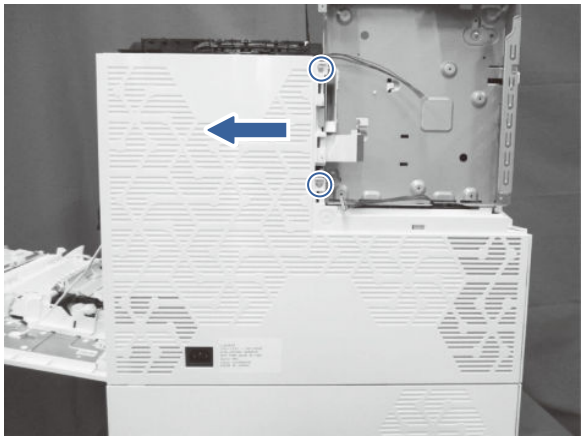
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-431 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-432 Remove the rear cover



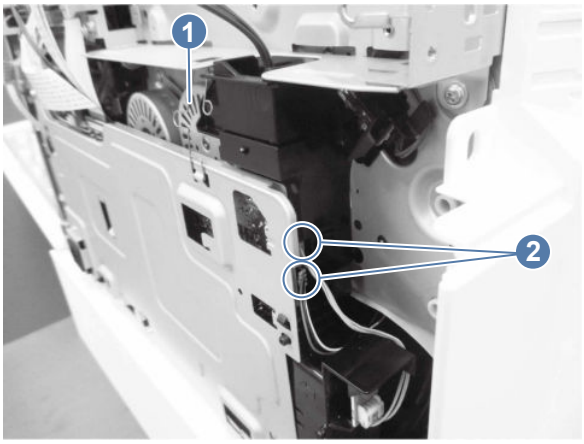
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

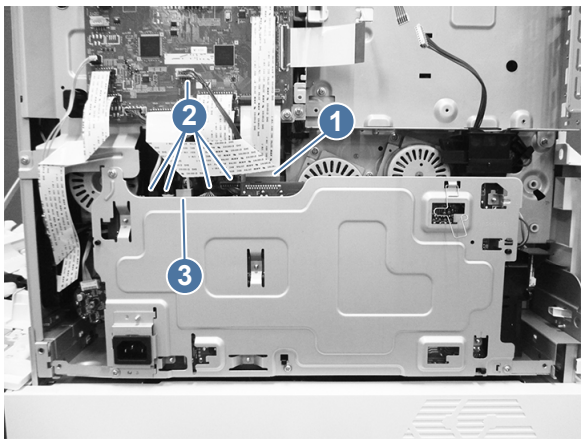
Figure 4-433 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only:** Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-434 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

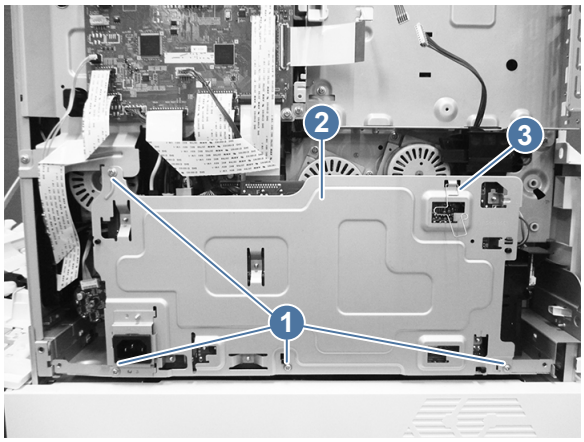


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

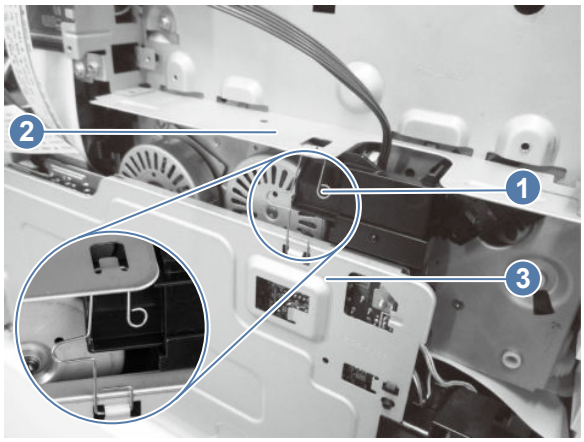
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-435 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-436 Reinstalling the LVPS

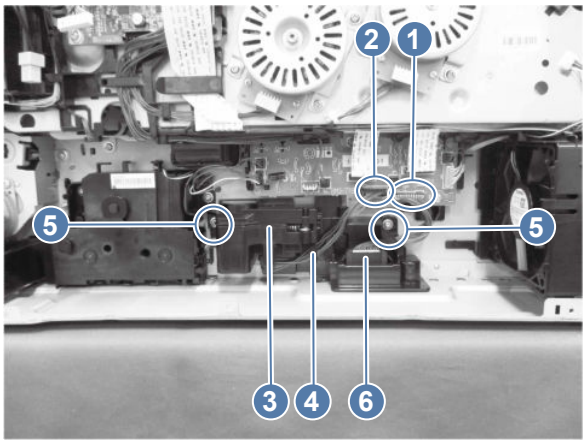


5. Remove the auto close assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), disconnect one connector (callout 2), release the cables (callout 3) from the auto close assembly (callout 4), remove two screws (callout 5), remove the auto close assembly, and then remove the drawer connector (callout 6) from the auto close assembly.

Figure 4-437 **Remove the auto close assembly**

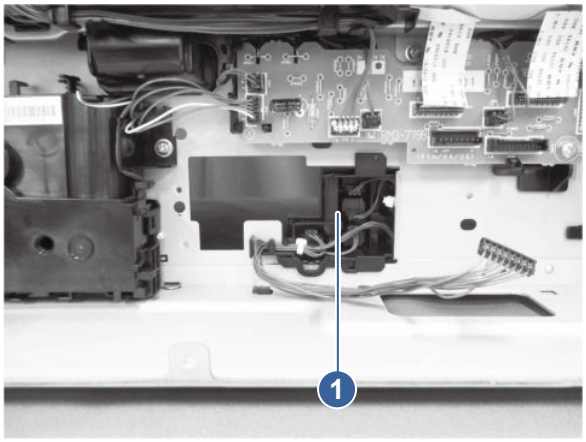


6. Remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly.

- Pull out the Tray 2 media size detect assembly (callout 1) toward you.

Figure 4-438 **Remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly**

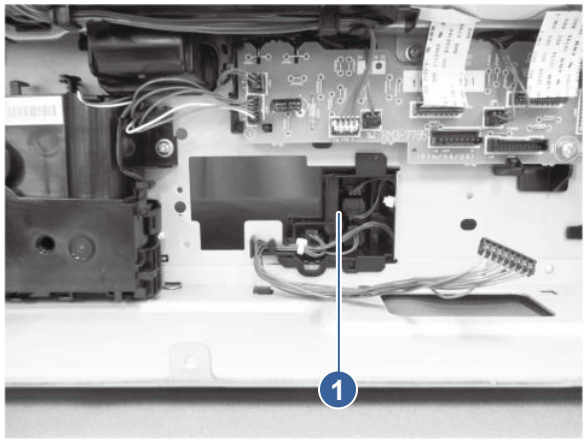


7. Remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly (X557 models)

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly.

- Pull out the Tray 2 media size detect assembly (callout 1) toward you.

Figure 4-439 **Remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly**



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Tray 2 media size detect assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the Tray 2 media size detect assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-71 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3614-000CN	Size detect assembly (X57945 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

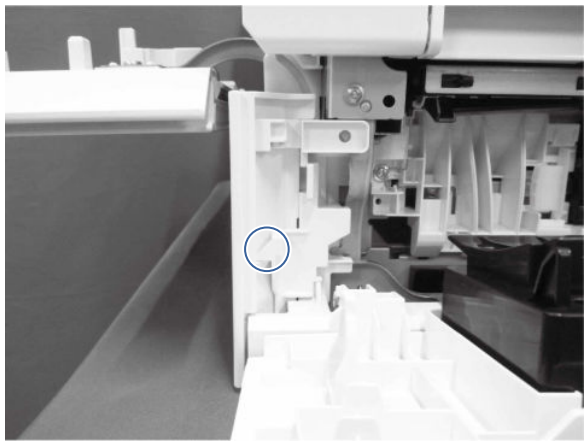
1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.

3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-440 **Remove the front right cover**

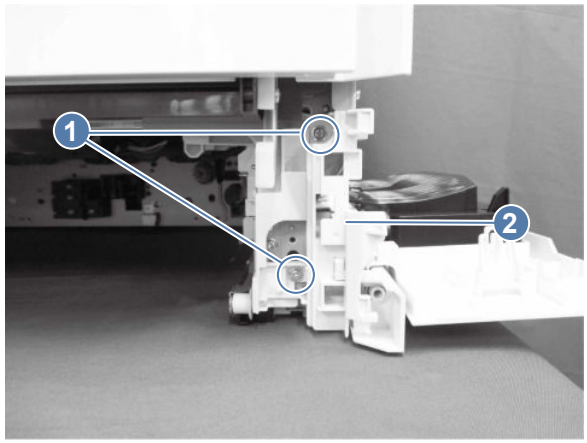


2. Remove the right lower door (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

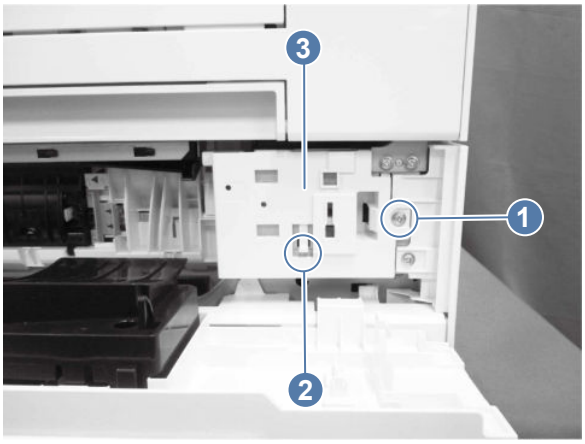
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-441 **Remove the base frame**



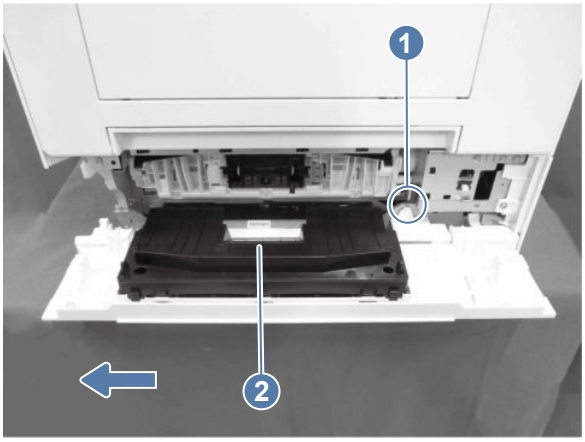
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-442 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-443 Remove the right lower door assembly

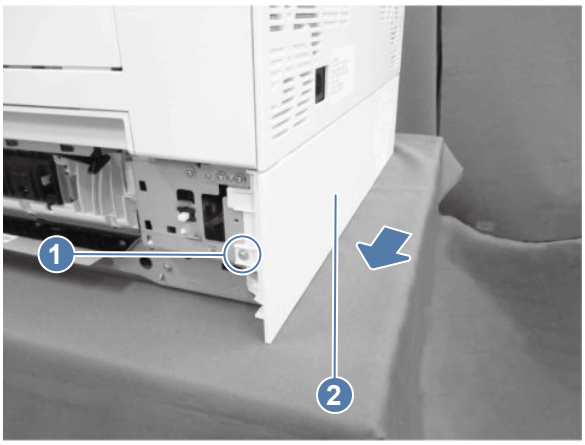


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

Figure 4-444 Remove the rear lower cover

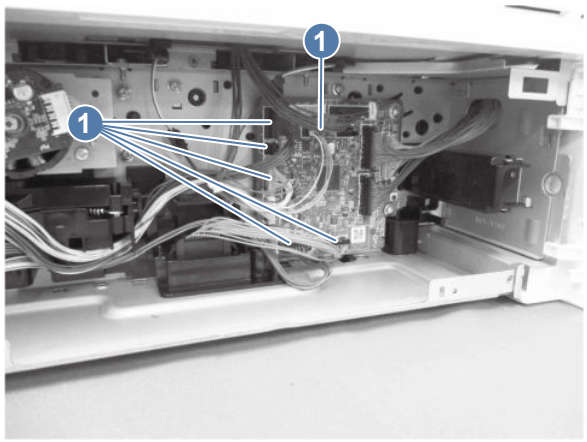


4. Remove the auto close assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

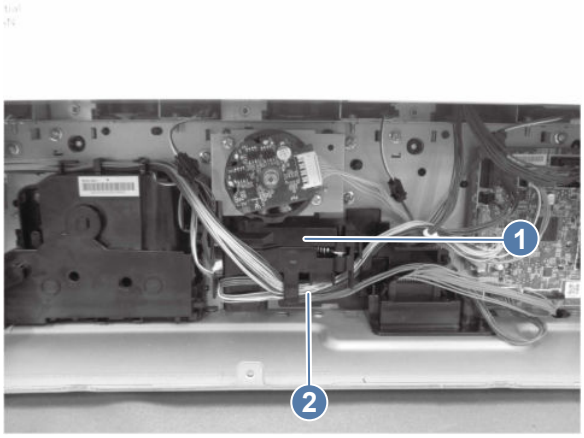
1. Disconnect six connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-445 Disconnect six connectors



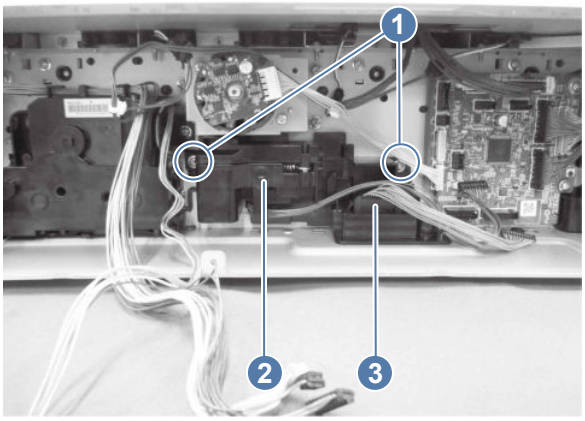
2. Release the cables (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-446 Release the cable



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the auto close assembly (callout 2), and then remove the drawer connector (callout 3) from the auto close assembly.

Figure 4-447 Remove the auto close assembly

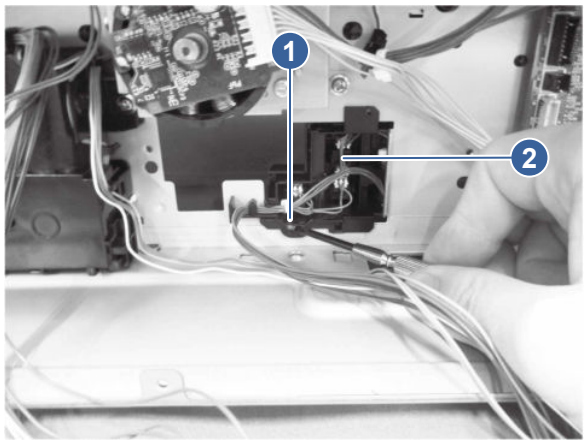


5. Remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly.

- Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull out the Tray 2 media size detect assembly (callout 2) toward you.

Figure 4-448 Remove the Tray 2 media size detect assembly



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser drive assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the fuser drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-72 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4485-000CN	Fixing drive assembly (5700/X577/5800/X57945/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM2-4487-000CN	Fixing drive assembly (6700/X654/6800/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

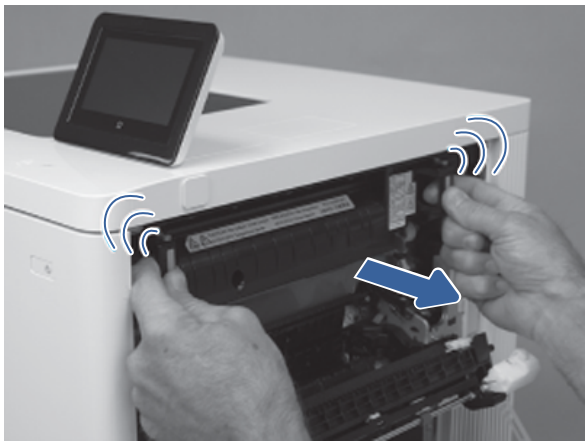
CAUTION: The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-449 Open the right door



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-450 Remove the fuser



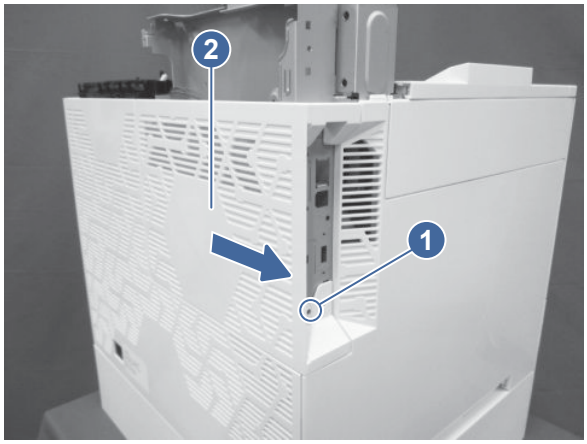
2. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-451 Remove the formatter cover



3. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

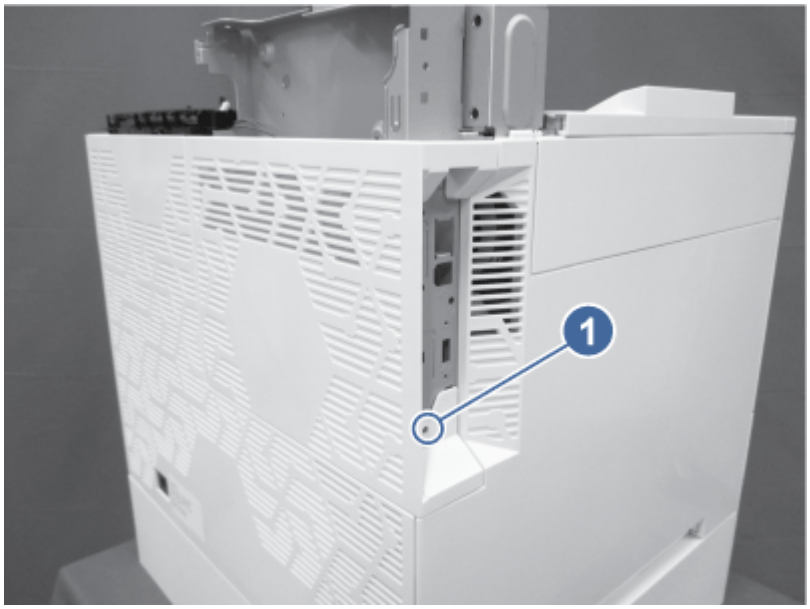
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-452 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



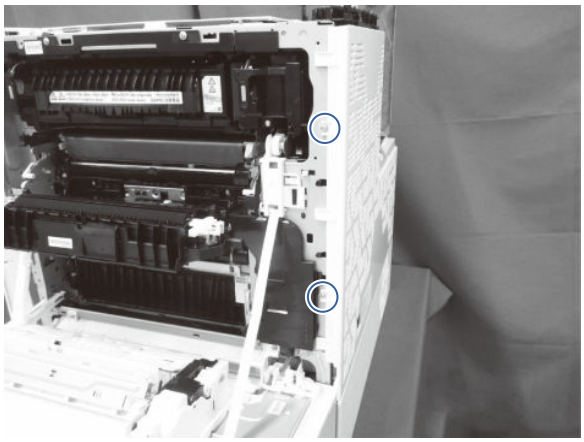
4. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

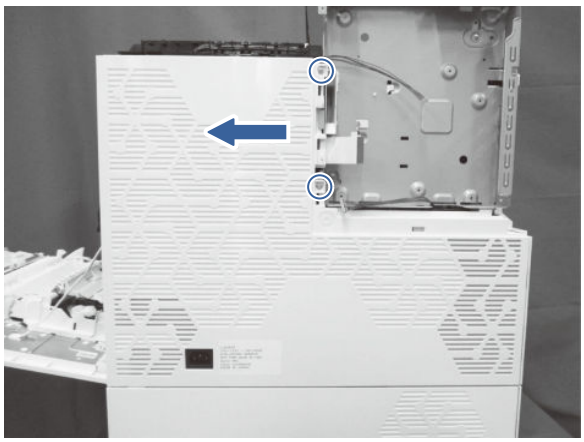
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-453 **Remove two screws**



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-454 Remove the rear cover



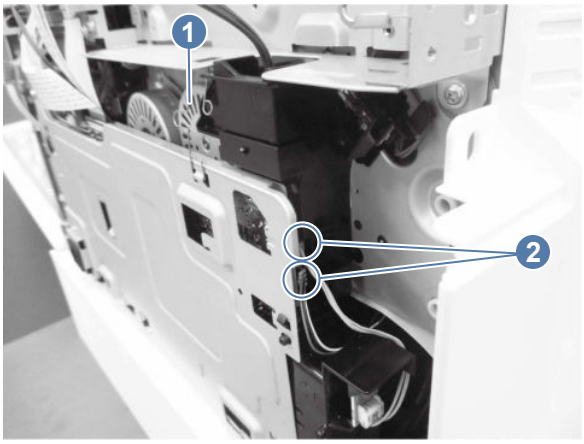
5. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

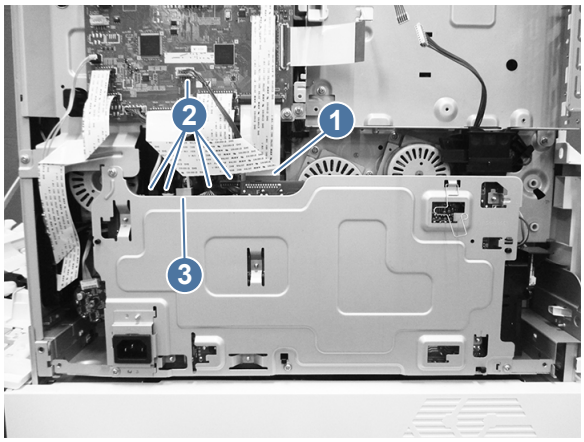
Figure 4-455 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-456 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

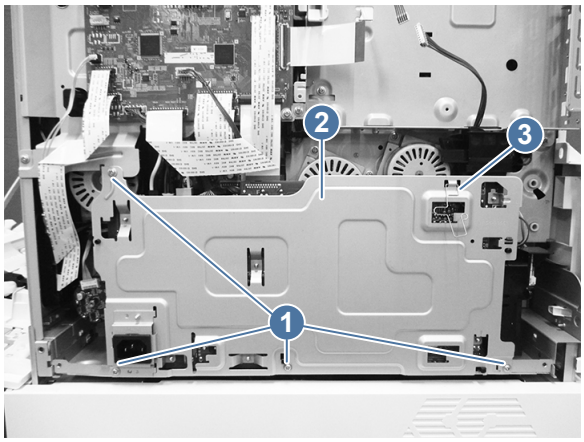


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

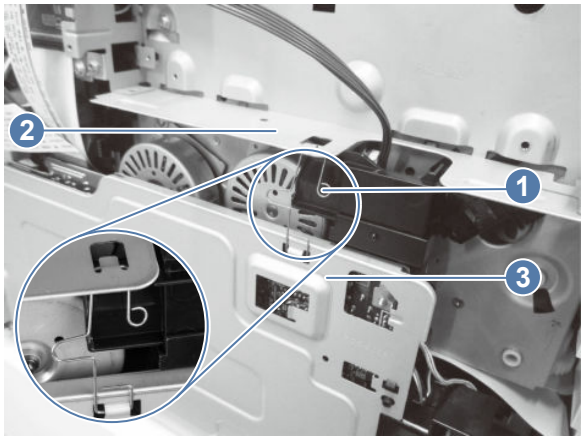
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-457 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-458 Reinstalling the LVPS

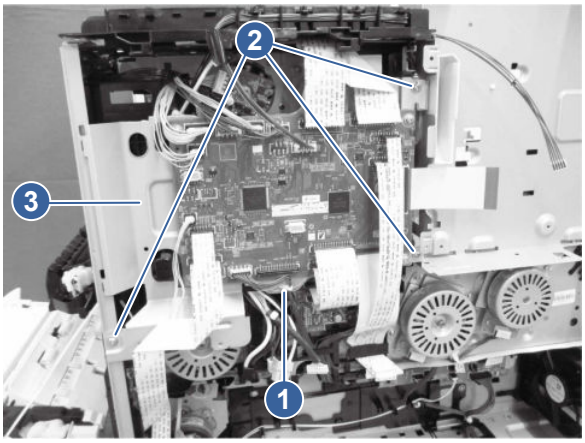


6. Remove the fuser drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the fuser drive assembly.

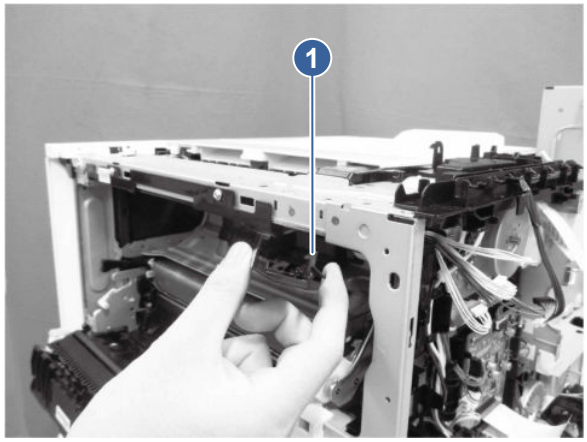
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

Figure 4-459 Remove the DC controller stay



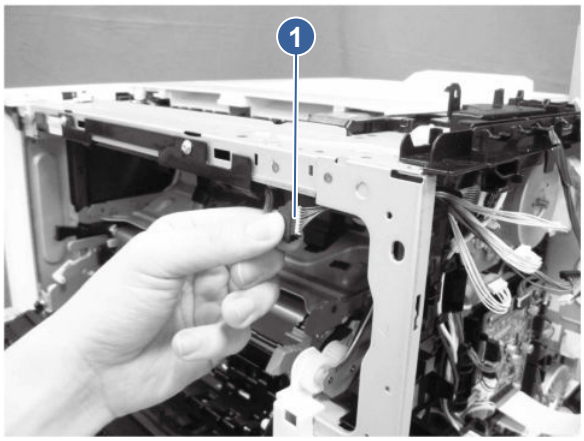
2. Pull the lever (callout 1) of the cable cover (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the cable cover.

Figure 4-460 Remove the cable cover



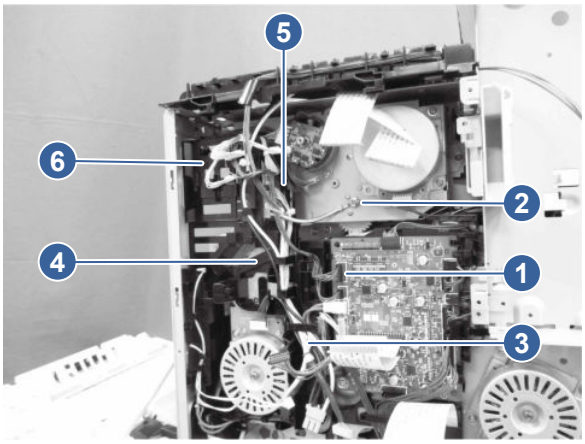
3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-461 Disconnect one connector



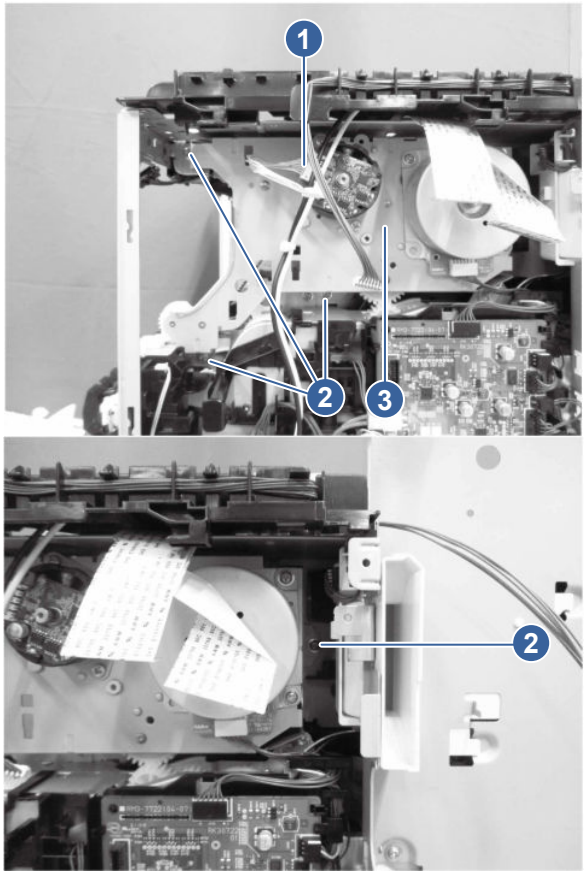
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), release the cable (callout 3) from the cable guide (callout 4), release one tab (callout 5), and then slide the connector cover (callout 6) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-462 Remove the connector cover



5. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the fuser drive assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-463 Remove the assembly



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Main-drive assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the main drive assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the main drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-73 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3506-000CN	Main drive assembly (5700/5800/X58045dn)
RM2-3504-000CN	Main drive assembly (X557/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs/6700/6800)
RM2-3497-000CN	Main drive assembly (X57945/X654/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

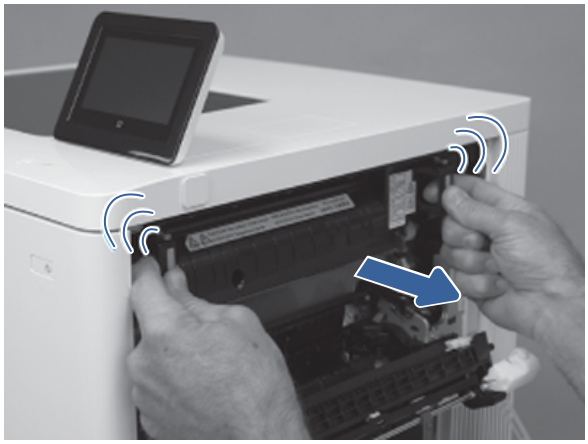
⚠ **CAUTION:** The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-464 Open the right door



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-465 Remove the fuser



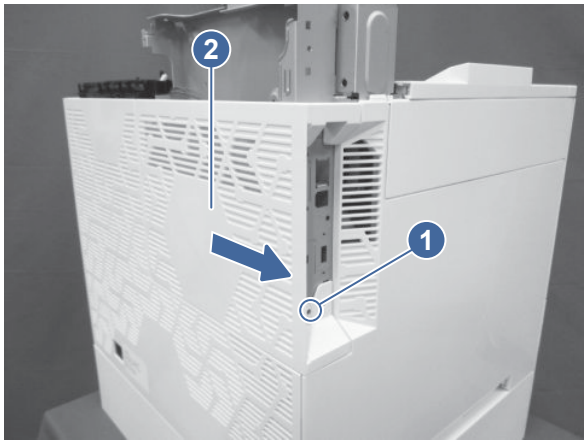
2. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-466 Remove the formatter cover



3. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

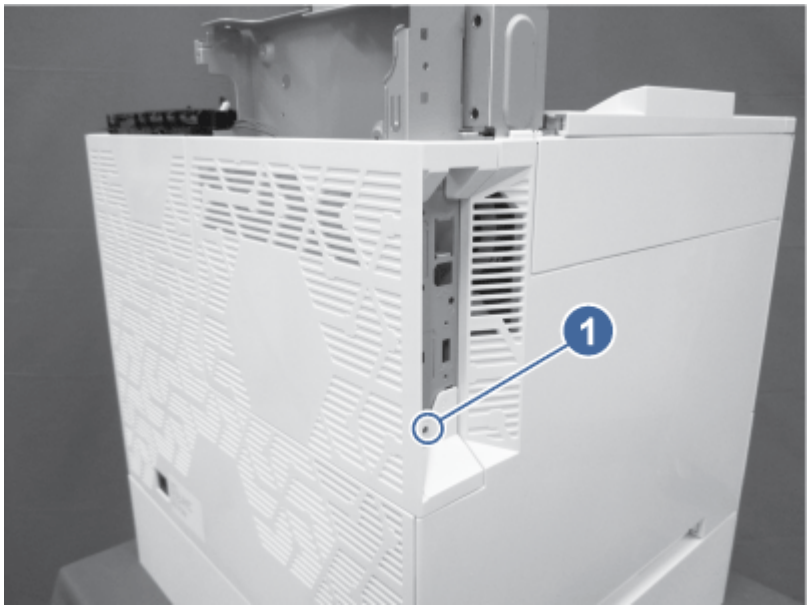
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-467 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



4. Remove the formatter

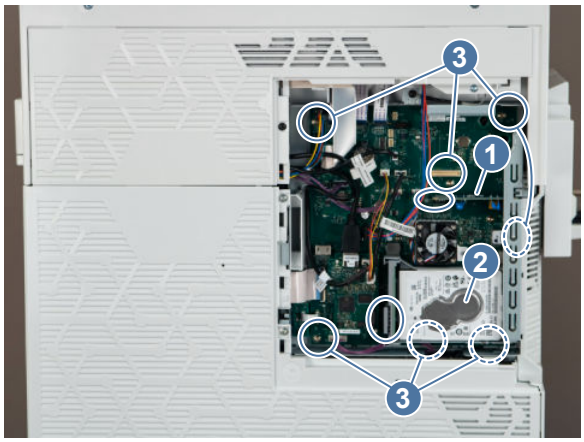
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-468 Remove the formatter



5. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

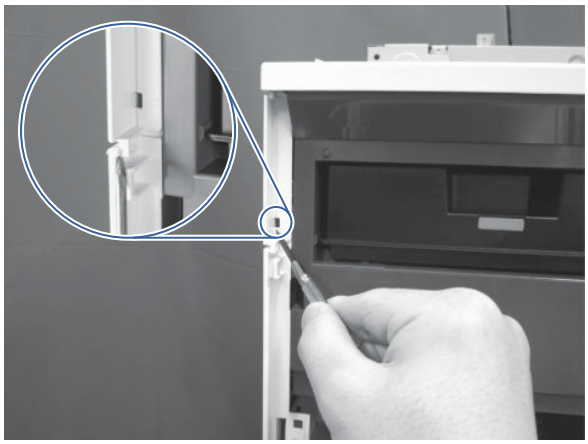
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:** If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

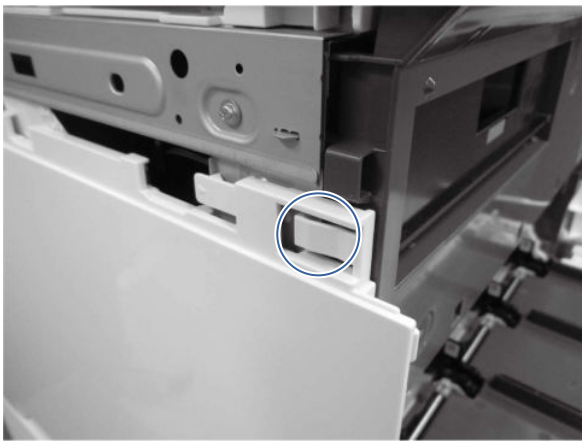
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-469 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



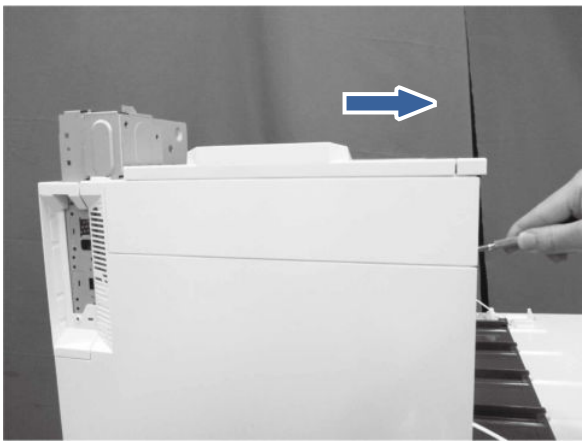
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-470 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-471 Remove the left upper cover

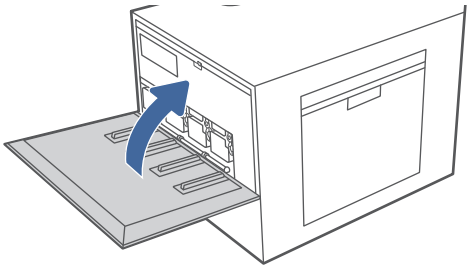


6. Close the front door

After removing the left upper cover (MFP models), close the front door.

Close the front door.

⚠ CAUTION: If the left cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.



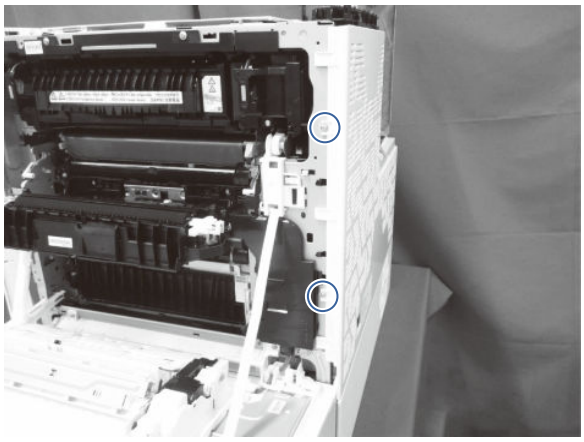
7. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

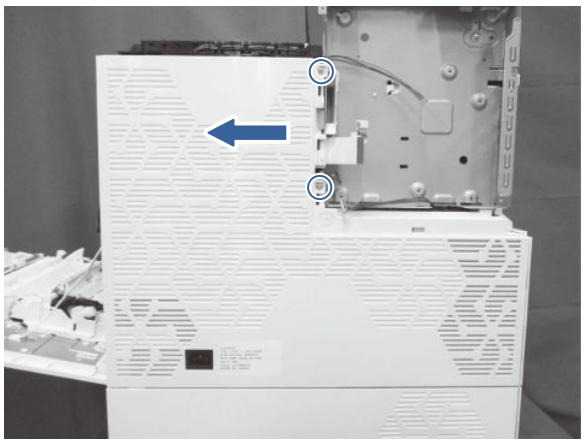
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-472 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-473 Remove the rear cover



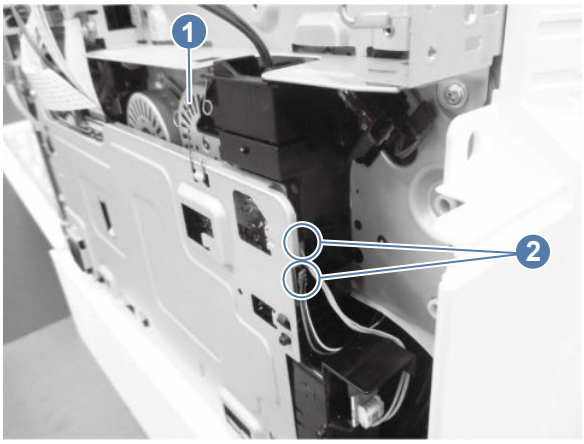
8. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

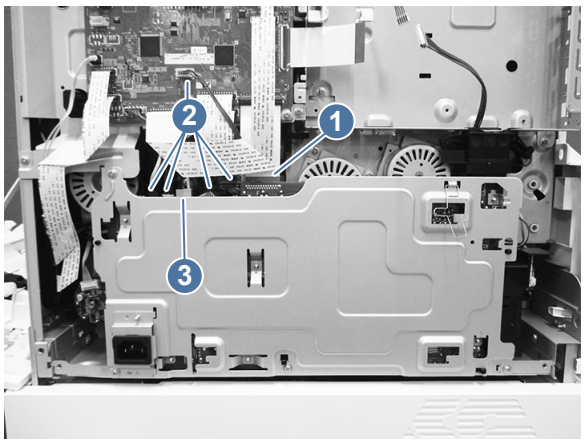
Figure 4-474 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only:** Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-475 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

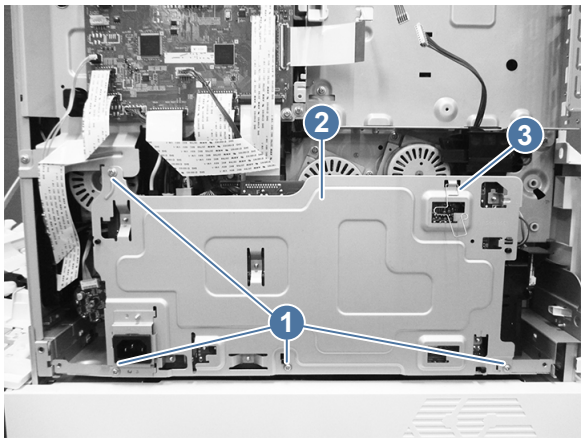


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

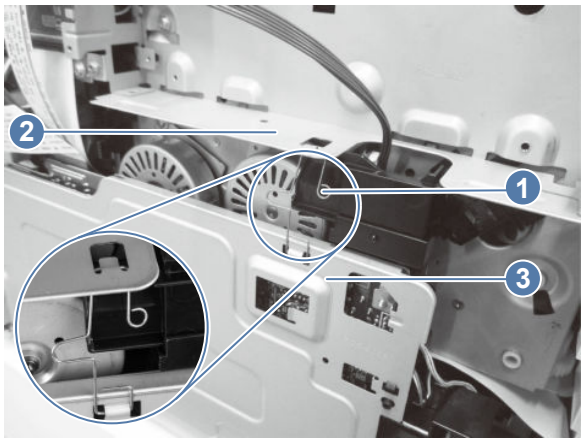
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-476 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-477 Reinstalling the LVPS



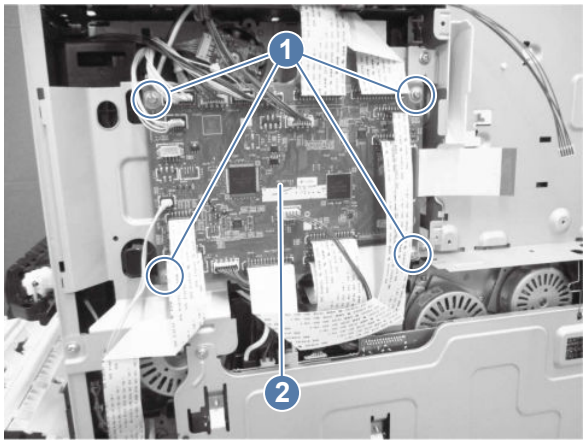
9. Remove the DC controller

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller.

- Disconnect all of the connectors on the DC controller, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the DC controller (callout 2).

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

Figure 4-478 Remove the DC controller



10. Remove the formatter cage (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

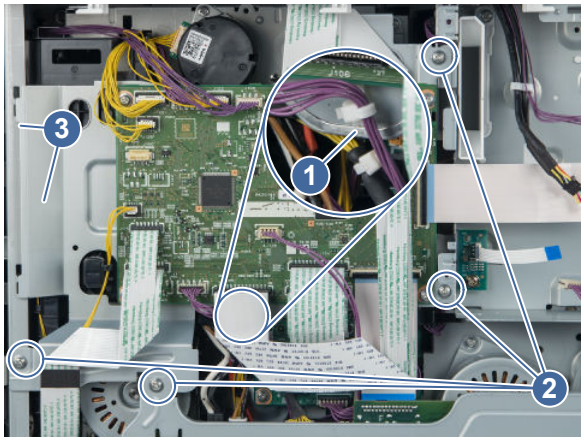
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) out to remove it.

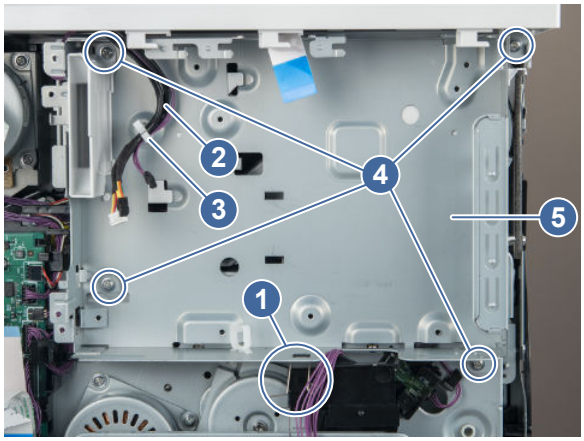
NOTE: Be careful not to drop any of the screws into the low-voltage power supply assembly below the DC controller.

Figure 4-479 Remove the DC controller stay



3. Unhook one spring (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3), remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 5).

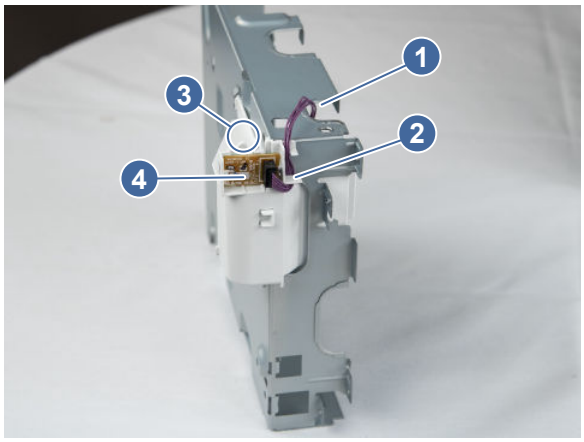
Figure 4-480 Remove the formatter cage



4. **For a replacement formatter cage only:** Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-481 Remove the memory PCA

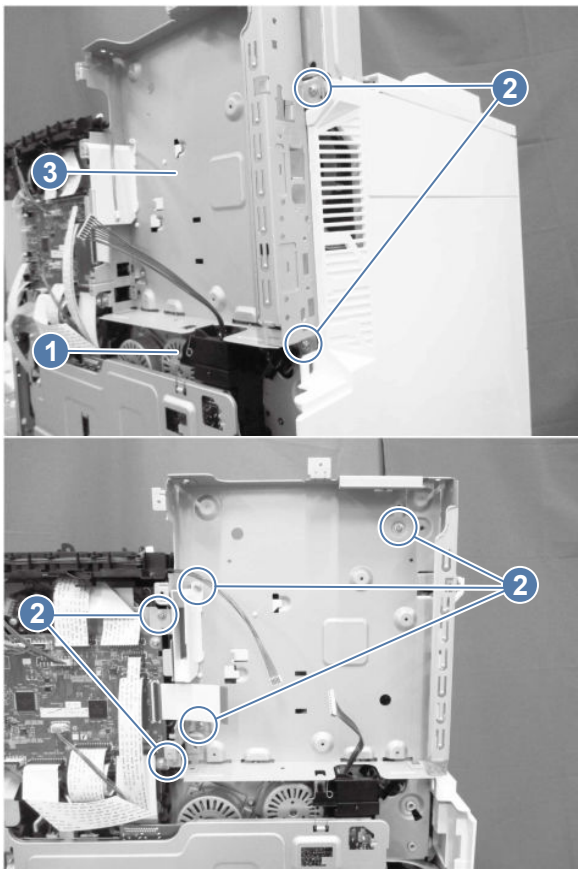


11. Remove the formatter cage (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 3).

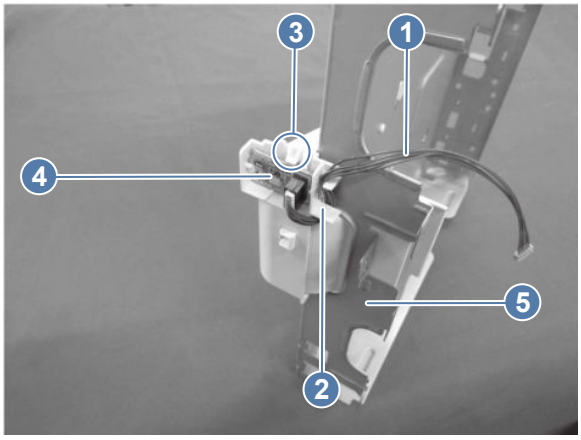
Figure 4-482 Remove the formatter cage



2. **For a replacement formatter cage only**: Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-483 Remove the memory PCA

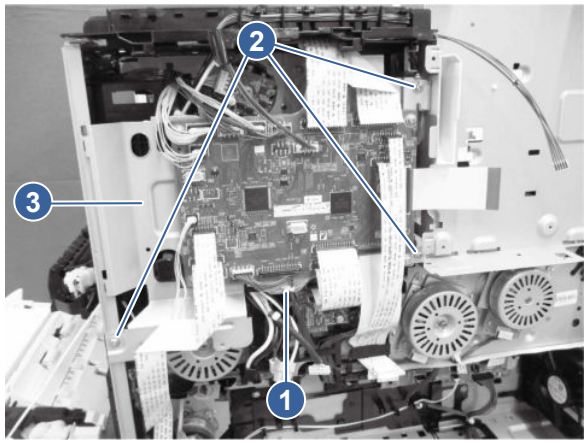


12. Remove the drive PCA

Follow these steps to remove the drive PCA.

1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

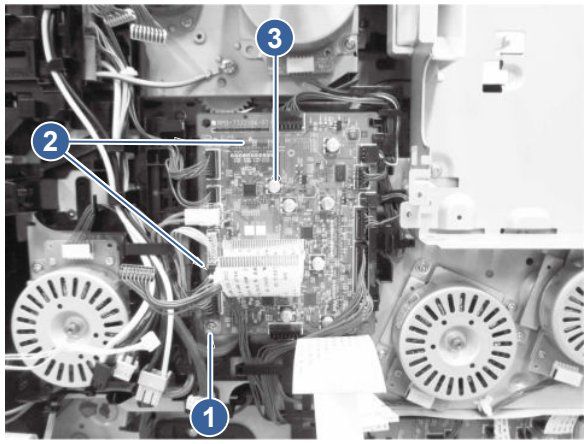
Figure 4-484 **Remove the DC controller stay**



2. Disconnect all the connectors on the drive PCA, remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the drive PCA (callout 3).

IMPORTANT: Some of these wires are very tightly connected. Take care when disconnecting them.

Figure 4-485 **Remove the drive PCA**



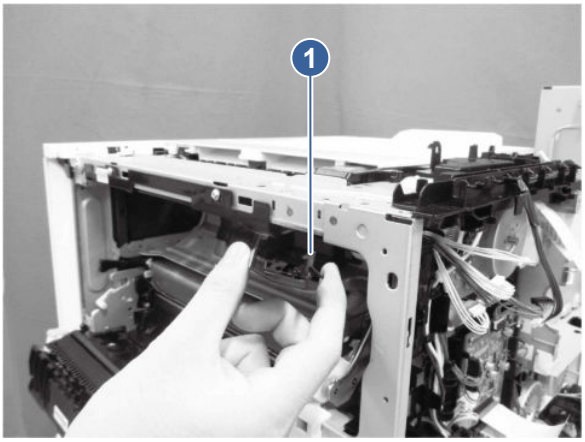
13. Remove the main-drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the main-drive assembly.

NOTE: Make sure that the front door is closed when performing this procedure.

1. Pull the lever (callout 1) of the cable cover (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the cable cover.

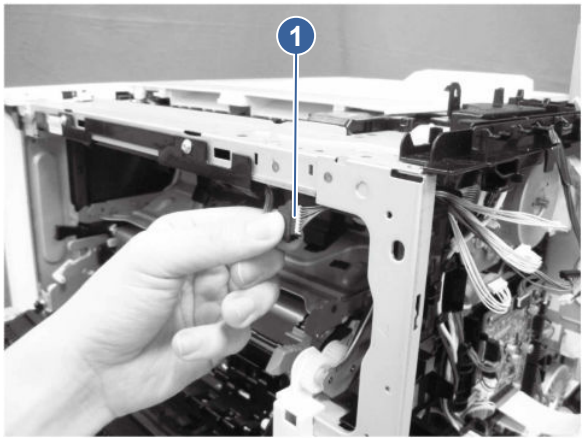
Figure 4-486 Remove the cable cover



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, align the pegs in the holes, and then set the cover against the frame and rotate it up and into position.

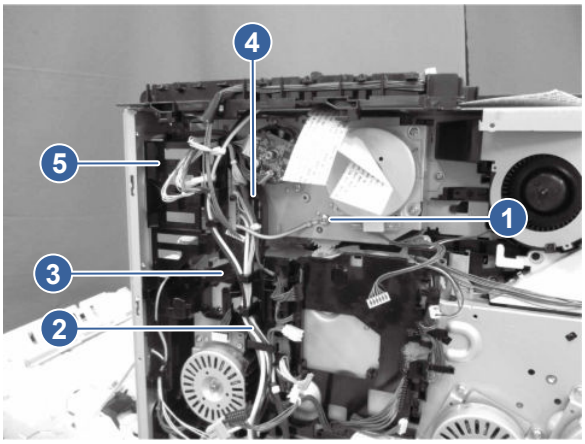
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-487 Disconnect one connector



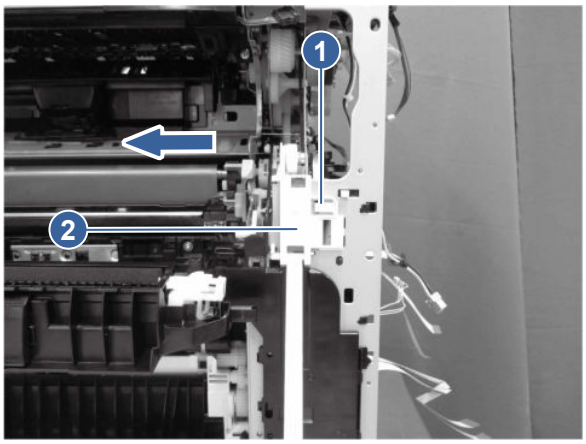
3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3), release one tab (callout 4), and then slide the connector cover (callout 5) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-488 Remove the connector cover



4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the link cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-489 Remove the link cover

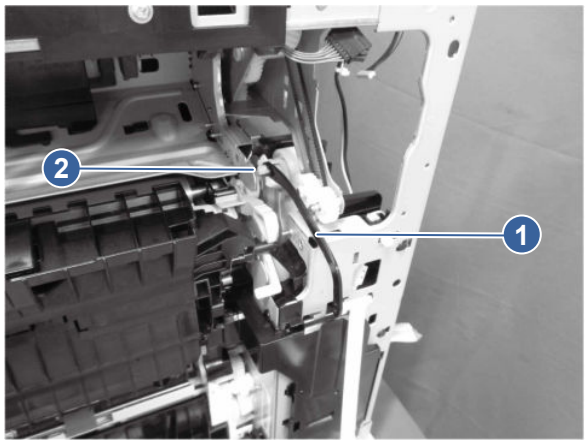


5. Close the right door a little, and then release the link arm (callout 1) from the coupling (callout 2).

NOTE: This is a keyed connection. When disconnecting, make sure to line up the peg with the socket so that you do not strip the peg.

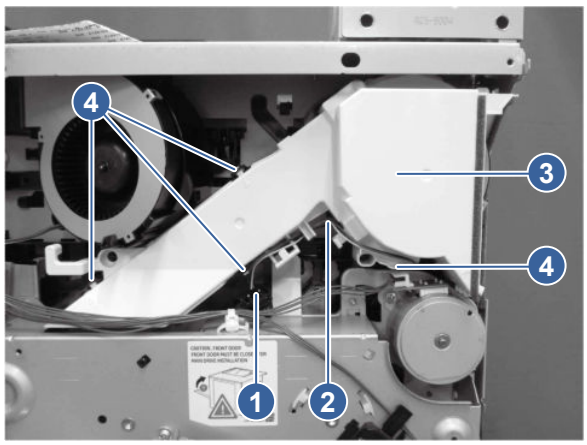
Reinstallation tip: If the black link arm disconnects from the white link arm below it, it might be helpful for reinstallation purposes to reattach the two link arms.

Figure 4-490 Release the link arm



6. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the fan cover (callout 3), release four tabs (callout 4), and then remove the fan cover.

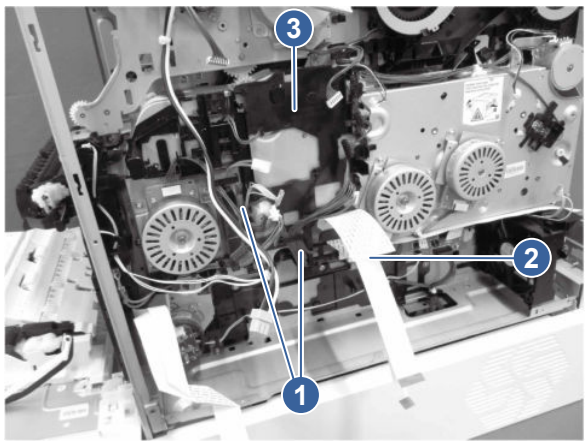
Figure 4-491 Remove the fan cover



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling this cover, seat the right side pegs into the chassis slots first.

7. Release the cables (callout 1) and the remove FFC (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-492 Release the cables

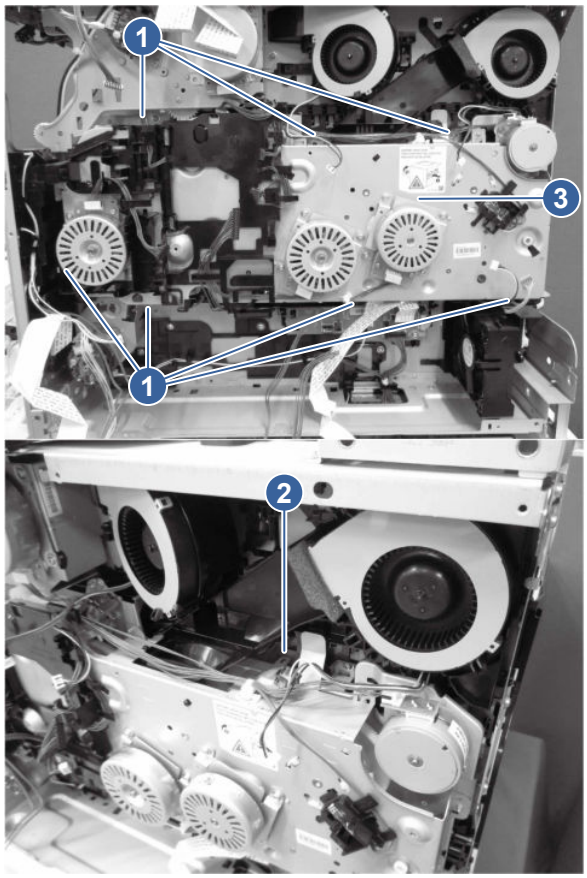


8. Remove seven screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the main drive assembly (callout 3).

NOTE: All seven screws are on sheet metal tabs on the assembly.

NOTE: Ensure that the screws do not fall into the assembly.

Figure 4-493 **Remove the main drive assembly**



9. **Special installation instructions for a main drive assembly (replacement unit and serviced unit)**

   - **Replacement unit**: A replacement unit is a new assembly that installs in place of a discarded in-service unit.
   - **In-service unit**: An in-service unit is a existing assembly that has been removed for repair or to gain access to other assemblies.

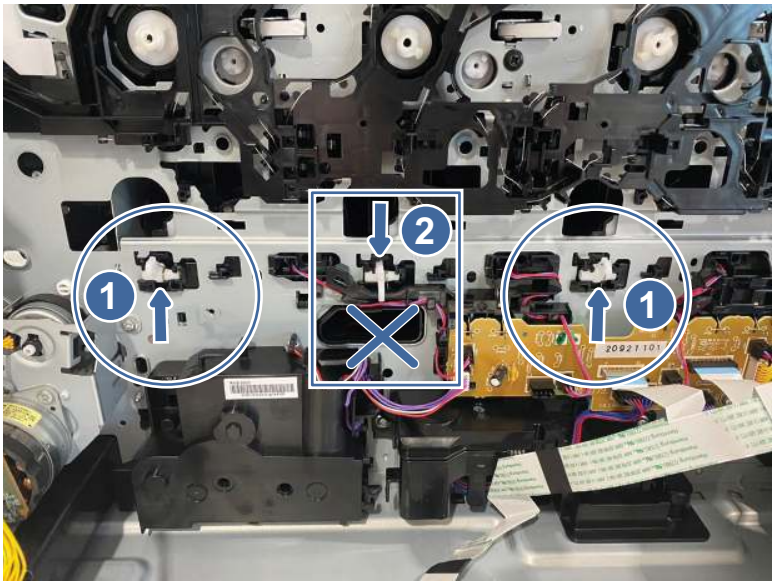
CAUTION: When the main drive assembly is installed (replacement units and service units), the front door **must** be closed.

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a new main drive assembly (replacement unit), you **do not** need to perform the alignment steps below. New assemblies are **already** aligned.

   a. **Replacement unit and in-service unit**: On the printer engine, be careful to **not** depress the levers located behind the main drive assembly (when it is installed).

      - **Callout 1**: Levers in the correct raised position.
      - **Callout 2**: Lever in the incorrect depressed position.

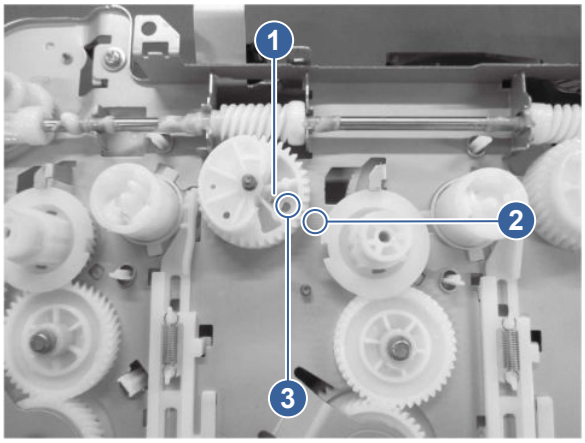
Figure 4-494 Correct and incorrect lever positions



NOTE: For a replacement unit install, skip the remaining alignment steps which are for in-service units only.

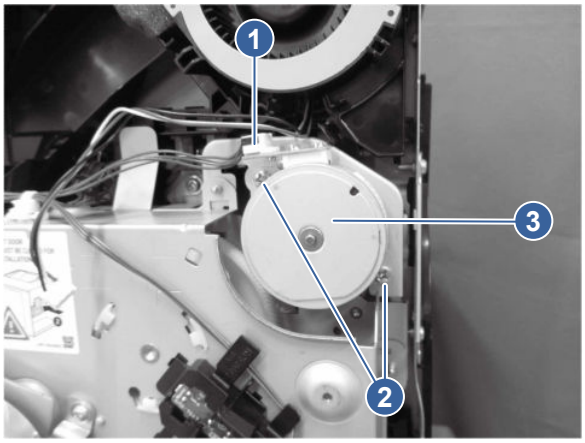
b. **In-service unit**: There are four gears on the main drive assembly that need to be lined up correctly in order to successfully reinstall the main drive. For each gear, the triangle (callout 1) on the inside of the gear should line up with the triangle (callout 2) stamped on the sheet metal chassis. Also, the hole (callout 3) in the gear should line up with a hole in the chassis.

Figure 4-495 Correct gear alignment



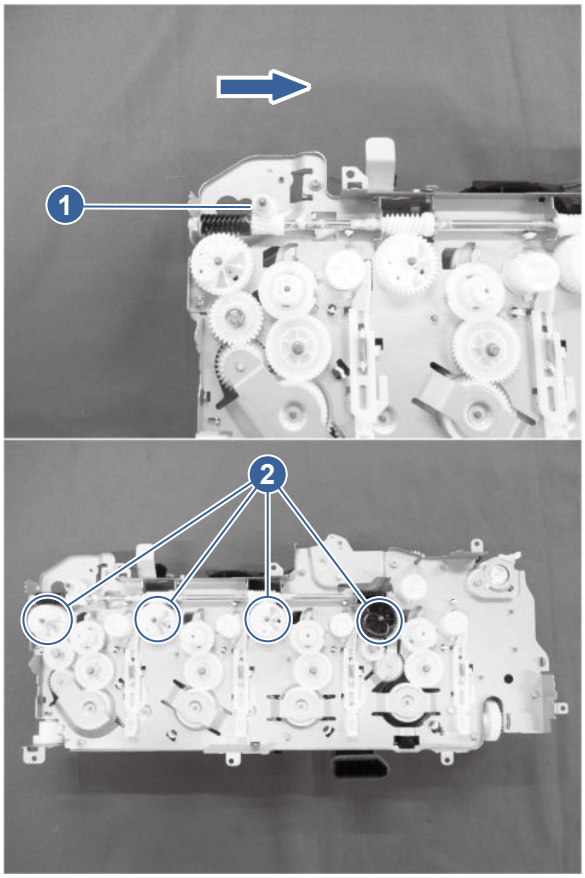
c. **In-service unit**: In order to realign the four gears, you must remove the motor that locks the gear auger above the four gears. To do this, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-496 Remove the motor



d. **In-service unit**: To realign the four gears, turn the gear (callout 1) in the direction indicated. By turning that gear, the four gears (callout 2) that need to be in phase turn in tandem. Turn the four gears to the correct phase position.

Figure 4-497 Align the gears



14. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Interlock assembly

Learn about removing and replacing the interlock assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-74 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3675-000CN	Interlock assembly (5700/X557/5800/X57945/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM2-3676-000CN	Interlock assembly (6700/X654/6800/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

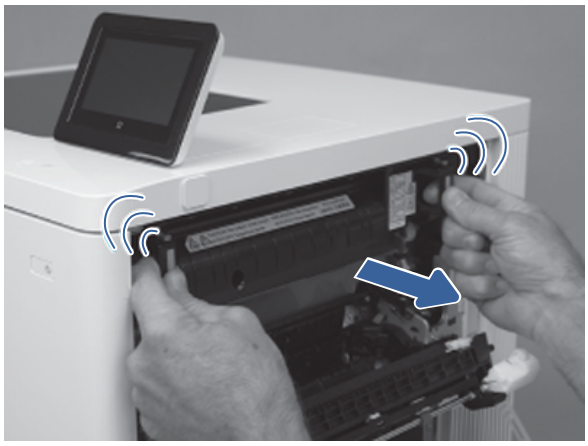
> ⚠ **CAUTION:** The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-498 Open the right door



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-499 Remove the fuser



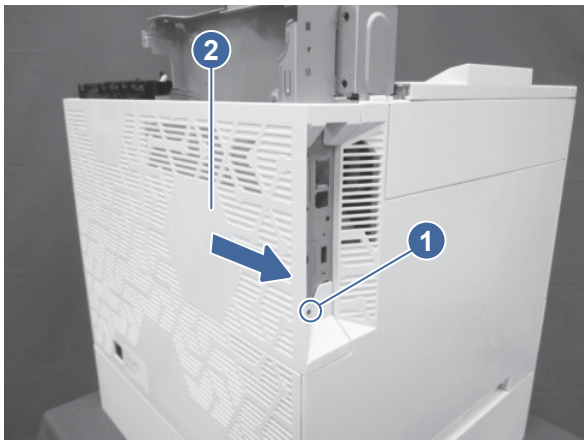
2. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-500 Remove the formatter cover



3. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

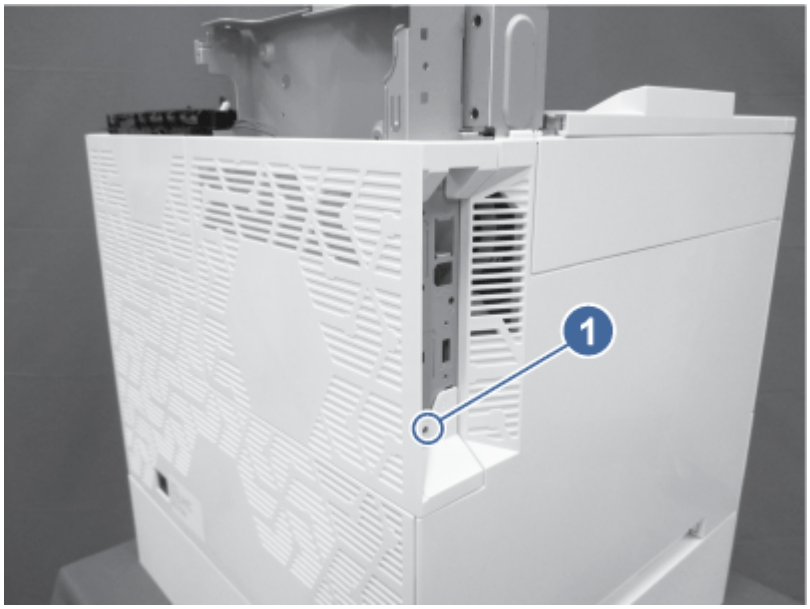
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-501 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



4. Remove the formatter

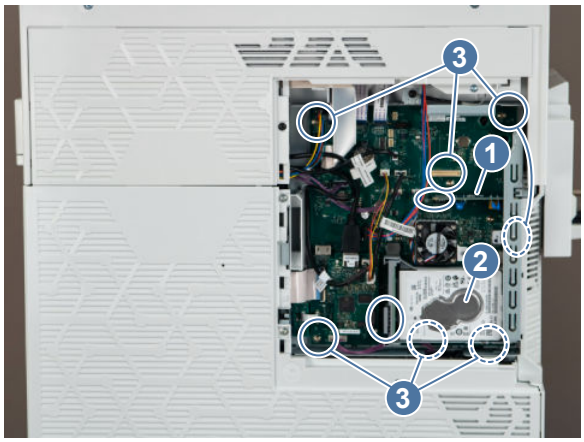
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-502 Remove the formatter



5. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

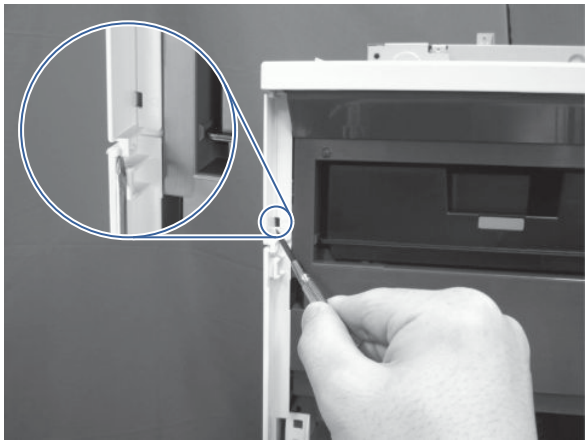
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

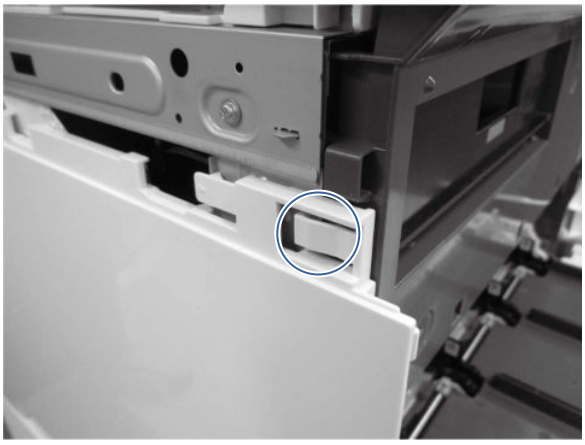
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-503 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



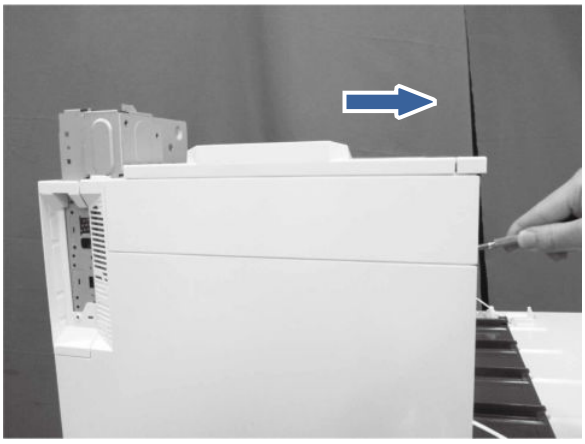
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-504 **Release the tab**



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-505 **Remove the left upper cover**

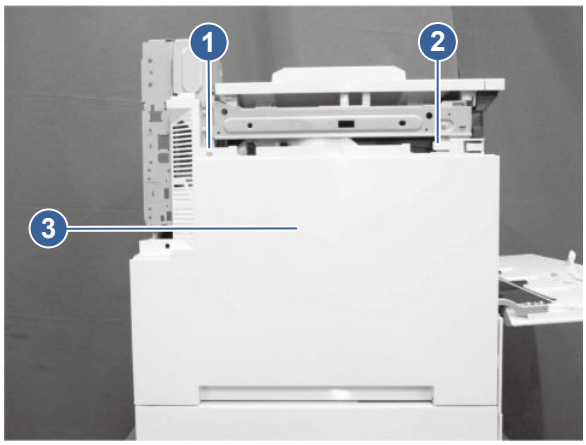


6. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-506 Remove the left cover



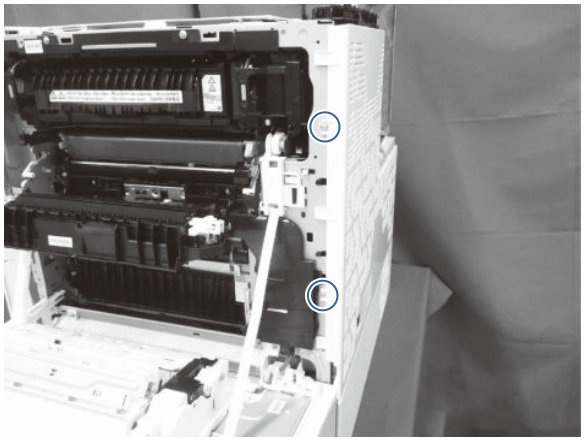
7. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

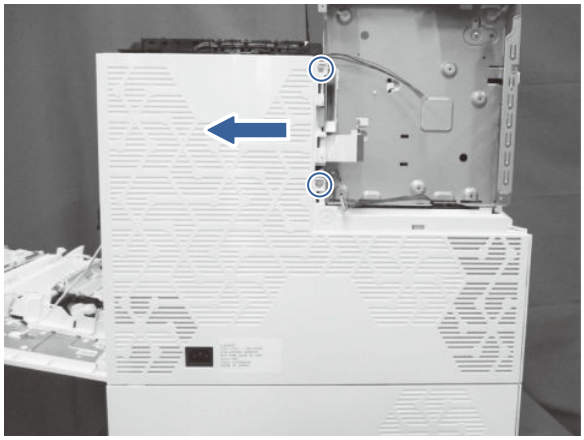
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-507 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-508 Remove the rear cover



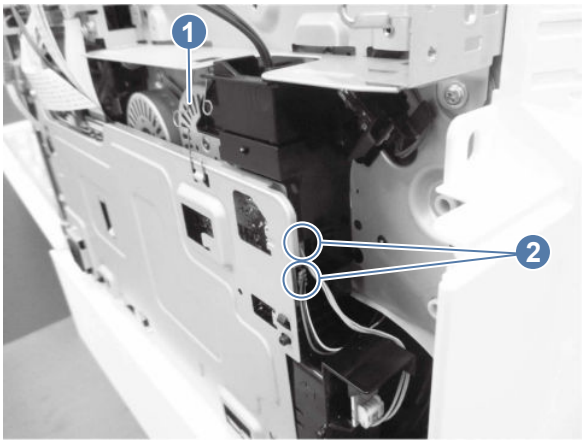
8. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

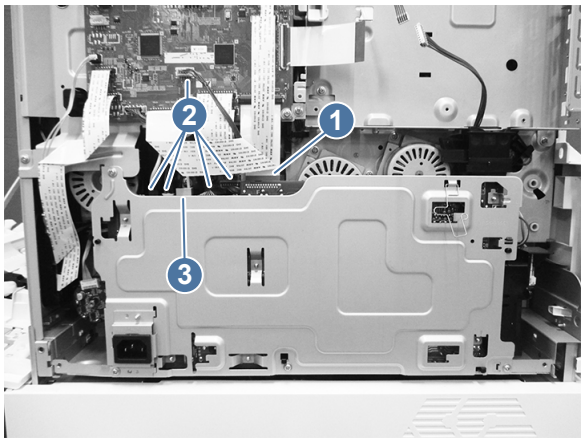
Figure 4-509 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-510 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

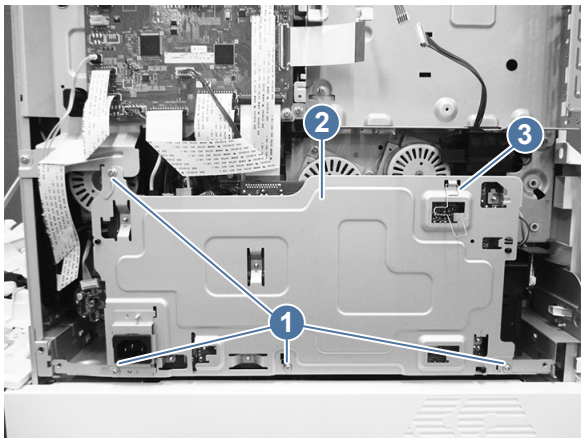


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

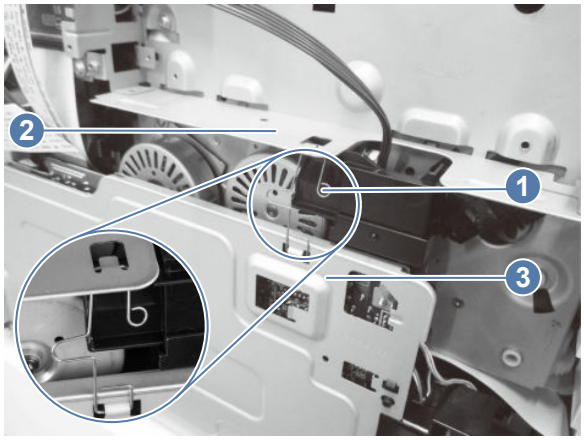
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-511 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-512 Reinstalling the LVPS



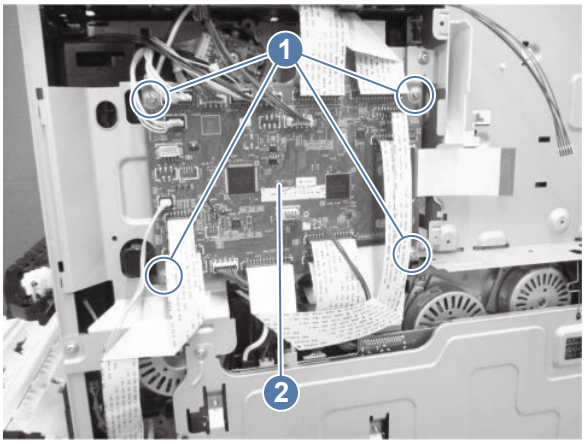
9. Remove the DC controller

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller.

- Disconnect all of the connectors on the DC controller, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the DC controller (callout 2).

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

Figure 4-513 Remove the DC controller



10. Remove the formatter cage (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

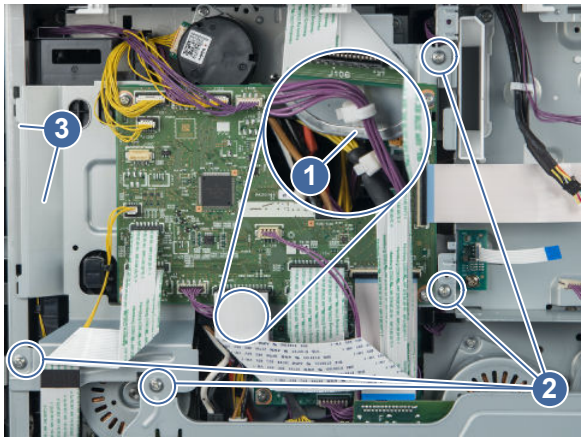
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) out to remove it.

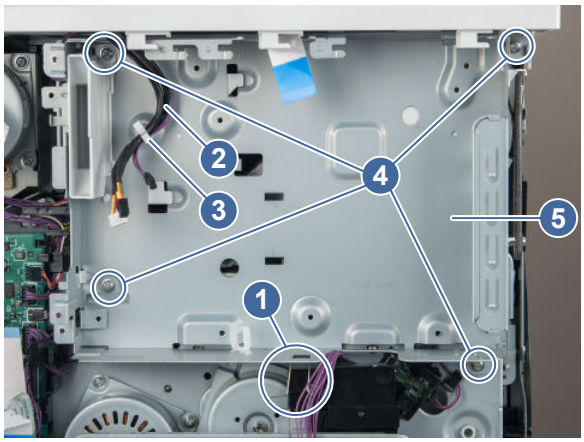
NOTE: Be careful not to drop any of the screws into the low-voltage power supply assembly below the DC controller.

Figure 4-514 Remove the DC controller stay



3. Unhook one spring (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3), remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 5).

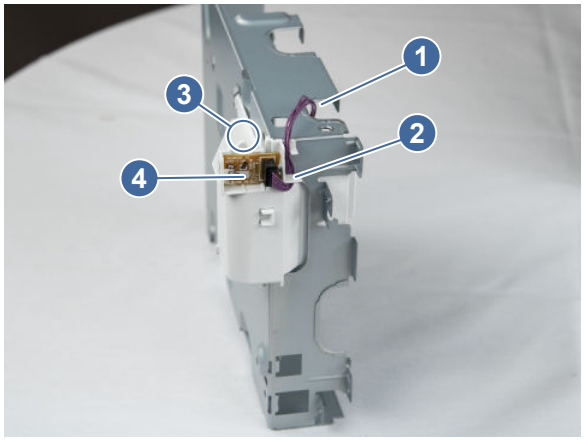
Figure 4-515 Remove the formatter cage



4. **For a replacement formatter cage only:** Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-516 Remove the memory PCA

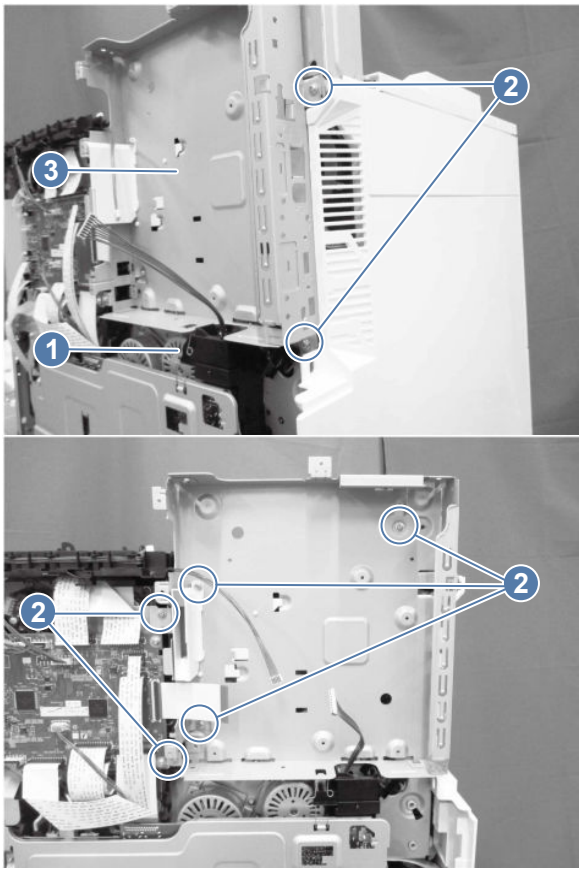


11. Remove the formatter cage (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 3).

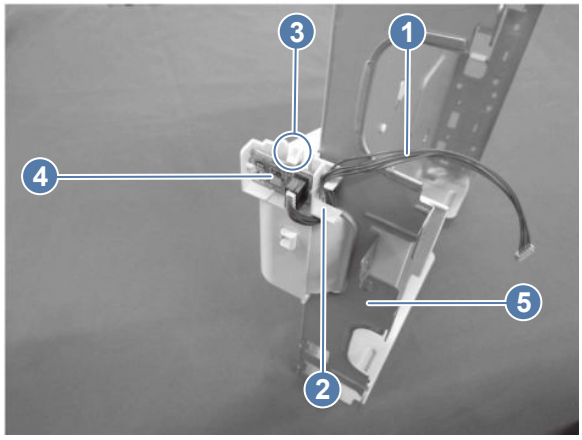
Figure 4-517 Remove the formatter cage



2. **For a replacement formatter cage only**: Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-518 **Remove the memory PCA**

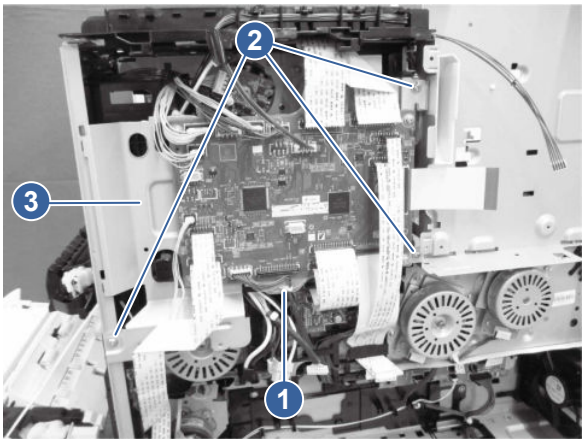


12. Remove the drive PCA

Follow these steps to remove the drive PCA.

1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

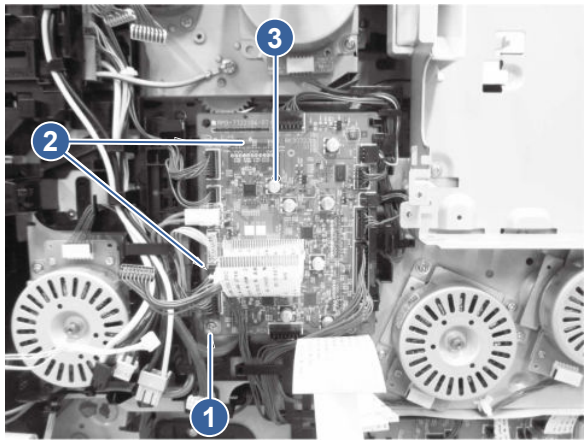
Figure 4-519 **Remove the DC controller stay**



2. Disconnect all the connectors on the drive PCA, remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the drive PCA (callout 3).

IMPORTANT: Some of these wires are very tightly connected. Take care when disconnecting them.

Figure 4-520 Remove the drive PCA



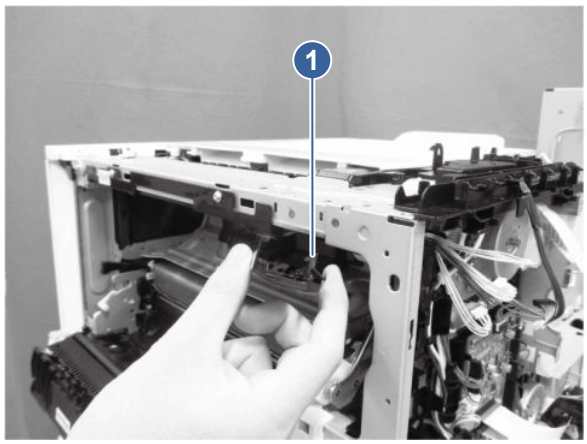
13. Remove the main-drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the main-drive assembly.

NOTE: Make sure that the front door is closed when performing this procedure.

1. Pull the lever (callout 1) of the cable cover (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the cable cover.

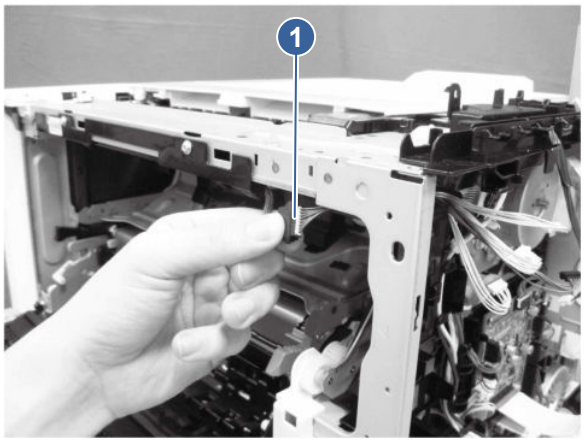
Figure 4-521 Remove the cable cover



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, align the pegs in the holes, and then set the cover against the frame and rotate it up and into position.

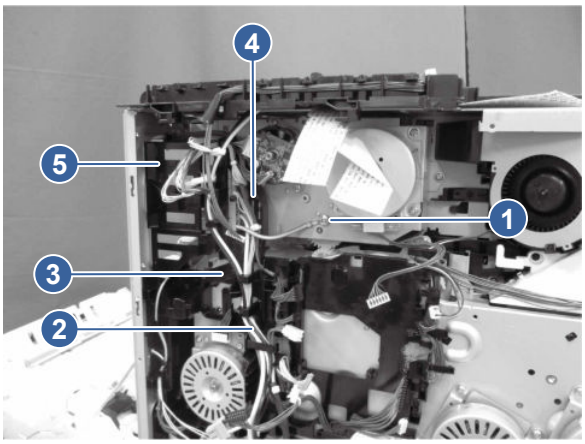
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-522 Disconnect one connector



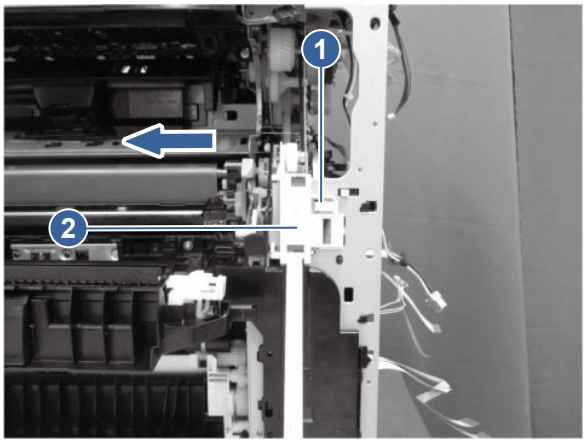
3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3), release one tab (callout 4), and then slide the connector cover (callout 5) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-523 Remove the connector cover



4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the link cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-524 Remove the link cover

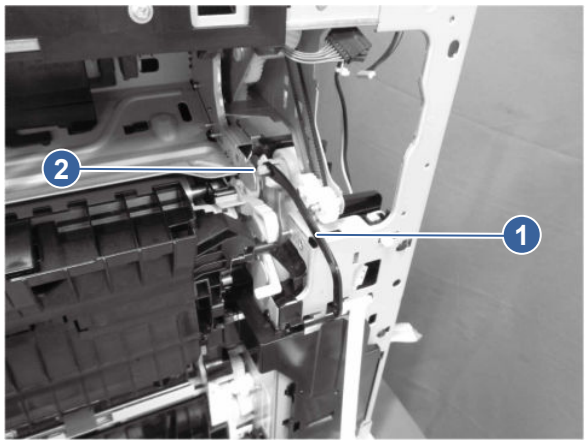


5. Close the right door a little, and then release the link arm (callout 1) from the coupling (callout 2).

NOTE: This is a keyed connection. When disconnecting, make sure to line up the peg with the socket so that you do not strip the peg.

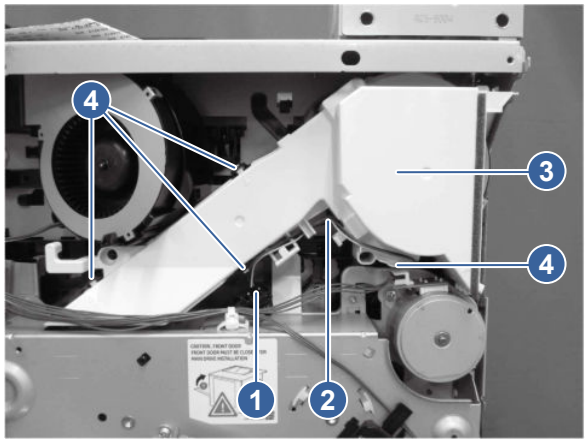
Reinstallation tip: If the black link arm disconnects from the white link arm below it, it might be helpful for reinstallation purposes to reattach the two link arms.

Figure 4-525 Release the link arm



6. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the fan cover (callout 3), release four tabs (callout 4), and then remove the fan cover.

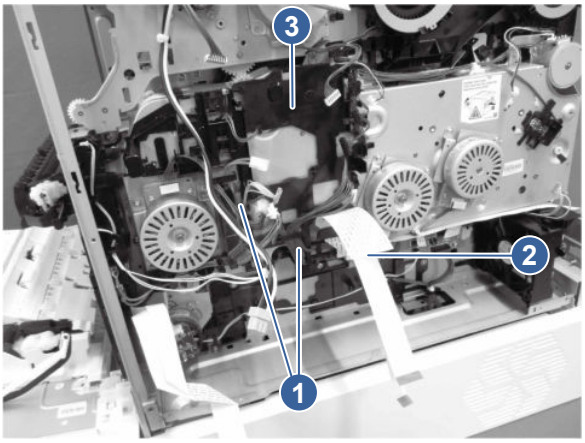
Figure 4-526 Remove the fan cover



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling this cover, seat the right side pegs into the chassis slots first.

7. Release the cables (callout 1) and the remove FFC (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-527 Release the cables

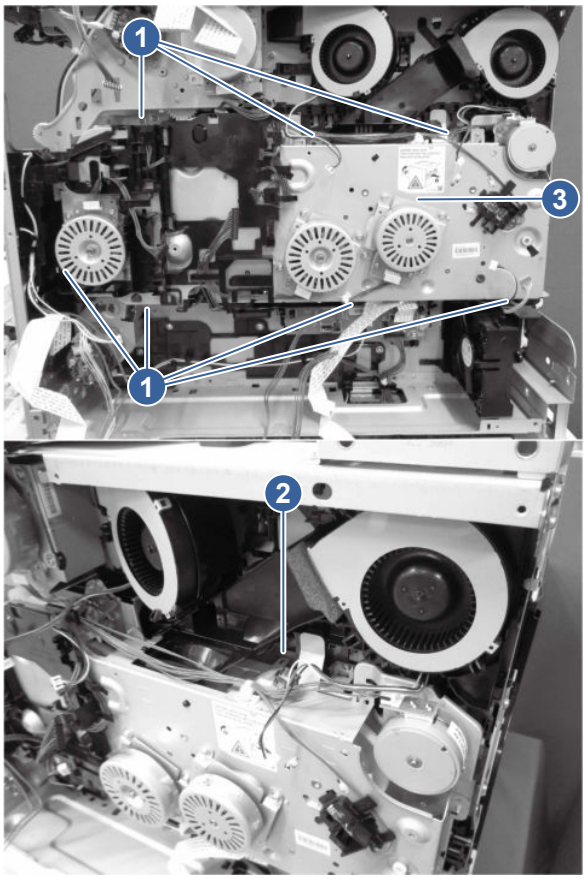


8. Remove seven screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the main drive assembly (callout 3).

NOTE: All seven screws are on sheet metal tabs on the assembly.

NOTE: Ensure that the screws do not fall into the assembly.

Figure 4-528 Remove the main drive assembly



9. **Special installation instructions for a main drive assembly (replacement unit and serviced unit)**

   - **Replacement unit**: A replacement unit is a new assembly that installs in place of a discarded in-service unit.
   - **In-service unit**: An in-service unit is a existing assembly that has been removed for repair or to gain access to other assemblies.

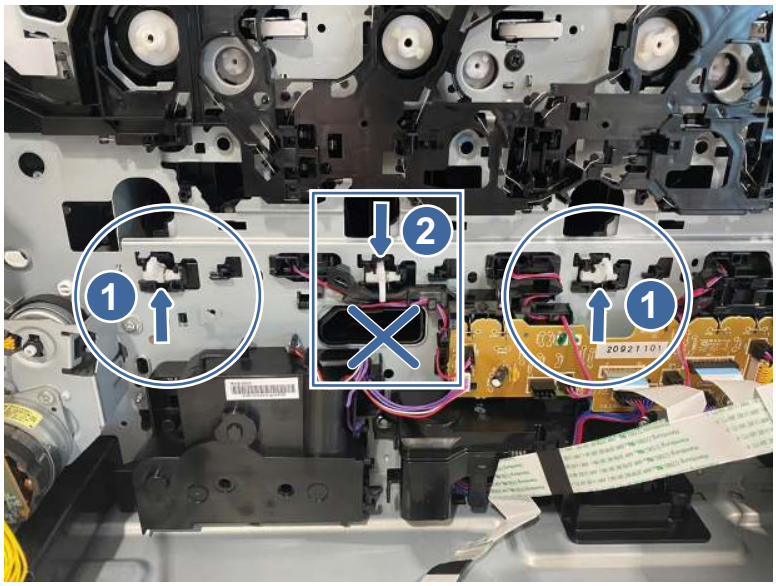
CAUTION: When the main drive assembly is installed (replacement units and service units), the front door **must** be closed.

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a new main drive assembly (replacement unit), you **do not** need to perform the alignment steps below. New assemblies are **already** aligned.

a. **Replacement unit and in-service unit**: On the printer engine, be careful to **not** depress the levers located behind the main drive assembly (when it is installed).

   - **Callout 1**: Levers in the correct raised position.
   - **Callout 2**: Lever in the incorrect depressed position.

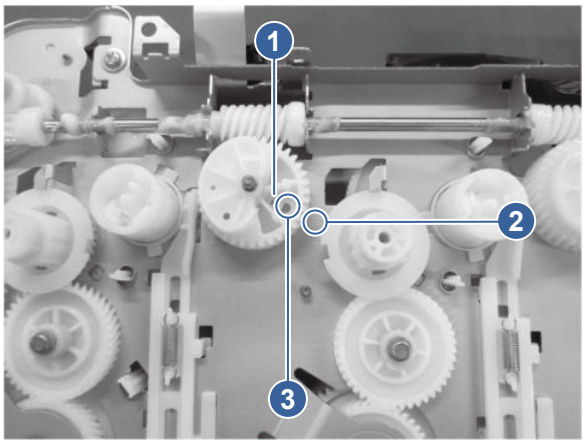
   Figure 4-529 **Correct and incorrect lever positions**



NOTE: For a replacement unit install, skip the remaining alignment steps which are for in-service units only.

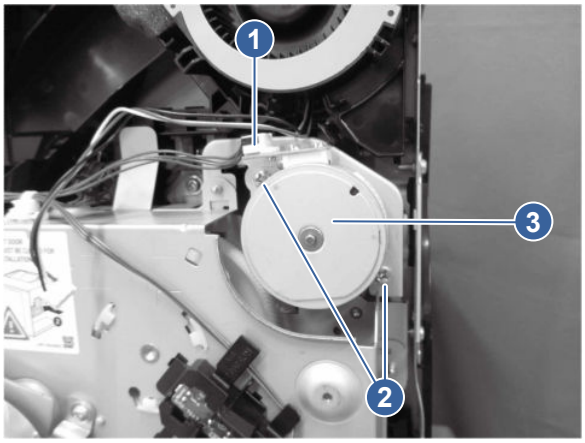
b. **In-service unit**: There are four gears on the main drive assembly that need to be lined up correctly in order to successfully reinstall the main drive. For each gear, the triangle (callout 1) on the inside of the gear should line up with the triangle (callout 2) stamped on the sheet metal chassis. Also, the hole (callout 3) in the gear should line up with a hole in the chassis.

Figure 4-530 Correct gear alignment



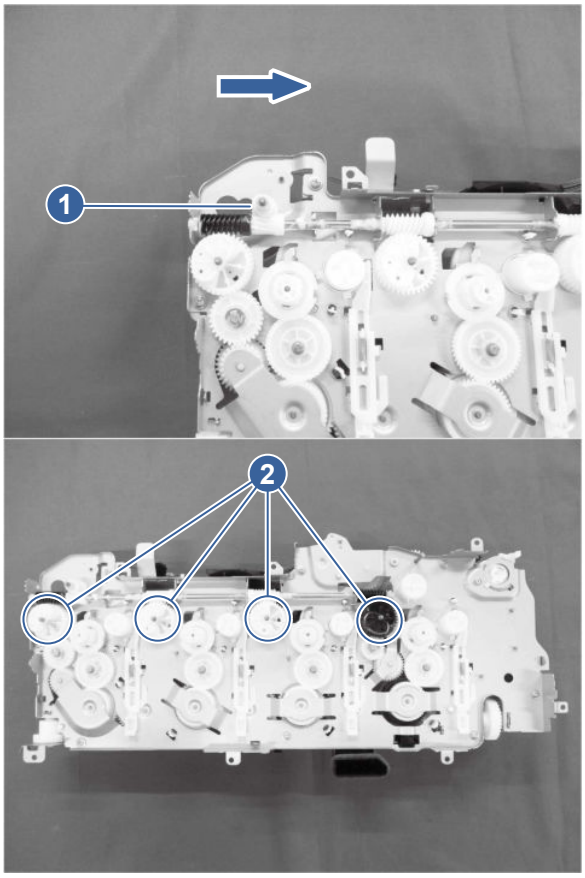
c. **In-service unit**: In order to realign the four gears, you must remove the motor that locks the gear auger above the four gears. To do this, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-531 Remove the motor



d. **In-service unit**: To realign the four gears, turn the gear (callout 1) in the direction indicated. By turning that gear, the four gears (callout 2) that need to be in phase turn in tandem. Turn the four gears to the correct phase position.

Figure 4-532 Align the gears

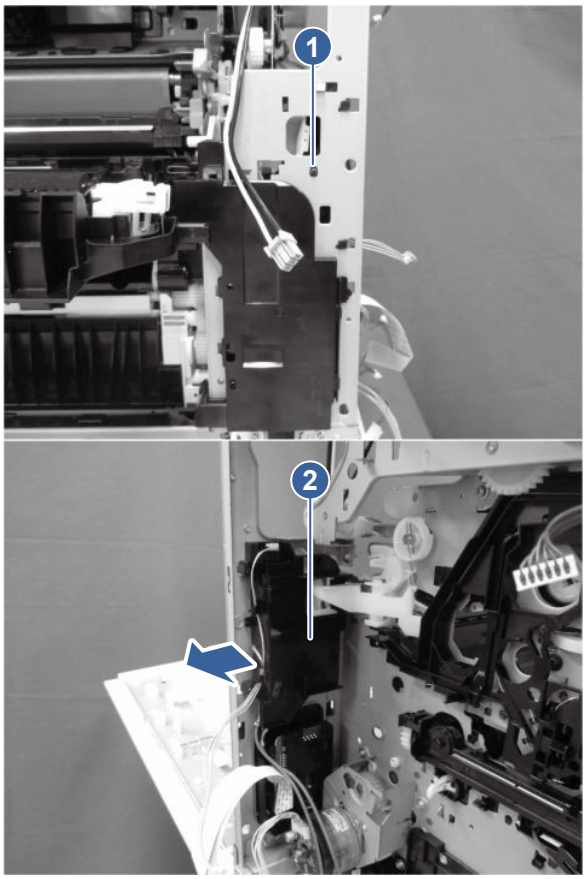


14. Remove the interlock assembly

Follow these steps to remove the interlock assembly.

- At the right side of the printer, release one boss (callout 1), and then slide the interlock assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-533 Remove the interlock assembly



15. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Waste toner carry assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the waste toner carry assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-75 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3601-000CN	Waste toner carry assembly (X57945 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

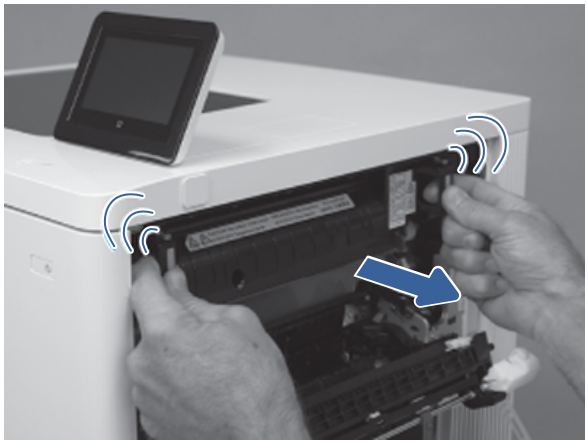
⚠ **CAUTION:** The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-534 Open the right door



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-535 Remove the fuser



2. Unseat the ITB

Follow these steps to unseat the ITB.

1. Open the right door (if it is not already open).
2. Grasp the two levers on the ITB, and then slightly pull it out of the printer to unseat and disengage it.

Reinstallation tip: During Reinstallation of the target part, do not reseat the ITB to early in the process. The ITB must remain disengaged to make sure that the gear is correctly aligned.

A **46.00.0x** error occurs if the ITB if the procedure is completed with the ITB seated.

Figure 4-536 Disengage the ITB



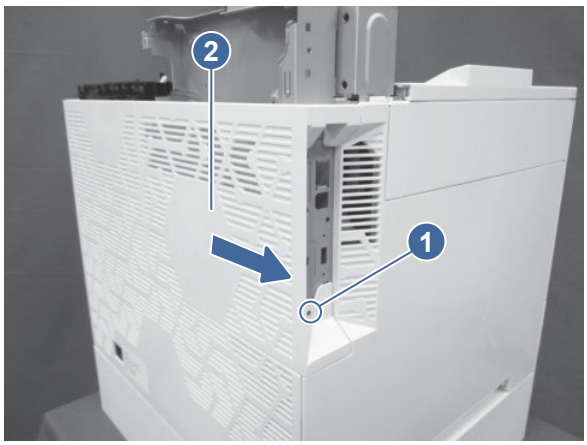
3. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-537 Remove the formatter cover



4. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

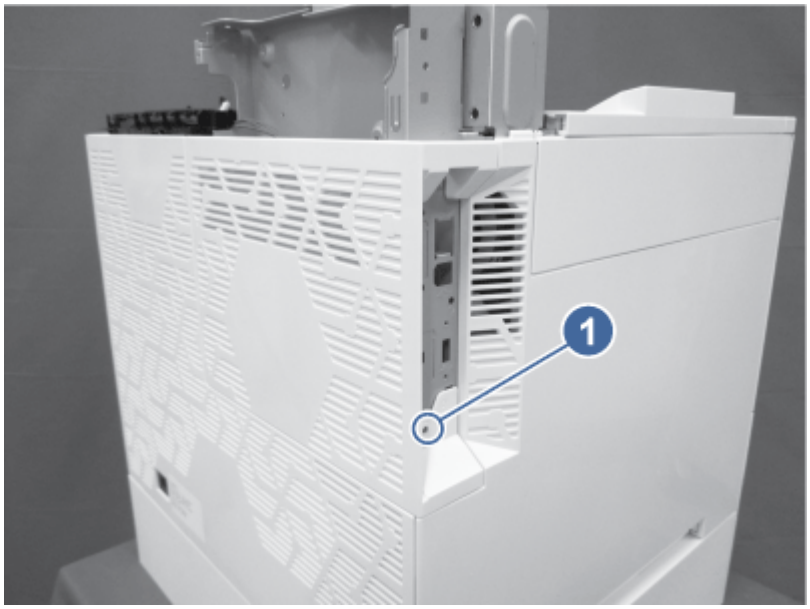
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-538 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



5. Remove the formatter

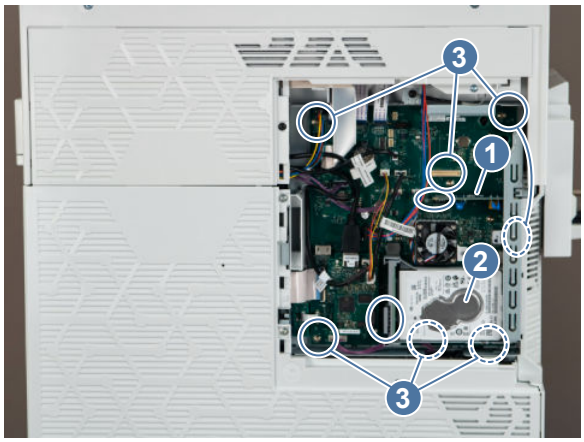
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-539 Remove the formatter



6. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

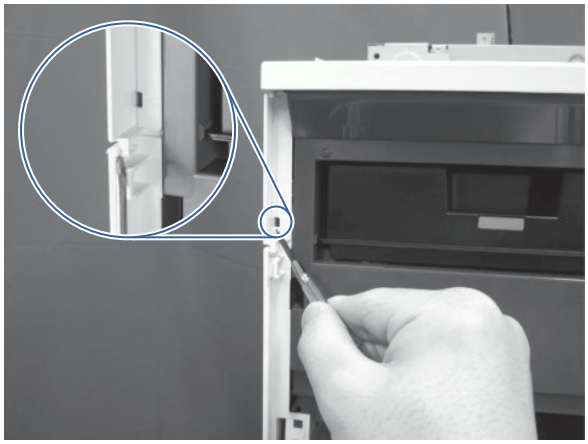
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

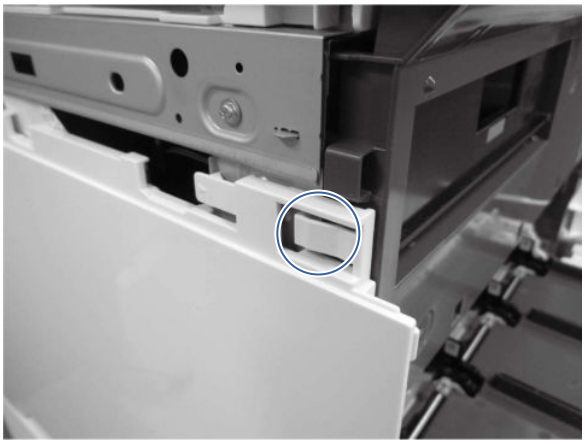
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-540 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



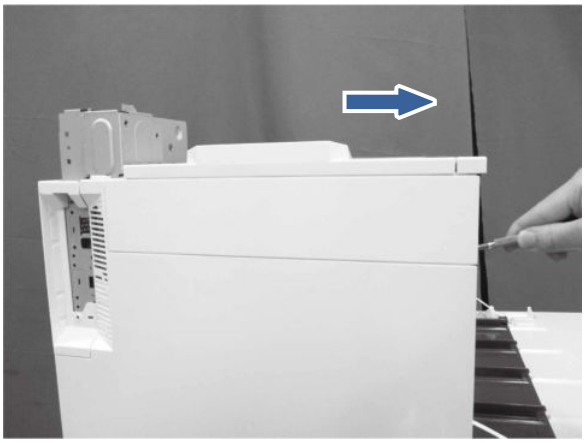
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-541 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-542 Remove the left upper cover

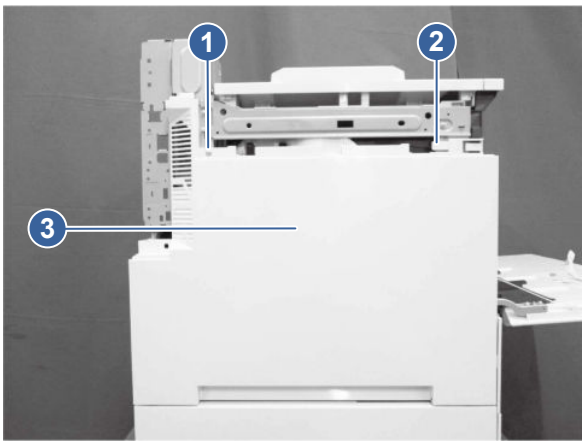


7. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-543 Remove the left cover



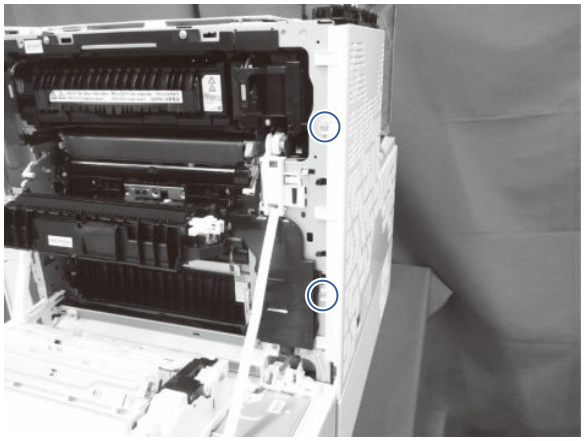
8. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

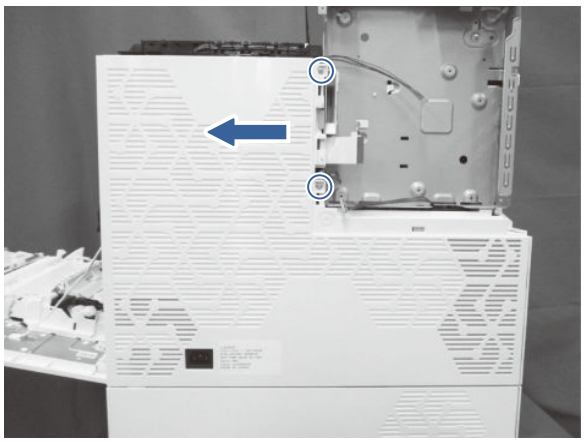
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-544 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-545 Remove the rear cover



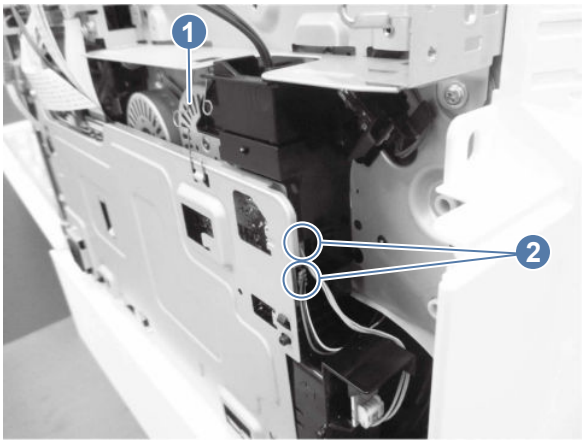
9. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

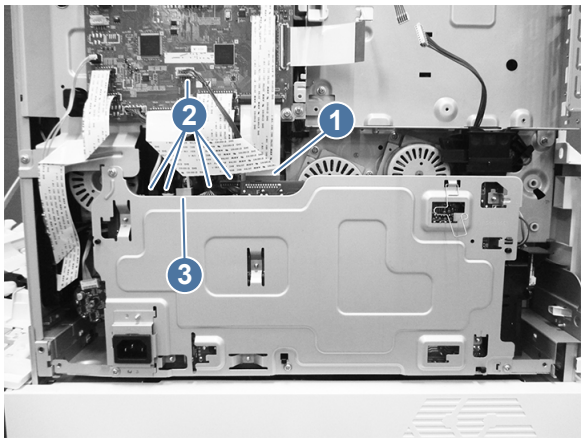
Figure 4-546 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-547 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

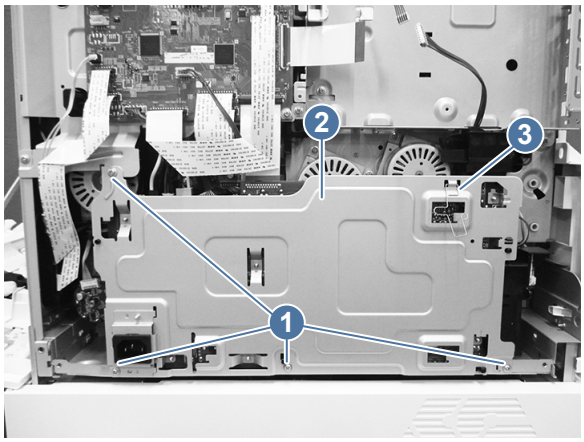


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

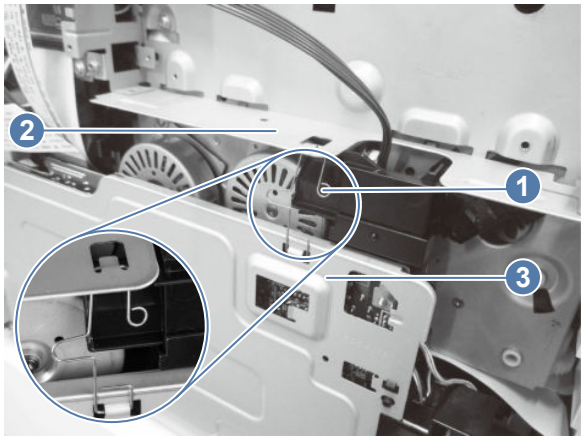
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-548 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-549 Reinstalling the LVPS



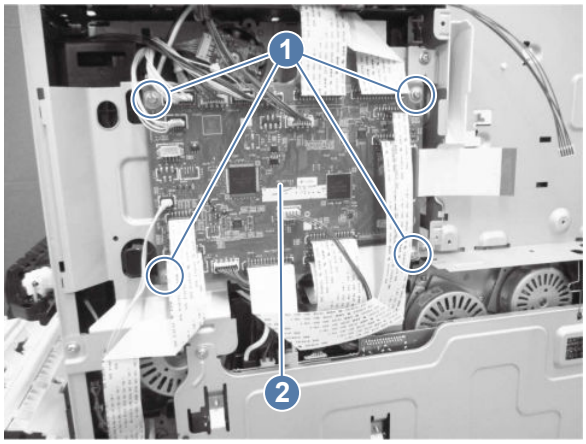
10. Remove the DC controller

Follow these steps to remove the DC controller.

- Disconnect all of the connectors on the DC controller, remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the DC controller (callout 2).

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

Figure 4-550 Remove the DC controller



11. Remove the formatter cage (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

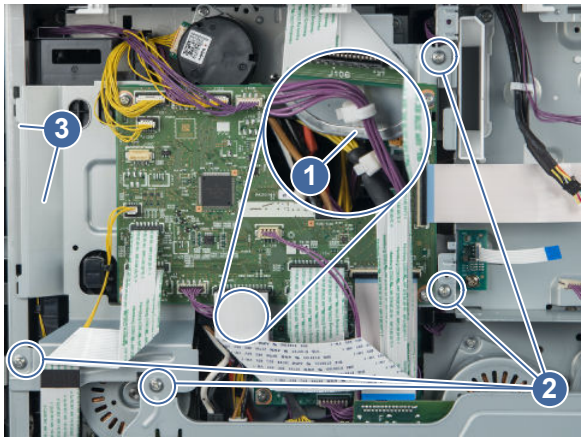
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) out to remove it.

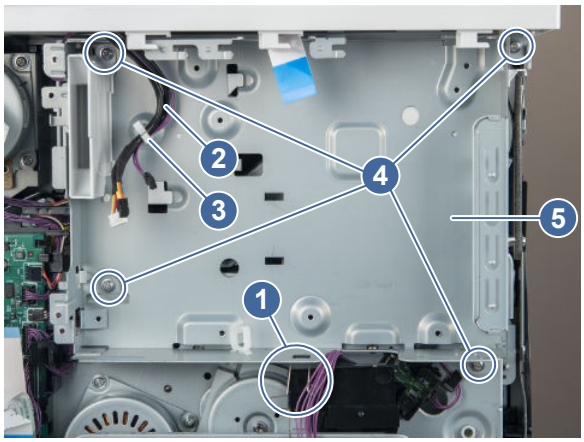
NOTE: Be careful not to drop any of the screws into the low-voltage power supply assembly below the DC controller.

Figure 4-551 Remove the DC controller stay



3. Unhook one spring (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3), remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 5).

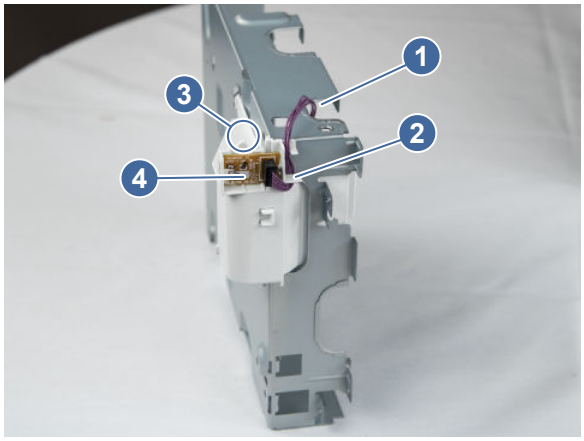
Figure 4-552 Remove the formatter cage



4. **For a replacement formatter cage only:** Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-553 Remove the memory PCA

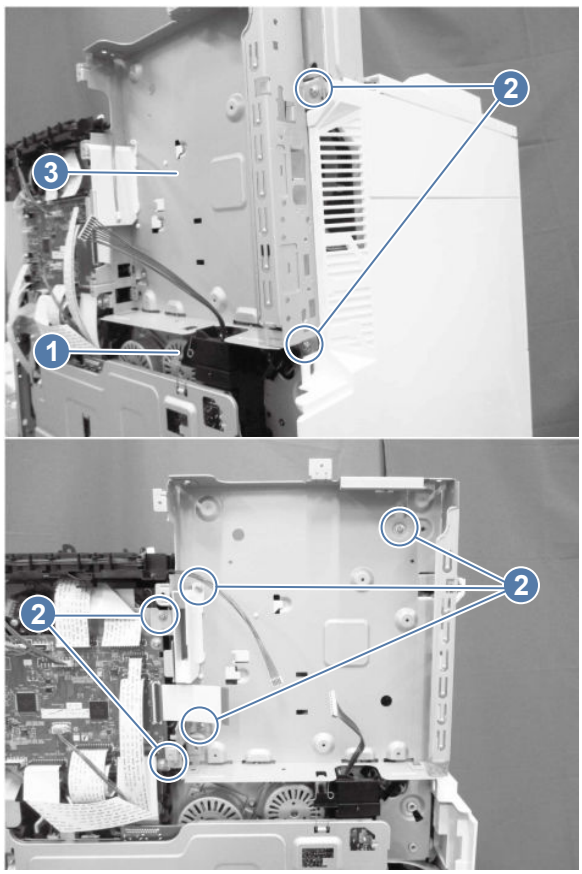


12. Remove the formatter cage (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 3).

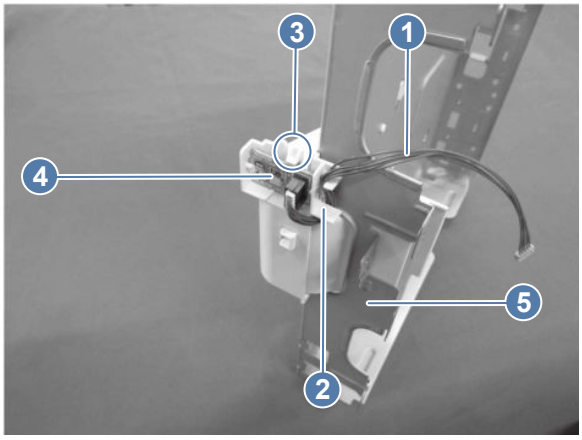
Figure 4-554 Remove the formatter cage



2. **For a replacement formatter cage only**: Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-555 **Remove the memory PCA**

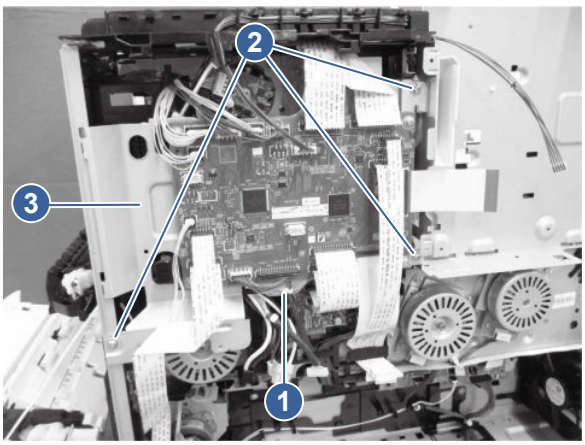


13. Remove the drive PCA

Follow these steps to remove the drive PCA.

1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

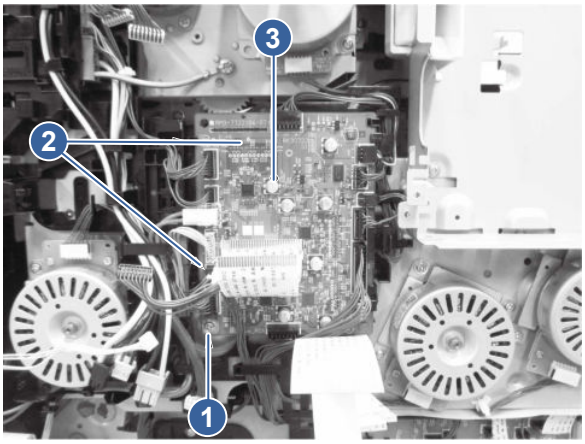
Figure 4-556 **Remove the DC controller stay**



2. Disconnect all the connectors on the drive PCA, remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the drive PCA (callout 3).

IMPORTANT: Some of these wires are very tightly connected. Take care when disconnecting them.

Figure 4-557 Remove the drive PCA



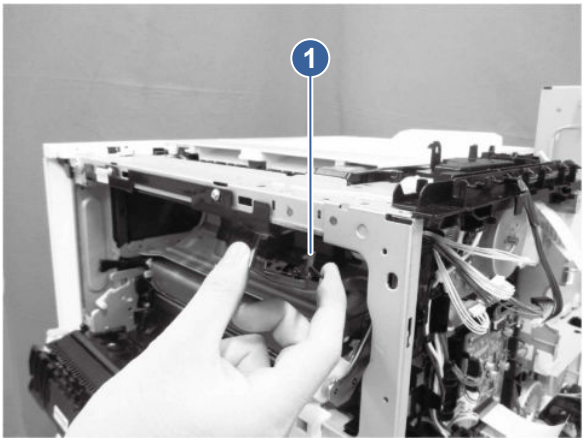
14. Remove the main-drive assembly

Follow these steps to remove the main-drive assembly.

NOTE: Make sure that the front door is closed when performing this procedure.

1. Pull the lever (callout 1) of the cable cover (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the cable cover.

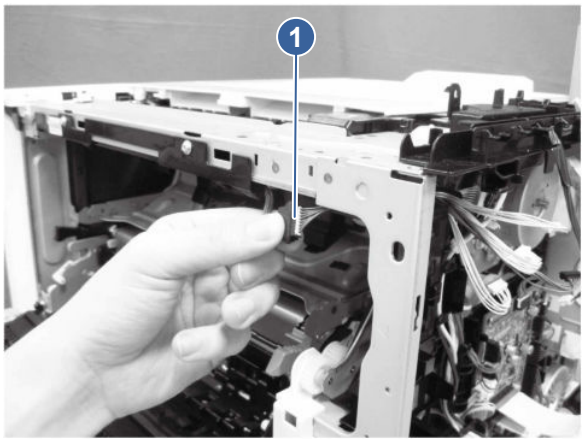
Figure 4-558 Remove the cable cover



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling, align the pegs in the holes, and then set the cover against the frame and rotate it up and into position.

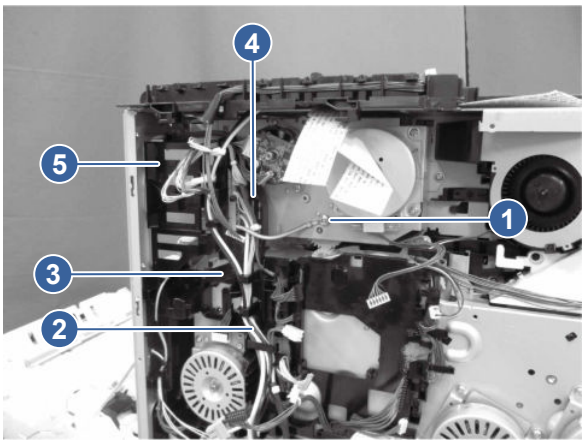
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1).

Figure 4-559 Disconnect one connector



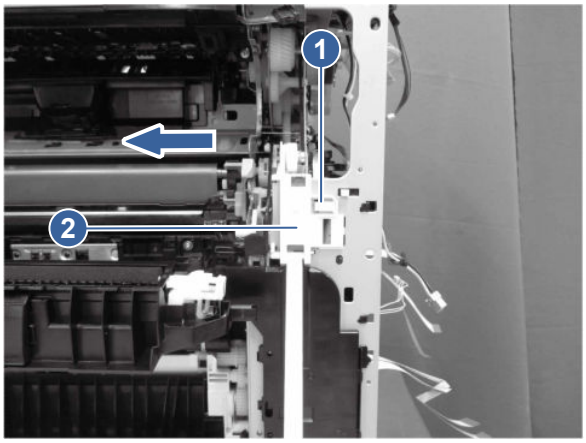
3. Remove one screw (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3), release one tab (callout 4), and then slide the connector cover (callout 5) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-560 Remove the connector cover



4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the link cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-561 Remove the link cover

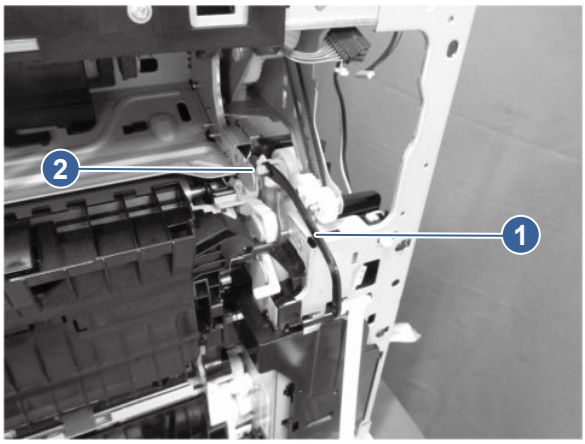


5. Close the right door a little, and then release the link arm (callout 1) from the coupling (callout 2).

NOTE: This is a keyed connection. When disconnecting, make sure to line up the peg with the socket so that you do not strip the peg.

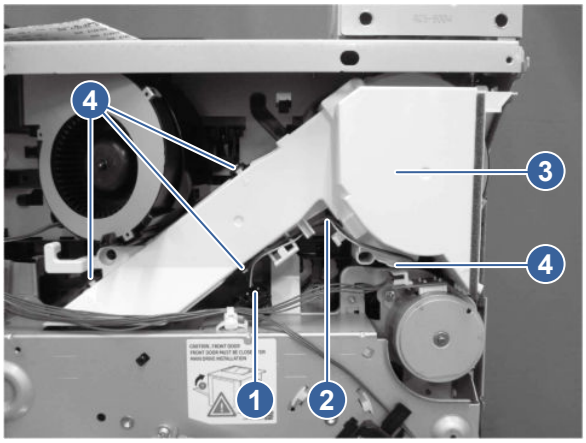
Reinstallation tip: If the black link arm disconnects from the white link arm below it, it might be helpful for reinstallation purposes to reattach the two link arms.

Figure 4-562 Release the link arm



6. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the fan cover (callout 3), release four tabs (callout 4), and then remove the fan cover.

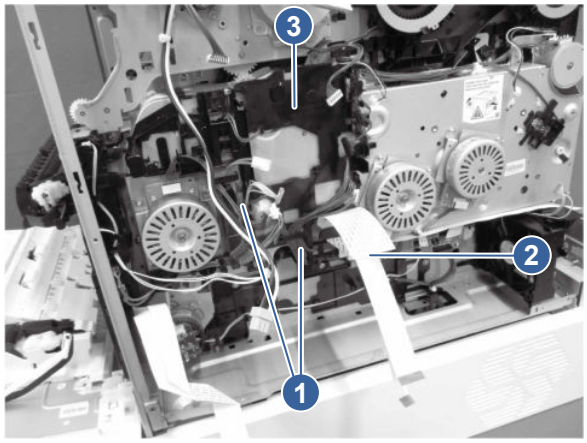
Figure 4-563 Remove the fan cover



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling this cover, seat the right side pegs into the chassis slots first.

7. Release the cables (callout 1) and the remove FFC (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-564 Release the cables

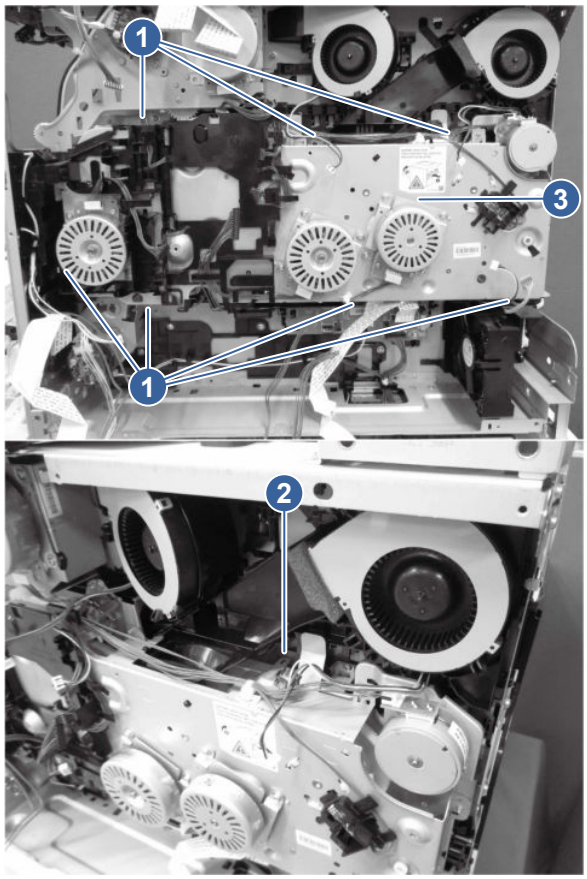


8. Remove seven screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the main drive assembly (callout 3).

NOTE: All seven screws are on sheet metal tabs on the assembly.

NOTE: Ensure that the screws do not fall into the assembly.

Figure 4-565 Remove the main drive assembly



9. **Special installation instructions for a main drive assembly (replacement unit and serviced unit)**

   - **Replacement unit**: A replacement unit is a new assembly that installs in place of a discarded in-service unit.
   - **In-service unit**: An in-service unit is a existing assembly that has been removed for repair or to gain access to other assemblies.

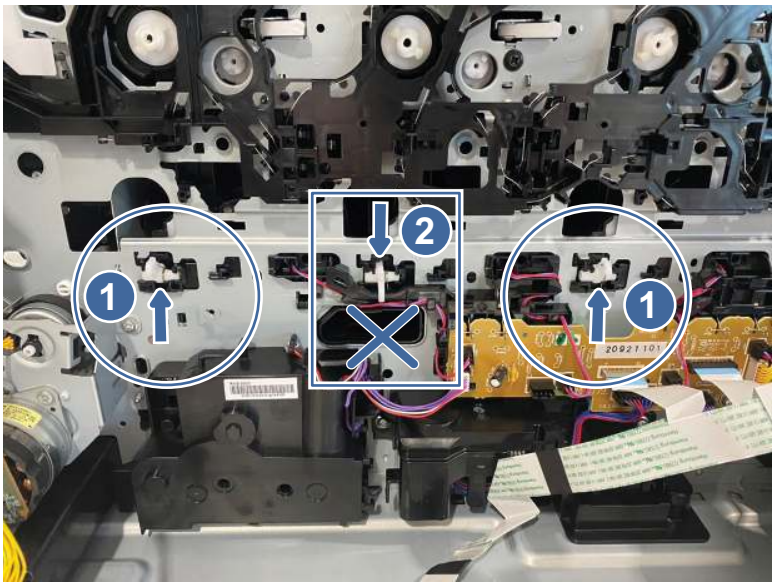
⚠ **CAUTION:** When the main drive assembly is installed (replacement units and service units), the front door **must** be closed.

IMPORTANT: If you are installing a new main drive assembly (replacement unit), you **do not** need to perform the alignment steps below. New assemblies are **already** aligned.

a. **Replacement unit and in-service unit**: On the printer engine, be careful to **not** depress the levers located behind the main drive assembly (when it is installed).

   - **Callout 1**: Levers in the correct raised position.
   - **Callout 2**: Lever in the incorrect depressed position.

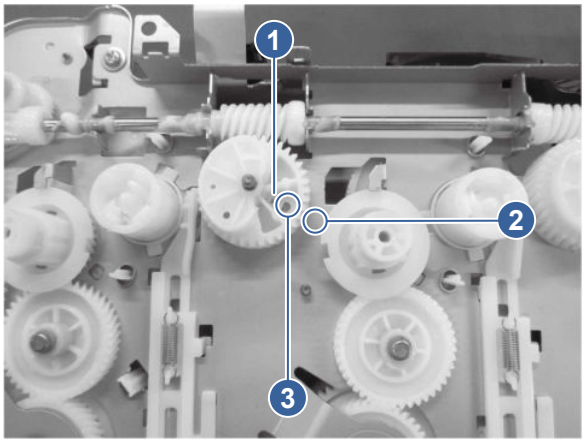
   Figure 4-566 **Correct and incorrect lever positions**



NOTE: For a replacement unit install, skip the remaining alignment steps which are for in-service units only.

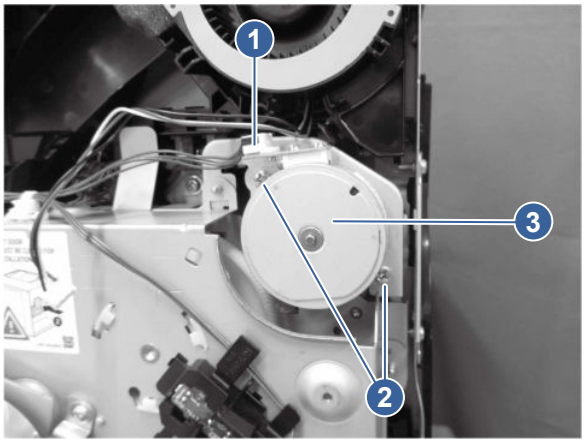
b. **In-service unit**: There are four gears on the main drive assembly that need to be lined up correctly in order to successfully reinstall the main drive. For each gear, the triangle (callout 1) on the inside of the gear should line up with the triangle (callout 2) stamped on the sheet metal chassis. Also, the hole (callout 3) in the gear should line up with a hole in the chassis.

Figure 4-567 Correct gear alignment



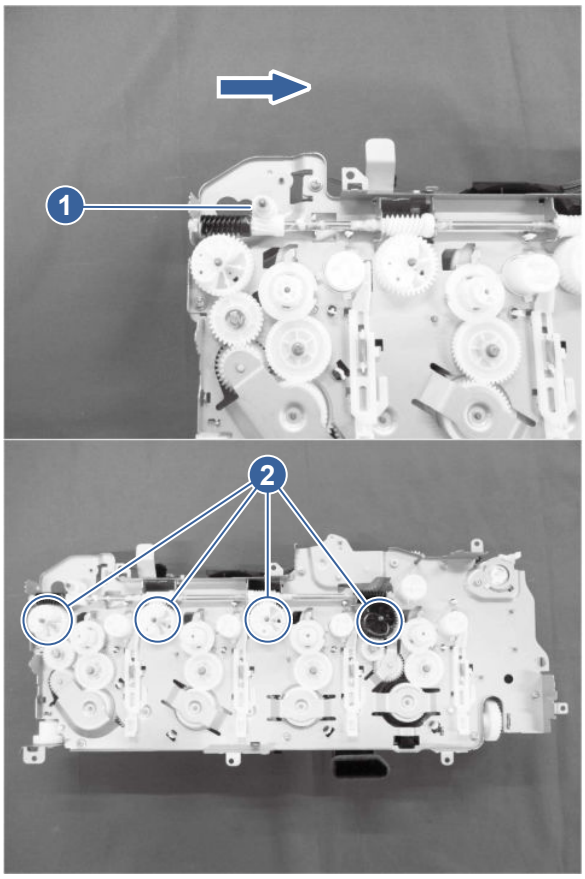
c. **In-service unit**: In order to realign the four gears, you must remove the motor that locks the gear auger above the four gears. To do this, disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-568 Remove the motor



d. **In-service unit**: To realign the four gears, turn the gear (callout 1) in the direction indicated. By turning that gear, the four gears (callout 2) that need to be in phase turn in tandem. Turn the four gears to the correct phase position.

Figure 4-569 Align the gears

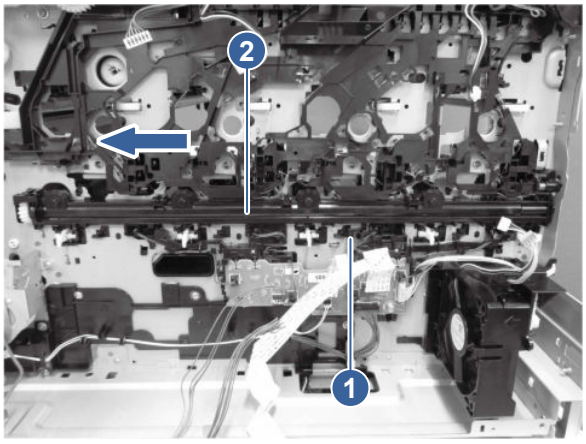


15. Remove the waste toner carry assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the waste toner carry assembly.

- Release one tab (callout 1), slide the waste toner carry assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated, and then pull the waste toner carry assembly away from the printer.

Figure 4-570 Remove the waste toner carry assembly



16. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Waste toner duct assembly (5700/X557/X579/5800 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the waste toner duct assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-76 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3517-000CN	Waste toner duct assembly (5700/5800)
RM2-3518-000CN	Waste toner duct assembly (X577/X55745/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs/6700/6800)

Table 4-76 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
RM2-3590-000CN	Waste toner duct assembly (X57945/X65455/X65465/X677/X67755/X67765)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

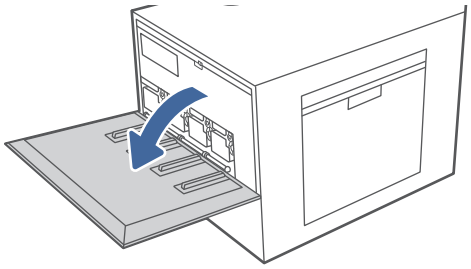
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

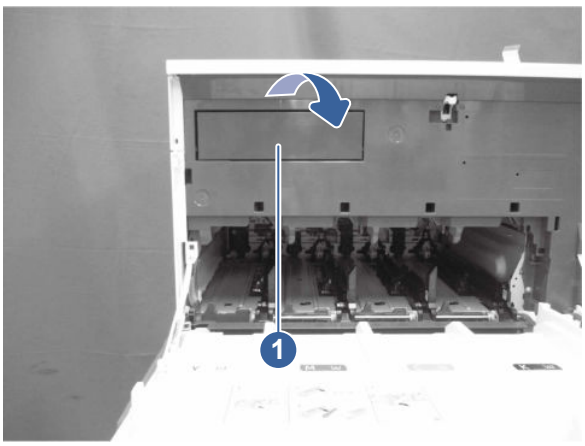
Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front door.

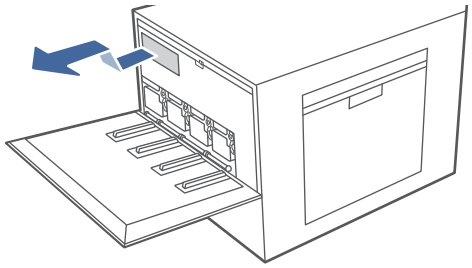


2. Rotate and then pull the TCU cover to remove it.

Figure 4-571 Remove the TCU cover



3. Lift the TCU slightly and then pull it out of the printer.



NOTE: Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Place the unit into the clear plastic bag the new TCU was packaged in.

2. Unseat the ITB

Follow these steps to unseat the ITB.

1. Open the right door (if it is not already open).
2. Grasp the two levers on the ITB, and then slightly pull it out of the printer to unseat and disengage it.

Reinstallation tip: During Reinstallation of the target part, do not reseat the ITB to early in the process. The ITB must remain disengaged to make sure that the gear is correctly aligned.

A **46.00.0x** error occurs if the ITB if the procedure is completed with the ITB seated.

Figure 4-572 **Disengage the ITB**



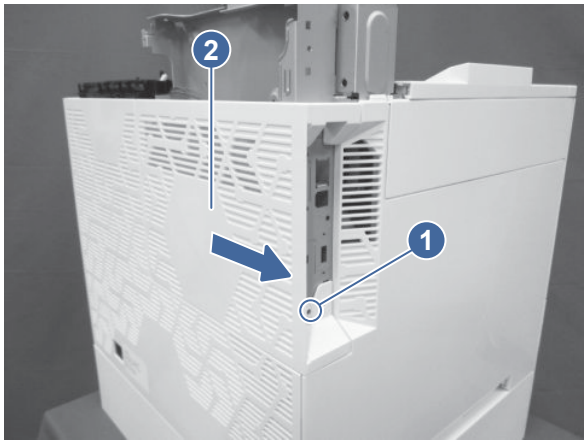
3. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-573 Remove the formatter cover



4. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

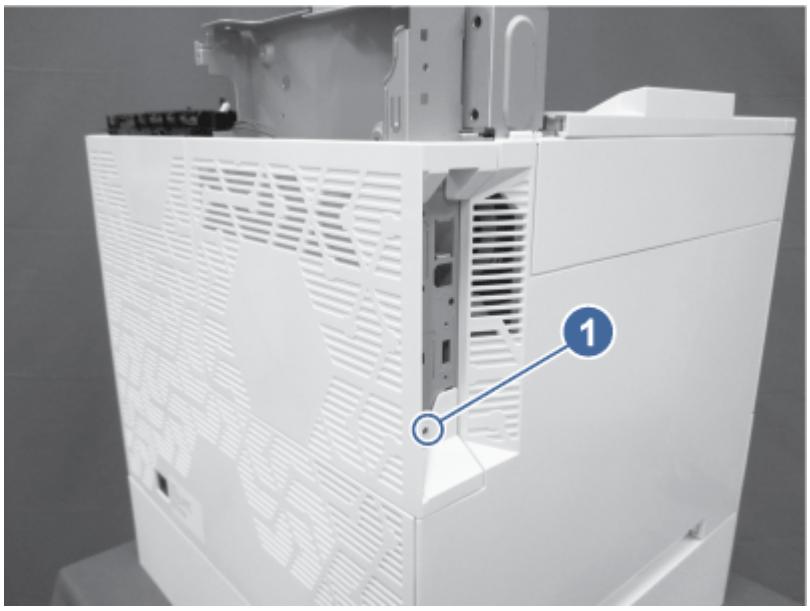
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-574 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



5. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

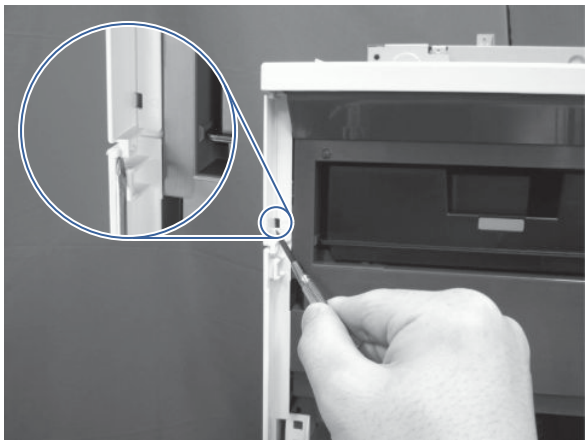
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

⚠ CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

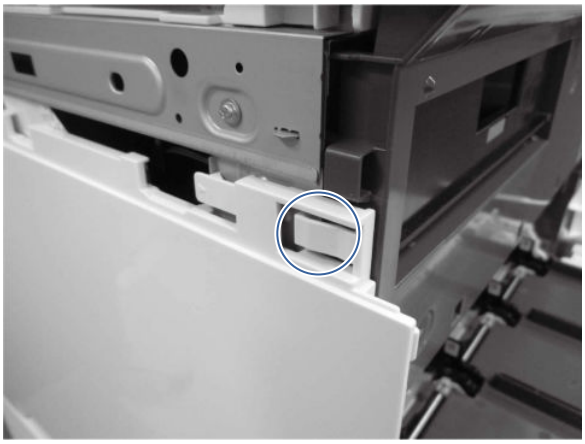
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-575 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



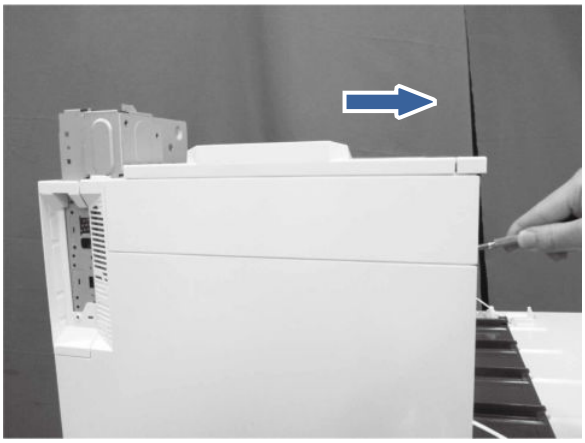
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-576 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-577 Remove the left upper cover

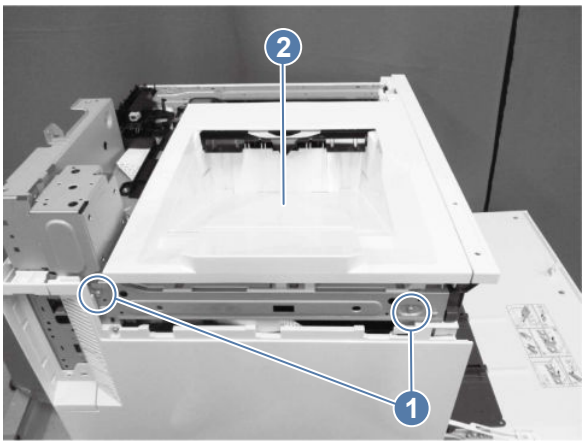


6. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

Figure 4-578 Remove the output bin

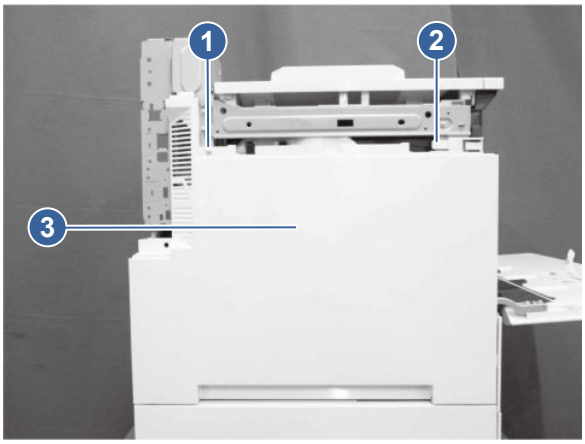


7. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-579 Remove the left cover

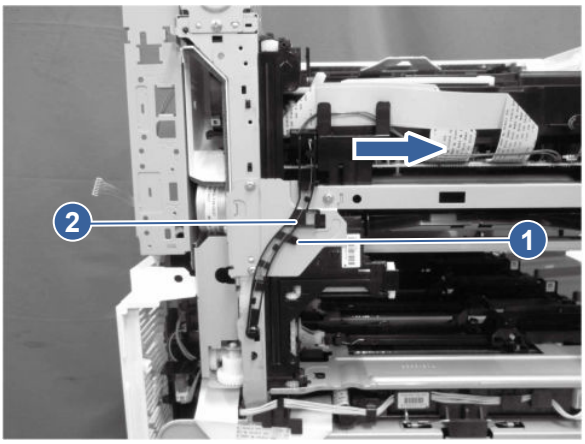


8. Remove the waste toner duct assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the waste toner duct assembly.

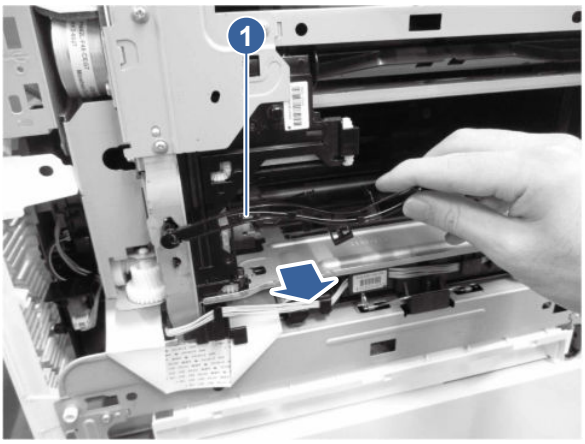
1. Release one tab (callout 1), pull the upper part of the contact holder (callout 2) forward, slide the contact holder in the direction indicated, and then rotate the contact holder.

Figure 4-580 Slide the contact holder



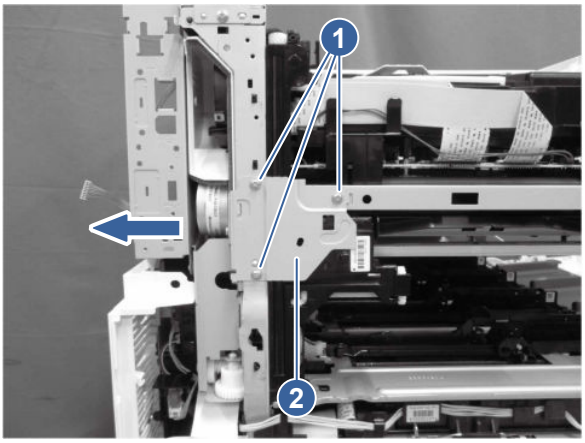
2. Slide the contact holder (callout 1) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-581 Remove the contact holder



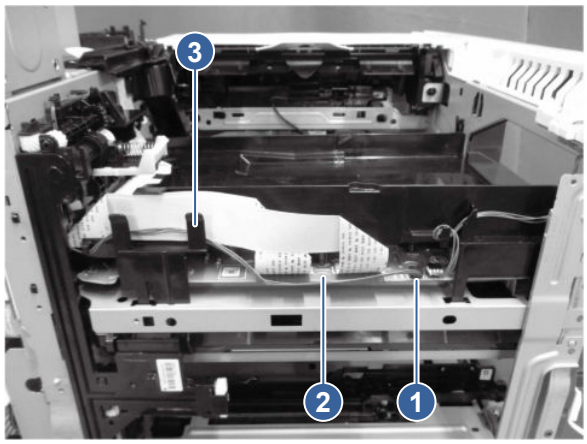
3. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then slide the support plate (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-582 Remove the support plate



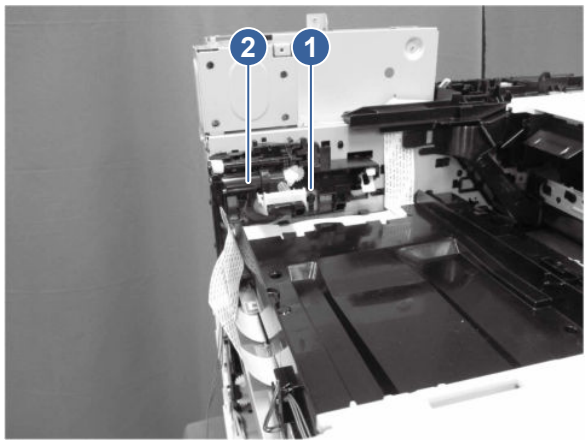
4. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-583 Disconnect one connector



5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the waste toner duct assembly (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-584 Remove the waste toner duct assembly



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs models)

Learn about removing and replacing the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-77 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3565-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA holder (5700/X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

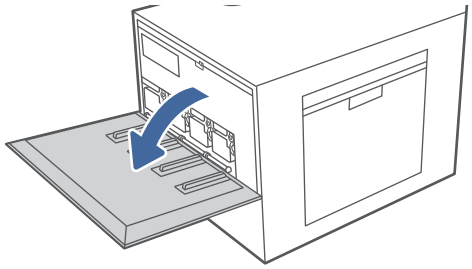
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

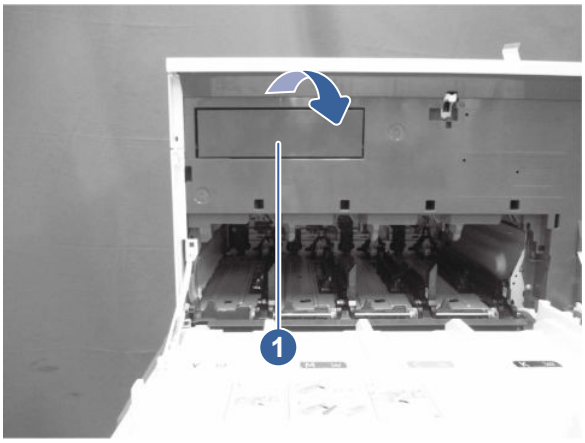
Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front door.

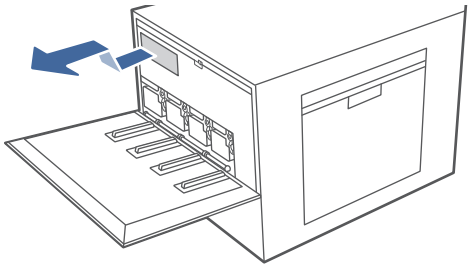


2. Rotate and then pull the TCU cover to remove it.

Figure 4-585 **Remove the TCU cover**



3. Lift the TCU slightly and then pull it out of the printer.



NOTE: Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Place the unit into the clear plastic bag the new TCU was packaged in.

2. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

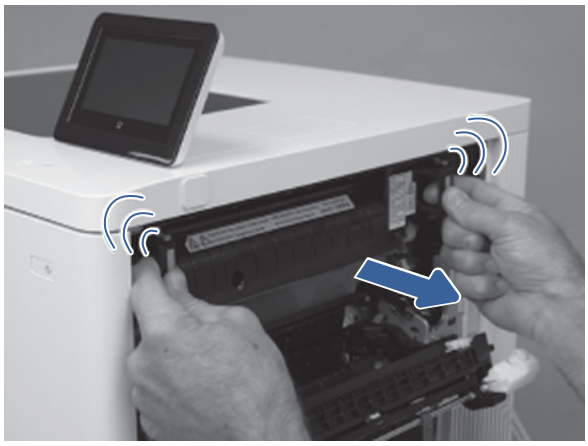
CAUTION: The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-586 **Open the right door**



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-587 **Remove the fuser**



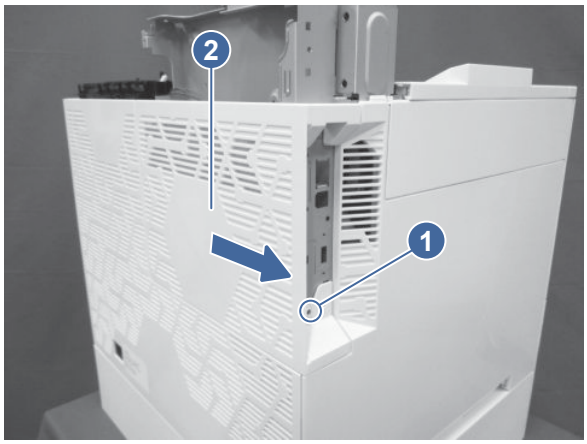
3. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-588 **Remove the formatter cover**



4. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

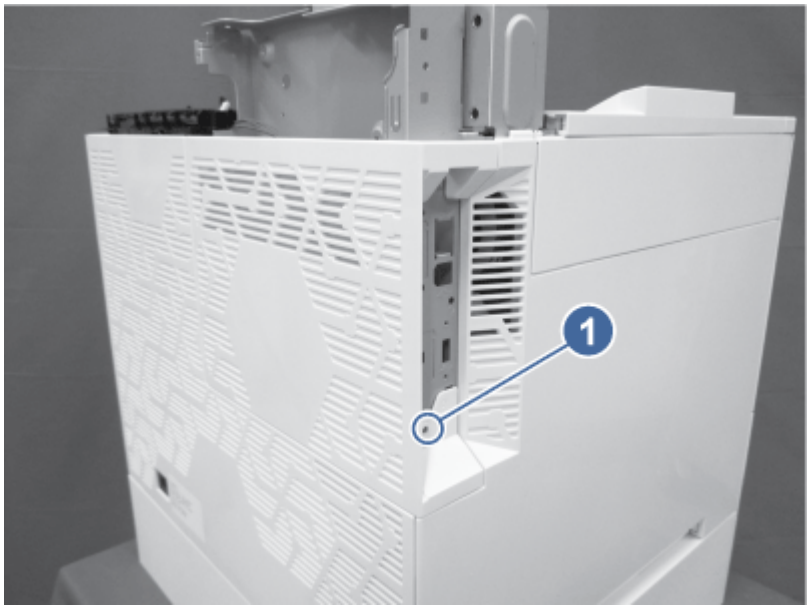
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-589 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.

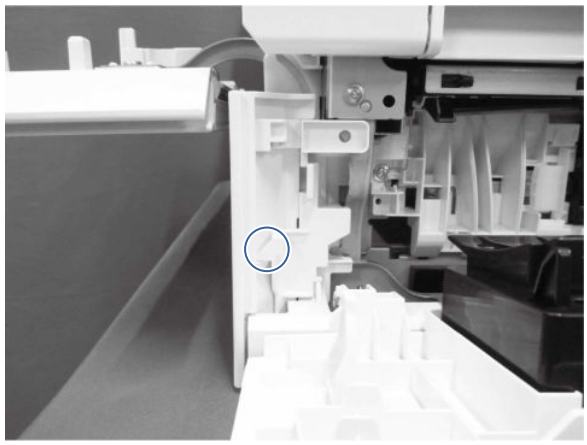


5. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **5700/X557/5800 models**: Open the front door.
   - **X57945 models**: Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **5700/X557/5800 models**: Open the right door.
   - **X57945 models**: Open the right lower door.
3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-590 Remove the front right cover



6. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

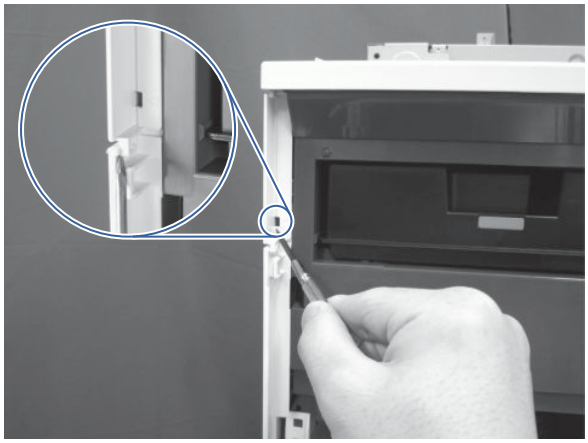
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

> ⚠ **CAUTION:** If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

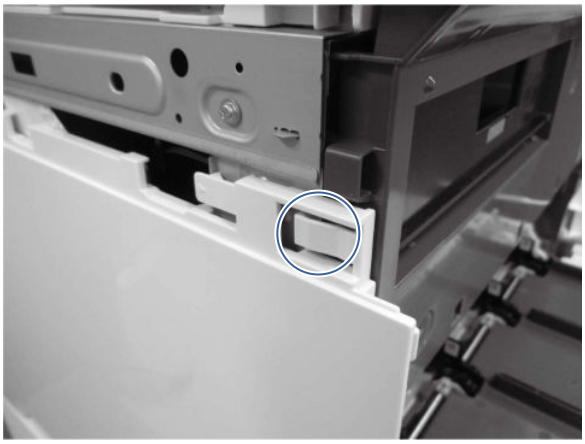
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-591 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



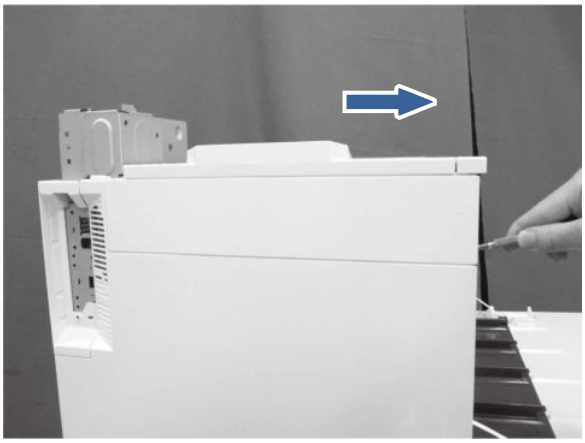
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-592 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-593 Remove the left upper cover

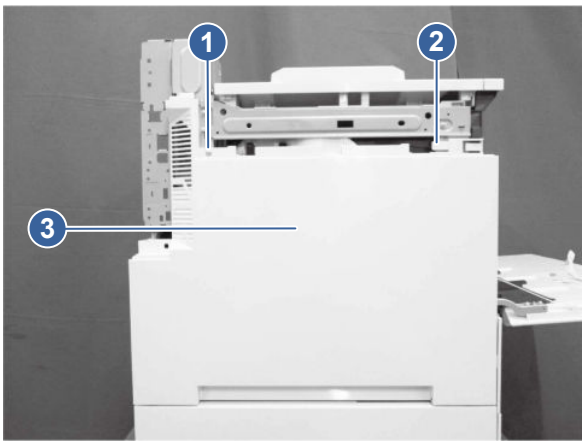


7. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-594 Remove the left cover

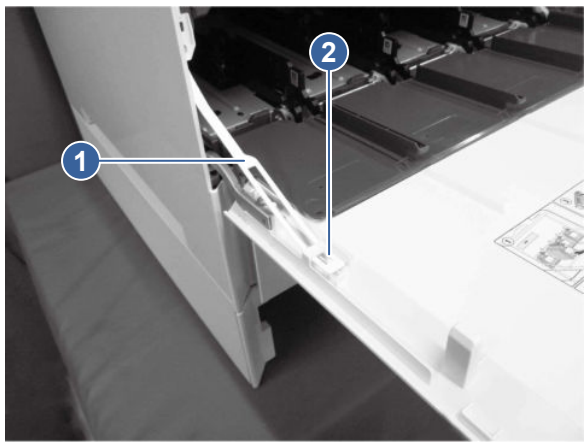


8. Remove the front door

Follow these steps to remove the front door.

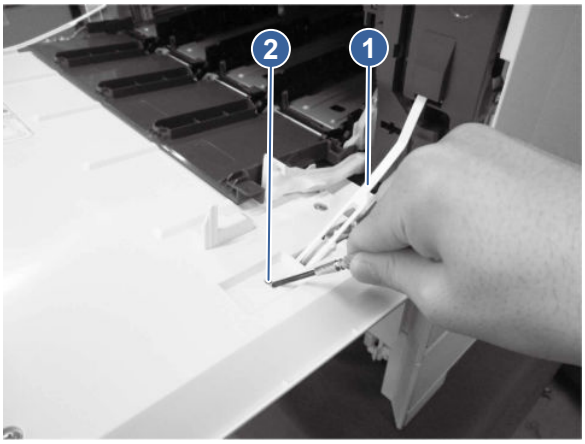
1. Open the front door.
2. At the left side of the door, release the link arm (callout 1) from the clip (callout 2) on the front-door assembly.

Figure 4-595 Release the left link arm



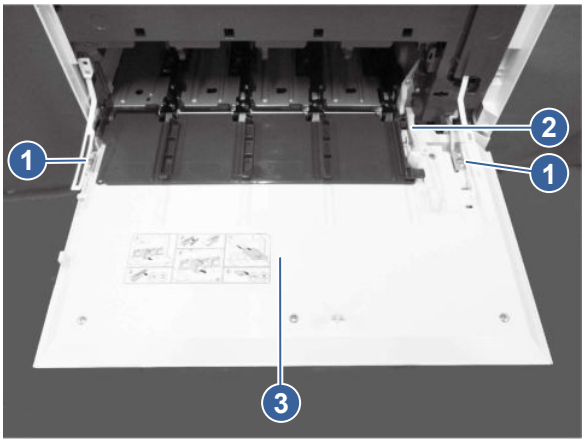
3. At the right side of the door, release the link arm (callout 1) from the clip (callout 2) on the front-door assembly.

Figure 4-596 Release the right link arm



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release the link lever (callout 2) from the front door assembly (callout 3), and then remove the front door.

Figure 4-597 Remove the door

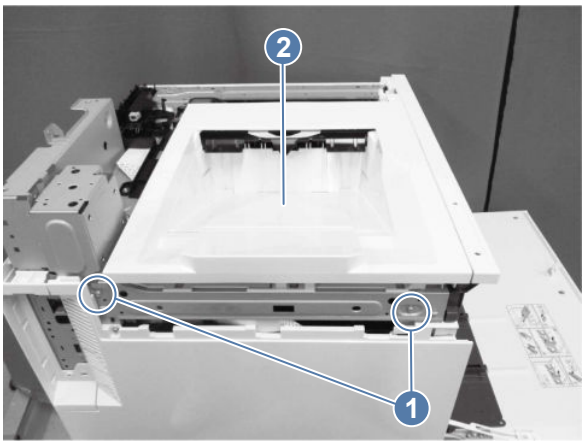


9. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

Figure 4-598 **Remove the output bin**

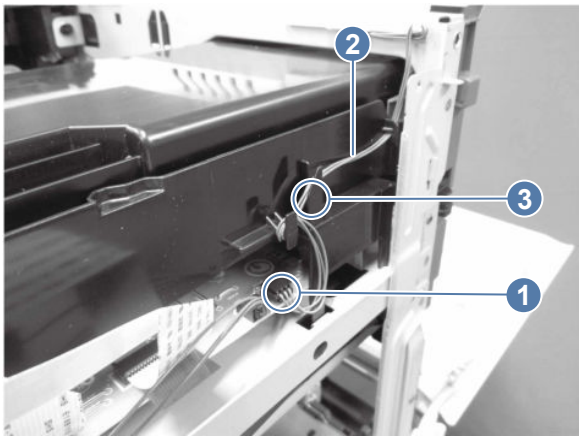


10. Remove the top cover (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-599 **Disconnect the connector**



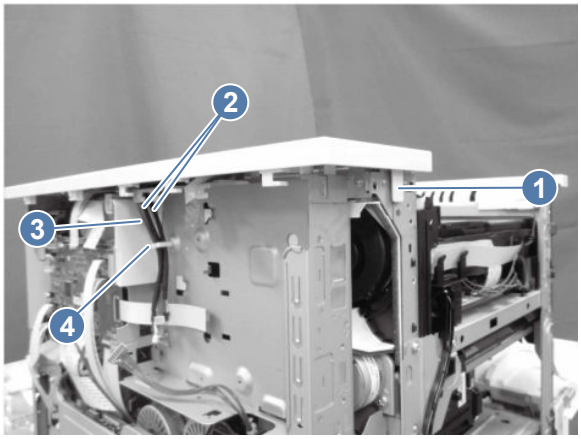
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 4-600 Remove two screws



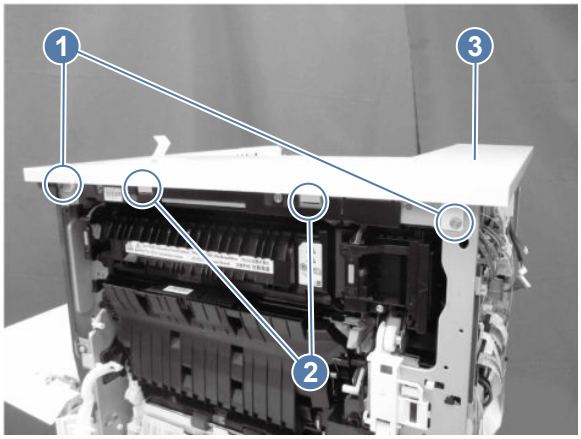
3. Release one tab (callout 1), release two USB cables (callout 2) and another cable (callout 3) from the cable clamp (callout 4).

Figure 4-601 Release one tab



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the top cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-602 Remove the cover

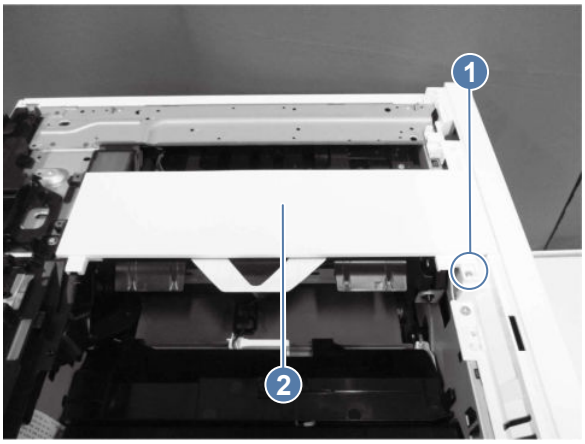


11. Remove the top cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-603 **Remove the top cover**

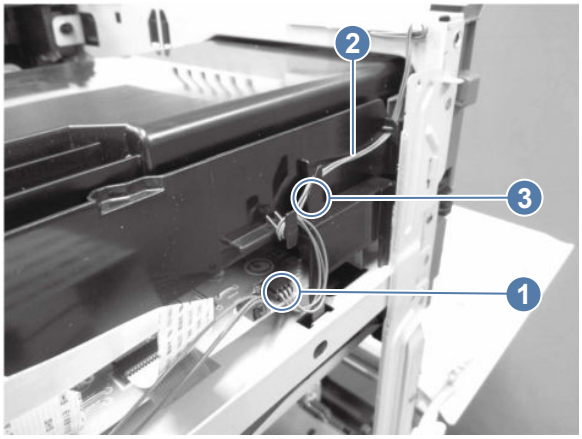


12. Remove the top front cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top front cover.

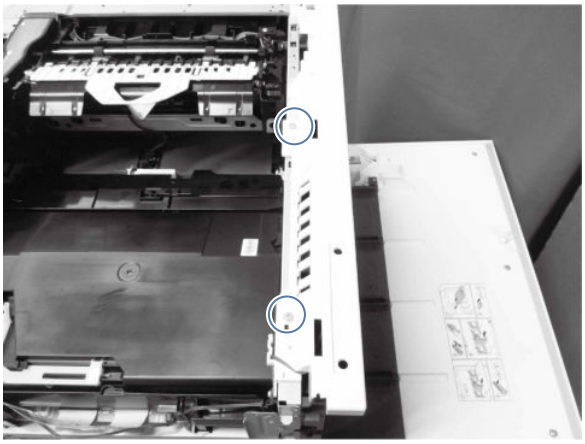
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-604 **Disconnect one connector and release the cable**



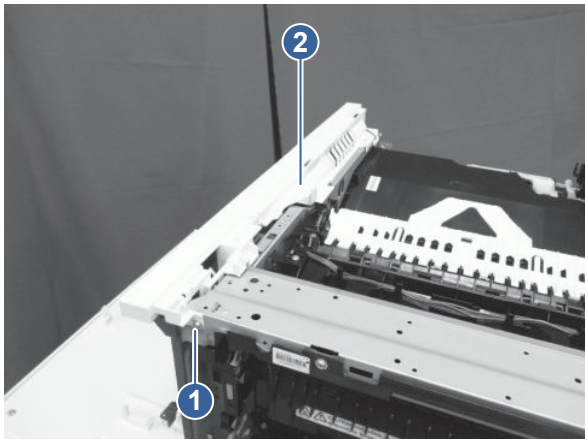
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 4-605 Remove two screws



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), hold up the top front cover (callout 2), and then remove it.

Figure 4-606 Remove the top front cover

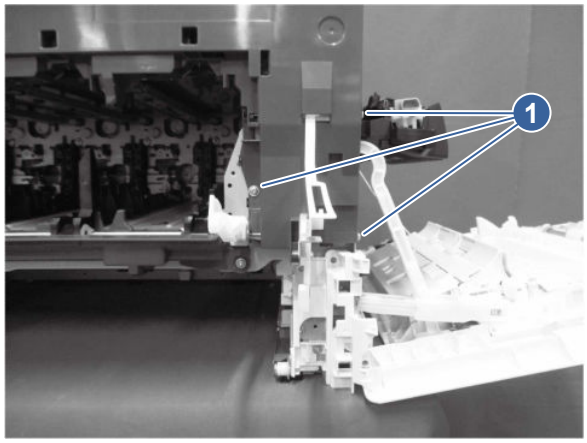


13. Remove the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (5700/X557/5800 models)

Follow these steps to remove the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly.

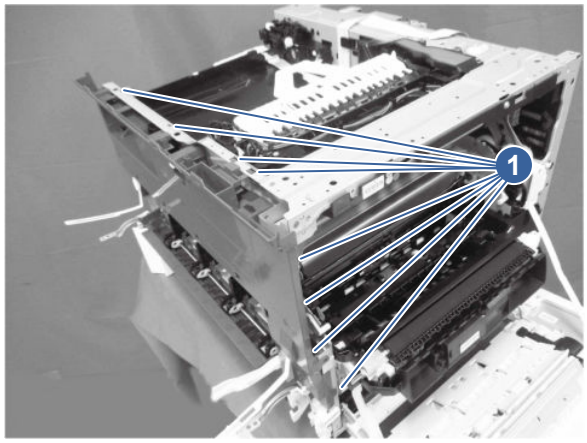
1. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-607 Remove three screws



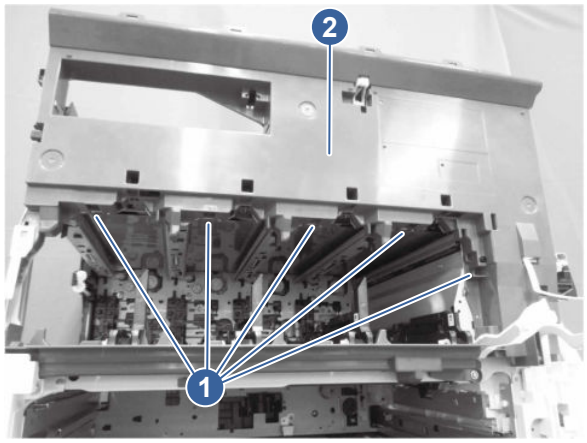
2. Release eight tabs (callout 1).

Figure 4-608 Release eight tabs



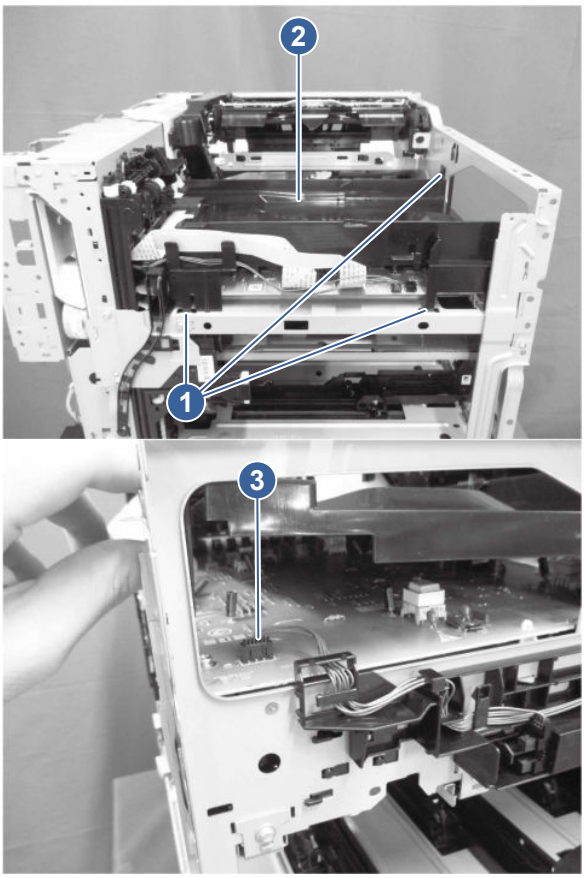
3. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the front inner cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-609 Remove the front inner cover



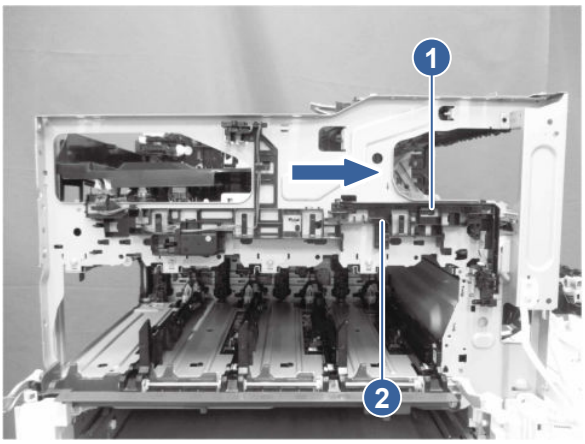
4. Release three tabs (callout 1), hold up the high-voltage PCA cover (callout 2), and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-610 Release three tabs



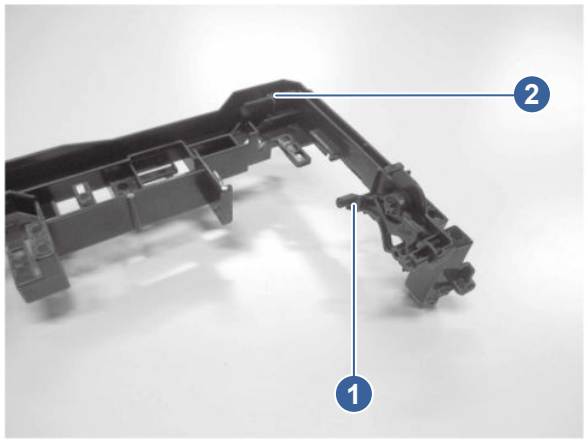
5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-611 Remove the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly



6. Remove the link lever (callout 1) from the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-612 **Remove the link lever**



14. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-78 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3673-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA holder (X57945 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

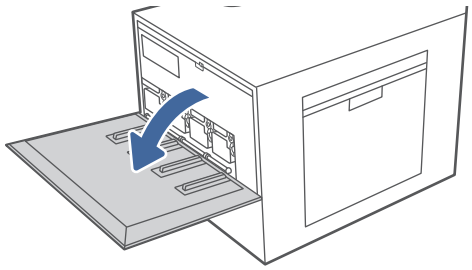
Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

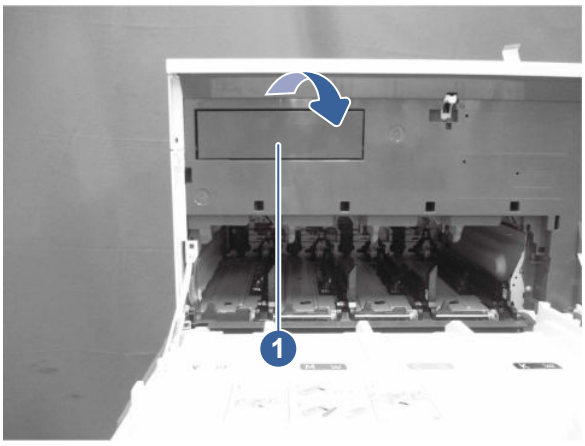
Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front door.

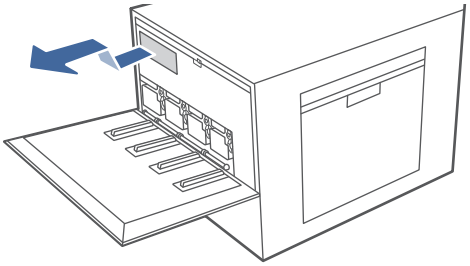


2. Rotate and then pull the TCU cover to remove it.

Figure 4-613 Remove the TCU cover



3. Lift the TCU slightly and then pull it out of the printer.



NOTE: Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Place the unit into the clear plastic bag the new TCU was packaged in.

2. Remove the fuser

Follow these steps to remove the fuser.

1. Open the right door.

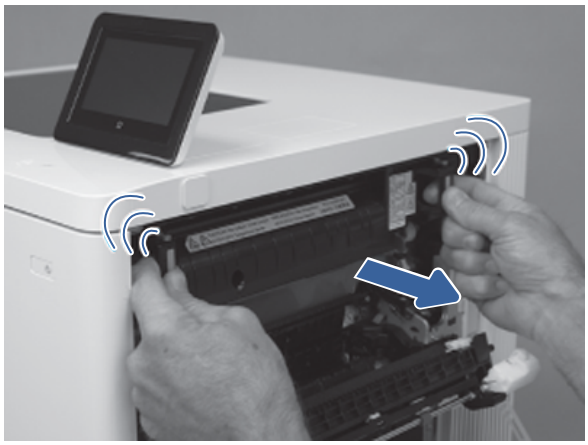
CAUTION: The fuser is hot. Wait at least 10 minutes after turning the printer power off before removing the fuser.

Figure 4-614 Open the right door



2. Squeeze the release levers on the handles (circle callouts), and then remove the fuser.

Figure 4-615 Remove the fuser



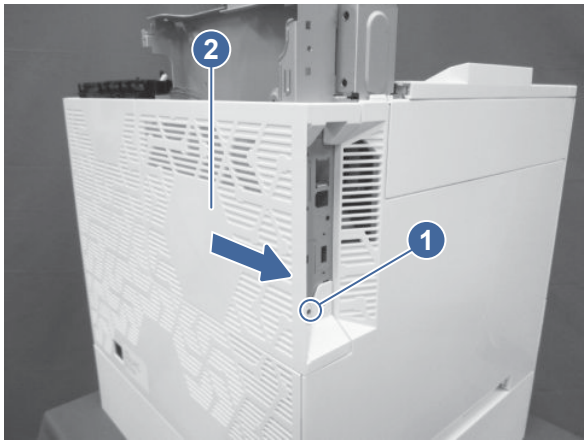
3. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-616 Remove the formatter cover



4. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

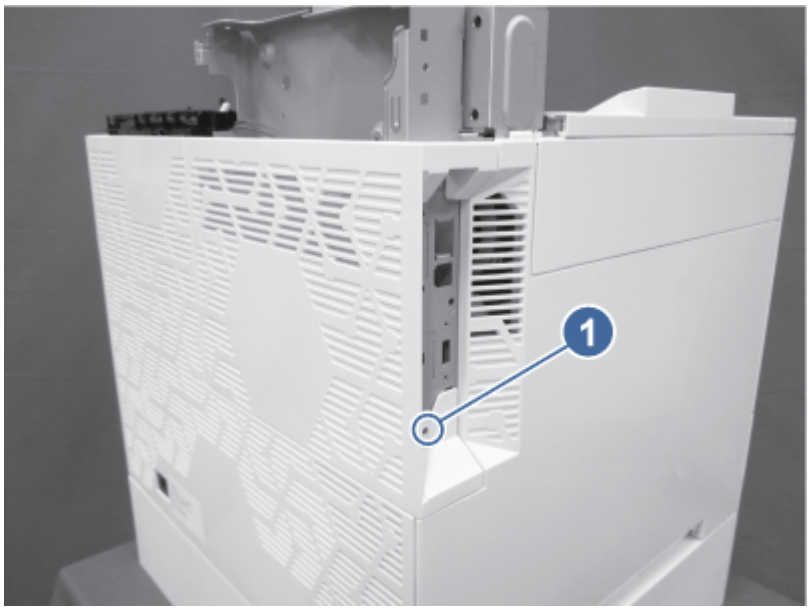
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-617 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



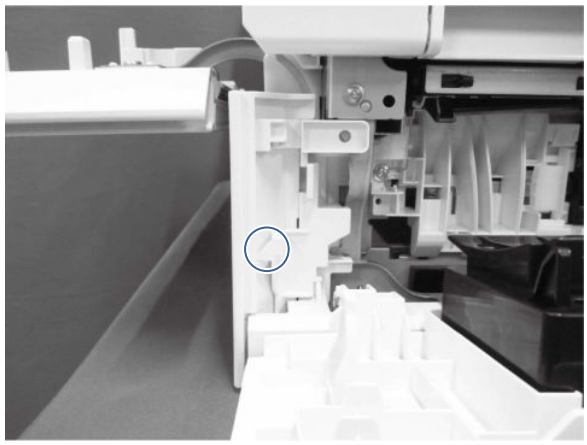
5. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **5700/X557/5800 models**: Open the front door.
   - **X57945 models**: Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Perform one of the following steps.
   - **5700/X557/5800 models**: Open the right door.
   - **X57945 models**: Open the right lower door.

3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-618 Remove the front right cover



6. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

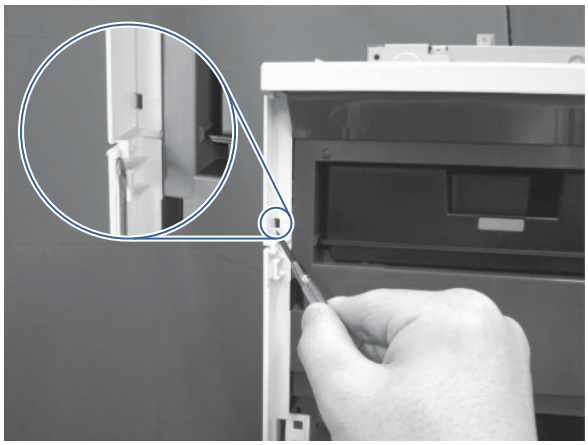
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

⚠ CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

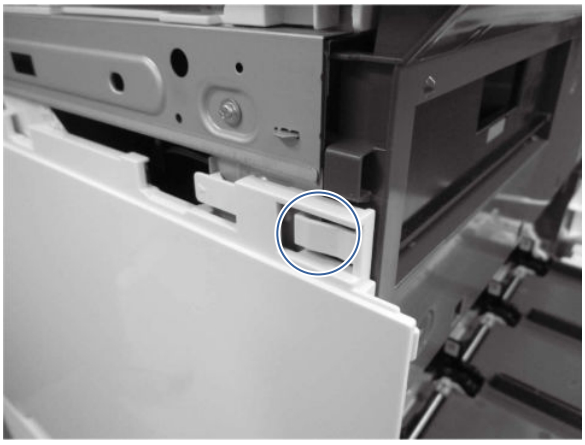
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-619 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



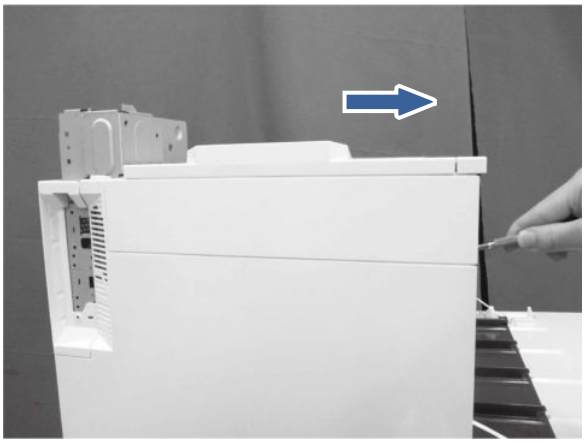
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-620 **Release the tab**



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-621 **Remove the left upper cover**

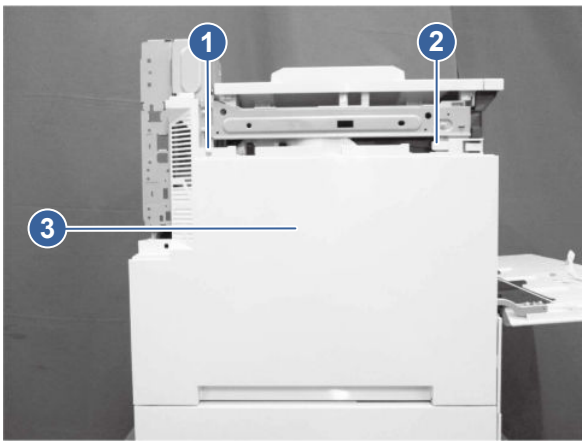


7. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-622 Remove the left cover

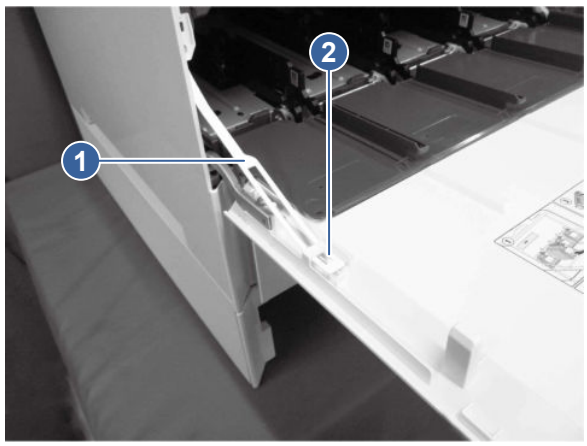


8. Remove the front door

Follow these steps to remove the front door.

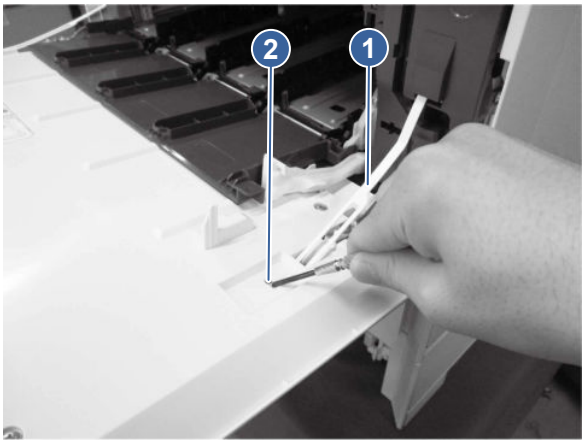
1. Open the front door.
2. At the left side of the door, release the link arm (callout 1) from the clip (callout 2) on the front-door assembly.

Figure 4-623 Release the left link arm



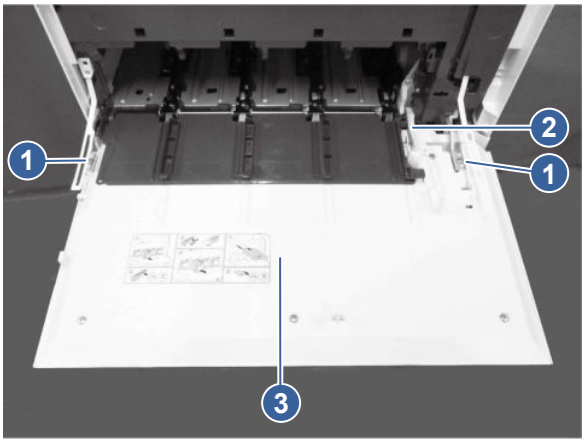
3. At the right side of the door, release the link arm (callout 1) from the clip (callout 2) on the front-door assembly.

Figure 4-624 Release the right link arm



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release the link lever (callout 2) from the front door assembly (callout 3), and then remove the front door.

Figure 4-625 Remove the door

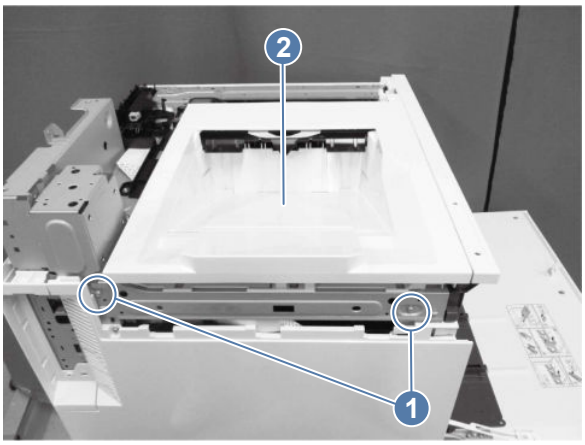


9. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

Figure 4-626 **Remove the output bin**

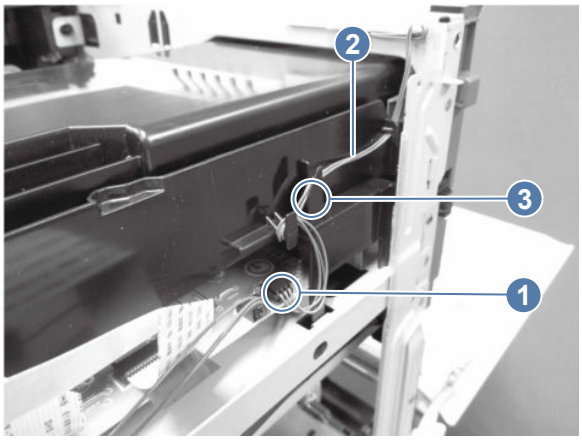


10. Remove the top cover (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-627 **Disconnect the connector**



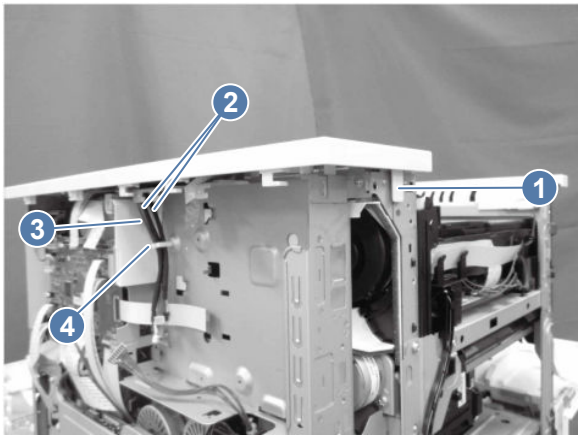
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 4-628 Remove two screws



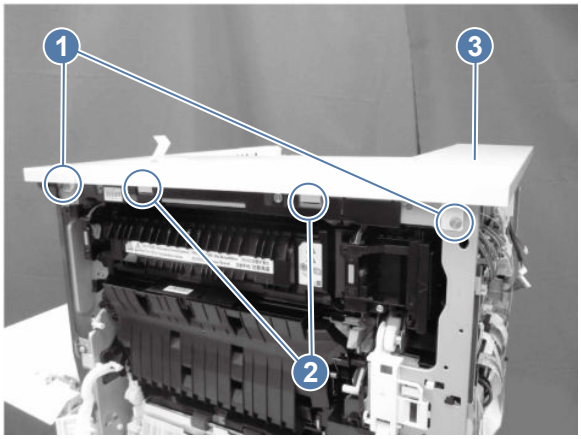
3. Release one tab (callout 1), release two USB cables (callout 2) and another cable (callout 3) from the cable clamp (callout 4).

Figure 4-629 Release one tab



4. Remove two screws (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the top cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-630 Remove the cover

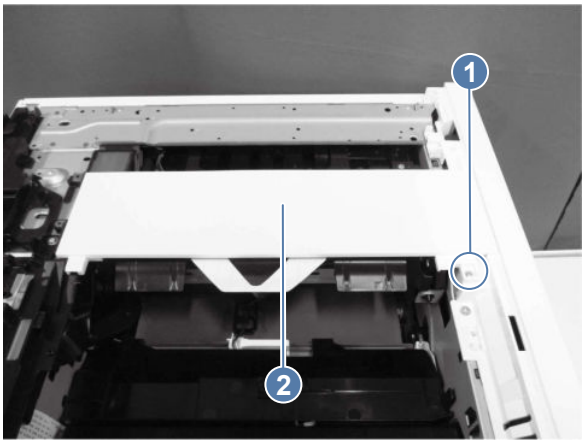


11. Remove the top cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the top cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-631 **Remove the top cover**

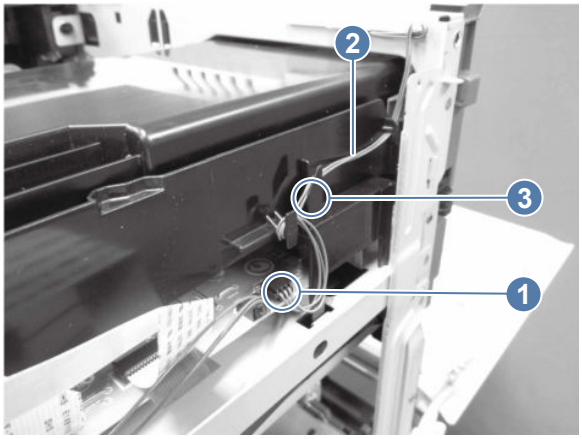


12. Remove the top front cover (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the top front cover.

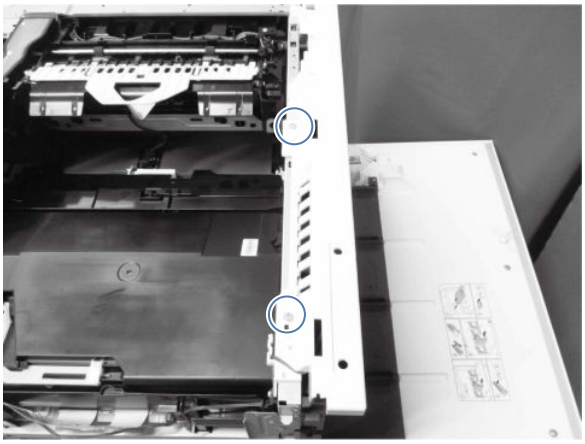
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-632 **Disconnect one connector and release the cable**



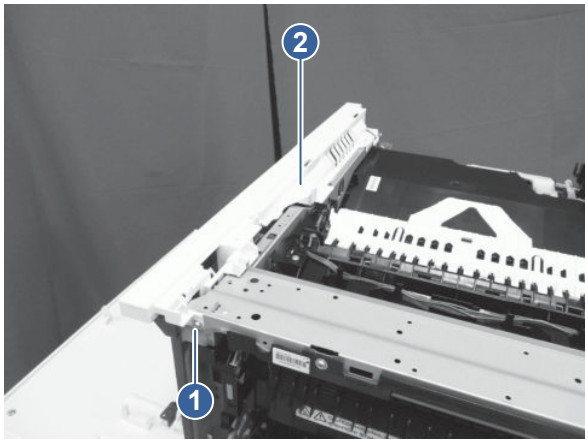
2. Remove two screws.

Figure 4-633 Remove two screws



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), hold up the top front cover (callout 2), and then remove it.

Figure 4-634 Remove the top front cover

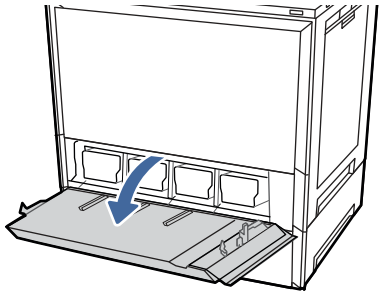


13. Remove the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly.

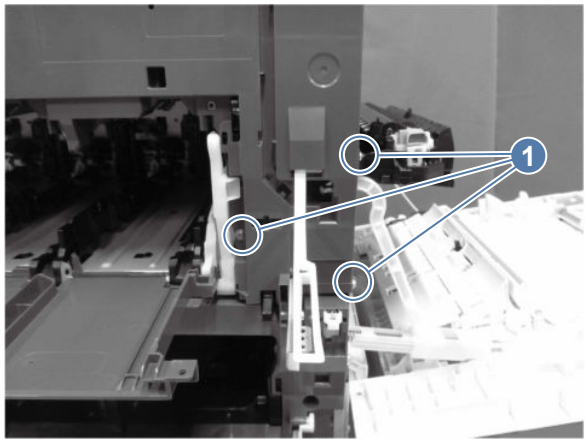
1. Open the toner supply door.

Figure 4-635 Open the toner supply door



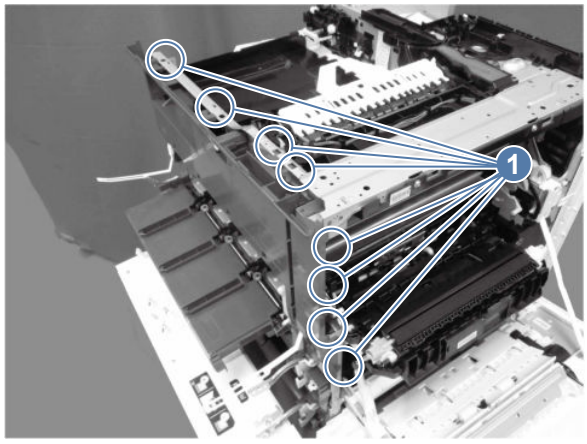
2. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-636 Remove three screws



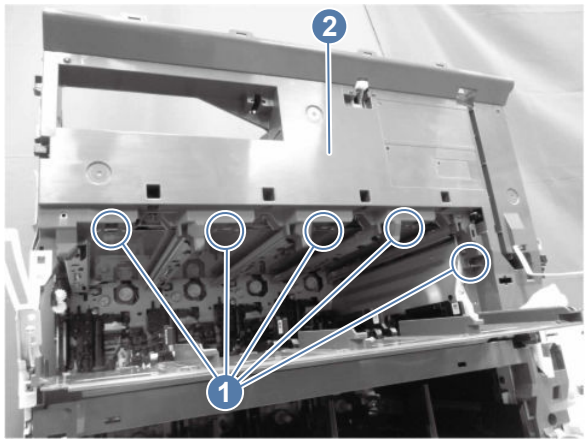
3. Release eight tabs (callout 1).

Figure 4-637 Release eight tabs



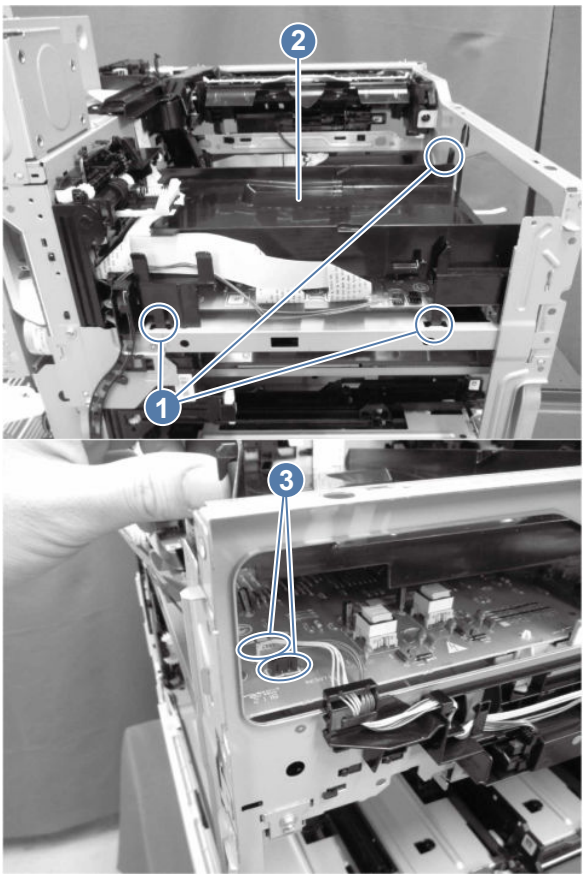
4. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the front inner cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-638 Remove the front inner cover



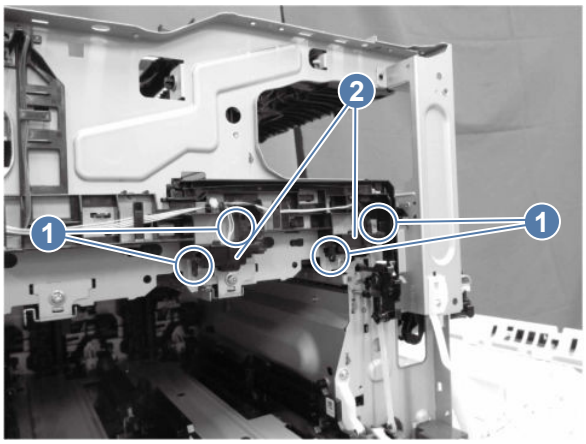
5. Release three tabs (callout 1), hold up the high-voltage PCA cover (callout 2), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 3).

Figure 4-639 Release three tabs



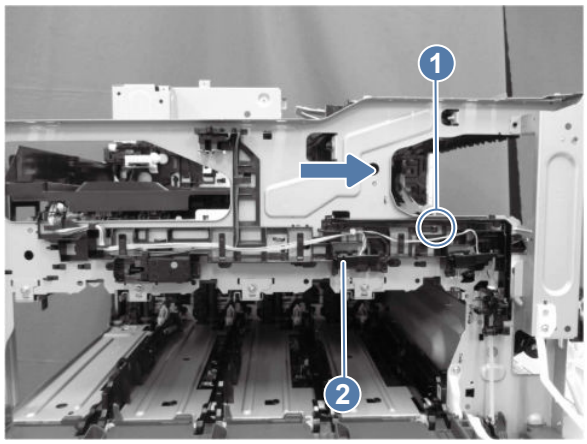
6. Release four tabs (callout 1), and then slide the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (callout 2) upward.

Figure 4-640 Release four tabs



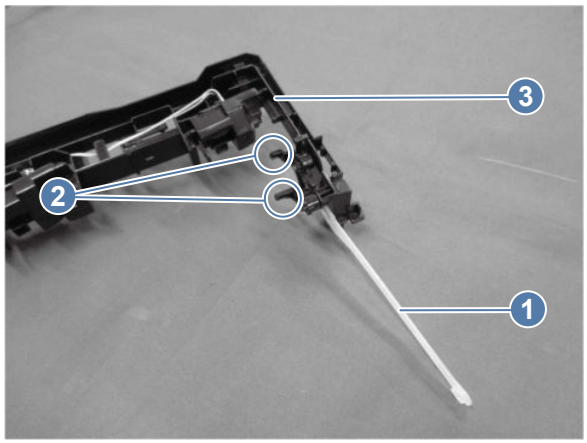
7. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-641 Remove the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly



8. Remove the link arm (callout 1) and two link levers (callout 2) from the pre-exposure PCA holder assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-642 Remove the link arm and two link levers



14. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner supply drive assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner supply drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-79 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3607-000CN	Toner supply drive assembly
RM2-3608-000CN	Toner supply drive assembly
RM2-3609-000CN	Toner supply drive assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

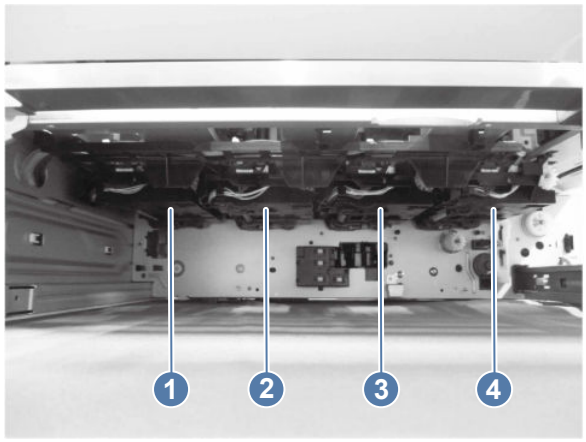
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner supply drive assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply drive assembly.

Since the disassembly procedures of the following four toner supply drive assemblies are similar, the disassembly procedure of the 1st toner supply drive assembly (callout 1) is shown below as an example.

Figure 4-643 Toner supply drive assemblies



- First toner supply drive assembly (callout 1)
- Second toner supply drive assembly (callout 2)
- Third toner supply drive assembly (callout 3)
- Fourth toner supply drive assembly (callout 4)

1. Open the toner supply door and remove the toner cartridges.

NOTE: You can remove toner cartridges using the Service menu or Supplies menu on the printer control panel, or manually.

Figure 4-644 Open the toner supply door



2. Remove the front left cover using a screwdriver.

   a. Place a screwdriver behind the upper-right corner of the cover.

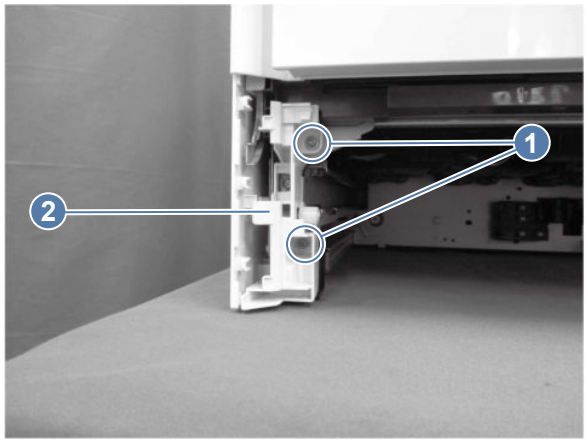
   b. Pull the cover 3 millimeters forward to clear the tab on the back of the cover, and then slide the cover upward while the toner supply door is open.

Figure 4-645 Remove the front left cover



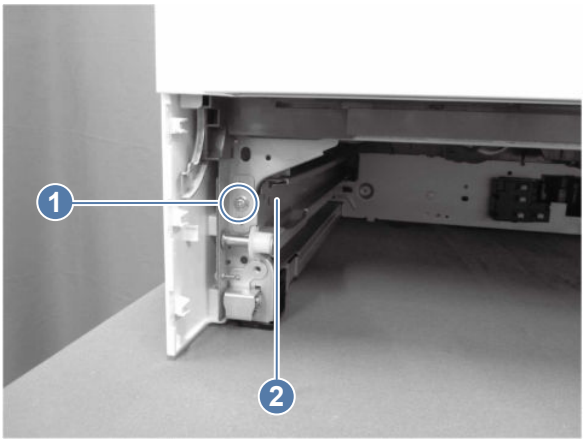
3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-646 Remove the base frame



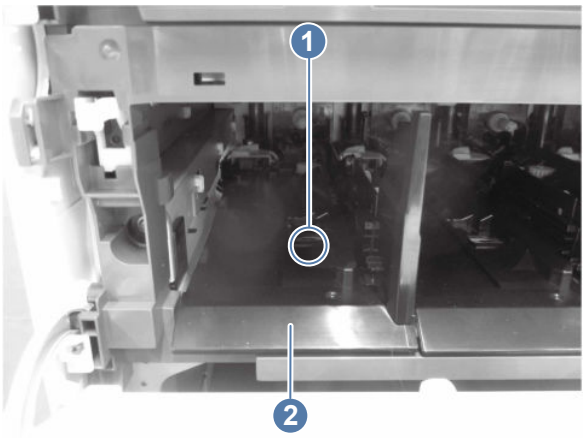
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cassette rail assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-647 Remove the cassette rail assembly



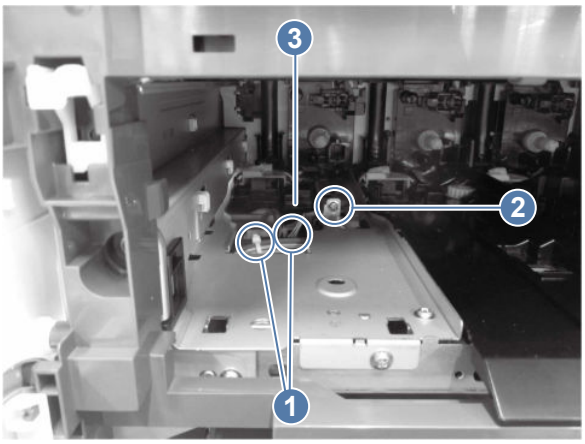
5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the toner cartridge rail assembly (callout 2) towards the front to remove it.

Figure 4-648 Remove the toner cartridge rail assembly



6. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), slide the toner supply drive assembly (callout 3) towards the front, and then slide the toner supply drive assembly downward to remove it.

Figure 4-649 Remove the toner supply drive assembly

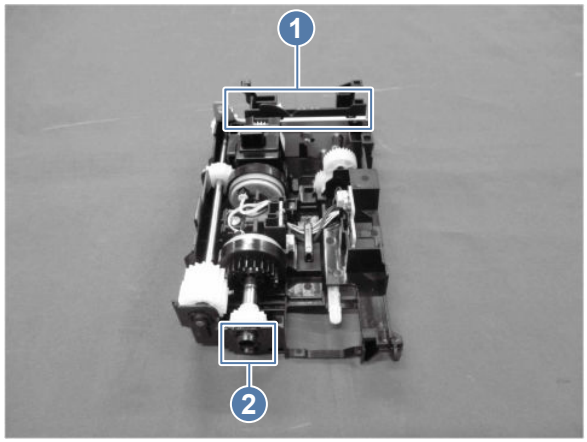


7. For reinstallation of the toner supply drive assembly, keep the following tips in mind.

Reinstallation tip: Since a toner supply drive assembly can be installed in another station, be careful not to mix. The exception is assemblies 2 and 4, which are the same.

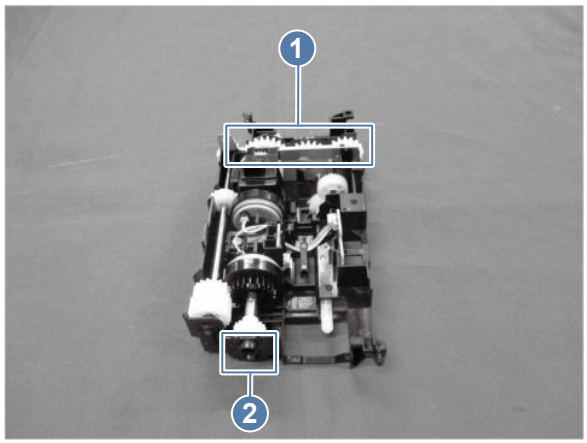
Reinstallation tip: On the first toner supply drive assembly, there are no gears (callout 1) and no coupling (callout 2).

Figure 4-650 **First toner supply drive assembly**



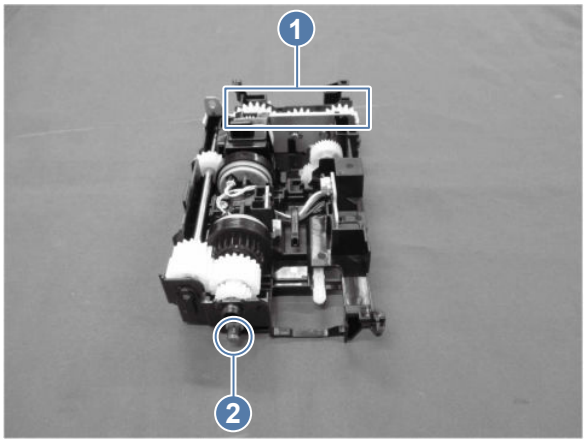
Reinstallation tip: On the second and fourth toner supply drive assemblies, there are 3 gears (callout 1) and no coupling (callout 2).

Figure 4-651 **Second and fourth toner supply drive assemblies**



Reinstallation tip: On the third toner supply drive assembly, there are three gears (callout 1) and a coupling (callout 2).

Figure 4-652 Third toner supply drive assembly



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner supply assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner supply assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-80 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0846-000CN	HP Toner supply service kit

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

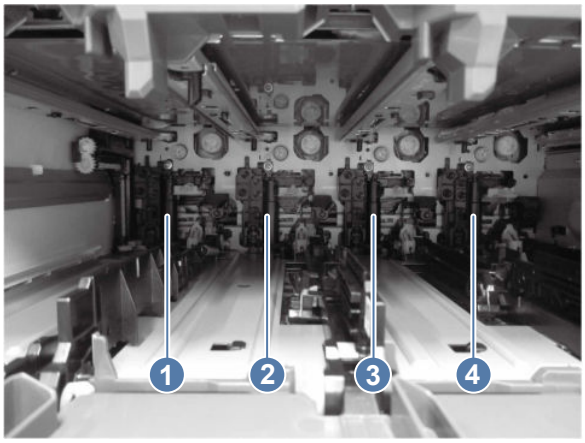
1. Remove the toner supply assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply assembly.

> **NOTE:** When replacing the toner supply assembly, always replace the toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe at the same time.

Since the disassembly procedures of the following four toner supply assemblies are similar, the disassembly procedure of the first toner supply assembly (callout 1) is shown below as an example.

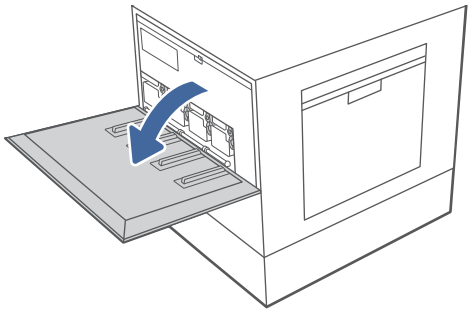
Figure 4-653 Toner supply assemblies



- First toner supply assembly (callout 1)
- Second toner supply assembly (callout 2)
- Third toner supply assembly (callout 3)
- Fourth toner supply assembly (callout 4)

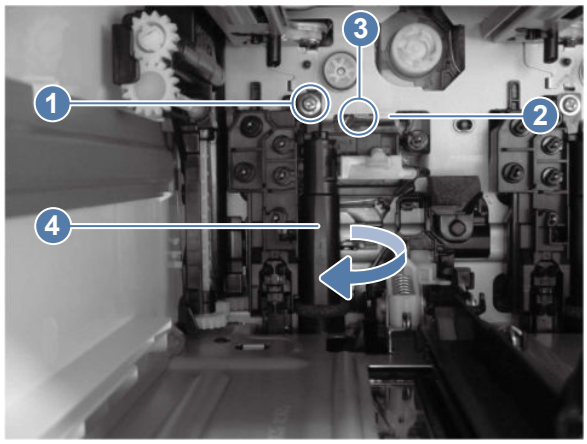
1. Open the front door.

Figure 4-654 Open the front door



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), hold the handle (callout 2), and then release one tab (callout 3). Rotate the toner supply assembly (callout 4) in the direction indicated, and then slide the assembly upward to remove it.

Figure 4-655 Remove the assembly



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-81 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0846-000CN	HP Toner supply service kit

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

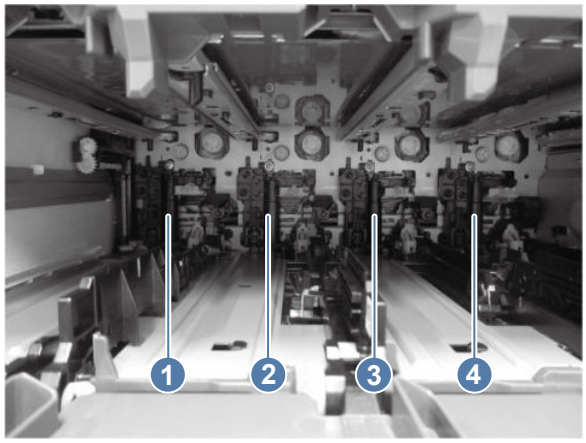
1. Remove the toner supply assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply assembly.

> **NOTE:** When replacing the toner supply assembly, always replace the toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe at the same time.

Since the disassembly procedures of the following four toner supply assemblies are similar, the disassembly procedure of the first toner supply assembly (callout 1) is shown below as an example.

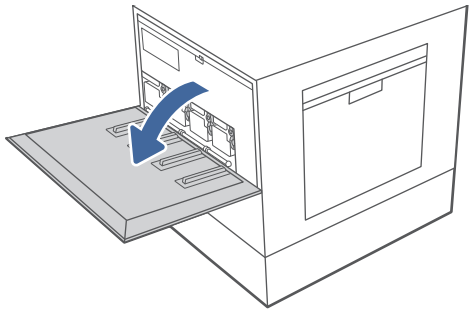
Figure 4-656 Toner supply assemblies



- First toner supply assembly (callout 1)
- Second toner supply assembly (callout 2)
- Third toner supply assembly (callout 3)
- Fourth toner supply assembly (callout 4)

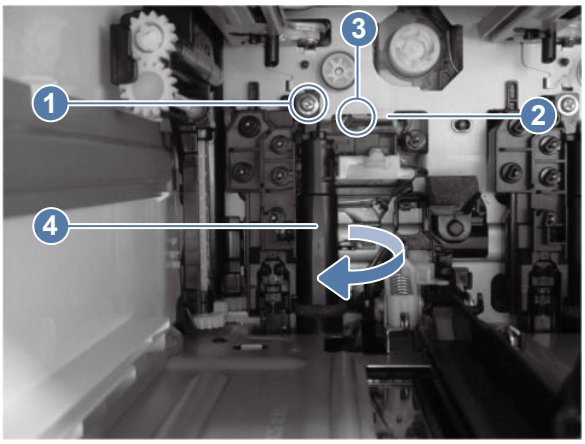
1. Open the front door.

Figure 4-657 Open the front door



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), hold the handle (callout 2), and then release one tab (callout 3). Rotate the toner supply assembly (callout 4) in the direction indicated, and then slide the assembly upward to remove it.

Figure 4-658 Remove the assembly

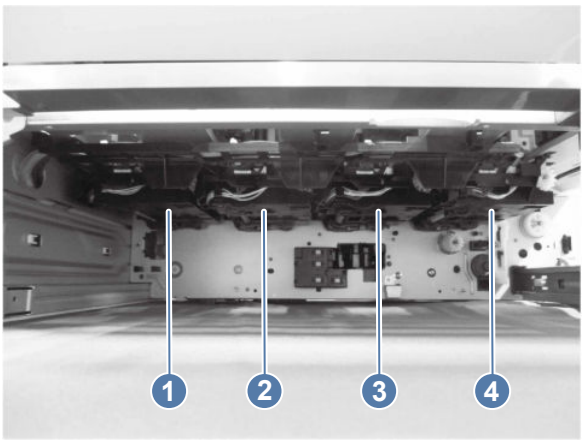


2. Remove the toner supply drive assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply drive assembly.

Since the disassembly procedures of the following four toner supply drive assemblies are similar, the disassembly procedure of the 1st toner supply drive assembly (callout 1) is shown below as an example.

Figure 4-659 Toner supply drive assemblies



- First toner supply drive assembly (callout 1)
- Second toner supply drive assembly (callout 2)
- Third toner supply drive assembly (callout 3)
- Fourth toner supply drive assembly (callout 4)

1. Open the toner supply door and remove the toner cartridges.

NOTE: You can remove toner cartridges using the Service menu or Supplies menu on the printer control panel, or manually.

Figure 4-660 Open the toner supply door



2. Remove the front left cover using a screwdriver.

   a. Place a screwdriver behind the upper-right corner of the cover.

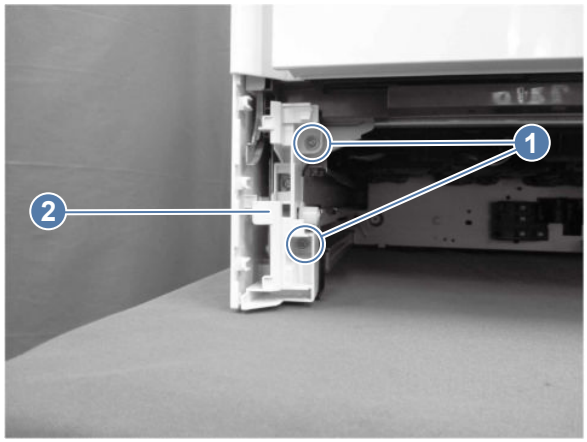
   b. Pull the cover 3 millimeters forward to clear the tab on the back of the cover, and then slide the cover upward while the toner supply door is open.

Figure 4-661 Remove the front left cover



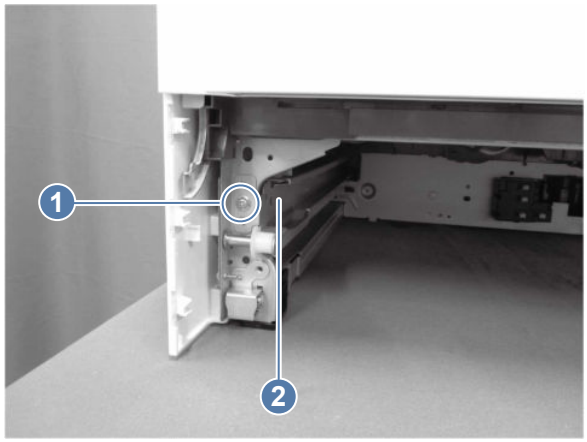
3. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-662 Remove the base frame



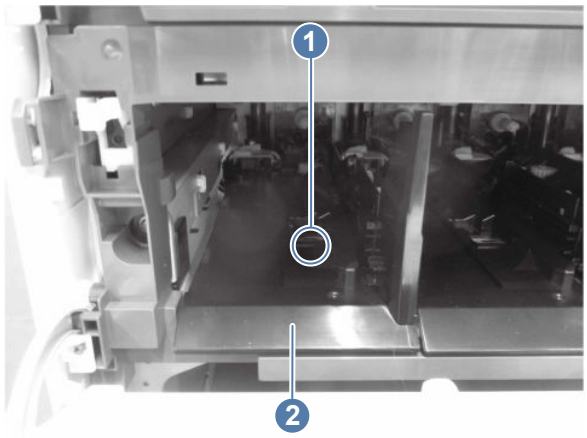
4. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the cassette rail assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-663 Remove the cassette rail assembly



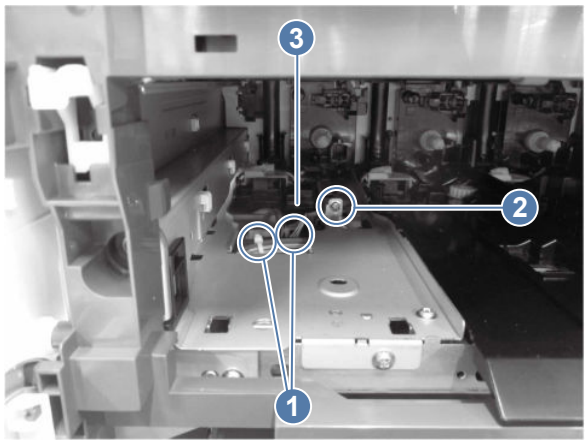
5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the toner cartridge rail assembly (callout 2) towards the front to remove it.

Figure 4-664 Remove the toner cartridge rail assembly



6. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), slide the toner supply drive assembly (callout 3) towards the front, and then slide the toner supply drive assembly downward to remove it.

Figure 4-665 Remove the toner supply drive assembly

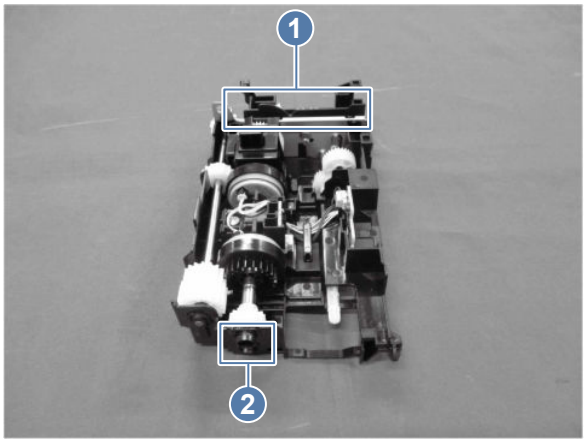


7. For reinstallation of the toner supply drive assembly, keep the following tips in mind.

Reinstallation tip: Since a toner supply drive assembly can be installed in another station, be careful not to mix. The exception is assemblies 2 and 4, which are the same.

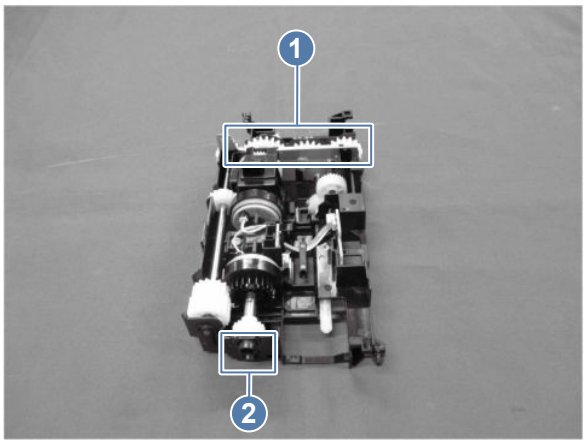
Reinstallation tip: On the first toner supply drive assembly, there are no gears (callout 1) and no coupling (callout 2).

Figure 4-666 First toner supply drive assembly



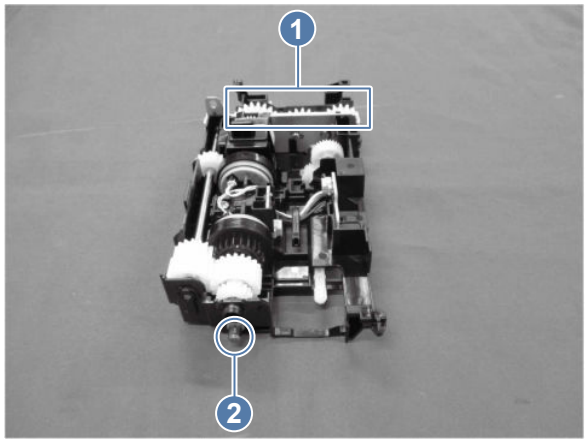
Reinstallation tip: On the second and fourth toner supply drive assemblies, there are 3 gears (callout 1) and no coupling (callout 2).

Figure 4-667 Second and fourth toner supply drive assemblies



Reinstallation tip: On the third toner supply drive assembly, there are three gears (callout 1) and a coupling (callout 2).

Figure 4-668 Third toner supply drive assembly



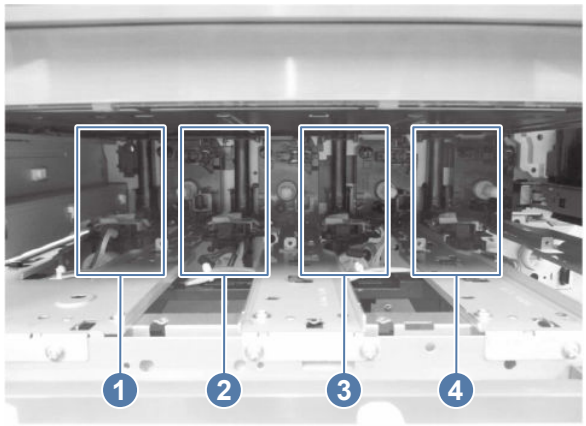
3. Remove the toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe.

NOTE: When replacing toner supply buffer assembly/intermediate pipe, always replace the toner supply assembly at the same time.

Since the disassembly procedures of the following four toner supply buffer assemblies are similar, the disassembly procedure of the first toner supply buffer assembly (callout 1) is shown below as an example.

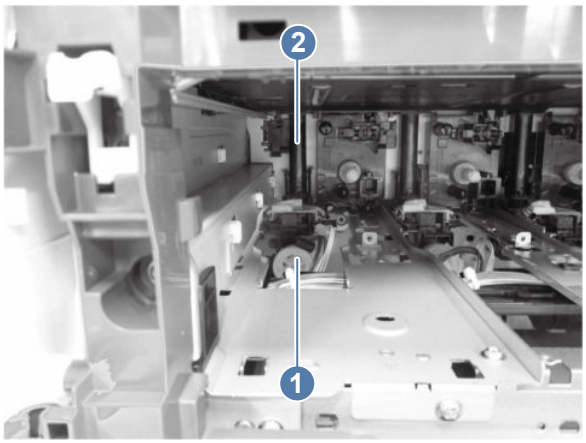
Figure 4-669 Toner supply buffer assemblies



- First toner supply buffer assembly (callout 1)
- Second toner supply buffer assembly (callout 2)
- Third toner supply buffer assembly (callout 3)
- Fourth toner supply buffer assembly (callout 4)

- Slide the toner supply buffer assembly (callout 1) frontward, and then slide the toner supply buffer assembly (callout 1) and the intermediate pipe (callout 2) downward to remove them together.

Figure 4-670 Remove the assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed assembly (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the feed assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-82 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3479-000CN	Paper feed assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the secondary transfer assembly

Follow these steps to remove the secondary transfer assembly.

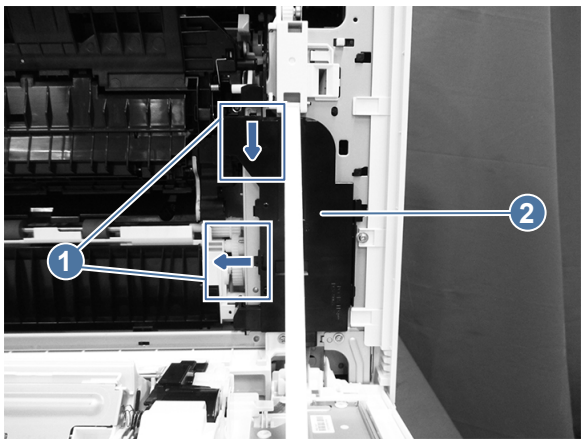
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-671 Open the right door



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

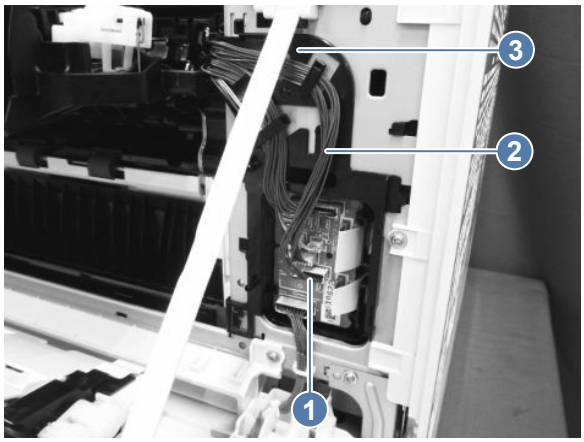
Figure 4-672 Remove the PCA cover



3. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Reinstallation tip: When reinstalled, make sure the cable is correctly routed through the cable guide.

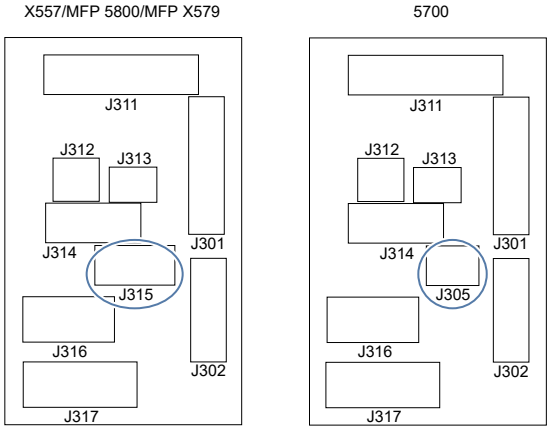
Figure 4-673 Release the cable



4. Perform one of the following steps.

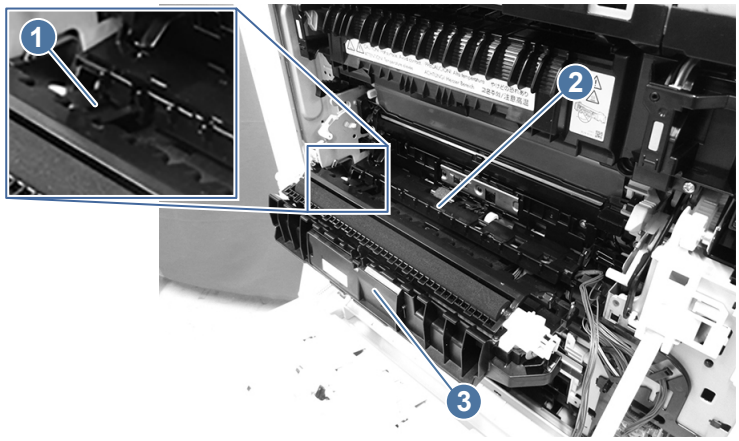
   - **X557/5800/X57945 models**: Disconnect the J315 formatter connector.
   - **5700 models**: Disconnect the J305 formatter connector.

Figure 4-674 Disconnect a formatter connector



5. Release one tab (callout 1), and then lift up the registration assembly (callout 2) off the secondary transfer assembly (callout 3)

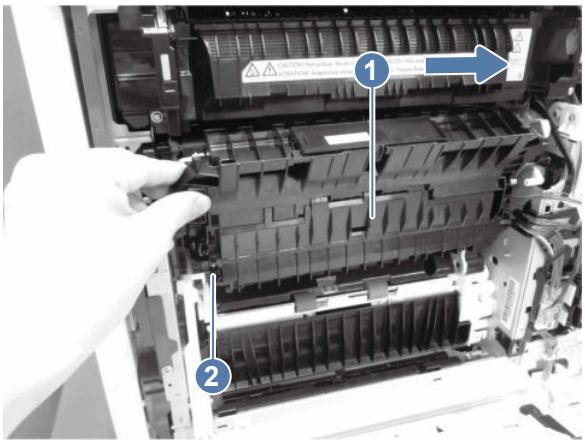
Figure 4-675 Release the tab



6. Close the secondary transfer assembly until it is only slightly open. Slide the assembly (callout 1) in the direction indicated below, and then dislodge the hinge pin (callout 2) from the holder to remove the assembly.

Reinstallation tip: Before removing the assembly, take note of where the assembly hinge pins fit into the holes provided in the printer.

Figure 4-676 Remove the secondary transfer assembly



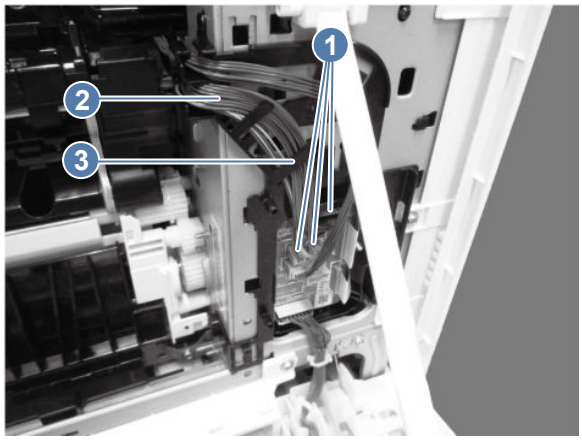
Reinstallation tip: On the assembly right side, make sure that the wire is nested in the plastic sleeve. Slide the wire sleeve into its place, depressing the spring, and then twist the left side of the assembly into place and allow the spring pressure to nest the hinge pin in its hole.

2. Remove the registration assembly

Follow these steps to remove the registration assembly.

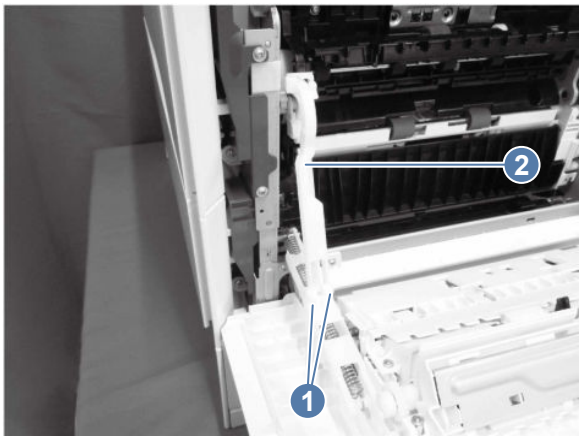
1. Disconnect three connectors (callout 1). and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable guide (callout 3).

Figure 4-677 Release the connectors



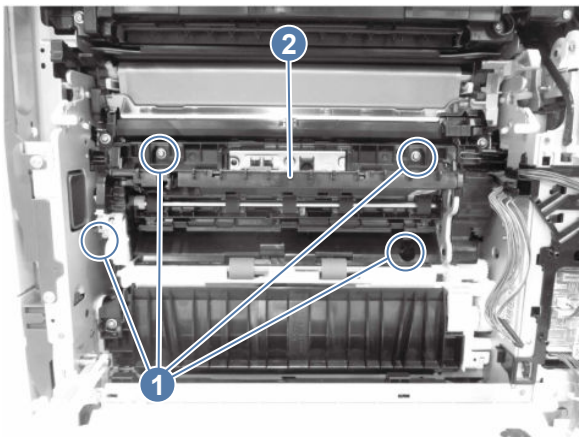
2. Release two bosses (callout 1), and then release the link arm (callout 2) from the door.

Figure 4-678 **Release the link arm**



3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the registration assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-679 **Remove the registration assembly**

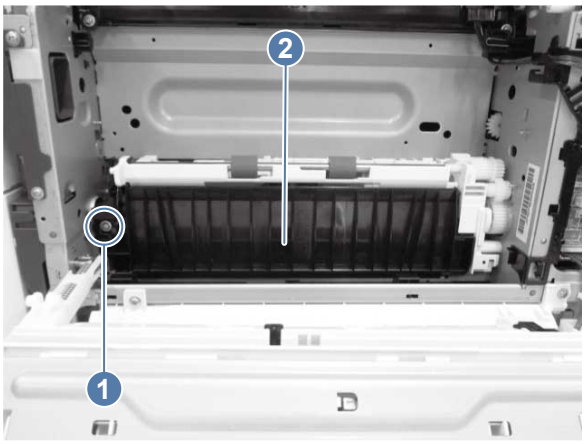


3. Remove the feed assembly (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the feed assembly.

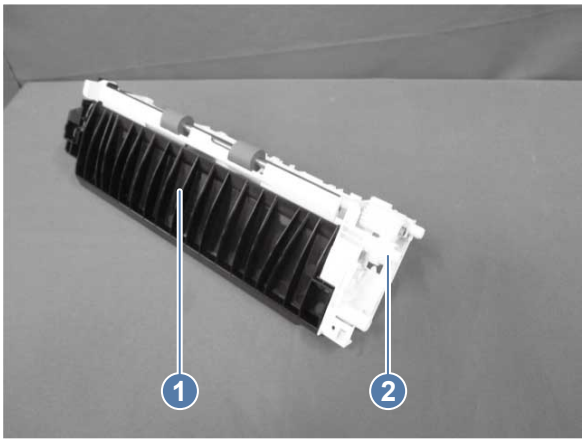
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then remove the feed assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-680 Remove the feed assembly



2. Remove the gear (callout 1) from the feed assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-681 Remove the gear



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

This document provides the procedures to remove and replace the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

Mean time to repair: 25 minutes

Service level: Intermediate

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-83 LVPS part numbers

Part number	Part description
RM3-7724-000CN	LVPS (110-127V) (5700/X557/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-7725-000CN	LVPS (220-240V) (5700/X557/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-7726-000CN	LVPS (110-127V) (6700/X654)
RM3-7727-000CN	LVPS (220-240V) (6700/X654)
RM3-7728-000CN	LVPS (110-127V) (6800/X677)
RM3-7729-000CN	LVPS (220-240V) (6800/X677)
RM3-9012-000CN	LVPS (110-127V) (5800/X57945/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-9013-000CN	LVPS (220-240V) (5800/X57945/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip

After performing service

Make sure that all of the connectors on the LVPS are fully seated.

Make sure that all of the connectors on the formatter are fully seated.

Make sure that the formatter cover is fully seated.

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print a configuration page to make sure that the printer is functioning correctly.

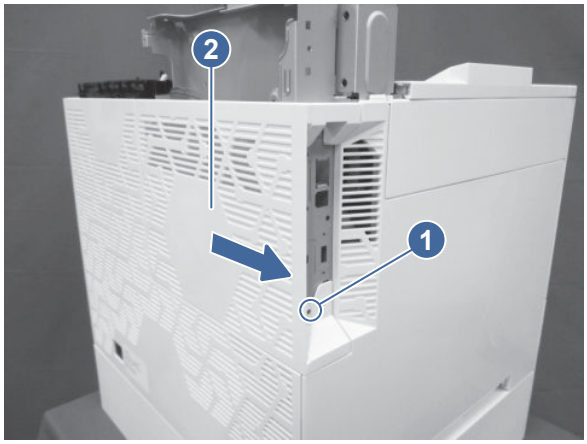
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-682 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

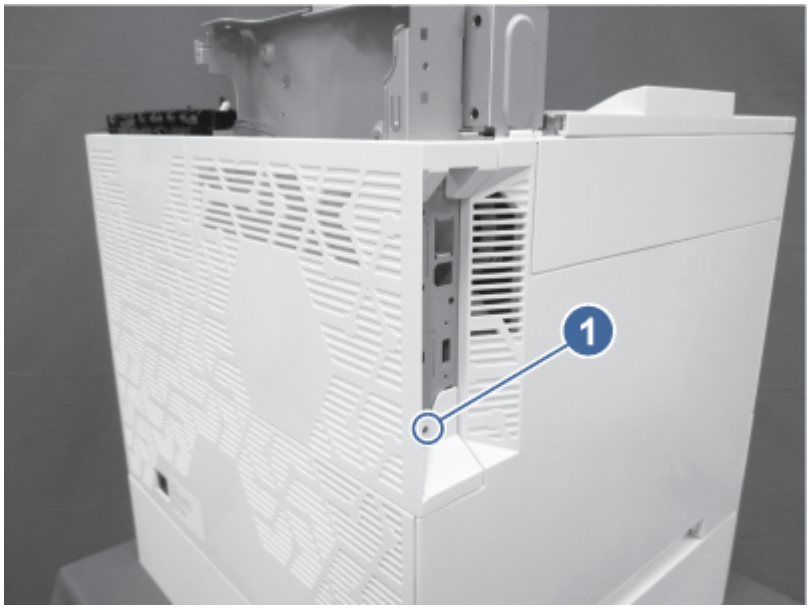
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-683 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



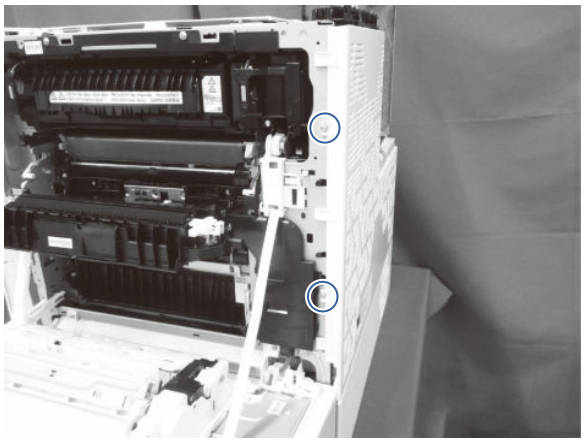
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

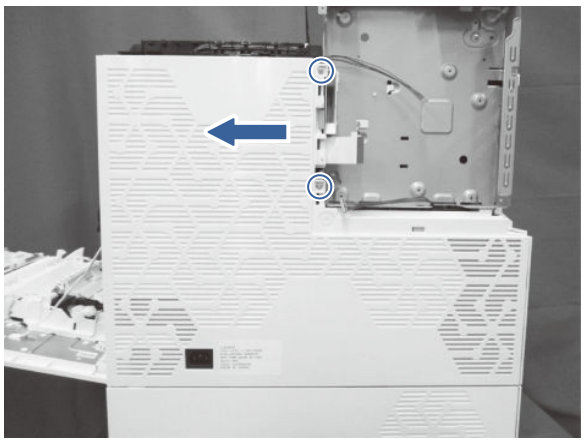
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-684 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-685 Remove the rear cover



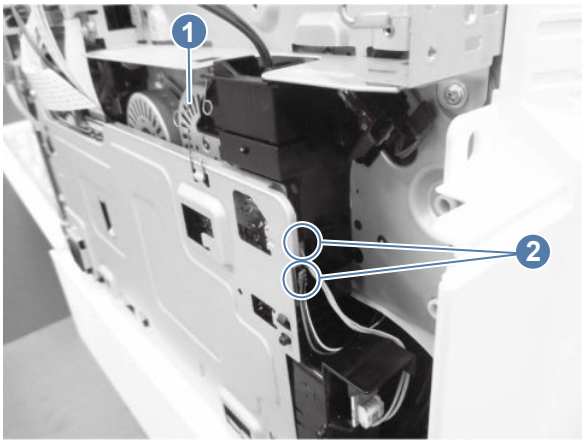
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

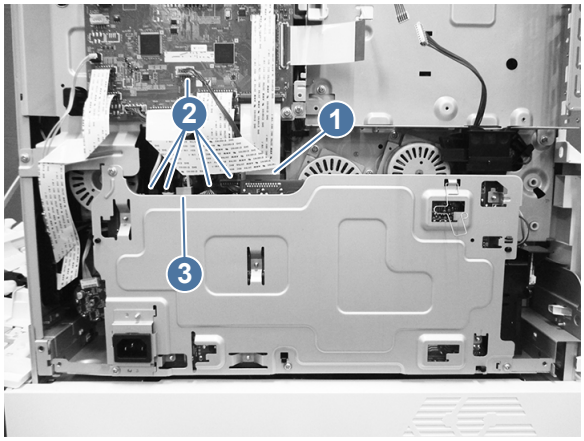
Figure 4-686 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-687 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

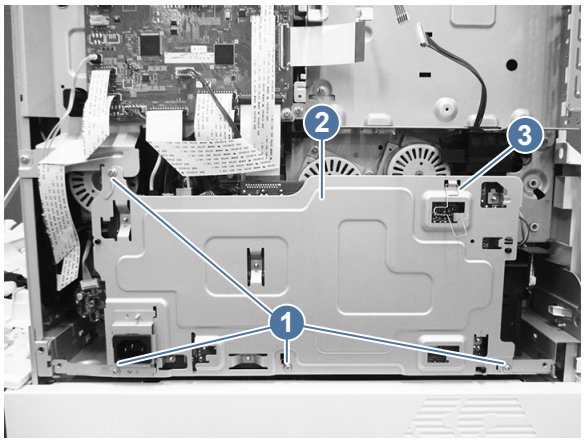


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

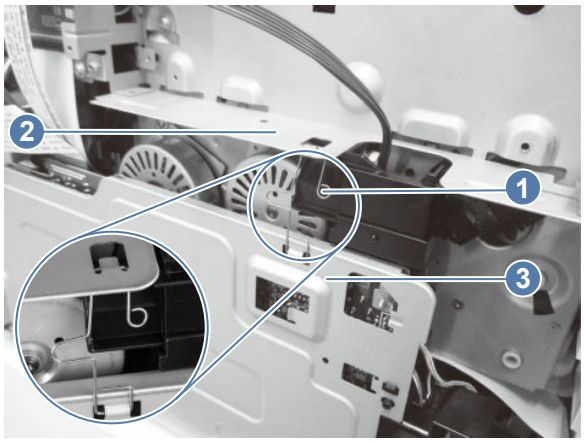
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-688 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-689 Reinstalling the LVPS



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: High-voltage power supply (HVPS)

Learn about removing and replacing the high-voltage power supply PCA.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the HVPS.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-84 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-9040-000CN	HV power supply PCA (5700/X557/5800)
RM3-9041-000CN	HV power supply PCA (6700/6800)
RM3-9042-000CN	HV power supply PCA (X57945)
RM3-9043-000CN	HV power supply PCA (X654/X677)
RM3-7640-000CN	HV power supply PCA (X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

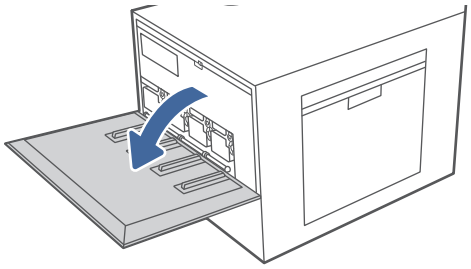
Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the toner collection unit (TCU)

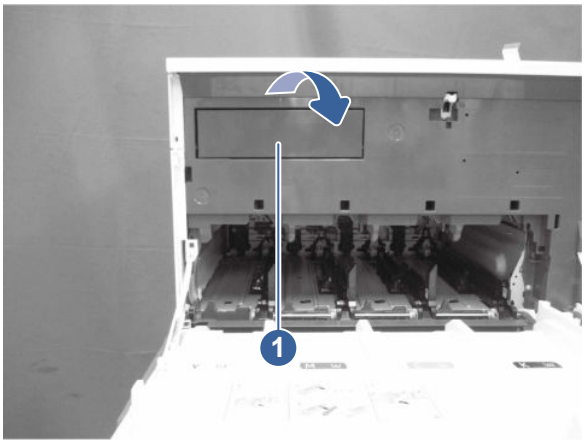
Follow these steps to remove the toner collection unit (TCU).

1. Open the front door.

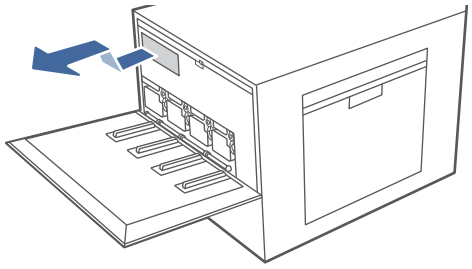


2. Rotate and then pull the TCU cover to remove it.

Figure 4-690 **Remove the TCU cover**



3. Lift the TCU slightly and then pull it out of the printer.



NOTE: Maintain the position of the TCU as you pull it out from the printer. This will ensure that you do not spill any waste toner in the printer. Place the unit into the clear plastic bag the new TCU was packaged in.

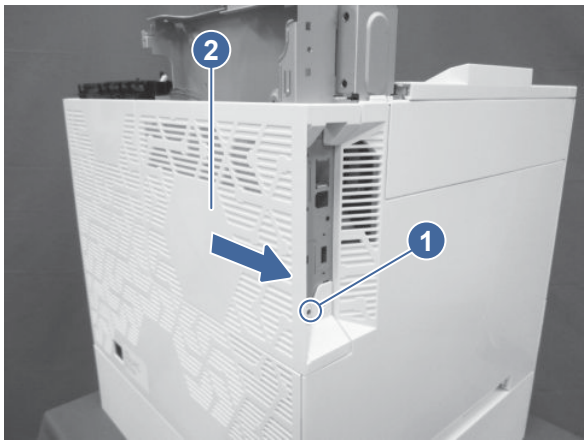
2. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-691 **Remove the formatter cover**



3. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

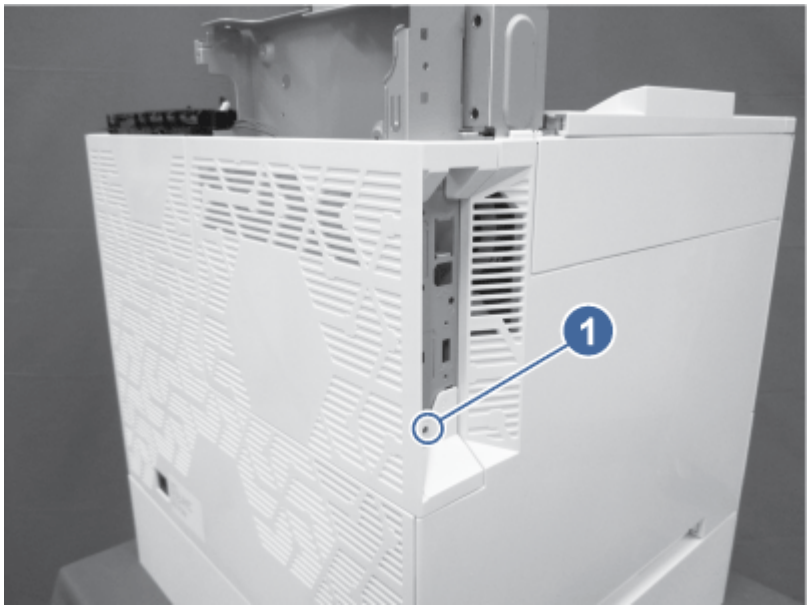
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-692 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



4. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

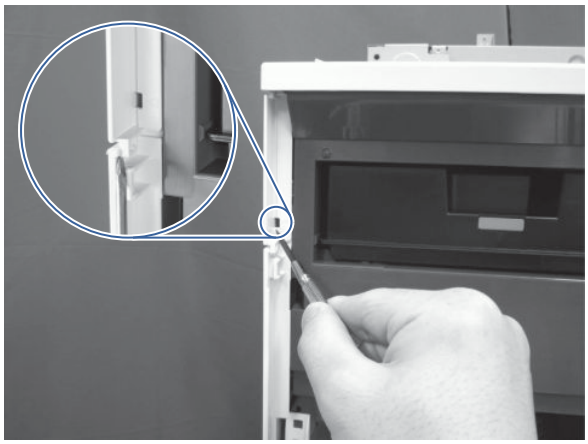
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

⚠ **CAUTION:** If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

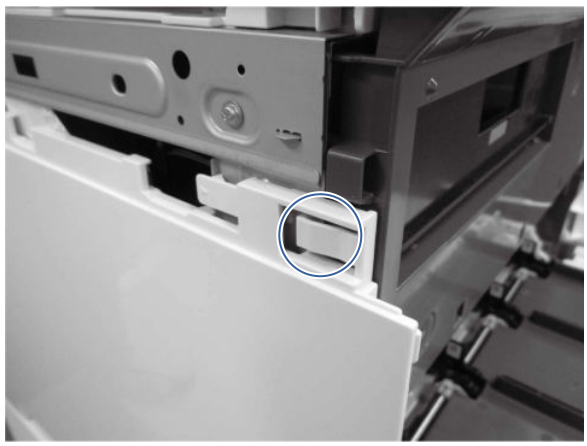
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-693 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



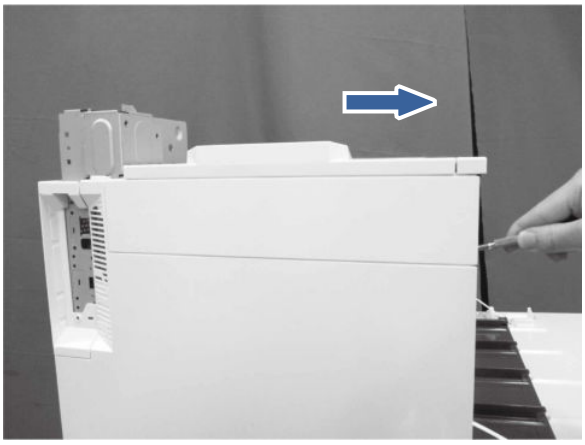
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-694 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-695 Remove the left upper cover

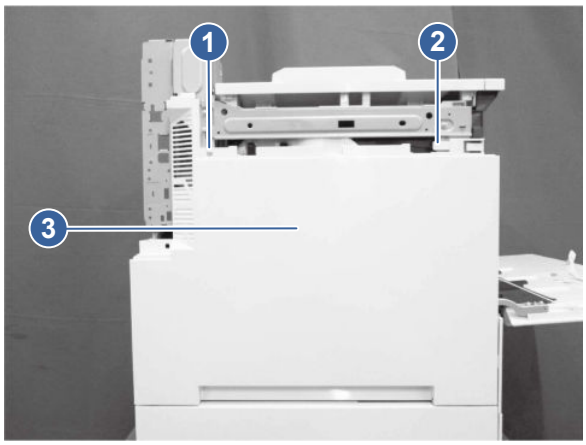


5. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-696 Remove the left cover

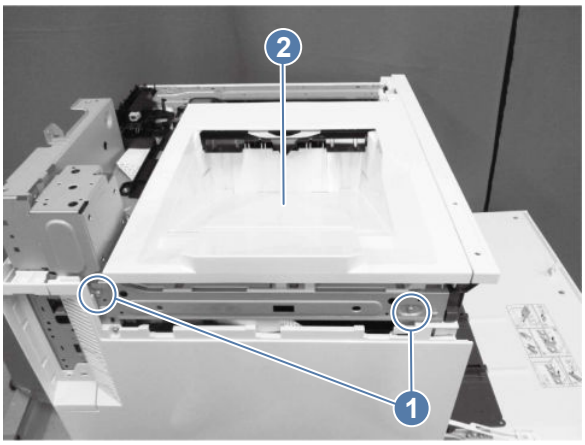


6. Remove the output bin

Follow these steps to remove the output bin.

- Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the output tray (callout 2) towards the front (SFP models) or left (MFP models) to remove it.

Figure 4-697 Remove the output bin

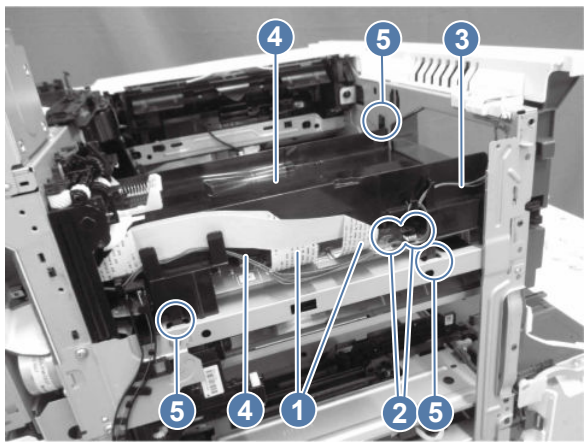


7. Remove the high-voltage power supply (HVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the high-voltage power supply (HVPS).

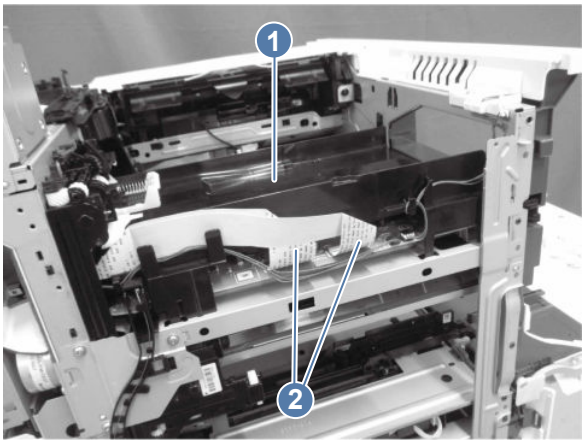
1. Remove two FFCs (callout 1) and disconnect two connectors (callout 2). Remove the FFC (callout 1) and cable (callout 4) from the high-voltage PCA cover (callout 3), release three tabs (callout 5), and then remove the high-voltage PCA cover.

Figure 4-698 Remove the high-voltage PCA cover



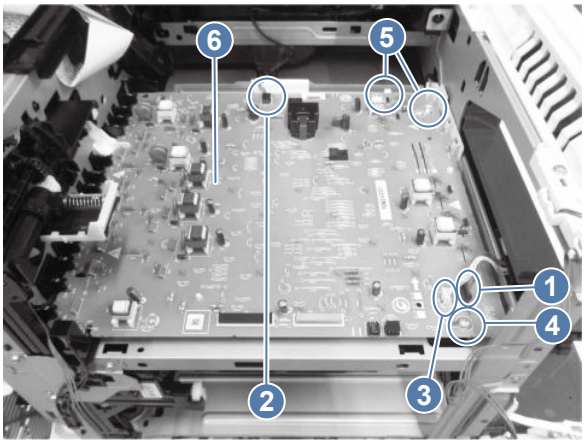
Reinstallation tip: The FFC (callout 2) is attached to the high-voltage PCA cover (callout 1) by double sided tape. When removing the FFC from the high-voltage PCA cover, take care not to damage the FFC.

Figure 4-699 Use caution with the taped FFC



2. Disconnect two connector (callout 1/2). Disconnect one connector (callout 3) (X654/X677 models only). Remove one screw (callout 4), release two tabs (callout 5), and then remove the high-voltage power supply assembly (callout 6).

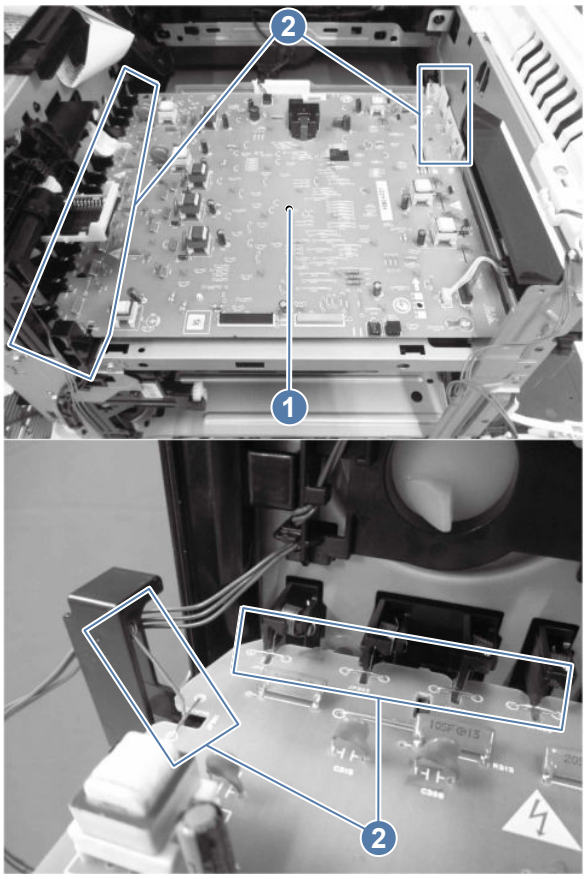
Figure 4-700 Remove the HVPS



3. For reinstallation of the HVPS, keep the following tips in mind.

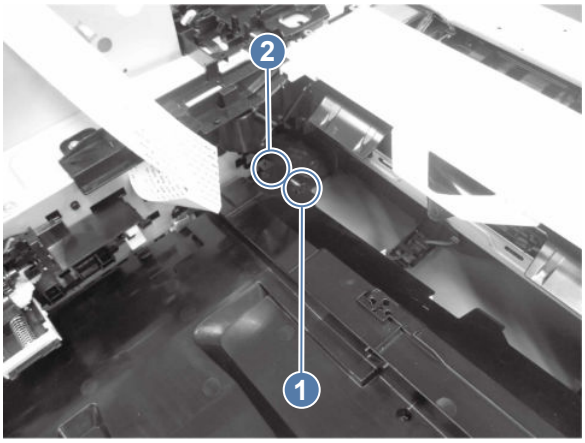
Reinstallation tip: When installing the high-voltage power supply PCA (callout 1), confirm that the contact springs (callout 2) are in the correct position (so that the PCA engages with the spring).

Figure 4-701 Verify that the contact springs are in the correct position



Reinstallation tip: When installing the high-voltage PCA cover, confirm that the contact spring (callout 1) is in the contact holder (callout 2).

Figure 4-702 Verify that the contact spring is in the holder



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Drive PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the drive PCA.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the drive PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-85 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7722-000CN	Driver PCA (6700/V654/6800/X677)

Table 4-85 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
RM3-7723-000CN	Driver PCA (5700/X557/5800/X57945/X58045z/X58045zs/X58045dn)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

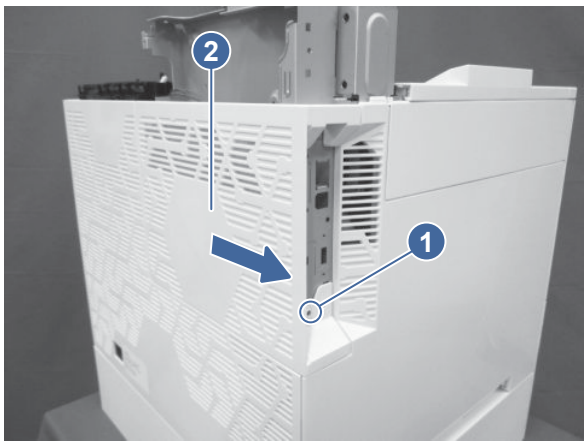
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-703 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

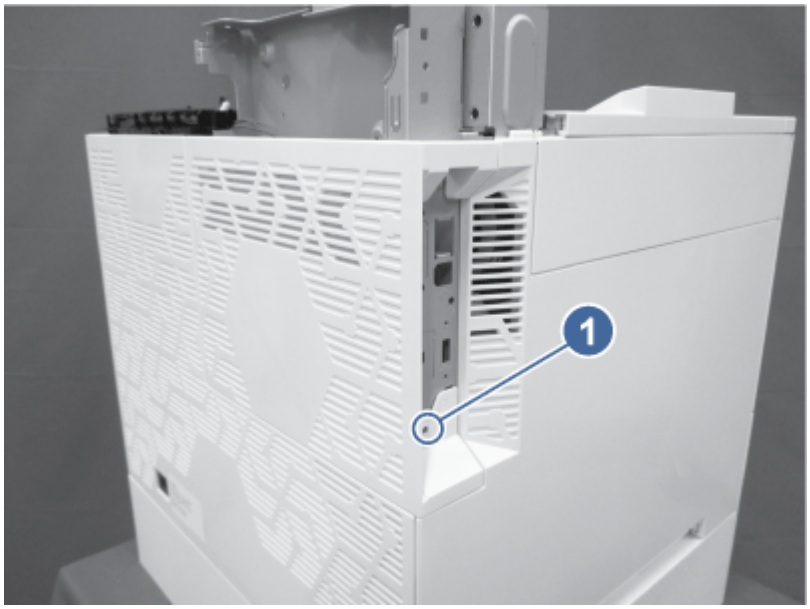
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-704 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



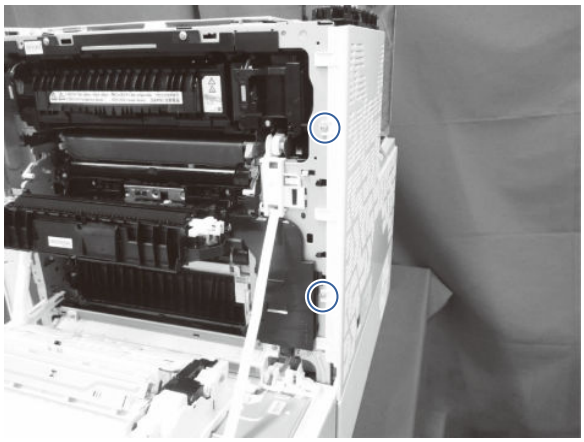
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

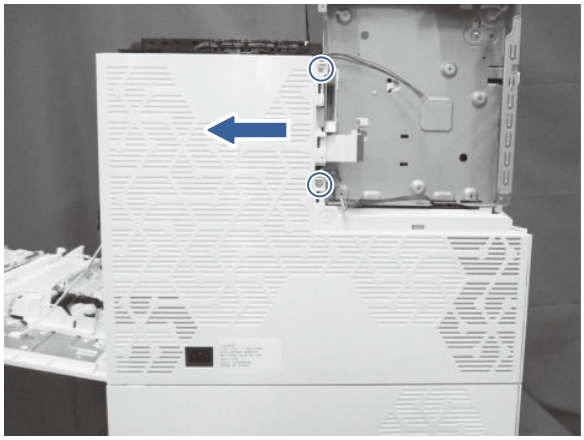
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-705 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-706 Remove the rear cover



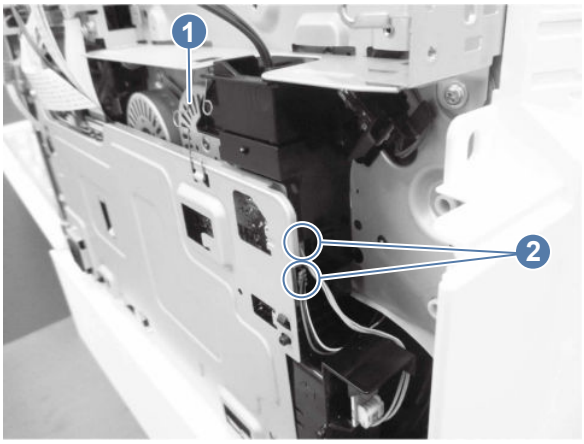
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

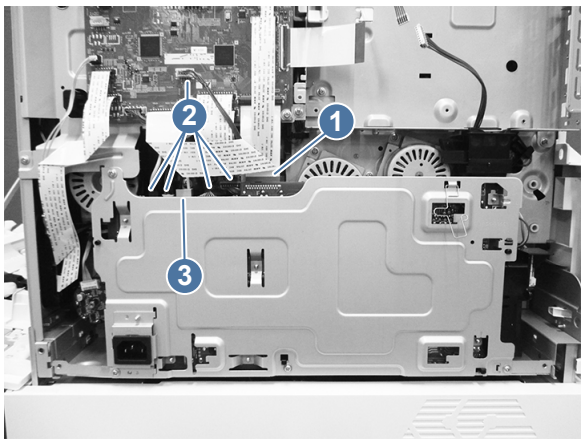
Figure 4-707 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only:** Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-708 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

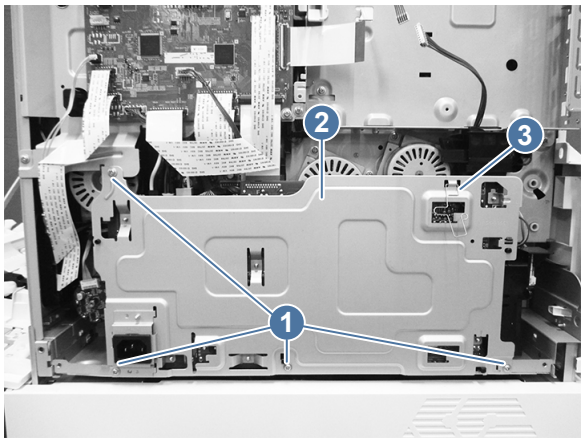


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

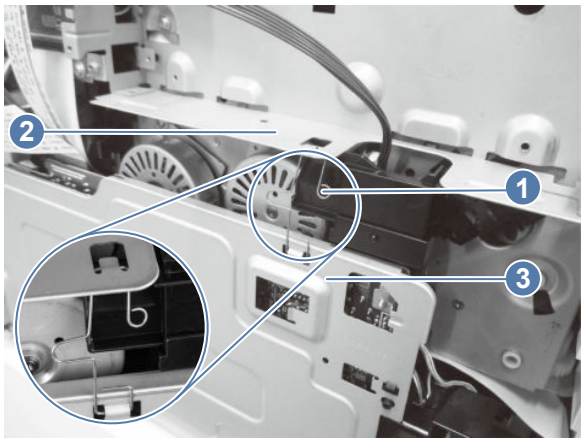
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-709 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-710 Reinstalling the LVPS

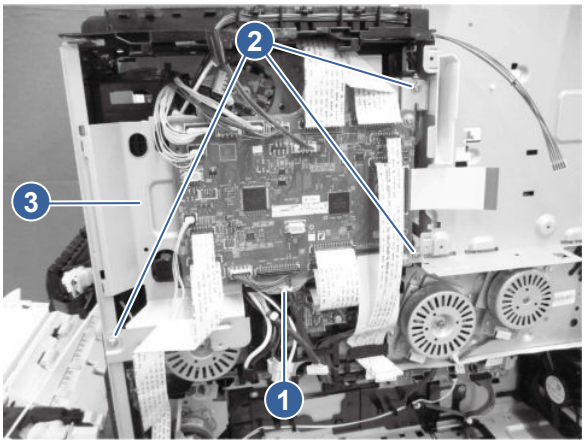


5. Remove the drive PCA

Follow these steps to remove the drive PCA.

1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

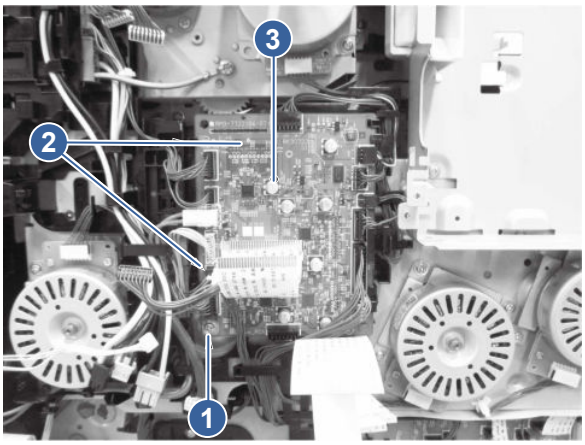
Figure 4-711 **Remove the DC controller stay**



2. Disconnect all the connectors on the drive PCA, remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the drive PCA (callout 3).

IMPORTANT: Some of these wires are very tightly connected. Take care when disconnecting them.

Figure 4-712 **Remove the drive PCA**



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Feed/toner supply controller PCA (X57945 models)

Learn about removing and replacing the feed/toner supply controller PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-86 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7771-000CN	Toner supply PCA (X57945 models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

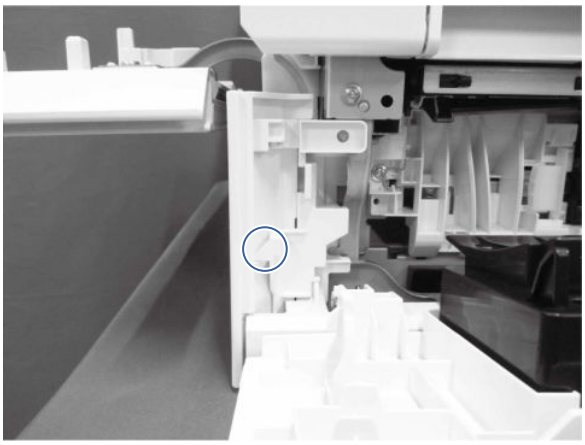
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front right cover

Follow these steps to remove the front right cover.

1. Open the toner cartridge access door.
2. Open the right lower door.
3. Release one tab, and then slide the front right cover upward to remove it.

Figure 4-713 **Remove the front right cover**

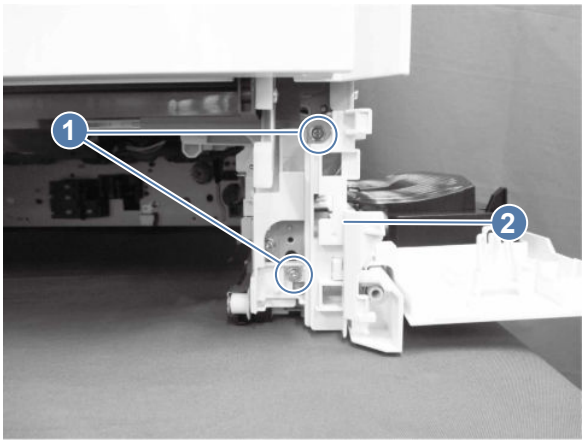


2. Remove the right lower door (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the right lower door.

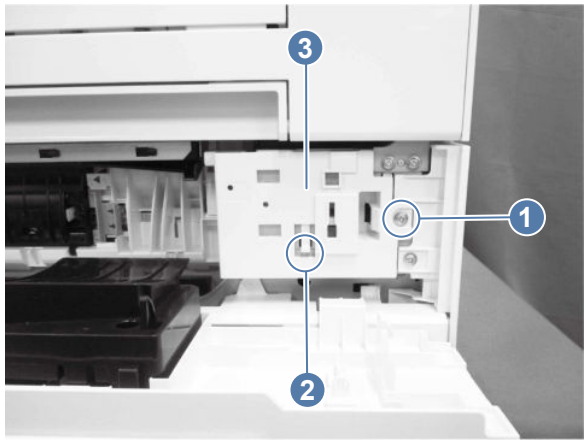
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-714 **Remove the base frame**



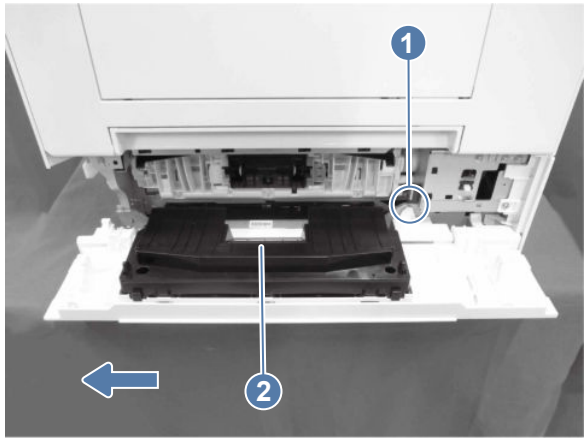
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-715 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-716 Remove the right lower door assembly

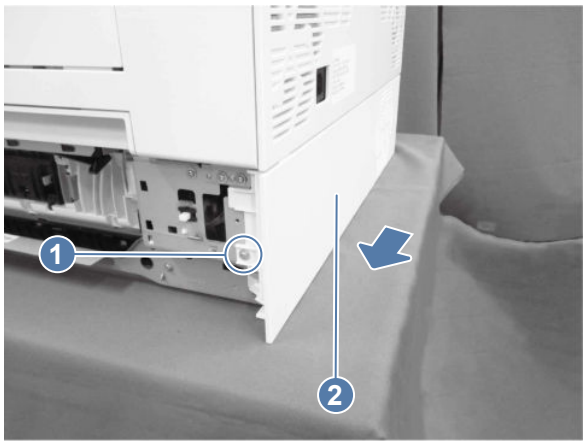


3. Remove the rear lower cover (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the rear lower cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), slide the rear lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated below, and then remove it.

  Figure 4-717 Remove the rear lower cover

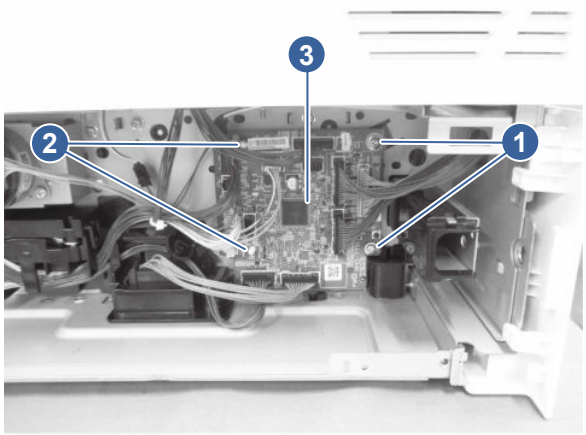
  

4. Remove the feed/toner supply controller PCA (X57945 models)

Follow these steps to remove the feed/toner supply controller PCA.

- Disconnect all the connectors on the feed/toner supply controller PCA. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove two PCA spacers (callout 2), and then remove the feed/toner supply controller PCA (callout 3).

  Figure 4-718 Remove the feed/toner supply controller PCA

5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the right PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-87 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7740-000CN	Right PCA (5700/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-7790-000CN	Right PCA (X557/5800/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-7791-000CN	Right PCA (X57945)
RM3-7792-000CN	Right PCA (6700/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-7793-000CN	Right PCA (6800/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-7794-000CN	Right PCA (X654/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right PCA

Follow these steps to remove the right PCA.

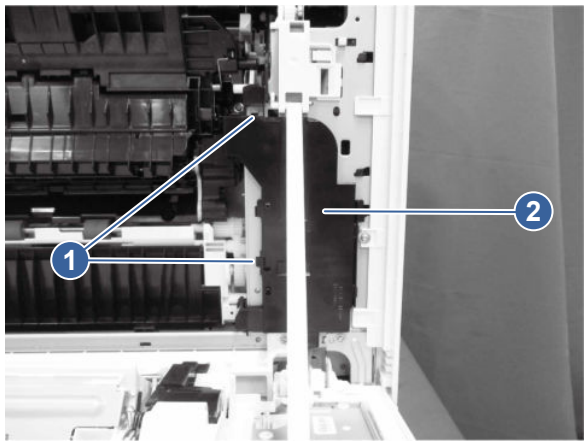
1. Open the right door.

Figure 4-719 Open the right door



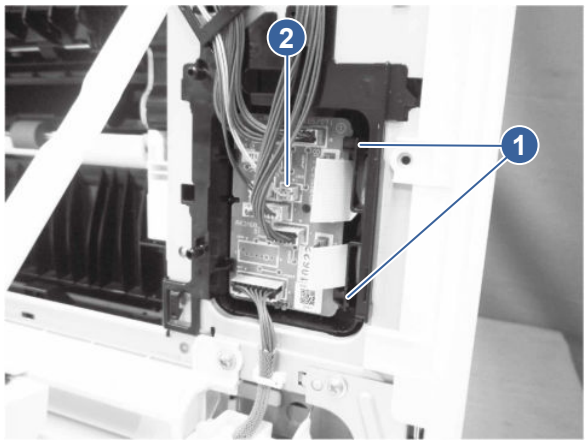
2. Release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the PCA cover (callout 2).

Figure 4-720 Remove the PCA cover



3. Disconnect all the connectors on the right PCA, release two tabs (callout 1), and then remove the right PCA (callout 2).

Figure 4-721 Remove the right PCA



⚠ CAUTION: The FFCs are tightly packed and can be difficult to remove. A solution is to remove the FFCs from the rear of the unit, remove the PCA, and then remove the FFCs to reinstall them on the back. This option should be used *only* if needed and to ensure that the FFCs are not damaged.

2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the rear PCA.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the rear PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-88 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-9044-000CN	Rear PCA (5700/5800/X58045z/X58045zs)
RM3-9045-000CN	Rear PCA (X557/X58045z/X58045zs /6700/6800)
RM3-9046-000CN	Rear PCA (X57945/X654/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

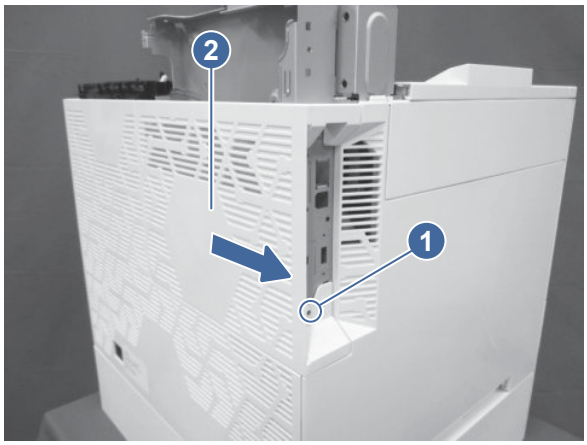
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-722 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

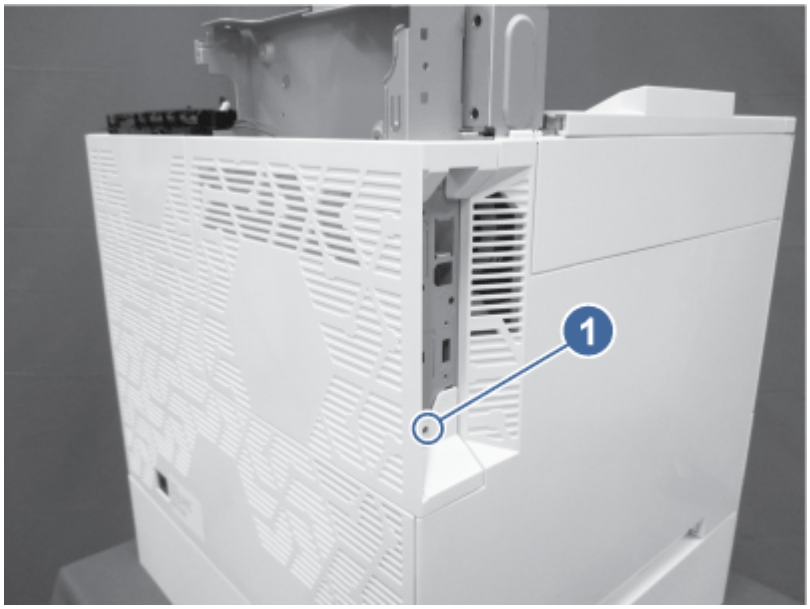
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-723 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



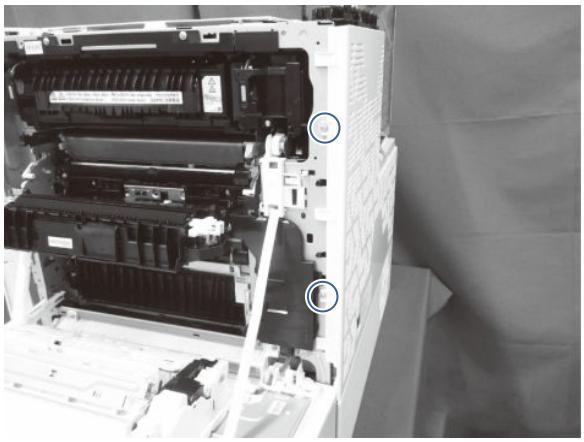
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

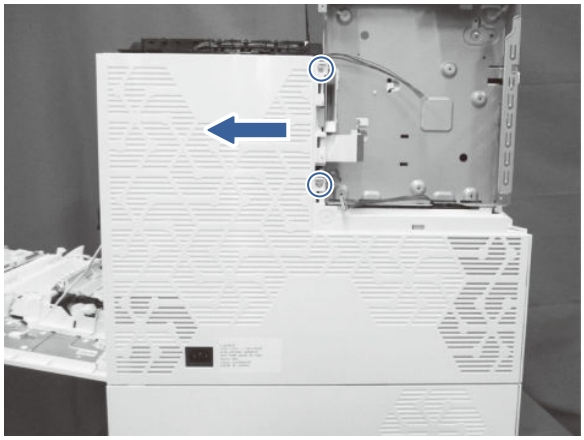
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-724 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-725 Remove the rear cover



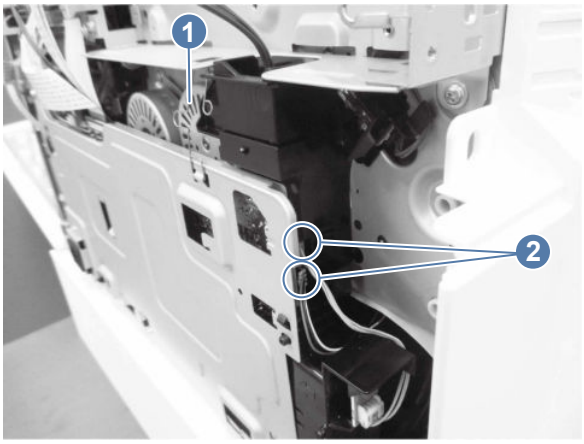
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

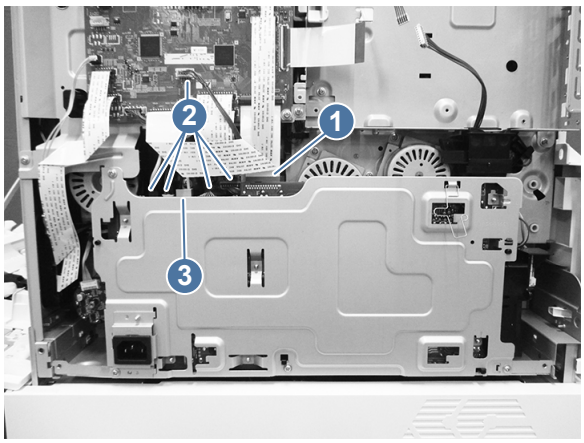
Figure 4-726 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only:** Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-727 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

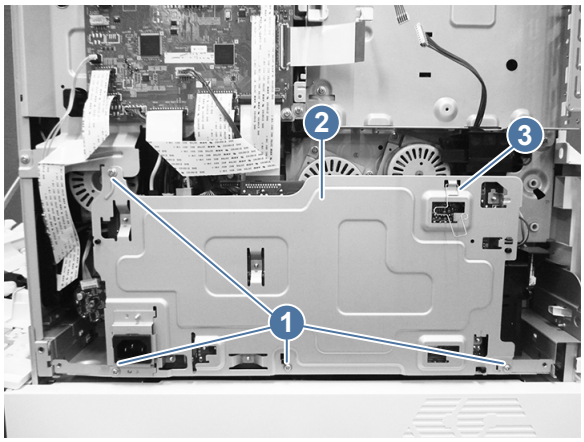


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

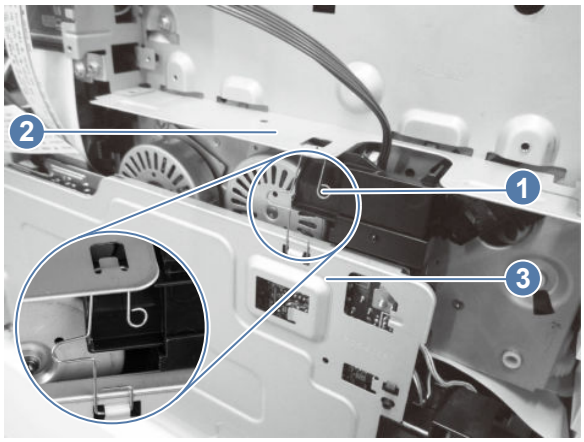
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-728 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-729 Reinstalling the LVPS



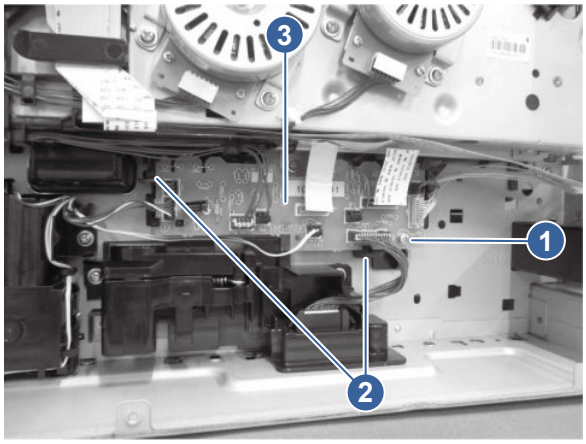
5. Remove the rear PCA

Follow these steps to remove the rear PCA.

- Disconnect all the connectors on the rear PCA, remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear PCA (callout 3).

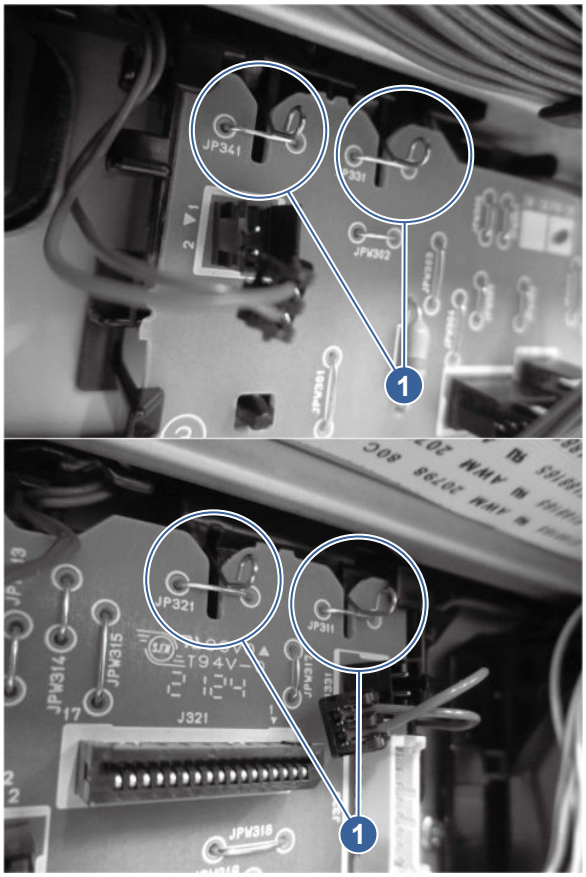
NOTE: Grounding wires are mounted on the top of this PCA. Use care when removing it. Pull the bottom part out first, and then slide the assembly down to cleanly release from the spring wires at the top.

Figure 4-730 Remove the rear PCA



Reinstallation tip: When installing the rear PCA, confirm that each contact spring (callout 1) is in the correct position (so that the PCA engages with the springs).

Figure 4-731 Correct spring position



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Environmental sensor PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the environmental sensor PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-89 Part information

Part number	Part description
WP2-5473-000CN	Sensor, humidity HSU-08FDB2A

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

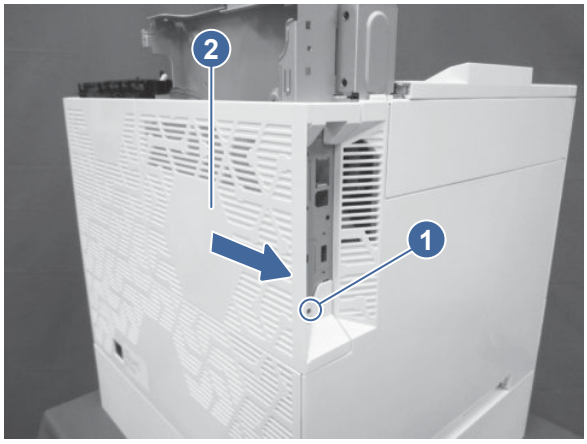
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-732 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

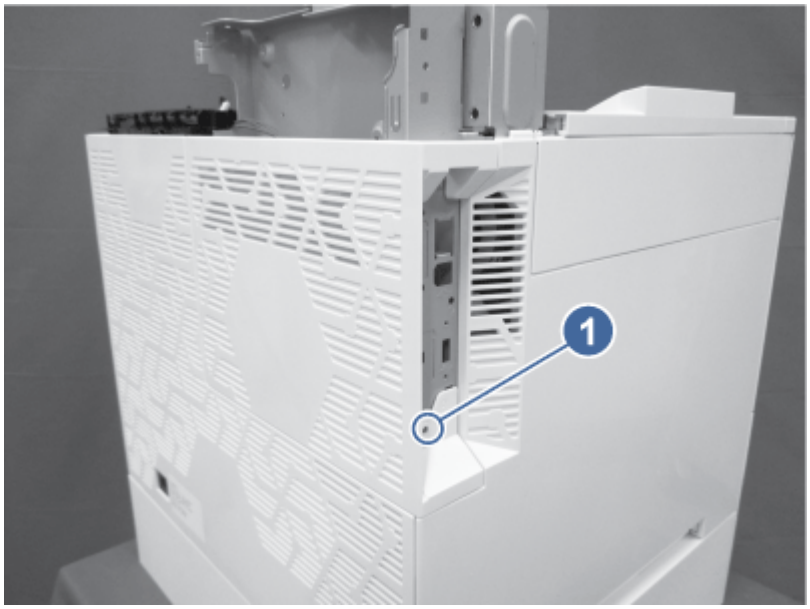
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-733 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



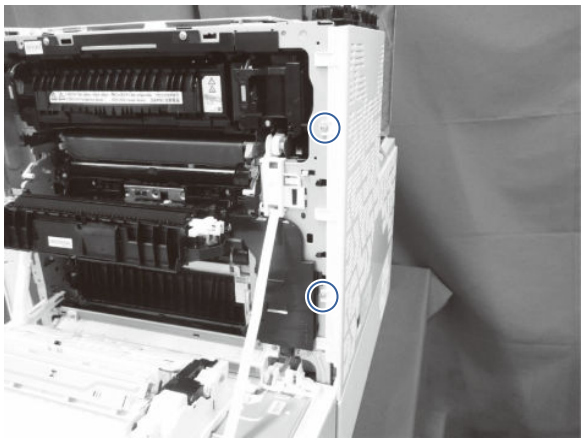
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

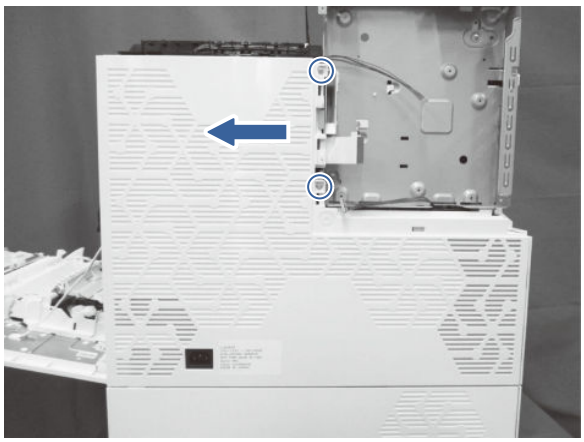
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-734 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-735 Remove the rear cover

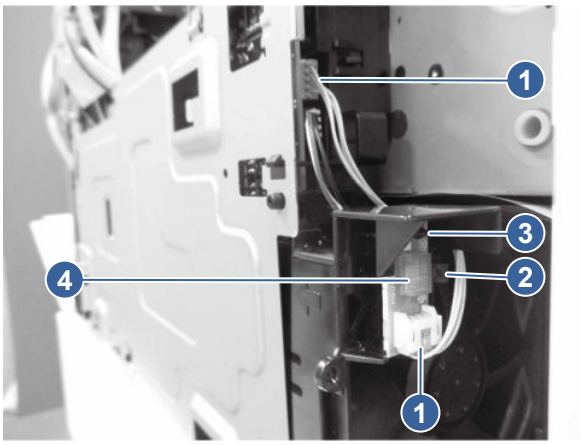


4. Remove the environmental sensor PCA

Follow these steps to remove the environmental sensor PCA.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), release one boss (callout 3), and then remove the environmental sensor PCA (callout 4).

Figure 4-736 Remove the environmental sensor PCA



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Drum home position PCA

Learn about removing and replacing the drum home position sensor PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-90 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7647-000CN	Drum position sensor PCA

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

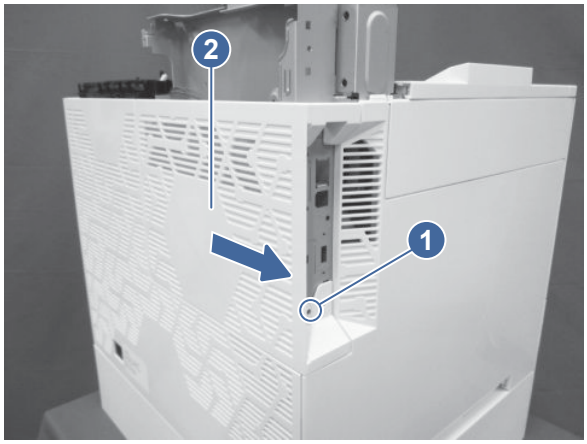
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-737 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

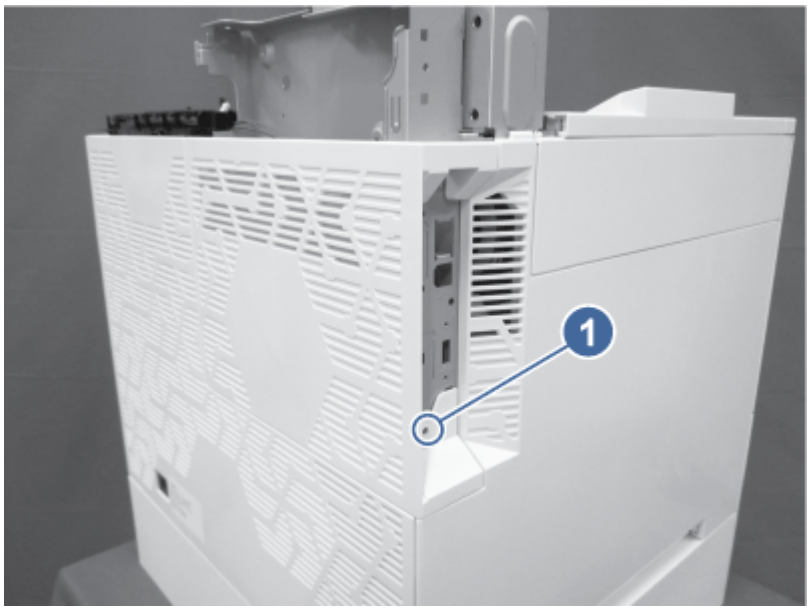
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-738 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



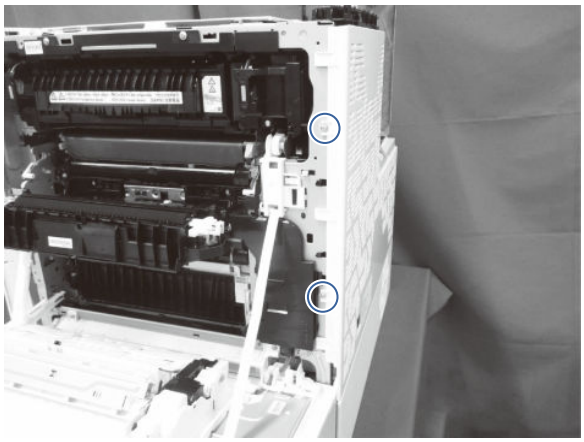
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

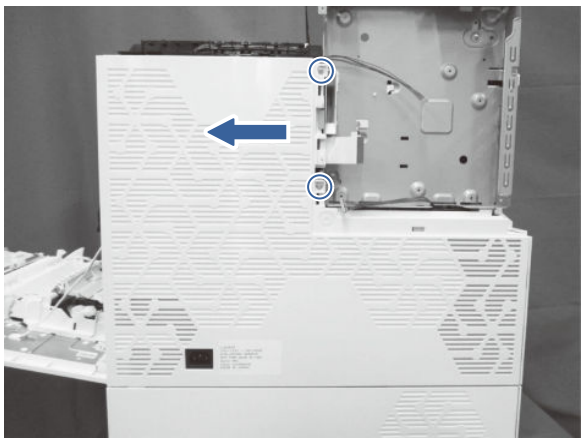
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-739 **Remove two screws**



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-740 Remove the rear cover



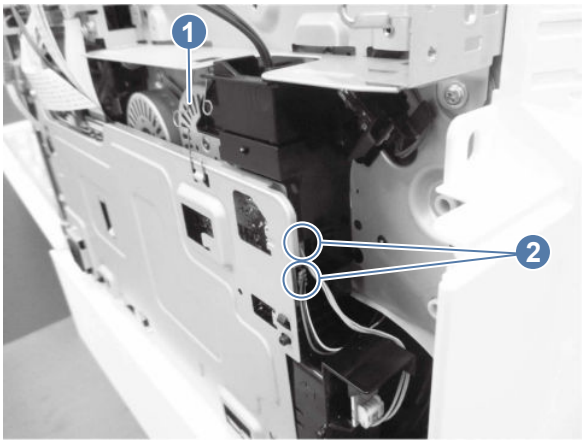
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

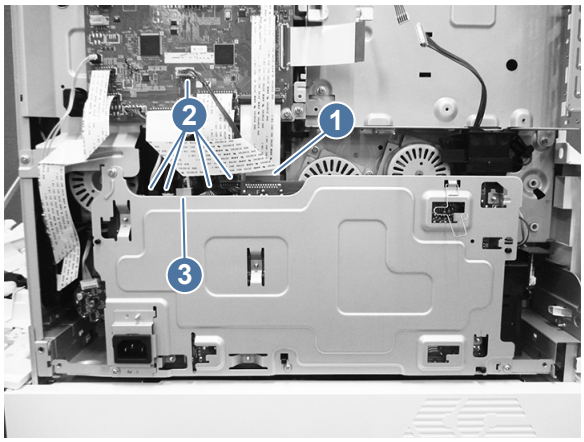
Figure 4-741 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-742 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

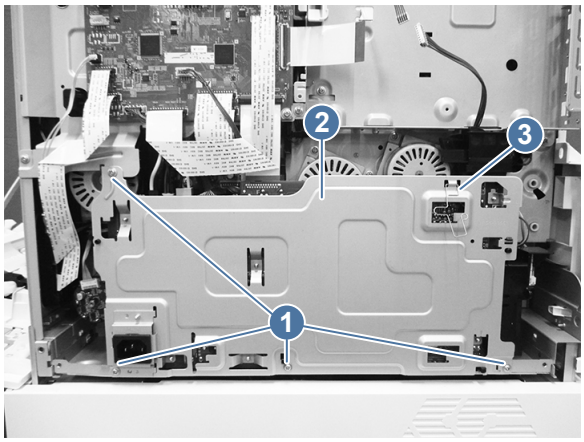


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

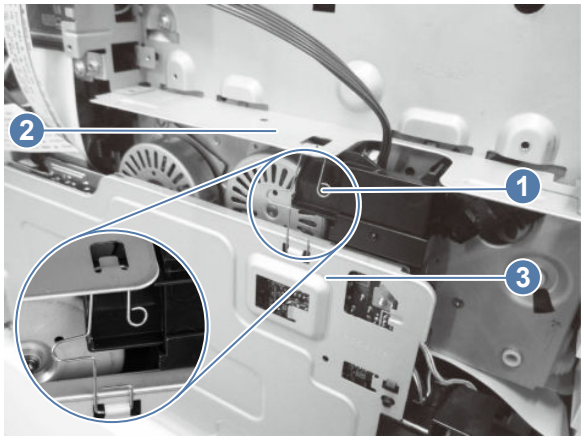
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-743 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-744 Reinstalling the LVPS

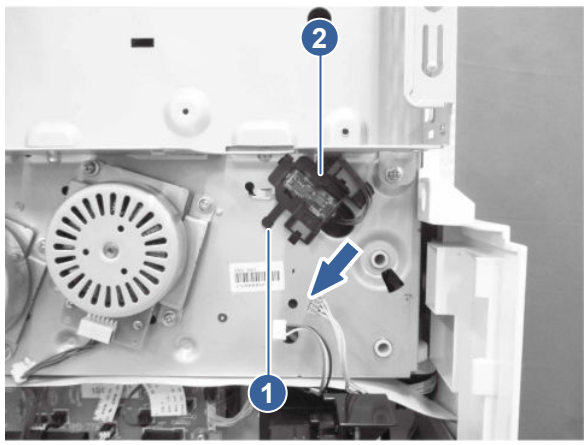


5. Remove the drum home position sensor PCA

Follow these steps to remove the drum home position sensor PCA.

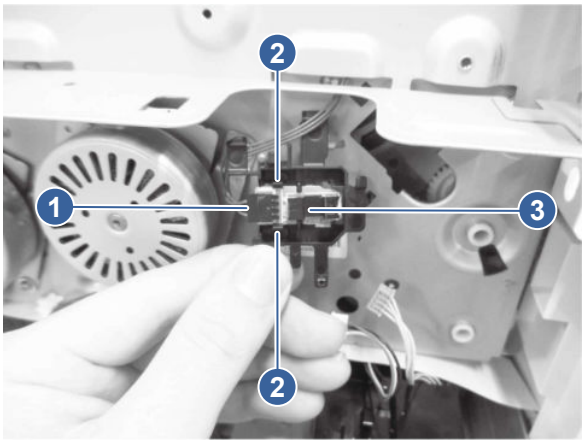
1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the PCA holder (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-745 Remove the PCA holder



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the drum home position sensor PCA (callout 3).

Figure 4-746 Remove the drum home position sensor PCA



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Drum motor

Learn about removing and replacing the drum motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-91 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7788-000CN	Drum motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

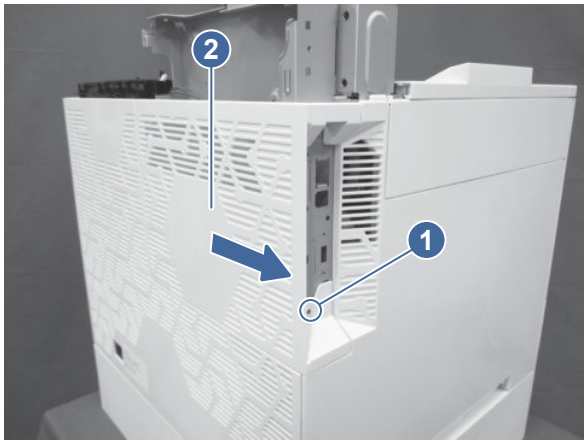
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> 💡 **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-747 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

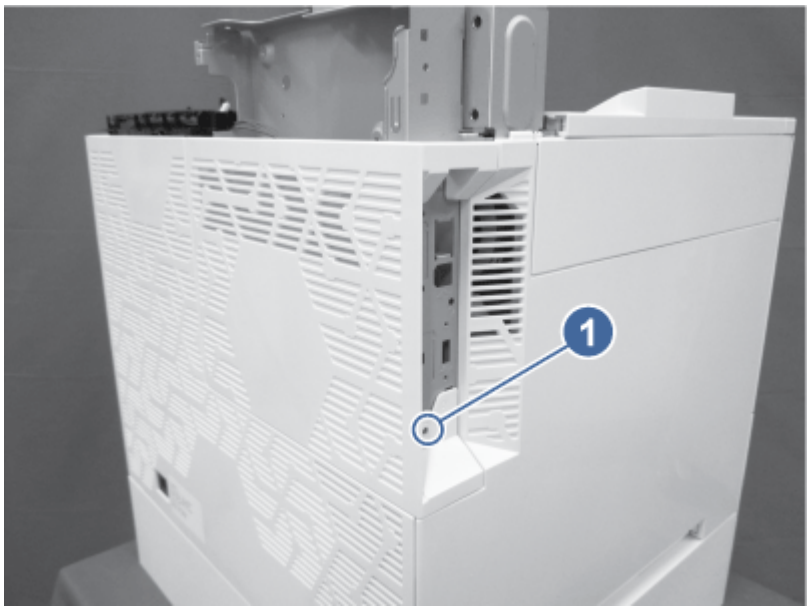
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-748 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



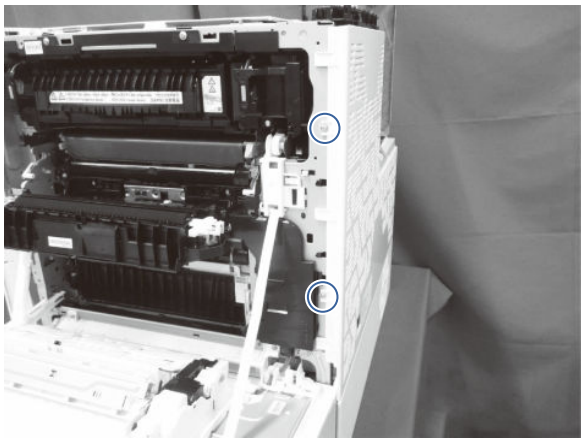
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

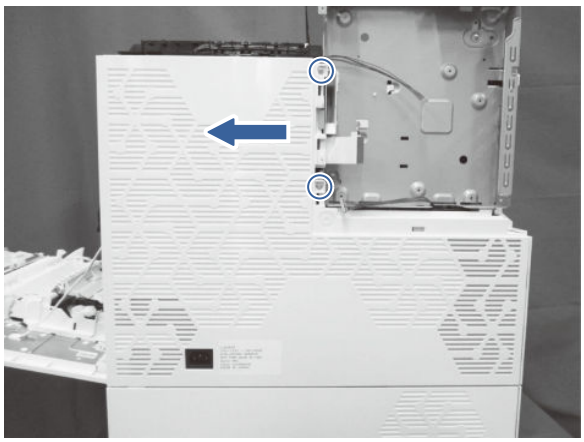
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-749 **Remove two screws**



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-750 Remove the rear cover



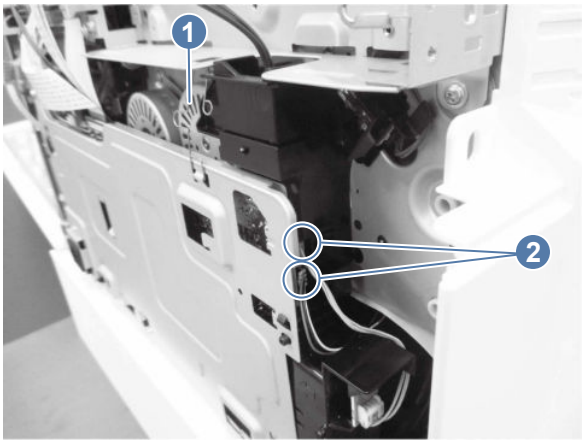
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

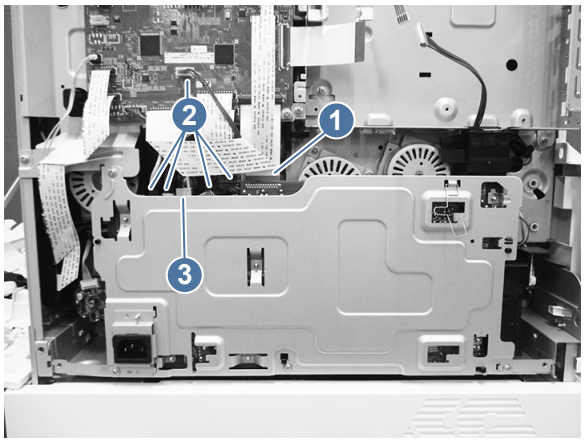
Figure 4-751 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-752 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

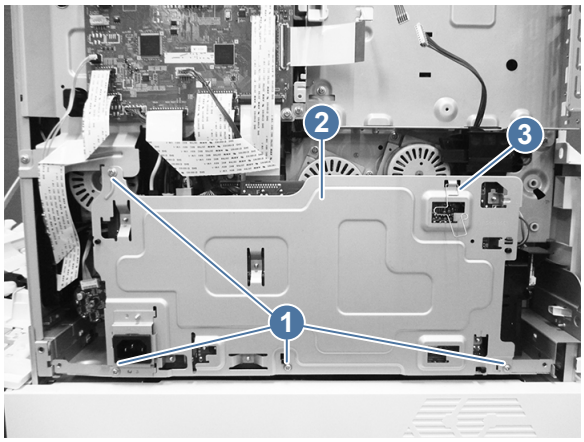


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

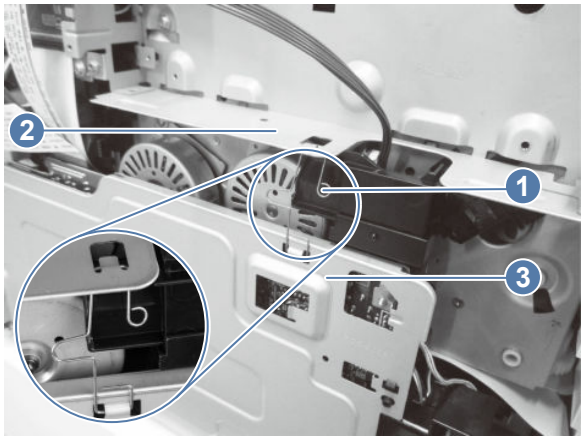
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-753 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-754 Reinstalling the LVPS

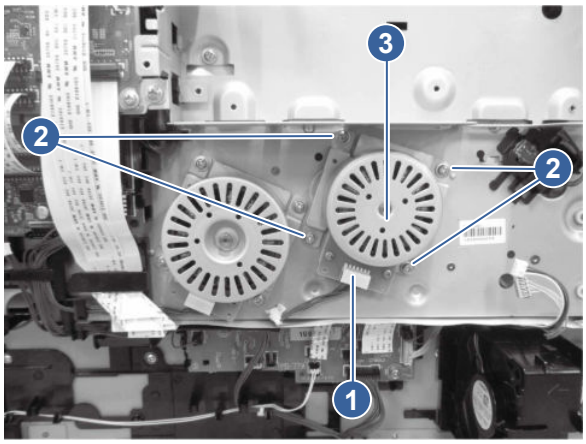


5. Remove the drum motor

Follow these steps to remove the drum motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the drum motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-755 Remove the motor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer motor

Learn about removing and replacing the developer motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-92 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3625-000CN	Developing motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

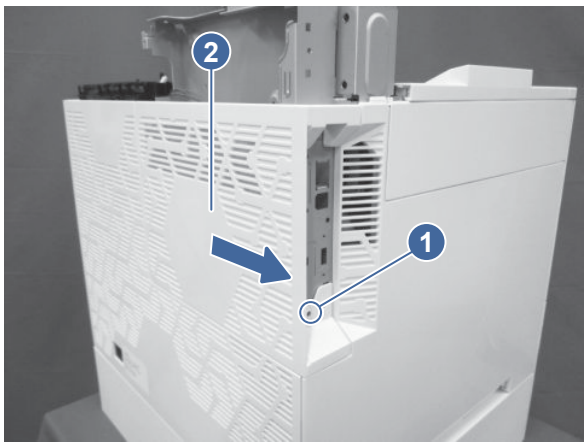
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-756 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

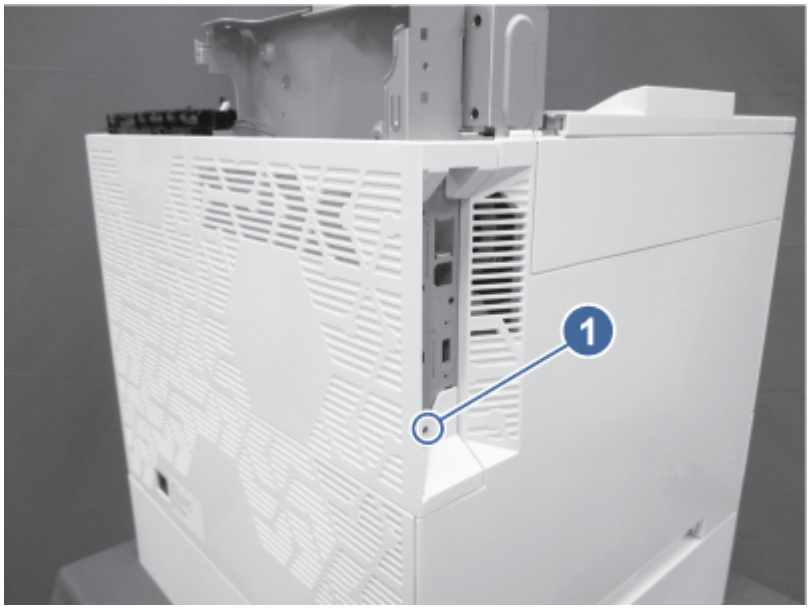
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-757 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



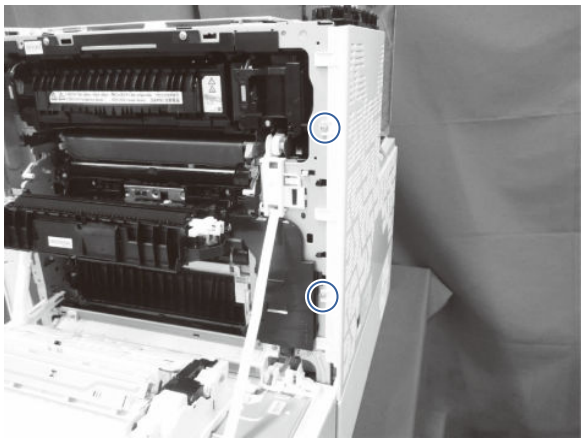
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

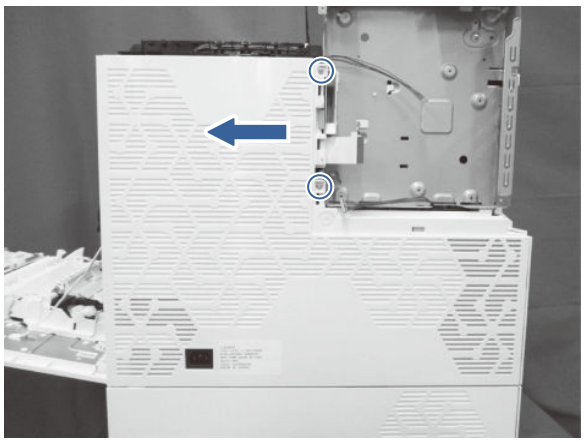
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-758 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-759 Remove the rear cover



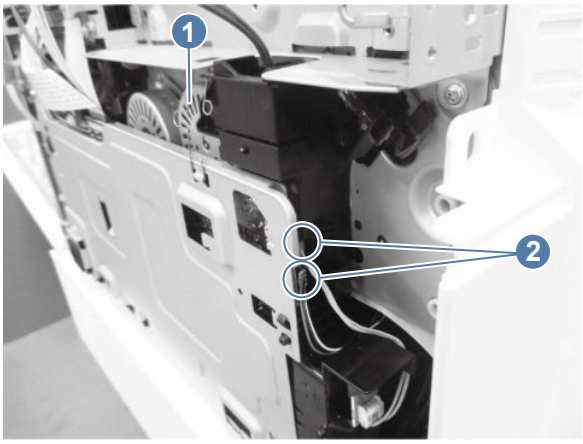
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

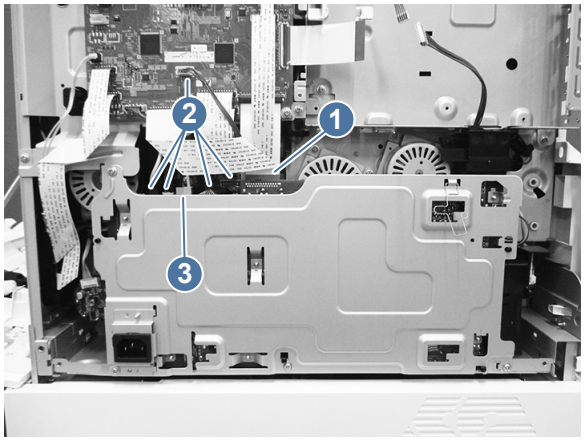
Figure 4-760 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-761 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

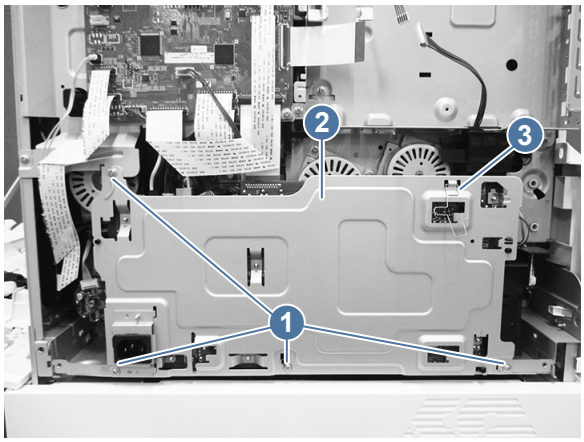


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

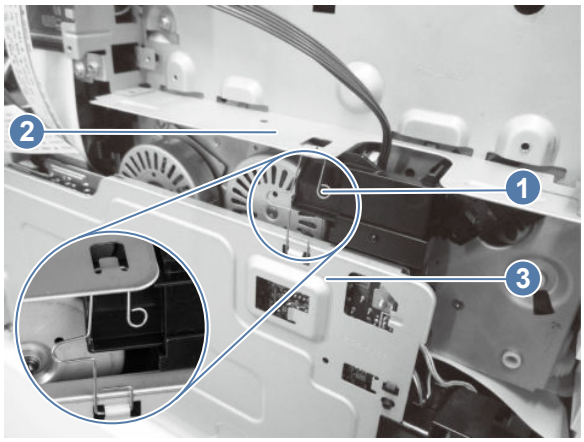
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-762 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-763 Reinstalling the LVPS

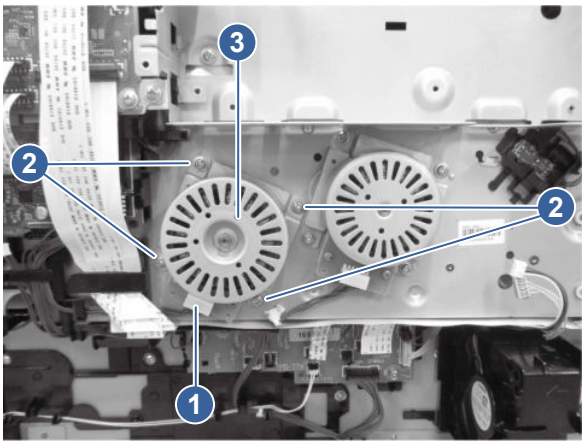


5. Remove the developer motor

Follow these steps to remove the developer motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-764 Remove the motor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Image transfer belt (ITB) motor

Learn about removing and replacing the ITB motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-93 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7797-000CN	ITB motor assembly

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

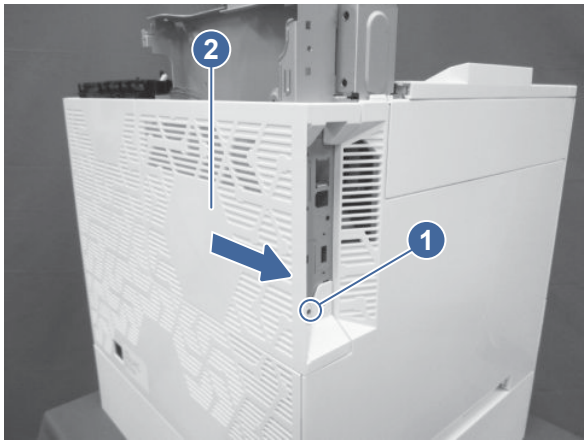
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-765 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

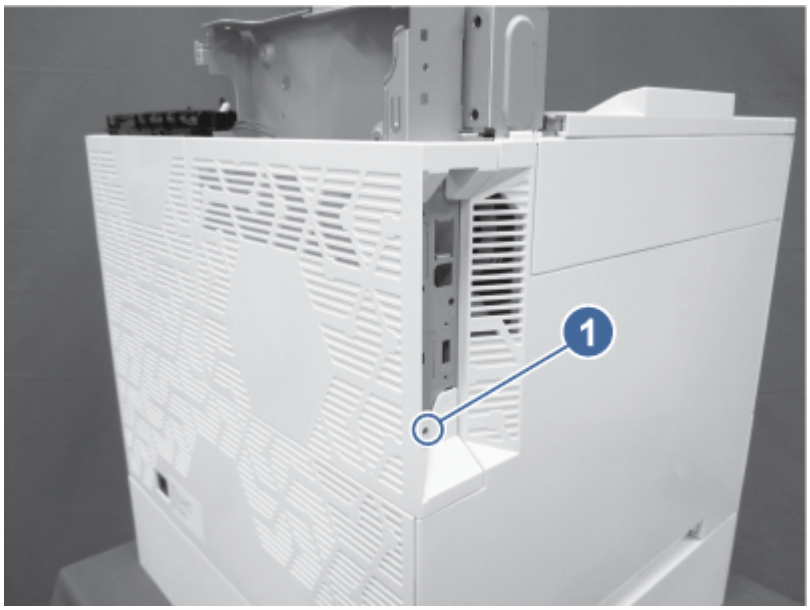
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-766 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



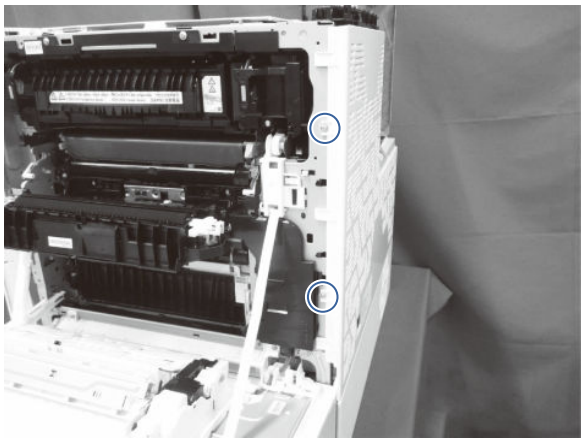
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

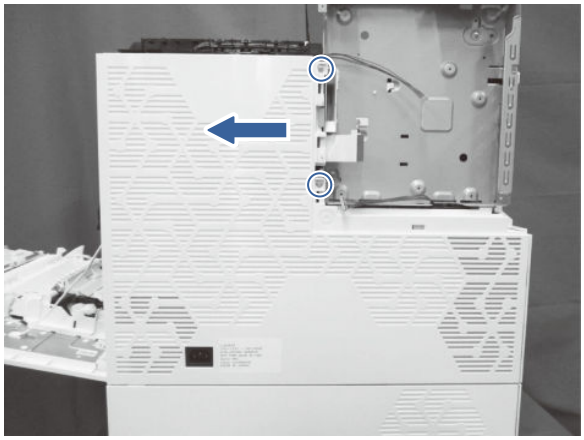
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-767 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-768 Remove the rear cover



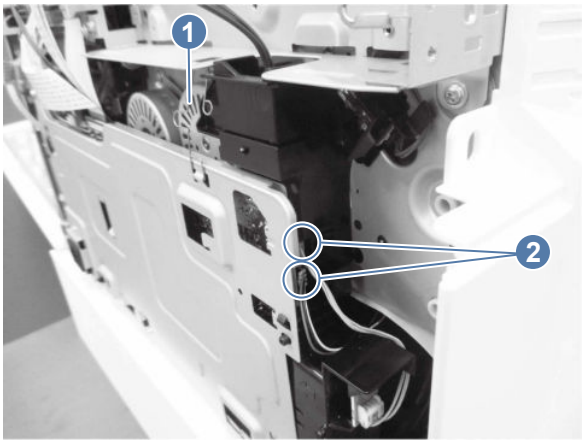
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

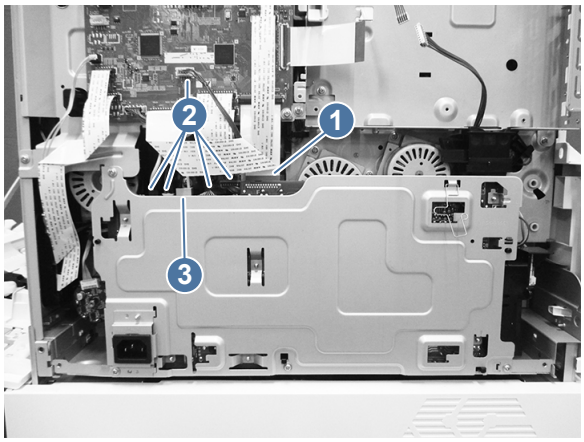
Figure 4-769 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-770 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

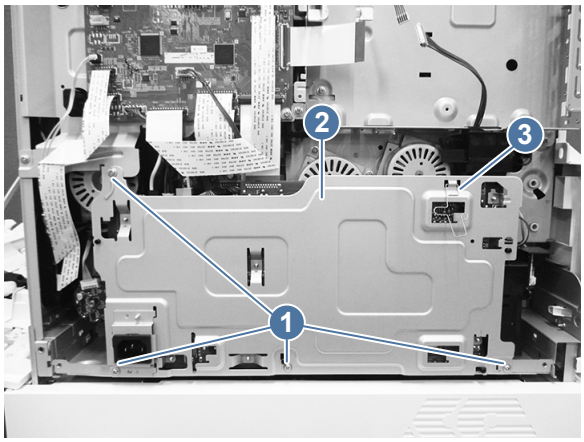


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

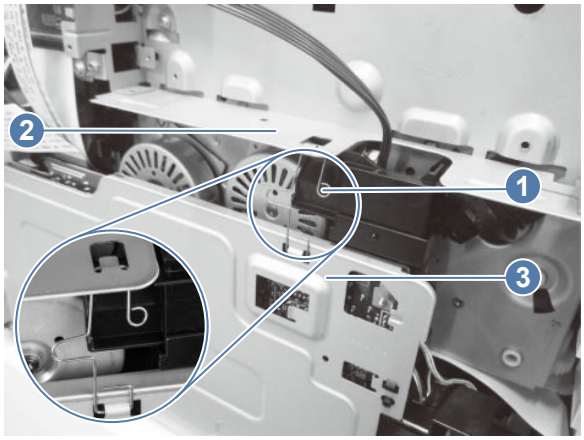
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-771 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-772 Reinstalling the LVPS

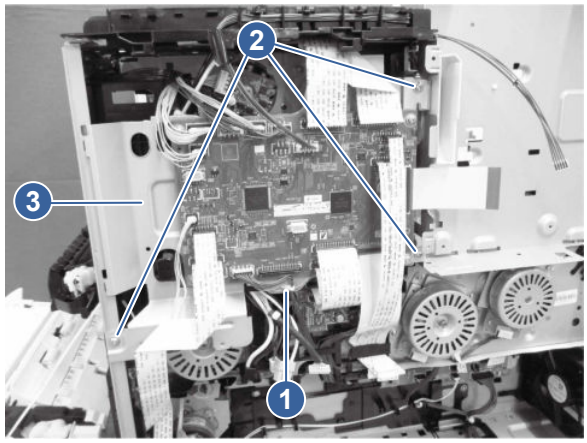


5. Remove the image transfer belt (ITB) motor

Follow these steps to remove the image transfer belt (ITB) motor.

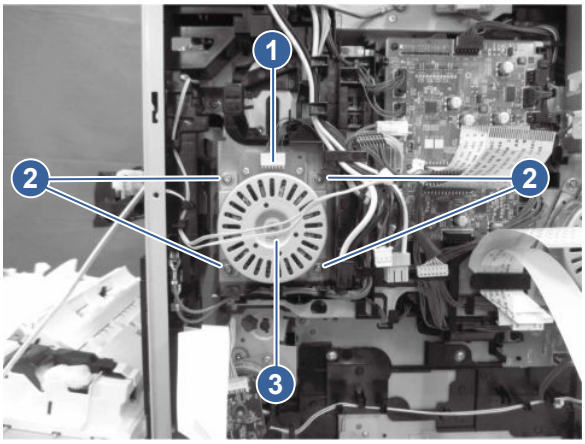
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

Figure 4-773 Remove the DC controller stay



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-774 Remove the motor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Developer alienation motor

Learn about removing and replacing developer alienation motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-94 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-6027-000CN	Motor, stepping (Developer alienation motor)
RK2-7751-000CN	Motor, stepping (Developer alienation motor X58045dn, X58045z, X58045zs)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

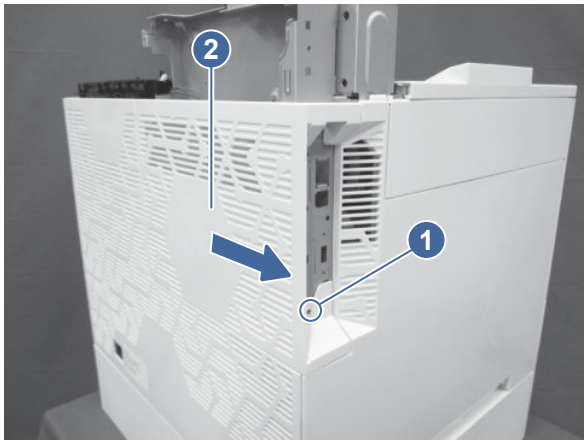
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

> **TIP:** Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-775 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

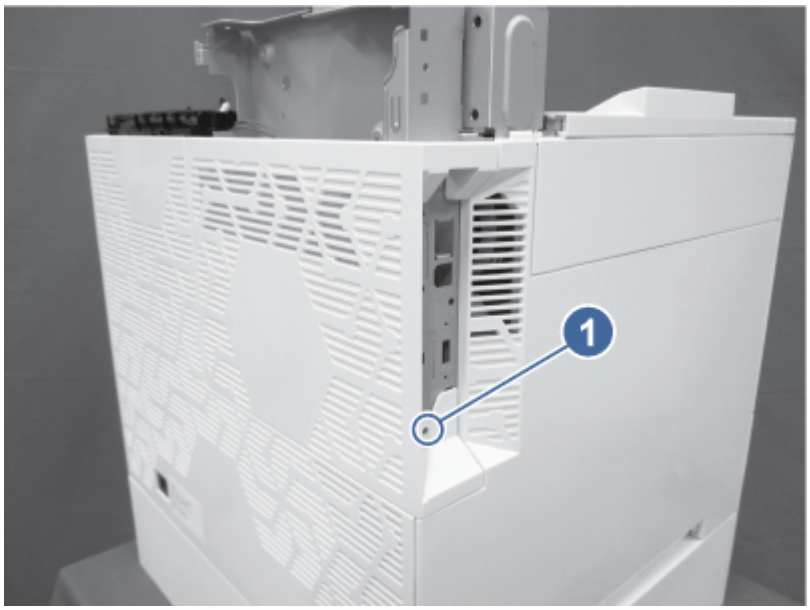
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-776 Remove the screw



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



3. Remove the formatter

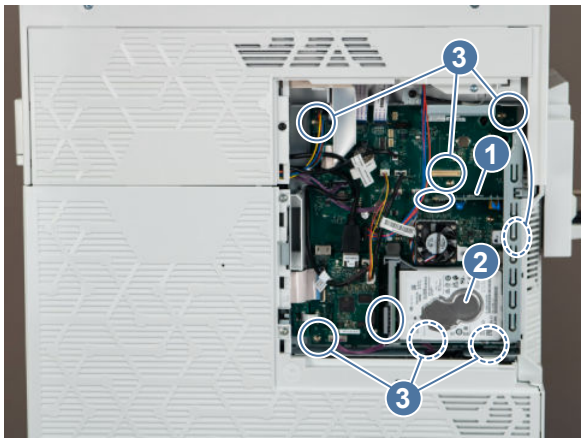
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

> IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-777 Remove the formatter



4. Remove the left upper cover (MFP models)

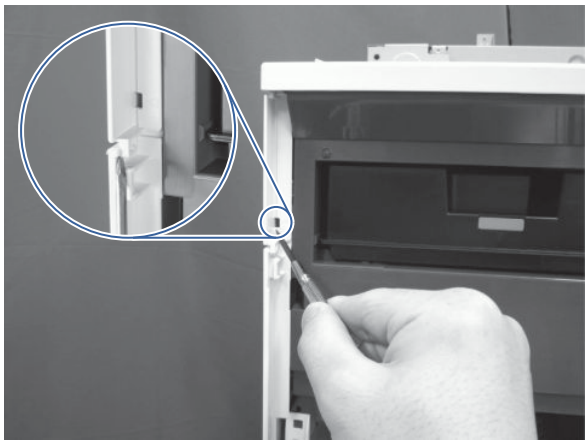
Follow these steps to remove the left upper cover.

1. Open the front door.

⚠ CAUTION: If the cover is being removed to gain access to the main drive assembly, make sure that the front door remains closed. This keeps the main drive properly aligned.

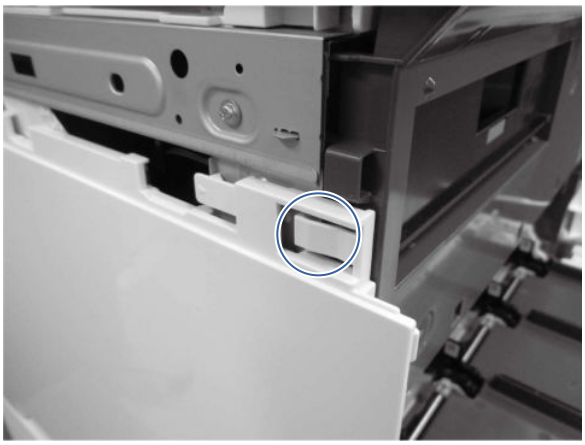
2. At the left side of the printer, insert the small flat-blade screwdriver into the slot to release one tab (callout 1).

Figure 4-778 Use a screwdriver to release the tab



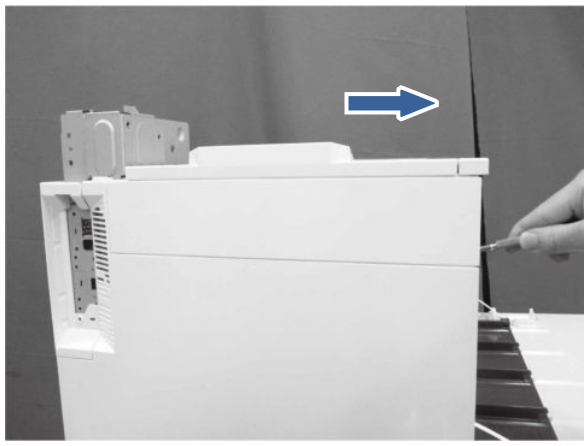
3. Toward the front of the printer, release another tab.

Figure 4-779 Release the tab



4. Rotate the cover up to remove it.

Figure 4-780 Remove the left upper cover

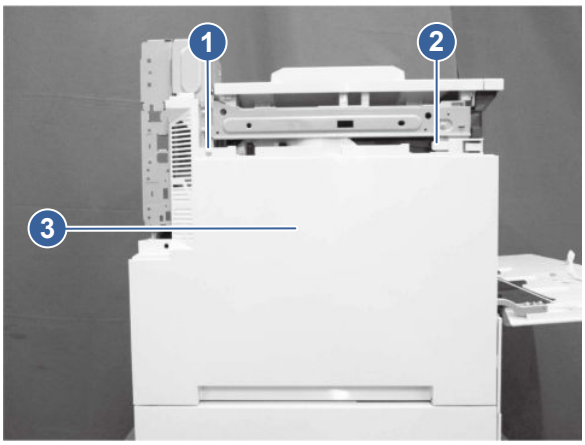


5. Remove the left cover

Follow these steps to remove the left cover.

- At the left side of the printer, remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the cover (callout 3) toward the rear of the printer to release it.

Figure 4-781 Remove the left cover



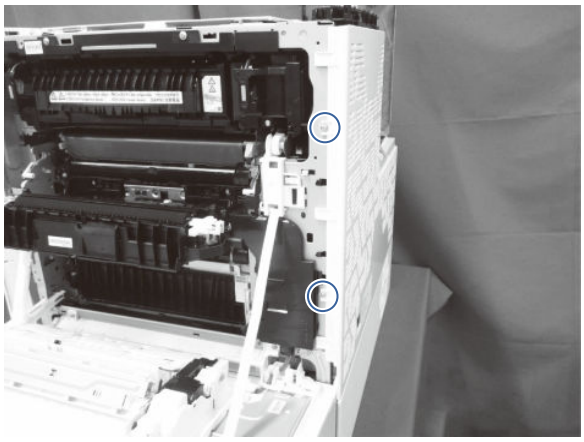
6. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

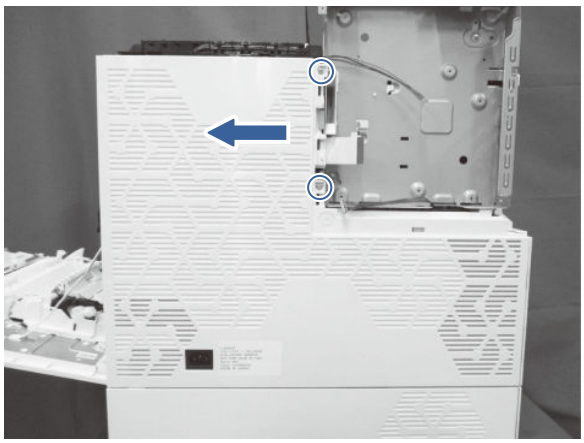
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-782 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-783 Remove the rear cover



7. Remove the formatter cage (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

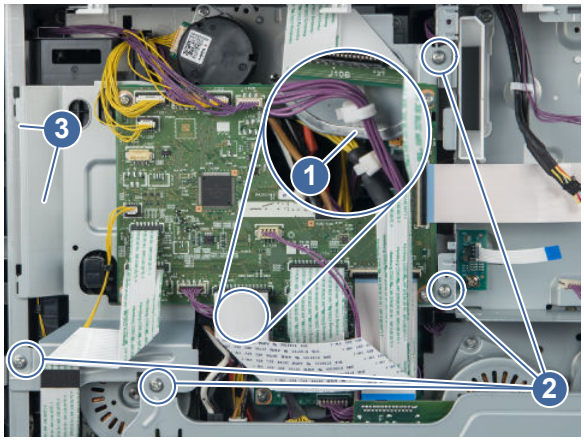
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) out to remove it.

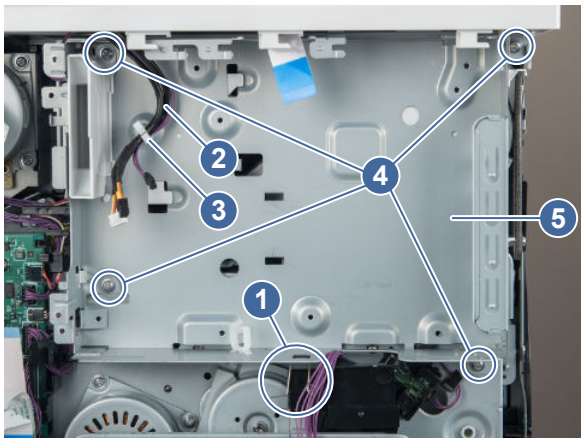
NOTE: Be careful not to drop any of the screws into the low-voltage power supply assembly below the DC controller.

Figure 4-784 Remove the DC controller stay



3. Unhook one spring (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3), remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 5).

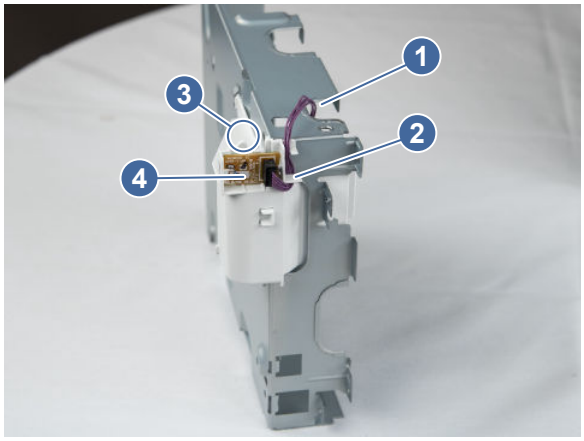
Figure 4-785 Remove the formatter cage



4. **For a replacement formatter cage only:** Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-786 Remove the memory PCA

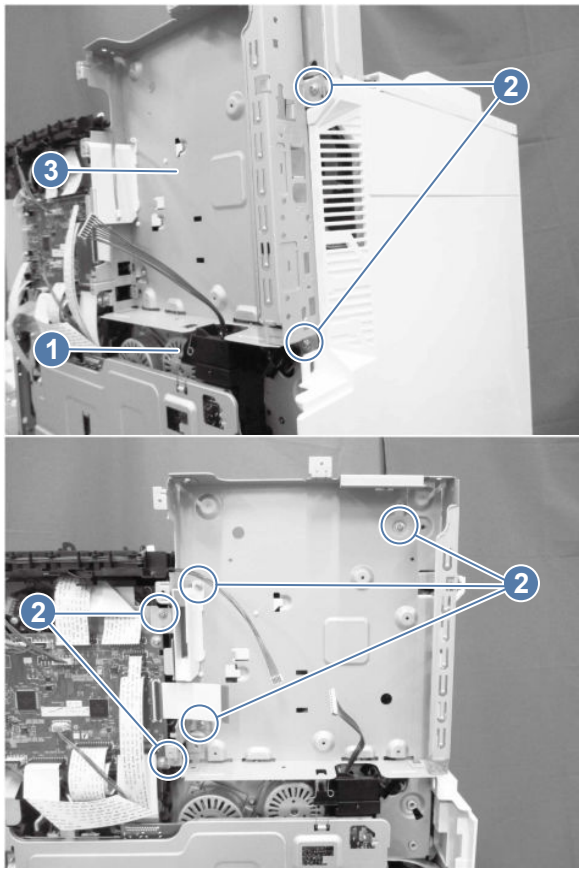


8. Remove the formatter cage (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 3).

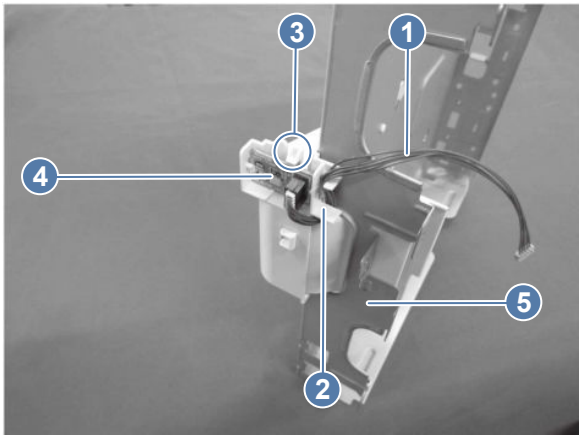
Figure 4-787 Remove the formatter cage



2. **For a replacement formatter cage only**: Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-788 Remove the memory PCA

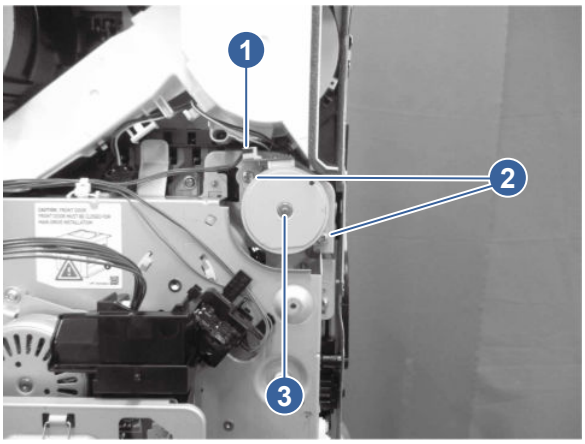


9. Remove the developer alienation motor

Follow these steps to remove the developer alienation motor.

- Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove two screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-789 Remove the motor



10. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser motor

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-95 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4488-000CN	Fixing motor assembly (Fuser motor)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

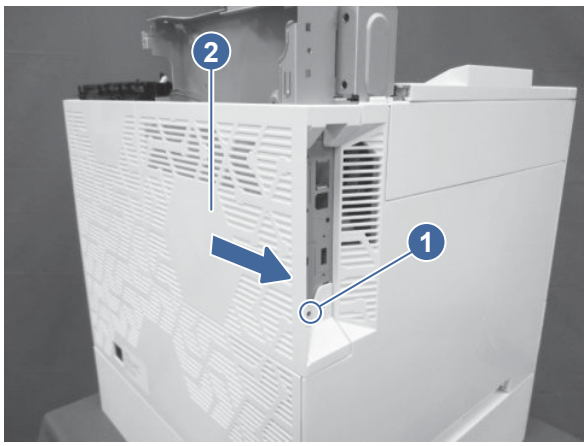
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-790 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

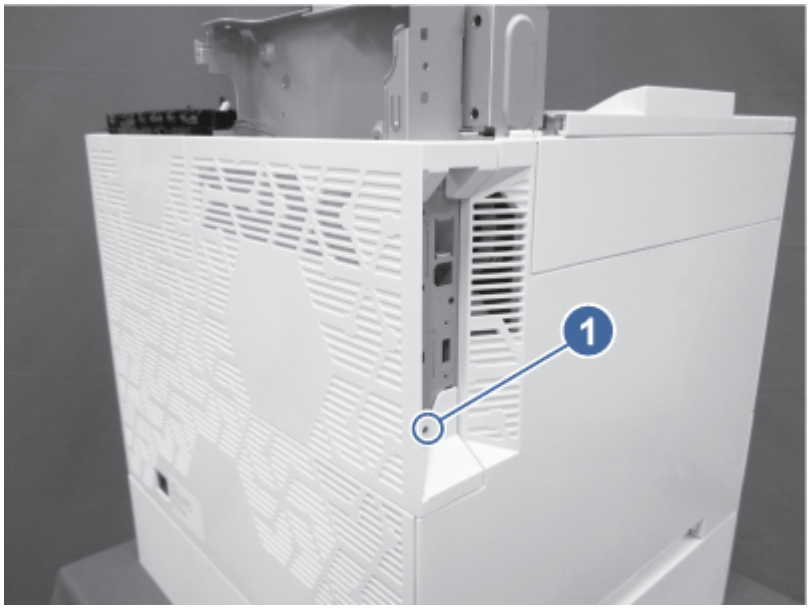
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-791 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



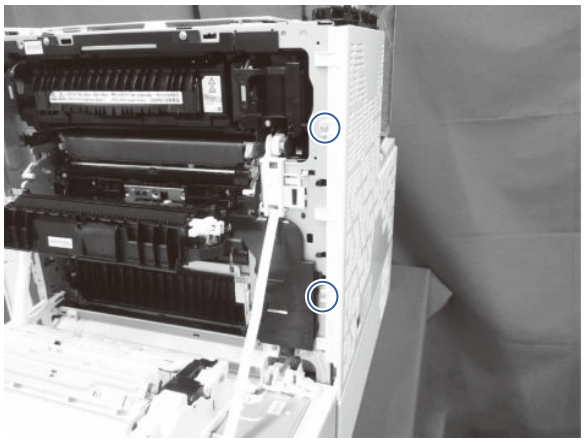
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

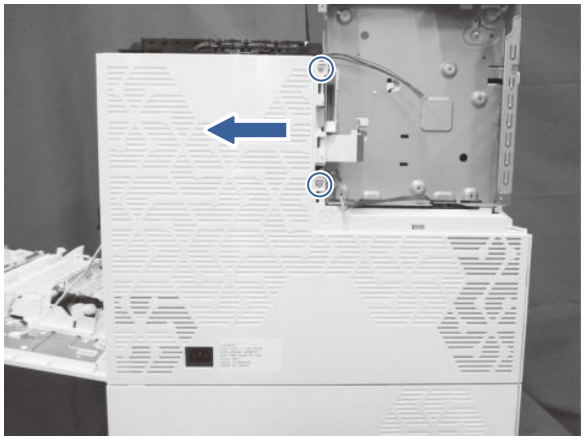
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-792 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-793 Remove the rear cover



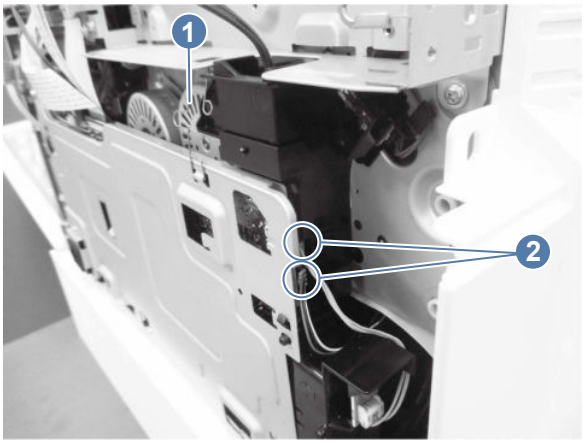
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

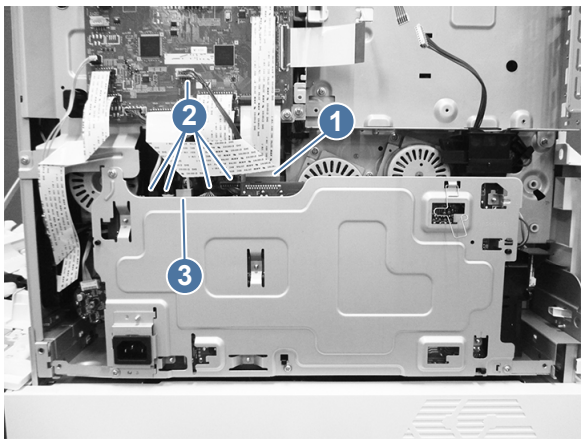
Figure 4-794 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only:** Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-795 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

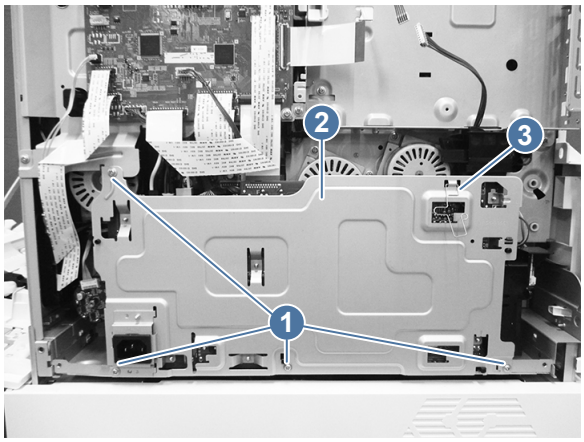


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

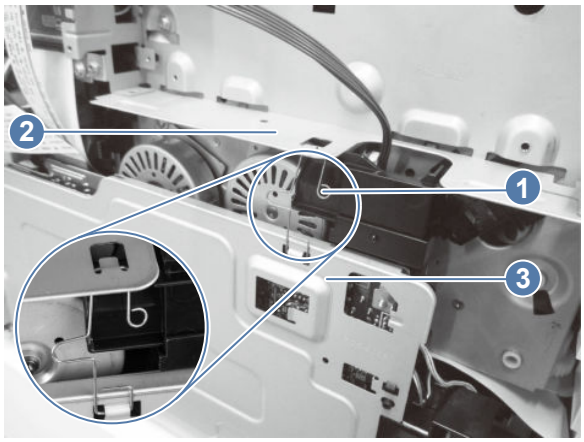
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-796 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-797 Reinstalling the LVPS

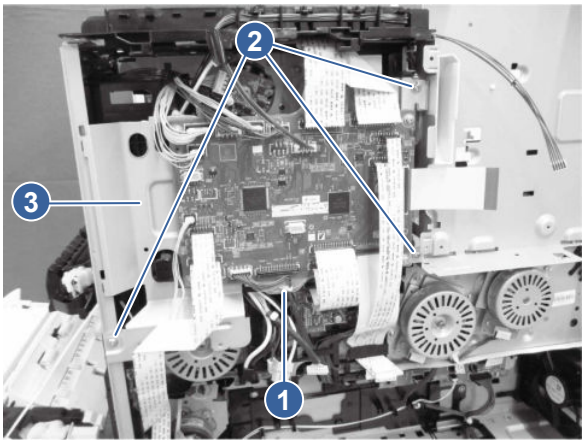


5. Remove the fuser motor

Follow these steps to remove the fuser motor.

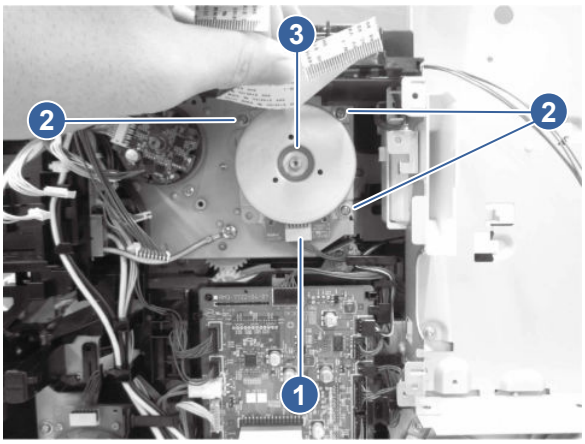
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

Figure 4-798 Remove the DC controller stay



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-799 Remove the motor



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Duplex motor

Learn about removing and replacing the duplex motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-96 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-7751-000CN	Motor, stepping (Duplex motor; 5700/X557/5800/X57945)
RM2-4489-000CN	Motor assembly (Duplex motor; 6700/X654/6800/X677)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

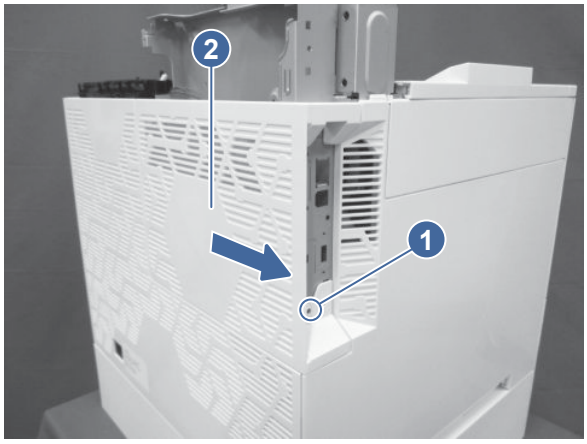
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-800 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

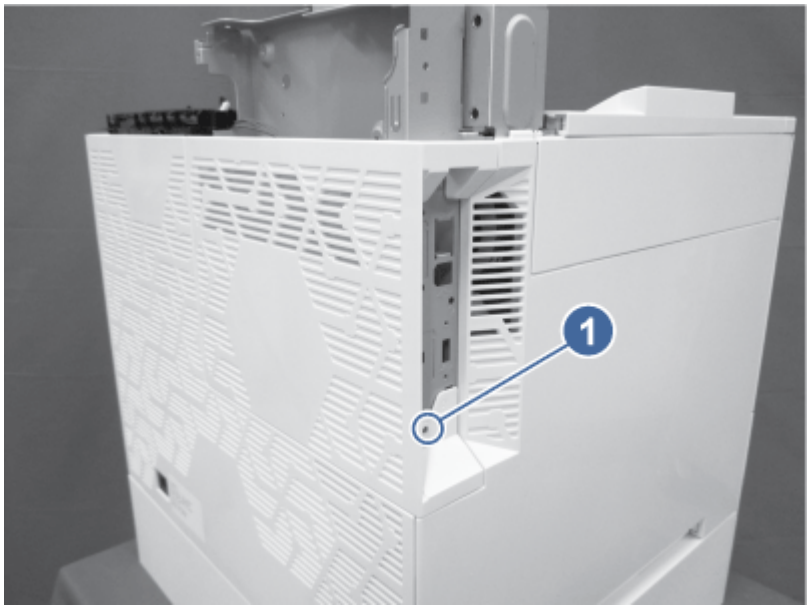
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-801 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



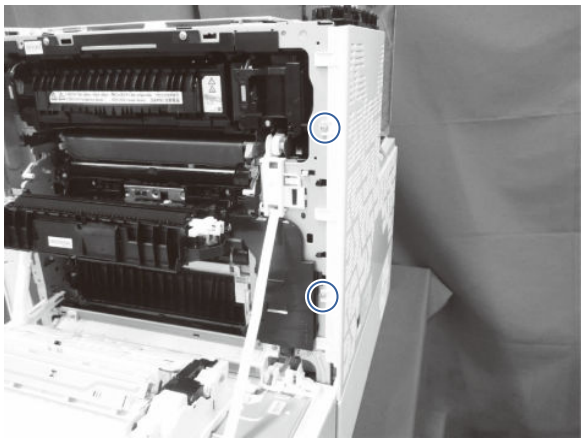
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

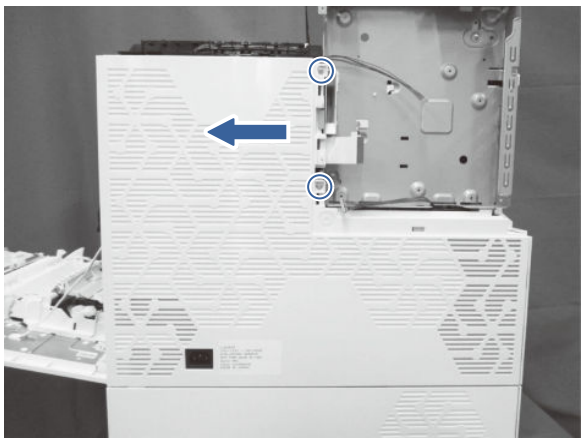
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-802 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-803 Remove the rear cover



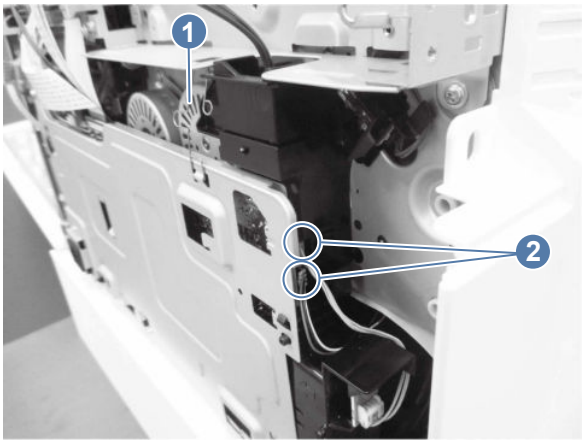
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

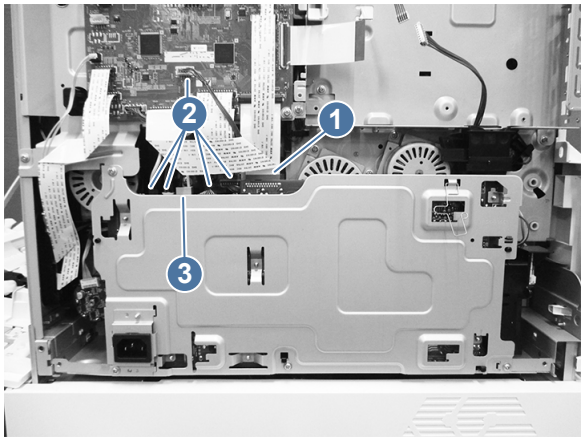
Figure 4-804 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-805 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

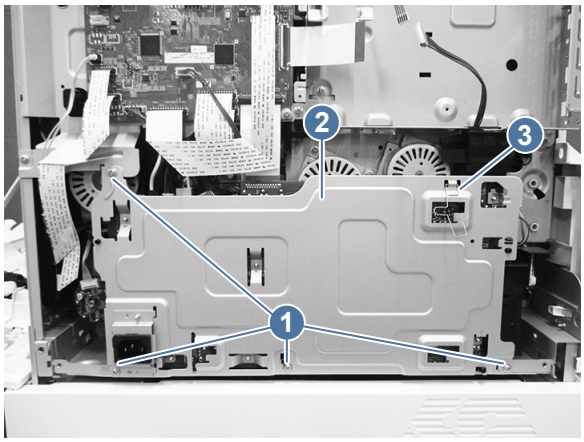


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

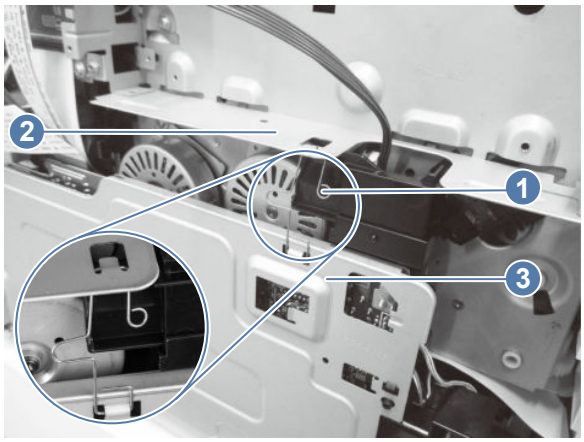
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-806 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-807 Reinstalling the LVPS

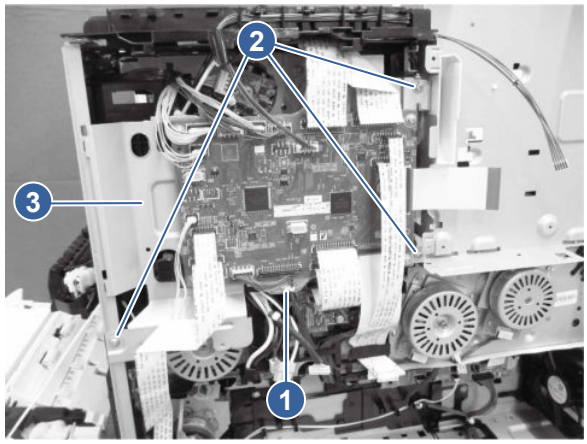


5. Remove the duplex motor

Follow these steps to remove the duplex motor.

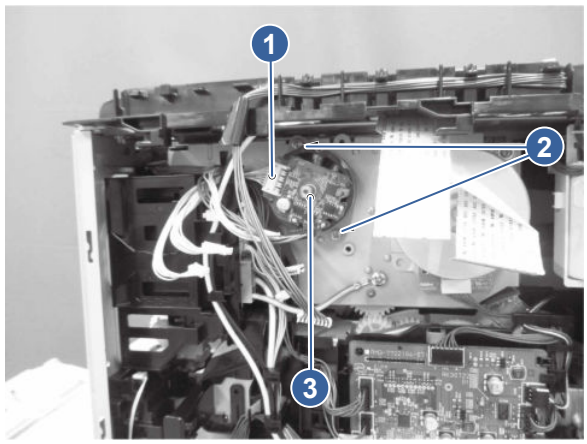
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA, remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) **upward** to release and to remove it.

Figure 4-808 **Remove the DC controller stay**



2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the motor (callout 3).

Figure 4-809 **Remove the motor**



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Power-supply fan

Learn about removing and replacing power supply fan.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-97 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK3-2277-000CN	Fan (Power supply fan)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

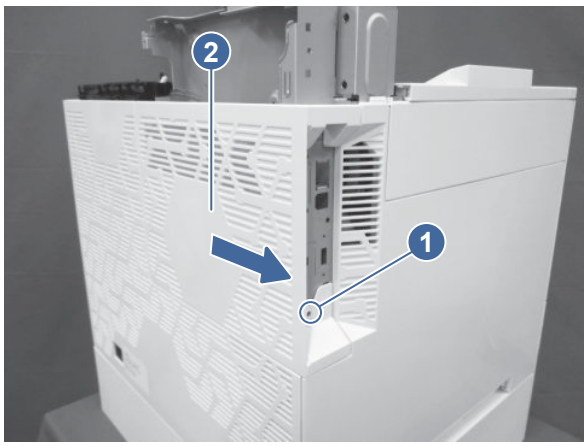
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-810 **Remove the formatter cover**



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

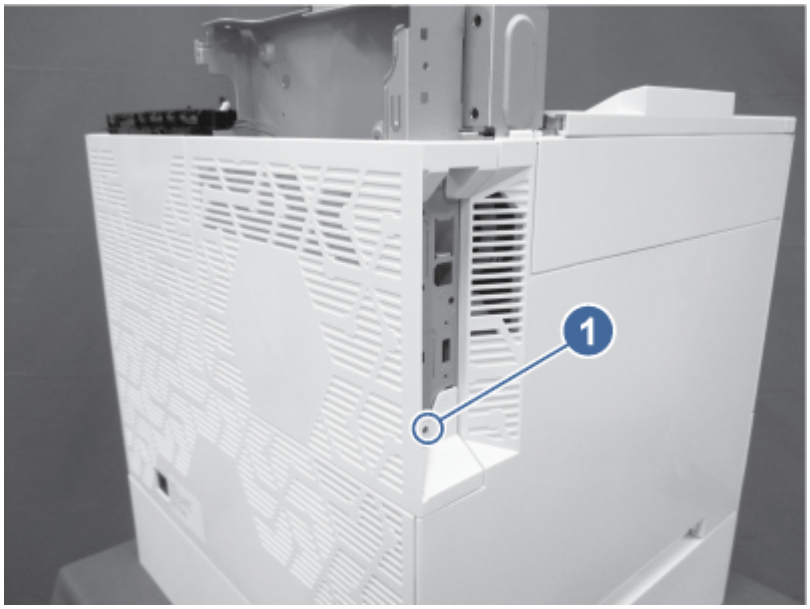
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-811 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



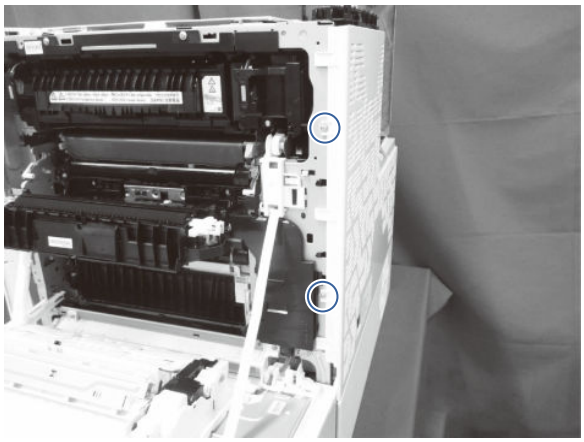
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

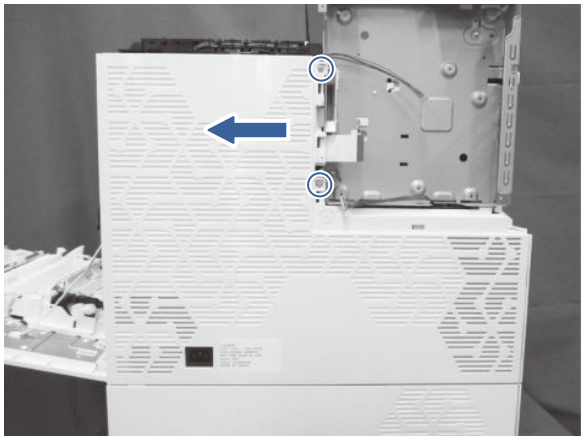
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-812 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-813 Remove the rear cover



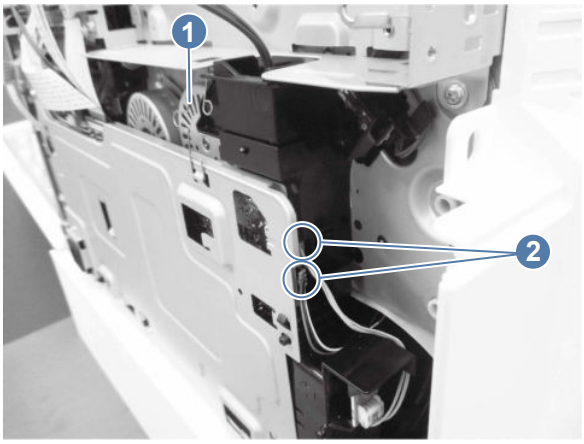
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

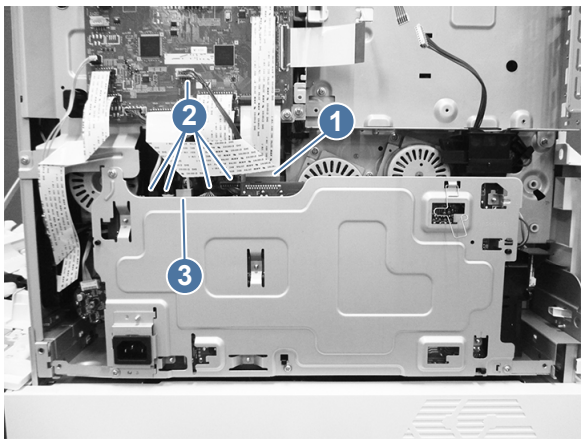
Figure 4-814 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-815 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

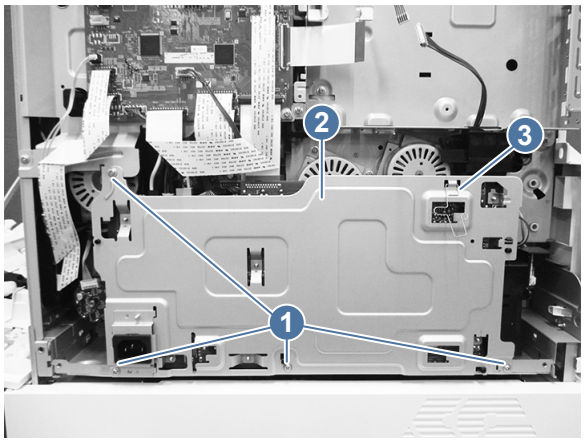


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

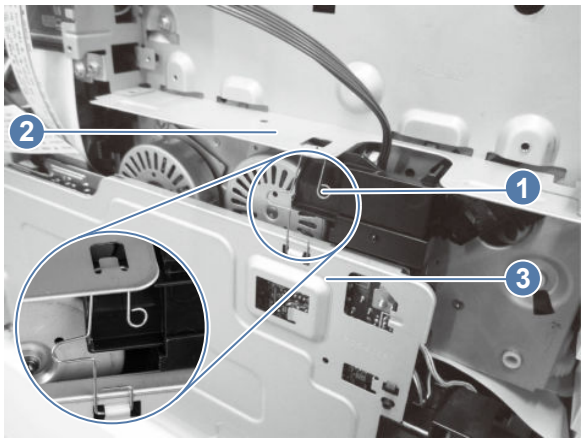
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-816 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-817 Reinstalling the LVPS



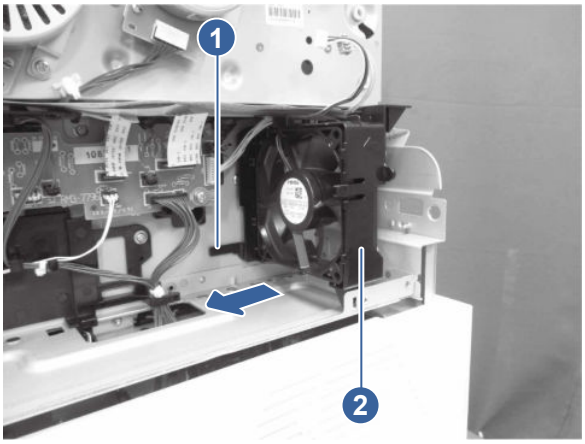
5. Remove the power supply fan

Follow these steps to remove the power supply fan.

1. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the fan holder (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

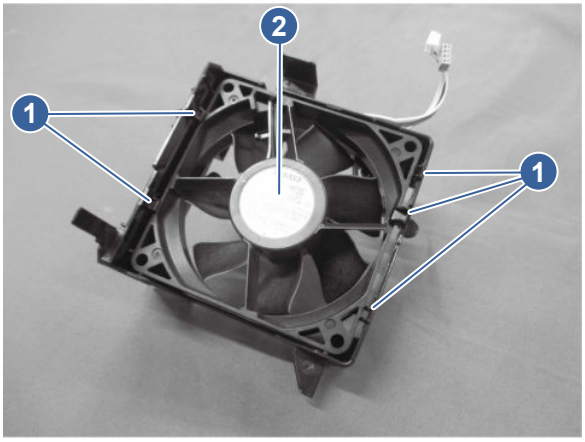
NOTE: Take care not to pull any cables as you remove this assembly.

Figure 4-818 Remove the fan holder



2. Release five tabs (callout 1), and then remove the power supply fan (callout 2).

Figure 4-819 Release the fan



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Cartridge fan

Learn about removing and replacing the cartridge fan.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-98 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK3-0762-000CN	Fan (Cartridge fan; X57945/X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)
RK3-1637-000CN	Fan (Cartridge fan; 5700/X557/5800)
RK3-2277-000CN	Fan (Cartridge fan; X58045dn/X58045z/X58045zs)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

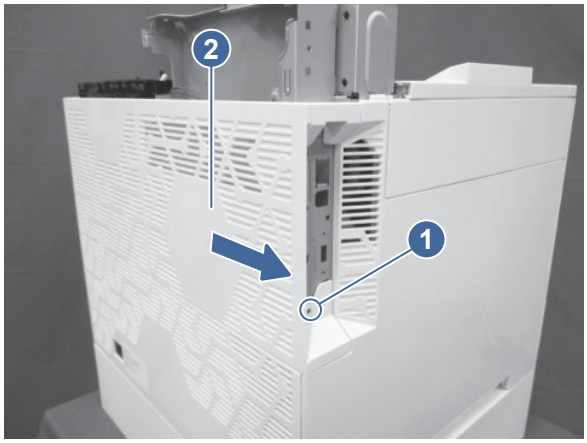
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-820 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

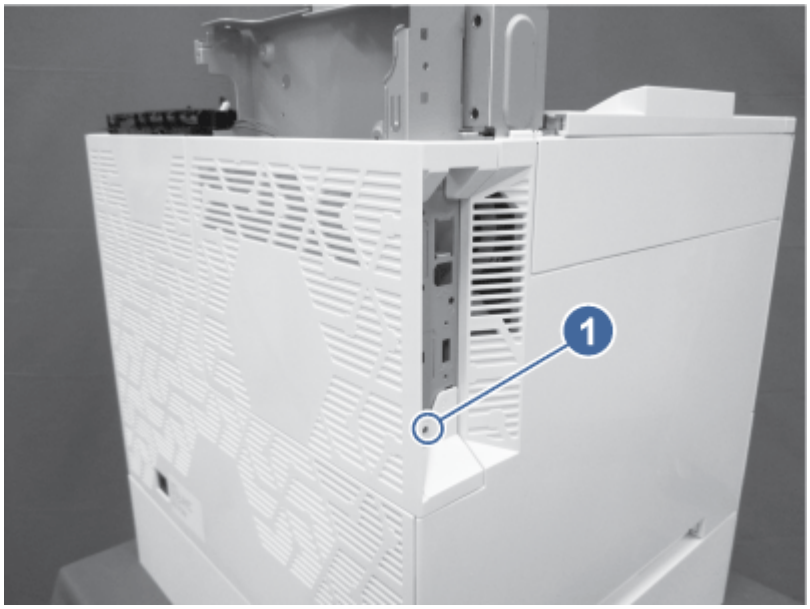
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-821 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



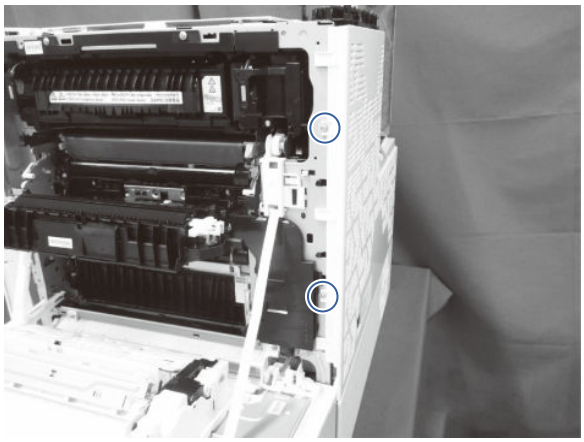
3. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

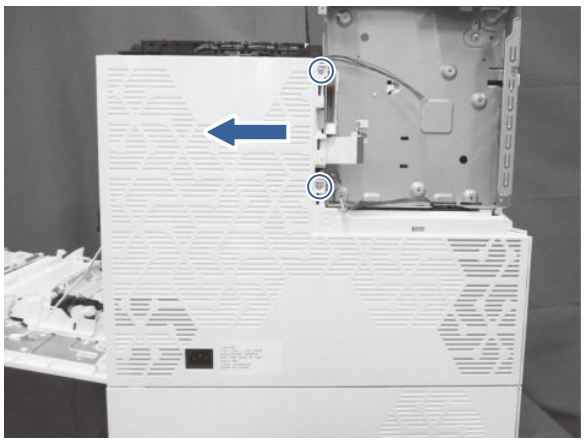
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-822 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-823 Remove the rear cover



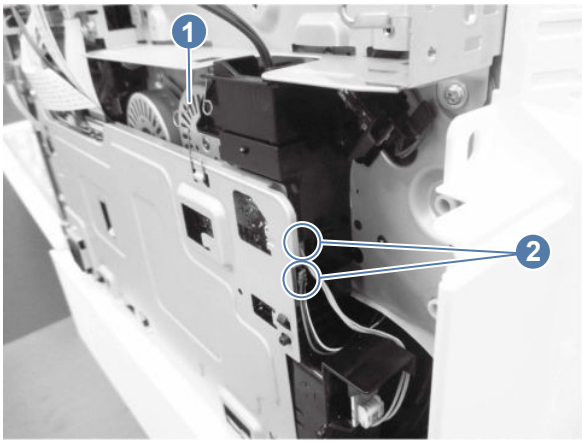
4. Remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS)

Follow these steps to remove the low-voltage power supply (LVPS).

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), and then disconnect two connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: Unhook the spring from the formatter cage, not the low-voltage power supply. The spring should remain attached to the LVPS.

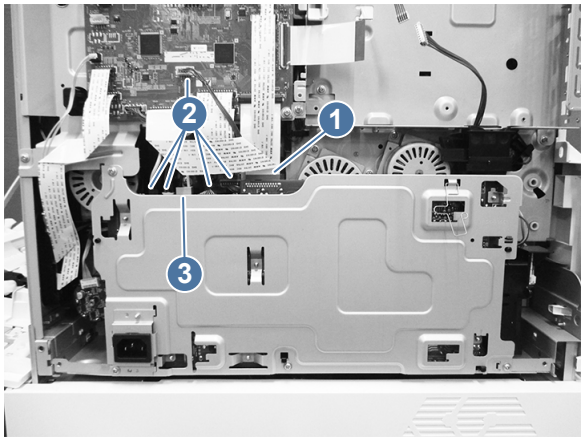
Figure 4-824 Unhook the spring and disconnect two connectors



2. Remove the FFC (callout 1), and then disconnect five connectors (callout 2).

NOTE: **MFP only**: Disconnect one additional connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-825 Disconnect the LVPS connectors

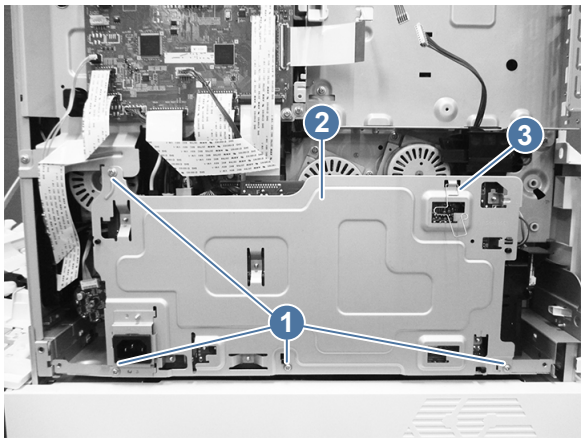


3. Remove four screws (callout 1), and then remove the low-voltage power supply assembly (callout 2).

NOTE: The black ducting in the lower right corner can stick during the removal process.

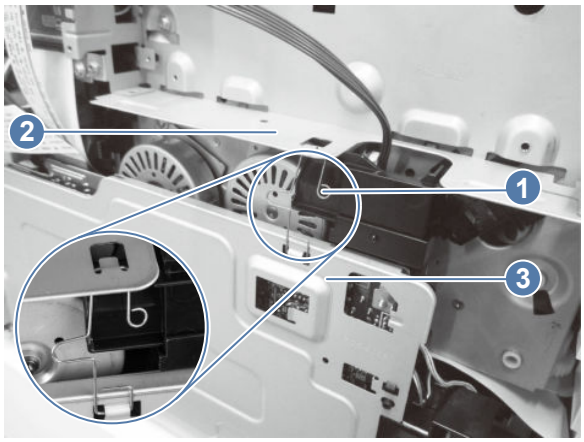
Replacement LVPS only: Remove the spring (callout 3), and then install it on the replacement LVPS.

Figure 4-826 Remove the LVPS



Reinstallation tip: When reinstalling the LVPS, make sure that the spring (callout 1) is attached to both the formatter cage (callout 2) and the LVPS (callout 3).

Figure 4-827 Reinstalling the LVPS

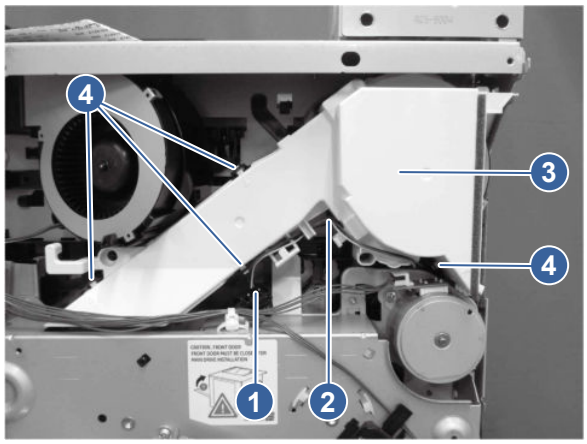


5. Remove the cartridge fan

Follow these steps to remove the cartridge fan.

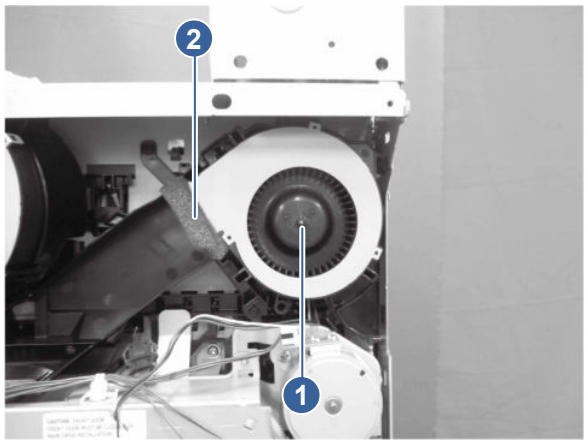
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the fan cover (callout 3), release four tabs (callout 4), and then remove the fan cover.

Figure 4-828 Remove the fan cover



2. Pull out the cartridge fan (callout 1) toward you, and then remove the sponge (callout 2) from the cartridge fan.

Figure 4-829 Remove the fan sponge



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Fuser fan

Learn about removing and replacing the fuser fan.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the fuser fan.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-99 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK3-0762-000CN	Fan (Fuser fan)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

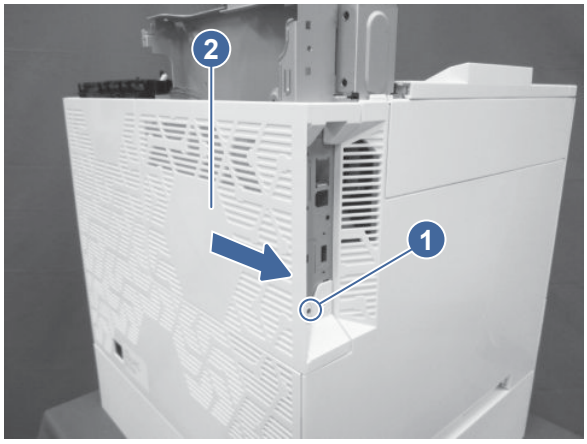
1. Remove the formatter cover

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the formatter cover (callout 2) away from the printer to remove it.

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

Figure 4-830 Remove the formatter cover



2. Remove the formatter cover for printer with the 3 bin stapler/stacker

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cover.

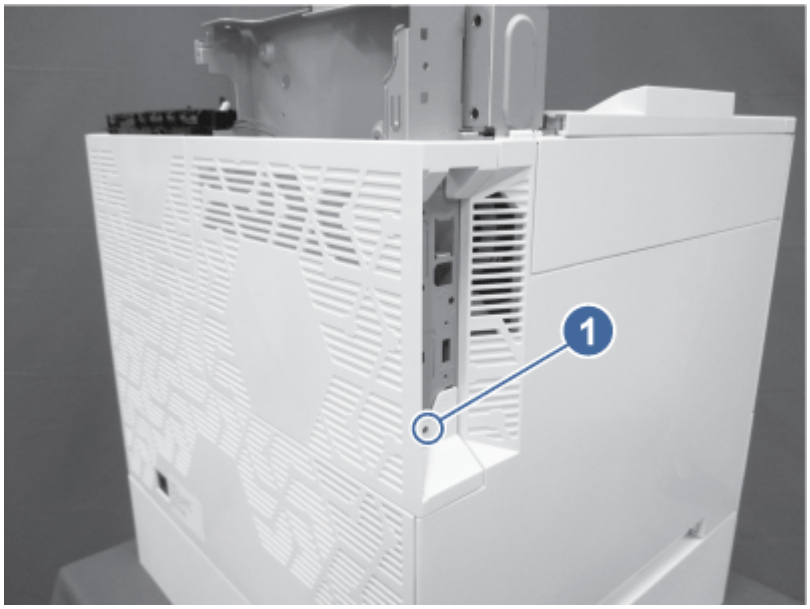
NOTE: This procedure is for the following printers:

X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6081zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs

TIP: Reverse the removal steps to install the assembly.

1. Remove one screw (callout 1).

Figure 4-831 **Remove the screw**



2. Slide the formatter cover away from the printer to remove it.



3. Remove the formatter

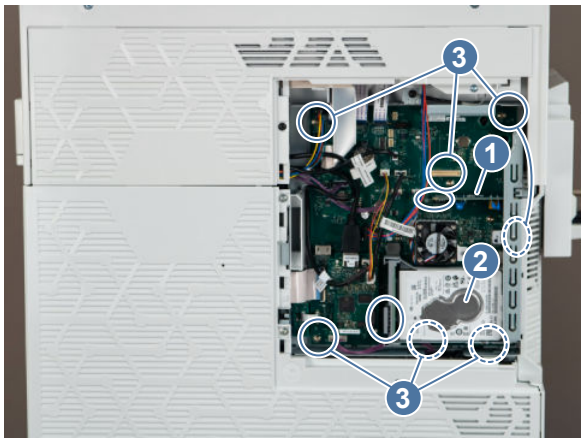
Follow these steps to remove the formatter.

1. Disconnect all of the connectors on the formatter.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the fax PCA (callout 1) and the hard disk drive (HDD) (callout 2), and then remove seven screws (callout 3) to remove the formatter.

Figure 4-832 Remove the formatter



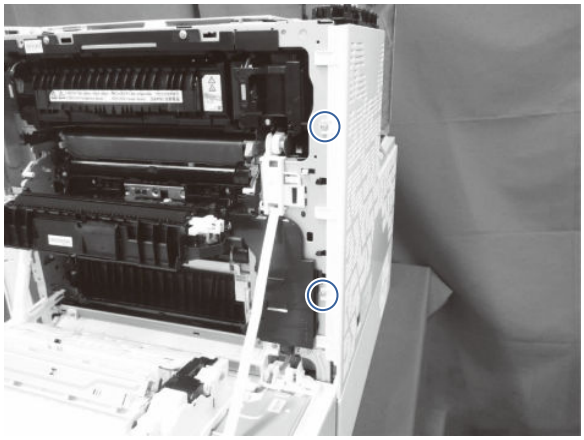
4. Remove the rear cover

Follow these steps to remove the rear cover.

NOTE: The figures below show some assemblies (for example the top cover and formatter) removed that might still be installed on the printer. However, the steps to remove the cover are correct.

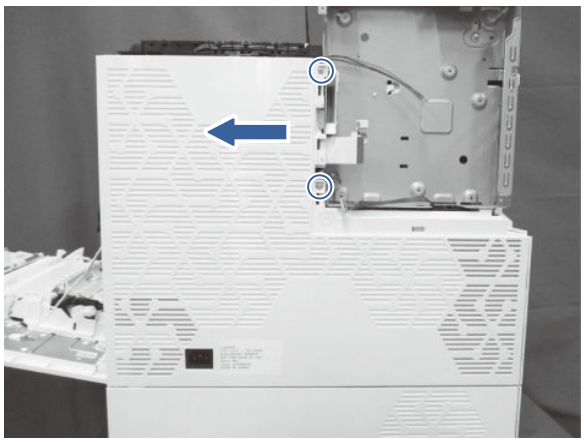
1. Open the right door, and remove two screws.

Figure 4-833 Remove two screws



2. At the back of the printer, remove two screws, and then slide the rear cover as indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-834 Remove the rear cover



5. Remove the formatter cage (SFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

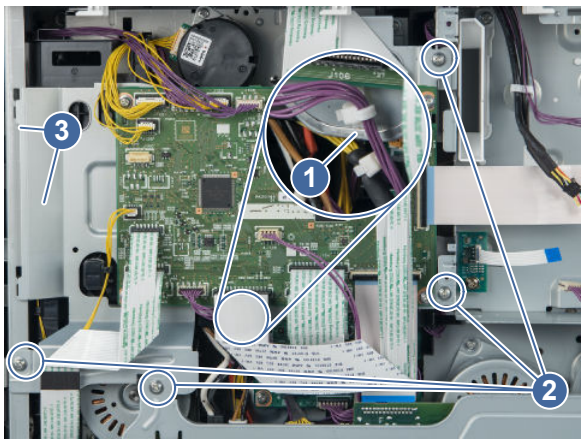
1. Disconnect all the connectors on the DC controller PCA.

IMPORTANT: Some of the flat flexible cable (FFC) connectors use hinged retainers to secure them to the DC controller. The hinged retainers must be opened to release the FFCs.

2. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), remove four screws (callout 2), and then slide the DC controller stay (callout 3) out to remove it.

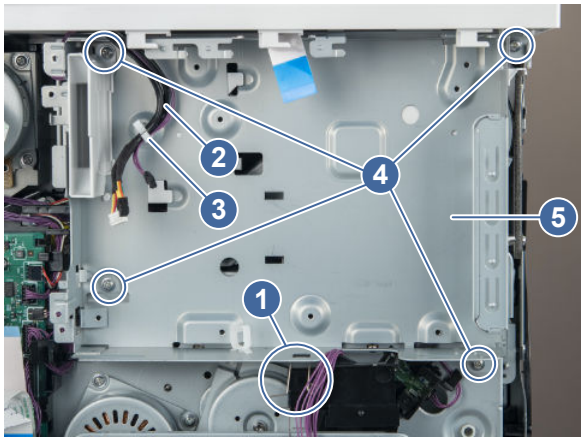
NOTE: Be careful not to drop any of the screws into the low-voltage power supply assembly below the DC controller.

Figure 4-835 Remove the DC controller stay



3. Unhook one spring (callout 1), release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamp (callout 3), remove four screws (callout 4), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 5).

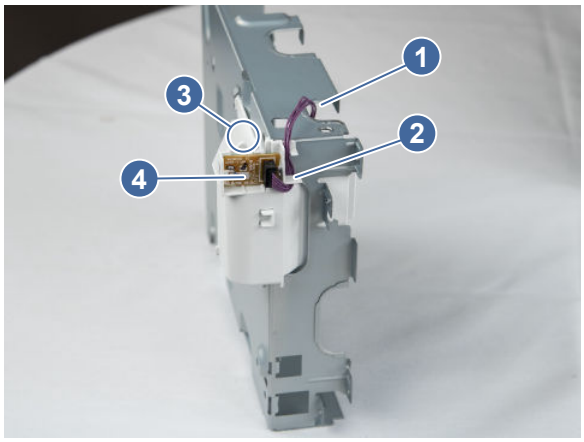
Figure 4-836 Remove the formatter cage



4. **For a replacement formatter cage only:** Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-837 Remove the memory PCA

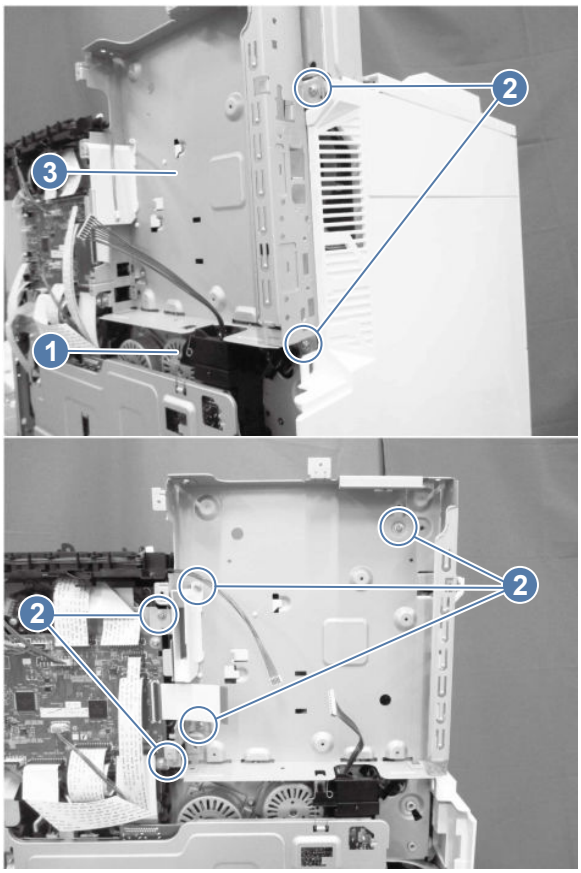


6. Remove the formatter cage (MFP models)

Follow these steps to remove the formatter cage.

1. Unhook one spring (callout 1), remove seven screws (callout 2), and then remove the formatter cage (callout 3).

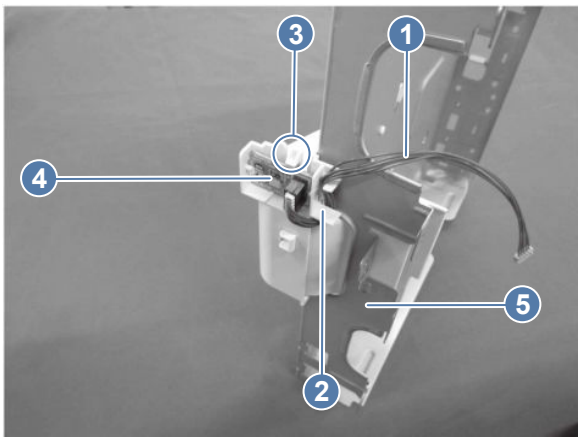
Figure 4-838 Remove the formatter cage



2. **For a replacement formatter cage only**: Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the memory PCA (callout 4) from the formatter cage (callout 5).

NOTE: Install the PCA on the replacement formatter cage.

Figure 4-839 Remove the memory PCA

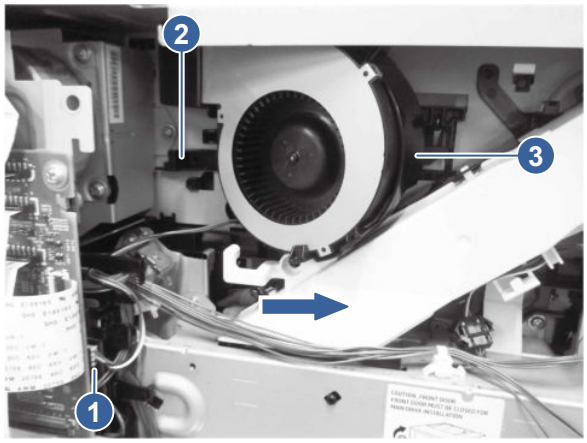


7. Remove the fuser fan

Follow these steps to remove the fuser fan.

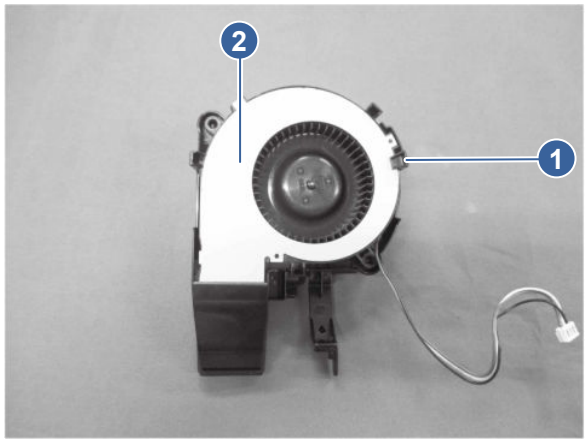
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), slide the fan holder (callout 3) in the direction indicated, and then pull the fan holder (callout 3) out of the printer.

Figure 4-840 **Remove the fan holder**



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the fuser fan (callout 2).

Figure 4-841 **Remove the fan from the holder**



8. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder

Learn how to remove and replace the 550-sheet paper feeder parts and assemblies.

Field-replaceable units (FRUs)

Learn about FRU parts removal and replacement.

Covers, panels, and doors

Learn about covers, panels, and doors removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Front left cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder left cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-100 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9200-000CN	Cover, front left (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

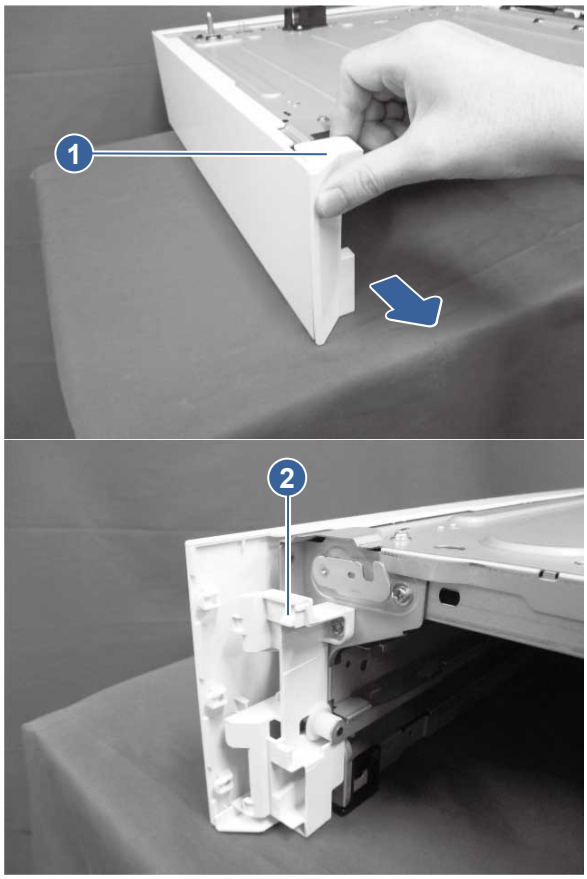
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front left cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

   Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front left cover.

- Flex the upper part of the front left cover (callout 1) in the direction indicated, release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the front left cover upward to remove it.

  Figure 4-842 Remove the front left cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder front right cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-101 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9201-000CN	Cover, front right (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

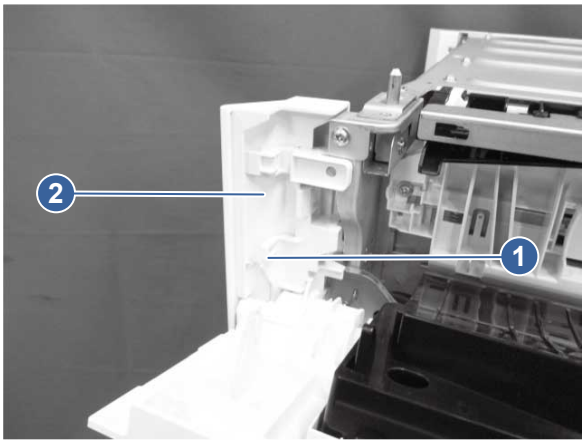
1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-843 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper right door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-102 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0004-000CN	Right door assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

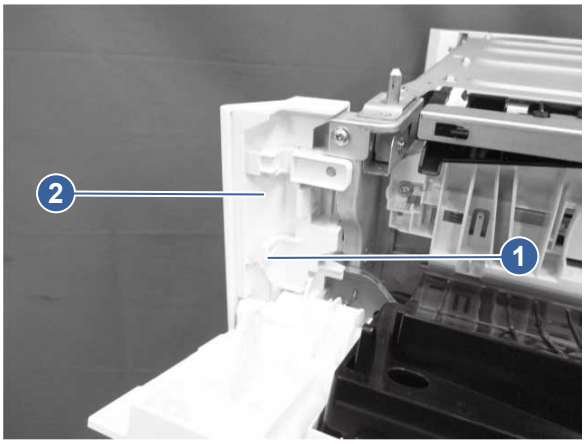
1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-844 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

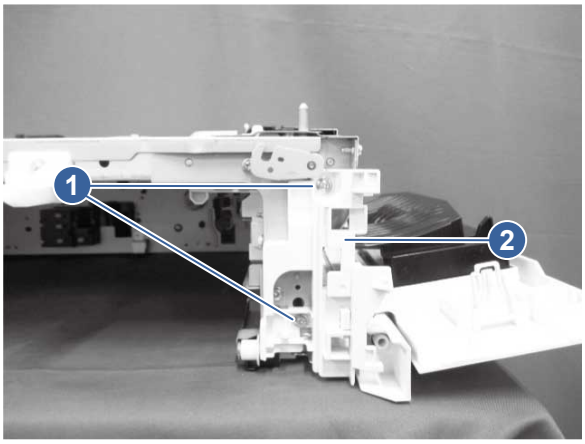


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

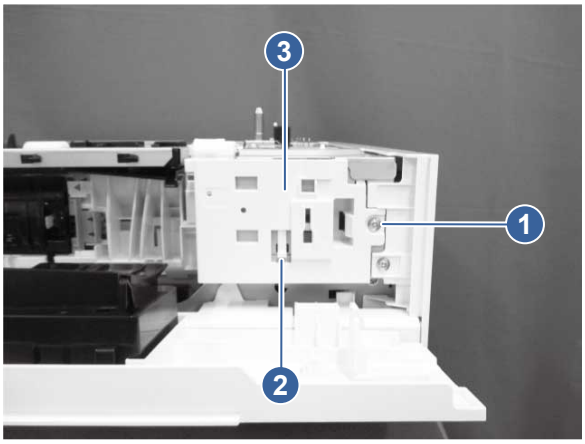
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-845 **Remove the base frame**



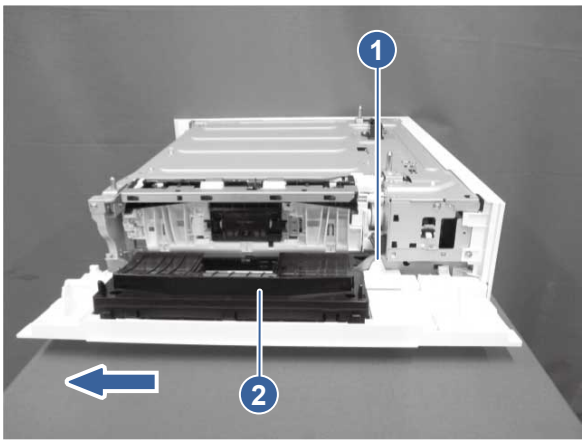
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-846 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-847 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-103 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9409-000CN	Cover, rear (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

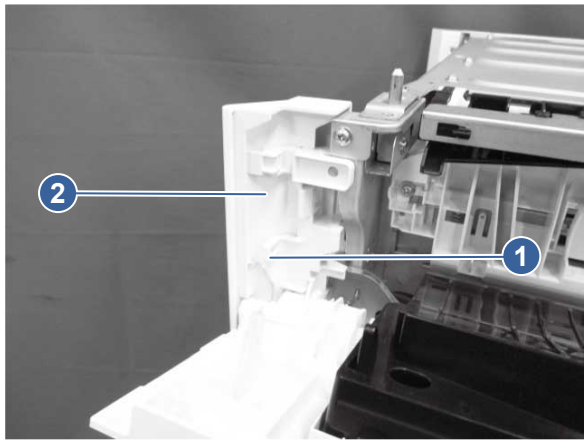
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-848 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

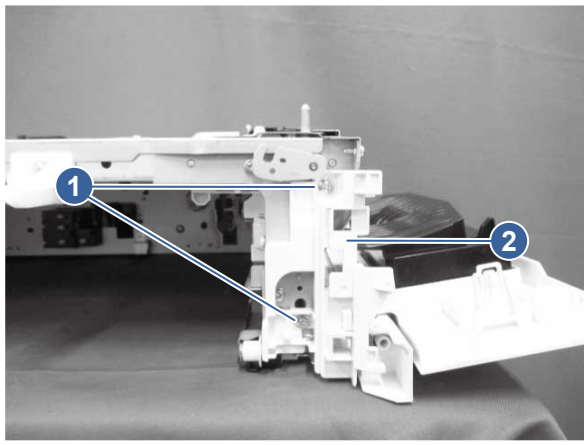


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

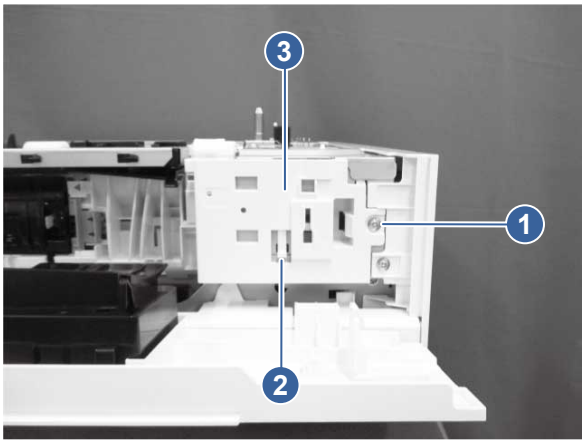
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-849 **Remove the base frame**



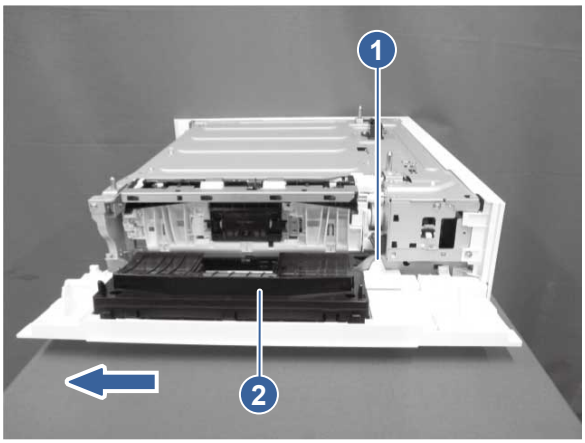
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-850 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-851 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

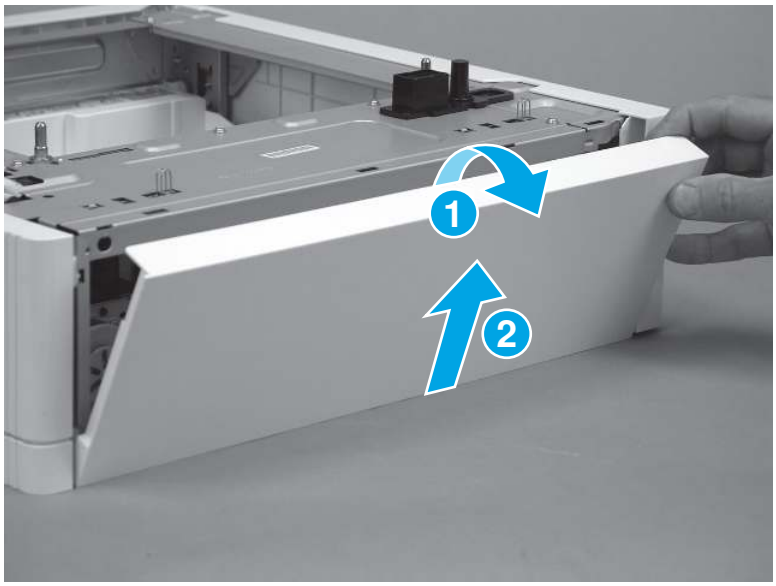


3. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-852 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Left cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder left cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-104 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9408-000CN	Cover, left (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

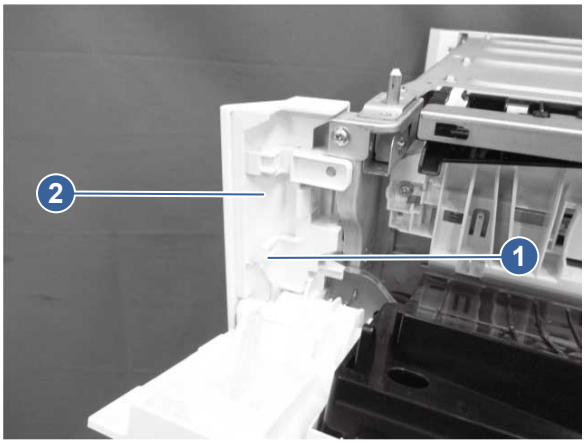
1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-853 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

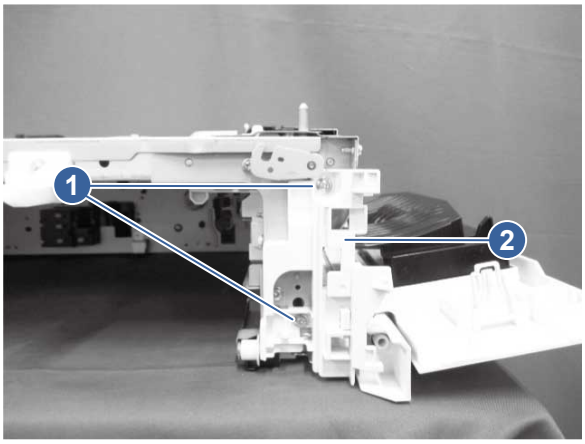


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

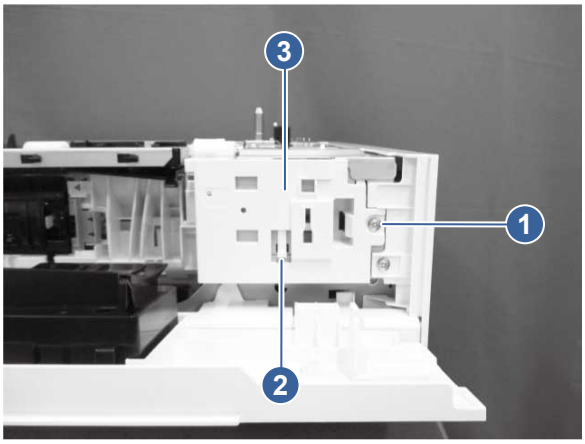
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-854 **Remove the base frame**



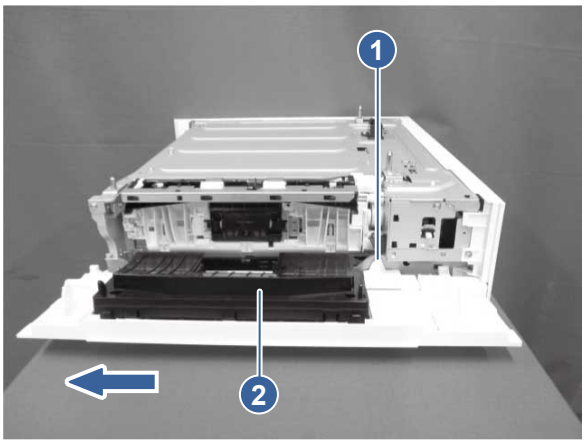
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-855 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-856 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

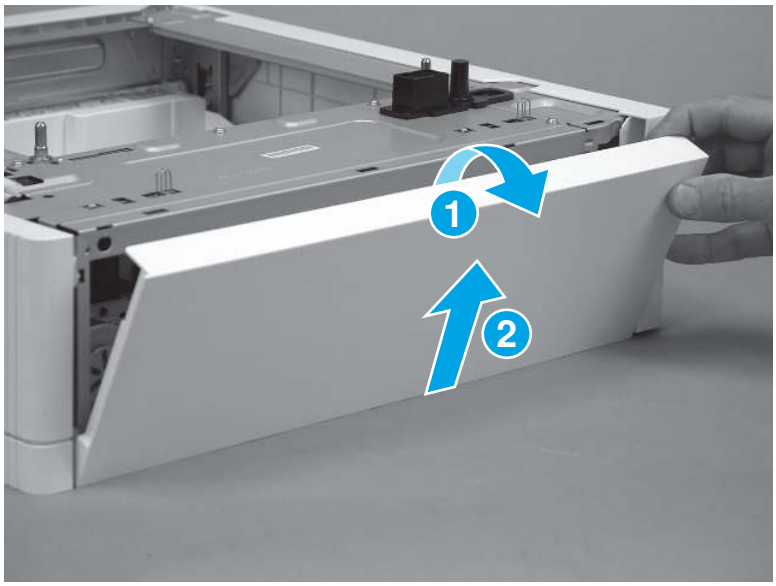


3. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-857 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

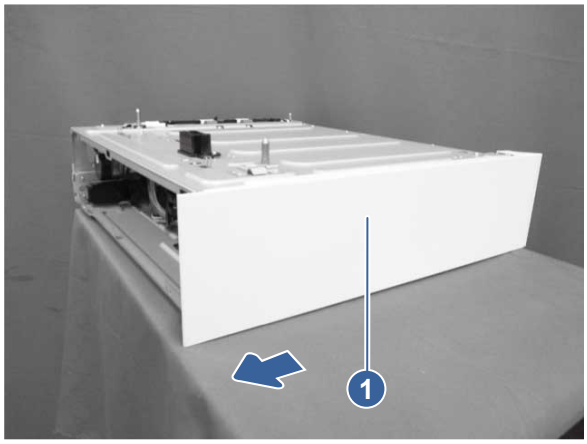


4. Remove the left cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray left cover.

- Slide the left cover (callout 1) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-858 Remove the left cover



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Internal parts and assemblies

Learn how to remove and replace the printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Pickup assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder pickup assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-105 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3617-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

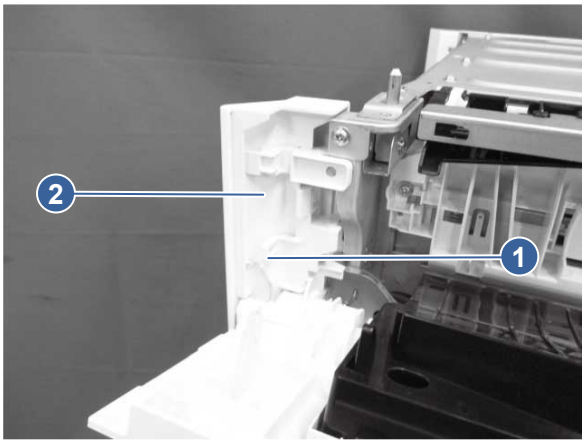
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-859 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

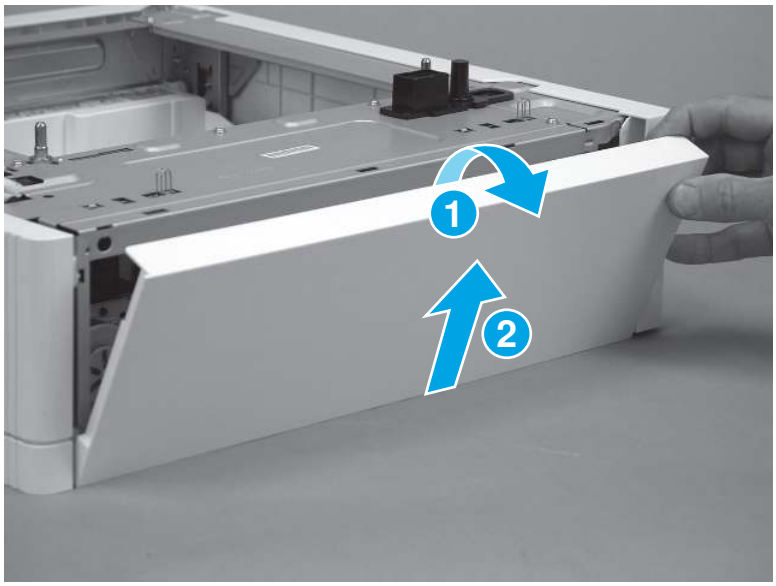


2. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-860 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

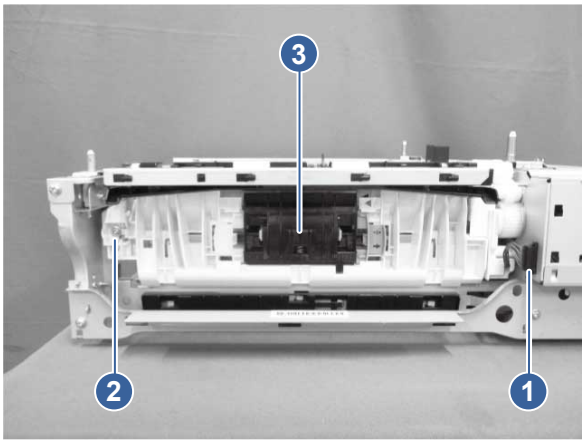


3. Remove the paper pickup assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the paper pickup assembly.

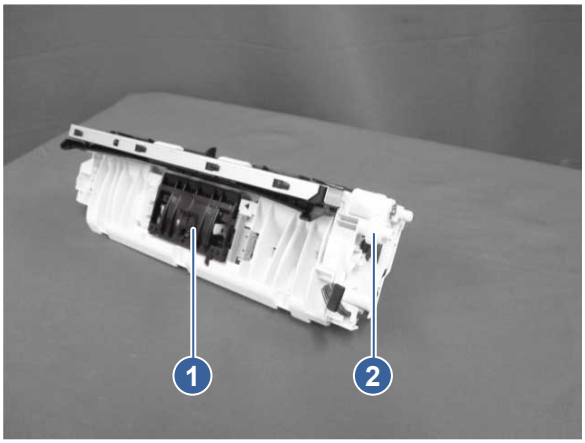
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-861 Remove the assembly



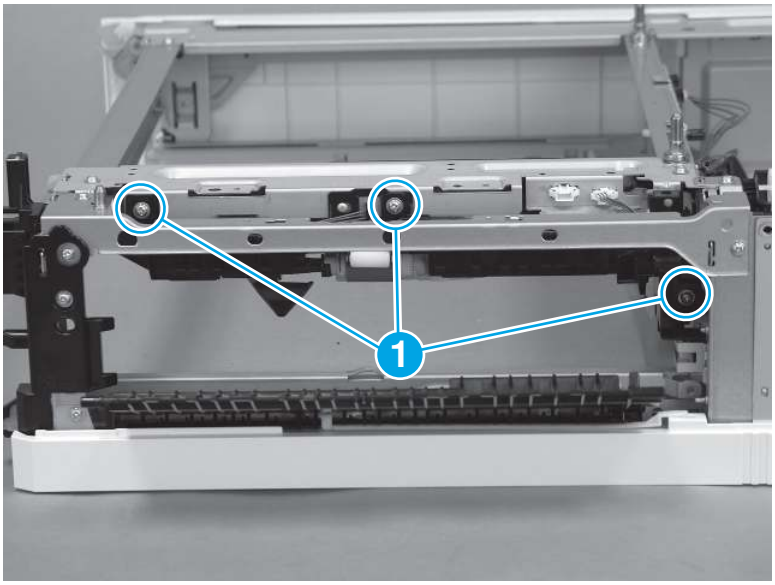
2. Remove the gear (callout 1) from the pickup assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-862 Disconnect one connector



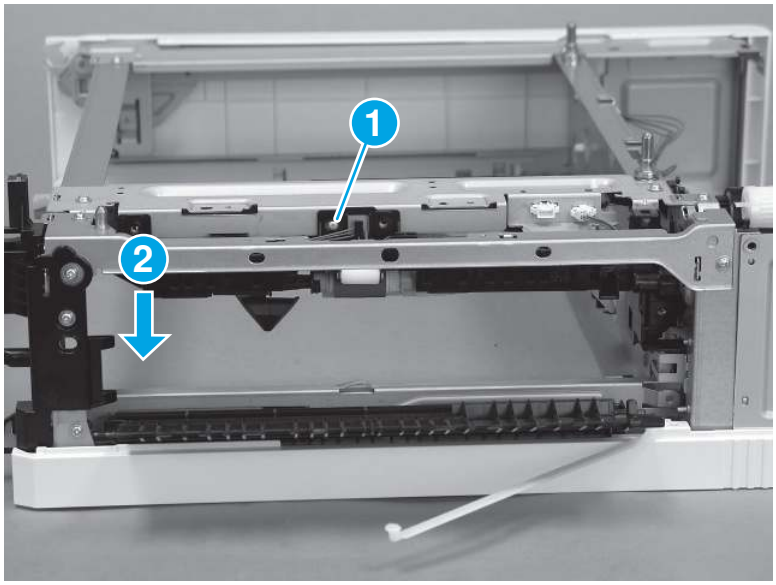
3. Remove three screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-863 Remove three screws



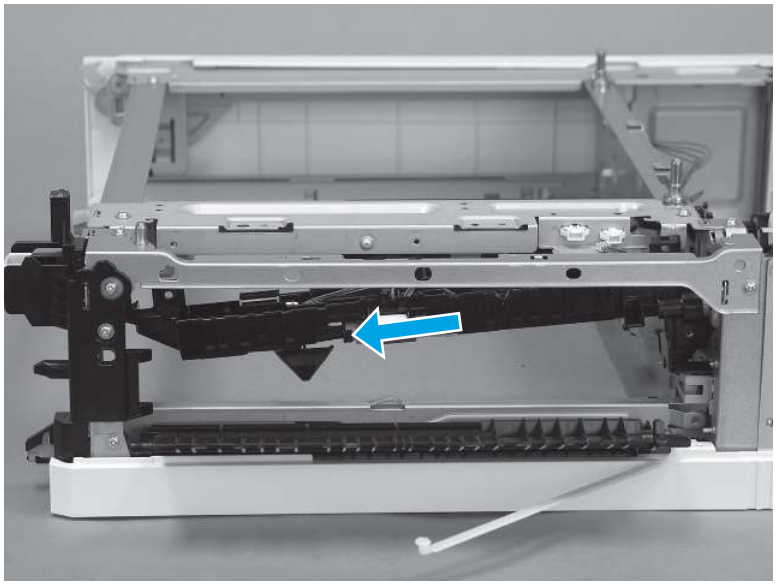
4. Release one alignment pins (callout 1), and then lower the left end of the assembly (callout 2)—the end near the tray cavity.

Figure 4-864 Lower the end of the assembly



5. Slide the paper pickup assembly to the left to release it from the drive gear on the lifter drive assembly.

Figure 4-865 Release the assembly from the drive gear



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder lifter drive assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the lifter drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-106 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3501-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

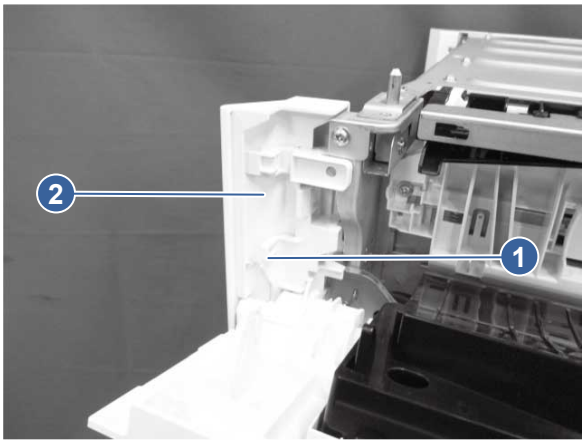
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-866 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

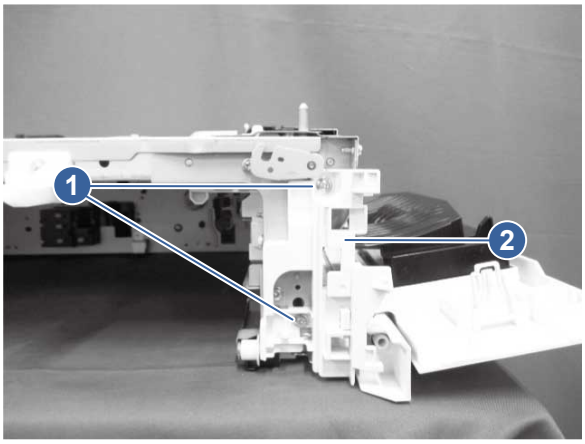


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

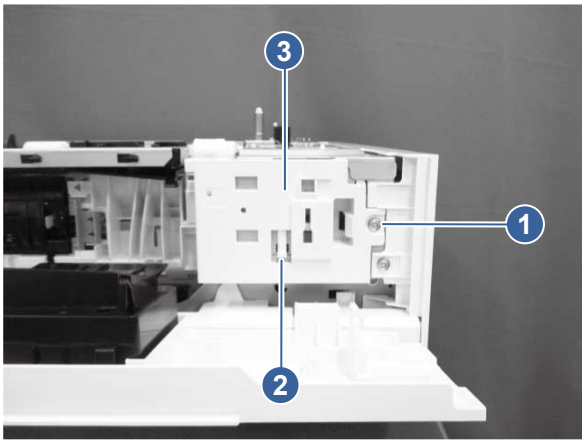
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-867 **Remove the base frame**



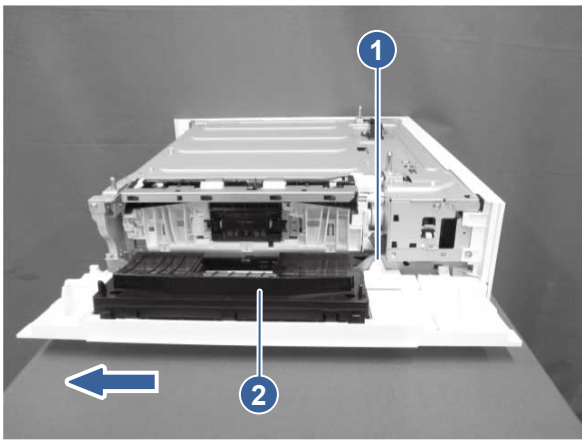
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-868 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-869 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

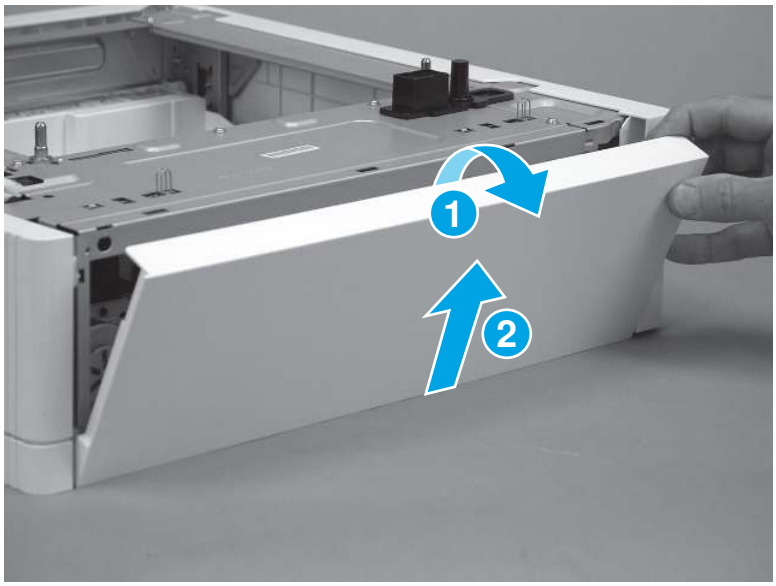


3. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-870 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

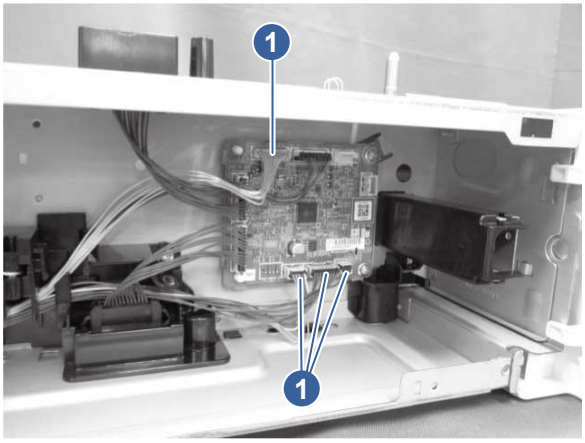


4. Remove the lifter drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the lifter drive assembly.

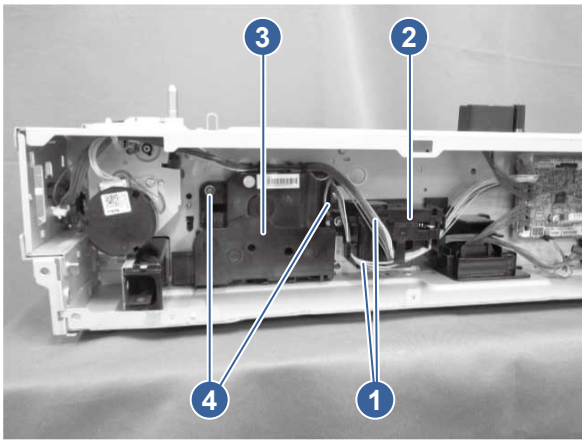
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-871 Disconnect four connectors



2. Release cables (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2).and the lifter drive assembly (callout 3). Remove two screws (callout 4), and then remove the lifter drive assembly.

Figure 4-872 **Remove the lifter drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)**



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder pickup drive assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the pickup drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-107 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3617-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

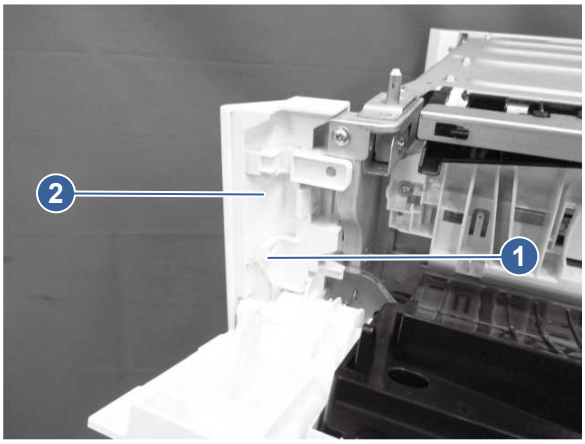
1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-873 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

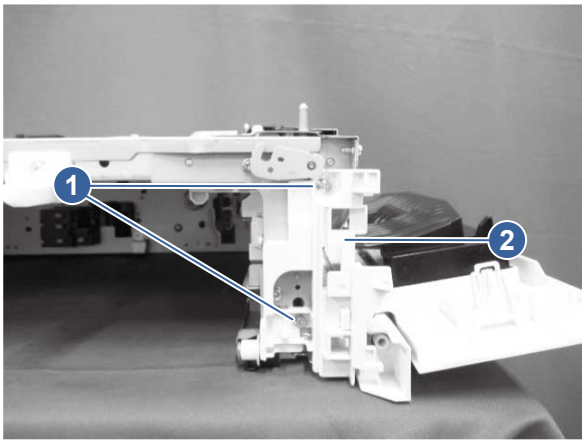


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

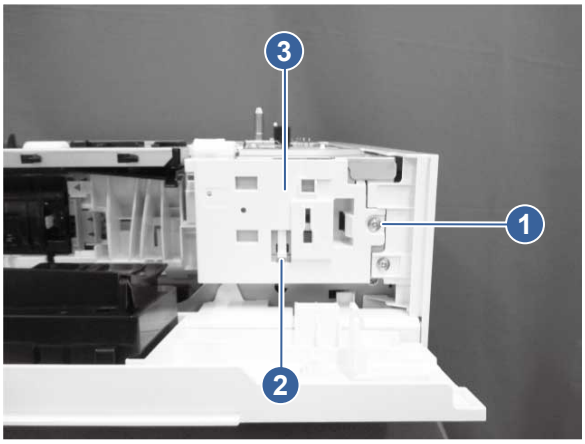
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-874 **Remove the base frame**



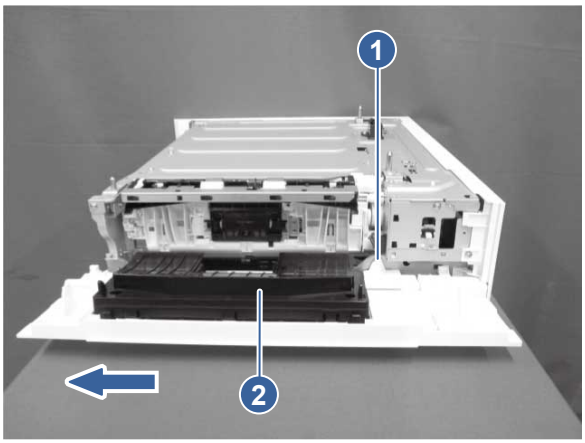
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-875 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-876 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

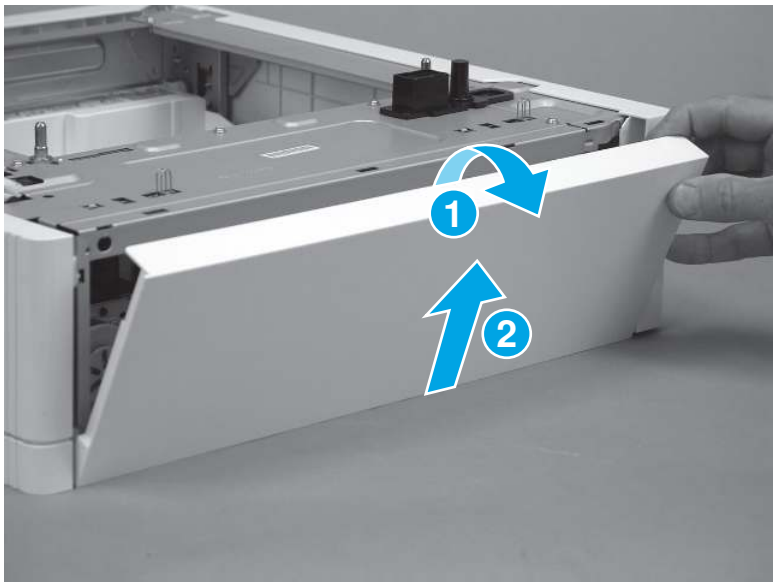


3. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-877 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

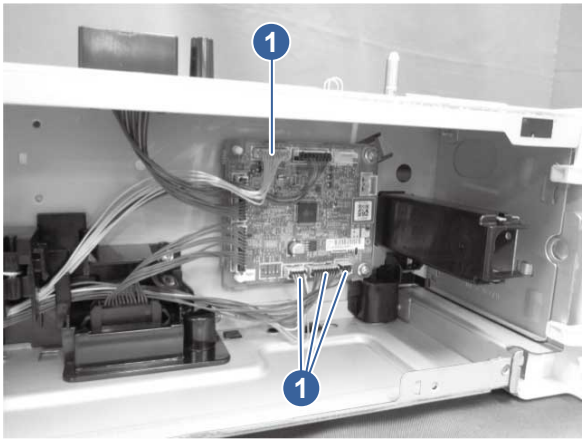


4. Remove the pickup drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the pickup drive assembly.

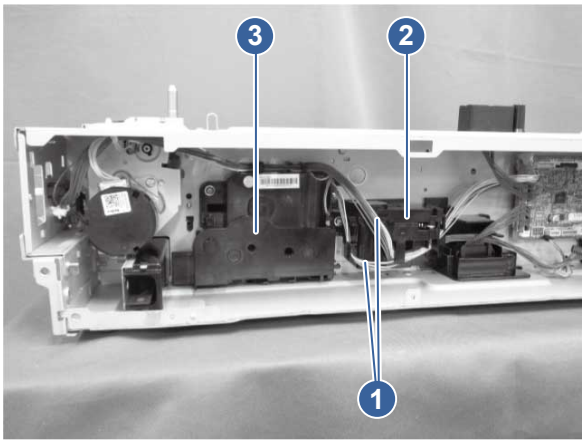
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-878 Disconnect four connectors



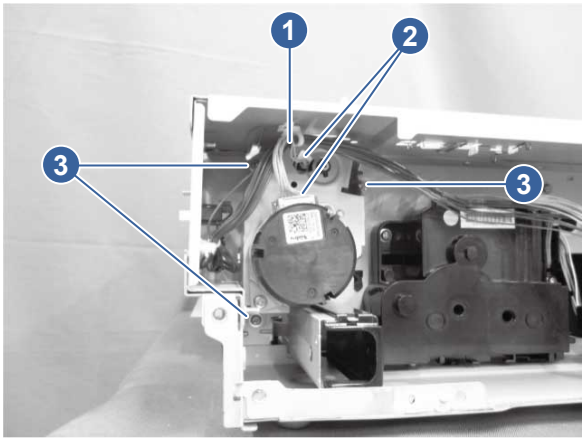
2. Release the cables (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2) and the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-879 Release the cables



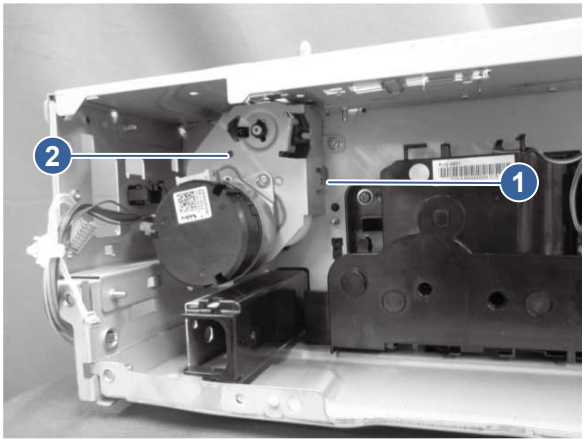
3. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws (callout 3).

Figure 4-880 Remove the cable clamp



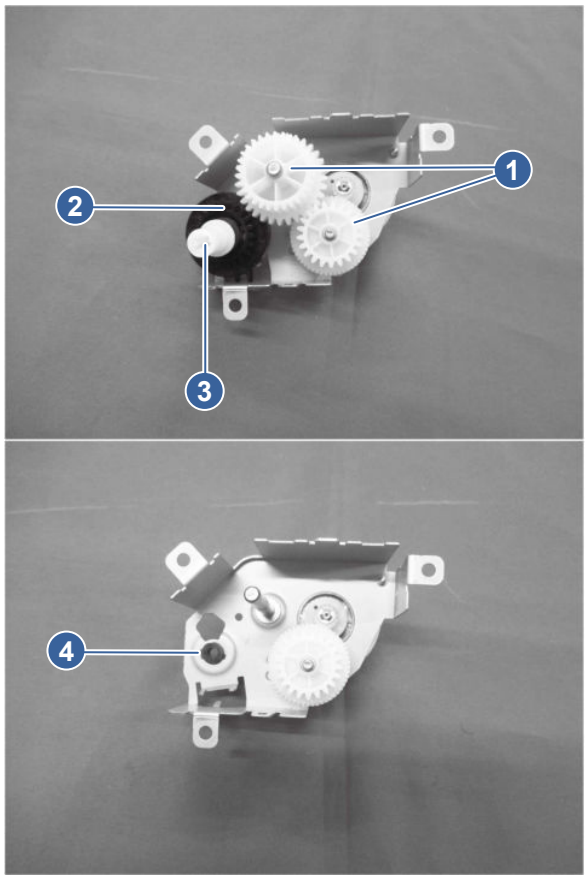
4. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-881 Remove the pickup drive assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)



Reinstallation tip: The indicated gears (callout 1), clutch (callout 2), shaft (callout 3), and bushing (callout 4) are not fixed to the assembly plate. Ensure that these components do not fall apart when installing or removing the paper pickup drive assembly.

Figure 4-882 Do not lose unfastened components



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder auto close assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the auto close assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-108 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3559-000CN	Auto close assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

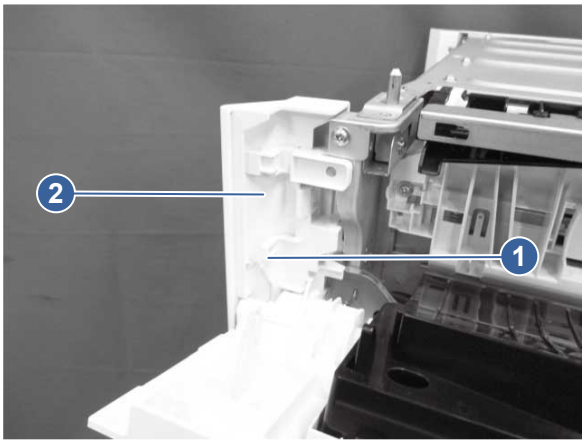
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-883 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

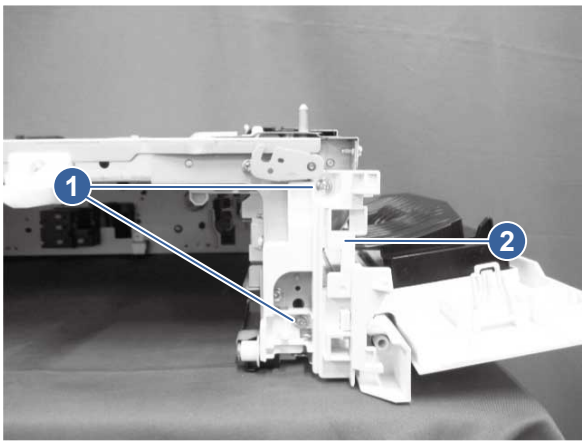


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

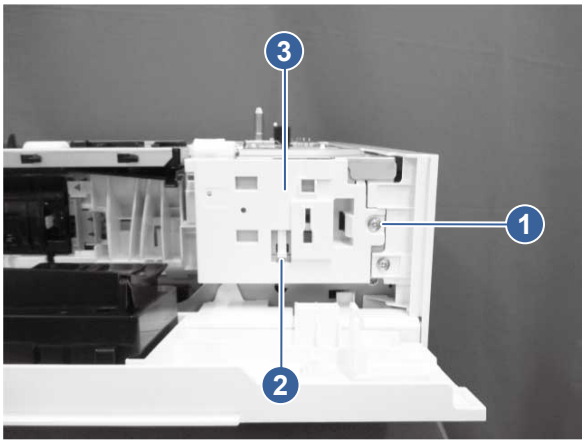
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-884 **Remove the base frame**



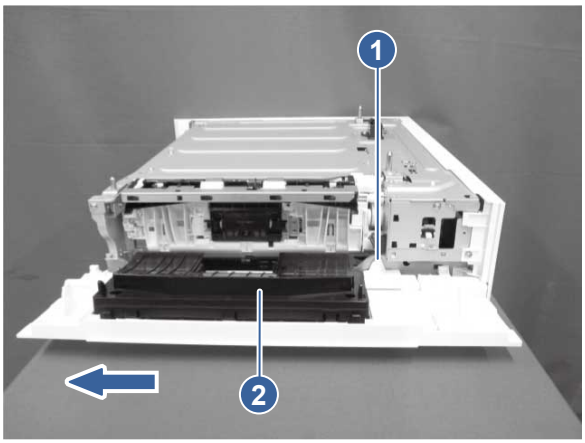
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-885 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-886 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

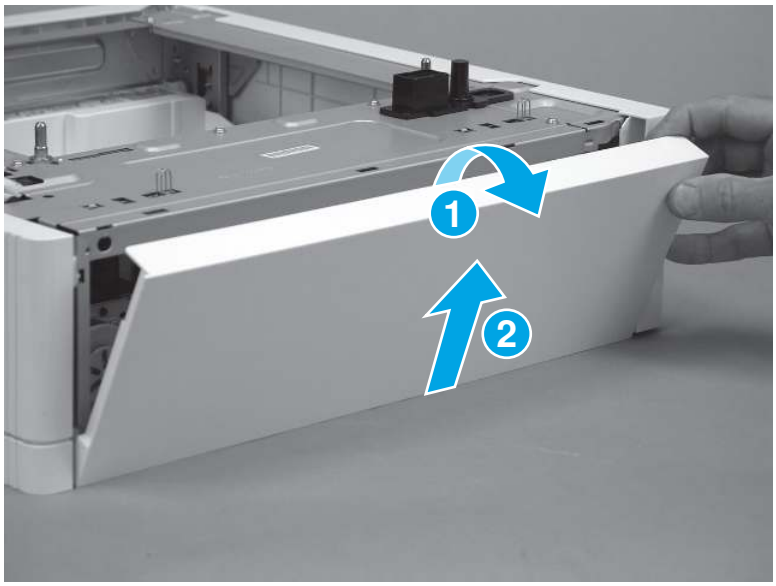


3. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-887 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

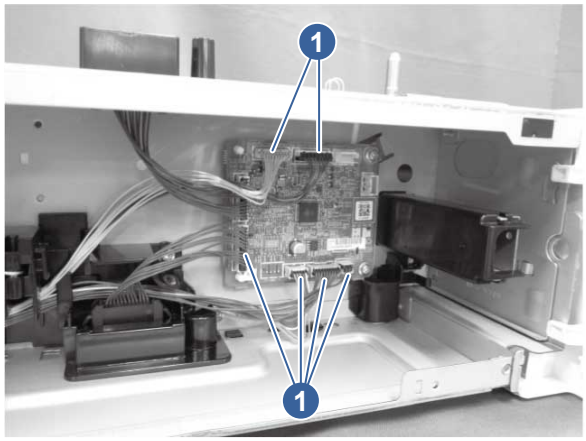


4. Remove the auto close assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

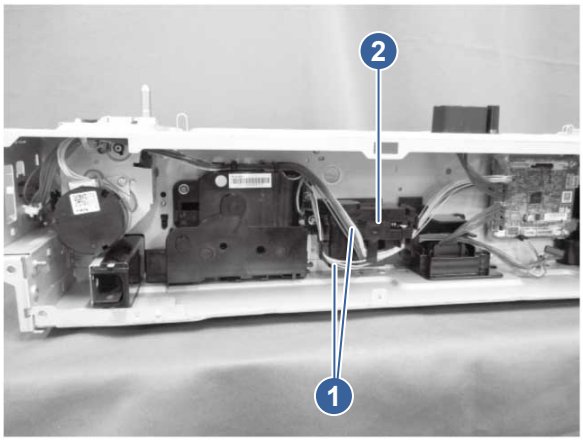
1. Disconnect six connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-888 Disconnect six connectors



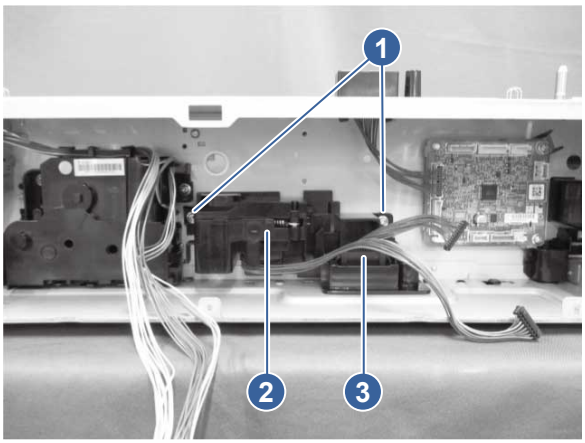
2. Release the cables (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-889 Release the cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the auto close assembly (callout 2), and then remove the drawer connector (callout 3) from the auto close assembly.

Figure 4-890 Remove the assembly



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Media size detection assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder media size detection assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the media size detection assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-109 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3614-000CN	Size detect assembly (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

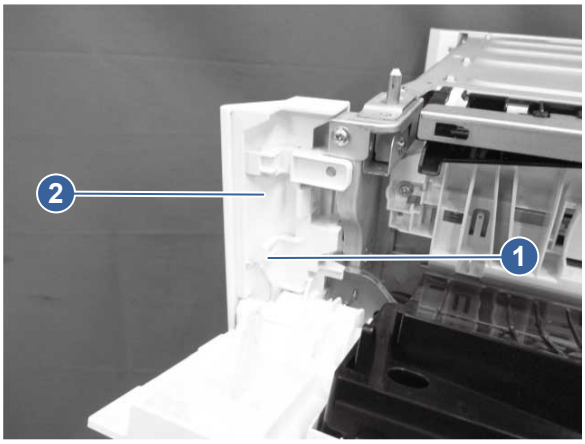
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-891 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

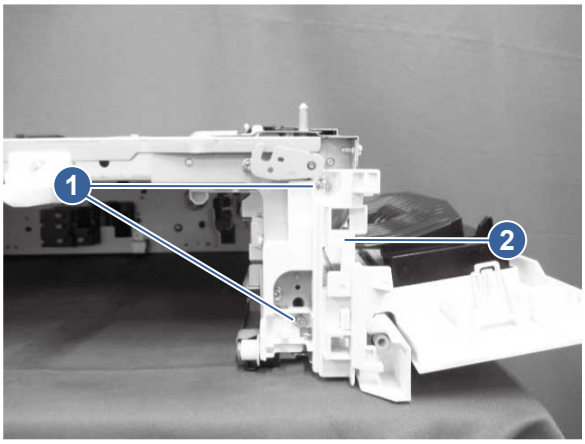


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

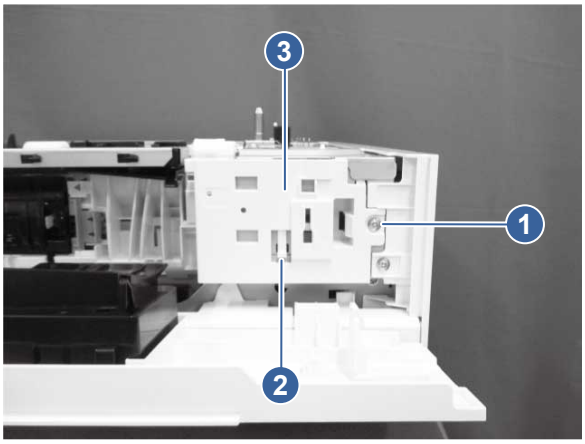
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-892 **Remove the base frame**



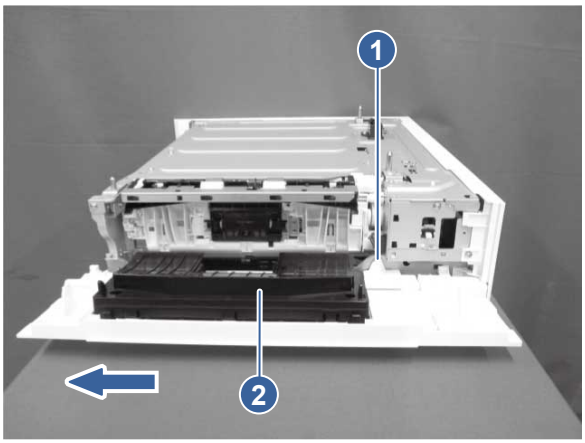
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-893 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-894 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

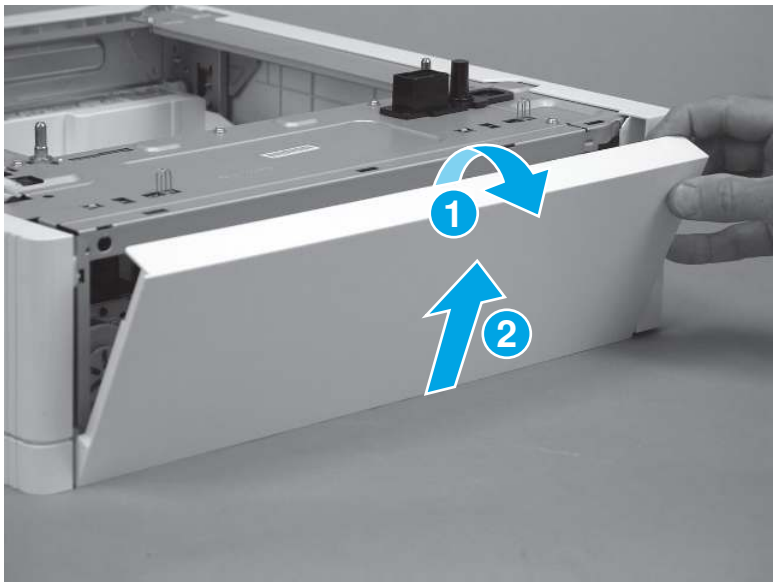


3. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-895 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

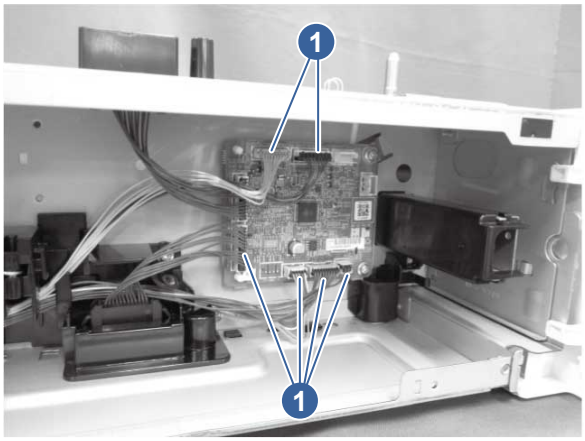


4. Remove the auto close assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the auto close assembly.

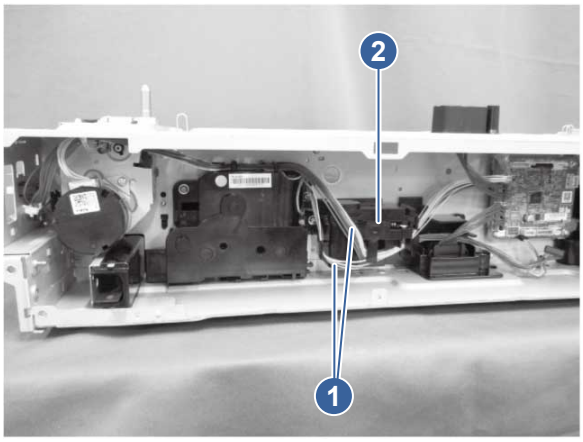
1. Disconnect six connectors (callout 1).

Figure 4-896 Disconnect six connectors



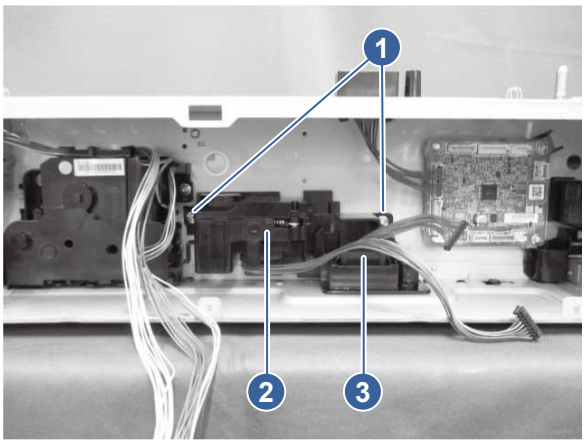
2. Release the cables (callout 1) from the auto close assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-897 Release the cables



3. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove the auto close assembly (callout 2), and then remove the drawer connector (callout 3) from the auto close assembly.

Figure 4-898 Remove the assembly

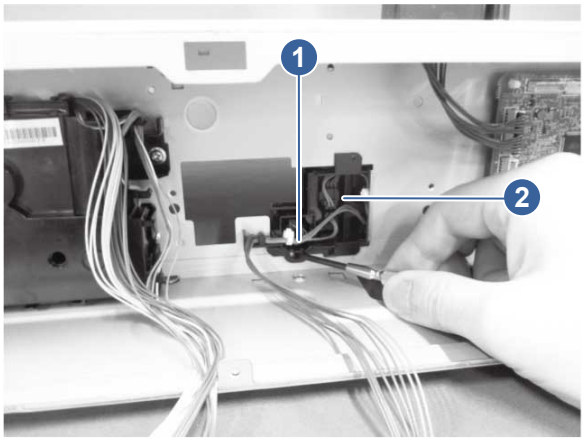


5. Remove the media size detection assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the media size detection assembly.

- Release one tab (callout 1), and then pull the media size detect assembly (callout 2) toward you to remove it.

Figure 4-899 Release one tab



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Controller PCA (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper-feeder controller PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-110 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-8051-000CN	Paper feeder controller PCA (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

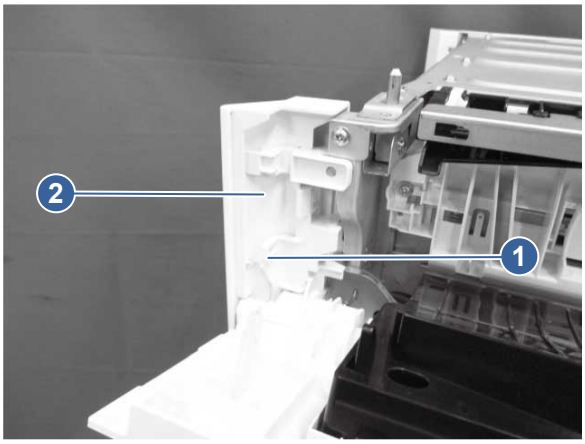
1. Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray front right cover.

1. Open the paper feeder right door.

2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the front right cover (callout 2) upward to remove it.

Figure 4-900 **Remove the front right cover (550-sheet paper feeder)**

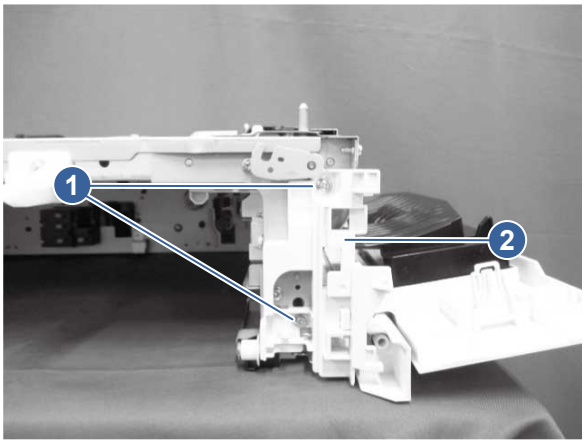


2. Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray right door.

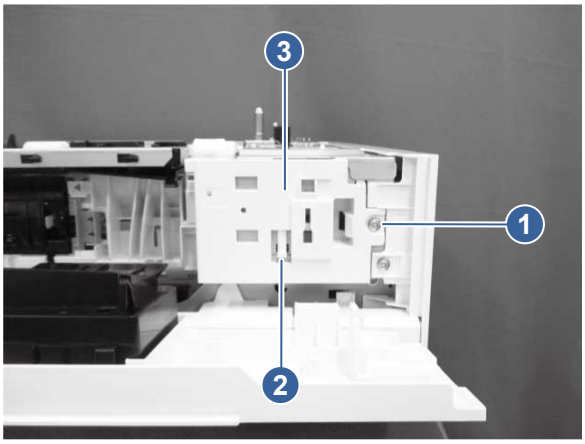
1. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the base frame (callout 2).

Figure 4-901 **Remove the base frame**



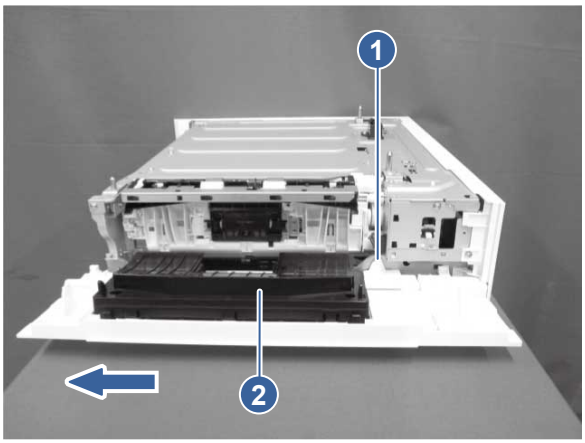
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the rear inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-902 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right door assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-903 Remove the right door (550-sheet paper feeder)

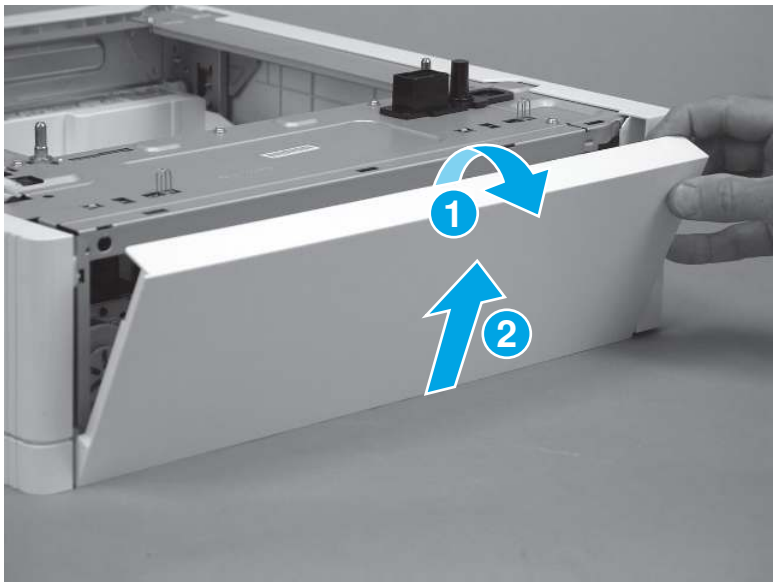


3. Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the 550-sheet tray rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-904 Remove the rear cover (550-sheet paper feeder)

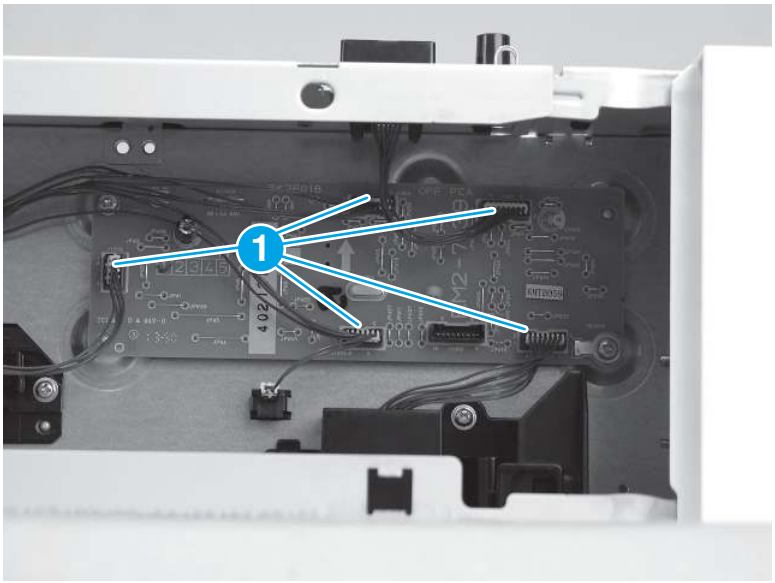


4. Remove the controller PCA (550-sheet paper feeder)

Follow these steps to remove the controller PCA.

- Disconnect all the connectors on the paper feeder controller PCA, remove two screws (callout 1), remove two PCA spacers (callout 2), and then remove the paper feeder controller PCA (callout 3).

Figure 4-905 Remove the controller PCA (550-sheet paper feeder)



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Separation roller assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder separation roller assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-111 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527H2A	6QN29-67011	HP LaserJet Tray 2-x Roller Kit (1x550-sheet paper feeder)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

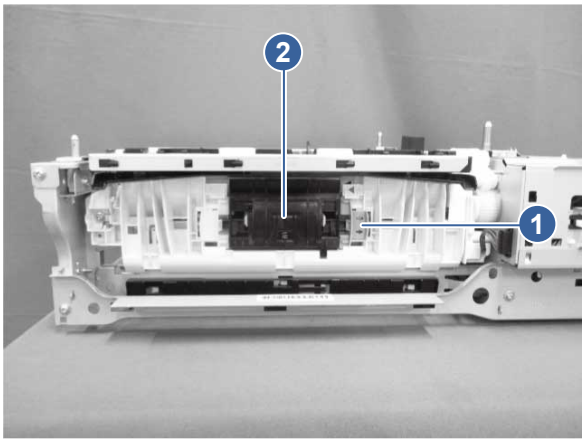
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the separation roller assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing the 550-sheet paper feeder separation roller assembly.

1. Open the right door.
2. Slide the lever (callout 1) to the right, and then remove the roller assembly (callout 2) by pulling it out from the printer.

Figure 4-906 **Remove the roller assembly**



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup roller assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing and replacing the paper feeder pickup roller assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-112 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527H2A	6QN29-67011	HP LaserJet Tray 2-x Roller Kit

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

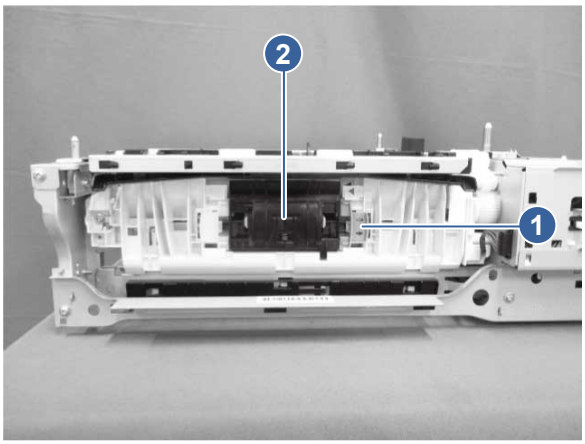
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the separation roller assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing the 550-sheet paper feeder separation roller assembly.

1. Open the right door.
2. Slide the lever (callout 1) to the right, and then remove the roller assembly (callout 2) by pulling it out from the printer.

Figure 4-907 **Remove the roller assembly**



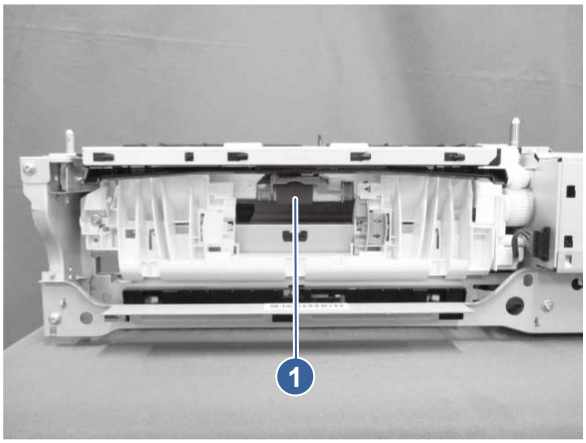
2. Remove the paper pickup roller assembly (550-sheet paper feeder)

Learn about removing the 550-sheet paper feeder pickup rollers.

NOTE: Even if you want to replace only the pickup roller assembly, you must first remove the separation roller assembly.

- Locate the pickup roller assembly (callout 1) and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-908 **Remove the pickup roller assembly**



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: 2,100-sheet paper deck

Learn how to remove and replace the 2,100-sheet paper deck parts and assemblies.

Field-replaceable units (FRUs)

Learn about FRU parts removal and replacement.

Covers, panels, and doors

Learn about covers, panels, and doors removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Right door (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI right door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-113 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0035-000CN	Right door assembly (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

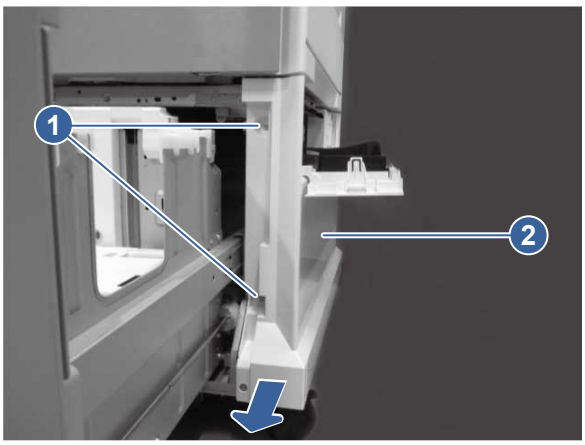
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-909 Remove the right door (HCI)



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Front left cover/left cover (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI front left cover/left cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-114 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9696-000CN	Cover, front left (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Table 4-114 Part information (continued)

Part number	Part description
RC5-9692-000CN	Cover, left (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

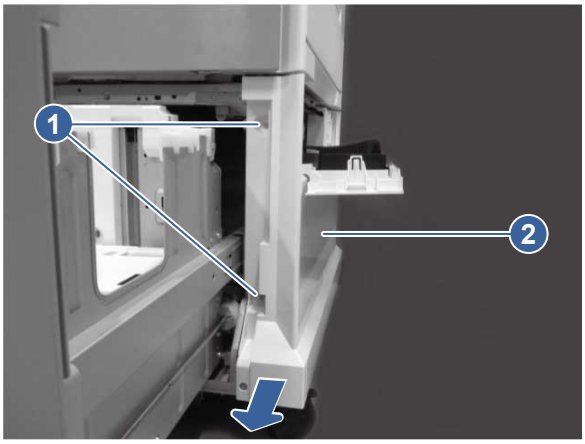
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-910 Remove the right door (HCI)

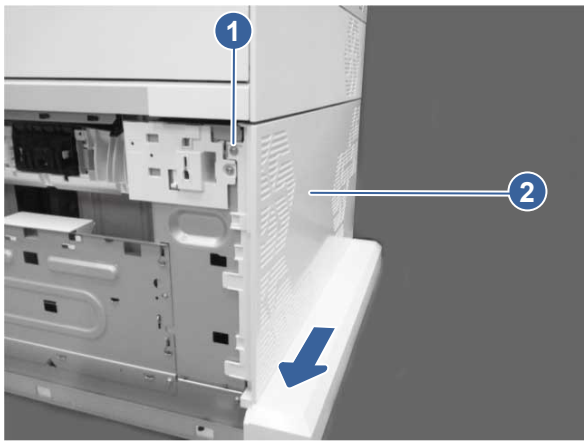


2. Remove the rear cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-911 Remove the rear cover (HCI)

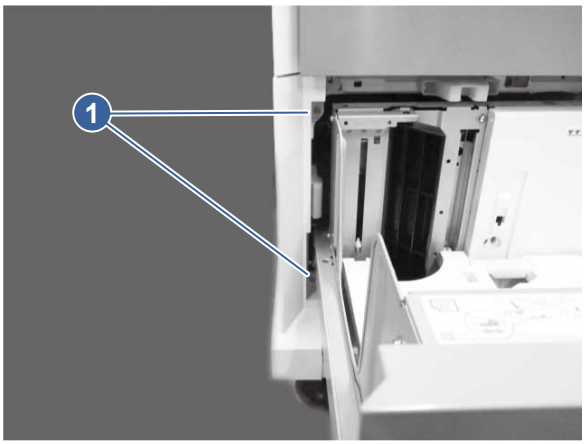


3. Remove the front left cover/left cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI front left cover/left cover.

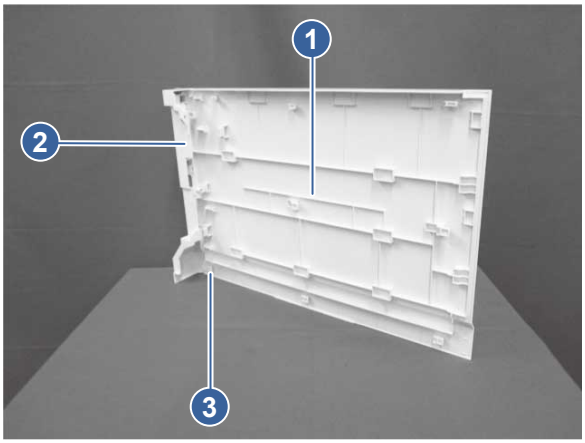
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-912 Remove two screws



2. Remove the left cover (callout 1) together with the front left cover (callout 2). Release one tab (callout 3), and then slide the front left cover upward to remove it from the left cover.

Figure 4-913 **Remove the front left cover from the left cover (HCI)**



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-115 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9693-000CN	Cover, rear (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

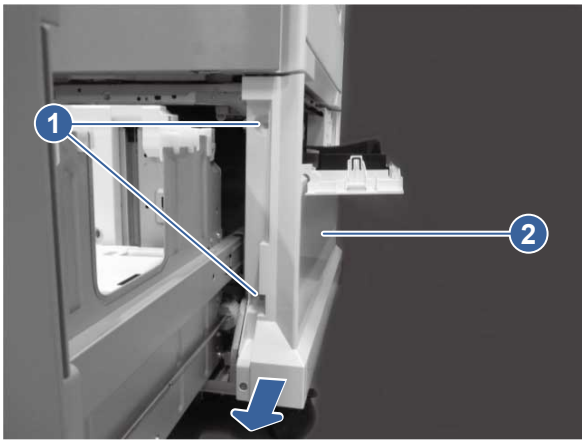
1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.

2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-914 Remove the right door (HCI)

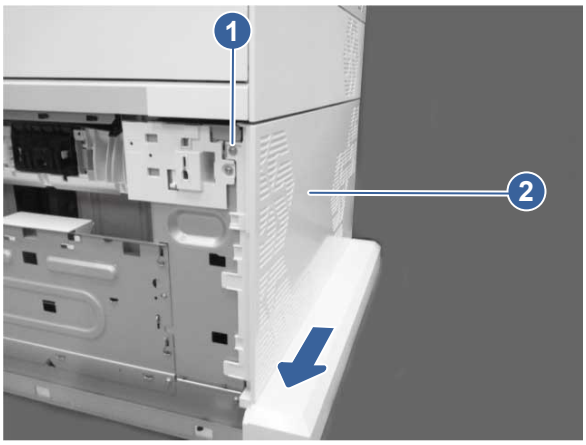


2. Remove the rear cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-915 Remove the rear cover (HCI)



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear lower cover (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI rear lower cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-116 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC5-9695-000CN	Cover, rear lower (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

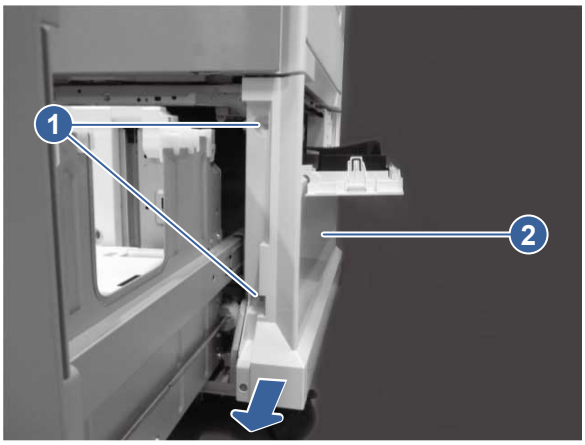
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-916 **Remove the right door (HCI)**

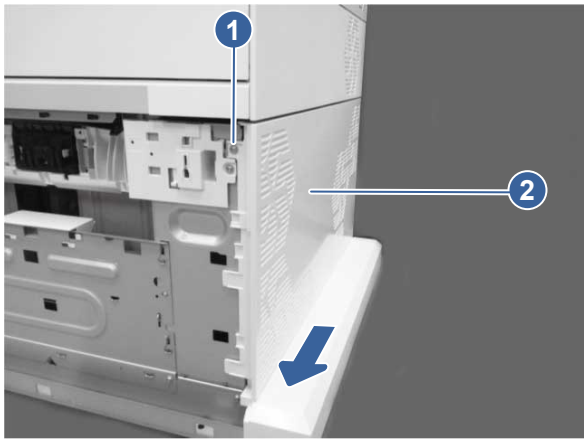


2. Remove the rear cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-917 **Remove the rear cover (HCI)**

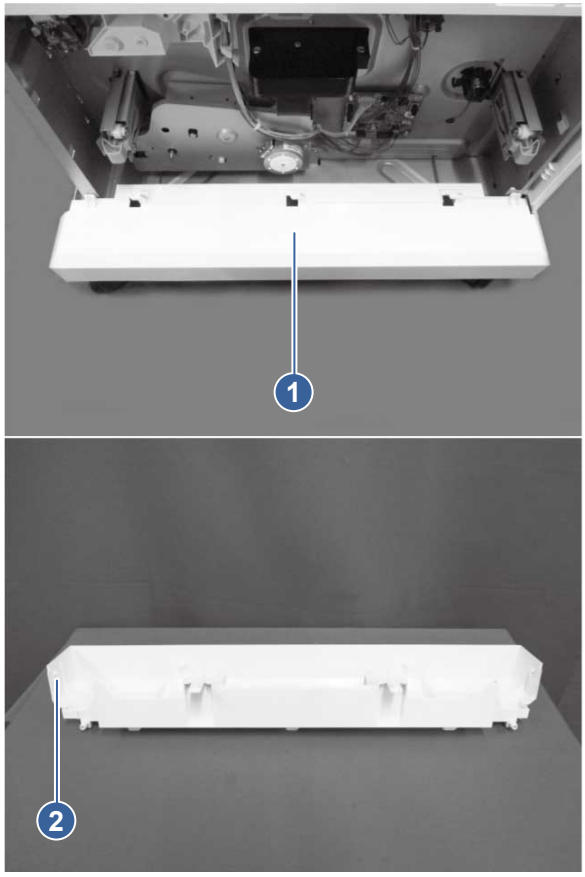


3. Remove the rear lower cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI rear lower cover.

- Bend the left edge of the rear lower cover (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then pull the rear lower cover toward you from the left end of it to remove it.

Figure 4-918 **Remove the rear lower cover (HCI)**



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Internal parts and assemblies

Learn how to remove and replace the printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Cassette assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI cassette.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-117 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0023-000CN	Tray assembly (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

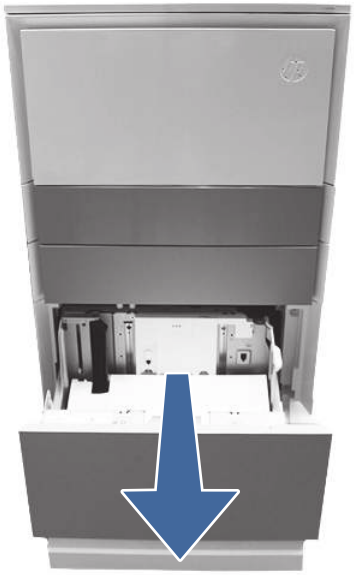
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the cassette (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI cassette.

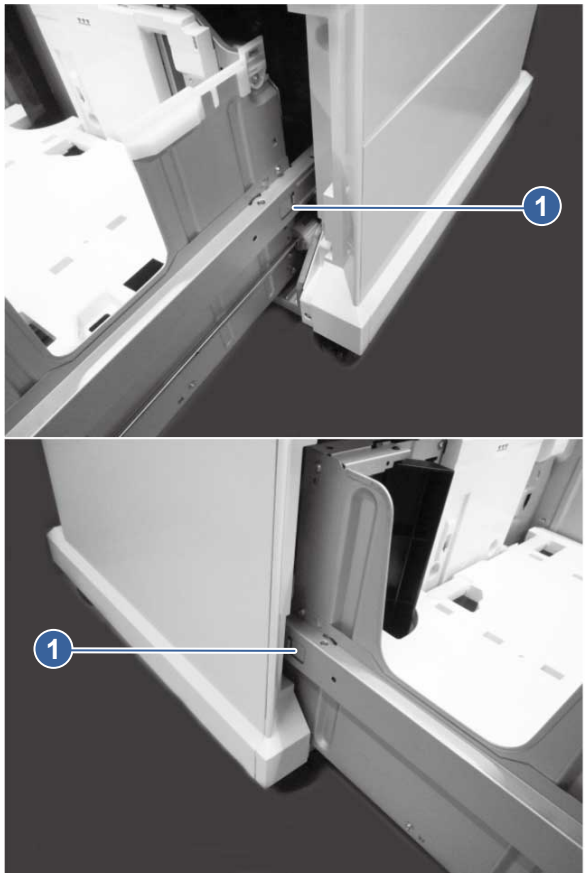
1. Open the HCI cassette assembly.

Figure 4-919 **Open the HCI cassette**



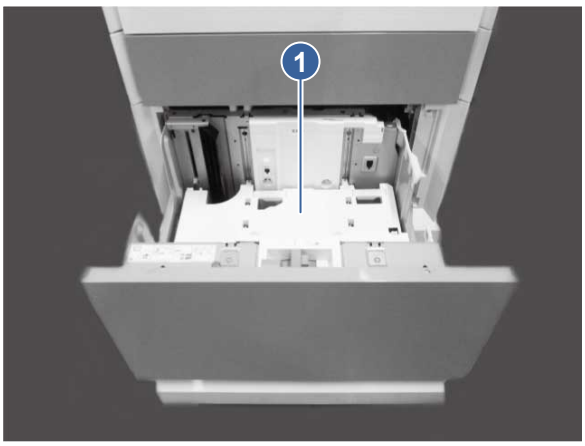
2. Press the left and right release levers (callout 1).

Figure 4-920 **Press the release levers**



3. Pull the HCI cassette assembly (callout 1) out of the HCI chassis.

Figure 4-921 **Remove the tray cassette (HCI)**



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI paper pickup assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-118 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3509-000CN	Paper pickup assembly (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

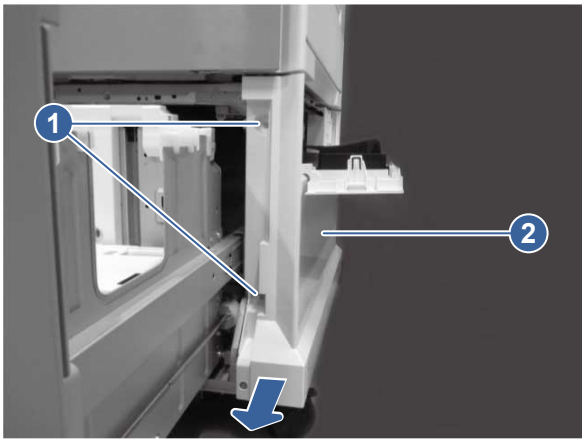
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-922 **Remove the right door (HCI)**

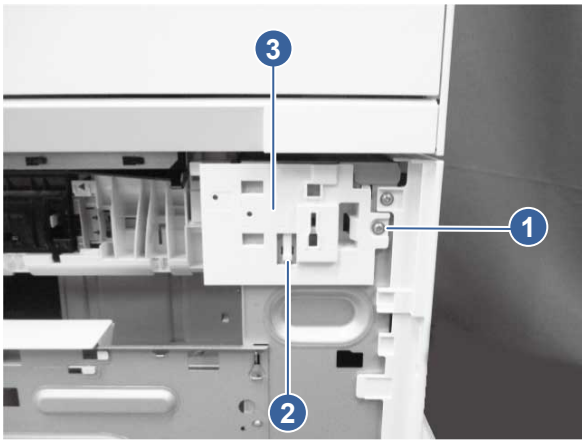


2. Remove the paper pickup assembly (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI paper pickup assembly.

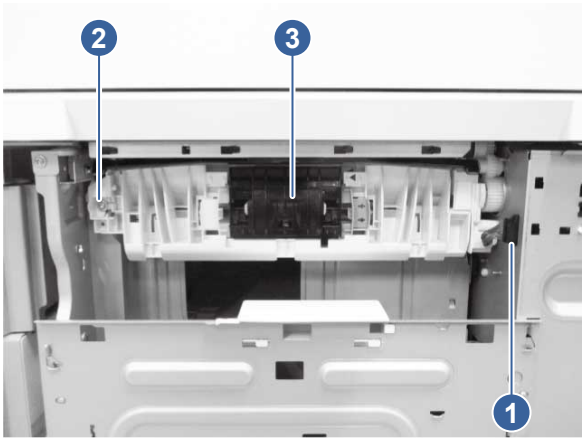
1. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then slide the inner cover (callout 3) downward to remove it.

Figure 4-923 Remove the inner cover



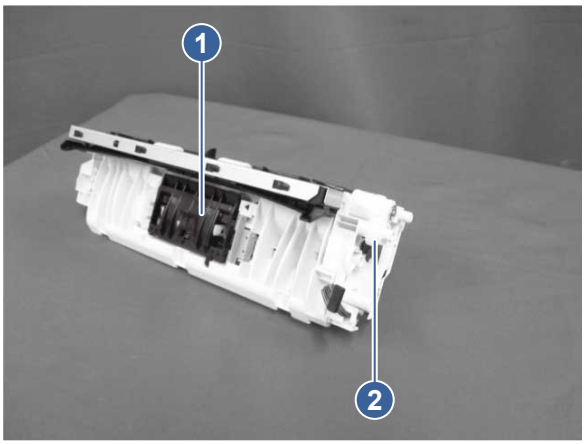
2. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the pickup assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-924 Remove the pickup assembly (HCI)



3. Remove the gear (callout 2) from the pickup assembly (callout 1).

Figure 4-925 Remove the gear



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Auto close assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI auto close assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-119 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-0918-000CN	Auto close assembly (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

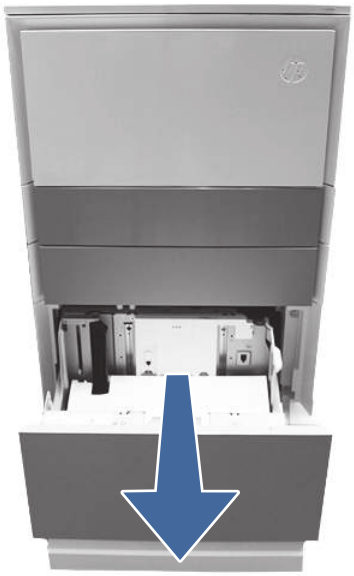
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the cassette (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI cassette.

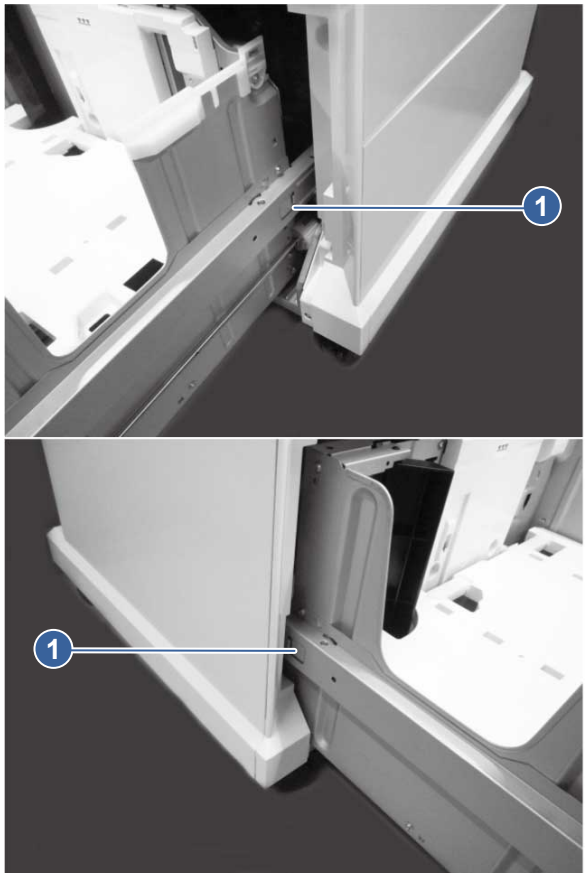
1. Open the HCI cassette assembly.

Figure 4-926 Open the HCI cassette



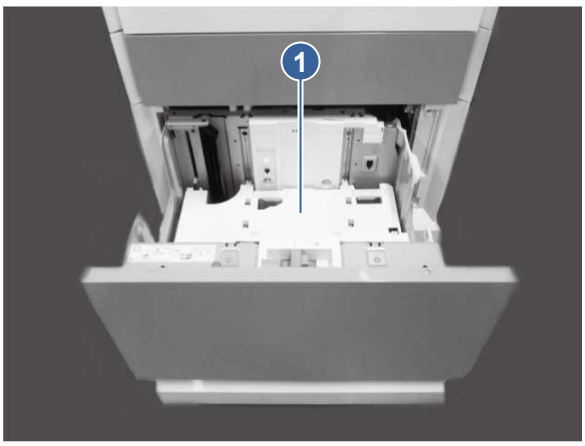
2. Press the left and right release levers (callout 1).

Figure 4-927 Press the release levers



3. Pull the HCI cassette assembly (callout 1) out of the HCI chassis.

Figure 4-928 Remove the tray cassette (HCI)

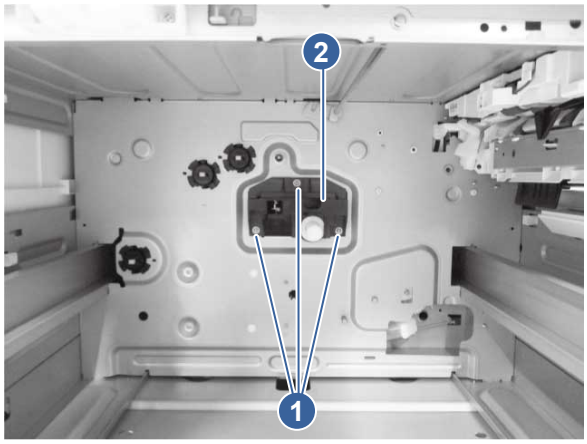


2. Remove the auto close assembly (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI auto close assembly.

- Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the auto close assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-929 **Remove the auto close assembly (HCI)**



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lifter drive assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI lifter drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-120 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0021-000CN	Lifter drive assembly (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

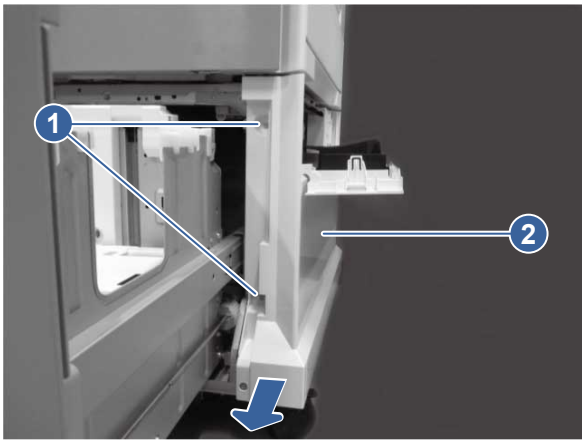
1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.

2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-930 Remove the right door (HCI)

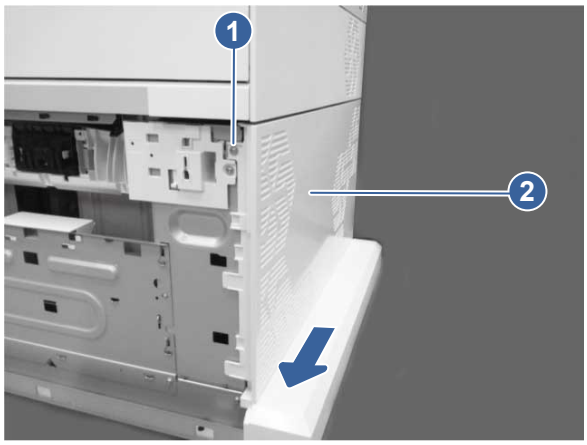


2. Remove the rear cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-931 Remove the rear cover (HCI)

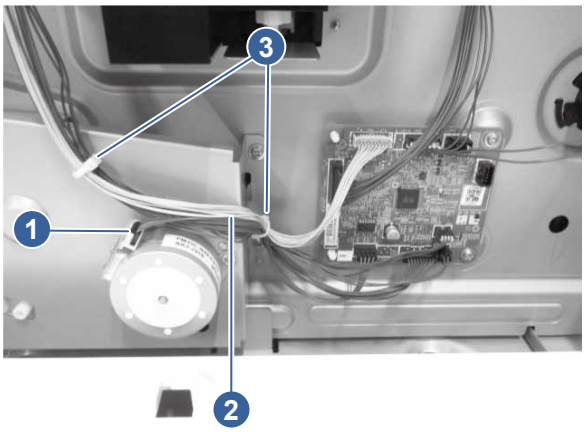


3. Remove the lifter drive assembly (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI lifter drive assembly.

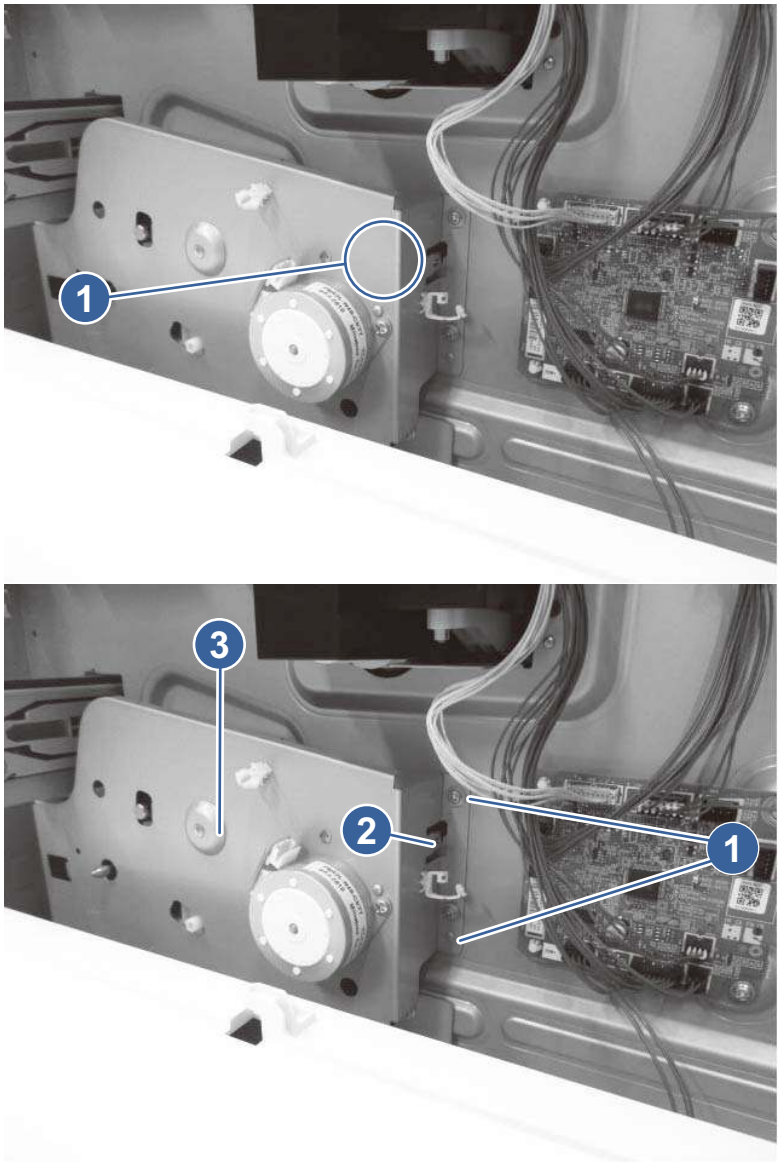
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1)., release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamps (callout 3).

Figure 4-932 **Disconnect one connector**



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the lifter drive assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-933 **Remove the lifter drive assembly (HCI)**



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup alienation assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI pickup alienation assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-121 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0022-000CN	Pick estrangement assembly (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

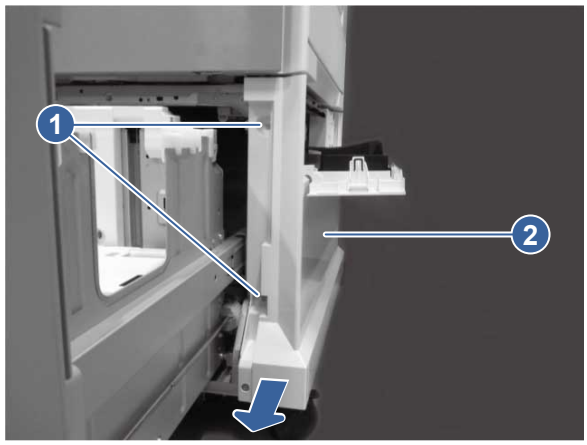
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-934 Remove the right door (HCI)

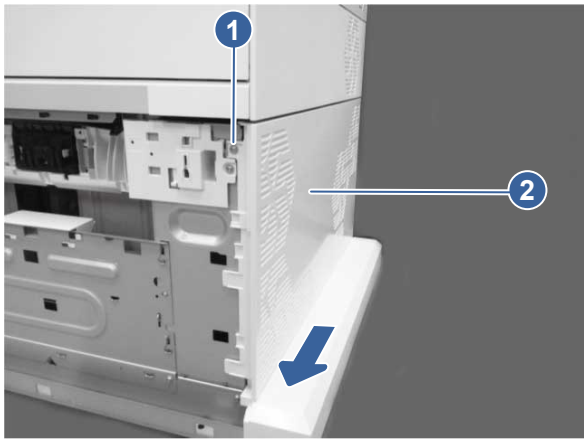


2. Remove the rear cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-935 Remove the rear cover (HCI)

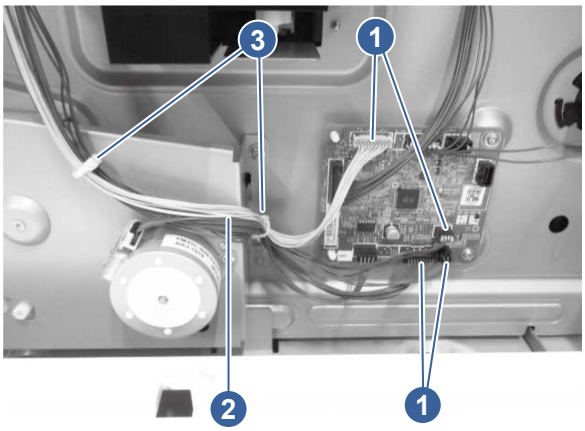


3. Remove the pickup alienation assembly (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI pickup alienation assembly.

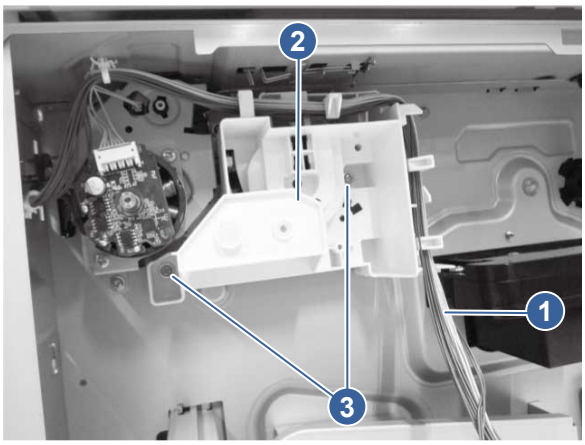
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamps (callout 3).

Figure 4-936 **Disconnect four connectors**



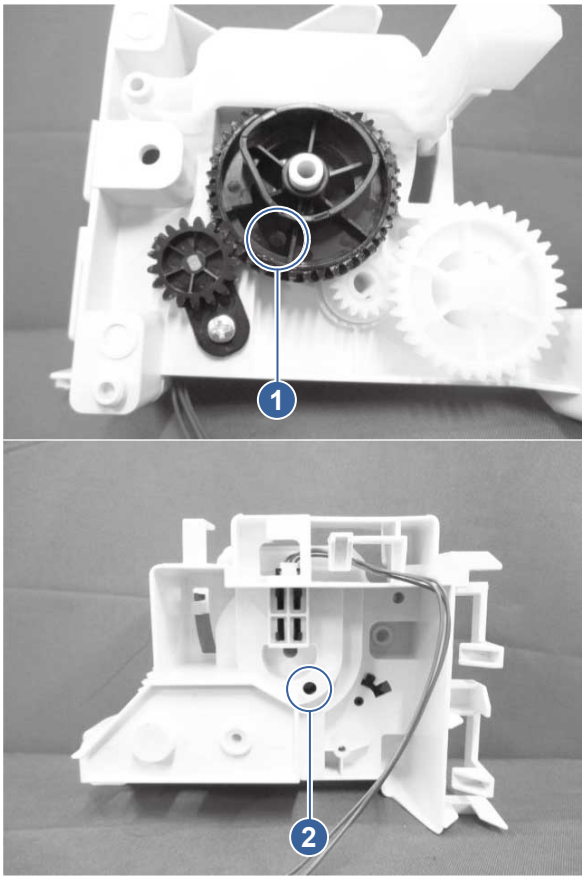
2. Release the cable (callout 1) from the pickup alienation assembly (callout 2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the pickup alienation assembly.

Figure 4-937 **Remove the pickup alienation assembly (HCI)**



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the pickup alienation assembly, line up the hole (callout 1) in the gear overlaps the position of the hole (callout 2) in the pickup alienation assembly.

Figure 4-938 Align hole in gear with hole in chassis



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup drive assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI pickup drive assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the pickup drive assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-122 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-3617-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

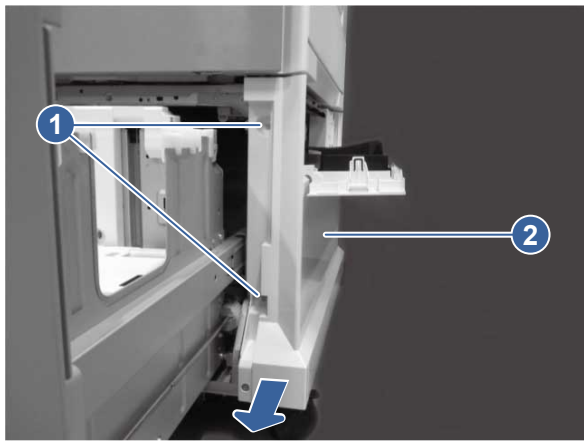
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the right door (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI right door.

1. Open the HCI tray, and then open the right door.
2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then slide the right door (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-939 Remove the right door (HCI)

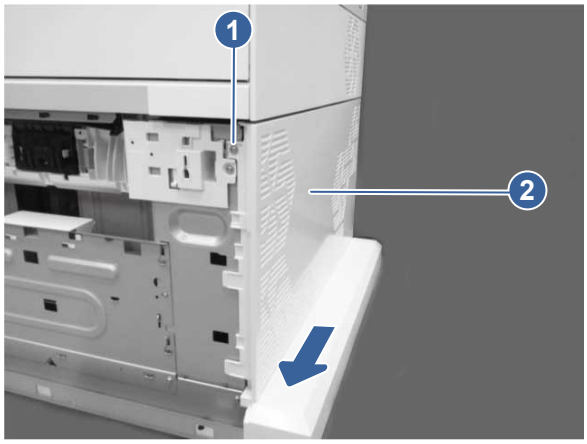


2. Remove the rear cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI rear cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the rear cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-940 Remove the rear cover (HCI)

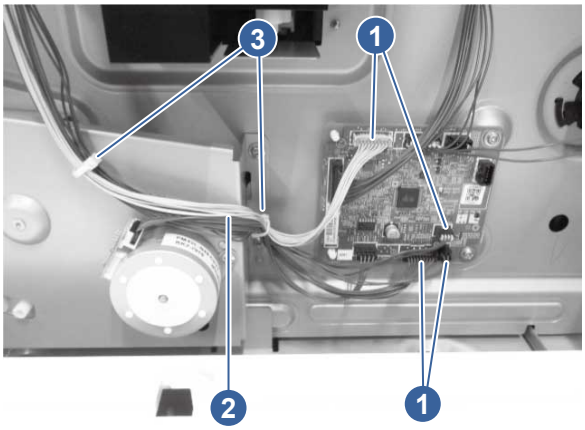


3. Remove the pickup alienation assembly (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI pickup alienation assembly.

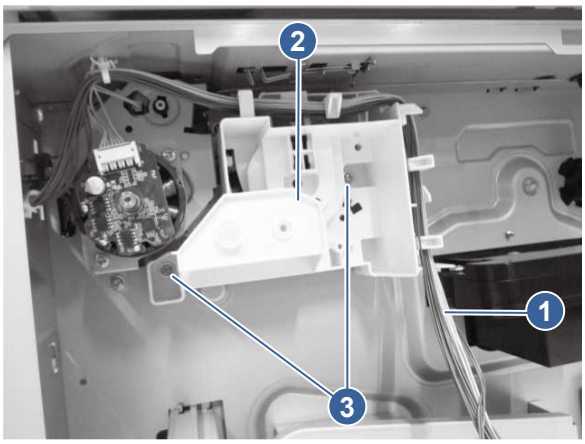
1. Disconnect four connectors (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable clamps (callout 3).

Figure 4-941 Disconnect four connectors



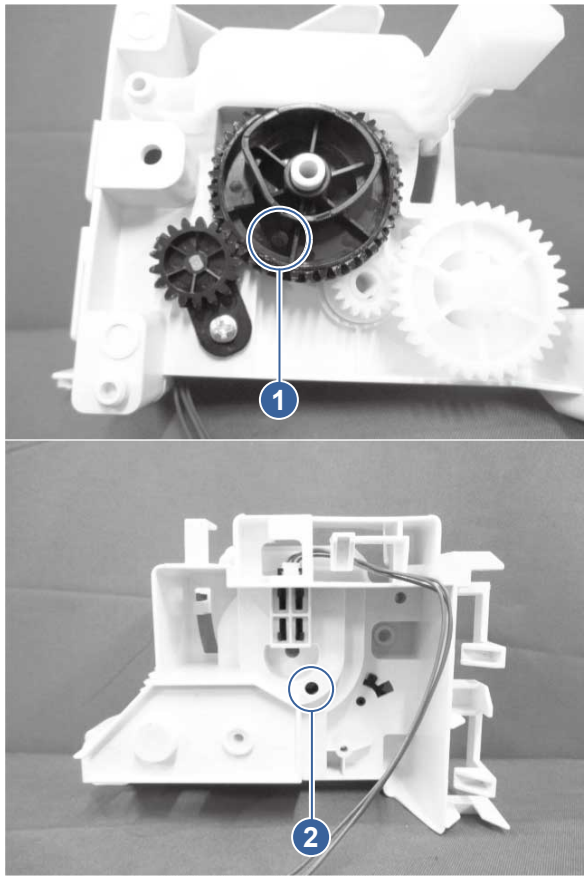
2. Release the cable (callout 1) from the pickup alienation assembly (callout 2), remove two screws (callout 3), and then remove the pickup alienation assembly.

Figure 4-942 Remove the pickup alienation assembly (HCI)



Reinstallation tip: When reassembling the pickup alienation assembly, line up the hole (callout 1) in the gear overlaps the position of the hole (callout 2) in the pickup alienation assembly.

Figure 4-943 Align hole in gear with hole in chassis

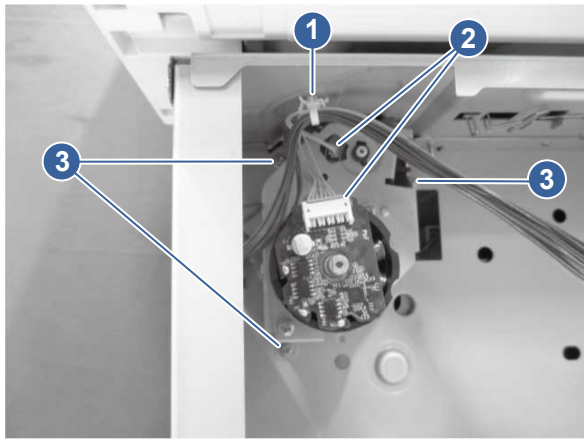


4. Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI pickup drive assembly.

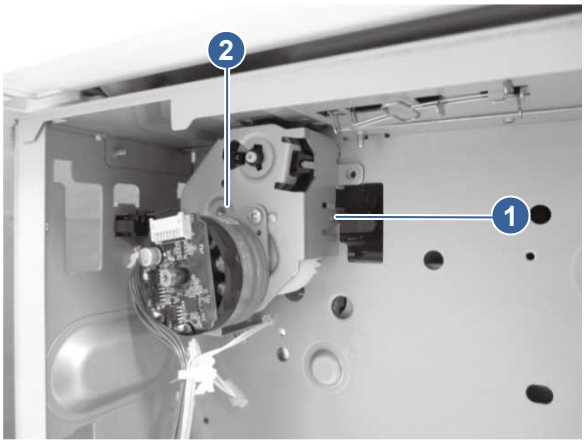
1. Remove the cable clamp (callout 1), disconnect two connectors (callout 2), and then remove three screws (callout 3).

Figure 4-944 Disconnect connectors and remove screws



2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the pickup drive assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-945 **Remove the pickup drive assembly (HCI)**



5. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Controller PCA (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI controller PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-123 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-8071-000CN	HCI controller PCA (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

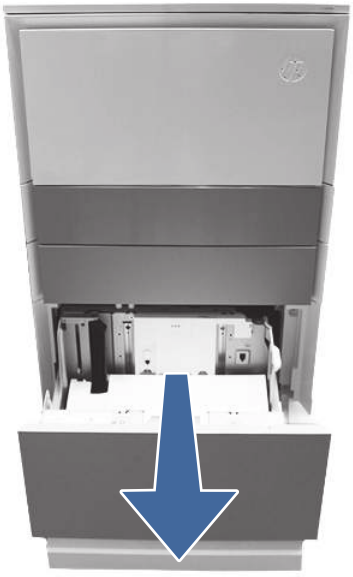
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the cassette (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI cassette.

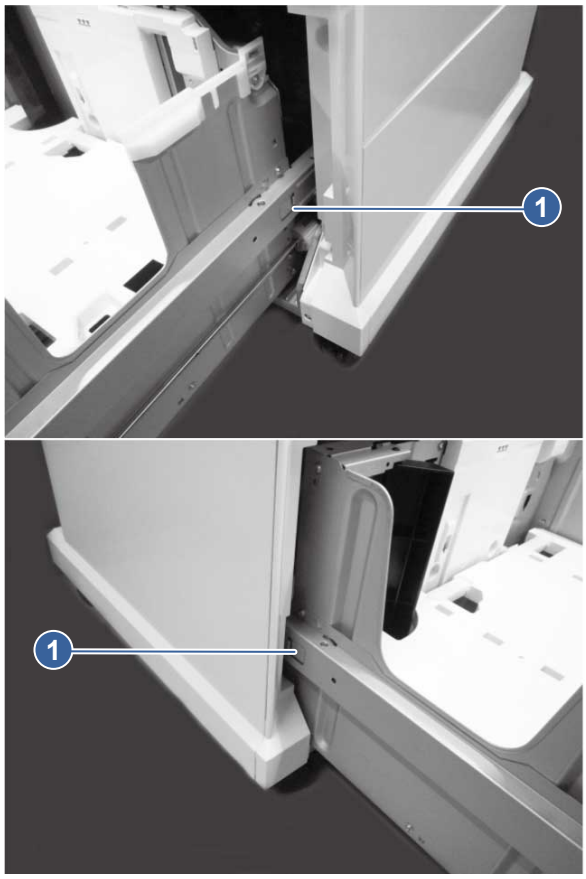
1. Open the HCI cassette assembly.

Figure 4-946 **Open the HCI cassette**



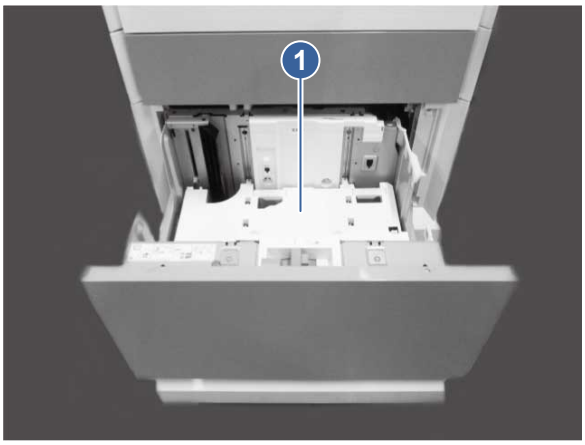
2. Press the left and right release levers (callout 1).

Figure 4-947 **Press the release levers**



3. Pull the HCI cassette assembly (callout 1) out of the HCI chassis.

Figure 4-948 **Remove the tray cassette (HCI)**

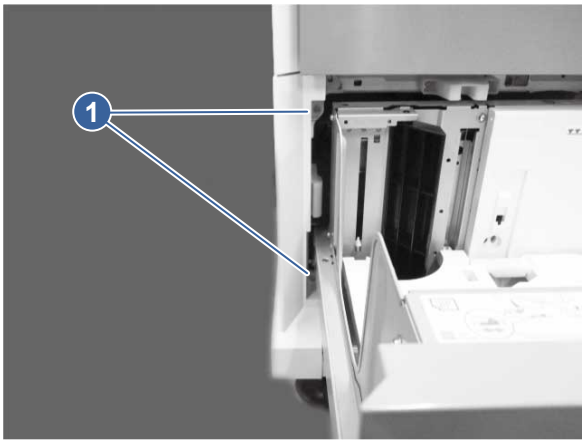


2. Remove the front left cover/left cover (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI front left cover/left cover.

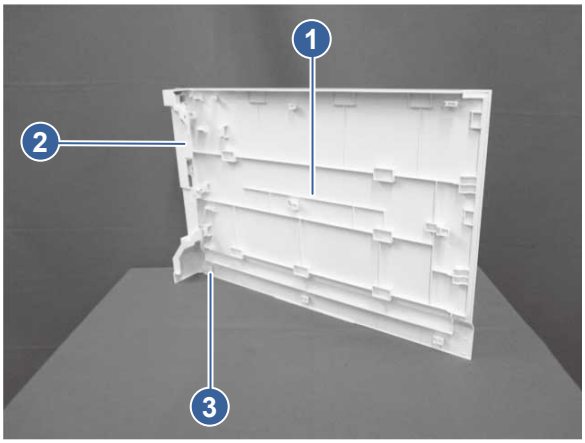
1. Remove two screws (callout 1).

Figure 4-949 **Remove two screws**



2. Remove the left cover (callout 1) together with the front left cover (callout 2). Release one tab (callout 3), and then slide the front left cover upward to remove it from the left cover.

Figure 4-950 Remove the front left cover from the left cover (HCI)

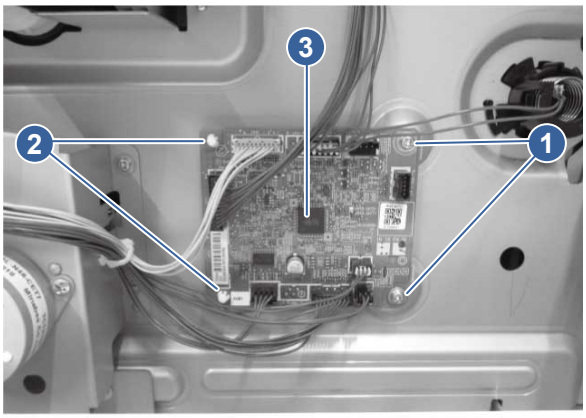


3. Remove the controller PCA (HCI)

Follow these steps to remove the HCI controller PCA.

- Disconnect all the connectors on the HCI controller PCA. Remove two screws (callout 1), remove two PCA spacers (callout 2), and then remove the HCI controller PCA (callout 3).

Figure 4-951 Remove the controller PCA (HCI)



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Separation roller assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI separation roller assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-124 Part information

Product Number	Service Part Number	Part description
527H2A	6QN29-67011	HP LaserJet Tray 2-x Roller Kit (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

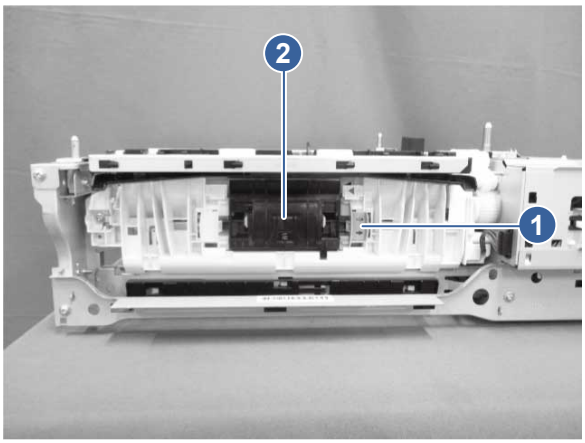
1. Remove the separation roller assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing the HCI separation roller assembly.

NOTE: The 550-sheet paper feeder is shown in the graphics below. The steps for the HCI rollers are the same.

1. Open the right door.
2. Slide the lever (callout 1) to the right, and then remove the roller assembly (callout 2) by pulling it out from the printer.

Figure 4-952 Remove the roller assembly



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Pickup roller assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing and replacing the HCI pickup roller assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

If the part is damaged and cannot be cleaned, use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer. To order the part, go to www.hp.com/buy/parts.

Table 4-125 Part information

Product Nnumber	Service Part Number	Part description
527H2A	6QN29-67011	HP LaserJet Tray 2-x Roller Kit (2,100-sheet paper deck HCI)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

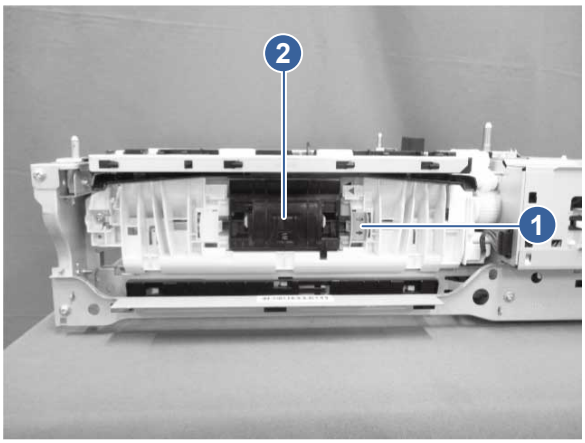
1. Remove the separation roller assembly (HCI)

Learn about removing the HCI separation roller assembly.

NOTE: The 550-sheet paper feeder is shown in the graphics below. The steps for the HCI rollers are the same.

1. Open the right door.
2. Slide the lever (callout 1) to the right, and then remove the roller assembly (callout 2) by pulling it out from the printer.

Figure 4-953 Remove the roller assembly



2. Remove the paper pickup roller assembly (HCI)

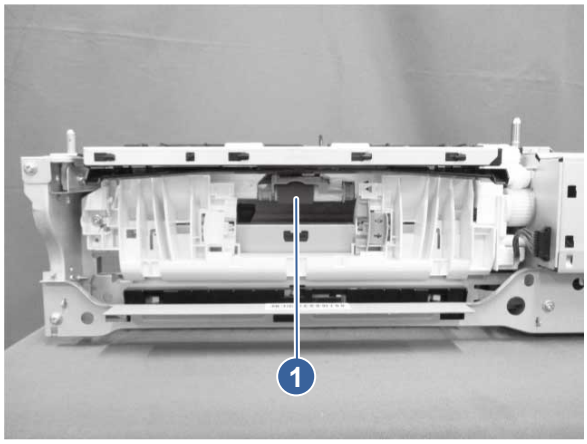
Learn about removing the HCI pickup rollers.

NOTE: Even if you want to replace only the pickup roller assembly, you must first remove the separation roller assembly.

NOTE: The 550-sheet paper feeder is shown in the graphics below. The steps for the HCI rollers are the same.

- Locate the pickup roller assembly (callout 1) and then pull it away from the printer to remove it.

Figure 4-954 Remove the pickup roller assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Output device - 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox

Learn how to remove and replace the 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox parts and assemblies.

Field-replaceable units (FRUs)

Learn about FRU parts removal and replacement.

Covers, panels, and doors

Learn about covers, panels, and doors removal and replacement.

Removal and replacement: Rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-126 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC6-1305-000CN	Cover, rear (3-bin SS)
RC5-0223-000CN	Cover, rear (3-Bin SS, X58045z, X58045zs models)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

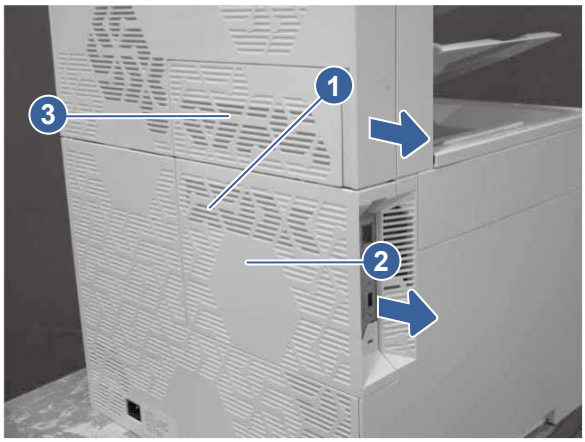
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

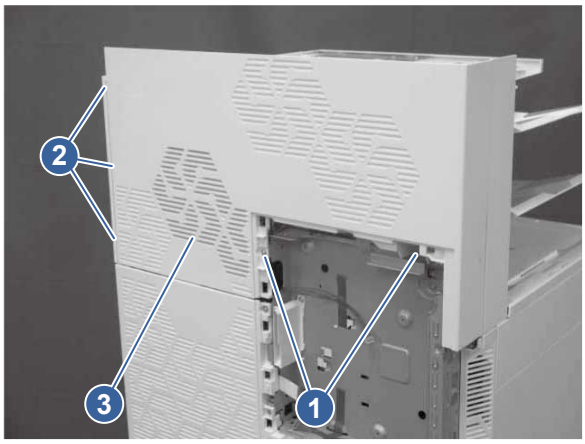
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-955 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-956 Remove the rear cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the staple cover and door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-127 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0483-000CN	Staple cover assembly (3-bin SS)
RM3-0484-000CN	Staple door assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

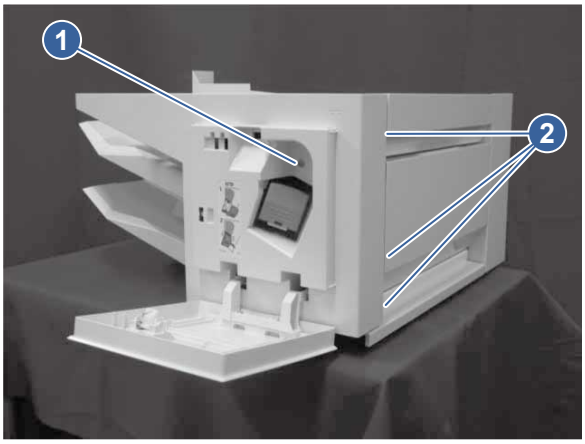
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

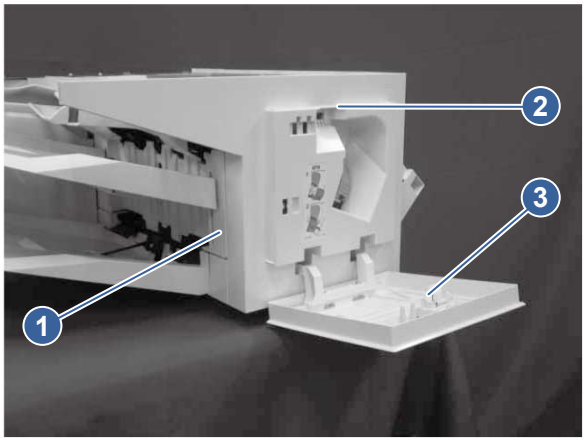
1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-957 **Remove one screw**



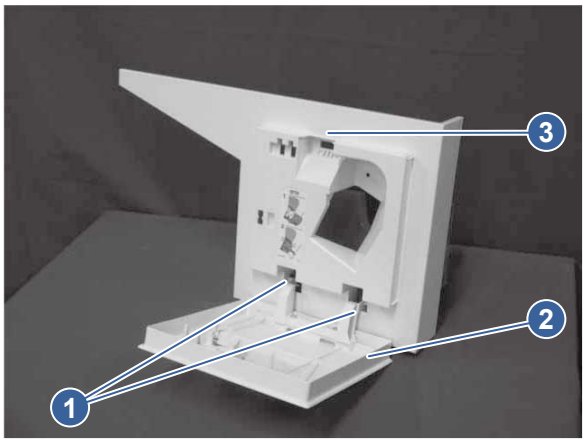
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-958 **Release one tab**



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-959 Remove the staple door from the staple cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the right upper cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-128 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC6-1308-000CN	Cover, right upper (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

No post service test is available for this assembly.

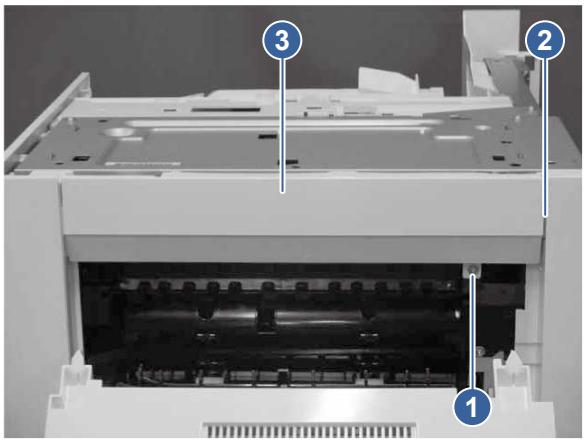
1. Remove the right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly.

2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-960 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the right corner cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-129 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC6-1307-000CN	RC6-1307-000CN (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

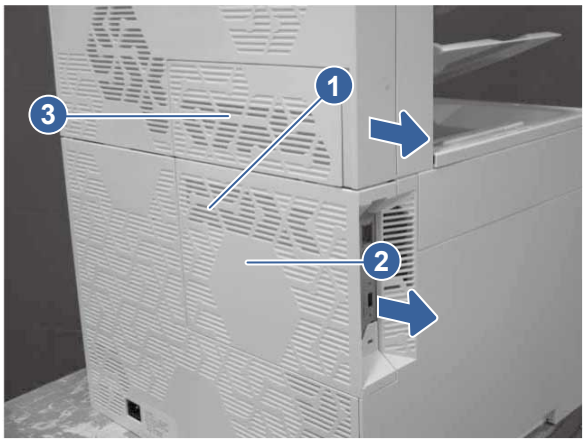
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

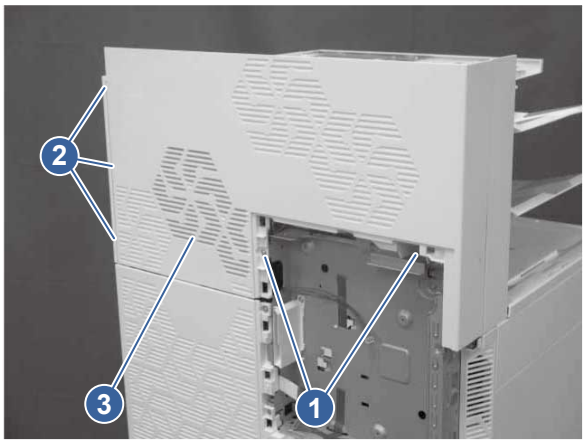
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-961 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-962 Remove the rear cover



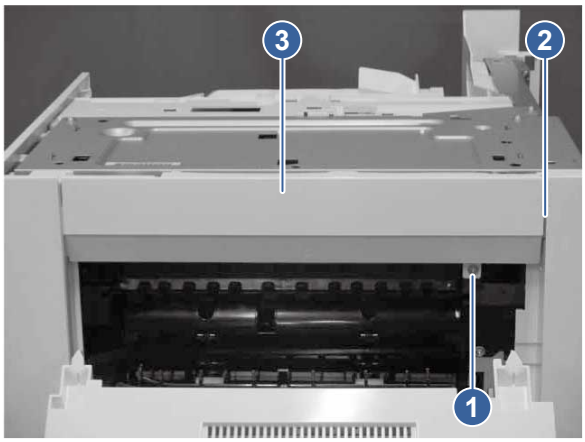
2. Remove the right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly.

2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-963 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover

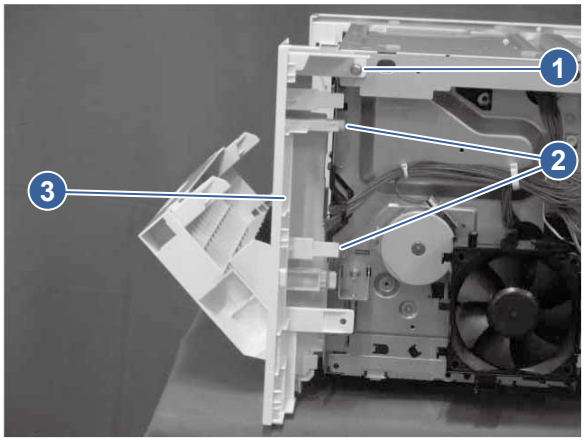


3. Remove the right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right corner cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the right corner cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-964 Remove the right corner cover



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Right lower cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the right lower cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-130 Part information

Part number	Part description
RC6-1309-000CN	Cover, right lower (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

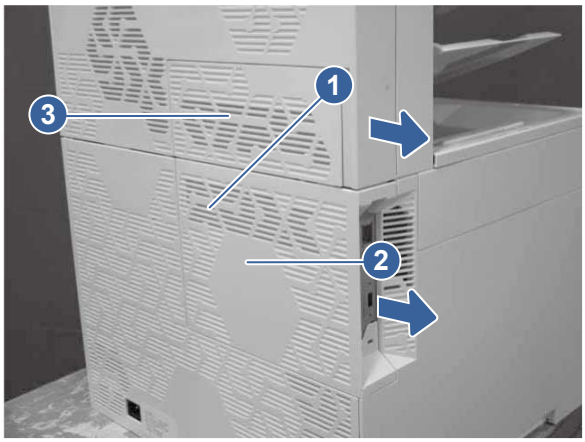
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

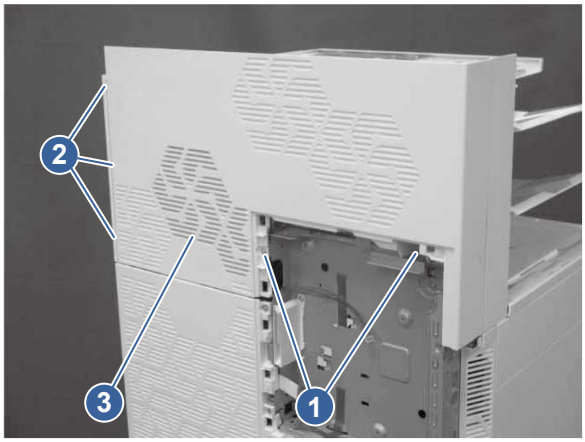
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-965 **Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover**



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-966 **Remove the rear cover**



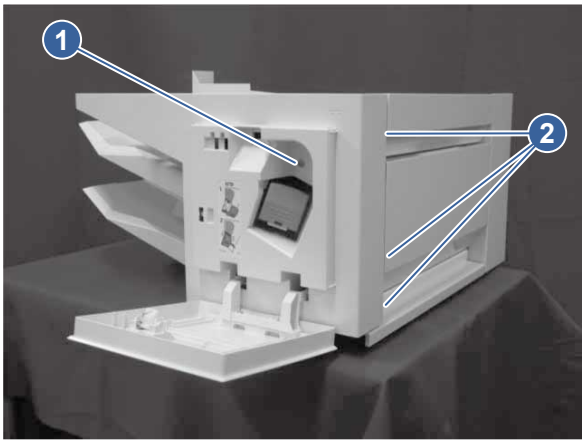
2. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.

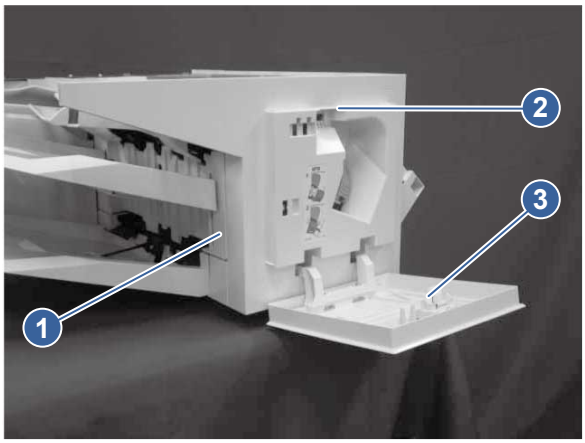
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-967 Remove one screw



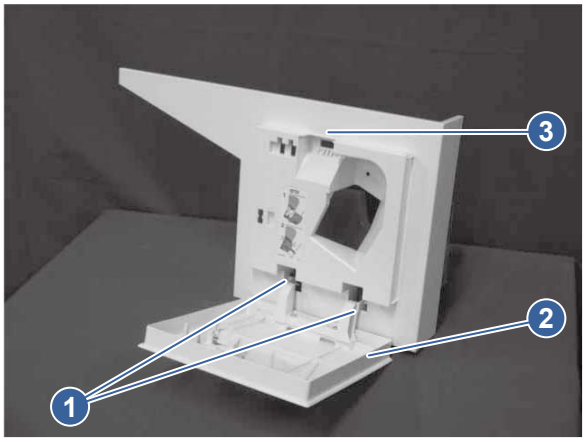
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-968 Release one tab



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-969 Remove the staple door from the staple cover

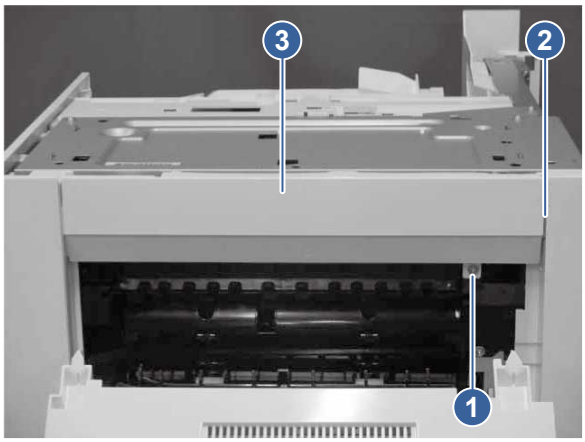


3. Remove the right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-970 **Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover**

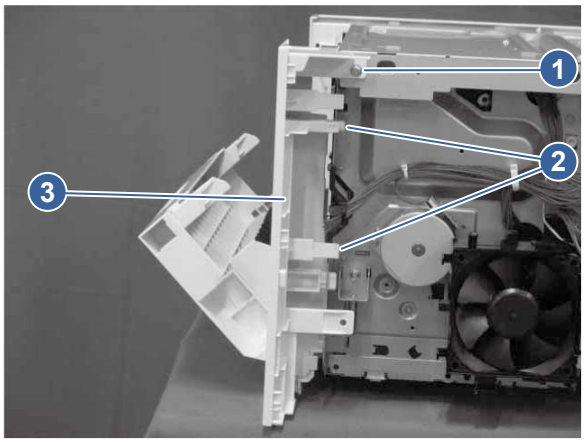


4. Remove the right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right corner cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the right corner cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-971 **Remove the right corner cover**

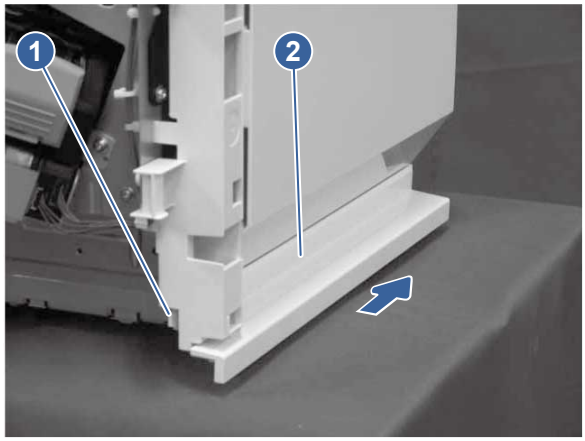


5. Remove the right lower cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right lower cover.

- Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-972 Remove the right lower cover



6. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Rear inner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the rear inner cover.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-131 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0485-000CN	Rear inner cover assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

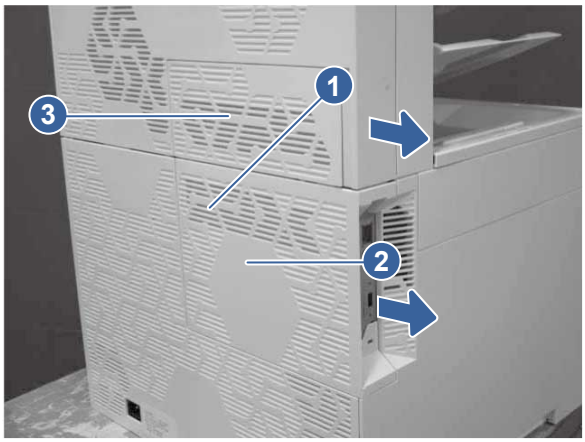
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

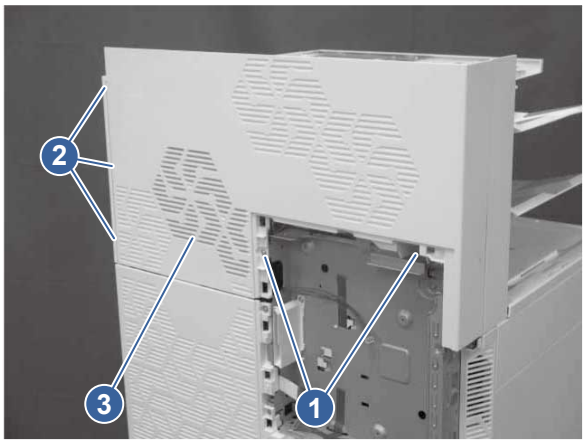
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-973 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-974 Remove the rear cover

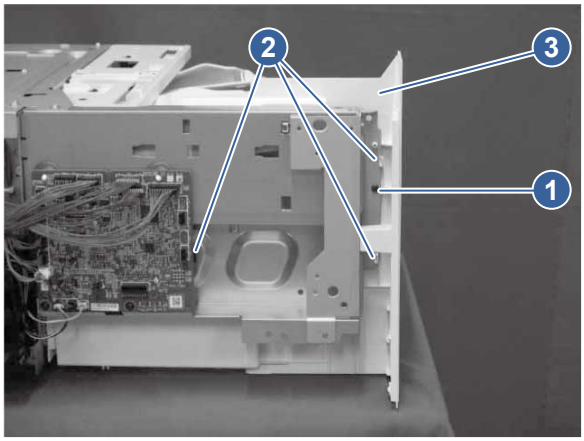


2. Remove the rear inner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear inner cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1) release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear inner cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-975 Remove the rear inner cover



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler-stacker door assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the stapler-stacker door.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-132 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4167-000CN	Right door assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

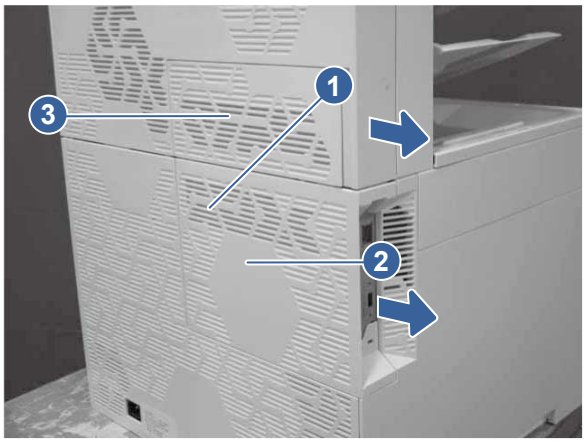
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

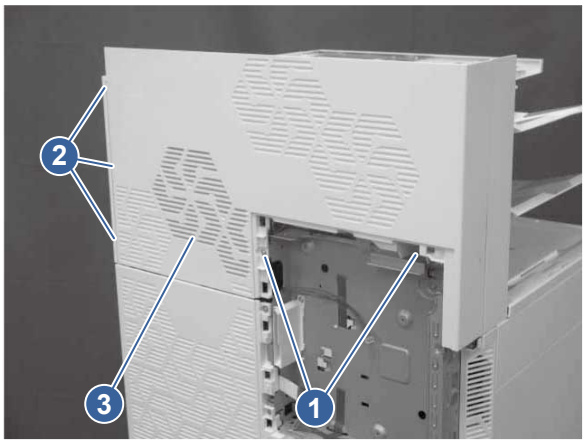
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-976 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-977 Remove the rear cover



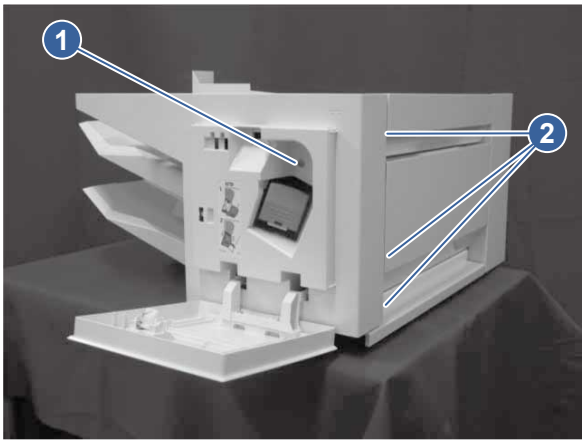
2. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.

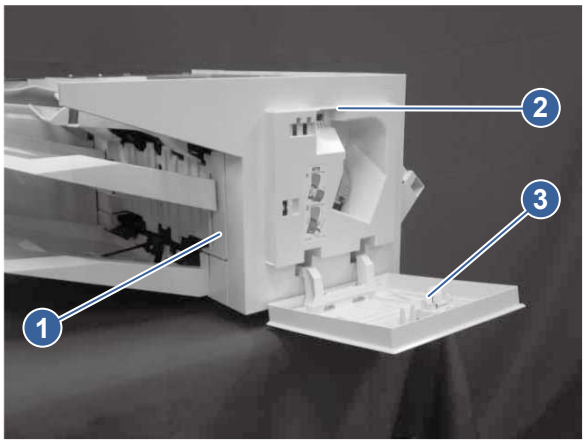
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-978 Remove one screw



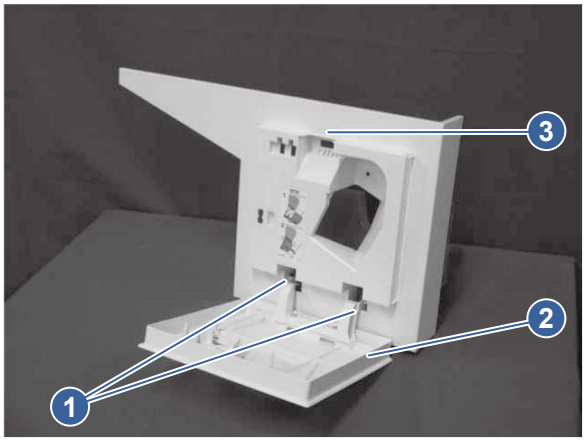
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-979 Release one tab



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-980 Remove the staple door from the staple cover

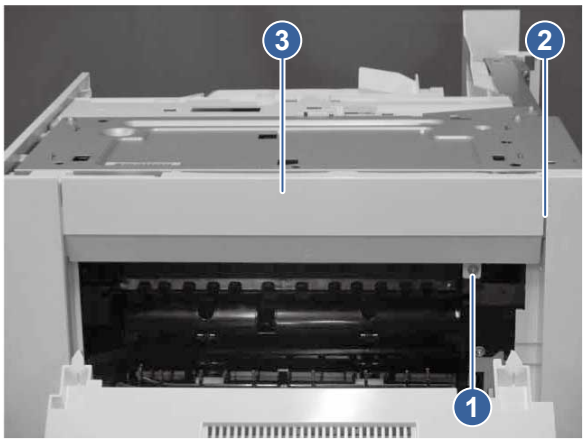


3. Remove the right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-981 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover

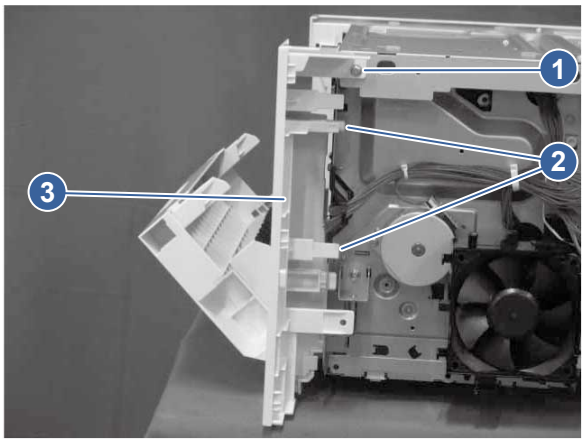


4. Remove the right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right corner cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the right corner cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-982 Remove the right corner cover

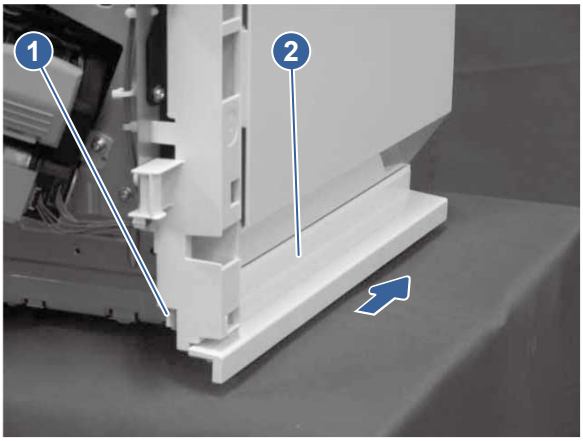


5. Remove the right lower cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right lower cover.

- Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-983 Remove the right lower cover

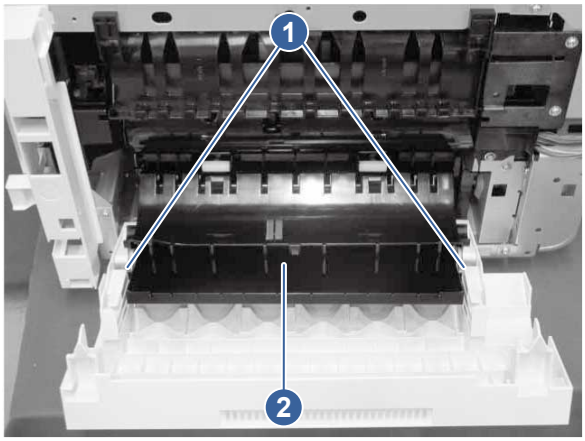


6. Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker door assembly.

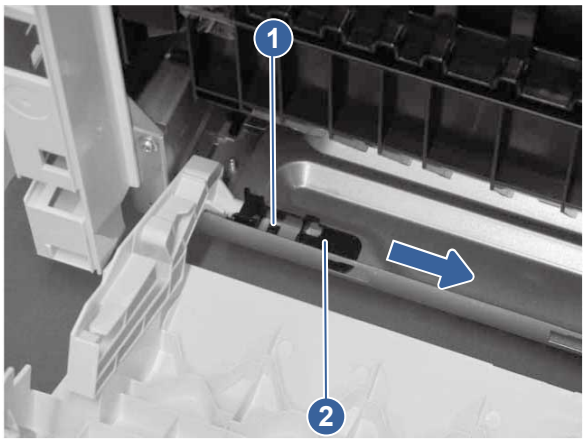
1. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then open the feed guide (callout 2).

Figure 4-984 Remove two shafts



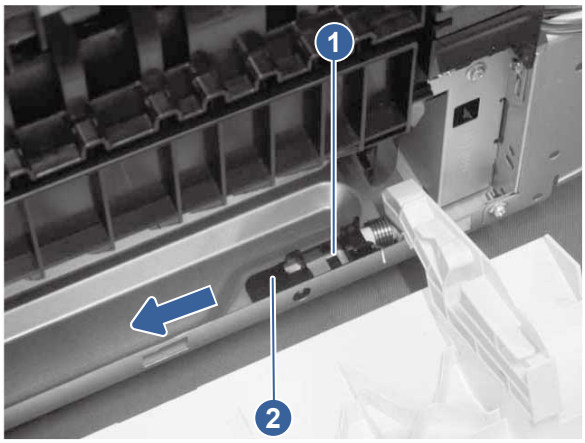
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the left bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-985 Remove the left bushing



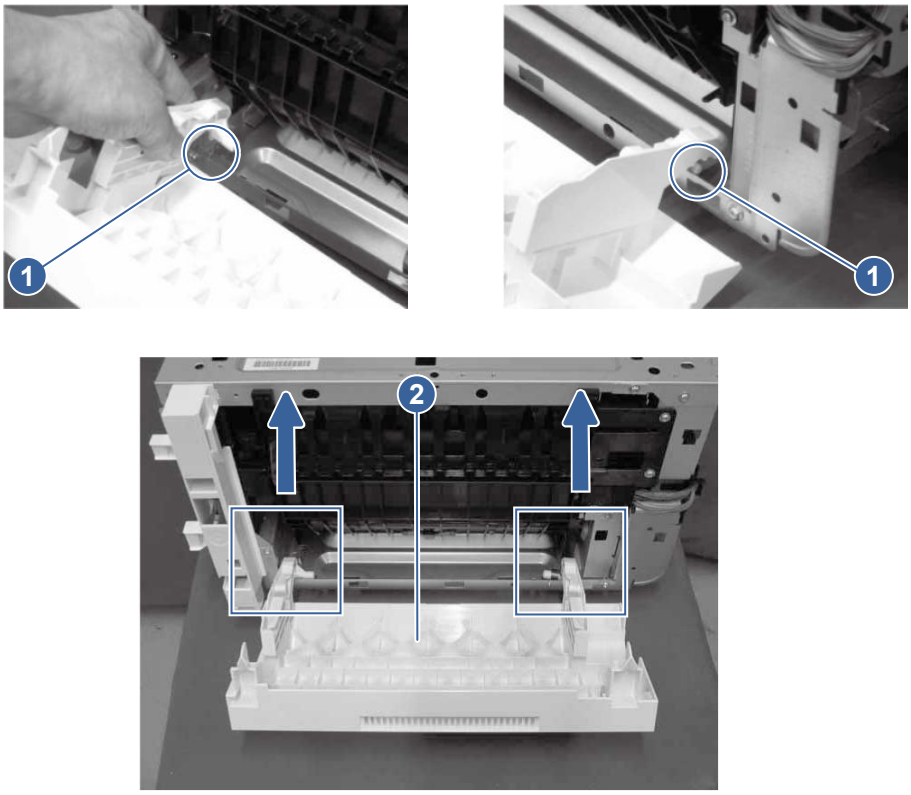
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-986 Remove the right bushing



4. Remove right and left shafts (callout 1), and then remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-987 Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stacking wall assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the stacking wall.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-133 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0480-000CN	Stacking wall assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- No special tools are required to remove or install this assembly.

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

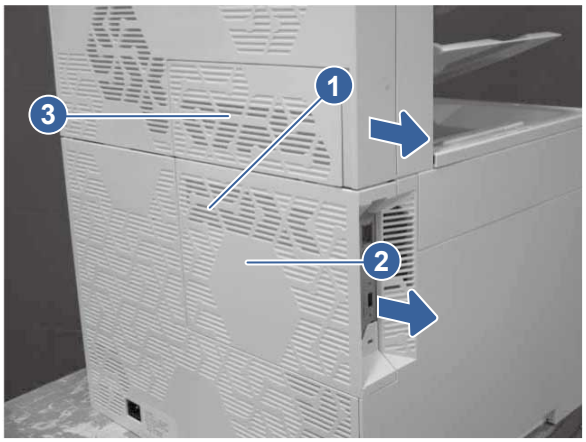
No post service test is available for this assembly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

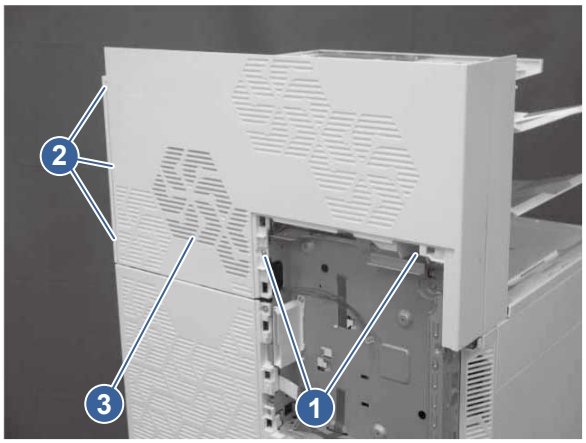
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-988 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-989 Remove the rear cover



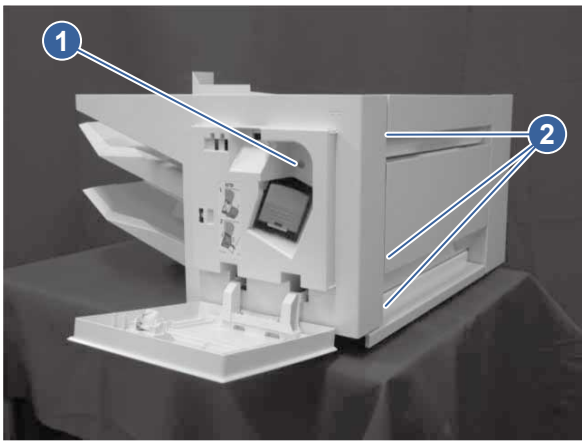
2. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.

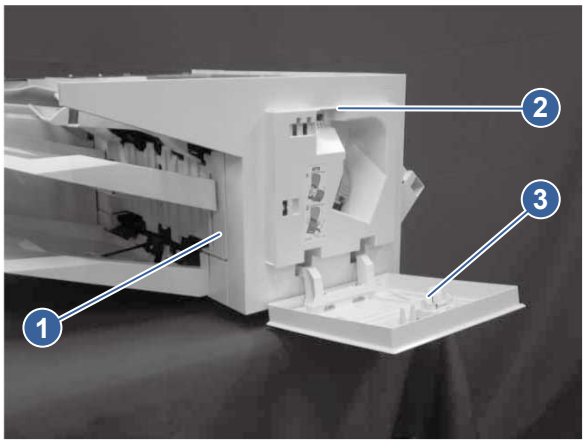
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-990 Remove one screw



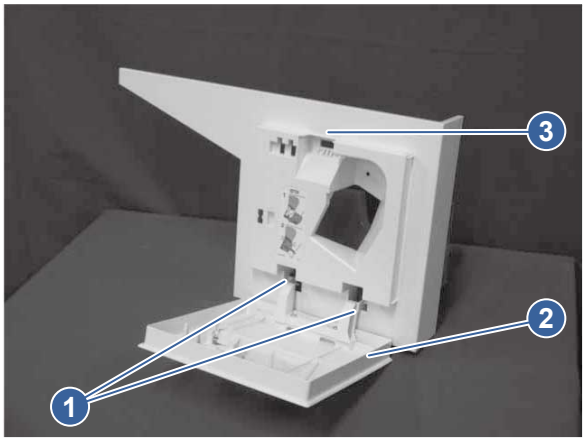
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-991 Release one tab



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-992 Remove the staple door from the staple cover

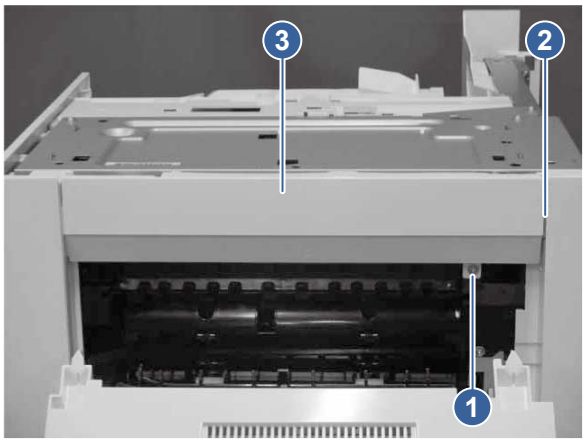


3. Remove the right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-993 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover

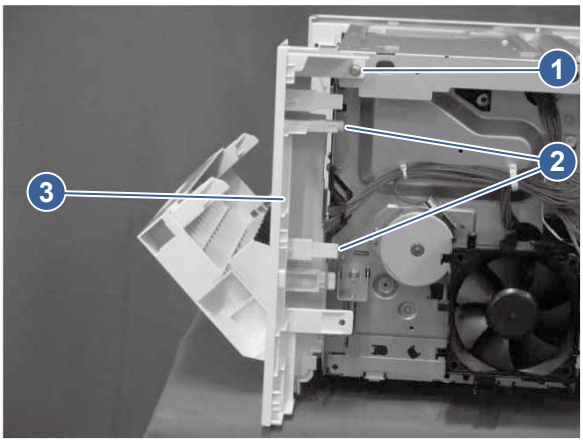


4. Remove the right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right corner cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the right corner cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-994 Remove the right corner cover

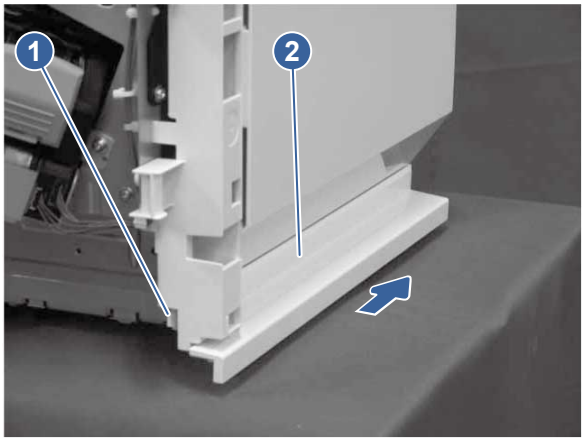


5. Remove the right lower cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right lower cover.

- Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-995 Remove the right lower cover

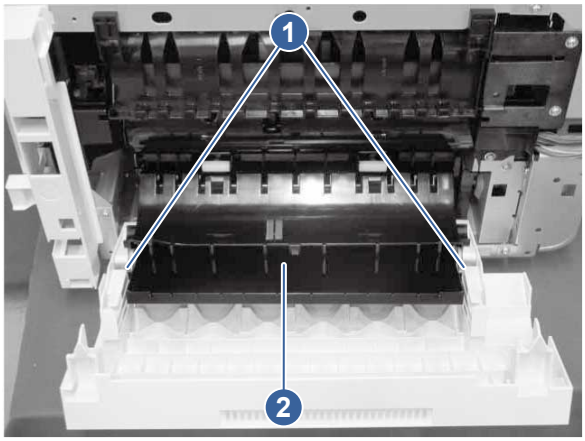


6. Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker door assembly.

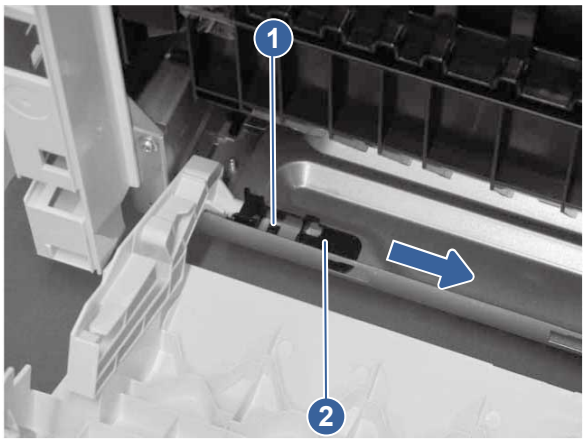
1. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then open the feed guide (callout 2).

Figure 4-996 Remove two shafts



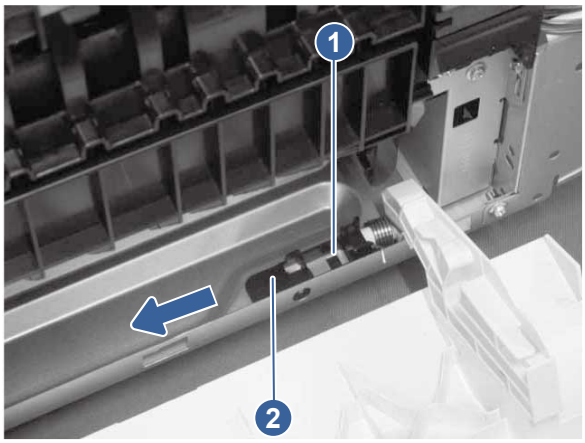
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the left bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-997 Remove the left bushing



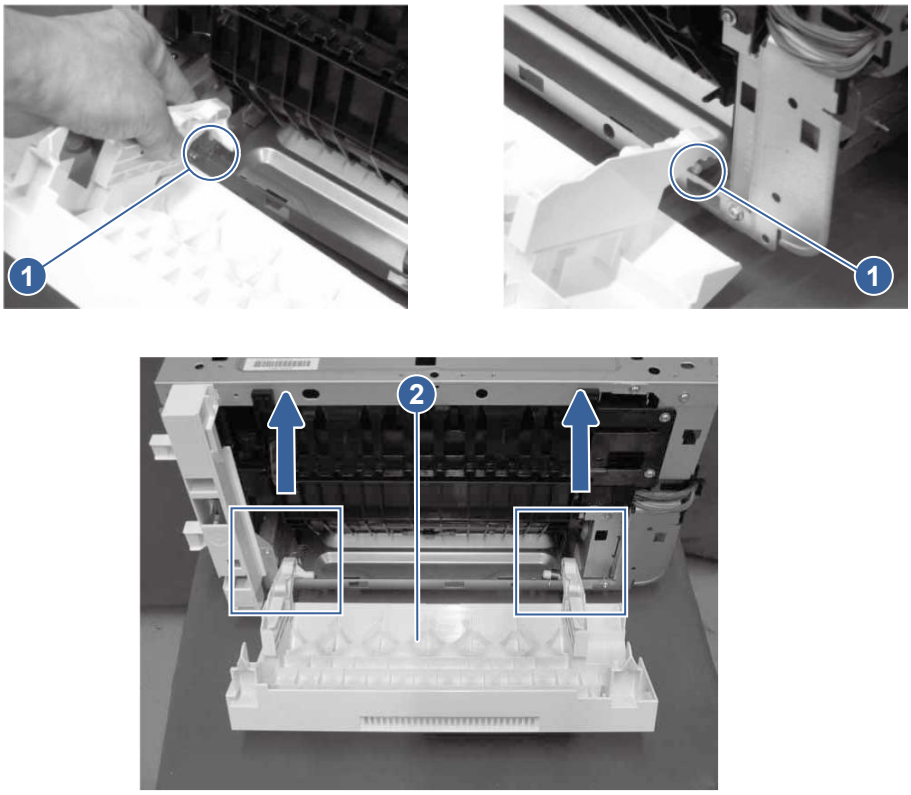
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-998 Remove the right bushing



4. Remove right and left shafts (callout 1), and then remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-999 Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly

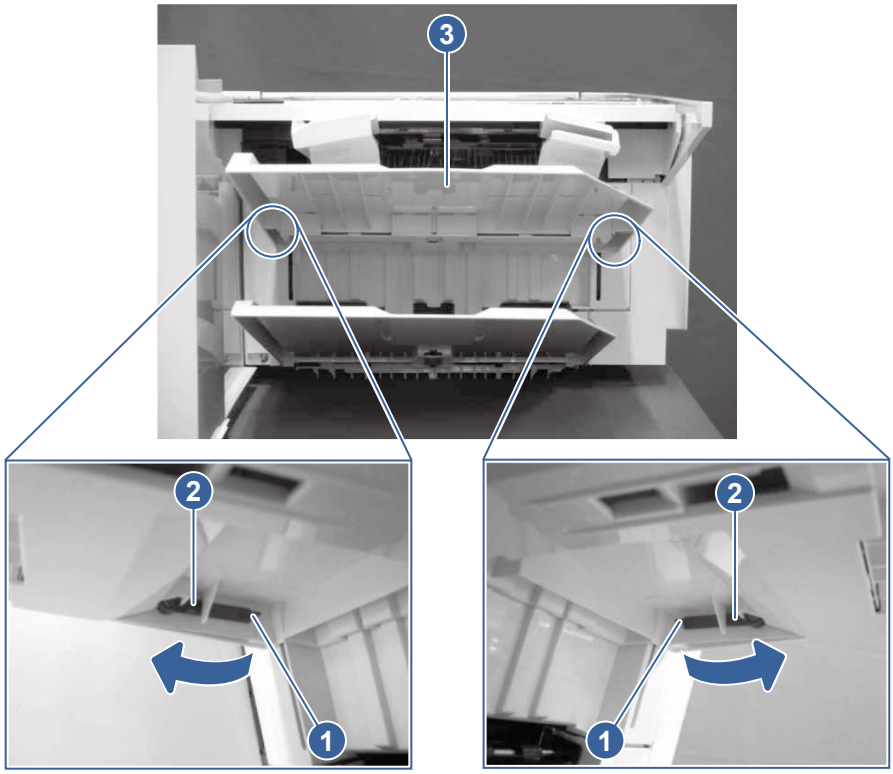


7. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker output bin 1 assembly.

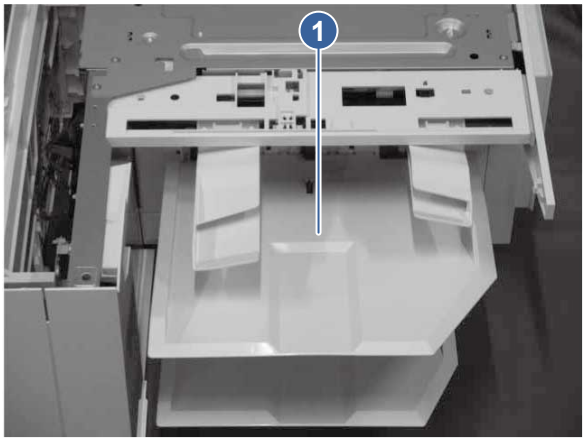
1. Release one boss (callout 1), rotate the pin (callout 2) in the direction indicated, and then remove the pin.

Figure 4-1000 **Remove the pin**



2. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (callout 1).

Figure 4-1001 **Remove the output bin**

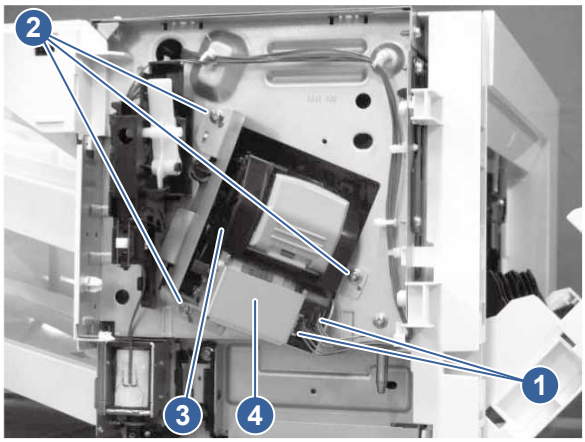


8. Remove the stapler assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker stapler assembly.

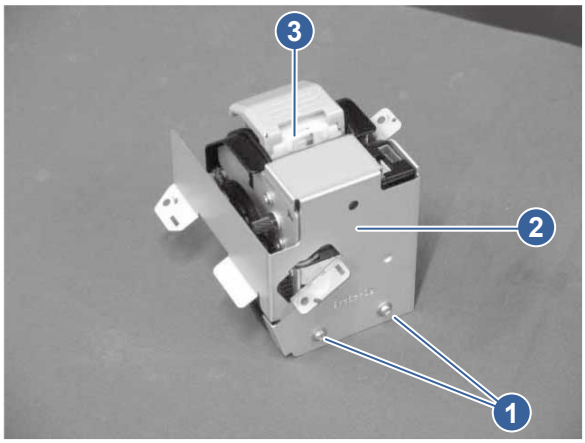
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler assembly (callout 3) and the plate (callout 4) together.

Figure 4-1002 **Remove the stapler assembly and the plate**



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the plate (callout 2) from the stapler assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-1003 **Remove the plate from the stapler assembly**

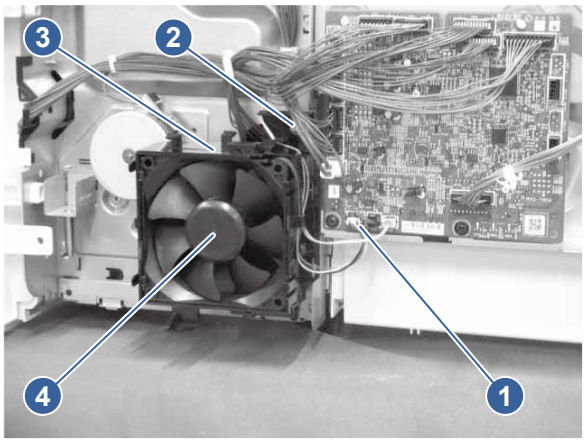


9. Remove the MBM fan (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker mailbox/booklet-maker fan.

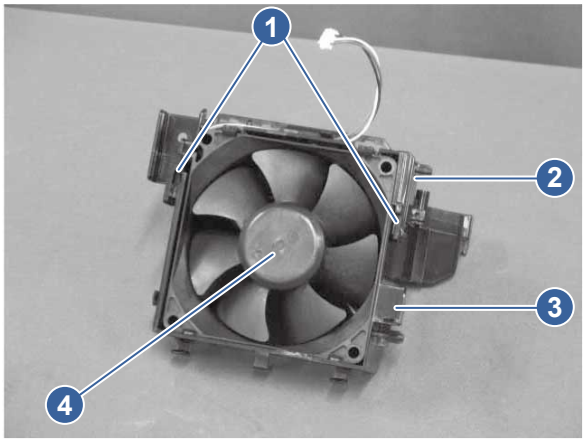
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the fan holder (callout 3) together with the fan (callout 4).

Figure 4-1004 Remove the fan holder and fan



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the duct 1 (callout 2) and the duct 2 (callout 3), and then remove the MBM fan (callout 4) from the holder.

Figure 4-1005 Remove the fan from the holder

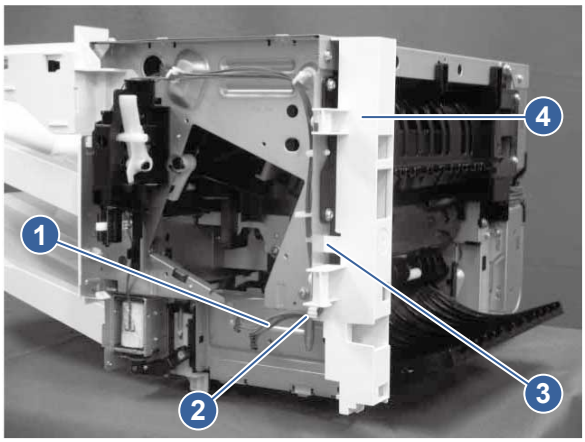


10. Remove the upper feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker upper feed assembly.

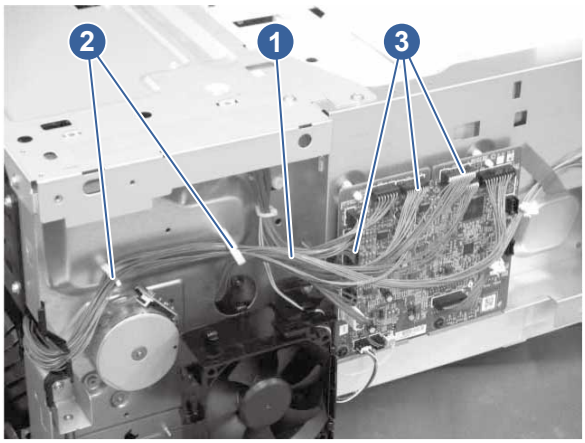
1. Release the cable (callout 1) from cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the inner cover (callout 4).

Figure 4-1006 Remove the inner cover



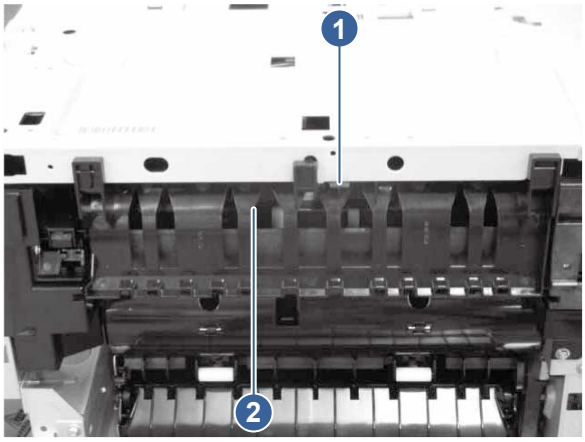
2. Release the cable (callout 1) from cable clamps (callout 2), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 3).

Figure 4-1007 Release the cable



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

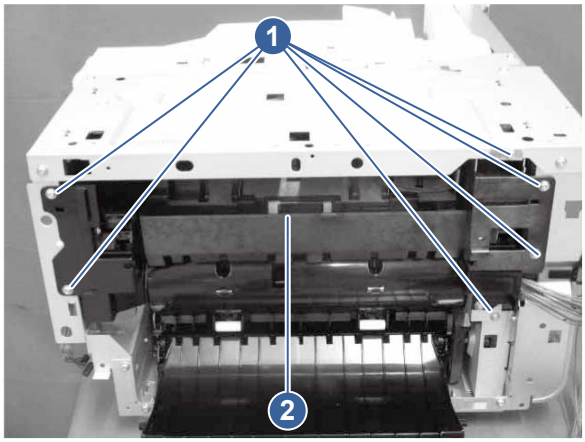
Figure 4-1008 Remove the guide



4. Remove six screws (callout 1), and then remove the upper feed assembly (callout 2).

⚠ **CAUTION:** Be sure that the paper guides extend into the tray area when reinstalling the upper feed assembly. The guides can be damaged if they are trapped behind the in-cave frame when the assembly is seated in the frame.

Figure 4-1009 **Remove the upper feed assembly**

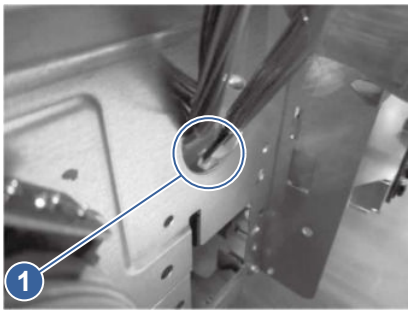


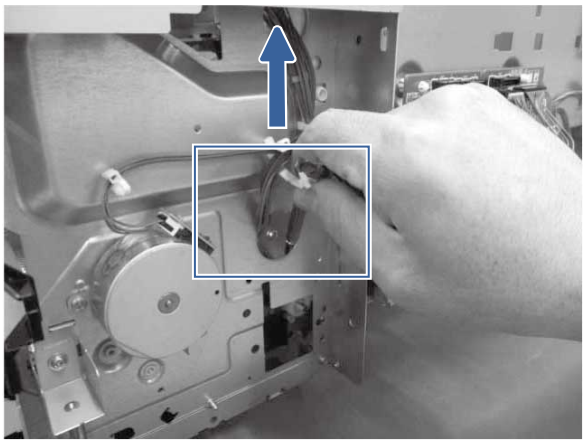
11. Remove the stacking wall assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker stacking wall assembly.

1. Release one tab (callout 1).

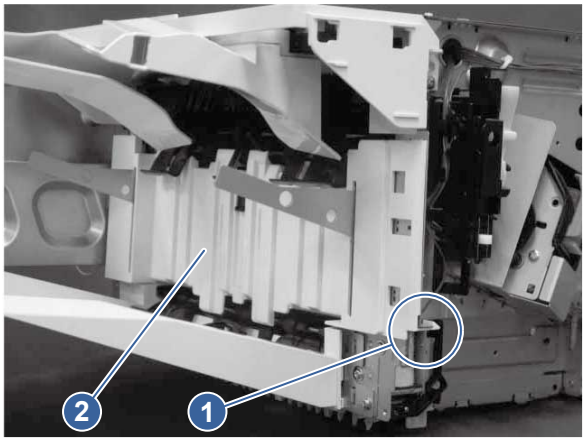
Figure 4-1010 **Release one tab**





2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stacking wall assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-1011 **Remove the stacking wall assembly**



12. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Internal parts and assemblies

Learn how to remove and replace the printer internal parts and assemblies.

Removal and replacement: Stapler assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the stapler assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-134 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-8148-000CN	Stapler assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

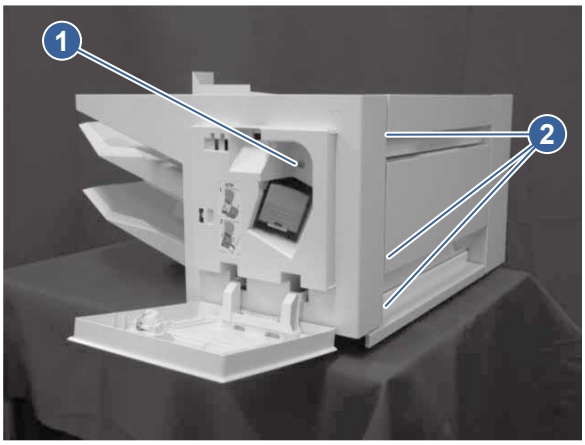
1. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.

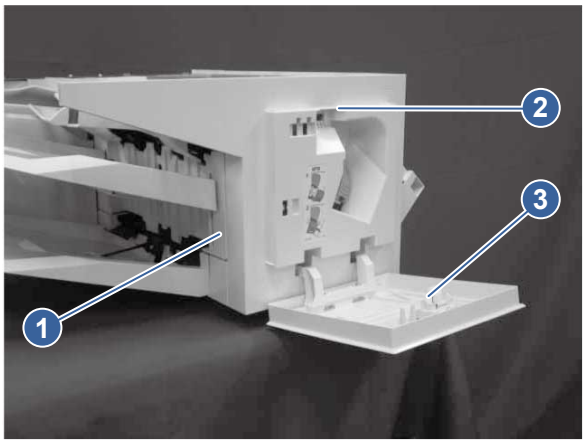
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-1012 Remove one screw



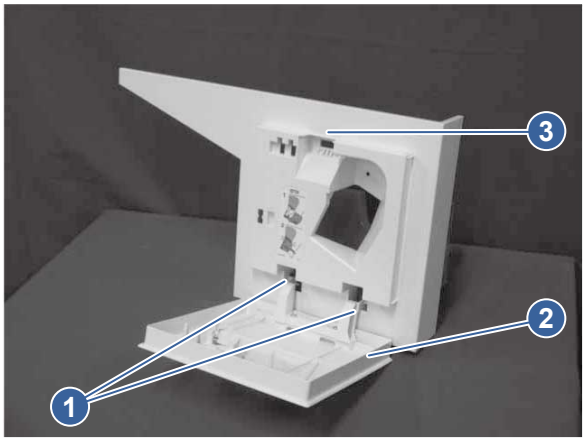
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-1013 Release one tab



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1014 Remove the staple door from the staple cover

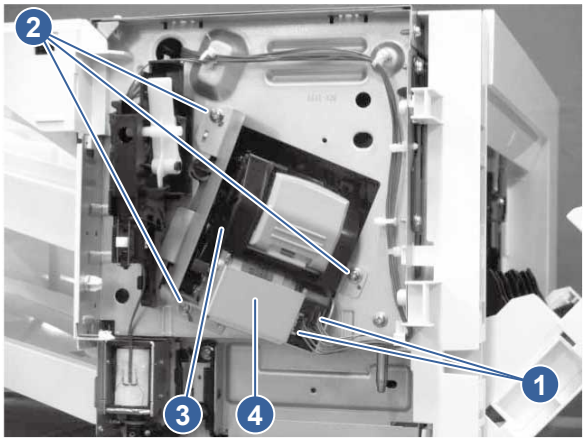


2. Remove the stapler assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker stapler assembly.

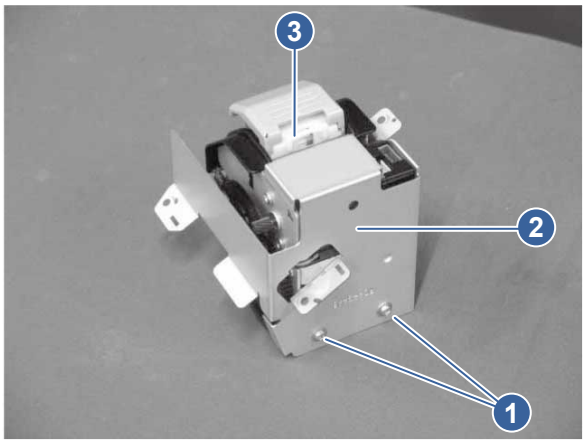
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler assembly (callout 3) and the plate (callout 4) together.

Figure 4-1015 Remove the stapler assembly and the plate



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the plate (callout 2) from the stapler assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-1016 Remove the plate from the stapler assembly



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Jogger assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the jogger assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-135 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-0481-000CN	Jog assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

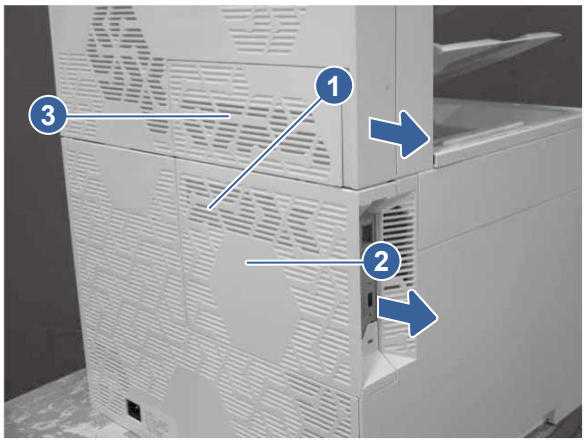
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

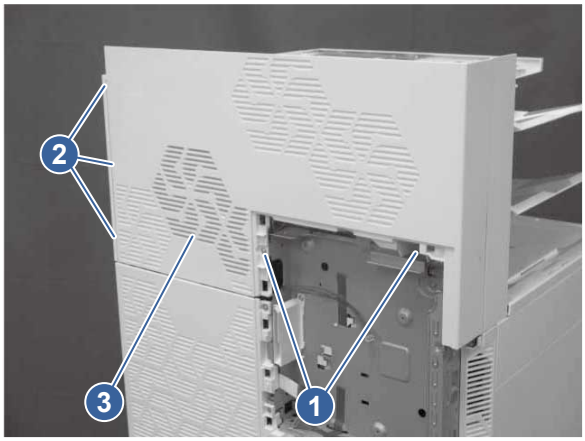
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1017 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1018 Remove the rear cover

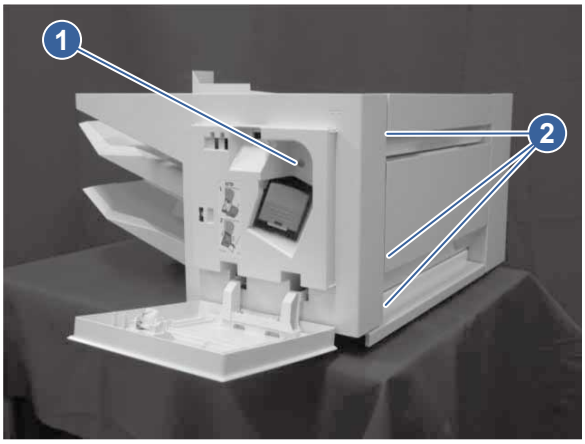


2. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

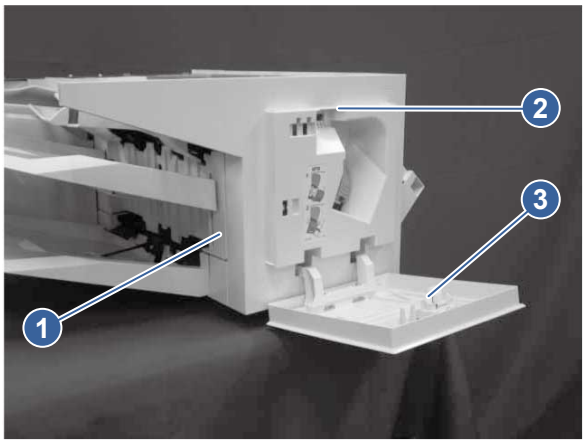
1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-1019 **Remove one screw**



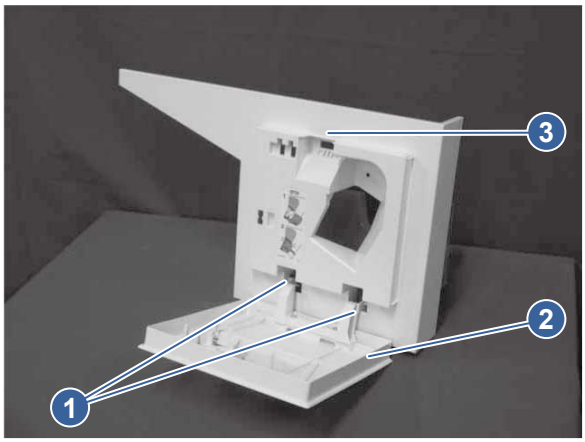
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-1020 **Release one tab**



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1021 Remove the staple door from the staple cover

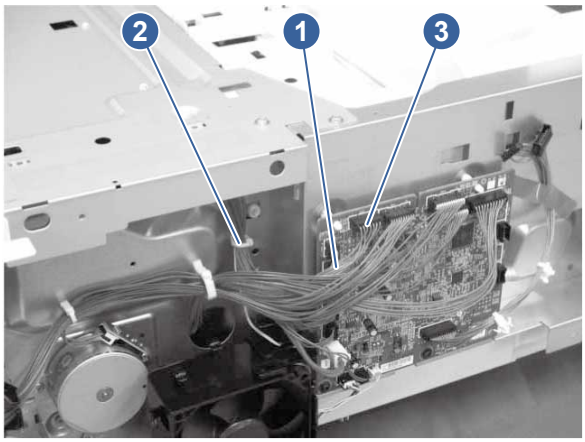


3. Remove the jogger assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker jogger assembly.

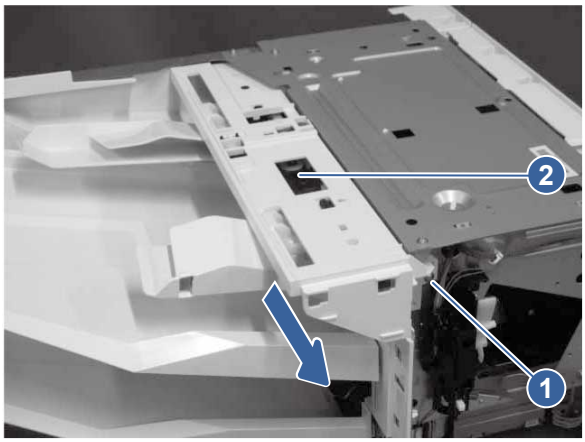
1. Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable clamp (callout 2), and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-1022 Release the cable



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the jogger assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1023 Remove the jogger assembly



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Output bin 1 (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing output bin 1.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-136 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4173-000CN	Tray assembly (3-bin SS)
RM2-3837-000CN	Tray assembly (3-bin SS; X58045z, X58045zs models)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

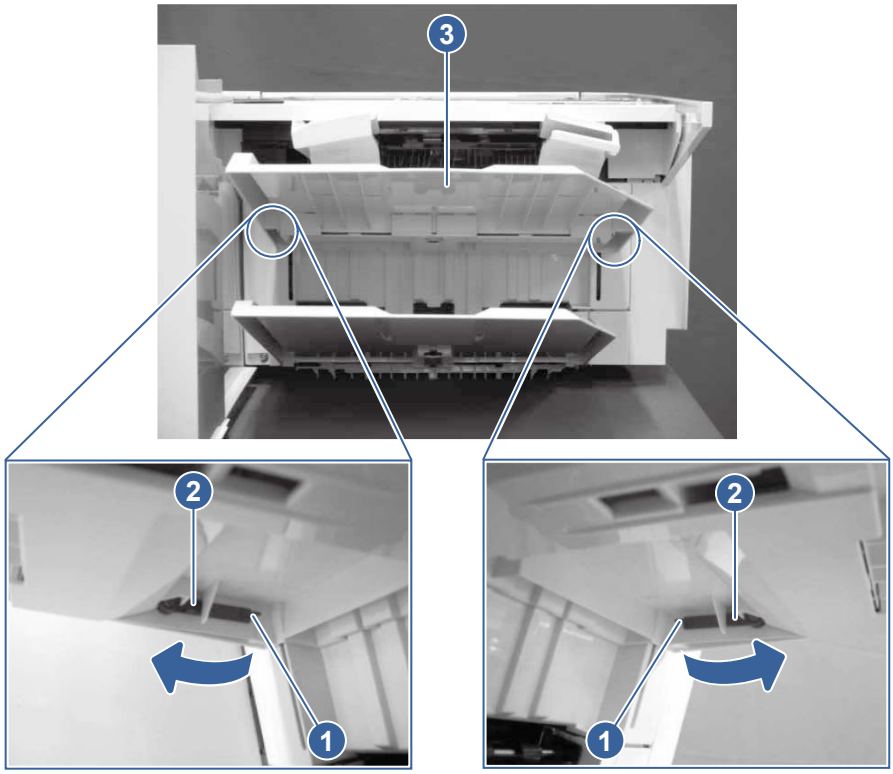
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker output bin 1 assembly.

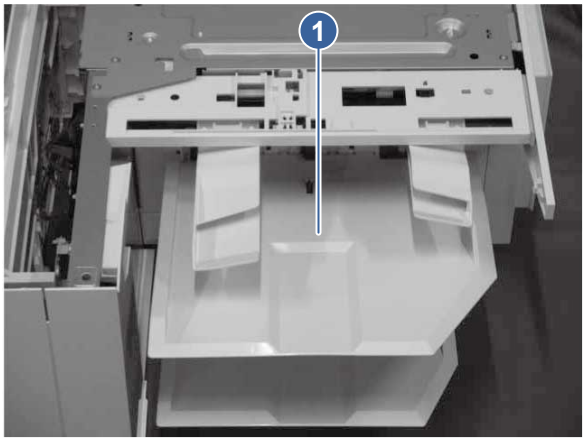
1. Release one boss (callout 1), rotate the pin (callout 2) in the direction indicated, and then remove the pin.

Figure 4-1024 Remove the pin



2. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (callout 1).

Figure 4-1025 Remove the output bin



2. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Upper feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the upper feed assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the upper feed assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-137 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4169-000CN	Upper paper feed assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

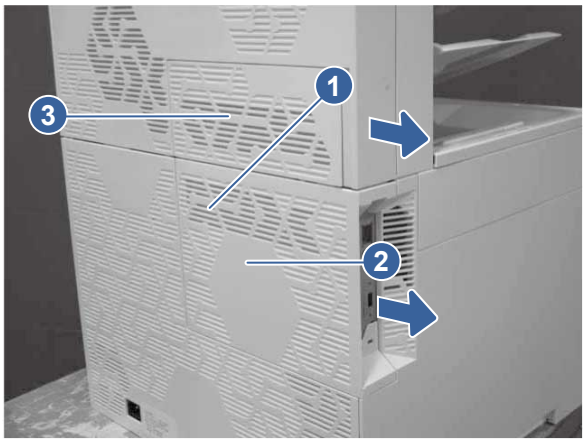
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

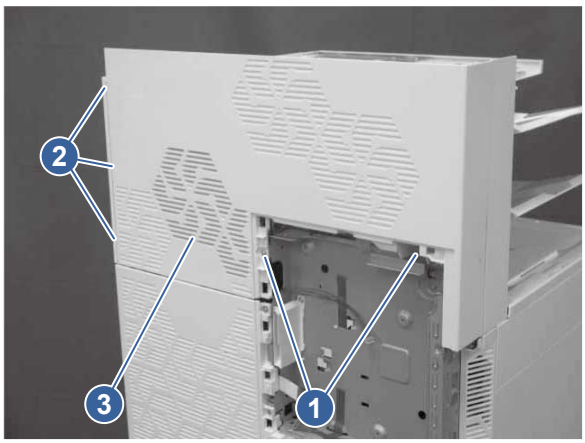
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1026 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1027 Remove the rear cover

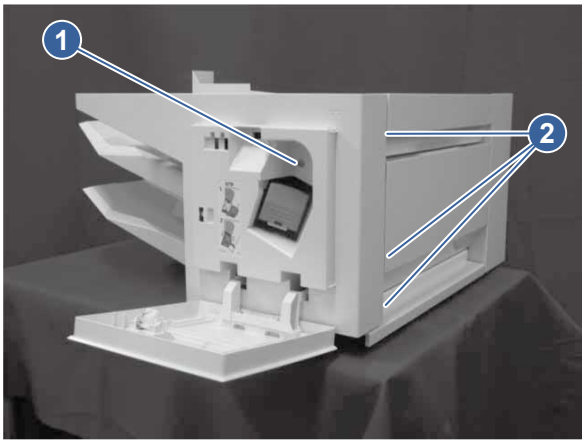


2. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

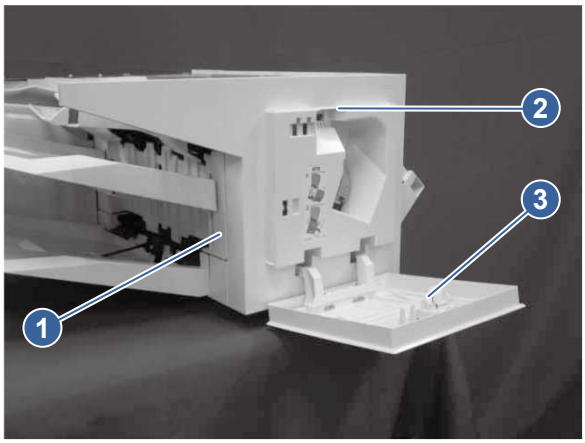
1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-1028 **Remove one screw**



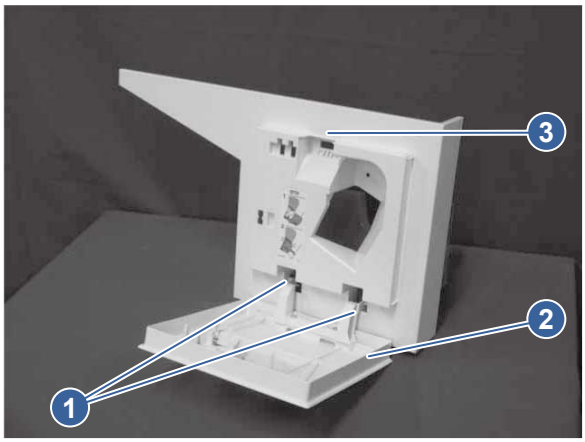
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-1029 **Release one tab**



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1030 **Remove the staple door from the staple cover**

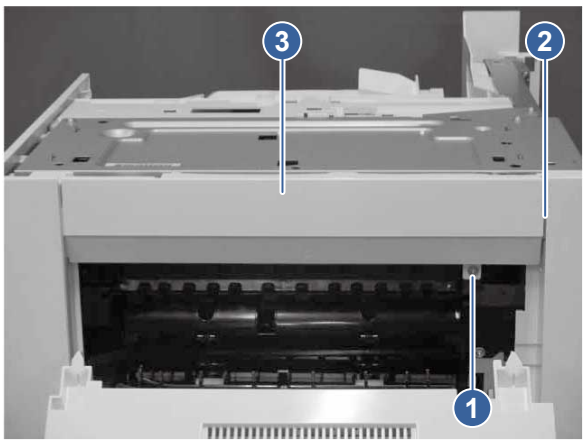


3. Remove the right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1031 **Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover**

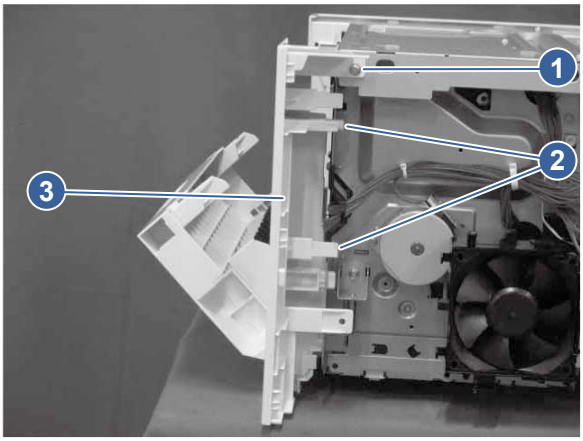


4. Remove the right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right corner cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the right corner cover (callout 3).

  Figure 4-1032 Remove the right corner cover

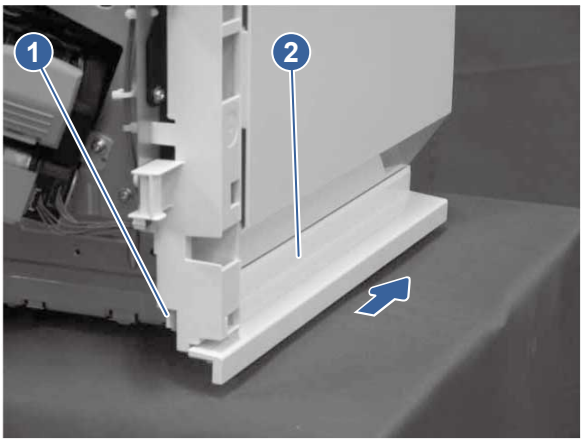
  

5. Remove the right lower cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right lower cover.

- Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

  Figure 4-1033 Remove the right lower cover

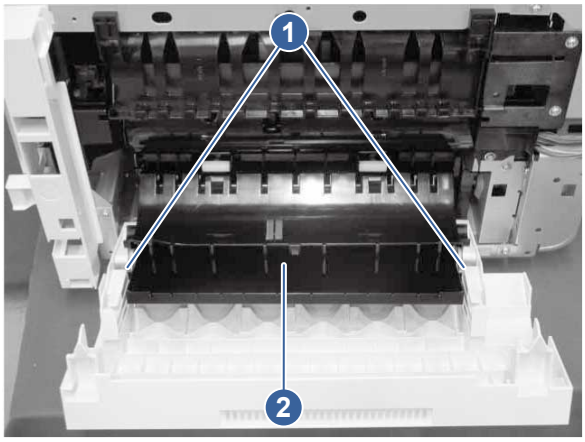
  

6. Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker door assembly.

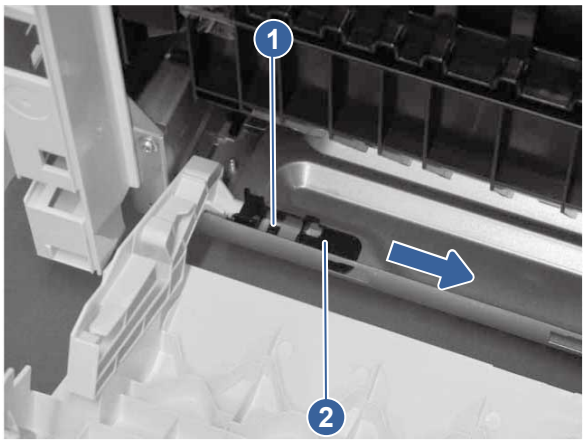
1. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then open the feed guide (callout 2).

Figure 4-1034 Remove two shafts



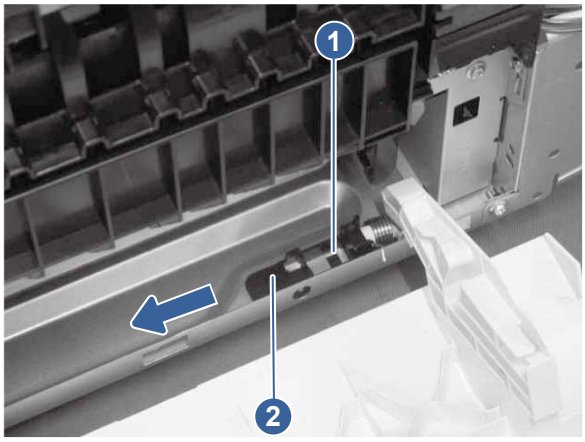
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the left bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1035 Remove the left bushing



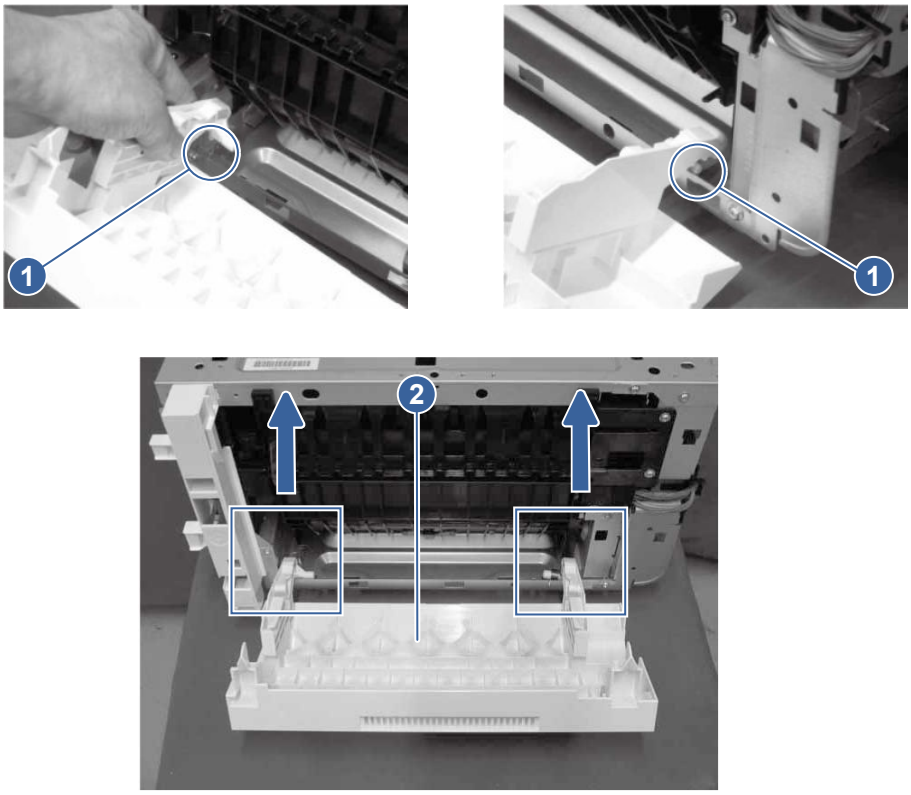
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1036 Remove the right bushing



4. Remove right and left shafts (callout 1), and then remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-1037 Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly

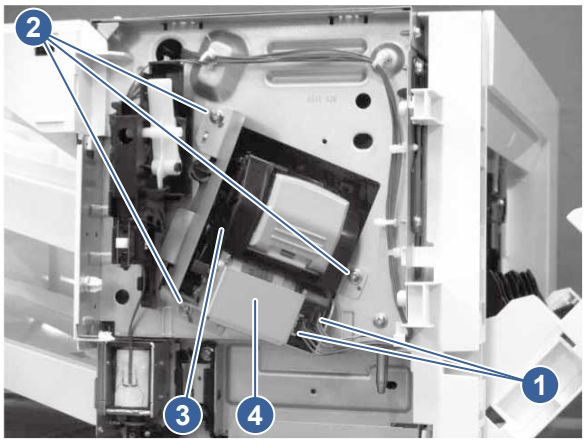


7. Remove the stapler assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker stapler assembly.

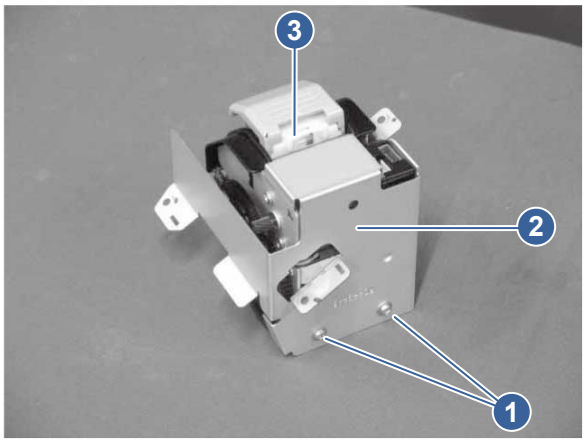
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler assembly (callout 3) and the plate (callout 4) together.

Figure 4-1038 Remove the stapler assembly and the plate



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the plate (callout 2) from the stapler assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-1039 Remove the plate from the stapler assembly

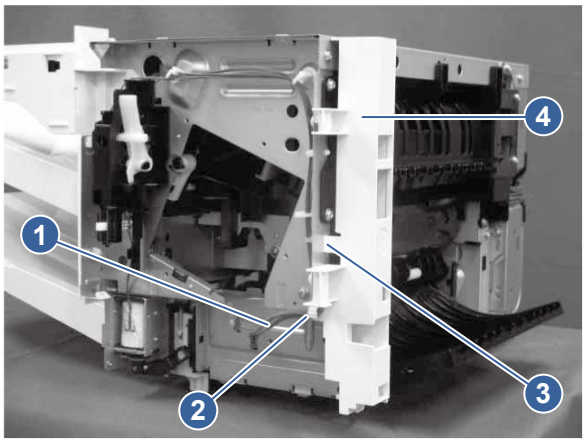


8. Remove the upper feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker upper feed assembly.

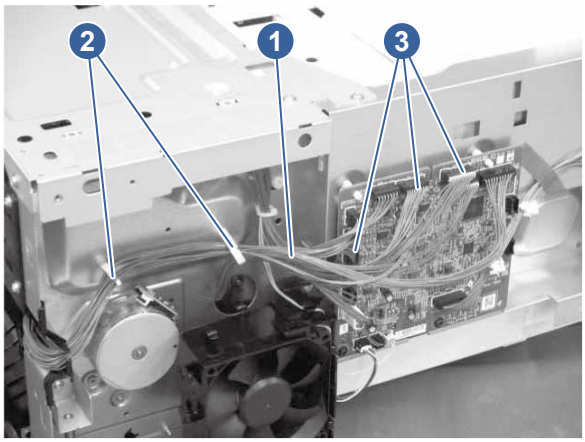
1. Release the cable (callout 1) from cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the inner cover (callout 4).

Figure 4-1040 Remove the inner cover



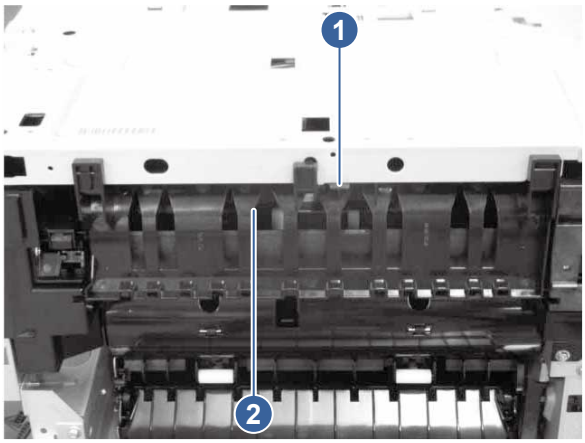
2. Release the cable (callout 1) from cable clamps (callout 2), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 3).

Figure 4-1041 Release the cable



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

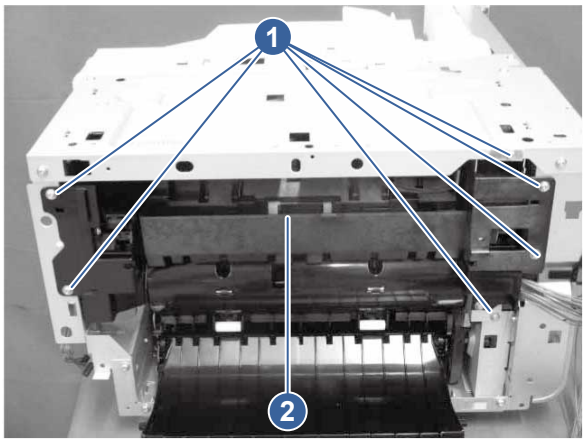
Figure 4-1042 Remove the guide



4. Remove six screws (callout 1), and then remove the upper feed assembly (callout 2).

⚠ CAUTION: Be sure that the paper guides extend into the tray area when reinstalling the upper feed assembly. The guides can be damaged if they are trapped behind the in-cave frame when the assembly is seated in the frame.

Figure 4-1043 Remove the upper feed assembly



9. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Lower feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the lower feed assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the lower feed assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-138 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-4168-000CN	Lower paper feed assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

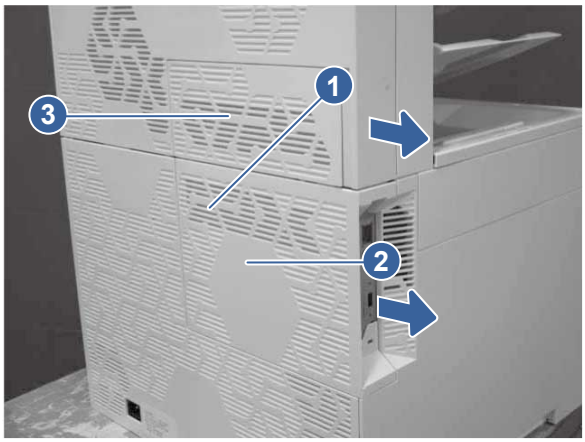
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

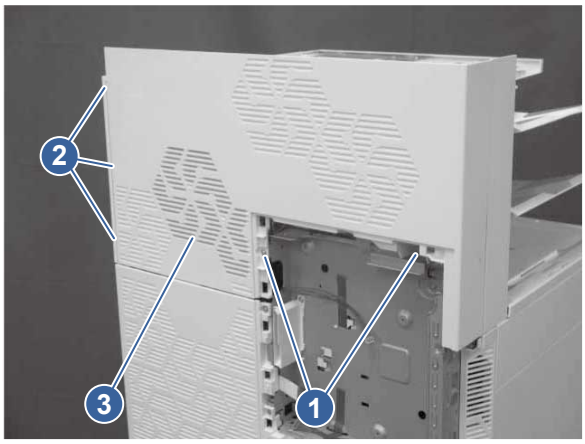
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1044 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1045 Remove the rear cover



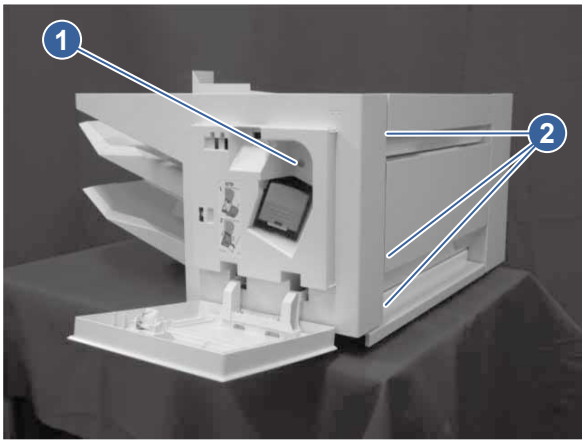
2. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.

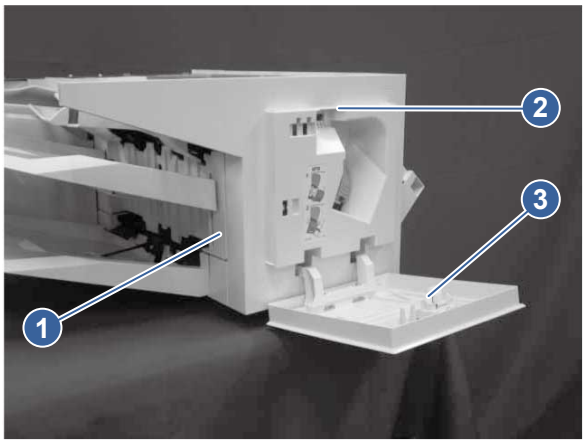
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-1046 Remove one screw



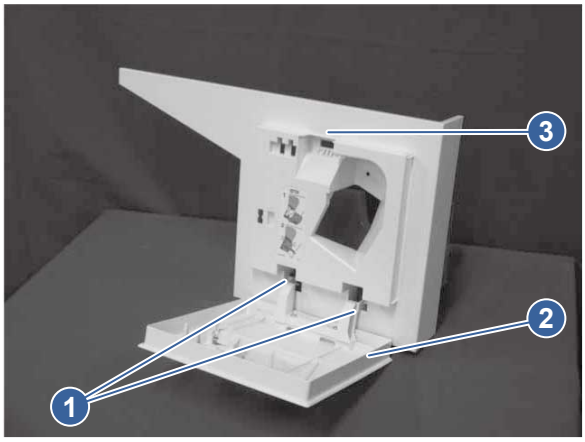
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-1047 Release one tab



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1048 Remove the staple door from the staple cover

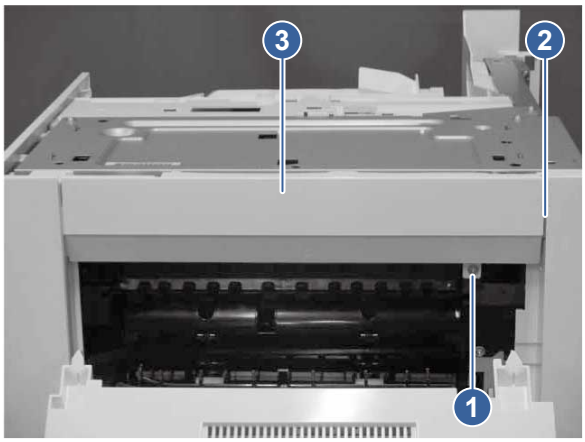


3. Remove the right upper cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly.
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release one tab (callout 2), and then remove the right upper cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1049 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker right upper cover

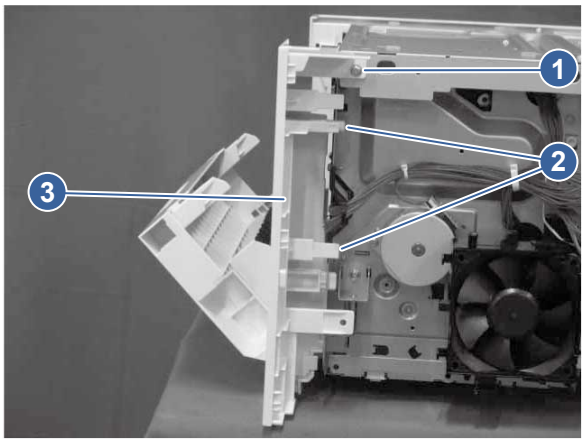


4. Remove the right corner cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right corner cover.

- Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the right corner cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1050 Remove the right corner cover

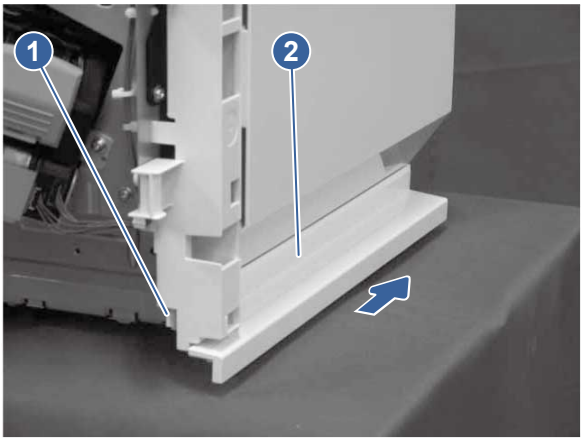


5. Remove the right lower cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker right lower cover.

- Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right lower cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1051 Remove the right lower cover

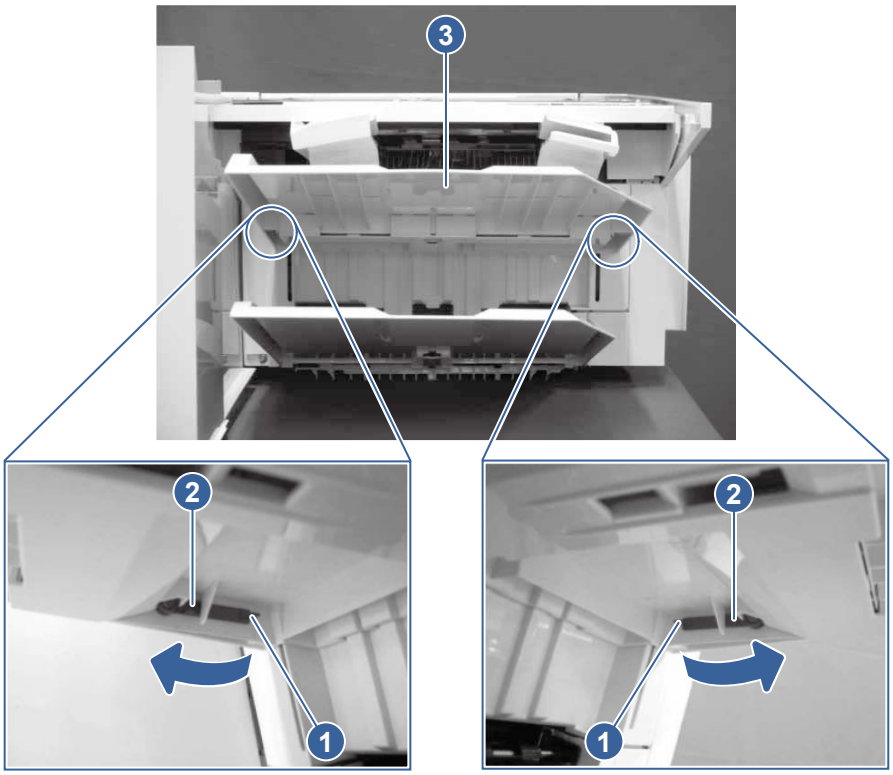


6. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker output bin 1 assembly.

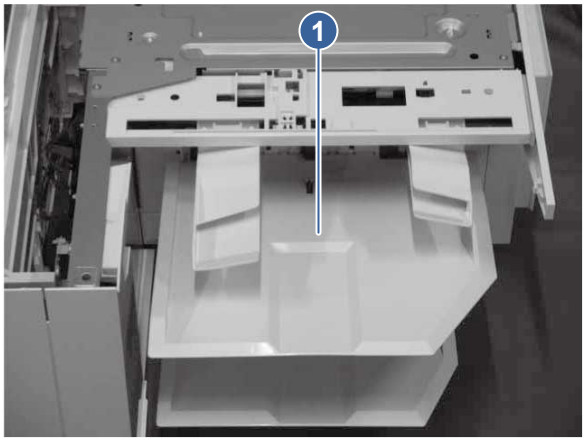
1. Release one boss (callout 1), rotate the pin (callout 2) in the direction indicated, and then remove the pin.

Figure 4-1052 Remove the pin



2. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (callout 1).

Figure 4-1053 **Remove the output bin**

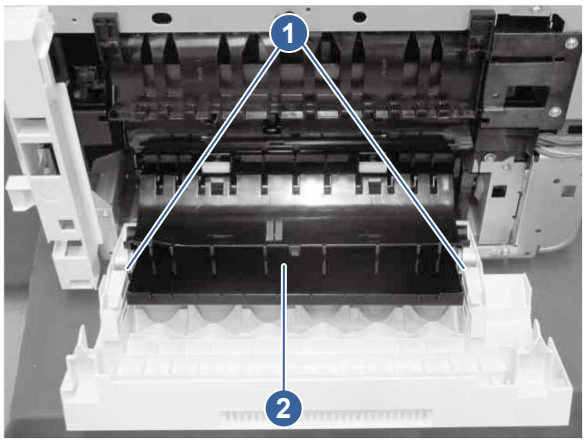


7. Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker door assembly.

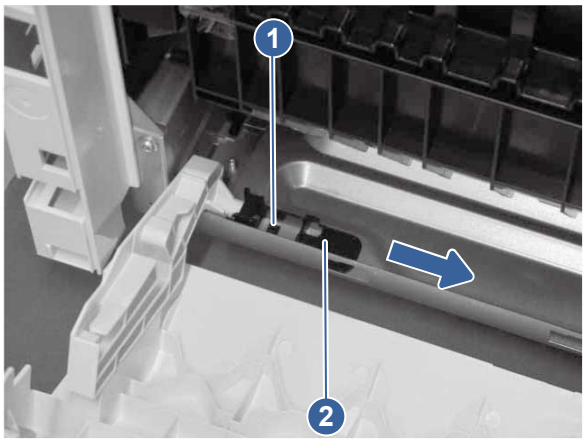
1. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then open the feed guide (callout 2).

Figure 4-1054 **Remove two shafts**



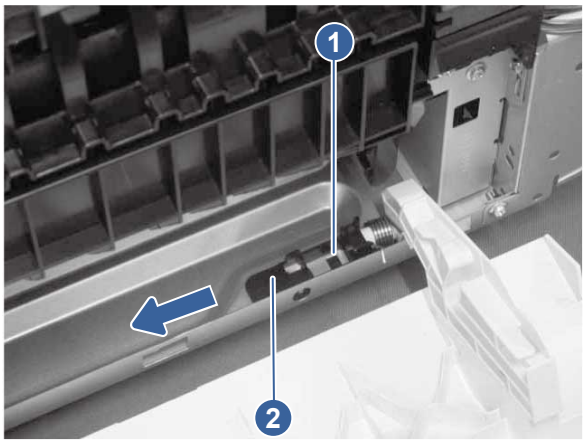
2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the left bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1055 Remove the left bushing



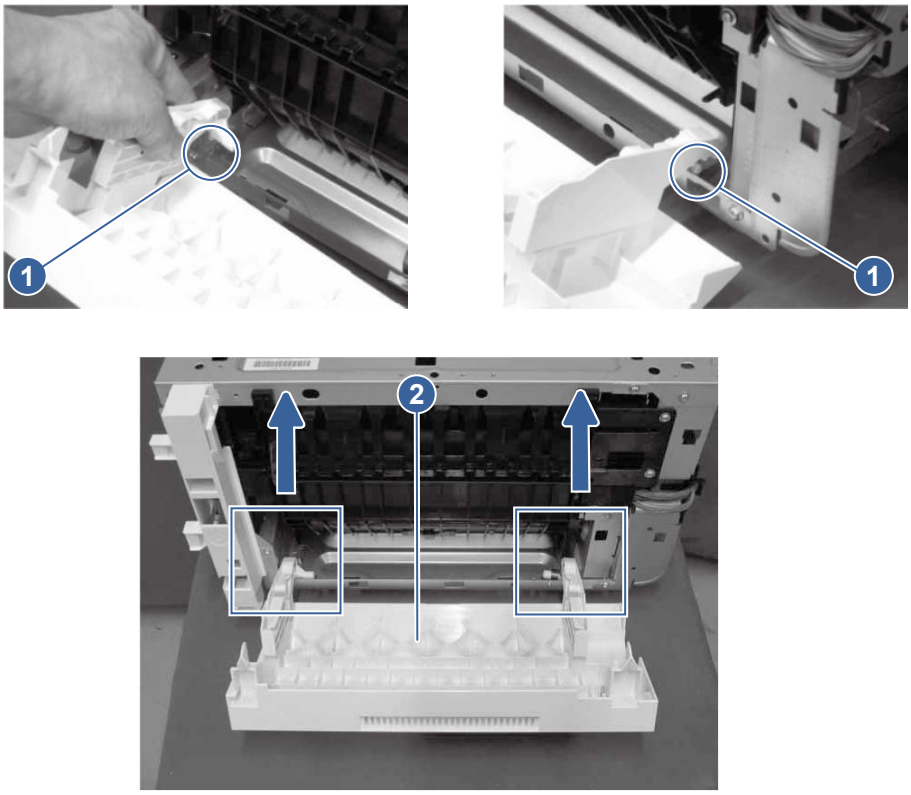
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then slide the right bushing (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1056 Remove the right bushing



4. Remove right and left shafts (callout 1), and then remove the stapler-stacker door assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-1057 Remove the stapler-stacker door assembly

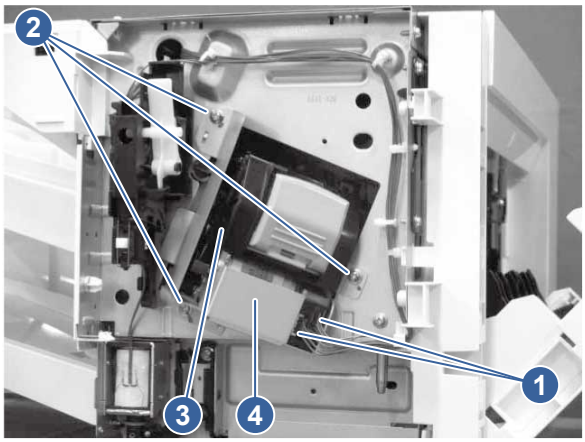


8. Remove the stapler assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker stapler assembly.

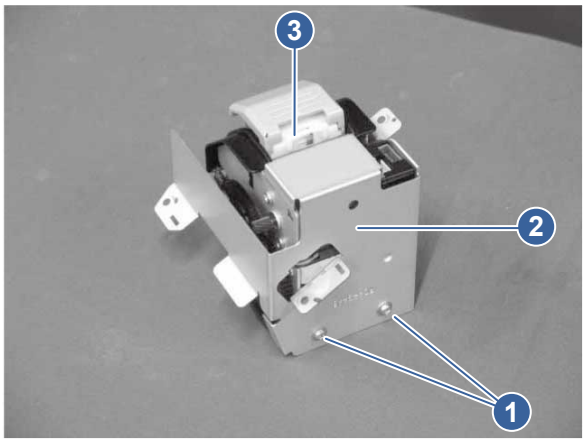
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), remove three screws (callout 2), and then remove the stapler assembly (callout 3) and the plate (callout 4) together.

Figure 4-1058 Remove the stapler assembly and the plate



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), and then remove the plate (callout 2) from the stapler assembly (callout 3).

Figure 4-1059 **Remove the plate from the stapler assembly**

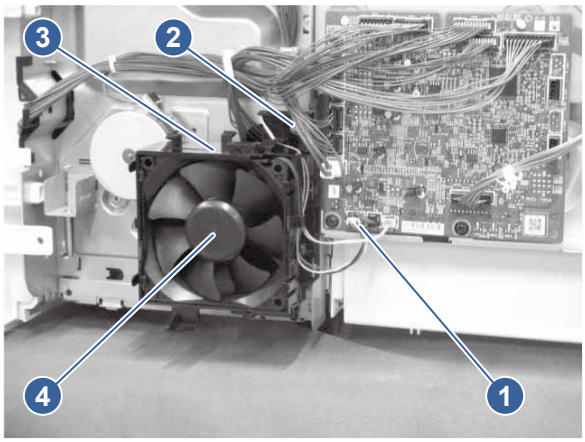


9. Remove the MBM fan (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker mailbox/booklet-maker fan.

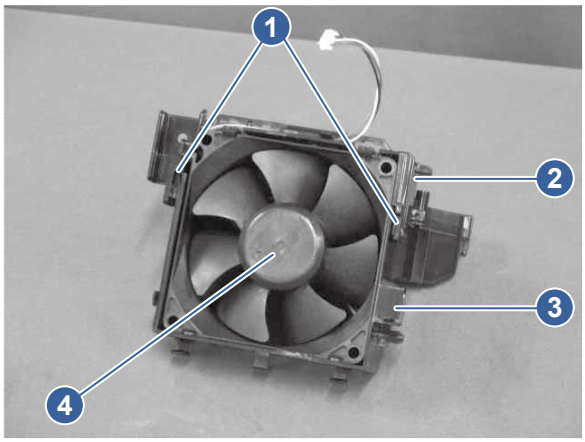
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the fan holder (callout 3) together with the fan (callout 4).

Figure 4-1060 **Remove the fan holder and fan**



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the duct 1 (callout 2) and the duct 2 (callout 3), and then remove the MBM fan (callout 4) from the holder.

Figure 4-1061 Remove the fan from the holder

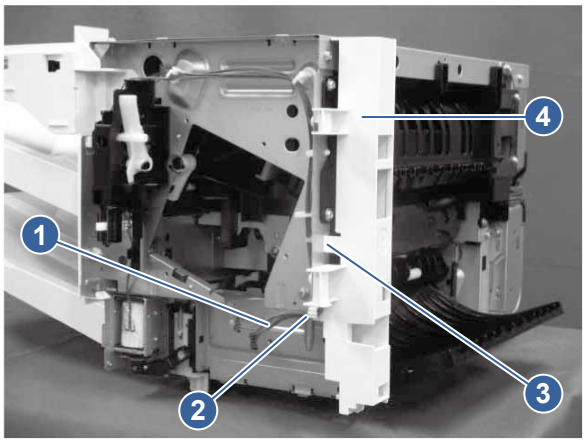


10. Remove the upper feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker upper feed assembly.

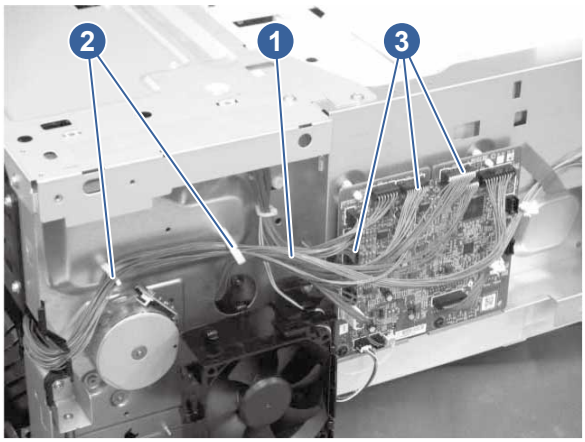
1. Release the cable (callout 1) from cable guide (callout 2), release one tab (callout 3), and then remove the inner cover (callout 4).

Figure 4-1062 Remove the inner cover



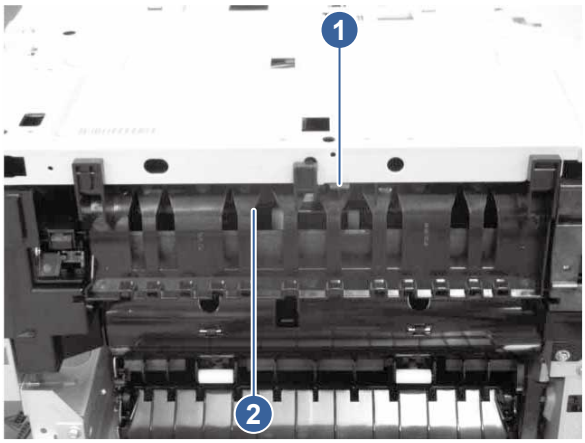
2. Release the cable (callout 1) from cable clamps (callout 2), and then disconnect three connectors (callout 3).

Figure 4-1063 **Release the cable**



3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the guide (callout 2).

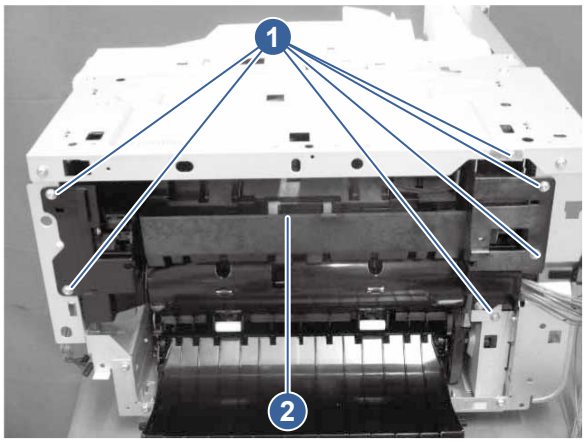
Figure 4-1064 **Remove the guide**



4. Remove six screws (callout 1), and then remove the upper feed assembly (callout 2).

⚠ CAUTION: Be sure that the paper guides extend into the tray area when reinstalling the upper feed assembly. The guides can be damaged if they are trapped behind the in-cave frame when the assembly is seated in the frame.

Figure 4-1065 Remove the upper feed assembly

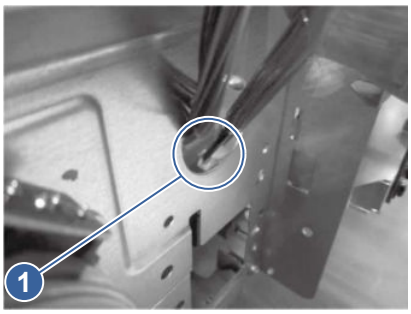


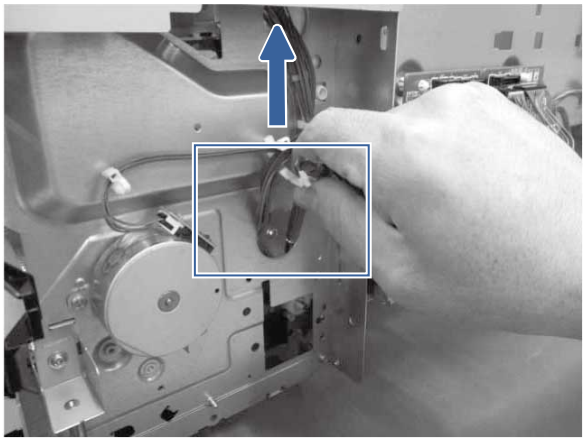
11. Remove the stacking wall assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker stacking wall assembly.

1. Release one tab (callout 1).

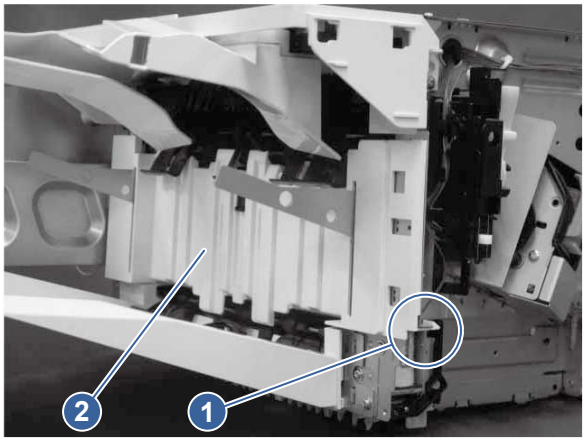
Figure 4-1066 Release one tab





2. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the stacking wall assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-1067 **Remove the stacking wall assembly**

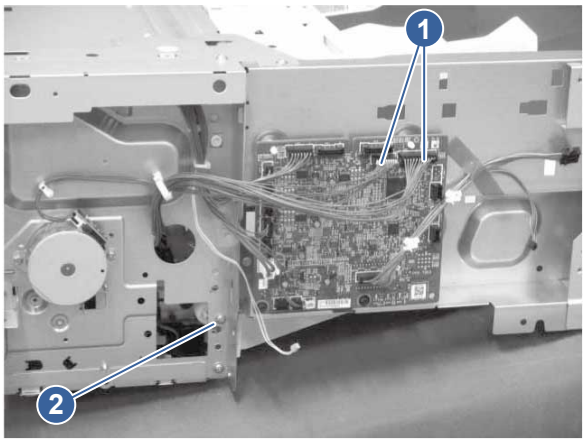


12. Remove the lower feed assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker lower feed assembly.

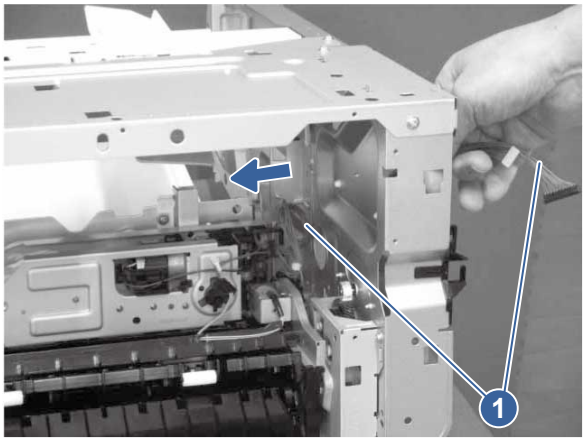
1. Disconnect two connectors (callout 1), and then remove one screw (callout 2).

Figure 4-1068 **Disconnect two connectors**



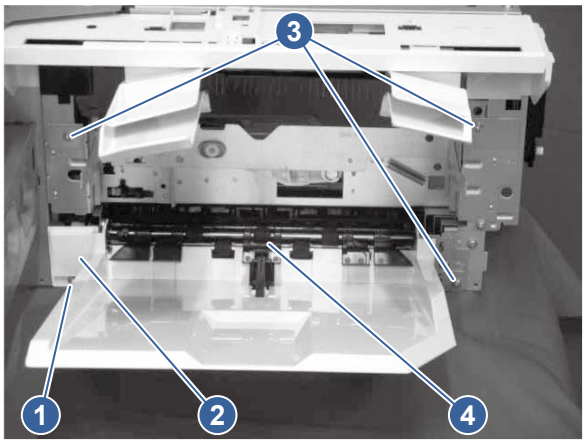
2. Remove the cable (callout 1) by pulling it through the chassis.

Figure 4-1069 **Remove the cable**



3. Remove one screw (callout 1), remove the cover (callout 2), remove three screws (callout 3), and then remove the lower feed assembly (callout 4).

Figure 4-1070 **Remove the lower feed assembly**



13. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Solenoid assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the solenoid assembly.

View a video demonstration of removing and replacing the solenoid assembly.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-139 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM2-1040-010CN	Solenoid assembly (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

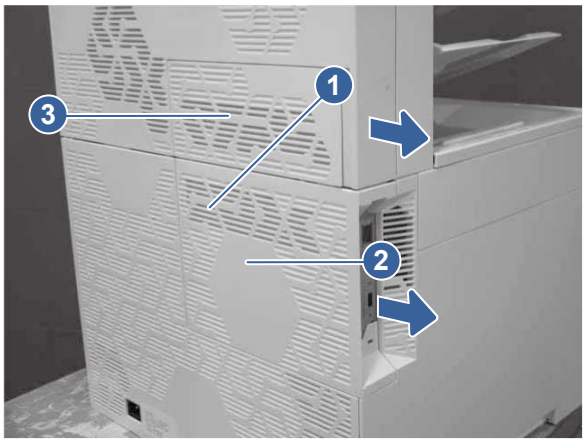
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

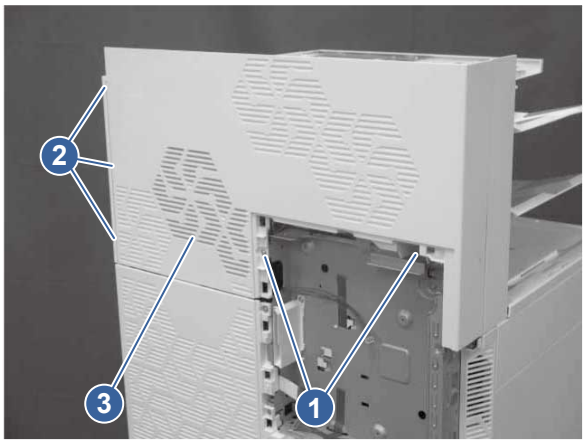
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1071 **Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover**



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1072 **Remove the rear cover**



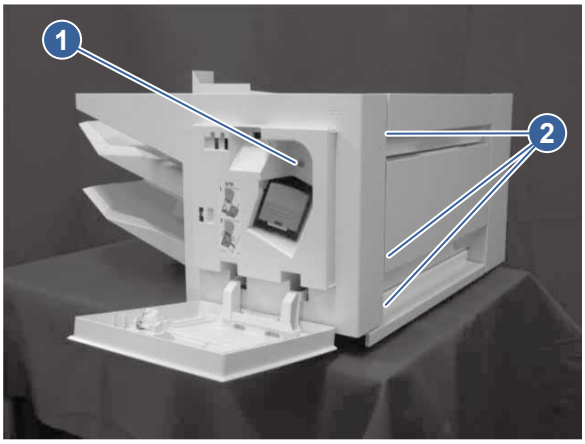
2. Remove the staple cover and staple door (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker staple cover and staple door.

1. Open the stapler-stacker door assembly and the stapler door.

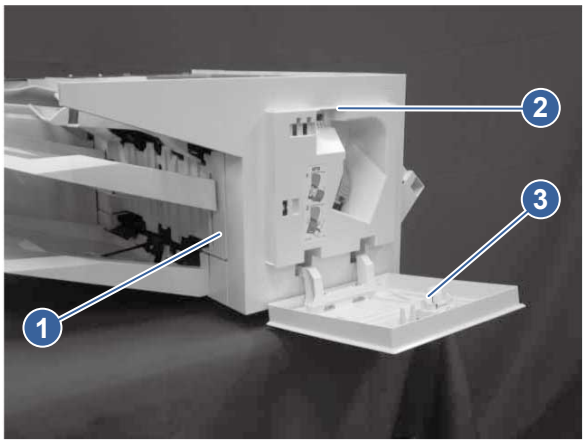
2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then release three tabs (callout 2).

Figure 4-1073 Remove one screw



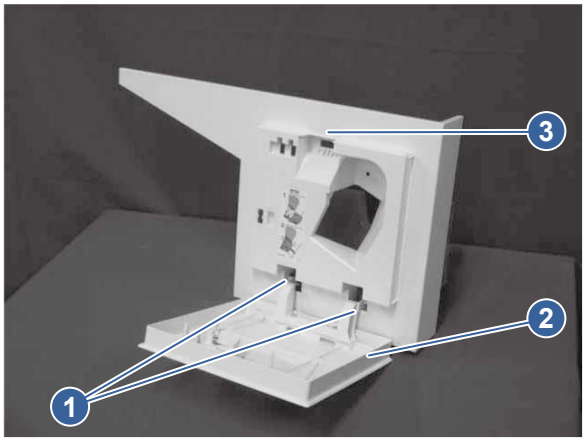
3. Release one tab (callout 1), and then remove the staple cover (callout 2) and the staple door (callout 3) together.

Figure 4-1074 Release one tab



4. Remove two shafts (callout 1), and then remove the staple door (callout 2) from the staple cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1075 Remove the staple door from the staple cover

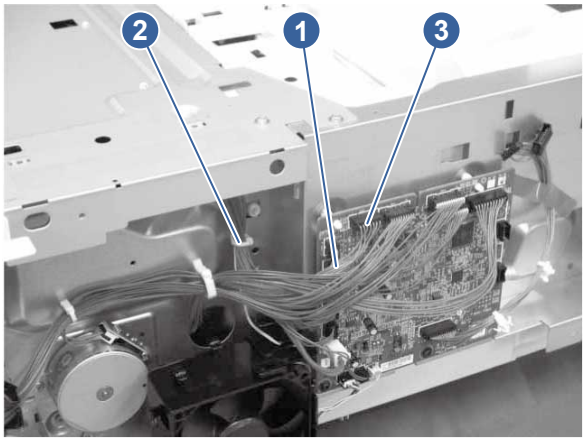


3. Remove the jogger assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker jogger assembly.

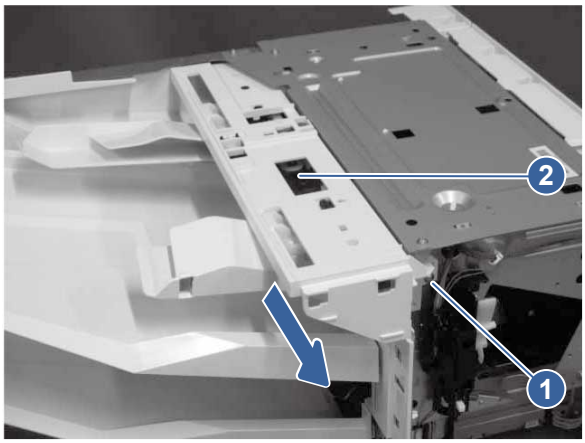
1. Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable clamp (callout 2), and then disconnect one connector (callout 3).

Figure 4-1076 **Release the cable**



2. Remove one screw (callout 1), and then slide the jogger assembly (callout 2) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1077 **Remove the jogger assembly**

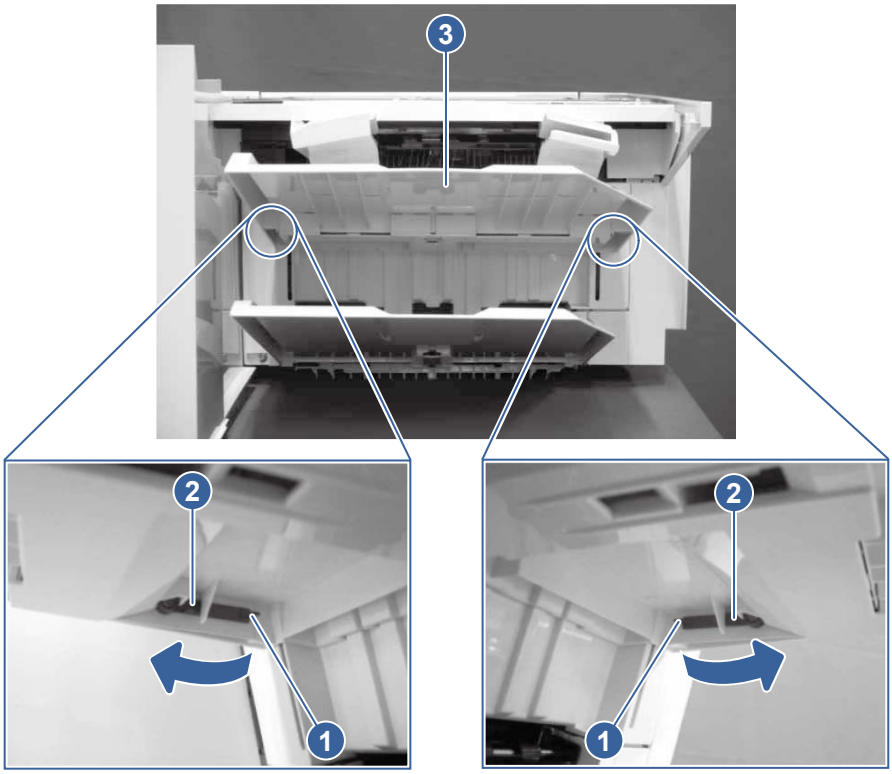


4. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker output bin 1 assembly.

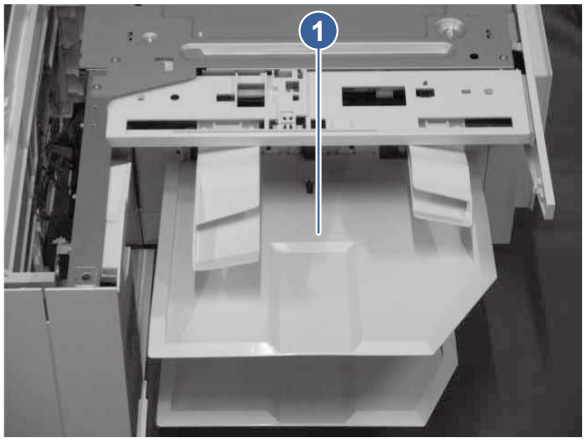
1. Release one boss (callout 1), rotate the pin (callout 2) in the direction indicated, and then remove the pin.

Figure 4-1078 Remove the pin



2. Remove the output bin 1 assembly (callout 1).

Figure 4-1079 Remove the output bin

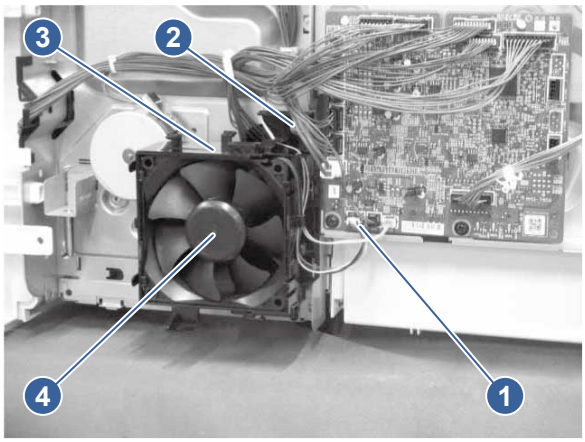


5. Remove the MBM fan (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker mailbox/booklet-maker fan.

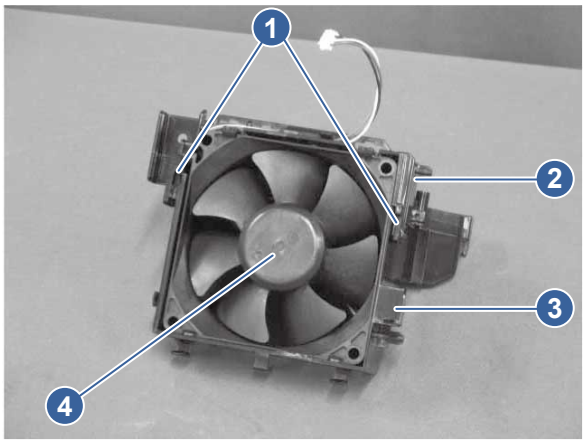
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the fan holder (callout 3) together with the fan (callout 4).

Figure 4-1080 Remove the fan holder and fan



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the duct 1 (callout 2) and the duct 2 (callout 3), and then remove the MBM fan (callout 4) from the holder.

Figure 4-1081 Remove the fan from the holder

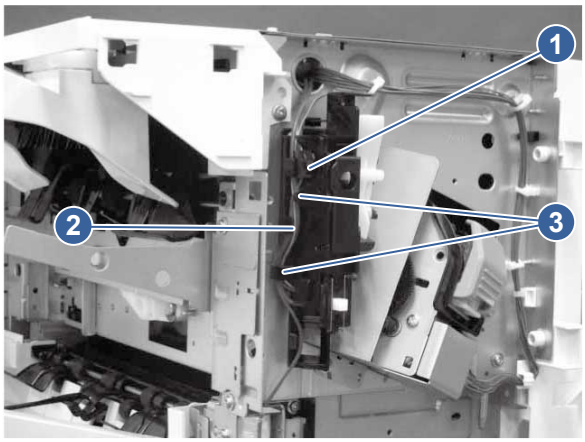


6. Remove the solenoid assembly (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker solenoid assembly.

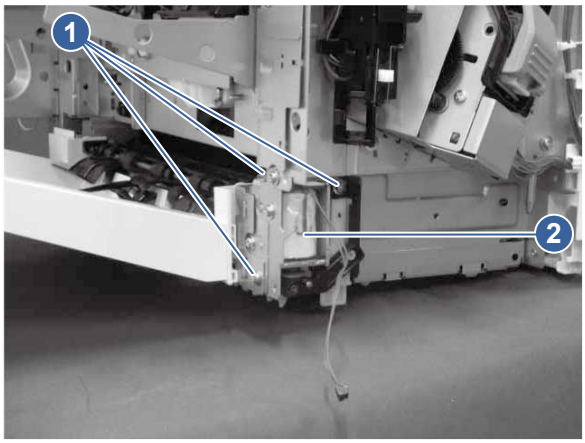
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), and then release the cable (callout 2) from the cable stoppers (callout 3).

Figure 4-1082 Release the cable



2. Remove three screws (callout 1), and then remove the solenoid assembly (callout 2).

Figure 4-1083 Remove the solenoid assembly



7. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not

available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: MBM fan (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the 3-bin stapler-stacker mailbox/booklet-maker fan.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-140 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-8153-000CN	Fan (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

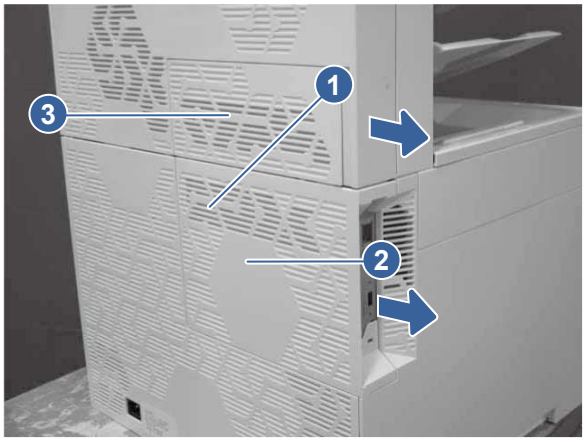
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

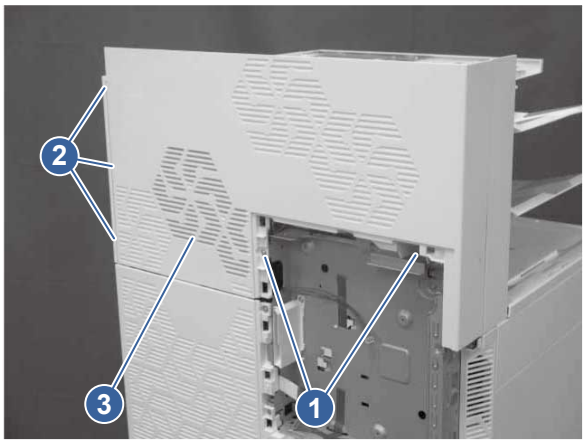
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1084 **Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover**



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1085 **Remove the rear cover**

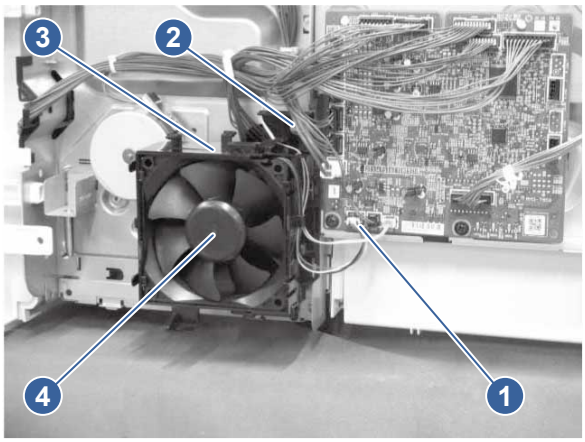


2. Remove the MBM fan (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker mailbox/booklet-maker fan.

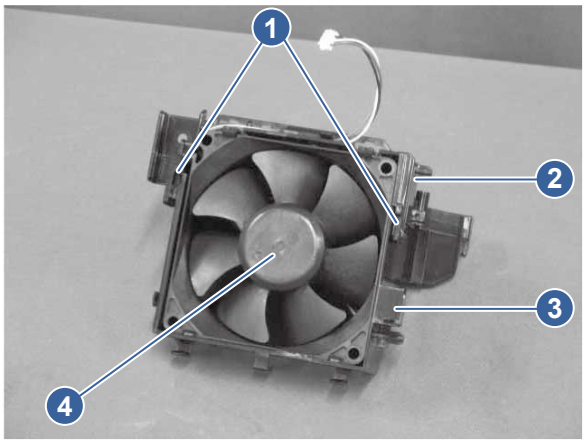
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the fan holder (callout 3) together with the fan (callout 4).

Figure 4-1086 **Remove the fan holder and fan**



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the duct 1 (callout 2) and the duct 2 (callout 3), and then remove the MBM fan (callout 4) from the holder.

Figure 4-1087 **Remove the fan from the holder**



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: 

Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Stapler-stacker feed motor (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the feed motor.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

WARNING! To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-141 Part information

Part number	Part description
RK2-8149-000CN	Motor, stepping DC (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

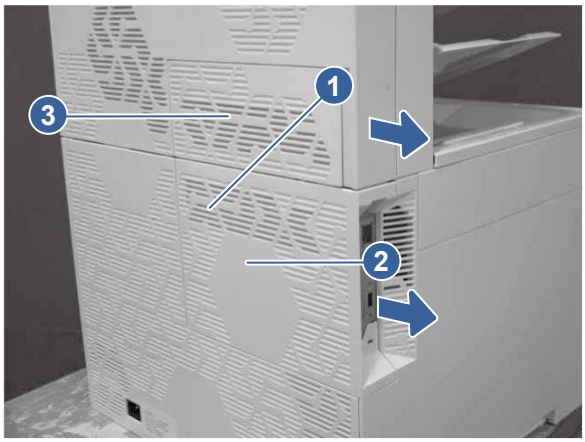
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

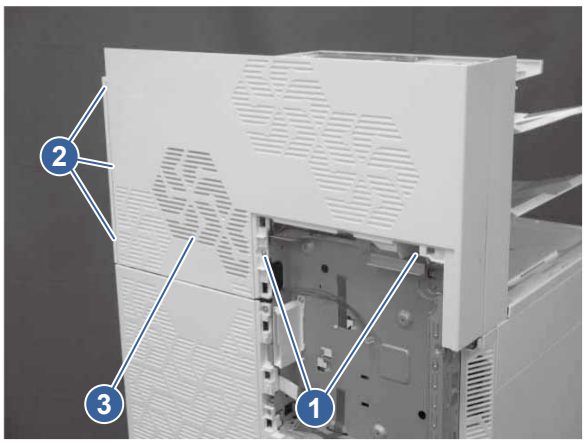
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1088 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1089 Remove the rear cover

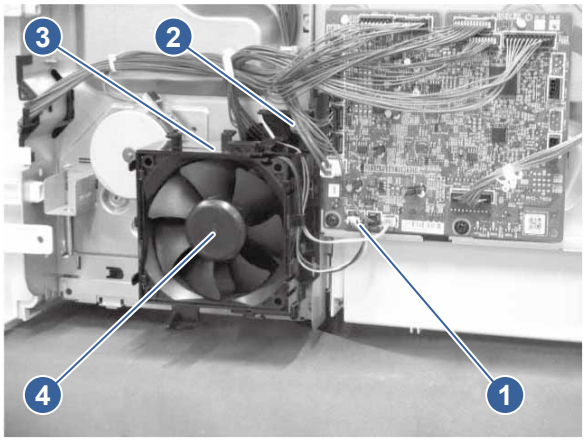


2. Remove the MBM fan (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker mailbox/booklet-maker fan.

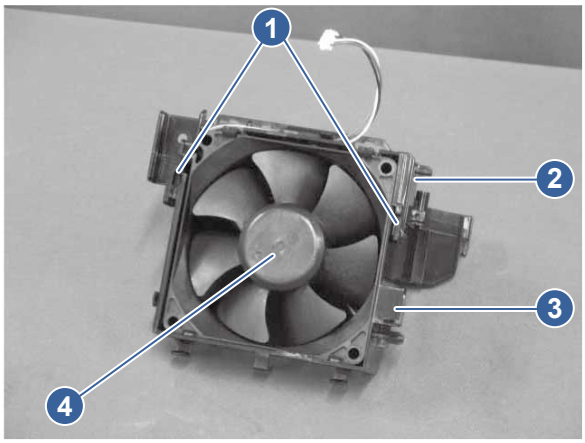
1. Disconnect one connector (callout 1), remove one screw (callout 2), and then remove the fan holder (callout 3) together with the fan (callout 4).

Figure 4-1090 **Remove the fan holder and fan**



2. Release two tabs (callout 1), remove the duct 1 (callout 2) and the duct 2 (callout 3), and then remove the MBM fan (callout 4) from the holder.

Figure 4-1091 **Remove the fan from the holder**

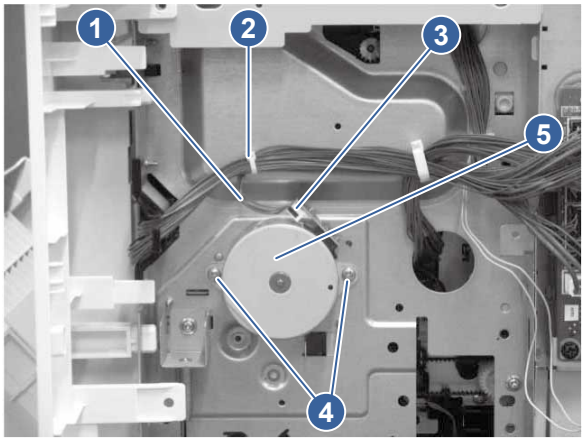


3. Remove the feed motor (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker feed motor.

- Release the cable (callout 1) from the cable clamp (callout 2), disconnect one connector (callout 3), remove two screws (callout 4), and then remove the stapler-stacker feed motor (callout 5).

Figure 4-1092 Remove the feed motor



4. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

Removal and replacement: Controller PCA (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing and replacing the 3-bin stapler-stacker controller PCA.

Before performing service

Turn the printer power off

- Disconnect the power cable.

> ⚠ **WARNING!** To avoid damage to the printer, turn the printer off, wait 30 seconds, and then remove the power cord before attempting to service the printer.

Use the table below to identify the correct part number for your printer, and then go to https://parts.hp.com/hpparts to order the part.

Table 4-142 Part information

Part number	Part description
RM3-7950-000CN	Staple stacker PCA (3-bin SS)

Required tools

- #2 Phillips screwdriver with a magnetic tip and a 152 mm (6 in) shaft length
- Small flat-blade screwdriver

After performing service

Turn the printer power on

- Connect the power cable.
- Use the power switch to turn the power on.

Post service test

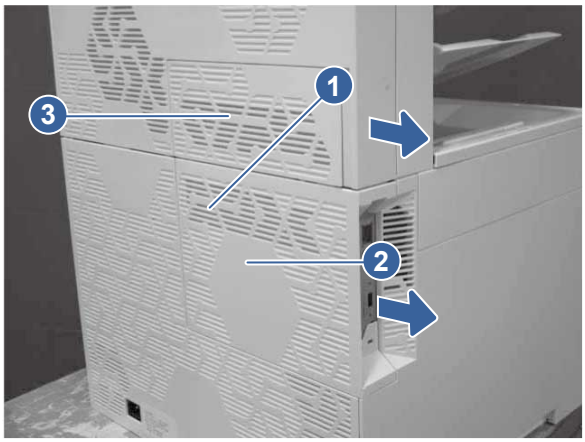
Print any pages necessary to make sure the printer is functioning correctly.

1. Remove the rear cover (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker rear cover.

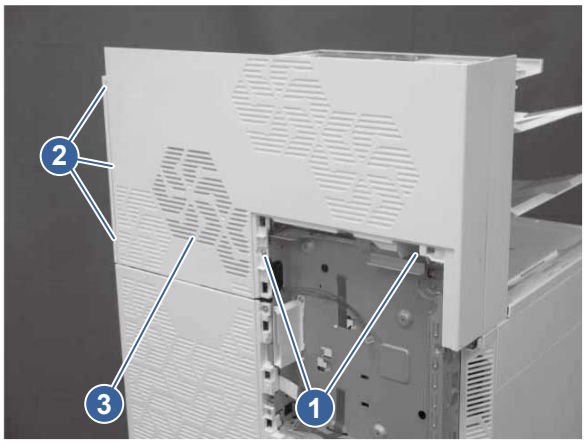
1. Remove the printer formatter cover by removing one screw (callout 1) and then sliding the cover (callout 2) in the direction indicated. Slide the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover assembly (callout 3) in the direction indicated to remove it.

Figure 4-1093 Remove the 3-bin stapler-stacker formatter cover



2. Remove two screws (callout 1), release three tabs (callout 2), and then remove the rear cover (callout 3).

Figure 4-1094 Remove the rear cover



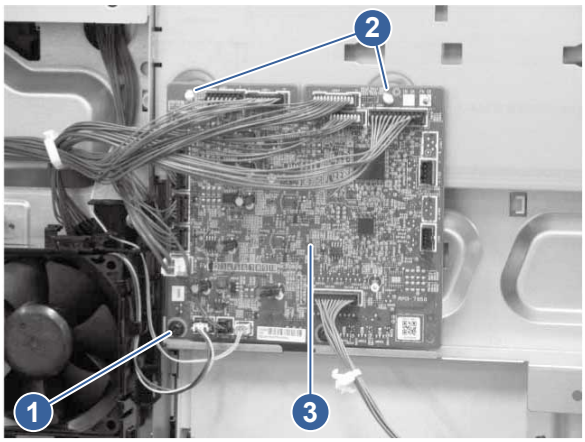
2. Remove the controller PCA (3-bin stapler-stacker)

Learn about removing the 3-bin stapler-stacker controller PCA.

1. Disconnect all the connectors on the controller PCA.

2. Remove one screw (callout 1), release two tabs (callout 2), and then remove the controller PCA (callout 3).

Figure 4-1095 Remove the controller PCA



3. Unpack the replacement assembly

Follow these steps to unpack the replacement assembly.

1. Dispose of the defective part.

NOTE: HP recommends responsible disposal of the defective part.

http://www8.hp.com/us/en/hp-information/environment/product-recycling.html

2. Unpack the replacement part from the packaging.

CAUTION: Some parts are sensitive to electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always perform service work at an ESD-protected workstation or mat. If an ESD workstation or mat is not available, touch the sheet-metal chassis to provide a static ground before touching an ESD-sensitive assembly. Protect the ESD-sensitive assemblies by placing them in ESD pouches when they are out of the printer.

IMPORTANT: Make sure that all of the shipping materials (for example shipping tape) are removed from the replacement part prior to installation.

NOTE: If the replacement part is a roller or pad, avoid touching the spongy part of it. Skin oils on the roller or pad can cause paper pickup and/or print-quality problems. HP recommends using disposable gloves when handling rollers or pads or washing your hands before touching rollers or pads.

3. To install an assembly, reverse the removal steps.

NOTE: When applicable, special installation instructions are provided for an assembly at the end of the removal procedure. Always completely read the removal instructions and follow all special installation instructions.

5 Parts and diagrams

Printer parts information including exploded assembly diagrams and part number lists.

Document feeder / scanner

Learn about the integrated scanner assembly (ISA) parts and assemblies.

NOTE: This section is for MFP printers only.

Integrated scanner assembly

Parts diagram and part list for the integrated scanner assembly (ISA).

Figure 5-1 Integrated scanner assembly

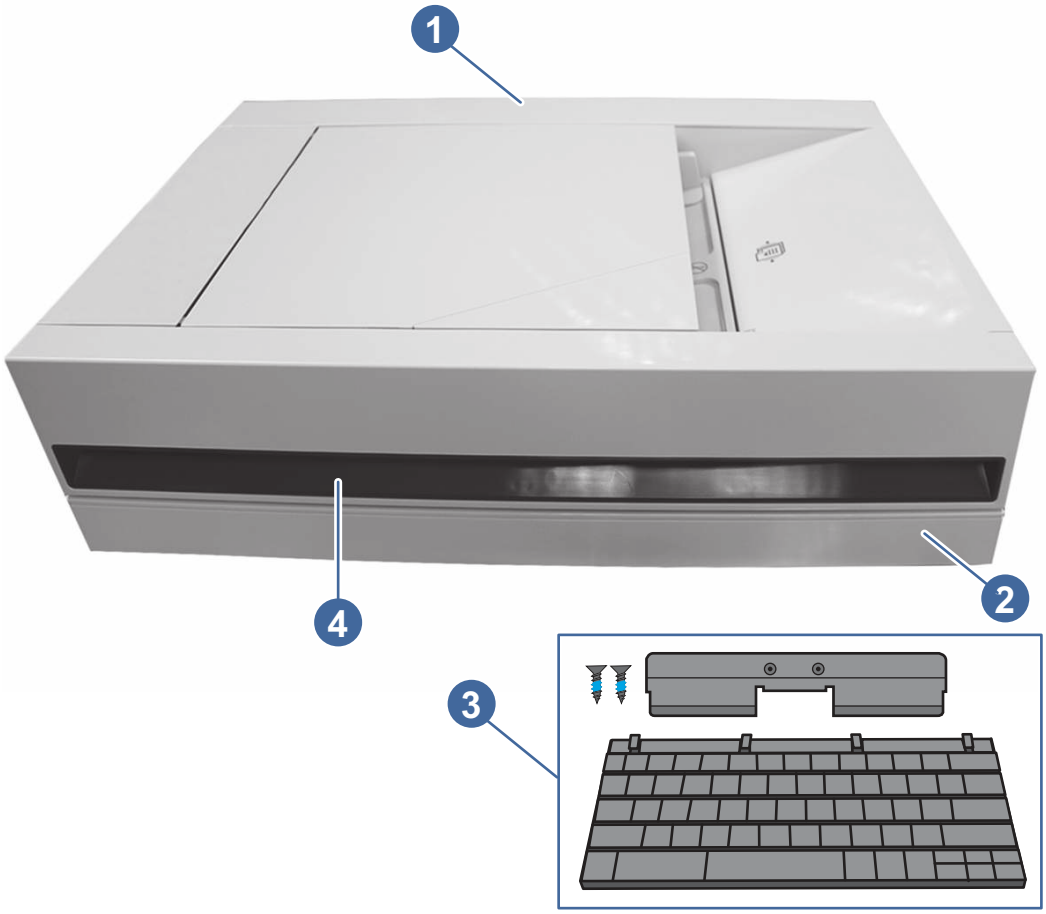


Table 5-1 Integrated scanner assembly

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	C0M44-67002	ADF WUR (5xxx Series Non-Workflow)	1
1	C0M44-67003	ADF WUR (5xxx Series Workflow)	1
2	6QN29-67005	Flatbed scanner	1
3	1M0Q2A	HP LaserJet Workflow Keyboard	1
4	5851-8688	Handle (Lunar Grey Dark/ Cement Dark)	1
4	5851-8689	Handle (Lunar Comet Red Dark)	1
4	5851-8690	Handle (Lunar Cosmic Green Dark)	1
4	5851-8691	Handle (Lunar Constellation Yellow)	1
4	5851-8692	Handle (Lunar Aurora Purple Dark)	1
4	5851-8693	Handle (OOV white)	1

Table 5-1 Integrated scanner assembly (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
Not shown	5851-8849	ADF damper	1
Not shown	5851-8841	ADF hinge kit (5xxx Series)	1
Not shown	5851-8850	ADF white backing kit	1
Not shown	6H121-67001	ADF Pick/Sep Roller Kit (5xxx Series)	1
Not shown	5851-8843	ADF roller cover (5xxx Series)	1
Not shown	A7W12A	Keyboard Overlay Kit - Chinese	1
Not shown	A7W13A	Keyboard Overlay Kit - (DN/FR-Swiss/GN)	1
Not shown	A7W14A	HP LaserJet Swedish Overlay Keyboard	1
Not shown	Scanner control interconnect board (SCIB) (58xx Series)	5851-8962	1

Base printer

Learn about the printer engine parts and assemblies.

Control panels

Parts diagrams and part lists for the control panels.

Control panels

Parts diagrams and parts lists for the printer control panels.

Figure 5-2 Control panels

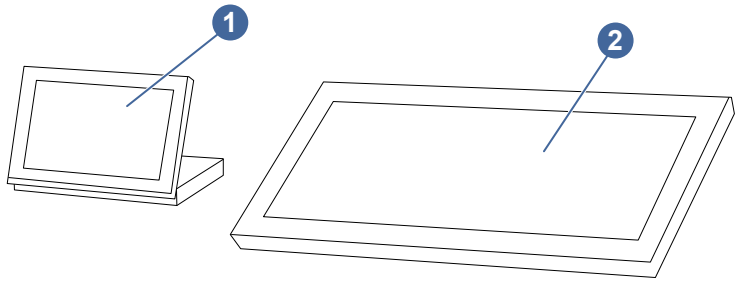


Table 5-2 Control panels

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	6QN28-60102	Control panel 10.9 cm (4.3 in)	1

Table 5-2 Control panels (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
2	6QN35-60129	Control panel 25.6 cm (10.1 in)	1
2	6QN37-60102	Control panel 23.3 cm (8 in)	
Not shown	6QN29-67006	Slide Assembly: (5800dn, 5800f, 5800zf, X57945dn, X58045dn, X57945z, and X58045z)	
Not shown	6QN35-67007	Slide Assembly: (6800dn, 6800zf, 6800zfw+, 6801zfw+, X677dn, X677z+, X67755dn, X67765dn, X67755z+, and X67765z+)	
Not shown	6QN35-67008	Slide Assembly: (X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6801zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs)	

Covers, panels, and doors

Parts diagrams and part lists for the covers, panels, and doors.

Parts and diagrams: Covers 5700/X557 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the SFP printer covers.

Figure 5-3 **Covers 5700/X557 models**

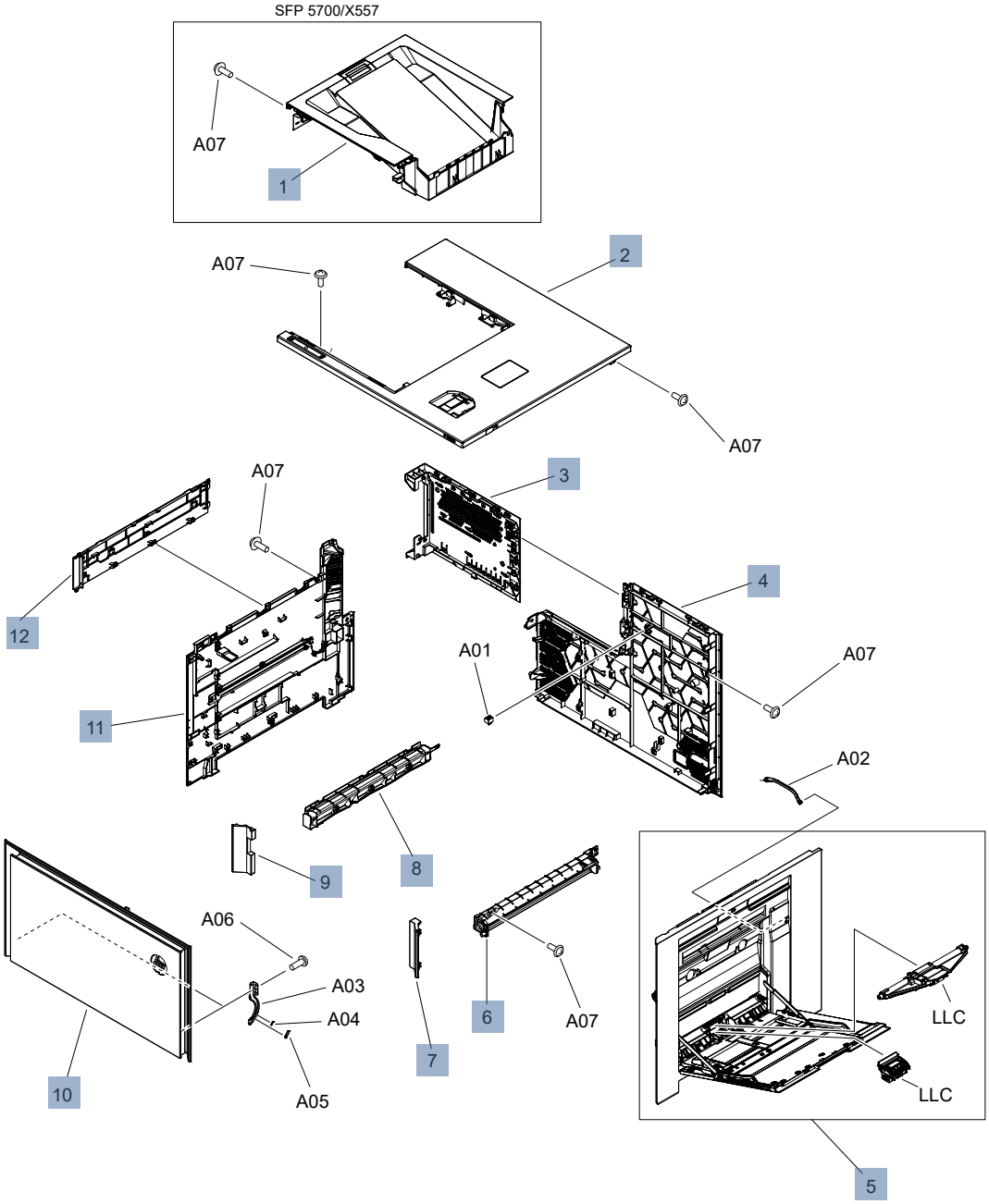


Table 5-3 Covers 5700/X557 models

Key No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-4469-000CN	1	Face down tray assembly
2	RM2-4517-000CN	1	Cover, top assembly
3	RM2-4480-000CN	1	Formatter cover assembly
4	RC5-9168-000CN	1	Cover, rear lower
5	RM2-3570-000CN	1	Right lower door assembly
6	RC5-8516-000CN	1	Handle, right door lower
7	RC5-9199-000CN	1	Cover, front right (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
8	RC5-9165-000CN	1	Handle, left
9	RC5-9198-000CN	1	Cover, front left (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
10	RM2-4473-000CN	1	Front door assembly(5700)
10	RM2-4533-000CN	1	Front door assembly(X557)
11	RM2-4535-000CN	1	Left cover assembly
12	RC5-9204-000CN	1	Cover, left upper (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
Not shown	RC4-0213-000CN	1	Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)
Not shown	6QN30-60103	1	Convenience Stapler Assembly
Not shown	6QN28-40006	1	Cover-Convenience Stapler Cover
Not shown	6QN35-60120	1	Assy-Cable Convenience Stapler

Parts and diagrams: Covers 5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the MFP printer covers.

Figure 5-4 Covers 5800 models

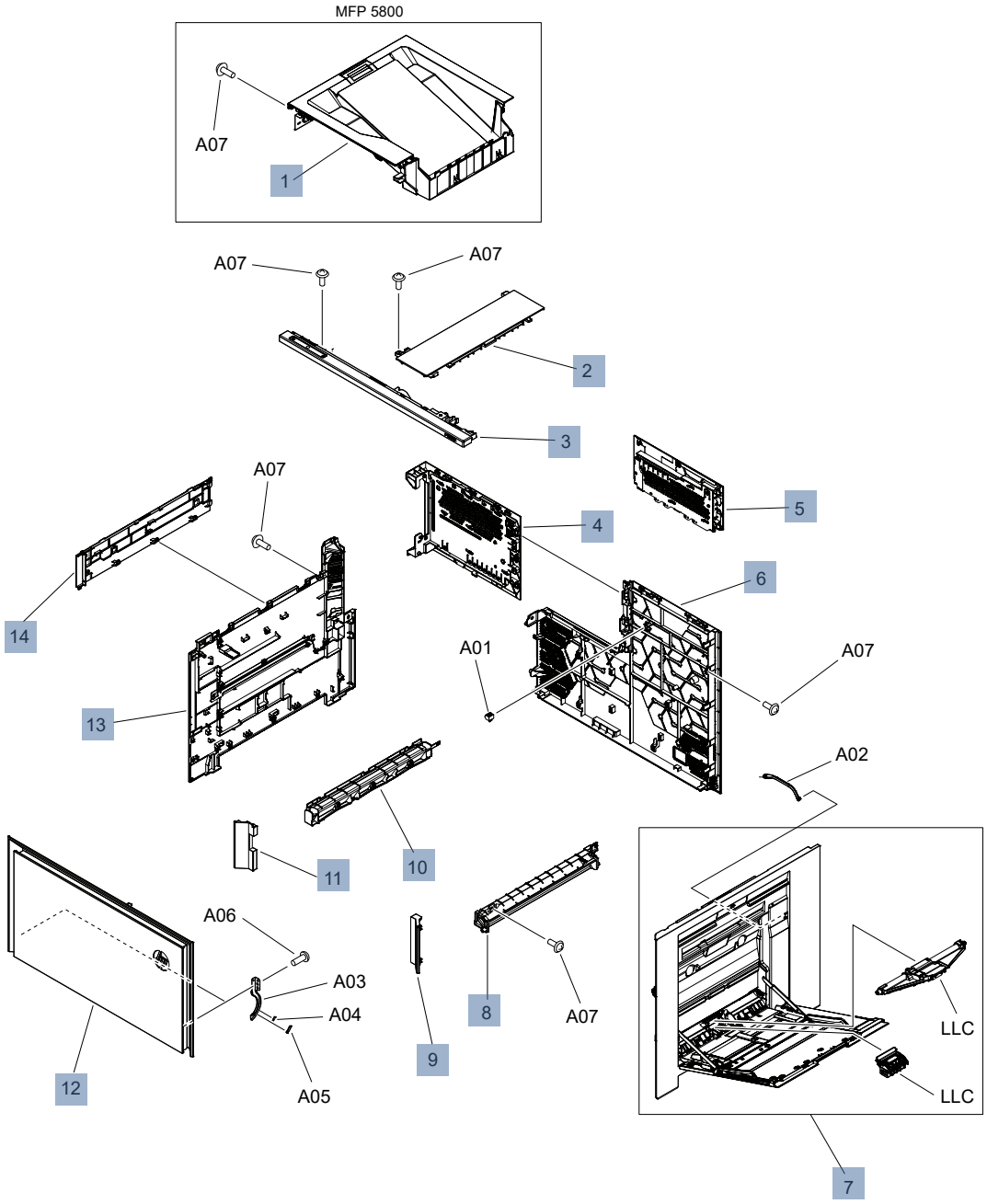


Table 5-4 Covers 5800 models

Key No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-4469-000CN	1	Face down tray assembly
2	RC5-9172-000CN	1	Cover, top assembly

Table 5-4 Covers 5800 models (continued)

Key No	Part number	Qty	Description
3	RM2-4518-000CN	1	Top front cover assembly
4	RM2-4480-000CN	1	Formatter cover assembly
5	RM2-4530-000CN	1	Formatter cover assembly
6	RC5-9168-000CN	1	Cover, rear lower
7	RM2-3570-000CN	1	Right lower door assembly
8	RC5-8516-000CN	1	Handle, right door lower
9	RC5-9199-000CN	1	Cover, front right (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
10	RC5-9165-000CN	1	Handle, left
11	RC5-9198-000CN	1	Cover, front left (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
12	RM2-4473-000CN	1	Front door assembly
13	RM2-4535-000CN	1	Left cover assembly
14	RC5-9204-000CN	1	Cover, left upper (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
Not shown	RC4-0213-000CN	1	Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)

Parts and diagrams: Covers X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the MFP printer covers.

Figure 5-5 Covers X57945 models

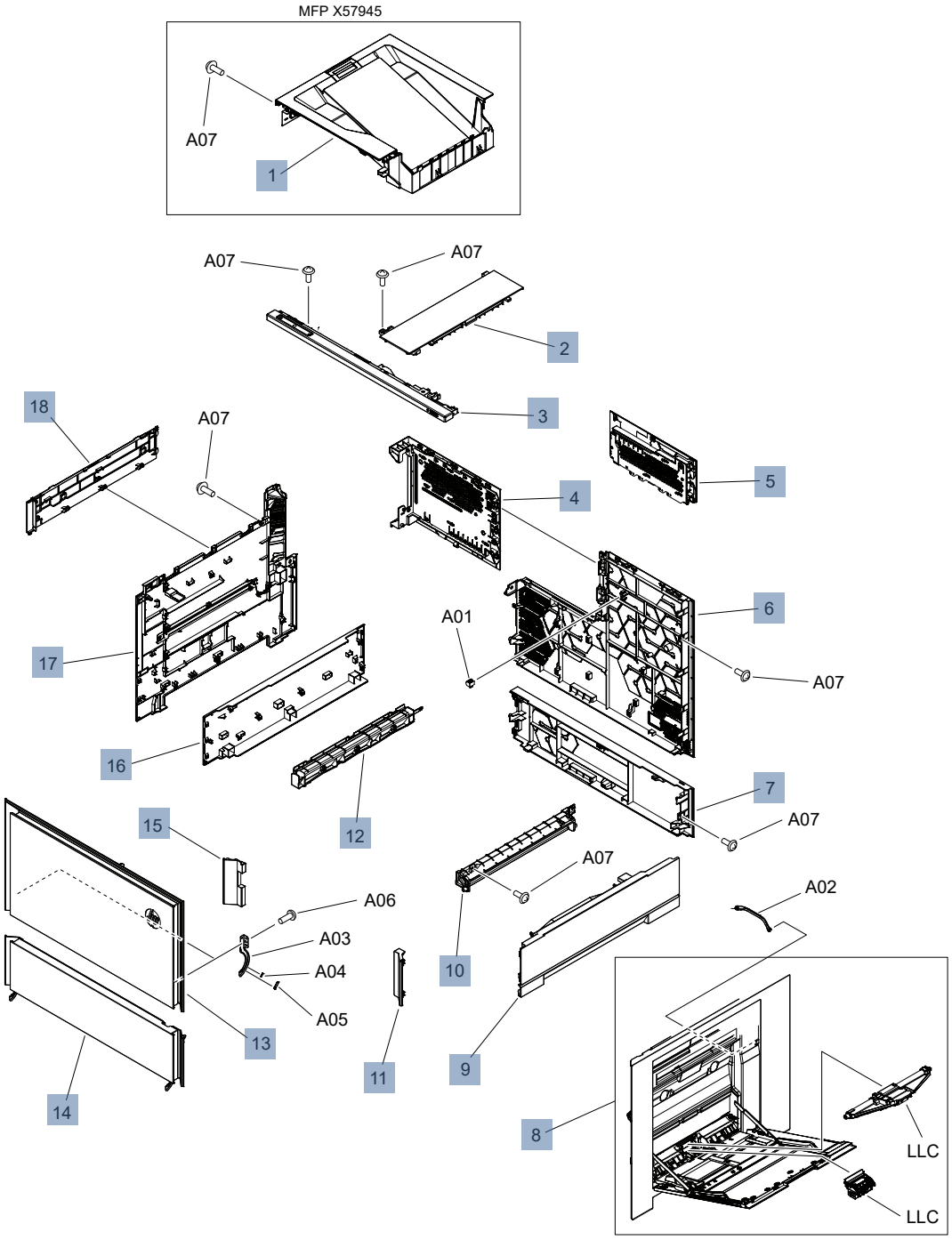


Table 5-5 Covers X57945 models

Key No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-4469-000CN	1	Face down tray assembly
2	RC5-9172-000CN	1	Cover, top assembly
3	RM2-4518-000CN	1	Top front cover assembly
4	RM2-4480-000CN	1	Formatter cover assembly
5	RM2-4530-000CN	1	Formatter cover assembly
6	RC5-9168-000CN	1	Cover, rear lower
7	RC5-9409-000CN	1	Cover, rear lower
8	RM2-3570-000CN	1	Right lower door assembly
9	RM3-0004-000CN	1	Right lower door assembly
10	RC5-8516-000CN	1	Handle, right door lower
11	RC5-9199-000CN	1	Cover, front right (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
12	RC5-9165-000CN	1	Handle, left
13	RM2-4479-000CN	1	Front door assembly
14	RM2-3678-000CN	1	Toner supply door assembly
15	RC5-9198-000CN	1	Cover, front left (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
16	RC5-9408-000CN	1	Left lower cover
17	RM2-4535-000CN	1	Left cover assembly
18	RC5-9204-000CN	1	Cover, left upper (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
Not shown	RC4-0213-000CN	1	Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)

Internal parts and assemblies

Parts diagrams and part lists for the internal parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-6 **Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models**

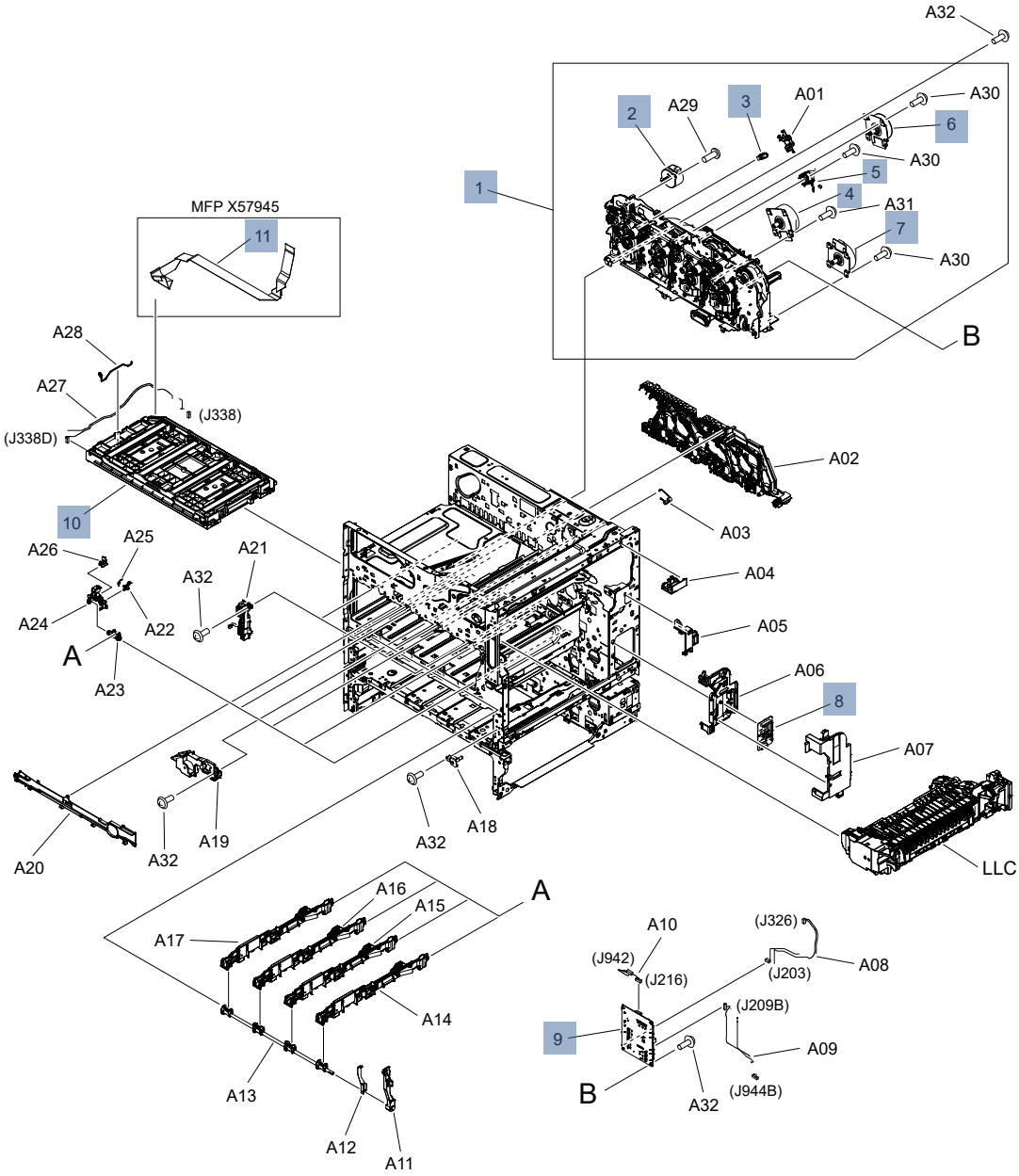


Table 5-6 Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3497-000CN		Main drive assembly
2	RM2-3625-000CN	1	Developing motor assembly
3	RM3-7647-000CN	1	Drum position sensor PCA
4	RM3-7788-000CN	1	Drum motor assembly
5	RM2-7360-000CN	1	T1 solenoid assembly (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
6	RK2-6027-000CN	1	Motor, stepping
7	RM3-7797-000CN	1	ITB motor assembly
8	RM3-7791-000CN	1	Right PCA
9	RM3-7723-000CN	1	Driver PCA
10	RM2-3822-000CN	1	Laser scanner assembly
11	RK3-0835-000CN	1	Cable, flat SCN (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
11	RK3-0825-000CN	1	Cable, flat SCN (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)
11	RK3-1213-000CN	1	Cable, flat SCN (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn models)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-7 Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models

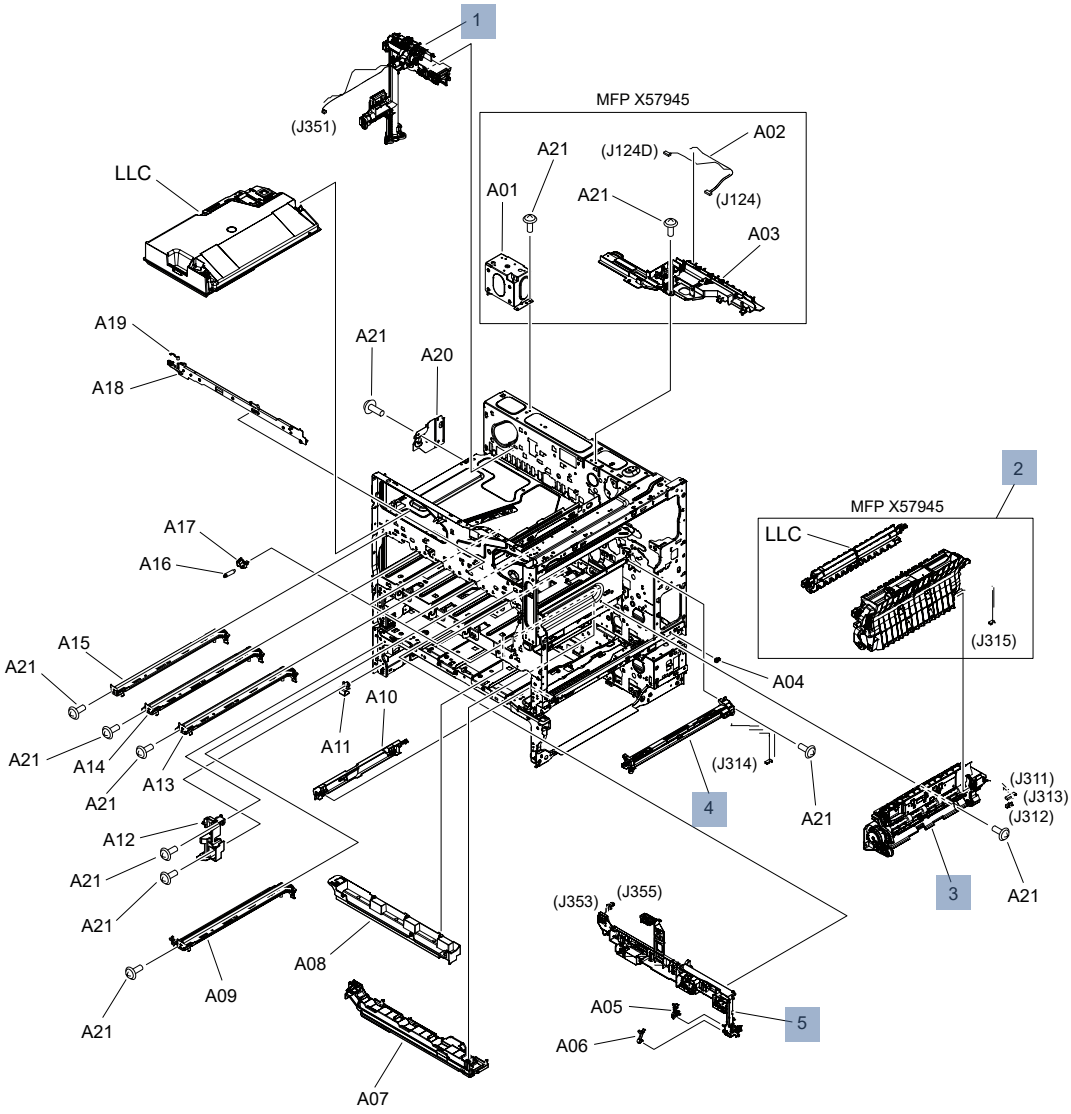


Table 5-7 Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3590-000CN	1	Waste toner duct assembly
2	RM2-3628-000CN	1	Secondary transfer assembly (X57945dn, X57945z, X57945zs, 5800, X58045z, X58045zs)
3	RM2-4458-000CN	1	Registration assembly
4	RM2-4492-000CN	1	Density detect assembly (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)

Table 5-7 Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
5	RM2-3673-000CN	1	Pre-exposure PCA holder

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-8 **Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models**

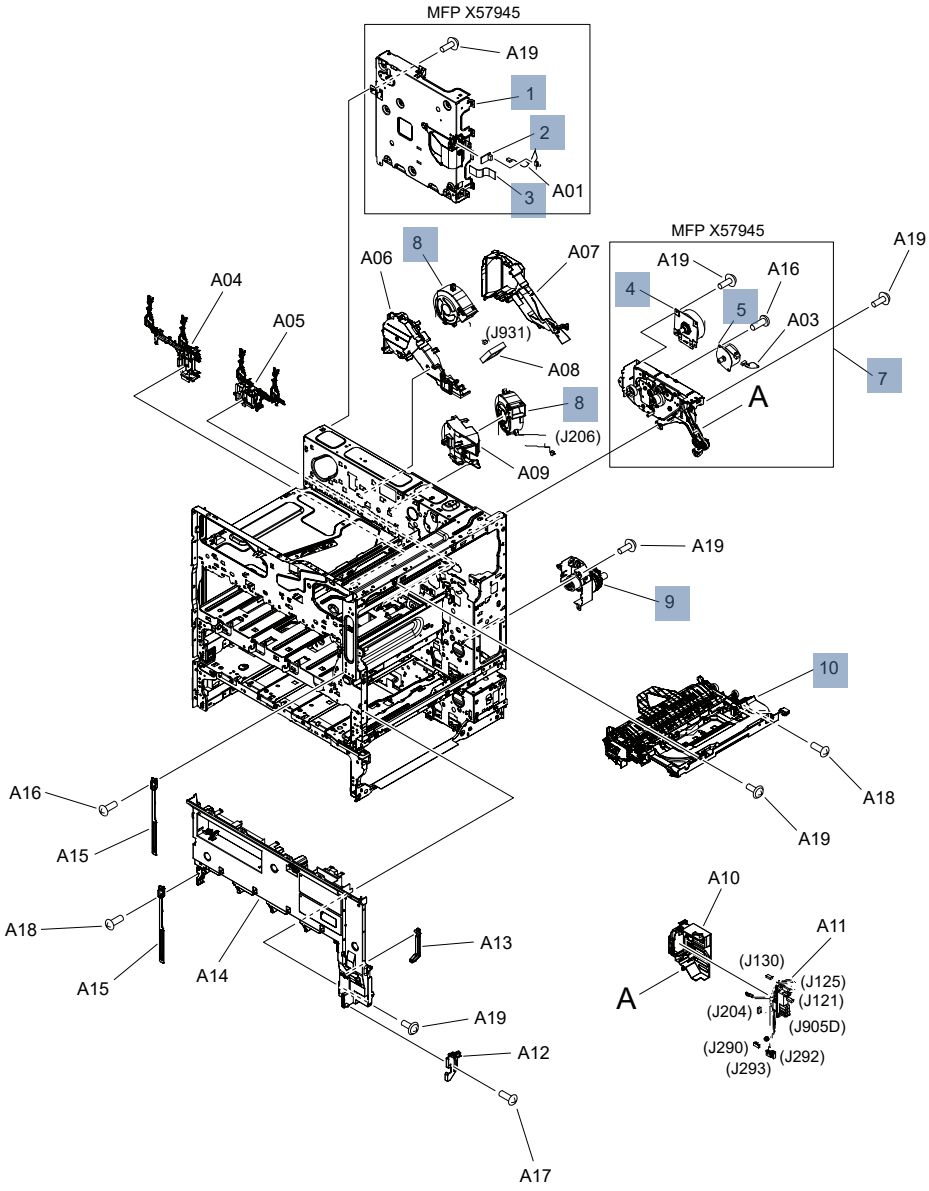


Table 5-8 **Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models**

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-4521-000CN	1	Formatter cage assembly
2	RM2-7138-000CN	1	Memory PC board assembly (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
3	RK3-0845-000CN	1	Cable, flat FMTR
4	RM2-4488-000CN	1	Fixing motor assembly

Table 5-8 Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
5	RK2-7751-000CN	1	Motor, stepping
7	RM2-4485-000CN	1	Fixing drive assembly
8	RK3-0762-000CN	2	Fan
9	RM2-3702-000CN	1	Paper pickup drive assembly
10	RM2-3554-000CN	1	Paper delivery assembly

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-9 Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models

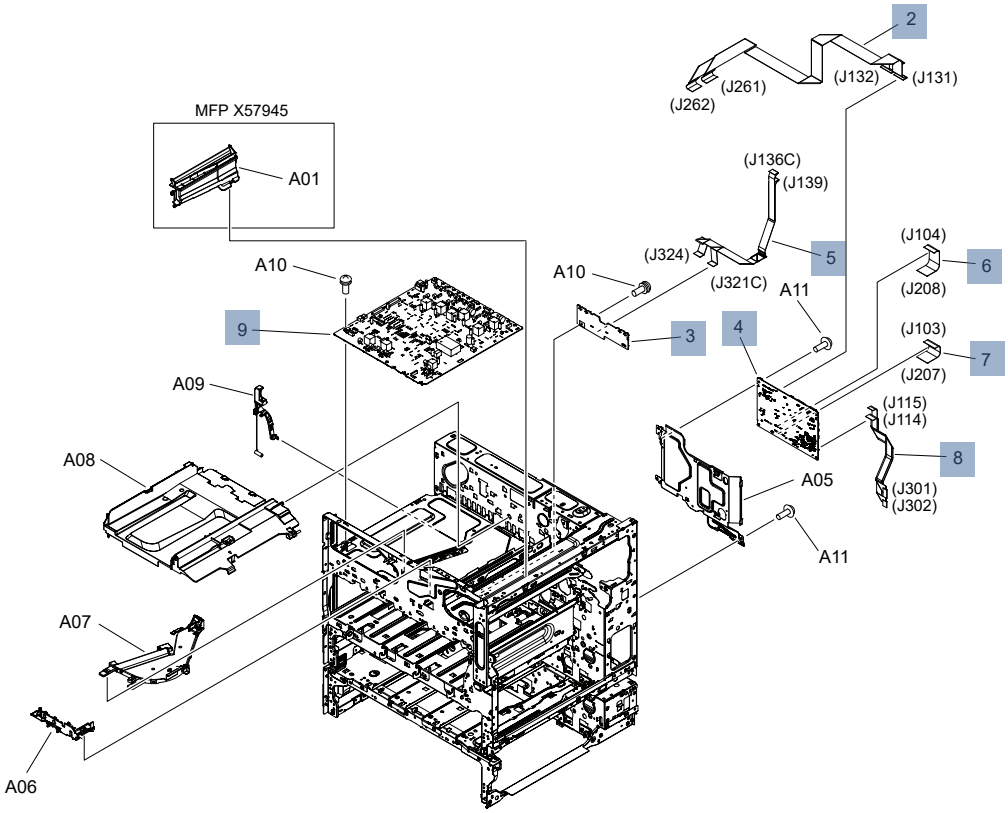


Table 5-9 Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
2	RK3-1509-000CN	1	Cable, flat HVT (and X58045z)
3	RM3-9046-000CN	1	Rear PCA
3	RM3-9045-000CN	1	Rear PCA (X557)
4	RM3-7756-010CN	1	DC controller PCA (X57945)
4	RM3-7755-010CN	1	DC controller PCA (X55745)
4	RM3-7759-010CN	1	DC Controller PCA (X58045 EMEA Only)
5	RK3-1693-000CN	1	Cable, flat rear (X58045z)
6	RK3-0821-000CN	1	Cable, flat drive (X58045z, X58045zs)
6	RK3-1205-000CN	1	Cable, flat rear (X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
7	RK3-0819-000CN	1	Cable, flat drive (X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
7	RK3-1206-000CN		Cable, flat right (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)

Table 5-9 Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
8	RK3-1694-000CN	1	Cable, flat right
9	RM3-9042-000CN	1	HV power supply PCA
Not shown	6QN27-67002	1	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx)
Not shown	6QN27-67004	1	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx) (China/India)
Not shown	6QN29-67002	1	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx / X58xxx)
Not shown	6QN29-67004	1	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx) (China/India)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-10 Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models

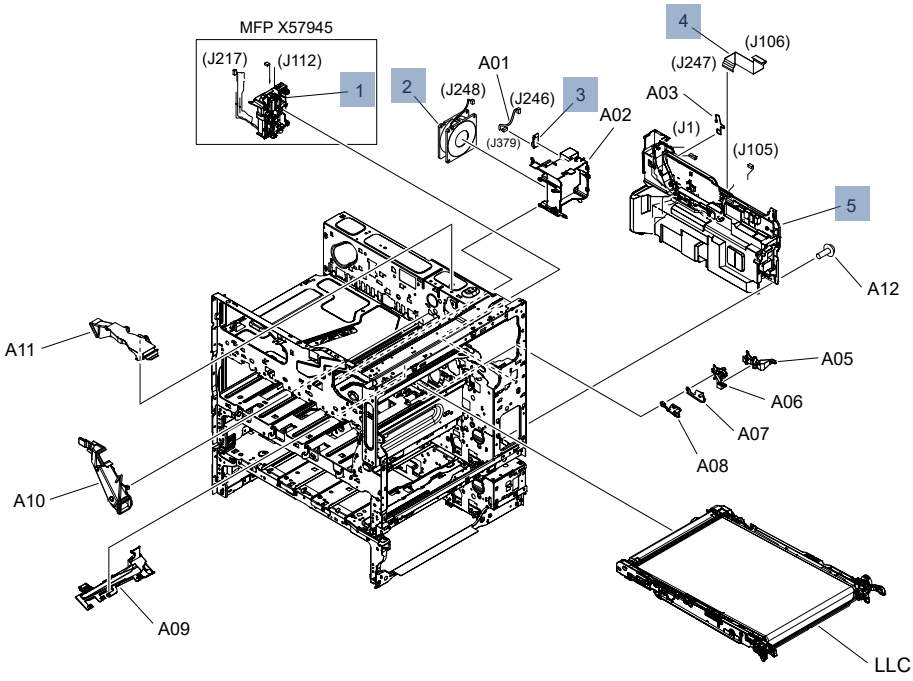


Table 5-10 Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3675-000CN	1	Interlock assembly
2	RK3-2277-000CN	1	Fan
3	WP2-5473-000CN	1	Sensor, humidity HSU-08FDB2A
4	RK3-2104-000CN	1	Cable, flat LVPS (and X58045z, X58045zs)
5	RM3-9012-000CN	1	LVPS (110-127V)
5	RM3-9013-000CN	1	LVPS (220-240V)
LLC	6QN29-67010	1	HP LaserJet Image Transfer Belt

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-11 Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models

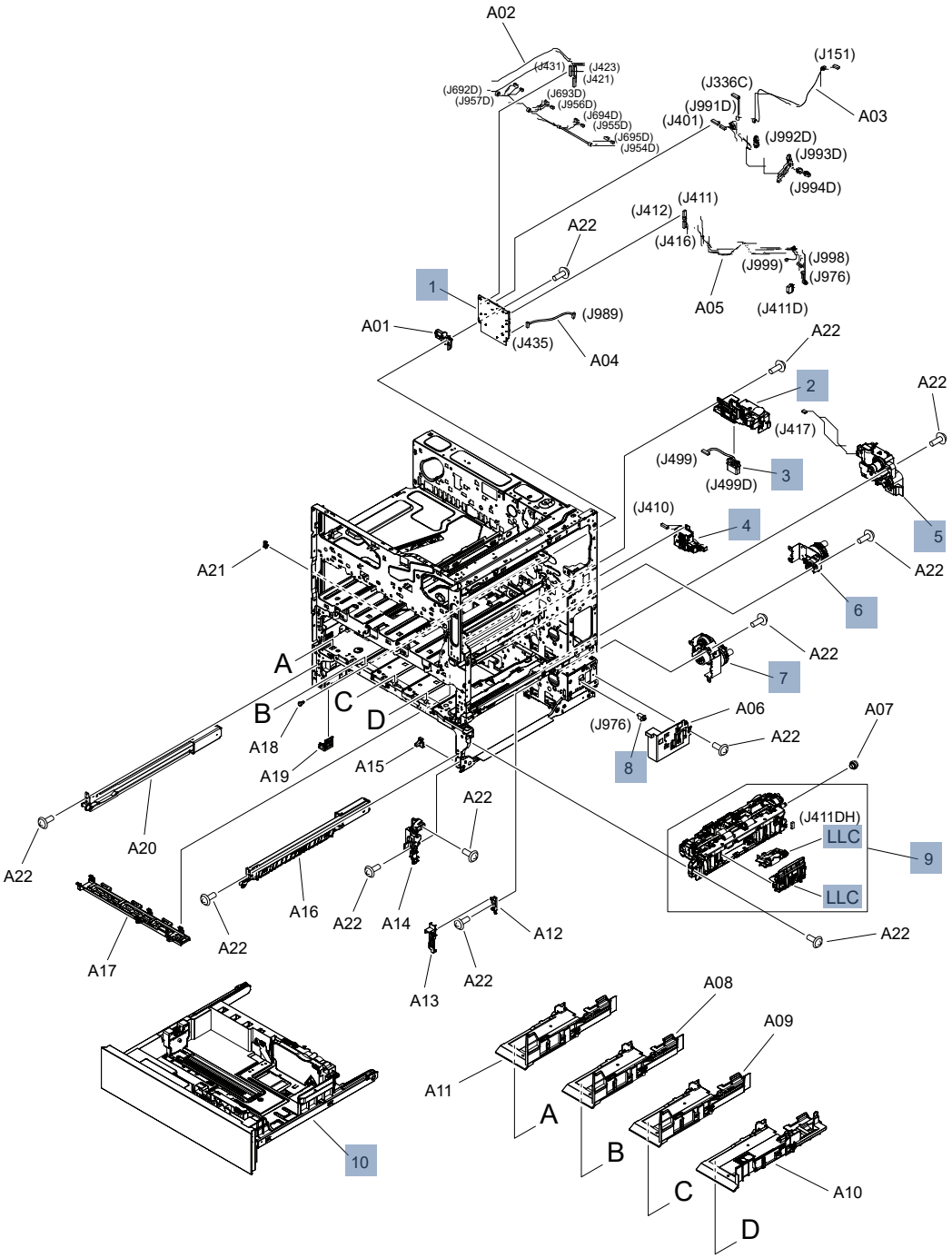


Table 5-11 Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM3-7771-000CN	1	Toner supply PCA

Table 5-11 Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
2	RM2-3559-000CN	1	Auto close assembly
3	RM3-8038-000CN	1	Drawer cable assembly
4	RM2-3614-000CN	1	Size detect assembly
5	RM2-3501-000CN	1	Lifter drive assembly
6	RM2-3612-000CN	1	Toner supply drive motor assembly
7	RM2-3617-000CN	1	Paper pickup drive assembly
8	5851-7005	1	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm
9	RM2-3509-000CN	1	Paper pickup assembly
10	RM2-3616-000CN	1	Cassette assembly (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-12 **Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models**

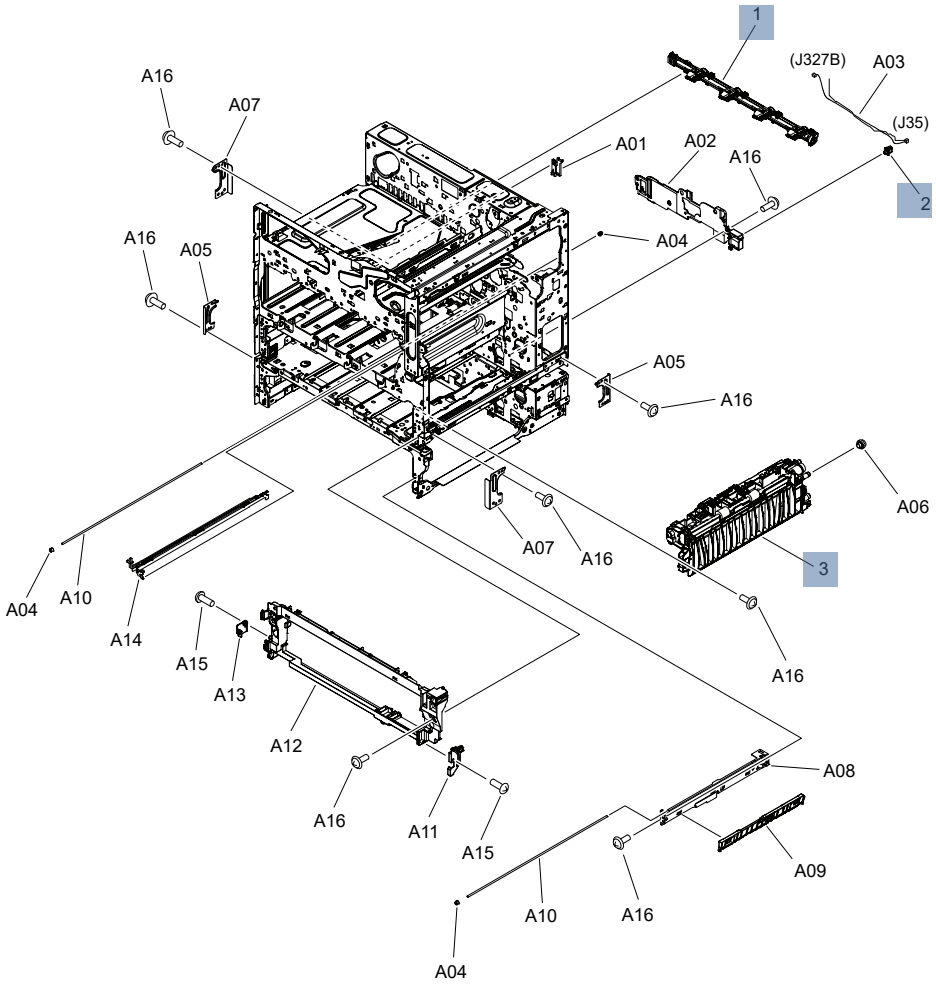


Table 5-12 **Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models**

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3601-000CN	1	Waste toner carry assembly (and X58045dn, X58045z, X58045zs)
2	5851-7005	1	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm
3	RM2-3479-000CN	1	Paper feed assembly

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-13 Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models

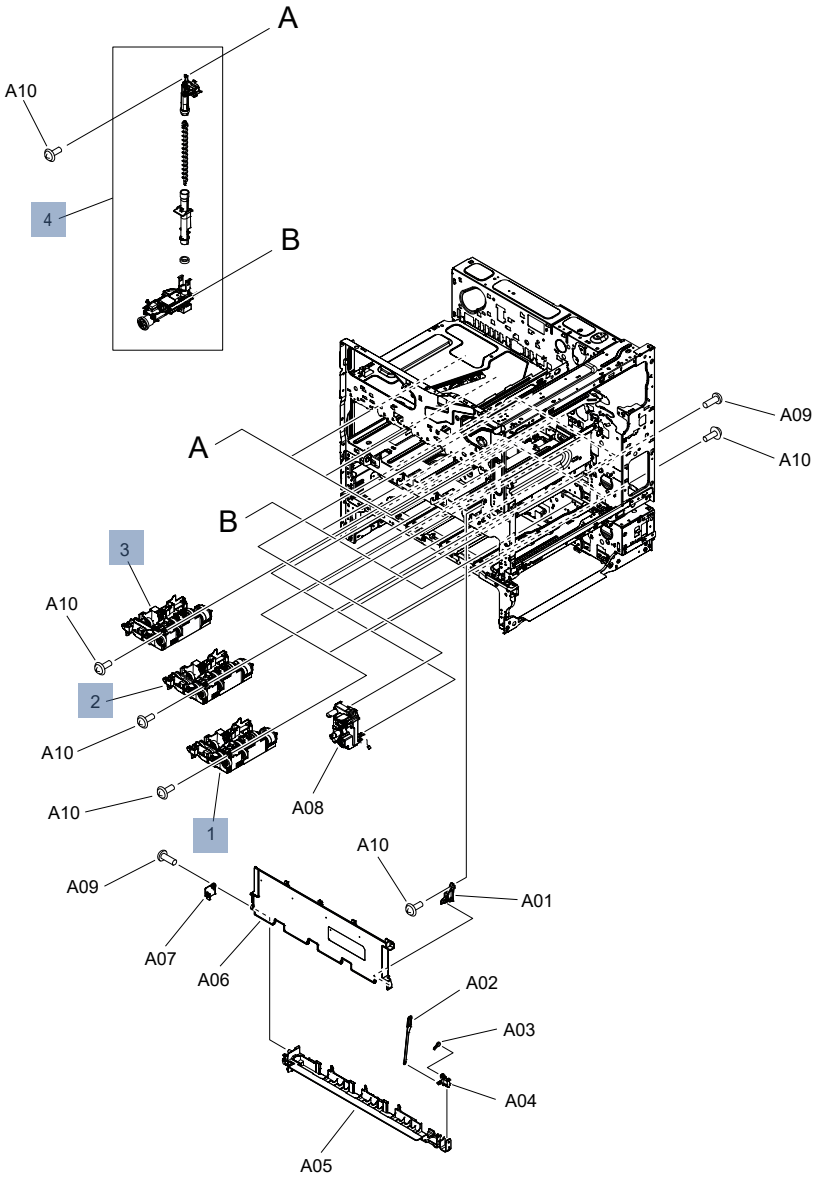


Table 5-13 Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3609-000CN	2	Toner supply drive assembly
2	RM2-3608-000CN	1	Toner supply drive assembly
3	RM2-3607-000CN	1	Toner supply drive assembly
4	RM3-0846-000CN	4	HP Toner supply service kit

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (9 of 9)X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-14 Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models

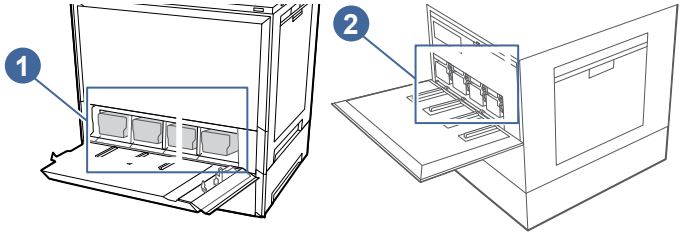


Table 5-14 Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models

Ref No	Product Number	Service Part Number	Qty	Description
1	W9250MC	6QN29-67033	1	HP W9250MC Black Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)
1	W9251MC	6QN29-67034	1	HP W9251MC Cyan Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)
1	W9252MC	6QN29-67035	1	HP W9252MC Yellow Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)
1	W9253MC	6QN29-67036	1	HP W9253MC Magenta Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)
2	W9280MC	6QN35-67027	1	HP W9280MC Black Mngd Imaging Drum
2	W9281MC	6QN35-67028	1	HP W9281MC Cyan Mngd Imaging Drum
2	W9282MC	6QN35-67029	1	HP W9282MC Yellow Mngd Imaging Drum
2	W9283MC	6QN35-67030	1	HP W9283MC Magenta Mngd Imaging Drum

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-15 **Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models**

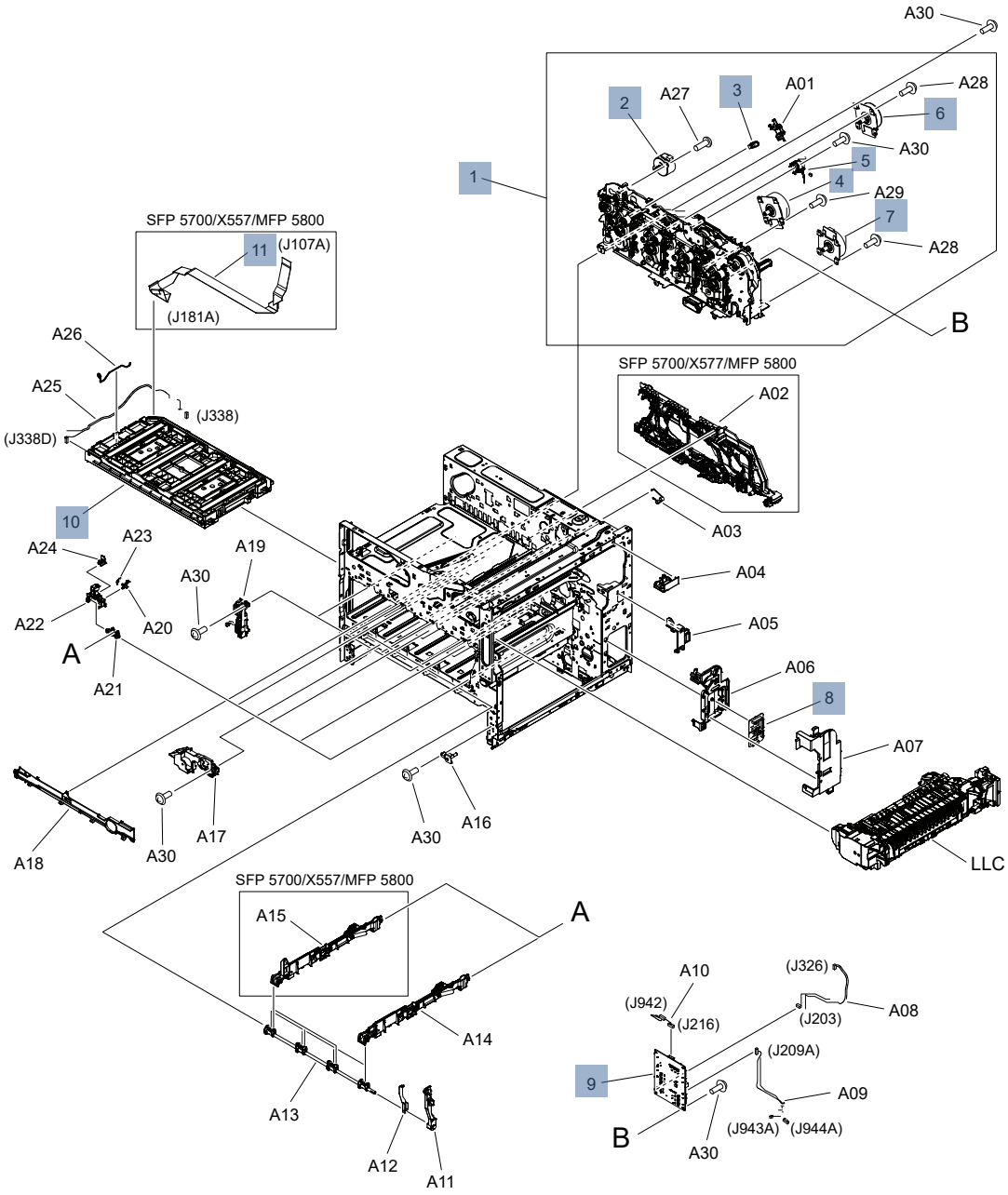


Table 5-15 **Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models**

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3506-000CN	1	Main drive assembly (5700, 5800)
1	RM2-3504-000CN	1	Main drive assembly (X557
2	RM2-3625-000CN	1	Developing motor assembly

Table 5-15 Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
3	RM3-7647-000CN	1	Drum position sensor PCA
4	RM3-7788-000CN	1	Drum motor assembly
5	RM2-7360-000CN	1	T1 solenoid assembly(and X58045dn, X58045z, X58045zs)
6	RK2-6027-000CN	1	Motor, stepping
7	RM3-7797-000CN	1	ITB motor assembly
8	RM3-7740-000CN	1	Right PCA (5700)
8	RM3-7790-000CN	1	Right PCA (X557, 5800)
9	RM3-7723-000CN	1	Driver PCA
10	RM2-3822-000CN	1	Laser scanner assembly
11	RK3-0835-000CN	1	Cable, flat SCN(and X58045z, X58045zs)
11	RK3-0825-000CN		Cable, flat SCN(X58045dn)
11	RK3-1213-000CN		Cable, flat SCN(X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (2 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-16 Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

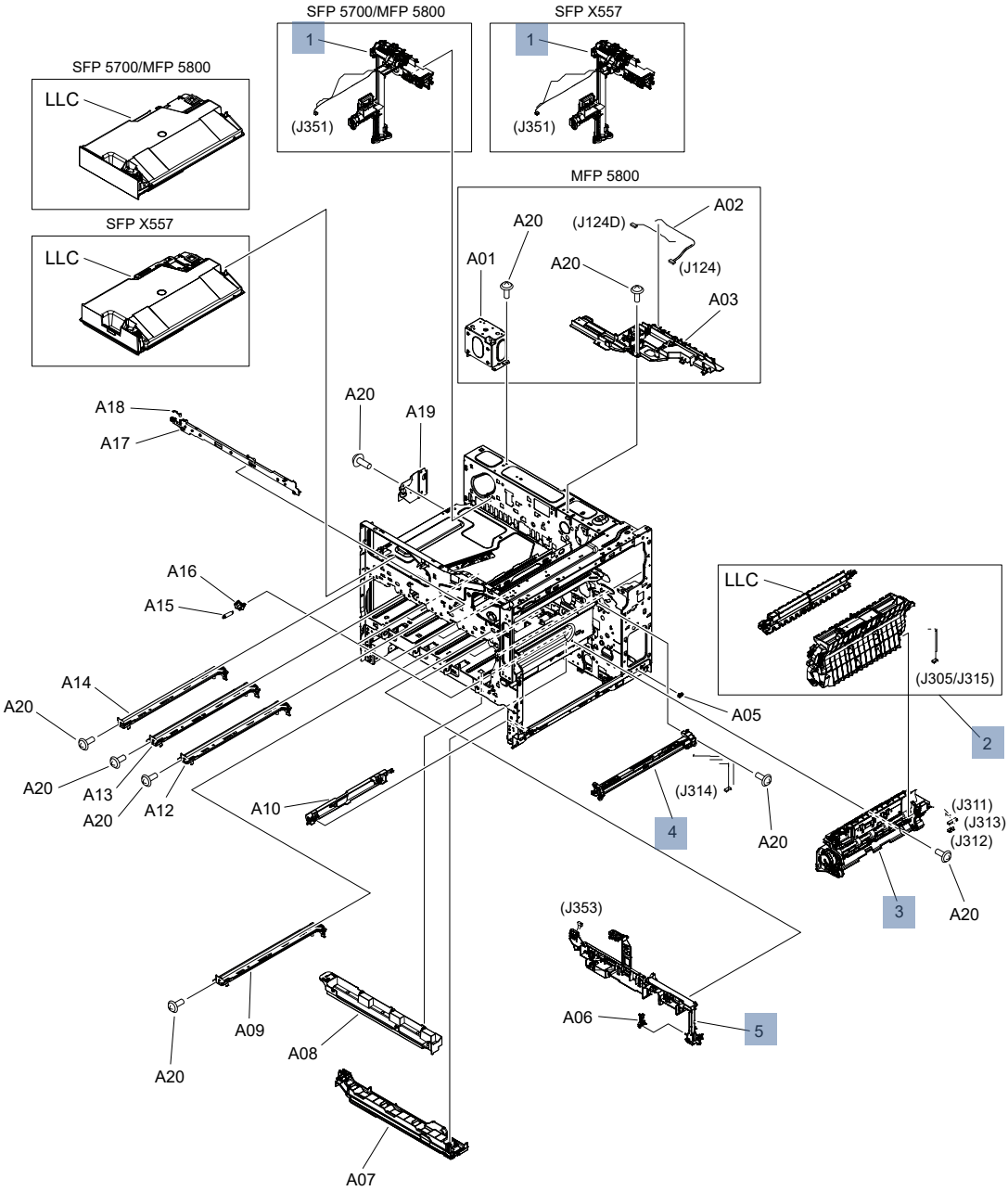


Table 5-16 Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3517-000CN	1	Waste toner duct assembly (5700, MFP 5800)
1	RM2-3518-000CN		Waste toner duct assembly (X557)
2	RM2-3586-000CN	1	Secondary transfer assembly (5700)

Table 5-16 Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
2	RM2-3628-000CN	1	Secondary transfer assembly (X557)
3	RM2-4458-000CN	1	Registration assembly
4	RM2-4492-000CN	1	Density detect assembly
5	RM2-3565-000CN	1	Pre-exposure PCA holder

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (3 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-17 Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

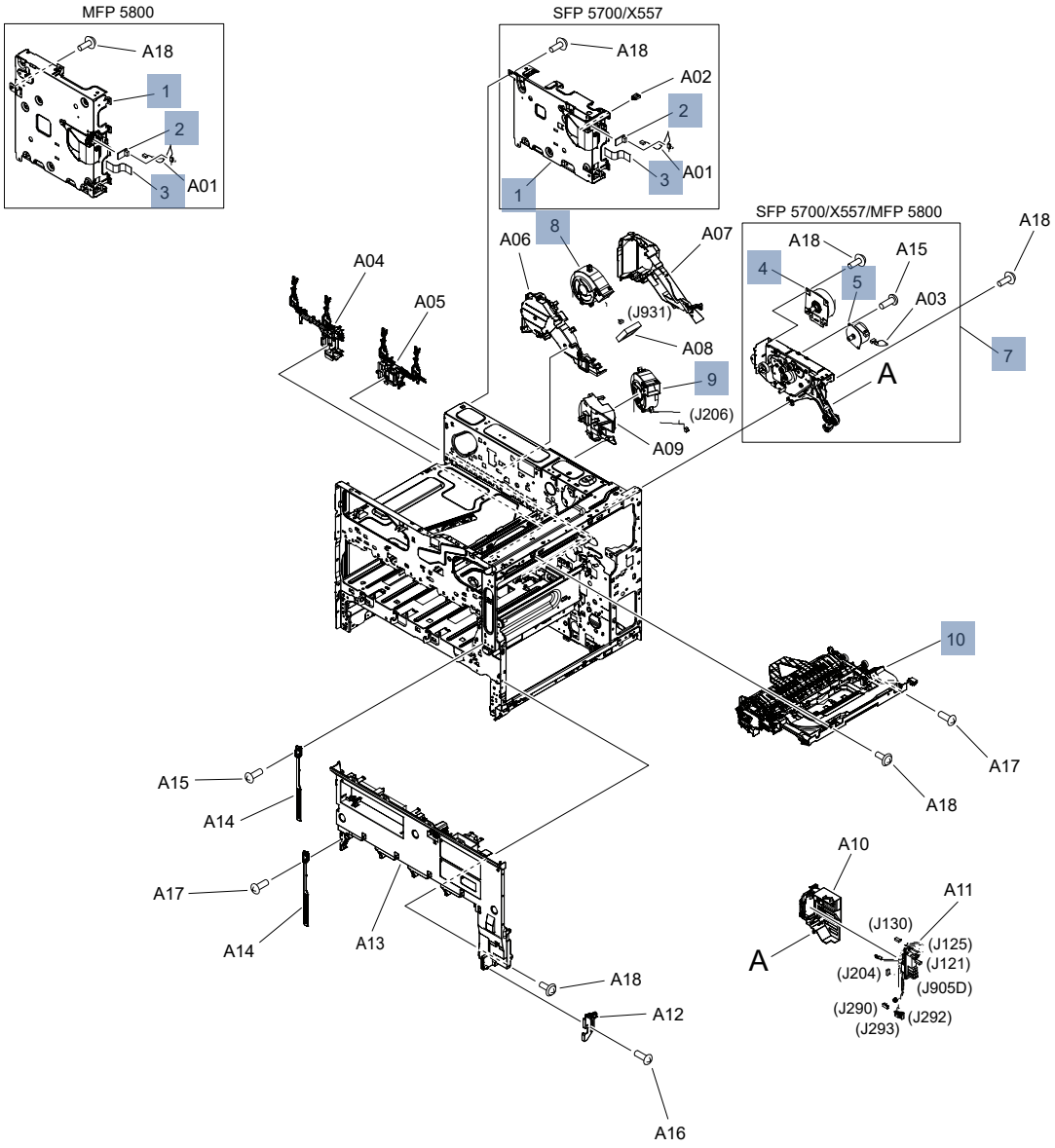


Table 5-17 Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-4520-000CN	1	Formatter cage assembly (5700, X557)
1	RM2-4521-000CN	1	Formatter cage assembly (MFP 5800)
2	RM2-7138-000CN	1	Memory PC board assembly/IOD
3	RK3-0847-000CN	1	Cable, flat FMTR (5700, X55745)
3	RK3-0845-000CN	1	Cable, flat FMTR (MFP 5800, X58045)

Table 5-17 Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
4	RM2-4488-000CN	1	Fixing motor assembly
5	RK2-7751-000CN	1	Motor, stepping
7	RM2-4485-000CN	1	Fixing drive assembly
8	RK3-1637-000CN	1	Fan
9	RK3-0762-000CN	1	Fan
10	RM2-3548-000CN	1	Paper delivery assembly (5700, X557)
10	RM2-3554-000CN	1	Paper delivery assembly (MFP 5800)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-18 Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

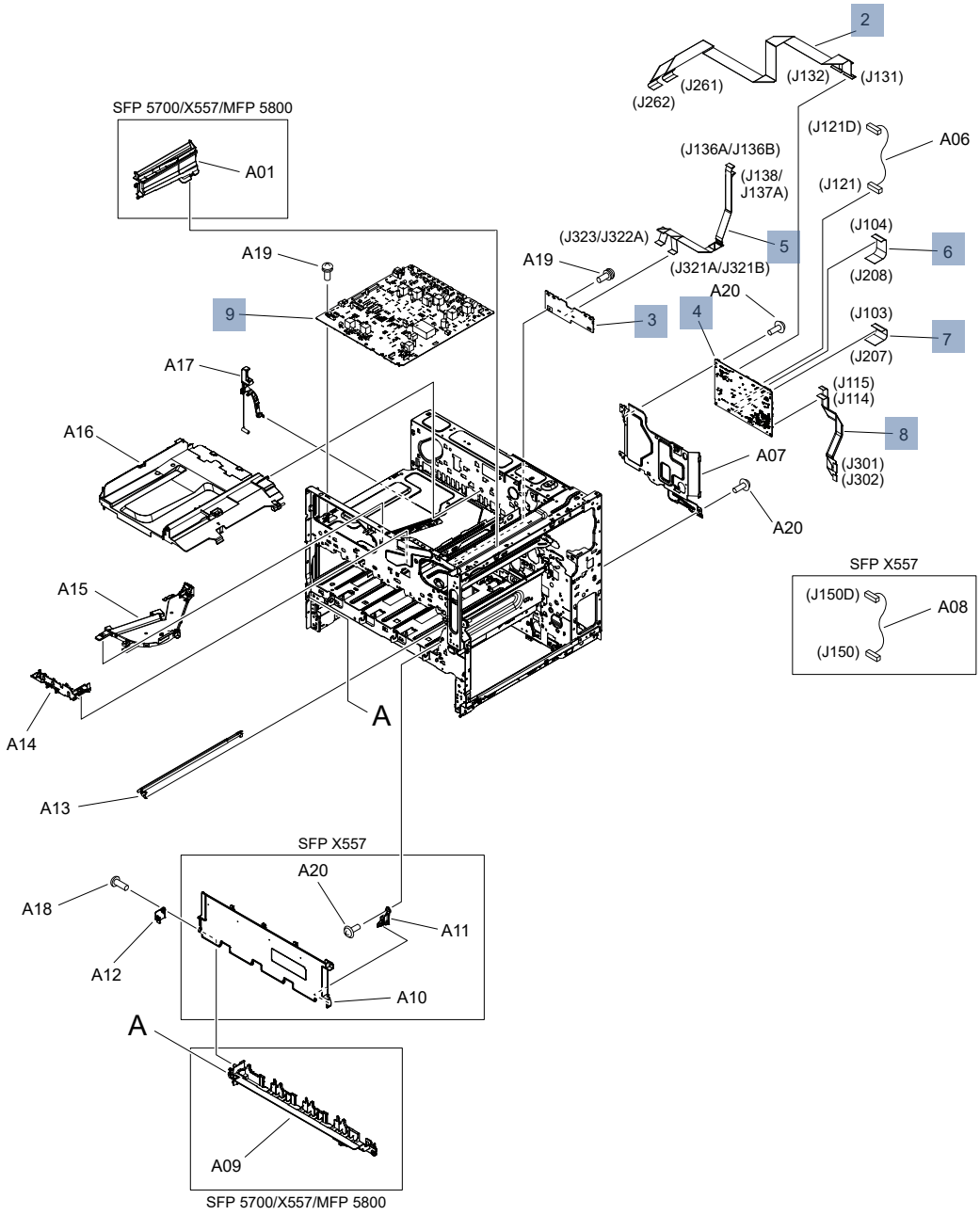


Table 5-18 Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
2	RK3-1508-000CN	1	Cable, flat HVT(and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn
3	RM3-9044-000CN	1	Rear PCA (5700, MFP 5800)

Table 5-18 Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
4	RM3-7751-010CN	1	DC controller PCA (5700)
4	RM3-7752-010CN	1	DC controller PCA (MFP 5800)
5	RK3-1691-000CN	1	Cable, flat rear (5700, MFP 5800, X58045z, X58045zs)
5	RK3-1692-000CN	1	Cable, flat rear (X557, X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
6	RK3-0821-000CN	1	Cable, flat drive(and X58045z, X58045zs)
6	RK3-1205-000CN	1	Cable, flat rear(X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
7	RK3-0819-000CN	1	Cable, flat drive
8	RK3-1206-000CN	1	Cable, flat right (X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
8	RK3-1694-000CN	1	Cable, flat right (and X58045z, X58045zs, X58045dn)
9	RM3-9040-000CN	1	HV power supply PCA
Not shown	6QN27-67002	1	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx)
Not shown	6QN27-67004	1	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx) (China/India)
Not shown	6QN29-67002	1	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx / X58xxx)
Not shown	6QN29-67004	1	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx) (China/India)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-19 Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

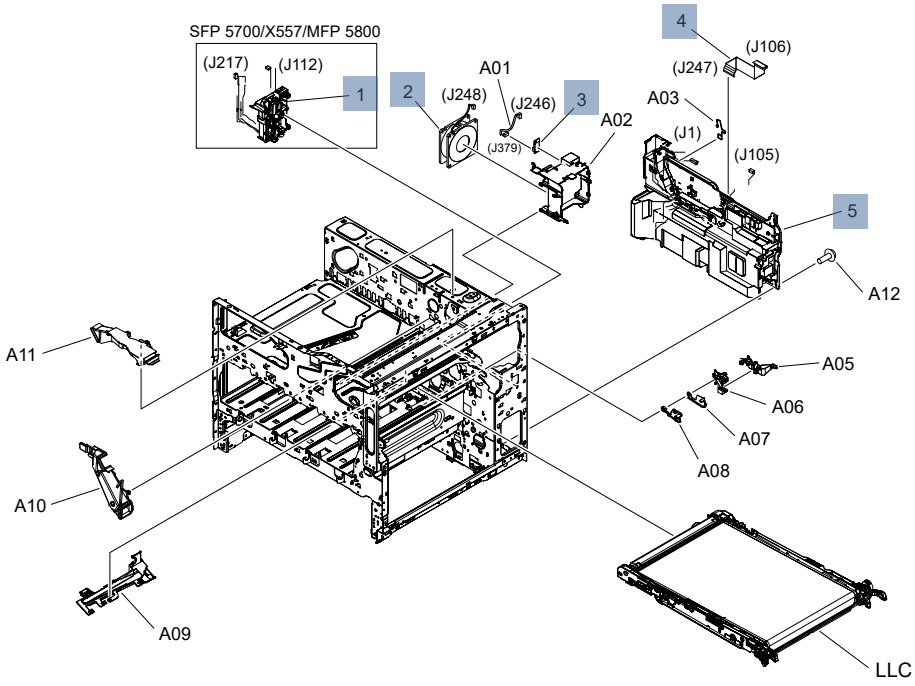


Table 5-19 Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3675-000CN	1	Interlock assembly
2	RK3-2277-000CN	1	Fan
3	WP2-5473-000CN	1	Sensor, humidity HSU-08FDB2A
4	RK3-2104-000CN	1	Cable, flat LVPS(and X58045z, X58045zs)
5	RM3-7724-000CN	1	LVPS (110-127V) (5700, X557)
5	RM3-7725-000CN	1	LVPS (220-240V) (5700, X557))
5	RM3-9012-000CN	1	LVPS (110-127V) (MFP 5800)
5	RM3-9013-000CN	1	LVPS (220-240V) (MFP 5800)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-20 Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

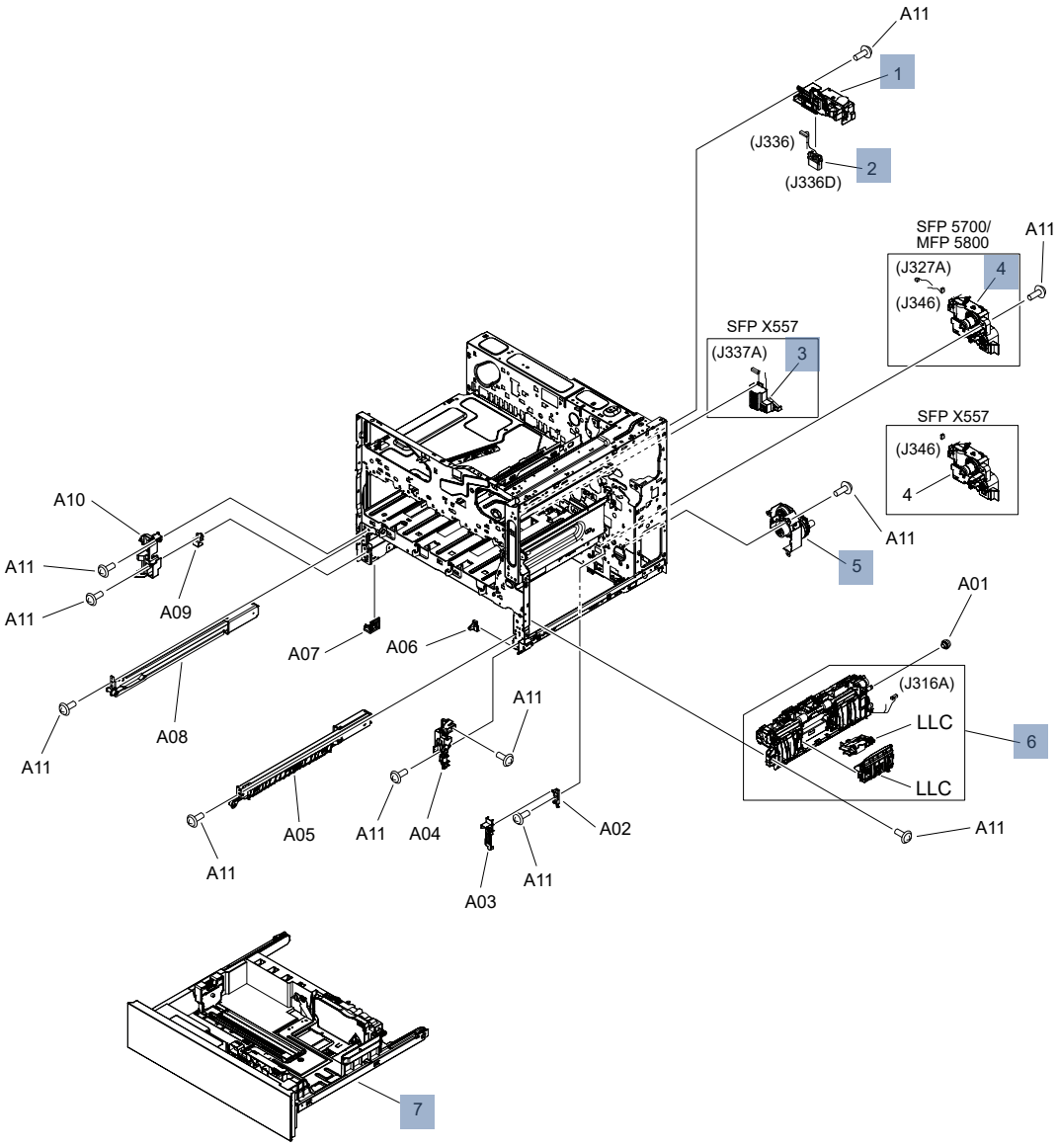


Table 5-20 Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-3559-000CN	1	Auto close assembly
2	RM3-8001-000CN	1	Drawer cable assembly
3	RM2-3634-000CN	1	Size detect assembly (5700, X557)
3	RM2-3614-000CN		Size detect assembly (5800)
4	RM2-3493-000CN	1	Lifter drive assembly (5700, MFP 5800)

Table 5-20 Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Qty	Description
4	RM2-3500-000CN	1	Lifter drive assembly (X557)
5	RM2-3681-000CN	1	Paper pickup drive assembly
6	RM2-3508-000CN	1	Paper pickup assembly
7	RM2-3615-000CN	1	Cassette assembly (5700, MFP 5800, X58045z, X58045zs)
7	RM2-3616-000CN	1	Cassette assembly (X557, X58045dn, X58045z, X58045zs)

Parts and diagrams: Internal assemblies (7 of 7)5700/X557/5800 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the internal printer assemblies.

Figure 5-21 Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

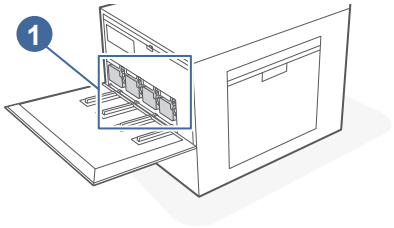


Table 5-21 Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models

Ref No	Product Number	Service Part Number	Qty	Description
1	W2130A	6QN29-67013	1	HP 213A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge
1	W2130X	6QN29-67014	1	HP 2130X High Yield Black Toner Cartridge
1	W2130Y	6QN29-67015	1	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Black Toner Cartridge
1	W2130YC	6QN29-67016	1	HP W2130YC Black Contract Toner Cartridge
1	W2131A	6QN29-67017	1	HP 213A Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge
1	W2131X	6QN29-67018	1	HP 2131X High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge
1	W2131Y	6QN29-67019	1	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge
1	W2131YC	6QN29-67020	1	HP W2131YC Cyan Contract Toner Cartridge
1	W2132A	6QN29-67021	1	HP 213A Yellow Original LaserJet Toner
1	W2132X	6QN29-67022	1	HP 2132X High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge
1	W2132Y	6QN29-67023	1	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge
1	W2132YC	6QN29-67024	1	HP W2132YC Yellow Contract Toner Cartridge
1	W2133A	6QN29-67025	1	HP 213A Magenta LaserJet Toner Cartridge
1	W2133X	6QN29-67026	1	HP 2133X High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge
1	W2133Y	6QN29-67027	1	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge
1	W2133YC	6QN29-67028	1	HP W2133YC Magenta Contract Toner Cartridge

Input devices

Learn about the input devices.

Input device - 550-sheet paper feeder

Learn about the 550-sheet paper feeder parts and assemblies.

Covers, panels, and doors

Parts diagrams and part lists for the covers, panels, and doors.

Covers, panels, and doors (550-sheet paper feeder)

Parts diagram and part list for the 550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors.

Figure 5-22 550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors

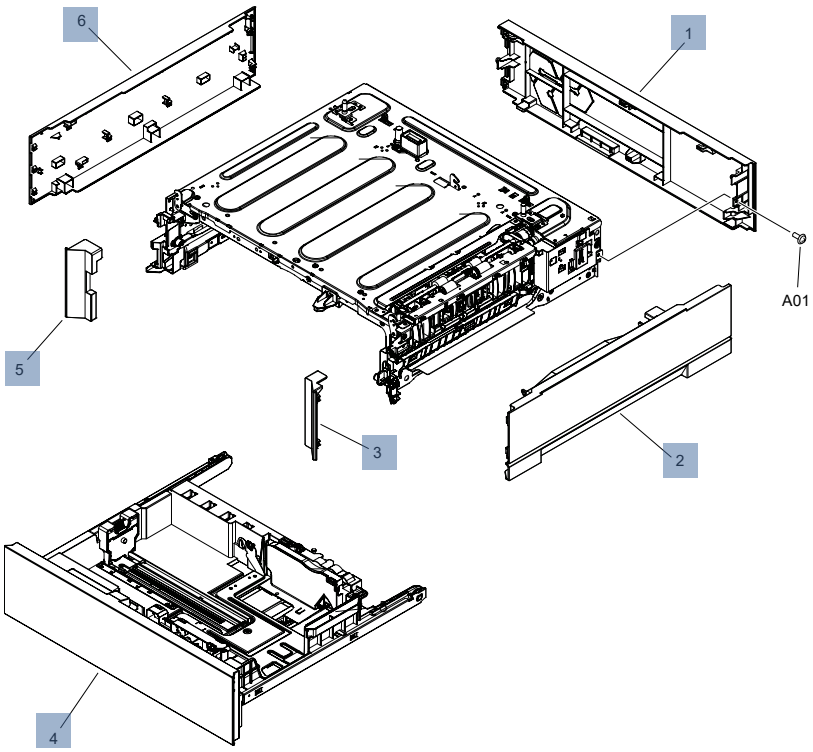


Table 5-22 550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RC5-9409-000CN	Cover, rear lower	1
2	RM3-0004-000CN	Right lower door assembly	1
3	RC5-9201-000CN	Cover, front right	1
4	RM2-3640-000CN	Cassette assembly	1
5	RC5-9200-000CN	Cover, front left	1
6	RC5-9408-000CN	Cover, left	1

Internal parts and assemblies

Parts diagrams and part lists for the internal parts and assemblies.

Internal parts and assemblies (550-sheet paper feeder)

Parts diagram and part list for the 550-sheet paper feeder main body.

Figure 5-23 550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies

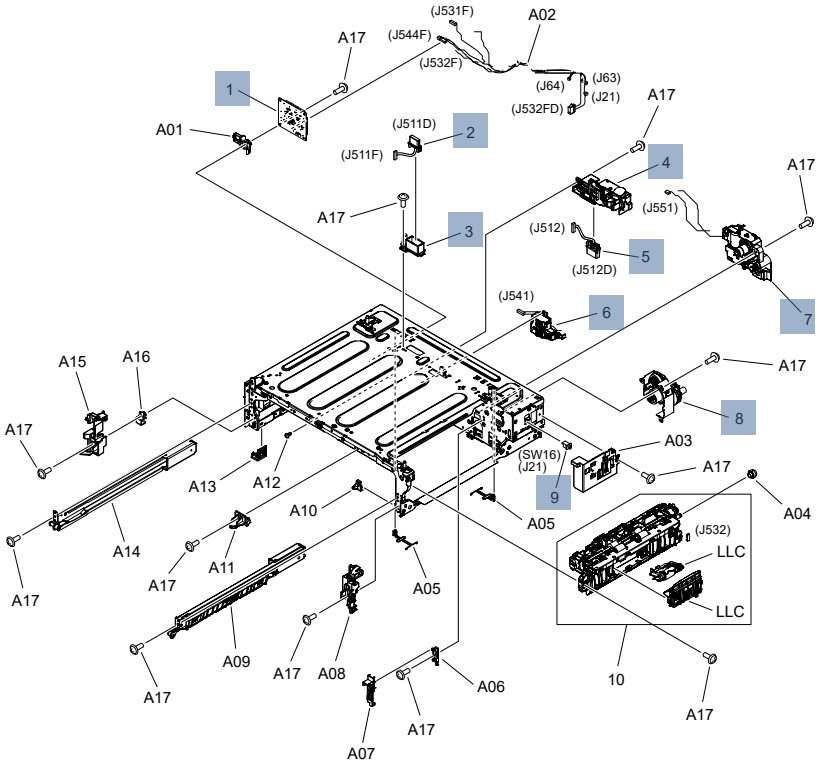


Table 5-23 550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
1	RM3-8051-000CN	Paper feeder controller PCA	1
2	RM3-8058-000CN	Drawer upper cable assembly	1
3	RC5-9398-000CN	Holder, drawer connector upper	1
4	RM2-3559-000CN	Auto close assembly	2
5	RM3-8059-000CN	Drawer lower cable assembly	1
6	RM2-3614-000CN	Size detect assembly	1
7	RM2-3501-000CN	Lifter drive assembly	1
8	RM2-3617-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly	1
9	5851-7005	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	1
9	RM2-3509-000CN	Paper pickup assembly	1

Table 5-23 550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies (continued)

Ref No	Part number	Description	Qty
Not shown as Ref No	6QN57A	550-sheet paper feeder (tray)	1

Output devices

Learn about the output devices.

Output device - 3-bin staple stacker

Learn about the 3-bin staple stacker output device.

Covers, panels, and doors

Parts diagrams and part lists for the covers, panels, and doors.

Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the MFP printer covers.

Figure 5-24 3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models

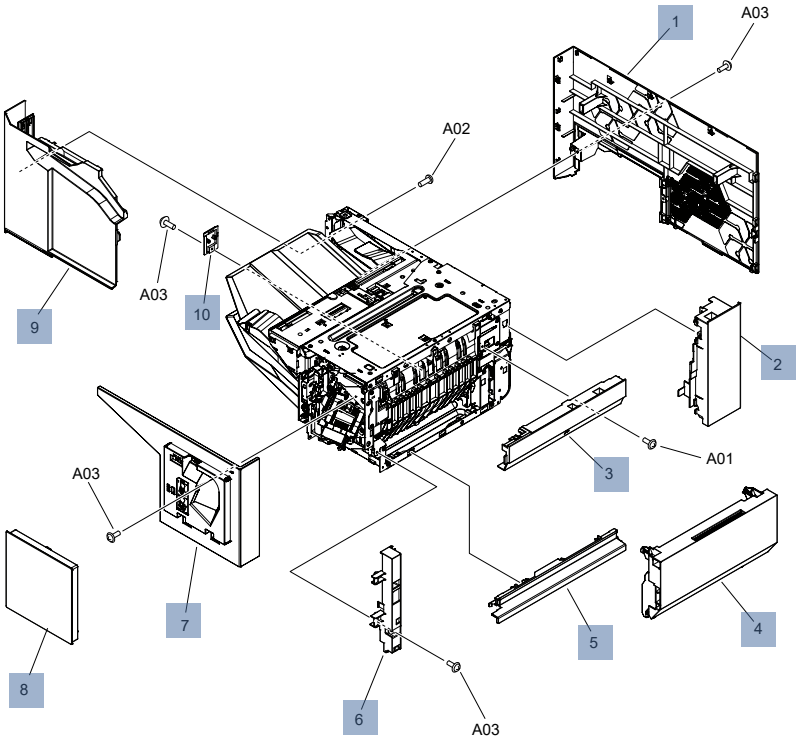


Table 5-24 3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models

Key No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RC6-1305-000CN	1	Cover, rear (X58045z, X58045zs)
1	RC6-0223-000CN	1	Cover, rear upper
2	RC6-1307-000CN	1	Cover, corner right
3	RC6-1308-000CN	1	Cover, right upper
4	RM2-4167-000CN	1	Right door assembly
5	RC6-1309-000CN	1	Cover, right lower
6	RC6-1310-000CN	1	Cover, stapler rear
7	RM3-0483-000CN	1	Staple cover assembly
8	RM3-0484-000CN	1	Staple door assembly
9	RM3-0485-000CN	1	Rear inner cover assembly
10	RC6-2356-000CN	1	Cover, left front

Internal parts and assemblies

Parts diagrams and part lists for the internal parts and assemblies.

Parts and diagrams: 3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models

Parts diagram and parts list for the MFP printer covers.

Figure 5-25 3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models

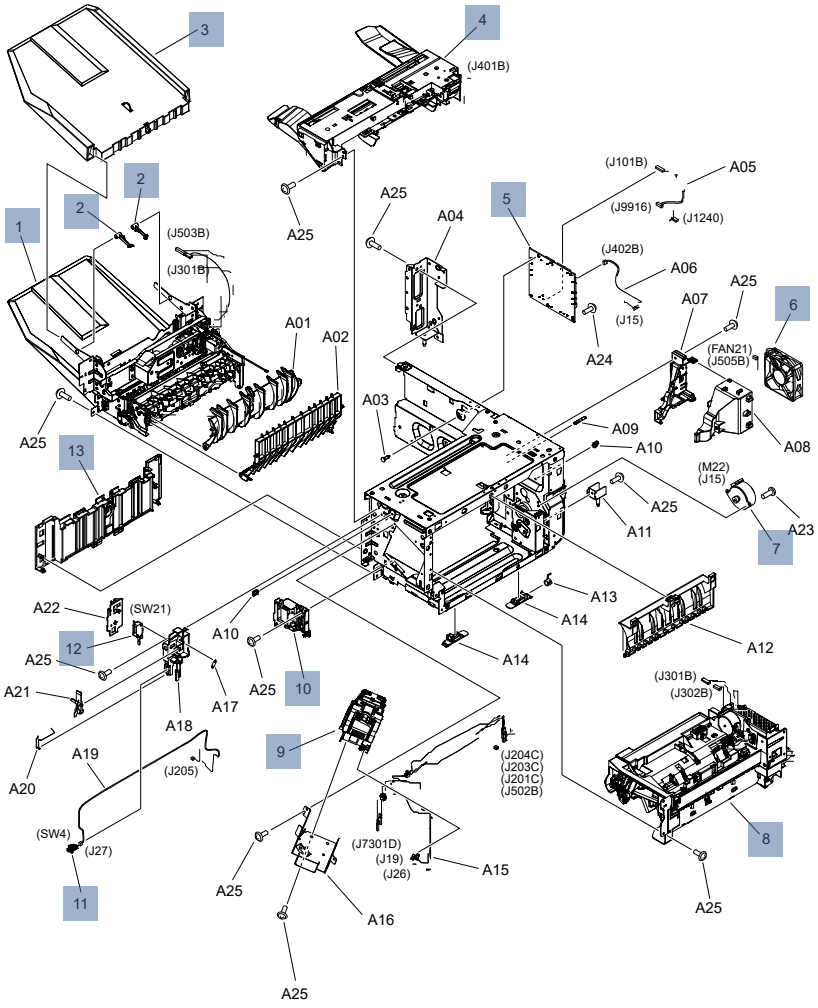


Table 5-25 3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models

Key No	Part number	Qty	Description
1	RM2-4168-000CN	1	Lower paper feed assembly
2	RC5-0353-000CN	1	Pin, tray fixed (and X58045zs)
3	RM2-4173-000CN	1	Tray assembly
3	RM2-3837-000CN	1	Tray assembly(X58045z, X58045zs)
4	RM3-0481-000CN	1	Jog assembly
5	RM3-7950-000CN	1	Staple stacker PCA
6	RK2-8153-000CN	1	Fan
7	RK2-8149-000CN	1	Motor, stepping DC
8	RM2-4169-000CN	1	Upper paper feed assembly
9	RK2-8148-000CN	1	Stapler assembly
10	RM2-1040-010CN	1	Solenoid assembly

Table 5-25 3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models (continued)

Key No	Part number	Qty	Description
11	5851-7005	1	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm
12	WC4-5136-000CN	1	Microswitch
13	RM3-0480-000CN	1	Stacking wall assembly

Alphabetical parts list

Table 5-26 **Alphabetical parts list**

Description	Part number	Table and page
550-sheet paper feeder (tray)	6QN57A	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
ADF Pick/Sep Roller Kit (5xxx Series)	6H121-67001	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
ADF WUR (5xxx Series Non-Workflow)	C0M44-67002	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
ADF WUR (5xxx Series Workflow)	C0M44-67003	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
ADF damper	5851-8849	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
ADF hinge kit (5xxx Series)	5851-8841	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
ADF roller cover (5xxx Series)	5851-8843	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
ADF white backing kit	5851-8850	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Assy-Cable Convenience Stapler	6QN35-60120	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	5851-7005	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	5851-7005	Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models on page 1132
Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	5851-7005	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	5851-7005	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Auto close assembly	RM2-3559-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Auto close assembly	RM2-3559-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Auto close assembly	RM2-3559-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Cable, flat FMTR	RK3-0845-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Cable, flat FMTR	RK3-0845-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Cable, flat FMTR	RK3-0847-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cable, flat HVT	RK3-1508-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Cable, flat HVT	RK3-1509-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Cable, flat LVPS	RK3-2104-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
Cable, flat LVPS	RK3-2104-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
Cable, flat SCN	RK3-0825-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Cable, flat SCN	RK3-0825-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Cable, flat SCN	RK3-0835-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Cable, flat SCN	RK3-0835-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Cable, flat SCN	RK3-1213-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Cable, flat SCN	RK3-1213-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Cable, flat drive	RK3-0819-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Cable, flat drive	RK3-0819-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Cable, flat drive	RK3-0821-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Cable, flat drive	RK3-0821-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Cable, flat rear	RK3-1205-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Cable, flat rear	RK3-1205-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Cable, flat rear	RK3-1691-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cable, flat rear	RK3-1692-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Cable, flat rear	RK3-1693-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Cable, flat right	RK3-1206-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Cable, flat right	RK3-1206-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Cable, flat right	RK3-1694-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Cable, flat right	RK3-1694-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Cassette assembly	RM2-3615-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Cassette assembly	RM2-3616-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Cassette assembly	RM2-3616-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Cassette assembly	RM2-3640-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
Control panel 10.9 cm 4.3 in	6QN28-60102	Control panels on page 1113
Control panel 23.3 cm 8 in	6QN37-60102	Control panels on page 1113
Control panel 25.6 cm 10.1 in	6QN35-60129	Control panels on page 1113
Convenience Stapler Assembly	6QN30-60103	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)	RC4-0213-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)	RC4-0213-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)	RC4-0213-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Cover, corner right	RC6-1307-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Cover, front left	RC5-9198-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Cover, front left	RC5-9198-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, front left	RC5-9198-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Cover, front left	RC5-9200-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
Cover, front right	RC5-9199-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Cover, front right	RC5-9199-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Cover, front right	RC5-9199-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Cover, front right	RC5-9201-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
Cover, left	RC5-9408-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
Cover, left front	RC6-2356-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Cover, left upper	RC5-9204-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Cover, left upper	RC5-9204-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Cover, left upper	RC5-9204-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Cover, rear	RC6-1305-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Cover, rear lower	RC5-9168-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Cover, rear lower	RC5-9168-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Cover, rear lower	RC5-9168-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Cover, rear lower	RC5-9409-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Cover, rear lower	RC5-9409-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
Cover, rear upper	RC6-0223-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Cover, right lower	RC6-1309-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Cover, right upper	RC6-1308-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Cover, stapler rear	RC6-1310-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Cover, top assembly	RC5-9172-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Cover, top assembly	RC5-9172-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Cover, top assembly	RM2-4517-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Cover-Convenience Stapler Cover	6QN28-40006	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
DC Controller PCA	RM3-7759-010CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
DC controller PCA	RM3-7751-010CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
DC controller PCA	RM3-7752-010CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
DC controller PCA	RM3-7755-010CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
DC controller PCA	RM3-7756-010CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Density detect assembly	RM2-4492-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123
Density detect assembly	RM2-4492-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
Developing motor assembly	RM2-3625-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Developing motor assembly	RM2-3625-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Drawer cable assembly	RM3-8001-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Drawer cable assembly	RM3-8038-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Drawer lower cable assembly	RM3-8059-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Drawer upper cable assembly	RM3-8058-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Driver PCA	RM3-7723-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Driver PCA	RM3-7723-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Drum motor assembly	RM3-7788-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Drum motor assembly	RM3-7788-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Drum position sensor PCA	RM3-7647-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Drum position sensor PCA	RM3-7647-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Face down tray assembly	RM2-4469-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Face down tray assembly	RM2-4469-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Face down tray assembly	RM2-4469-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Fan	RK2-8153-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Fan	RK3-0762-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Fan	RK3-0762-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Fan	RK3-1637-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Fan	RK3-2277-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
Fan	RK3-2277-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
Fixing drive assembly	RM2-4485-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Fixing drive assembly	RM2-4485-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Fixing motor assembly	RM2-4488-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Fixing motor assembly	RM2-4488-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Flatbed scanner	6QN29-67005	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Formatter (57xx / X55xxx)	6QN27-67002	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Formatter (57xx / X55xxx)	6QN27-67002	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Formatter (57xx / X55xxx) (China/India)	6QN27-67004	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Formatter (57xx / X55xxx) (China/India)	6QN27-67004	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Formatter (58xx / X57xxx / X58xxx)	6QN29-67002	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Formatter (58xx / X57xxx / X58xxx)	6QN29-67002	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Formatter (58xx / X57xxx) (China/India)	6QN29-67004	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Formatter (58xx / X57xxx) (China/India)	6QN29-67004	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Formatter cage assembly	RM2-4520-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Formatter cage assembly	RM2-4521-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Formatter cage assembly	RM2-4521-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Formatter cover assembly	RM2-4480-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Formatter cover assembly	RM2-4480-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Formatter cover assembly	RM2-4480-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Formatter cover assembly	RM2-4530-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Formatter cover assembly	RM2-4530-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Front door assembly	RM2-4473-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Front door assembly	RM2-4473-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117

Table 5-26 **Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

Description	Part number	Table and page
Front door assembly	RM2-4479-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Front door assembly	RM2-4533-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
HP 2130X High Yield Black Toner Cartridge	W2130X6QN29-67014	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 2131X High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge	W2131X6QN29-67018	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 2132X High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge	W2132X6QN29-67022	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 2133X High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge	W2133X6QN29-67026	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	W2130A6QN29-67013	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213A Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	W2131A6QN29-67017	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213A Magenta LaserJet Toner Cartridge	W2133A6QN29-67025	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213A Yellow Original LaserJet Toner	W2132A6QN29-67021	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213Y Extra High Yield Black Toner Cartridge	W2130Y6QN29-67015	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213Y Extra High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge	W2131Y6QN29-67019	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213Y Extra High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge	W2133Y6QN29-67027	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP 213Y Extra High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge	W2132Y6QN29-67023	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP LaserJet Image Transfer Belt	6QN29-67010	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
HP LaserJet Swedish Overlay Keyboard	A7W14A	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
HP LaserJet Workflow Keyboard	1M0Q2A	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
HP Toner supply service kit	RM3-0846-000CN	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133

Table 5-26 **Alphabetical parts list (continued)**

Description	Part number	Table and page
HP W2130YC Black Contract Toner Cartridge	W2130YC6QN29-67016	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP W2131YC Cyan Contract Toner Cartridge	W2131YC6QN29-67020	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP W2132YC Yellow Contract Toner Cartridge	W2132YC6QN29-67024	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP W2133YC Magenta Contract Toner Cartridge	W2133YC6QN29-67028	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
HP W9250MC Black Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	W9250MC6QN29-67033	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HP W9251MC Cyan Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	W9251MC6QN29-67034	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HP W9252MC Yellow Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	W9252MC6QN29-67035	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HP W9253MC Magenta Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	W9253MC6QN29-67036	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HP W9280MC Black Mngd Imaging Drum	W9280MC6QN35-67027	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HP W9281MC Cyan Mngd Imaging Drum	W9281MC6QN35-67028	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HP W9282MC Yellow Mngd Imaging Drum	W9282MC6QN35-67029	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HP W9283MC Magenta Mngd Imaging Drum	W9283MC6QN35-67030	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
HV power supply PCA	RM3-9040-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
HV power supply PCA	RM3-9042-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Handle (Lunar Aurora Purple Dark)	5851-8692	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Handle (Lunar Comet Red Dark)	5851-8689	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Handle (Lunar Constellation Yellow)	5851-8691	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Handle (Lunar Cosmic Green Dark)	5851-8690	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Handle (Lunar Grey Dark/ Cement Dark)	5851-8688	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Handle (OOV white)	5851-8693	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Handle, left	RC5-9165-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Handle, left	RC5-9165-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Handle, left	RC5-9165-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Handle, right door lower	RC5-8516-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Handle, right door lower	RC5-8516-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Handle, right door lower	RC5-8516-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Holder, drawer connector upper	RC5-9398-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
ITB motor assembly	RM3-7797-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
ITB motor assembly	RM3-7797-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Interlock assembly	RM2-3675-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
Interlock assembly	RM2-3675-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
Jog assembly	RM3-0481-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Keyboard Overlay Kit - (DN/FR-Swiss/GN)	A7W13A	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Keyboard Overlay Kit - Chinese	A7W12A	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
LVPS (110-127V)	RM3-7724-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
LVPS (110-127V)	RM3-9012-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
LVPS (110-127V)	RM3-9012-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
LVPS (220-240V)	RM3-7725-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
LVPS (220-240V)	RM3-9013-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
LVPS (220-240V)	RM3-9013-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
Laser scanner assembly	RM2-3822-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Laser scanner assembly	RM2-3822-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Left cover assembly	RM2-4535-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Left cover assembly	RM2-4535-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Left cover assembly	RM2-4535-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Left lower cover	RC5-9408-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Lifter drive assembly	RM2-3493-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Lifter drive assembly	RM2-3500-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Lifter drive assembly	RM2-3501-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Lifter drive assembly	RM2-3501-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Lower paper feed assembly	RM2-4168-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Main drive assembly	RM2-3497-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Main drive assembly	RM2-3504-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Main drive assembly	RM2-3506-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Memory PC board assembly	RM2-7138-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Memory PC board assembly	RM2-7138-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Microswitch	WC4-5136-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Motor, stepping	RK2-6027-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Motor, stepping	RK2-6027-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Motor, stepping	RK2-7751-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Motor, stepping	RK2-7751-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Motor, stepping DC	RK2-8149-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Paper delivery assembly	RM2-3548-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Paper delivery assembly	RM2-3554-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Paper delivery assembly	RM2-3554-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
Paper feed assembly	RM2-3479-000CN	Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models on page 1132
Paper feeder controller PCA	RM3-8051-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Paper pickup assembly	RM2-3508-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Paper pickup assembly	RM2-3509-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Paper pickup assembly	RM2-3509-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Paper pickup drive assembly	RM2-3617-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Paper pickup drive assembly	RM2-3617-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Paper pickup drive assembly	RM2-3681-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Paper pickup drive assembly	RM2-3702-000CN	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
Pin, tray fixed	RC5-0353-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Pre-exposure PCA holder	RM2-3565-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Pre-exposure PCA holder	RM2-3673-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123
Rear PCA	RM3-9044-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
Rear PCA	RM3-9045-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Rear PCA	RM3-9046-000CN	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
Rear inner cover assembly	RM3-0485-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Registration assembly	RM2-4458-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123
Registration assembly	RM2-4458-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
Right PCA	RM3-7740-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Right PCA	RM3-7790-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
Right PCA	RM3-7791-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
Right door assembly	RM2-4167-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Right lower door assembly	RM2-3570-000CN	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
Right lower door assembly	RM2-3570-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Right lower door assembly	RM2-3570-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Right lower door assembly	RM3-0004-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Right lower door assembly	RM3-0004-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
Scanner control interconnect board (SCIB) (58xx Series)	5851-8962	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
Secondary transfer assembly	RM2-3586-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
Secondary transfer assembly	RM2-3628-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Secondary transfer assembly	RM2-3628-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
Sensor, humidity HSU-08FDB2A	WP2-5473-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
Sensor, humidity HSU-08FDB2A	WP2-5473-000CN	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
Size detect assembly	RM2-3614-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Size detect assembly	RM2-3614-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Size detect assembly	RM2-3614-000CN	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
Size detect assembly	RM2-3634-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
Slide Assembly: (5800dn, 5800f, 5800zf, X57945dn, X58045dn, X57945z, and X58045z)	6QN29-67006	Control panels on page 1113
Slide Assembly: (6800dn, 6800zf, 6800zfw+, 6801zfw+, X677dn, X677z+, X67755dn, X67765dn, X67755z+, and X67765z+)	6QN35-67007	Control panels on page 1113
Slide Assembly: (X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6801zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs)	6QN35-67008	Control panels on page 1113
Solenoid assembly	RM2-1040-010CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Stacking wall assembly	RM3-0480-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Staple cover assembly	RM3-0483-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Staple door assembly	RM3-0484-000CN	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
Staple stacker PCA	RM3-7950-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Stapler assembly	RK2-8148-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
T1 solenoid assembly	RM2-7360-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
T1 solenoid assembly	RM2-7360-000CN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136

Table 5-26 Alphabetical parts list (continued)

Description	Part number	Table and page
Toner supply PCA	RM3-7771-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Toner supply door assembly	RM2-3678-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Toner supply drive assembly	RM2-3607-000CN	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133
Toner supply drive assembly	RM2-3608-000CN	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133
Toner supply drive assembly	RM2-3609-000CN	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133
Toner supply drive motor assembly	RM2-3612-000CN	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
Top front cover assembly	RM2-4518-000CN	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
Top front cover assembly	RM2-4518-000CN	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
Tray assembly	RM2-3837-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Tray assembly	RM2-4173-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Upper paper feed assembly	RM2-4169-000CN	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
Waste toner carry assembly	RM2-3601-000CN	Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models on page 1132
Waste toner duct assembly	RM2-3517-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
Waste toner duct assembly	RM2-3518-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
Waste toner duct assembly	RM2-3590-000CN	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123

Numerical parts list

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list**

Part number	Description	Table and page
1M0Q2A	HP LaserJet Workflow Keyboard	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-7005	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
5851-7005	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models on page 1132
5851-7005	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
5851-7005	Assy-USB A F Panel Mount To WTB 335mm	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
5851-8688	Handle (Lunar Grey Dark/ Cement Dark)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8689	Handle (Lunar Comet Red Dark)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8690	Handle (Lunar Cosmic Green Dark)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8691	Handle (Lunar Constellation Yellow)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8692	Handle (Lunar Aurora Purple Dark)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8693	Handle (OOV white)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8841	ADF hinge kit (5xxx Series)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8843	ADF roller cover (5xxx Series)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8849	ADF damper	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8850	ADF white backing kit	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
5851-8962	Scanner control interconnect board (SCIB) (58xx Series)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
6H121-67001	ADF Pick/Sep Roller Kit (5xxx Series)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
6QN27-67002	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx)	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
6QN27-67002	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx)	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
6QN27-67004	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx) (China/India)	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
6QN27-67004	Formatter (57xx / X55xxx) (China/India)	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
6QN28-40006	Cover-Convenience Stapler Cover	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
6QN28-60102	Control panel 10.9 cm 4.3 in	Control panels on page 1113
6QN29-67002	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx / X58xxx)	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
6QN29-67002	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx / X58xxx)	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
6QN29-67004	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx) (China/India)	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
6QN29-67004	Formatter (58xx / X57xxx) (China/India)	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
6QN29-67005	Flatbed scanner	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
6QN29-67006	Slide Assembly: (5800dn, 5800f, 5800zf, X57945dn, X58045dn, X57945z, and X58045z)	Control panels on page 1113
6QN29-67010	HP LaserJet Image Transfer Belt	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
6QN30-60103	Convenience Stapler Assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
6QN35-60120	Assy-Cable Convenience Stapler	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
6QN35-60129	Control panel 25.6 cm 10.1 in	Control panels on page 1113
6QN35-67007	Slide Assembly: (6800dn, 6800zf, 6800zfw+, 6801zfw+, X677dn, X677z+, X67755dn, X67765dn, X67755z+, and X67765z+)	Control panels on page 1113
6QN35-67008	Slide Assembly: (X57945zs, X58045zs, 6800zfsw, 6801zfsw, X677zs, X677s, X677z, X67755zs, and X67765zs)	Control panels on page 1113
6QN37-60102	Control panel 23.3 cm 8 in	Control panels on page 1113
6QN57A	550-sheet paper feeder (tray)	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
A7W12A	Keyboard Overlay Kit - Chinese	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
A7W13A	Keyboard Overlay Kit - (DN/FR-Swiss/GN)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
A7W14A	HP LaserJet Swedish Overlay Keyboard	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
C0M44-67002	ADF WUR (5xxx Series Non-Workflow)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
C0M44-67003	ADF WUR (5xxx Series Workflow)	Integrated scanner assembly on page 1112
RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RC4-0213-000CN	Cover, Hardware integration pocket (HIP)	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-0353-000CN	Pin, tray fixed	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RC5-8516-000CN	Handle, right door lower	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RC5-8516-000CN	Handle, right door lower	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RC5-8516-000CN	Handle, right door lower	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9165-000CN	Handle, left	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RC5-9165-000CN	Handle, left	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RC5-9165-000CN	Handle, left	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9168-000CN	Cover, rear lower	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RC5-9168-000CN	Cover, rear lower	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RC5-9168-000CN	Cover, rear lower	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9172-000CN	Cover, top assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RC5-9172-000CN	Cover, top assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9198-000CN	Cover, front left	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RC5-9198-000CN	Cover, front left	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RC5-9198-000CN	Cover, front left	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9199-000CN	Cover, front right	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RC5-9199-000CN	Cover, front right	Covers 5800 models on page 1117

Table 5-27 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RC5-9199-000CN	Cover, front right	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9200-000CN	Cover, front left	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
RC5-9201-000CN	Cover, front right	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
RC5-9204-000CN	Cover, left upper	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RC5-9204-000CN	Cover, left upper	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RC5-9204-000CN	Cover, left upper	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9398-000CN	Holder, drawer connector upper	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RC5-9408-000CN	Cover, left	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
RC5-9408-000CN	Left lower cover	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9409-000CN	Cover, rear lower	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RC5-9409-000CN	Cover, rear lower	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
RC6-0223-000CN	Cover, rear upper	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RC6-1305-000CN	Cover, rear	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RC6-1307-000CN	Cover, corner right	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RC6-1308-000CN	Cover, right upper	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RC6-1309-000CN	Cover, right lower	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RC6-1310-000CN	Cover, stapler rear	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RC6-2356-000CN	Cover, left front	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RK2-6027-000CN	Motor, stepping	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
RK2-6027-000CN	Motor, stepping	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RK2-7751-000CN	Motor, stepping	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RK2-7751-000CN	Motor, stepping	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RK2-8148-000CN	Stapler assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RK2-8149-000CN	Motor, stepping DC	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RK2-8153-000CN	Fan	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RK3-0762-000CN	Fan	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RK3-0762-000CN	Fan	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RK3-0819-000CN	Cable, flat drive	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RK3-0819-000CN	Cable, flat drive	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-0821-000CN	Cable, flat drive	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RK3-0821-000CN	Cable, flat drive	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-0825-000CN	Cable, flat SCN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RK3-0825-000CN	Cable, flat SCN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RK3-0835-000CN	Cable, flat SCN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RK3-0835-000CN	Cable, flat SCN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RK3-0845-000CN	Cable, flat FMTR	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RK3-0845-000CN	Cable, flat FMTR	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140

Table 5-27 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RK3-0847-000CN	Cable, flat FMTR	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RK3-1205-000CN	Cable, flat rear	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RK3-1205-000CN	Cable, flat rear	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-1206-000CN	Cable, flat right	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RK3-1206-000CN	Cable, flat right	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-1213-000CN	Cable, flat SCN	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RK3-1213-000CN	Cable, flat SCN	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RK3-1508-000CN	Cable, flat HVT	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-1509-000CN	Cable, flat HVT	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RK3-1637-000CN	Fan	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RK3-1691-000CN	Cable, flat rear	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-1692-000CN	Cable, flat rear	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-1693-000CN	Cable, flat rear	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RK3-1694-000CN	Cable, flat right	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RK3-1694-000CN	Cable, flat right	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RK3-2104-000CN	Cable, flat LVPS	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
RK3-2104-000CN	Cable, flat LVPS	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
RK3-2277-000CN	Fan	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
RK3-2277-000CN	Fan	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
RM2-1040-010CN	Solenoid assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RM2-3479-000CN	Paper feed assembly	Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models on page 1132
RM2-3493-000CN	Lifter drive assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3497-000CN	Main drive assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM2-3500-000CN	Lifter drive assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3501-000CN	Lifter drive assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM2-3501-000CN	Lifter drive assembly	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM2-3504-000CN	Main drive assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM2-3506-000CN	Main drive assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM2-3508-000CN	Paper pickup assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3509-000CN	Paper pickup assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM2-3509-000CN	Paper pickup assembly	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM2-3517-000CN	Waste toner duct assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
RM2-3518-000CN	Waste toner duct assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
RM2-3548-000CN	Paper delivery assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RM2-3554-000CN	Paper delivery assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125

Table 5-27 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-3554-000CN	Paper delivery assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RM2-3559-000CN	Auto close assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM2-3559-000CN	Auto close assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3559-000CN	Auto close assembly	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM2-3565-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA holder	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
RM2-3570-000CN	Right lower door assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RM2-3570-000CN	Right lower door assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RM2-3570-000CN	Right lower door assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-3586-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
RM2-3590-000CN	Waste toner duct assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123
RM2-3601-000CN	Waste toner carry assembly	Internal assemblies (7 of 9) X57945 models on page 1132
RM2-3607-000CN	Toner supply drive assembly	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133
RM2-3608-000CN	Toner supply drive assembly	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133
RM2-3609-000CN	Toner supply drive assembly	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133
RM2-3612-000CN	Toner supply drive motor assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM2-3614-000CN	Size detect assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM2-3614-000CN	Size detect assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3614-000CN	Size detect assembly	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM2-3615-000CN	Cassette assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-3616-000CN	Cassette assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM2-3616-000CN	Cassette assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3617-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM2-3617-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM2-3625-000CN	Developing motor assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM2-3625-000CN	Developing motor assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM2-3628-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123
RM2-3628-000CN	Secondary transfer assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
RM2-3634-000CN	Size detect assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3640-000CN	Cassette assembly	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
RM2-3673-000CN	Pre-exposure PCA holder	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123
RM2-3675-000CN	Interlock assembly	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
RM2-3675-000CN	Interlock assembly	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
RM2-3678-000CN	Toner supply door assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-3681-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM2-3702-000CN	Paper pickup drive assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RM2-3822-000CN	Laser scanner assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM2-3822-000CN	Laser scanner assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM2-3837-000CN	Tray assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152

Table 5-27 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-4167-000CN	Right door assembly	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RM2-4168-000CN	Lower paper feed assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RM2-4169-000CN	Upper paper feed assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RM2-4173-000CN	Tray assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RM2-4458-000CN	Registration assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123
RM2-4458-000CN	Registration assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
RM2-4469-000CN	Face down tray assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RM2-4469-000CN	Face down tray assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RM2-4469-000CN	Face down tray assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-4473-000CN	Front door assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RM2-4473-000CN	Front door assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RM2-4479-000CN	Front door assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-4480-000CN	Formatter cover assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RM2-4480-000CN	Formatter cover assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RM2-4480-000CN	Formatter cover assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-4485-000CN	Fixing drive assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RM2-4485-000CN	Fixing drive assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RM2-4488-000CN	Fixing motor assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RM2-4488-000CN	Fixing motor assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RM2-4492-000CN	Density detect assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 9) X57945 models on page 1123

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM2-4492-000CN	Density detect assembly	Internal assemblies (2 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1138
RM2-4517-000CN	Cover, top assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RM2-4518-000CN	Top front cover assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RM2-4518-000CN	Top front cover assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-4520-000CN	Formatter cage assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RM2-4521-000CN	Formatter cage assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RM2-4521-000CN	Formatter cage assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RM2-4530-000CN	Formatter cover assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RM2-4530-000CN	Formatter cover assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-4533-000CN	Front door assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RM2-4535-000CN	Left cover assembly	Covers 5700/X557 models on page 1116
RM2-4535-000CN	Left cover assembly	Covers 5800 models on page 1117
RM2-4535-000CN	Left cover assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM2-7138-000CN	Memory PC board assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 9) X57945 models on page 1125
RM2-7138-000CN	Memory PC board assembly	Internal assemblies (3 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1140
RM2-7360-000CN	T1 solenoid assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM2-7360-000CN	T1 solenoid assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM3-0004-000CN	Right lower door assembly	Covers X57945 models on page 1120
RM3-0004-000CN	Right lower door assembly	550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors on page 1148
RM3-0480-000CN	Stacking wall assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152

Table 5-27 Numerical parts list (continued)

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM3-0481-000CN	Jog assembly	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RM3-0483-000CN	Staple cover assembly	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RM3-0484-000CN	Staple door assembly	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RM3-0485-000CN	Rear inner cover assembly	3 bin staple stacker covers 5800/X57945 models on page 1151
RM3-0846-000CN	HP Toner supply service kit	Internal assemblies (8 of 9) X57945 models on page 1133
RM3-7647-000CN	Drum position sensor PCA	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM3-7647-000CN	Drum position sensor PCA	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM3-7723-000CN	Driver PCA	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM3-7723-000CN	Driver PCA	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM3-7724-000CN	LVPS (110-127V)	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
RM3-7725-000CN	LVPS (220-240V)	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
RM3-7740-000CN	Right PCA	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM3-7751-010CN	DC controller PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RM3-7752-010CN	DC controller PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RM3-7755-010CN	DC controller PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RM3-7756-010CN	DC controller PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RM3-7759-010CN	DC Controller PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM3-7771-000CN	Toner supply PCA	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM3-7788-000CN	Drum motor assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM3-7788-000CN	Drum motor assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM3-7790-000CN	Right PCA	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM3-7791-000CN	Right PCA	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM3-7797-000CN	ITB motor assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 9) X57945 models on page 1122
RM3-7797-000CN	ITB motor assembly	Internal assemblies (1 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1136
RM3-7950-000CN	Staple stacker PCA	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
RM3-8001-000CN	Drawer cable assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1145
RM3-8038-000CN	Drawer cable assembly	Internal assemblies (6 of 9) X57945 models on page 1130
RM3-8051-000CN	Paper feeder controller PCA	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM3-8058-000CN	Drawer upper cable assembly	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM3-8059-000CN	Drawer lower cable assembly	550-sheet paper feeder internal parts and assemblies on page 1149
RM3-9012-000CN	LVPS (110-127V)	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
RM3-9012-000CN	LVPS (110-127V)	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
RM3-9013-000CN	LVPS (220-240V)	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
RM3-9013-000CN	LVPS (220-240V)	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144
RM3-9040-000CN	HV power supply PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
RM3-9042-000CN	HV power supply PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RM3-9044-000CN	Rear PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1142
RM3-9045-000CN	Rear PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
RM3-9046-000CN	Rear PCA	Internal assemblies (4 of 9) X557/X57945 models on page 1127
W2130A6QN29-67013	HP 213A Black Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2130X6QN29-67014	HP 2130X High Yield Black Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2130Y6QN29-67015	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Black Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2130YC6QN29-67016	HP W2130YC Black Contract Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2131A6QN29-67017	HP 213A Cyan Original LaserJet Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2131X6QN29-67018	HP 2131X High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2131Y6QN29-67019	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Cyan Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2131YC6QN29-67020	HP W2131YC Cyan Contract Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2132A6QN29-67021	HP 213A Yellow Original LaserJet Toner	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2132X6QN29-67022	HP 2132X High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2132Y6QN29-67023	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Yellow Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2132YC6QN29-67024	HP W2132YC Yellow Contract Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147

Table 5-27 **Numerical parts list (continued)**

Part number	Description	Table and page
W2133A6QN29-67025	HP 213A Magenta LaserJet Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2133X6QN29-67026	HP 2133X High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2133Y6QN29-67027	HP 213Y Extra High Yield Magenta Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W2133YC6QN29-67028	HP W2133YC Magenta Contract Toner Cartridge	Internal assemblies (7 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1147
W9250MC6QN29-67033	HP W9250MC Black Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
W9251MC6QN29-67034	HP W9251MC Cyan Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
W9252MC6QN29-67035	HP W9252MC Yellow Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
W9253MC6QN29-67036	HP W9253MC Magenta Mngd LaserJet Toner Cartridge (MFP)	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
W9280MC6QN35-67027	HP W9280MC Black Mngd Imaging Drum	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
W9281MC6QN35-67028	HP W9281MC Cyan Mngd Imaging Drum	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
W9282MC6QN35-67029	HP W9282MC Yellow Mngd Imaging Drum	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
W9283MC6QN35-67030	HP W9283MC Magenta Mngd Imaging Drum	Internal assemblies (9 of 9) X57945 models on page 1135
WC4-5136-000CN	Microswitch	3 bin staple stacker main body 5800/X57945 models on page 1152
WP2-5473-000CN	Sensor, humidity HSU-08FDB2A	Internal assemblies (5 of 9) X57945 models on page 1129
WP2-5473-000CN	Sensor, humidity HSU-08FDB2A	Internal assemblies (5 of 7) 5700/X557/5800 models on page 1144

Glossary of terms

802.11

802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n

802.11b/g/n can share the same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices might occasionally suffer interferences from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

AC

An electric current that reverses its direction many times a second at regular intervals. For example, the 110V line current found in a typical US electrical wall receptacle.

AC Control Module (PageWide)

The AC Control Module controls the heating elements in the airflow assembly. Functions include voltage monitoring (ensuring correct operation in a low-quality-power environment), isolation (low voltage heater control signals are isolated from the high voltage AC power for safety), AC switching (power is switched on/off to the heater), and heating element configuration (heating element configuration is changed between series and parallel for temperature predictability).

ADF

An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a device that automatically feeds an original sheet (or multiple sheets) of paper into the image scanner. The document feeder is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

Airflow System (PageWide)

The airflow system conditions the printed pages to avoid page curling due to the ink on the page. The airflow system functionally consists of a fan and heating elements. The pressurized air is blown on the page through the nozzles that are placed on the paper path of the airflow system between print and eject zone.

BOOTP

Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assigns an IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables “diskless workstation” computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD

A Charged Coupled Device (CCD) is the scanner module which enables a scan job. A CCD locking mechanism is used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when the printer is moved.

CIS

A Contact Image Sensor (CIS) scanner captures an image using the printer's optical path. Red, green, and blue LEDs sequentially illuminate a small strip of the document (often called a raster line), and the optical system captures each color in a single row of Charged Coupled Device (CCD) sensors that cover the entire page width.

Collation

Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel

The control panel is a flat, typically vertical panel or screen where the user can control and/or monitor the printer. The control panel is found on the front of the printer.

Coverage

Coverage is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. If the paper or original has complicated images or a large amount of text, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

DC

An electric current flowing in one direction only. Typically, a low voltage load current supplied to an electrical assembly.

DCC

The DC controller (DCC) controls the operation of the printer sub-systems and electrical components. the DCC sends out various signals to operate motors, solenoids, and other printer components based on the print command and image data that the host computer sends the formatter.

Default

The value or setting that is in effect when a printer is unboxed, reset, or initialized.

DHCP

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. The DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

Digital Send Software

Digital send software allows a mufti-function printer (MFP) to scan and send information quickly and securely to email, network folders, other printers, and fax services.

DIMM

A Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM) is a small circuit board that holds memory. The DIMM stores all data within the printer, such as printing data and received fax data.

DPI

Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution (more visible detail in the image and a larger file size).

Duplex

A mechanism that automatically turns over a sheet of paper so that the printer can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a duplex unit can print on both sides of the paper during one print cycle.

Duty Cycle

Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally, the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month the printer limit is 2,400 pages a day (assuming 20 working days/month).

Dynamic Security

Dynamic Security is a toner cartridge design and process for authenticating genuine HP supplies. HP printers use toner cartridges that have security chips or electronic circuitry. Cartridges using a non-HP chip, or modified chip, or non-HP circuitry might not work (now or in the future).

e-Duplex

Single-pass electronic duplex (e-Duplex) printer use two separate scan modules to scan the front-side and back-side of an e-duplex copy job page in a single pass through the document feeder.

EMC

EMC is a measure of a device's ability to operate as intended in its shared operating environment while, at the same time, not affecting the ability of other equipment within the same environment to operate as intended.

EMI

EMI is the electromagnetic energy which affects the functioning of an electronic device. Electronic devices (like printers) are a source of EMI. Because it is rare for electronics to operate in isolation, products are generally engineered to function in the presence of some amount of EMI.

eMMC

An embedded Multi-Media Card is a compact memory device consisting of NAND flash memory and a simple storage controller.

Emulation

Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior. This is different from simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

EPS

Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) is a PostScript (PS) code file which is used for storing font and vector graphic image information.

ESD

An electrostatic discharge (ESD) is a sudden flow of electricity between two electrically charged objects caused by contact, an electrical short, or dielectric breakdown. Discharge of built up static electricity.

Ethernet

Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. Ethernet has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to present.

Ferrite

A ferrite is used to reduce the amount of radio frequency noise (or interference) in a wire or cable. A ferrite enables proper EMC/EMI performance for regulatory purposes.

FFC

Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) are designed for Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA) to PCA connections (for example, connecting a fax PCA to the formatter).

FIH

A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) is a port that enables HP multifunction printers (MFPs) to use third-party devices to extend the capabilities of the MFP.

Firmware

The formatter stores the printer firmware. A remote firmware upgrade process is used to overwrite and upgrade the firmware.

Flash memory

Flash memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

Flow integrated scanner assembly

A printer scanner assembly that includes a slide-out external physical keyboard.

Formatter (LaserJet)

The formatter controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement and timing with the DC controller PCA, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

FTP

FTP stands for File Transfer Protocol. FTP is a protocol designed for transferring files over the Internet. Files stored on an FTP server can be accessed using an FTP client, such as a web browser, FTP software program, or a command line interface.

Fuser Unit

The fuser unit is part of a laser printer that adheres the toner onto the printed page. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to make sure that the toner stays on the paper permanently (which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer).

Gateway

A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. A gateway is used to connect two different computer networks, especially a connection to the Internet.

Grayscale

Shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of a color image printed in monochrome. Colors are represented by a range of gray shades from white to black.

Halftone

Halftone is a way of reproducing a photograph or other image in which the various tones of gray or color are produced by variously sized dots of ink or toner. Halftone simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

HDD

A Hard-Disk Drive (HDD) (commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk) is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

IEEE

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

Image scanner

The image scanner (or Sub Scanner Assembly) contains the components to digitally scan an original source document. The image scanner is a component of the integrated scanner assembly (ADF and image scanner).

IP address

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that a device uses in order to identify and communicate with other devices on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM

The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a method of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete in one minute.

IPP

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing and managing print jobs, media size, resolution, etc. IPP can be used locally, or over the internet to reach hundreds of printers. IPP also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a capable and secure printing solution.

ISA

The Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA) includes the document feeder and image scanner.

ISO

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. In produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

JBIG

Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality. It was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used for other images.

JPEG

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a commonly used standard method of loss compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED

A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that can indicate the status of a printer (formatter LEDs) or a component in a contact image sensor (CIS) scanner that helps capture an image.

LEDM

Low end data model (LEDM) provides one consistent data representation method and defines the dynamic and capabilities tickets shared between clients and devices, as well as the access protocol, event, security, and discovery methods.

LPDC

Late point differentiation configuration (LPDC) allows the channel partner to configure the speed to the printer depending on the customer's order. LPDC configuration is stored on the Trusted Platform Module (TPM).

LVPS - SMPS

Low Voltage Power Supplies (LVPS) and Switching Mode Power Supplies (SMPS) supply direct current (DC) voltages to various printer components and assemblies.

MAC address

Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (for example, 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by the manufacturer and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on a large network.

MEt

HP Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) effectively doubles the standard memory through a variety of font- and data-compression methods. MEt is available only in Printer Command Language (PCL) mode; it is not functional when printing in PostScript (PS) mode.

MFP

A Multi Function Printer (MFP) is a printer that incorporates multiple functionalities in a single physical body. For example, an MFP printer can scan, digitally send, fax, copy, and print.

MHV

Miniature High Voltage (MHV) is designed for high voltage applications of BNC connectors (DC voltage between 500 V and 5 kV).

Modem

A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MPCA (PageWide)

The MPCA integrates both formatter (LaserJet) and engine control electronics (DC controller) into a single assembly. The Main PCA (MPCA) controls printer functions like receiving and processes print data, developing and coordinating data placement, storing font and customer configuration information, communicating with the host computer, and monitoring control panel functions and relaying printer status information through the control panel.

NAND

NAND is not an acronym (the term is short for **NOT AND** a Boolean operator and logic gate). NAND (flash) memory is non-volatile, meaning it retains stored data even when the power is turned off.

NVRAM

Nonvolatile random access memory (NVRAM) is used to store I/O and information about the print environment configuration (stored data even when the power is turned off).

OPC

Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer. It is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape. An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface during its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately due to wear from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

Originals

The first example of something, such as a document, photograph, or text which is copied, reproduced, or translated to produce additional copies. The original itself is not copied or derived from something else.

PCA

Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA). Once the printed circuit board (PCB) is complete, electronic components must be assembled to form a functional printed circuit assembly or PCA.

PCL

Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol. PCL has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early Inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printers and laser printers.

PDF

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems. A PDF represents two dimension documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PJL

Printer job language (PJL) is an integral part of printer configuration, in addition to the standard PCL and PostScript (PS). With standard cabling, the printer can use PJL to perform a variety of functions like dynamic I/O switching, context-sensitive switching, and isolation of print environment settings from one print job to the next.

PML

Printer management language (PML) allows remote configuration of the printer and status read-back from the printer through the I/O ports.

PostScript (PS)

PostScript (PS) is a Page Description Language (PDL) and programming language used primarily in electronic and desktop publishing. PostScript is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

PPM

Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Print Media

Media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, scanner, fax, or copier.

Printer Driver

A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

Printhead (PageWide)

The printhead converts the digital firing instructions from the printer electronics into properly formed and timed microscopic drops of the four ink colors.

Printhead Wiper (PageWide)

The printhead wiper system keeps the printhead nozzles firing correctly throughout the life of the printer as it performs the wiping and capping functions. The wiping function cleans the nozzles of ink residue and particulates. The capping function keeps the nozzles moist during storage and when the printer is idle.

Protocol

A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

RAM

Random Access Memory (RAM) is the printer memory device where the data in current use is kept so it can be quickly retrieved by the device's processor. This memory is an important factor in avoiding errors and printing documents properly. Printer memory is used to store, and process print jobs as they are sent to the printer from a computer. After printing, the job is cleared from the memory to make room for more print jobs. Printer memory is directly linked to two print characteristics: speed and print quality. More memory allows you to print faster and print larger, high-quality graphics.

REDI sensor

An optical reflective edge detection interrupter (REDI) sensor. Usually used in conjunction with mirrors to sense the presence or absence of paper in the paper path. These sensors are carefully aligned and calibrated at the factory, so care must be taken when servicing these sensors.

Resolution

The sharpness of an image is measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the DPI, the greater the resolution.

SCB

The Scanner Control Board (SCB) controls the functions of the image scanner components in the Sub Scanner Assembly (SSA).

Service fluid and aerosol management systems (PageWide)

There are two types of service fluid, shipping fluid and ink. The service fluid management system is contained entirely within the duplex module. Service fluid is discharged as droplets from the printhead, and then collected in a container inside the duplex module. Some of the droplets are called aerosol because they are lighter than air. Aerosol can float inside the printer and collect on the lens of optical sensors, producing false failures. The aerosol management system transports the aerosol and collects it in a safe place. Aerosol management consists of an aerosol fan, mounted on the rear wall of the air flow assembly, which creates air flow that pulls the aerosol through the holes in the platen and into the aerosol filter inside the duplex module.

SFP

A single-function printer only processes print jobs sent from a host computer or from an USB port on the printer.

SMB

Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. SMB also provides an authenticated inter-process communication mechanism.

SMTP

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for email transmissions across the internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipient of a message is specified, and the message text is transferred. It is a client server protocol where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SODIMM

Small outline dual in-line memory module (SODIMM) is a thin profile memory storage device (a smaller alternative to a standard DIMM device).

SSA

The Sub-Scanner Assembly is the image scanner component of the Integrated Scanner Assembly (ISA, which includes the document feeder and the image scanner).

Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP

The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP) are the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the internet and most commercial networks run.

TIFF

Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bit mapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images use tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge

A bottle or container that holds toner, which is used in a machine like a printer. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers. The toner forms the text and images on printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind the fibers in the paper.

TPM

The HP Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a security accessory for printers. The TPM strengthens protection of encrypted credentials and data stored on your printer. Certificate private keys are both generated by and protected by the TPM. Once installed, the printer and the TPM are sealed, and the printer owns the TPM. The TPM may not be moved to another device without losing its ownership from the original printer. Installing a TPM accessory might necessitate a firmware upgrade. The TPM prevents the printer from starting if the TPM is missing. If the TPM is removed from the printer, a control-panel error message appears indicating that the TPM is missing.

NOTE: The TPM is not a service part for some printer models. Check the printer service manual to determine if the TPM is a replaceable service part.

TWAIN

An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN compliant scanner with TWAIN-compliant software, a scan can be initiated from the program. TWAIN is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.

URL

Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use. The second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB

Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Walk-up USB

Some printers support direct printing from a USB flash drive (the walk-up USB port is usually near the control panel).

Watermark

A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282. Watermarks have been used by paper makers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

XPS

XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format developed by Microsoft. This has benefits for portable document and electronic documents. It is an XML-based specification based on a new print path and vector-based, device-independent document format.

ZIF Connector

Zero insertion force (ZIF) connectors use a mechanical locking method to secure Flat Flexible Cables (FFCs) to a Printed Circuit Assembly (PCA).

Index

Symbols/Numerics

3 bin staple stacker covers MFP
  parts 1150
3 bin staple stacker main body MFP
  parts 1151
3-bin staple stacker output devices
  parts and diagrams 1150
550-sheet paper feeder
  parts and diagrams 1148
  parts, main body 1149
550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors
  whole unit replacement 1148
550-sheet tray
  jams 255
550-sheet trays
  jams 213
76.00.24 203

A

acoustic specifications 21
assemblies 2,100-sheet paper deck
  remove and replace 979
assemblies 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox
  remove and replace 1022
assemblies 550-sheet paper feeder
  remove and replace 928
assemblies base printer, remove and replace 461
automatic document feeder
  whole-unit replacement 449

B

backup error
  32.WX.YZ error 202
  reset error 202
  restore error 202
Backup/Restore (Maintenance) menu
  control-panel menu 165
base printer
  configuration 7
  information 2
  parts and diagrams 1113
  specifications 9
bin, output
  locating 4
  locating SFP managed 3
  locating SFP transactional 2
blank pages
  troubleshooting 342

C

cables
  USB, troubleshooting 342
Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control panel 165
Calibrate/Cleaning menu, control-panel menu 166
cartridge
  eject 356
  manually unlock 549
  remove 353, 357
  remove (manually unlocked) 551
  replacing 353, 358
caution iii
checklists
  pre-troubleshooting 41
cleaning page 165, 166
  print 322
cold rest
  reset 176
component diagnostics
  solve problems 93
configuration
  base printer 7
  printer 1
configuration page
  determine installed firmware 45
  find information 122
  solve problems 122
configurations, 5700/X55745 7
configurations, 5800/X57945 8
connectivity and performance
  troubleshooting 341
connector error
  65.WX.YZ error 203
connector locations
  external plug and port diagrams 95
  printed circuit assembly diagrams 116
control panel
  locating 4
  locating SFP managed 3
  locating SFP transactional 2
  parts 1113
  solve problems 49, 190
control panel diagnostic flowcharts 62
control panel messages 201
control panel, system diagnostics
  solve problems 190
control panels
  parts and diagrams 1113
control-panel menu
  Maintenance 165
control-panel menu)
  Service (Maintenance) 167
  Troubleshooting (Maintenance) 168
  USB Firmware Upgrade (Maintenance) 167
conventions used iii
copy-quality problems
  light or faint copies 339
  modify printer settings to improve scan or copy quality 338

vertical lines, bands, or streaks 333
copy-quality troubleshooting 331
Copy/Print (Settings) menu (MFP) control-panel menu 67
covers
remove and replace parts 461, 928, 979, 1022
covers MFP
parts 1117, 1119
covers SFP
parts 1115
covers, panels, and doors
parts and diagrams 1115, 1148, 1150
CPMD 201
customer self-repair (CSR) A parts and accessories 351
customer self-repair (CSR) B parts and accessories 393
customer-replaceable units
remove and replace parts 352, 393

D

DC controller communication error 55.WX.YZ error 202
DC controller firmware error 70.WX.YZ error 203
defeating interlocks 184
defeating interlocks
solve problems 89, 184
definitions and terms glossary 1184
determine problem source 41
devices, input information 22
devices, output information 24
diagnostics
component, solve problems 93
engine 184
diagram
3-bin stapler-stacker 24
diagrams, block
solve problems 95
diagrams, external plug and port locations 95
diagrams, major component locations 100
diagrams, printed circuit assembly
connector locations 116
diagrams, sensors and switches 96
digital sending error (firmware) 44.WX.YZ error 202
dimensions, printer 15, 16, 18
disable cartridge check
solve problems 92, 186
document feeder
jams 255, 257
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
paper-feeding problems (MFP) 314
remove and replace parts 442
whole unit replacement 1111
document feeder / scanner
information, configurations, and specifications 1
parts and diagrams 1111
document feeder and scanner information 1
document feeder error 31.WX.YZ error 202
doors
parts and diagrams 1115, 1148, 1150
remove and replace parts 461, 928, 979, 1022
drum
remove 360
replacing 361
duplexer
jams 213, 255
duplexer error 69.WX.YZ error 203

E

easy-access USB port
locating SFP managed 3
eject
toner cartridges 356
electrical specifications 21
email problems
get help from WISE 341
Embedded Jetdirect error 80.WX.YZ error 203
engine
diagnostics 184
test page 184
engine error (LaserJet) 46.WX.YZ error 202
63.WX.YZ error 202
engine error (PageWide) 61.WX.YZ error 202
engine FRUs, internal
parts and diagrams 1121, 1149, 1151
engine test
solve problems 48, 184
engine, printer
parts and diagrams 1113
event log 213
event log error (firmware) 42.WX.YZ error 202
external plug and port diagrams locations 95

F

factory settings
reset 176, 178
faint copies
copy-quality problems 339
fan error
58.WX.YZ error 202
Fax (Settings) menu (MFP) control-panel menu 145
fax ports
locating MFP 6
fax problems
get help from WISE 341
field-replaceable units
covers, panels, and doors 461, 928, 979, 1022
remove and replace parts 442, 461, 928, 979, 1022
firmware
determine the installed version 45
firmware communication error 49.WX.YZ error 202
firmware install error
99.WX.YZ error 203
hard disk error 203
remote firmware upgrade error 203
firmware locations
active and repository 178
firmware upgrade
firmware version determine 45
firmware upgrade)
embedded web server 44
USB flash drive, control panel 44
USB flash drive, pre-boot menu 44

firmware, upgrade
downloading 44
firmware, version determine
find information 45
firmware, version determining 44
flowcharts
troubleshooting 41, 43
format disk
solve problems 178
formatter
locating MFP 6
front door
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
locating SFP transactional 2
FRUs
remove and replace
parts 442, 461, 928, 979, 1022
FRUS, internal
parts and diagrams 1121, 1149, 1151
fuser
jams 246, 248, 252, 255, 293, 295, 299
fuser error
41.WX.YZ error 202
laser scanner error 202
paper path error 202
fuser error (LaserJet)
50.WX.YZ error 202

G

General (Settings) menu
control-panel menu 128
glossary
terms and definitions 1184

H

hard disk partition error
98.WX.YZ error 203
hardware integration pocket (HIP)
locating SFP managed 3
hardware integration pocket (HIP)
is not functioning 62, 66
home button is unresponsive 62, 65
HP Support viii, 350

I

image defects, repetitive
ruler 316
image quality
check toner-cartridge status 321
image-quality
troubleshooting 315
imaging drums
remove 360
replacing 361
individual component test
solve problems 94
information
document feeder and scanner 1
input devices 22
output devices 24
printer 1
printer base 2
information pages
configuration page 122
Jetdirect page 122
information, configurations, and specifications
ADF / scanner 1
document feeder / scanner 1
scanner / document feeder 1
input accessory error
67.WX.YZ error 203
input devices
information 22
parts and diagrams 1148
remove and replace, 2,100-sheet paper deck 979
remove and replace, 550-sheet paper feeder 928
input, 550-sheet paper feeder
parts and diagrams 1148
input/output error
40.WX.YZ error 202
install
tray 1 pickup roller 389
installation
printer 26
installation, base printer 28
installation, document feeder / scanner 26
integrated scanner assembly (ISA)
ISA
whole-unit replacement, integrated scanner assembly 455
whole-unit replacement 455
interface ports
locating MFP 6
locating SFP 3
interlocks
defeating 184
internal assemblies (1 of 6), parts 1136
internal assemblies (1 of 9), parts 1121
internal assemblies (2 of 7), parts 1138
internal assemblies (2 of 9), parts 1123
internal assemblies (3 of 7), parts 1140
internal assemblies (3 of 9), parts 1125
internal assemblies (4 of 7), parts 1142
internal assemblies (4 of 9), parts 1127
internal assemblies (5 of 7), parts 1144
internal assemblies (5 of 9), parts 1129
internal assemblies (6 of 7), parts 1145
internal assemblies (6 of 9), parts 1130
internal assemblies (7 of 7), parts 1147
internal assemblies (7 of 9), parts 1132
internal assemblies (8 of 9), parts 1133
internal assemblies (9 of 9), parts 1135
internal assemblies 2,100-sheet paper deck 979
internal assemblies 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox 1022
internal assemblies 550-sheet paper feeder 928
internal assemblies base printer 461
internal diagnostics error
90.WX.YZ error 203
video display error 203
internal parts 2,100-sheet paper deck
remove and replace 979
internal parts 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox
remove and replace 1022
internal parts 550-sheet paper feeder
remove and replace 928

internal parts and assemblies
parts and diagrams 1121, 1149, 1151
internal parts and assemblies, remove and replace 352, 393, 442, 548, 944, 990, 1060
internal parts base printer, remove and replace 461
internal test and information pages
solve problems 122

J

jam error (LaserJet)
13.WX.YZ error 201
jam error (PageWide)
13.WX.YZ error 201
jams
550-sheet tray 255
550-sheet trays 213
auto-navigation 214, 256
causes of 214, 256
document feeder 255, 257
duplexer 213, 255
fuser 246, 248, 252, 255, 293, 295, 299
in right door 243, 290
locations 213, 255
output bin 213, 254, 255, 301, 302, 304, 306
Tray 1 213, 255
Tray 2 213, 218, 255, 265
Tray 4 229, 236, 276, 283
Jetdirect page
solve problems 122
job accounting error (firmware)
48.WX.YZ error 202
job management error (firmware) 202
job pipeline error (firmware) 202
job parser error (firmware)
47.WX.YZ error 202
printer calibration error 202

L

laser scanner error (LaserJet)
51.WX.YZ error 202
52.WX.YZ error 202
light copies
copy-quality problems 339
lines, bands, streaks
copy-quality problems 333
link speed, change 90, 187

M

maintenance
printer 26
maintenance, base printer 28
maintenance, document feeder / scanner 26
major component diagrams
locations 100
major component locations
diagrams 100
Manage Supplies (Settings) menu
control-panel menu 156
manual sensor test, tray/bin
solve problems 95
manual sensor tests
solve problem 94
memory error
82.WX.YZ error 203
EMMC error 203
hard disk error 203
memory, 5700
included 9
memory, 5800
included 12
memory, X55745
included 11
memory, X57945
included 14
menu, control panel
Backup/Restore (Maintenance) menu 165
Backup/Restore menu 165
Calibrate/Cleaning menu 165, 166
Copy/Print (Settings) menu (MFP) 67
Fax (Settings) menu (MFP) 145
General (Settings) menu 128
Manage Supplies (Settings) menu) 156
Networking (Settings) menu 159
Print (Settings) menu (SFP) 67
Reports menu 126
Scan/Digital Send (Settings) menu (MFP) 134
Service (Maintenance) menu 167
Service menu 165
Settings menu 127
Support Tools menu 165
Troubleshooting (Maintenance) menu 168
USB Firmware Upgrade (Maintenance) menu 167
USB Firmware Upgrade menu 165
menus control panel, control panel Calibrate/Cleaning) 165
menus, control panel
Calibrate/Cleaning 166
motor error (LaserJet)
59.WX.YZ error 202

N

Near Field Communication error
81.WX.YZ error 203
Bluetooth error 203
external I/O card error 203
internal EIO error 203
wireless error 203
network port
locating SFP 3
Networking (Settings) menu
control-panel menu 159
networks, 5700
supported 9
networks, 5800
supported 12
networks, X55745
supported 11
networks, X57945
supported 14
no control panel sound 62, 64
note iii

O

on/off button
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
locating SFP transactional 2
operating-environment range
printer 22
output accessory error
66.WX.YZ error 203
output bin
clear jams 213, 254, 255, 301, 302, 306
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
locating SFP transactional 2
output device, 3-bin staple stacker
parts and diagrams 1150
output devices
information 24
parts and diagrams 1150

remove and replace, 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox 1022
OXPd/Web kit error
45.WX.YZ error 202

P

page error
21.WX.YZ error 202
pages
blank 342
not printing 342
printing slowly 342
pages per minute, 5700 9
pages per minute, 5800 12
pages per minute, X55745 11
pages per minute, X57945 14
panels
parts and diagrams 1115, 1148, 1150
remove and replace parts 461, 928, 979, 1022
paper
jams 213, 214, 255, 256
selecting 322
paper feeder, 550-sheet
parts and diagrams 1148
parts, main body 1149
whole unit replacement part 1148
paper handling
solve problems 213
paper handling error (LaserJet)
56.WX.YZ error 202
paper jams
550-sheet tray 255
550-sheet trays 213
document feeder 255, 257
duplexer 213, 255
fuser 246, 248, 252, 255, 293, 295, 299
locations 213, 255
output bin 213, 254, 255, 301, 302, 304, 306
right door 243, 290
Stapler stacker 304
Tray 1 213, 255
Tray 2 213, 218, 255, 265
Tray 4 229, 236, 276, 283
paper path sensors test (not available for this printer)
solve problems 94
paper path test
solve problems 93
partial clean (disk)
solve problems 178
parts
3 bin staple stacker covers MFP 1150
3 bin staple stacker main body MFP 1151
550-sheet paper feeder covers, panels, and doors 1148
550-sheet paper feeder main body 1149
control panel 1113
covers MFP 1117, 1119
covers SFP 1115
document feeder and scanner whole units 1111
parts and diagrams
550-sheet paper feeder 1148
ADF / scanner 1111
base printer 1113
control panels 1113
covers, panels, and doors 1115, 1148, 1150
document feeder / scanner 1111
doors 1115, 1148, 1150
engine, printer 1113
f3-bin staple stacker output device 1150
input devices 1148
internal parts and assemblies 1121, 1149, 1151
output devices 1150
panels 1115, 1148, 1150
scanner / document feeder 1111
parts internal 2,100-sheet paper deck
remove and replace 979
parts internal 3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox
remove and replace 1022
parts internal 550-sheet paper feeder
remove and replace 928
parts internal base printer, remove and replace 461
parts, internal assemblies (1 of 6) 1136
parts, internal assemblies (1 of 9) 1121
parts, internal assemblies (2 of 7) 1138
parts, internal assemblies (2 of 9) 1123
parts, internal assemblies (3 of 7) 1140
parts, internal assemblies (3 of 9) 1125
parts, internal assemblies (4 of 7) 1142
parts, internal assemblies (4 of 9) 1127
parts, internal assemblies (5 of 7) 1144
parts, internal assemblies (5 of 9) 1129
parts, internal assemblies (6 of 7) 1145
parts, internal assemblies (6 of 9) 1130
parts, internal assemblies (7 of 7) 1147
parts, internal assemblies (7 of 9) 1132
parts, internal assemblies (8 of 9) 1133
parts, internal assemblies (9 of 9) 1135
performance and connectivity troubleshooting 341
personal identification number (PIN)
service menu 172
power
consumption 21
power connection
locating SFP 3
power on troubleshooting 182
power on troubleshooting overview 182
power switch
locating SFP transactional 2
power-on checks
troubleshooting process 182
pre-boot menu options 203
pre-troubleshooting checklist 41
precautions
disassemble or reassemble iv, 347
electrical iv, 347
ingestion hazard iv, 347
laser radiation hazard iv, 347
mechanical hazard iv, 347
thermal hazard iv, 347
Print (Settings) menu (SFP)
control-panel menu 67
print a cleaning page 322
print bar error (PageWide)
62.WX.YZ error 202

print-quality troubleshooting 316
print/stop test
solve problems 92
printed circuit assembly diagrams
connector locations 116
printer
information, configuration, and specifications 1
installation and maintenance 26
operating-environment range 22
resets 176
space requirements 21
printer engine
parts and diagrams 1113
printer information, configuration, and specifications
document feeder and scanner specifications 1
document feeder and scanner views 1
printer installation and maintenance
base printer 28
document feeder / scanner 26
printer memory error
20.WX.YZ error 201
printer resets
solve problems 176
printer settings
copy-quality problems 338
printer, base
configuration 7
information 2
specifications 9
printing
troubleshooting 342
Process Cleaning Page 165, 166

R

real-time clock error
11.WX.YZ error 201
removal and replacement 347
remove
imaging drums 360
toner cartridges 353, 357
toner cartridges (manually unlocked) 551
tray 1 pickup roller 385
remove and replace
2,100-sheet paper deck, internal parts and assemblies 979
3-bin staple stacker multi-bin mailbox, internal parts and assemblies 1022
550-sheet paper feeder, internal parts and assemblies 928
remove and replace parts
automatic document feeder, whole-unit replacement 449
covers, panels, and doors 461, 928, 979, 1022
customer-replaceable units 352, 393
document feeder / scanner 442
field-replaceable units 442, 461, 928, 979, 1022
integrated scanner assembly (ISA), whole-unit replacement 455
whole-unit replacement 449
remove and replace, internal parts and assemblies 352, 393, 442, 548, 944, 990, 1060
remove and replace, internal parts and assemblies base printer 461
repetitive image defect ruler 316
replacing
imaging drums 361
toner cartridges 353, 358
reports
event log 213
supplies status page 203
Reports menu
control-panel menu 126
resets
printer 176
right door
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
locating SFP transactional 2
Right door
jams 243, 290
roller, tray 1 pickup
install 389
remove 385

S

safety precautions iv, 347
scan or copy quality improvement
copy-quality problems 338
Scan/Digital Send (Settings) menu (MFP)
control-panel menu 134
scanner
remove and replace parts 442
scanner and document feeder
information 1
scanner error
30.WX.YZ error 202
scanner tests (MFP)
solve problems 91
troubleshooting 91
scanner, image
whole unit replacement part 1111
scanner/document feeder
information, configurations, and specifications 1
parts and diagrams 1111
security error
33.WX.YZ error 202
sensor error
54.WX.YZ error 202
58.WX.YZ error 202
sensors and switches diagrams
3-bin stapler-stacker 96
550-sheet paper feeder 96
base printer 96
floor-standing stapler-stacker 96
HCI 96
Service (Maintenance) menu
control-panel menu 167
service ID
restore 176
service menu
personal identification number (PIN) 172
solve problems 172
Settings (Copy/Print, MFP) menu
control-panel menu 67
Settings (Fax) menu (MFP)
control-panel menu 145
Settings (General) menu
control-panel menu 128
Settings (Manage Supplies) menu)
control-panel menu 156
Settings (Networking) menu
control-panel menu 159
Settings (Print, SFP) menu
control-panel menu 67
Settings (Scan/Digital Send) menu (MFP)
control-panel menu 134

Settings menu
control-panel menu 127
solve connectivity problems 345
solve performance
problems 342
factors affecting print performance 342
print speeds 343
printer does not print 344
printer prints slowly 344
solve problems
configuration page 122
control panel 49, 190
control panel messages 201
copy-quality troubleshooting 331
CPMD 201
defeating interlocks 89, 184
diagrams, block 95
disable cartridge check 92, 186
engine test 48, 184
external plug and port location diagrams 95
firmware upgrade 44
firmware, determine version 45
format disk and partial clean functions 178
image-quality troubleshooting 315
individual component diagnostics 93
individual component test 94
internal test and information pages 122
LED diagnostics 90, 187
link speed 90, 187
major component locations diagrams 100
manual sensor test 94
output is curled or wrinkled 213, 312
paper does not feed automatically 213, 314
paper does not feed from Tray 2-X 213, 311
paper handling 213
paper path sensors test (not available for this printer) 94
paper path test 93
performance and connectivity troubleshooting 341
power-on checks 182
print-quality troubleshooting 316
print/stop test 92
printed circuit assembly connector location diagrams 116
printer does not pick up paper 213
printer does not pick up paper or misfeeds 213
printer feeds incorrect page size 213, 310
printer picks up multiple sheets of paper 213
printer pulls from incorrect tray 213, 311
printer resets 176
printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly 213, 311
scanner tests (MFP) 91
sensors and switches diagrams 96
service menu 172
system diagnostics, control panel 190
tray/bin manual sensor test 95
troubleshooting tools 48
solving
direct-connect problems 345
space requirements
printer 21
specifications
base printer 9
electrical and acoustic 21
printer 1
specifications, document feeder and scanner
printer information, configuration, and specifications 1
Stapler stacker
clear jams 304
supplies
eject toner cartridges 356
remove imaging drums 360
remove toner cartridges 353, 357
remove toner cartridges (manually unlocked) 551
replacing imaging drums 361
replacing toner cartridges 353, 358
unlock manually the toner cartridges 549
supplies error (LaserJet)
10.WX.YZ error 201
supplies error (PageWide)
17.WX.YZ error 201
supplies status page 203
Support Tools menu
control-panel menu 165
system error (LaserJet)
62.WX.YZ error 202

T

terms and definitions
glossary 1184
tests
disable cartridge check 184
engine 184
tip iii
toner cartridge
diagnostic test 184
toner cartridges
eject 356
manually unlock 549
remove 353, 357
remove (manually unlocked) 551
replacing 353, 358
touchscreen blank, white, or dim (no image) 62
touchscreen has an unresponsive zone 62, 63
tray
location assemblies, 550-sheet paper feeder 22
location assemblies, HCI paper feeder 23
Tray 1
jams 213, 255
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
locating SFP transactional 2
tray 1 pickup roller
install 389
remove 385
Tray 2
jams 213, 218, 255, 265
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
locating SFP transactional 2
Tray 3
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3

Tray 4
jams 229, 236, 276, 283
locating 4
tray motor error (LaserJet)
60.WX.YZ error 202
tray/bin, manual sensor test
solve problems 95
trays
locating 4
locating SFP managed 3
locating SFP transactional 2
trays, 5700
capacity 9
included 9
trays, 5800
capacity 12
included 12
trays, X55745
capacity 11
included 11
trays, X57945
capacity 14
included 14
troubleshooting
blank pages 342
check toner-cartridge status 321
checklist 41
control panel 49, 190
defeating interlocks 89, 184
direct-connect problems 345
disable cartridge check 92, 186
engine test 48, 184
event log 213
flowchart 41, 43
format disk and partial clean functions 178
individual component test 94
jams 213, 214, 255, 256
LED diagnostics 90, 187
link speed 90, 187
manual sensor test 94
network problems 345
pages not printing 342
pages printing slowly 342
paper path sensors test (not available for this printer) 94
paper path test 93
print/stop test 92
printer resets 176
scanner tests (MFP) 91
service menu 172
supplies status page 203
system diagnostics, control panel 190
tray/bin manual sensor test 95
USB cables 342
wired network 345
Troubleshooting (Maintenance) menu
control-panel menu 168
troubleshooting process
power on 182
power subsystem 182
power-on checks 182
troubleshooting process overview
power on 182
troubleshooting tools
control panel messages 201
copy-quality troubleshooting 331
CPMD 201
determine the problem source 41
diagrams, block 95
firmware upgrade 44
image-quality troubleshooting 315
individual component diagnostics 93
performance and connectivity troubleshooting 341
print-quality troubleshooting 316
solve problems 48

U

unlock, manually
toner cartridges 549
upgrade, product firmware 44
USB Firmware Upgrade (Maintenance) menu
control-panel menu 167
USB port
locating 4
locating SFP transactional 2
troubleshooting 342

V

vertical lines, bands, or streaks
copy-quality problems 333
views, document feeder and scanner
printer information, configuration, and specifications 1

W

warning iii
weight, printer 15, 16, 18
whole-unit replacement
automatic document feeder 449
integrated scanner assembly (ISA) 455
remove and replace parts 449
WISE
email problems 341
fax problems 341
WUR
automatic document feeder 449
integrated scanner assembly (ISA) 455
remove and replace parts 449